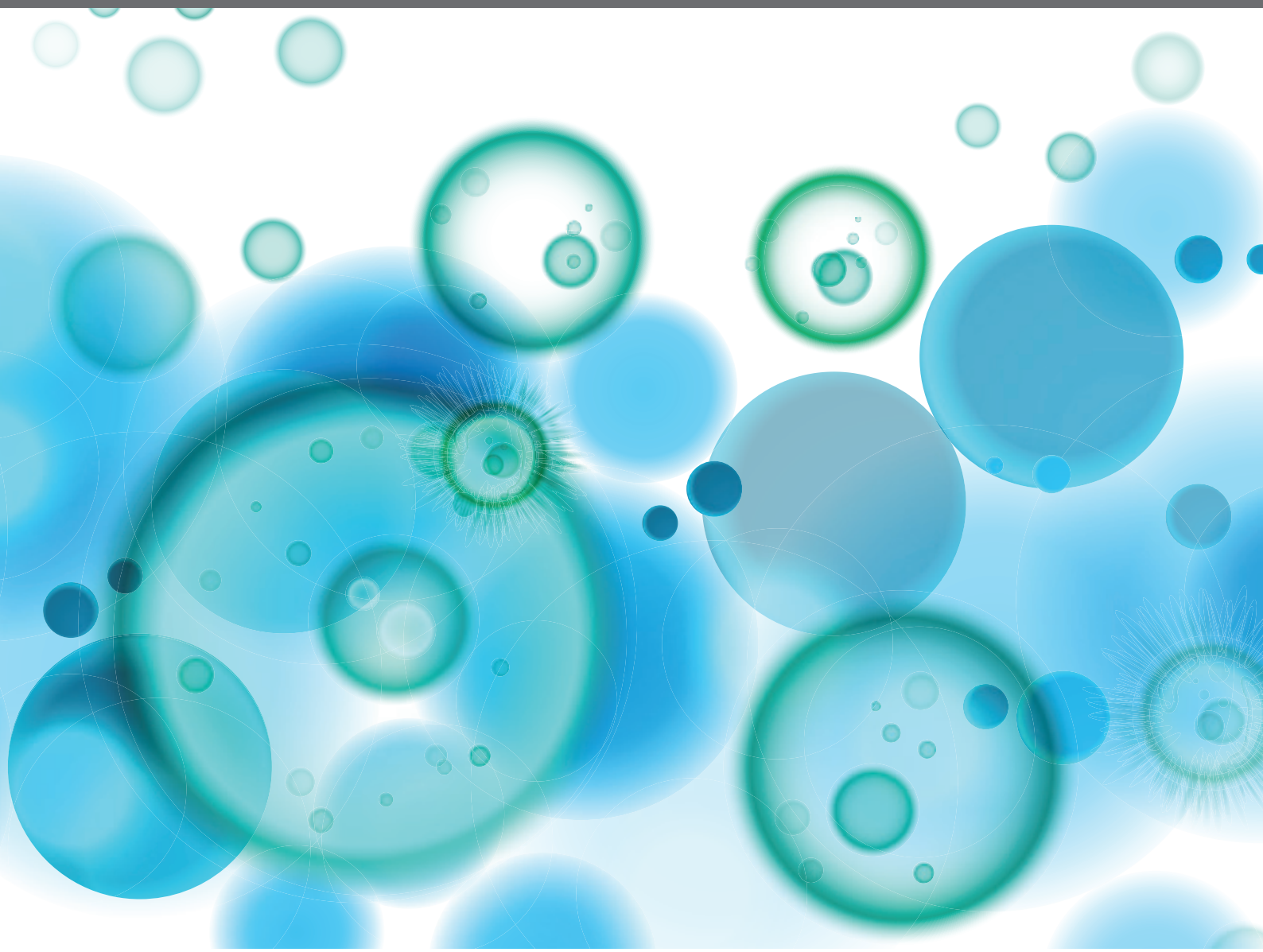
FC-MEDIATED ANTIBODY FUNCTIONS AND FC-RECEPTOR POLYMORPHISM

EDITED BY: Guido Ferrari, Georgia Tomaras, R. Keith Reeves and Gabriella Scarlatti

PUBLISHED IN: Frontiers in Immunology



frontiers Research Topics

frontiers

ISSN 1664-8714
ISBN 978-2-88963-890-1
DOI 10.3389/978-2-88963-890-1

About Frontiers

Frontiers is more than just an open-access publisher of scholarly articles: it is a pioneering approach to the world of academia, radically improving the way scholarly research is managed. The grand vision of Frontiers is a world where all people have an equal opportunity to seek, share and generate knowledge. Frontiers provides immediate and permanent online open access to all its publications, but this alone is not enough to realize our grand goals.

Frontiers Journal Series

The Frontiers Journal Series is a multi-tier and interdisciplinary set of open-access, online journals, promising a paradigm shift from the current review, selection and dissemination processes in academic publishing. All Frontiers journals are driven by researchers for researchers; therefore, they constitute a service to the scholarly community. At the same time, the Frontiers Journal Series operates on a revolutionary invention, the tiered publishing system, initially addressing specific communities of scholars, and gradually climbing up to broader public understanding, thus serving the interests of the lay society, too.

Dedication to Quality

Each Frontiers article is a landmark of the highest quality, thanks to genuinely collaborative interactions between authors and review editors, who include some of the world's best academicians. Research must be certified by peers before entering a stream of knowledge that may eventually reach the public - and shape society; therefore, Frontiers only applies the most rigorous and unbiased reviews.
Frontiers revolutionizes research publishing by freely delivering the most outstanding research, evaluated with no bias from both the academic and social point of view. By applying the most advanced information technologies, Frontiers is catapulting scholarly publishing into a new generation.

What are Frontiers Research Topics?

Frontiers Research Topics are very popular trademarks of the Frontiers Journals Series: they are collections of at least ten articles, all centered on a particular subject. With their unique mix of varied contributions from Original Research to Review Articles, Frontiers Research Topics unify the most influential researchers, the latest key findings and historical advances in a hot research area! Find out more on how to host your own Frontiers Research Topic or contribute to one as an author by contacting the Frontiers Editorial Office: researchtopics@frontiersin.org

FC-MEDIATED ANTIBODY FUNCTIONS AND FC-RECEPTOR POLYMORPHISM

Topic Editors:
Guido Ferrari, Duke University, United States
Georgia Tomaras, Duke University, United States
R. Keith Reeves, Harvard Medical School, United States
Gabriella Scarlatti, San Raffaele Hospital (IRCCS), Italy

Citation: Ferrari, G., Tomaras, G., Reeves, R. K., Scarlatti, G., eds. (2020). Fc-Mediated Antibody Functions and Fc-Receptor Polymorphism. Lausanne: Frontiers Media SA. doi: 10.3389/978-2-88963-890-1

Table of Contents

05 ***Antibody Epitope Specificity for dsDNA Phosphate Backbone is an Intrinsic Property of the Heavy Chain Variable Germline Gene Segment Used***
Tatjana Srdic-Rajic, Heinz Kohler, Vladimir Jurisic and Radmila Metlas

12 ***Expression of a Recombinant High Affinity IgG Fc Receptor by Engineered NK Cells as a Docking Platform for Therapeutic mAbs to Target Cancer Cells***
Kristin M. Snyder, Robert Hullsiek, Hemant K. Mishra, Daniel C. Mendez, Yunfang Li, Allison Rogich, Dan S. Kaufman, Jianming Wu and Bruce Walcheck

23 ***VH1-69 Utilizing Antibodies are Capable of Mediating Non-neutralizing Fc-Mediated Effector Functions Against the Transmitted/Founder gp120***
S. Abigail Smith, Samantha L. Burton, William Kilembe, Shabir Lakhi, Etienne Karita, Matt Price, Susan Allen and Cynthia A. Derdeyn

42 ***Antibody-Dependent Cellular Phagocytosis in Antiviral Immune Responses***
Matthew Zirui Tay, Kevin Wiehe and Justin Pollara

60 ***Impact of Human FcγR Gene Polymorphisms on IgG-Triggered Cytokine Release: Critical Importance of Cell Assay Format***
Khiyam Hussain, Chantal E. Hargreaves, Tania F. Rowley, Joshua M. Sopp, Kate V. Latham, Pallavi Bhatta, John Sherington, Rona M. Cutler, David P. Humphreys, Martin J. Glennie, Jonathan C. Strefford and Mark S. Cragg

77 ***Fc-Mediated Antibody Effector Functions During Respiratory Syncytial Virus Infection and Disease***
Elisabeth A. van Erp, Willem Luytjes, Gerben Ferwerda and Puck B. van Kasteren

97 ***Induction of Fc-Mediated Effector Functions Against a Stabilized Inner Domain of HIV-1 gp120 Designed to Selectively Harbor the A32 Epitope Region***
Maria L. Visciano, Neelakshi Gohain, Rebekah Sherburn, Chiara Orlandi, Robin Flinko, Amir Dashti, George K. Lewis, William D. Tolbert and Marzena Pazgier

109 ***Mind the Gap: How Interspecies Variability in IgG and its Receptors May Complicate Comparisons of Human and Non-human Primate Effector Function***
Andrew R. Crowley and Margaret E. Ackerman

128 ***Chronic HIV-1 Infection Alters the Cellular Distribution of FcγRIIIa and the Functional Consequence of the FcγRIIIa-F158V Variant***
Ntando G. Phaahla, Ria Lassaunière, Bianca Da Costa Dias, Ziyaad Waja, Neil A. Martinson and Caroline T. Tiemessen

139 ***Effect of Fc Receptor Genetic Diversity on HIV-1 Disease Pathogenesis***
Daniel E. Geraghty, Christian W. Thorball, Jacques Fellay and Rasmi Thomas

151 ***A Case for Antibodies as Mechanistic Correlates of Immunity in Tuberculosis***
Jeffrey Y. Kawahara, Edward B. Irvine and Galit Alter

160 ***Monkeying Around: Using Non-human Primate Models to Study NK Cell Biology in HIV Infections***
Cordelia Manickam, Spandan V. Shah, Junsuke Nohara, Guido Ferrari and R. Keith Reeves

171 ***Conceptual Approaches to Modulating Antibody Effector Functions and Circulation Half-Life***
Kevin O. Saunders

191 ***FCGR3A and FCGR2A Genotypes Differentially Impact Allograft Rejection and Patients' Survival After Lung Transplant***
Pascale Paul, Pascal Pedini, Luc Lyonnet, Julie Di Cristofaro, Anderson Loundou, Mathieu Pelardy, Agnes Basire, Françoise Dignat-George, Jacques Chiaroni, Pascal Thomas, Martine Reynaud-Gaubert and Christophe Picard

207 ***Influenza and Antibody-Dependent Cellular Cytotoxicity***
Tarra A. Von Holle and M. Anthony Moody

215 ***Concurrent Exposure of Neutralizing and Non-neutralizing Epitopes on a Single HIV-1 Envelope Structure***
Krishanu Ray, Meron Mengistu, Chiara Orlandi, Marzena Pazgier, George K. Lewis and Anthony L. DeVico

228 ***Deciphering Fc-mediated Antiviral Antibody Functions in Animal Models***
Alan L. Schmaljohn, Chiara Orlandi and George K. Lewis

239 ***IgA and IgG1 Specific to Vi Polysaccharide of* Salmonella *Typhi Correlate With Protection Status in a Typhoid Fever Controlled Human Infection Model***
Lindsay C. Dahora, Celina Jin, Rachel L. Spreng, Frederick Feely, Ryan Mathura, Kelly E. Seaton, Lu Zhang, Jennifer Hill, Elizabeth Jones, S. Munir Alam, S. Moses Dennison, Andrew J. Pollard and Georgia D. Tomaras

257 ***Update on Fc-Mediated Antibody Functions Against HIV-1 Beyond Neutralization***
Bin Su, Stefania Dispinseri, Valeria Iannone, Tong Zhang, Hao Wu, Raphael Carapito, Seiamak Bahram, Gabriella Scarlatti and Christiane Moog

frontiers in Immunology

ORIGINAL RESEARCH
published: 18 October 2018
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.02378

Antibody Epitope Specificity for dsDNA Phosphate Backbone Is an Intrinsic Property of the Heavy Chain Variable Germline Gene Segment Used

Tatjana Srdic-Rajic[1], *Heinz Kohler*[2], *Vladimir Jurisic*[3] *and Radmila Metlas*[4]*

[1] Department of Experimental Pharmacology, National Cancer Research Center, Belgrade, Serbia, [2] Department of Microbiology and Immunology, University of Kentucky, Lexington, KY, United States, [3] Faculties of Medicinal Science, University of Kragujevac, Kragujevac, Serbia, [4] Vinča Institute of Nuclear Science, University of Belgrade, Belgrade, Serbia

Analysis of protein sequences by the informational spectrum method (ISM) enables characterization of their specificity according to encoded information represented with defined frequency (F). Our previous data showed that F(0.367) is characteristic for variable heavy chain (VH) domains (a combination of variable (V), diversity (D) and joining (J) gene segments) of the anti-phosphocholine (PC) T15 antibodies and mostly dependent on the CDR2 region, a site for PC phosphate group binding. Because the T15 dsDNA-reactive U4 mutant also encodes F(0.367), we hypothesized that the same frequency may also be characteristic for anti-DNA antibodies. Data obtained from an analysis of 60 spontaneously produced anti-DNA antibody VH domain sequences supported our hypothesis only for antibodies, which use V gene segment in germline configuration, such as S57(VH31), MRL-DNA22, and VH11, members of the VH1 (J558) and VH7 (S107) gene families. The important finding is that out of seven V gene segments used by spontaneous anti-DNA antibodies, F(0.367) is only expressed by the germline configuration of these three V gene segments. The data suggest that antibody specificity for the phosphate group moiety delineated as F(0.367) is the intrinsic property of the V germline gene segments used, whereas paratope/epitope interaction with antigens bearing this epitope, such as PC or dsDNA, requires corresponding antibody VH conformation that is susceptible to somatic mutation(s).

Keywords: anti-DNA antibodies, anti-PC antibodies, VH germline genes, Characterization of antibody specificity by ISM, dsDNA reactive antibodies

OPEN ACCESS

Edited by:
Guido Ferrari,
Duke University, United States

Reviewed by:
Gunnar Houen,
State Serum Institute (SSI), Denmark
Cordula M. Stover,
University of Leicester,
United Kingdom

***Correspondence:**
Radmila Metlas
metlas.r@sbb.rs

Specialty section:
This article was submitted to Molecular Innate Immunity, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology

Received: *16 August 2018*
Accepted: *25 September 2018*
Published: *18 October 2018*

Citation:
Srdic-Rajic T, Kohler H, Jurisic V and Metlas R (2018) Antibody Epitope Specificity for dsDNA Phosphate Backbone Is an Intrinsic Property of the Heavy Chain Variable Germline Gene Segment Used. Front. Immunol. 9:2378. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.02378

INTRODUCTION

Natural autoantibodies, mainly IgM whose heavy chains are encoded by unmutated VDJ genes, play a role in immune system homeostasis, provide the first line of defense against infections, and may play a role in autoimmune disease as somatically mutated IgG autoantibodies (1, 2). The highly diverse CDR3 loops are assumed as the key determinant of specificity in antigen recognition, but in nonsomatically mutated antibodies, binding sites may consist of germline-encoded CDR1 and CDR2 sequences dominating in a number of contacts, whereas light chains play a subsidiary role to heavy chains (3, 4). It was also suggested that in contrast to antigen specificity determined by CDR3 (5),

germline-encoded CDR1 and CDR2 sequences accommodate binding to a number of different unrelated antigens (6). The analyses also showed that despite the potential to generate almost unlimited variability, the CDR regions exhibit a small number of core main chain conformations termed "canonical structures" (7). In particular, a limited repertoire of the main chain adopted conformations dependent on the loop length and a few key conserved residues at defined positions (8) has been assigned to CDR1 and CDR2 regions (9).

One of the best studied primary antibody responses to phosphocholine (PC) is T15 antibody expressing heavy and light chain products of the T15(V1) and Vk22 germline genes in mice (10–13). It is of interest that in ontogeny, T15 predominant clonotypes appear about 1 week after birth (14), whereas PC-specific responses or precursors were detected as early as 1 day after birth (15). An important finding is that the heavy chains of T15 and other PC binding proteins bearing M603 and M167 idiotypic determinants are derived from a single germline T15(V1) gene segment and three light chains, i.e., T15 (VK22), M603 (VK8), and M167 (VK24) (13, 16, 17).

Crystallography studies of the anti-PC binding antibody provide evidence for the PC contact residues, revealing that favorable interaction of the choline moiety is with CDR1 Glu-35, whereas specific interactions occur between the phosphate group and charged groups such as CDR2 Arg-52 that produce a large favorable electrostatic interaction and Lys-54 that helps neutralize the PC negative charge (18, 19). The data obtained from mutagenesis experiments conferred importance of CDR2 Arg-52 as a site for interaction with the PC phosphate group (20), whereas interaction with the carrier involves different sites (21). The role of CDR2 H52-H56 motif in nucleic acid binding was also demonstrated by analyses of monoclonal autoantibodies derived from lupus-prone mice (22).

On the other hand, T15 CDR2 sequence VH50-60 region, a part of the self-binding domain (homophilicity), enhances antibody potency (23). The CDR2 of T15 antibody, according to our view, may also have an immunoregulatory role in the ontogeny of natural Tregs and consequently in the control of T15 and some anti-DNA antibody diversification (24).

Anti-DNA antibodies recognize a considerable number of different epitopes, and their exact nature is only partially known (25). Anti-dsDNA antibodies may react with linear and conformational determinants exposed on the double helix of DNA and cross-react with different antigens (26). For example, a similar arrangement of phosphate groups in the DNA sugar-phosphate backbone and phospholipids may explain cross-reactivity (27).

Sequence analysis of anti-dsDNA antibodies from autoimmune mice revealed a high frequency of mutations and the presence of basic amino acids in the CDRs, such as Arg and Lys and polar Asn with the potential to interact with structures within dsDNA (28–31) or, when gained during affinity maturation, be critical for CDR3 region interaction with histone-DNA complex (32–34). This complex according to a hapten-carrier-like model, may initiate production of both anti-dsDNA and other anti-nucleosome antibodies [reviewed in (35)].

In prior studies, we have shown that antibody VH domains of anti-PC T15 and T15 dsDNA binding somatic mutant, U4 (13), encode characteristic sequence information represented with F(0.367) (36). In this report, we extended this finding by showing that F(0.367) is also expressed by several anti-DNA antibody VH domains that use V germline or somatically mutated S57(VH31), MRL-DNA22, and VH11 gene segments of the VH1 (J558) and VH7 (S107) gene families, as well as that protein sequences of these germline genes in addition to T15(V1) encode an intrinsic epitope specificity represented by F(0.367). Obtained data suggests that as long as the frequency is expressed by an antibody VH domain (a) the corresponding conformation for paratope/epitope interaction might be preserved despite somatic mutations and (b) because of somatic mutation(s), interaction with another antigen bearing the same epitope might be achieved and vice versa, loss of the characteristic frequency may cause achievement of a new epitope specificity.

METHOD

The sequence analysis was performed by applying the informational spectrum method (ISM). The physicomathematical basis of ISM was described in detail elsewhere (37), and here, we will only point the basic steps involved by the method. According to the ISM approach, also denoted as resonant recognition model (RRM) (38), protein sequences are transformed into signals by assignment of numerical values of each amino acid. These values correspond to electron–ion interaction potential (39) determining electronic properties of amino acids that are responsible for their intermolecular interactions (40–43). The signal obtained is decomposed in periodical function by Fourier transformation. The result is a series of frequencies and their amplitudes (the informational spectrum, IS). Detailed steps (43) that precede obtaining the IS by the ISM are explained in the **Supplementary Information**. The obtained frequencies correspond to the distribution of structural motifs with defined physicochemical characteristics determining the biological function of the sequence. When comparing proteins that share the same biological function, the technique allows detection of code/frequency pairs in IS, which are specific for their common biological properties. This common information is represented by characteristic peaks in the cross-spectrum (CIS) of proteins. The method is insensitive to the location of the motifs and, thus, does not require the previous alignment of the sequence. A measure of similarity for each peak is a signal-to-noise ratio (S/N), which represents a ratio between signal intensity at one particular IS frequency and the mean value of the whole spectrum which depends on the number of the sequences used in the analysis.

Abbreviations: CDR, Hypervariable region; CIS, Cross-spectral analysis; EIIP, Electron-ion interaction potential; ISM, Informational spectrum method; IS, Informational spectrum; RRM, Resonant recognition model; S/N, Signal-to-noise ratio; VH, Variable heavy chain.

RESULTS

Our previous data showed that VH domain of the anti-PC T15 idiotype antibody that uses an unmutated copy of the V germline gene T15(V1) (16, 17), as well as anti-PC binding antibodies of different idiotypes, encode information represented with F(0.367) in short F(0.37) (36). We also showed that F(0.37), is independent of a single substitution-glutamic acid to alanine, at position 35 in the T15 antibody CDR1 region, causing reactivity acquisition for dsDNA (13) but depends on mutations in CDR2 region (36). In this report, seven V germline gene amino acid sequences used by spontaneous anti-DNA antibodies (31) were analyzed; of which, only three showed F(0.367) in individual spectra such as S57(VH31) (30), MRL-DNA22 (44) germline gene segments members of the VH1(J558) gene family, and VH11 (45) member of the VH7(S107) gene family. The CIS of the T15(V1), S57(VH31), MRL-DNA22, and VH11 V germline gene segment amino acid sequences is presented in **Figure 1A**, revealing a peak at F(0.367). The T15(V1) V germline gene segment from the VH7(S107) gene family is introduced because VH domains of antibodies that express F(0.367), as we have shown previously (36), use this V gene segment in germline configuration (13, 16, 17). The CIS of the four V germline gene segments used by anti-DNA antibodies (31), such as BWDNA16, 2F2, BWDNA7, and VH283, which do not express F(0.367) is presented in **Supplementary Table 1**, revealing that characteristic peak is not at F(0.367).

In this report, the analysis was performed on 60 spontaneous anti-DNA VH domain sequences (31); of which, 20 are encoded by the V gene segments that express F(0.367). However, F(0.367) expression is limited, because only six antibody VH domains retained this characteristic (30%). Thus, we found that F(0.367) is expressed by IgG 74.c2 out of three individually analyzed VH domains of anti-DNA antibodies that use VH11 V gene segment or by IgG 17s-c2 out of nine analyzed anti-DNA antibodies that use S57(VH31) as well as IgG 17s.83, IgG 17s-c3, IgM 111.185, and IgM 165.27 out of eight analyzed VH domains encoded by MRL-DNA22 V gene segment. The CIS of the VH domains of these antibodies is shown in **Figure 1B** revealing a dominant peak at F(0.367). It might be concluded that some anti-DNA antibodies encoded by these V gene segments have lost F(0.367) as the result of somatic mutations.

In **Figure 1C**, CIS of VH domains for 54 anti-DNA VH domains is shown which, in an individual spectrum, does not express F(0.367) and thus do not encode epitope specificity for phosphate groups of dsDNA backbone. It should be emphasized that a peak at F(0.023) with dominant S/N value is detected for the V gene segments (**Figure 1A**), whereas it is a unique peak in the CIS (**Figure 1C**) obtained for anti-DNA VH domains, whose individual sequences do not express F(0.367) a feature relevant for the specificity here analyzed. An analysis of antibodies reactive with ssDNA, Z-DNA, and chromatin further confirms the connection between F(0.367) expression and antibody specificity for the phosphate group of B DNA backbone as shown in **Supplementary Figures 1B–D**.

It is of interest to note that comparison of the V gene segments and VH domain contribution to S/N value for the peak at F(0.367) revealed an insignificant CDR3 region contribution (**Table 1**).

We further made an attempt to determine peptide position in the V gene segment sequences mostly contributing to the F(0.367) expression. The data obtained showed that for T15(V1), VH11(VH7), S57[VH31(VH1)], and MRL-DNA22(VH1) V germline gene segments, these peptides involve residues at positions 35–66, 36–67, 46–65, and 46–77, respectively. The most important finding is that selected peptides include CDR2 regions that are abundant in basic residues (**Table 2**), indicating an CDR2 role in both F(0.367) expression and interaction with an antigenic determinant shared by the PC hapten and dsDNA.

The data obtained from the VH domains analysis of two preimmune natural polyreactive autoantibodies, E7 and D23 (46), which react with antigens such as DNA, myosin, actin, tubulin, spectrin, and trinitrophenol, revealed that F(0.367) was not expressed (**Figure 1D**), meaning that epitope specificity of these antibodies differs from dsDNA-reactive anti-DNA antibodies here analyzed. The CDR2 regions of these autoantibodies are in germline configuration and with a reduced number of basic residues.

DISCUSSION

Previously, using ISM for protein sequence analysis (37), we showed that antibody VH domains of T15 PC binding antibody and U4 dsDNA binding antibody encode information determining sequence specificity represented with characteristic frequency F(0.367), in short F(0.37) (36). We also showed that this frequency is dependent on the type of residues in the CDR2 region and insensitive to a residue substitution in CDR1 (36) of the T15 U4 mutant (13). In this report, we extend these findings by showing that F(0.367) is not only expressed by VH domains of T15 and some spontaneous anti-DNA antibodies from autoimmune mice but is found to be also intrinsic for the V germline gene segments used by these antibodies.

It has been shown that anti-PC binding antibody VH encoded by T15(V1) V gene segment of the VH7(S107) germline gene family (13, 16, 17) form strong interactions between the PC phosphate group and charged residues in the CDR2 region, such as Arg-52 and Lys-54, whereas CDR1 region Glu-35 is involved in choline binding (17, 18). Therefore, F(0.367) expressed by antibodies such as T15, T15 somatic mutant U4, and some anti-DNA antibodies may characterize epitope specificity, that is, specificity for phosphate groups present on different antigens such as PC hapten and dsDNA. Furthermore, the data presented showed that expression of the $S/N_{F(0.367)}$ mostly depends on antibody V gene segments, and thus, a contribution of the CDR3 regions is insignificant (**Table 1**). It should be emphasized that IgG V gene segments of anti-DNA antibodies expressing F(0.367) can be close to germline configuration such as antibodies 74.c2 and 17s.83 encoded by the V gene segment VH11 of the VH7 (S107) gene family and MRL-DNA22 of the gene family VH1 (J558), respectively (31), suggesting that some mutations are tolerable as they do not affect the specificity delineated by the F(0.367). However, they differed in CDR3 regions (31), and their

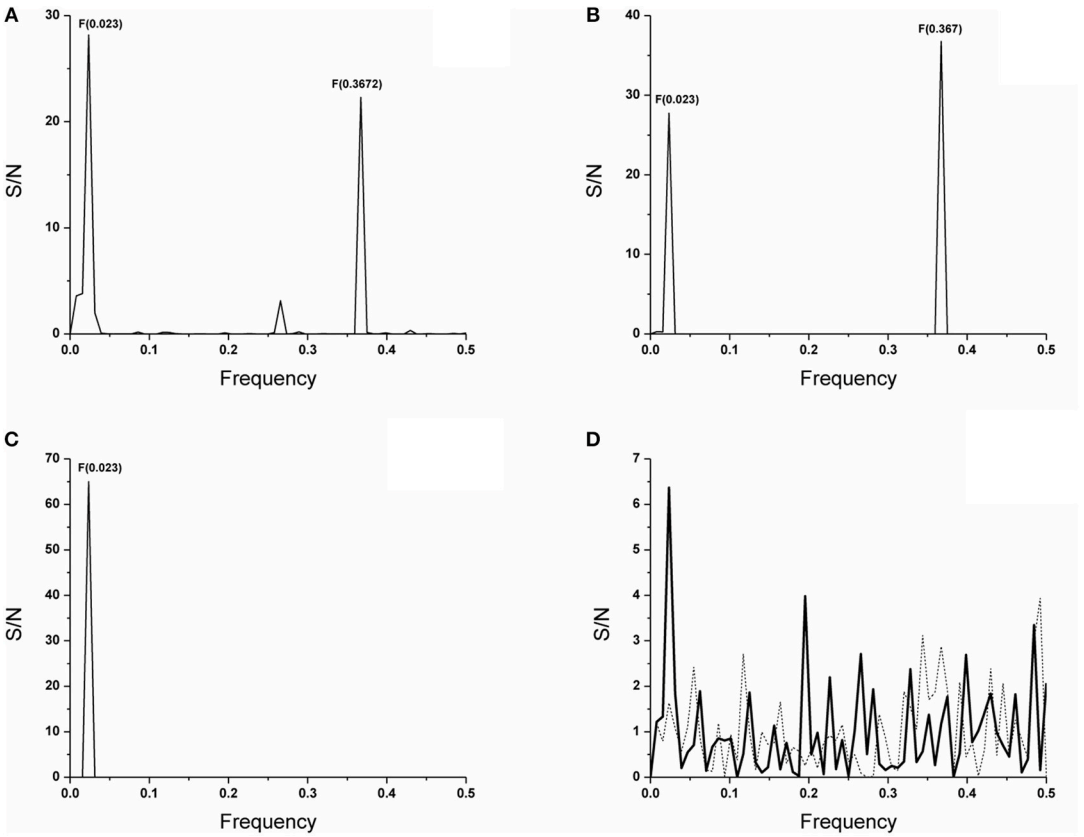


FIGURE 1 | ISM analysis of the V germline genes and antibody VH domain protein sequences. The CIS of the V germline genes segments of VH1, VH11, S57(VH31) and MRL-DNA22 which shows characteristic F(0.367) relevant for the biological activity here followed and activity irrelevant F(0.023) **(A)**. The CIS of the VH domains of antibodies 74.c2 encoded by the V gene segment VH11, a member of the VH7 (S107) gene family, 17s-c2 encoded by the V gene segment S57(VH31) and 17s.83, 17s-c3, 111.185 and 165.27 encoded by V gene segment MRL-DNA22 of the VH1 (J558) gene family **(B)**. CIS of all anti-DNA antibodies which in individual spectrum does not express F(0.367) **(C)**. The IS of the preimmune natural polyreactive autoantibodies which use V gene segments from VH2 (Q52) gene family such as D23 VH domain (___) and superimposed IS of the E7 VH domain (……) **(D)**. The abscissa represents the frequencies from the Fourier transform of the sequence of electron-ion interaction potential (EIIP). The lowest frequency is 0.0 and the highest is 0.5. The ordinate represents the signal to noise ratio (S/N) corresponding to each frequency component in the informational spectrum (IS).

TABLE 1 | Contribution of antibody VH domains and corresponding V gene segments to $S/N_{F(0.367)}$.

Antibodies	Antibody isotype	V germline gene segment used	VH gene family	$S/N_{F(0.367)}$	
				Domains	V gene segments
T15	IgG	T15(V1)	VH7 (S107)*	3.727	3.544
U4	IgG	T15(V1)	VH7 (S107)*	3.950	3.821
74.c2	IgG	VH11	VH7 (S107)*	5.622	5.304
17s-c2	IgG	S57(VH31)	VH1 (J558)*	4.148	4.008
17s.83	IgG	DNA22	VH1 (J558)*	3.789	3.383
17s-c3	IgG	DNA22	VH1 (J558)*	4.434	3.944
111.185	IgM	DNA22	VH1 (J558)*	3.963	3.623
165.27	IgM	DNA22	VH1 (J558)*	3.731	3.259

**Old nomenclature for VH gene families is given in parenthesis.*

contribution to F(0.367) expression is insignificant (**Table 1**), whereas IgM 111.185 (MRL-DNA22) anti-DNA antibody (31) retains V gene segment in germline configuration. The data presented may be in accord with the idea that V germline gene segments prone to bind a dsDNA epitope should be less dependent on CDR3 regions (48).

Anti-dsDNA antibodies derived from autoimmune mouse models revealed that they have undergone somatic mutations suggesting their role in achievement of the corresponding conformation. Thus, an important finding obtained from sequence analysis showed the presence of basic amino acids Arg, Lys, and His and, perhaps, the uncharged Asn in CDRs (28–31),

TABLE 2 | Sequence alignment for CDR2 regions of the V gene segments.

V gene segments	Germline configuration	Antibody	CDR2 region amino acid sequence																		
						abc															
MRL-DNA22	+		N	I	Y	P			G	S	S	S	T	**N**	Y	**N**	E	**K**	F	**K**	S
MRL-DNA22		111.185	–	–	–	–			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
MRL-DNA22		165.27	–	–	–	–			–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
MRL-DNA22		17s.83	N	–	–	–			–	–	I	I	–	**H**	F	**N**	–	**K**	–	**K**	**N**
MRL-DNA22		17s-c3	E	–	–	–			**R**	–	G	**N**	I	Y	Y	**N**	–	**K**	–	**K**	G
						abc															
S57(VH31)	+		W	I	Y	S			G	S	G	**N**	T	**K**	Y	**N**	E	**K**	F	**K**	D
S57(VH31)		17s-c2	–	–	–	P			–	–	–	**N**	–	**K**	–	**N**	–	**K**	–	**K**	–
VH11	+		L	I	**R**	**N**	**K**	A	**N**	G	Y	T	T	E	Y	S	A	S	V	**K**	G
VH11		74-c2	–	–	**R**	**N**	**K**	–	**N**	**D**	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	**K**	–
						a	b	c													
T15(V1)	+		**A**	**S**	**R**	**N**	**K**	**A**	**N**	**D**	**Y**	**T**	**T**	**E**	**Y**	**S**	**A**	**S**	**V**	**K**	**G**
T15(V1)		T15	–	–	**R**	**N**	**K**	–	**N**	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	**K**	–
T15(V1)		U4	–	–	**R**	**N**	**K**	–	**N**	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	**K**	–
VH1210.7	+		Y	I	S	Y	S	G	S	T	Y	Y	**N**	P	S	L	**K**	S			
VH1210.7		E7	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–			
VH101	+		V	I	W	S	G	G	S	T	D	Y	**N**	A	A	F	I	S			
VH101		D23	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–			

The CDR2 region sequences (aa 50-65) for V germline genes and epitope specific anti-DNA antibodies shown in the single letter code were taken from Tillman et al. (31). Origin of these V germline gene sequences are: S57(VH31) (30), MRL-DNA22 (44), VH11 (45). Sequences for T15(V1), as well as E7 and D23 antibodies are taken from Diamond and Scharff (13), Crews et al. (16), Rudikoff et al. (17), and Baccala et al. (46) respectively. Within the compared antibody V gene segments dashes indicate identity with the reference germline gene sequences, while basic residues are shown in bold. Numbering is according to Kabat et al. (47).

whereas Arg in the CDR3 has an important contribution in DNA specificity for DNA-histone complexes (32–34). However, cationic amino acids were not necessary for immune deposit formation (49). Thus, another goal of this study was to examine the role of the CDR2 regions in F(0.367) expression and in particular the content of basic residues in the CDR2 regions of V germline genes used by anti-DNA antibodies. The data obtained showed that peptides within sequences mostly contributing to F(0.367) expression cover residues at position 35–66 for T15(V1), 36–67 for VH11, 46–65 for S57(VH31), and 46–77 for MRL-DNA22. It should be emphasized that these peptide sequences include the CDR2 region enriched in basic residues of T15(V1), VH11, S57(VH31), and MRL-DNA22 germline genes and are also present in CDR2 regions of antibody VH domains (**Table 2**). It can be seen that type and positions of the basic residues for CDR2 of the T15(V1) and VH11 V germline gene segments and anti-DNA antibody V gene segments are the same and S57(VH31) differs slightly. The MRL-DNA22 anti-DNA IgM isotypes are close to germline configuration, whereas IgG differs in the type and position of basic residues (**Table 2**). The CDR2 regions of natural polyreactive autoantibodies are in germline configuration and have one or two basic residues, confirming that both the number and position in CDR2 regions are important for antibody epitope specificity.

The findings presented indicate that antibody specificity for an antigenic determinant (epitope) in the context of different antigens might be identified by the ISM approach (37).

The method applied made a possible correlation between primary antibody structure and specificity delineated by a characteristic frequency.

The main conclusion is that antibody VH domain sequences can encode ability expressed as characteristic frequency, to interact with non-protein structures of various molecules after achievement of the corresponding conformation by somatic mutations.

AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

TS-R and RM developed the study design, analyzed the data and wrote the paper. HK and VJ revised the paper.

FUNDING

This work was supported by a grant from the Ministry of Education, Science and Technological Development of the Republic of Serbia (Grant No. 1 75056).

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors express their gratitude to Dr V. Veljkovic for useful consultation.

SUPPLEMENTARY MATERIAL

The Supplementary Material for this article can be found online at: https://www.frontiersin.org/articles/10.3389/fimmu.2018.02378/full#supplementary-material

REFERENCES

1. Nguyen TT, Baumgarth N. Natural IgM and the development of B cell-mediated Autoimmune diseases. *Crit Rev Immunol* (2016) 36:163–77.doi: 10.1615/CritRevImmunol.2016018175
2. Holodick NE, Rodríguez-Zhurbenko N, Hernández AM. Defining natural antibodies. *Front Immunol.* (2017) 26:872. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2017.00872
3. Ohno S, Mori N, Matsunaga T. Antigen-binding specificities of antibodies are primarily determined by seven residues of VH. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (1985) 82:2945–9.
4. Liang Z, Chang S, Youn MS, Mohan C. Molecular hallmarks of anti-chromatin antibodies associated with the lupus susceptibility locus, Sle1. *Mol Immunol.* (2009) 46:2671–81. doi: 10.1016/j.molimm.2008.12.034
5. Xu J, Davis M: Diversity in the CDR3 region of VH is sufficient for most antibody specificities. *Immunity* (2000) 13:37–45. doi: 10.1002/jmr.2592
6. Willis JR, Briney BS, DeLuca SL, Crowe JE Jr., Meiler J. Human germline antibody gene segments encode polyspecific antibodies. *PLoS Comput Biol*. (2013) 9:e1003045. doi: 10.1371/journal.pcbi.1003045
7. Chothia C, Lesk A. Canonical structures for the hypervariable regions o immunoglobulins. *J Mol Biol.* (1987) 196:901–17.
8. Al-Lazikani B, Lesk AM, Chothia C. Standard conformations for the canonical structures of immunoglobulins. *J Mol Biol.* (1997) 273:927–48. doi: 10.1006/jmbi.1997.1354
9. Chothia C, Lesk AM, Gherardi E, Tomlinson IM, Walter G, Marks JD, et al. Structural repertoire of the human VH segments. *J Mol Biol.* (1992) 227:799–817.
10. Köhler H. The response to phosphorylcholine. Dissecting an immune response. *Trans Rev*. (1975) 27:24–56.
11. Lieberman RM, Potter EB, Mushinski W, Humphrey Jr, Rudikoff S. Genetics of a new IgVH(T15 idiotype) marker in the mouse regulating natural antibody to phosphorylcholine. *J Exp Med* (1974) 139:983–1001.
12. Claflin JL, Lieberman R, Davie JM. Clonal nature of the immune response to phosphorylcholine. I. Specificity, class, and idiotype of phosphorylcholine-binding receptors on lymphoid cells. *J Exp Med.* (1974) 139:58–73.
13. Diamond B, Scharff MD. Somatic mutation of the T15 heavy chain gives rise to an antibody with autoantibody specificity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (1984) 81:5841–4.
14. Sigal NH, Pickard AR, Metcalf ES, Gearhart PJ, Klinman NR. Expression of phosphorylcholine-specific B cells during murine development. *J Exp Med*. (1977) 146:933–48.
15. Fung J, Kohler H. Late clonal selection and expansion of the TEPC-15 germ-line specificity. *J Exp Med*. (1980) 152:1262–73.
16. Crews S, Griffin J, Huang H, Calame K, Hood L. A single VH gene segment encodes the immune response to phosphorylcholine: somatic mutation is correlated with the class of the antibody. *Cell* (1981) 25:59–66.
17. Rudikoff S, Potter M. Size differences among immunoglobulin heavy chains from phosphorylcholine-binding proteins. *Proa Natl Acad Sci USA*. (1976) 73:2109–12.
18. Segal DM, Padlan EA, Cohen GH, Rudikoff S, Potter M, Davies DR. The three dimensional structure of a phosphorylcholine-binding mouse immunoglobulin Fab and the nature of the antigen binding site. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (1974) 71:4298–302.
19. Padlan EA, Davies DR, Rudikoff S, Potter M. Structural basis for the specificity of phosphorylcholine-binding immunoglobulins. *Immunochemistry* (1976) 13:945–9.
20. Chen C, Roberts VA, Rittenberg MB. Generation and analysis of random point mutations in an antibody CDR2 sequence: many mutated antibodies lose their ability to bind antigen. *J Exp Med.* (1992) 176:855–66.
21. Andres CM, Maddalena A, Hudak S, Young NM, Claflin JL. Anti-phosphocholine hybridoma antibodies. II. Functional analysis of binding sites within three antibody families. *J Exp Med.* (1981) 154:1584–98.
22. Chang S, Yang L, Moon YM, Cho YG, Min SY, Kim TJ, et al. Anti-nuclear antibody reactivity in lupus may be partly hard-wired into the primary b-cell repertoire. *Mol Immunol.* (2009) 46:3420–6. doi: 10.1016/j.molimm.2009.07.014
23. Kohler H, Bayry J, Kaveri SV. The homophilic domain – an immunological archetype. *Front Immunol.* (2016) 7:106–11. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2016.00106
24. Metlas R, Srdic-Rajic T, Kohler H. Cooperation of intrathymic T15 idiotype-bearing B and complementary T cells in ontogeny of natural Treg cells involved in establishment of T15 clonal dominance. *Immunol Lett.* (2018) 200:52–4. doi: 10.1016/j.imlet.2018.07.002
25. Isenberg DA, Ehrenstein MR, Longhurst C, Kalsi JK. The origin, sequence, structure, and consequences of developing anti-DNA antibodies. A human perspective. *Arthritis Rheum.* (1994) 37:169–80.
26. Jang YJ, Stollar BD. Anti-DNA antibodies: aspects of structure and pathogenicity. *Cell Mol Life Sci.* (2003) 60:309–20.
27. Lafer EM, Rauch J, Andrzejewski JR, Mudd D, Furie B, Furie B, et al. Polyspecific monoclonal lupus autoantibodies reactive with both polynucleotides and phospholipids. *J Exp Med*. (1981) 153:897–909.
28. Radic MZ, Weigert M. Genetic and structural evidence for antigen selection of anti-DNA antibodies. *Annu Rev Immunol*. (1994) 12:487–520.
29. Eilat D, Webster DM, Rees AR: V region sequences of antiDNA and anti-RNA autoantibodies from NZB/NZW F1 mice. *J Immunol.* (1988) 141:1745–53.
30. Shlomchik M, Mascelli M, Shan H, Radic MZ, Pisetsky D, Marshak-Rothstein A, et al. Anti- DNA antibodies from autoimmune mice arise by clonal expansion and somatic mutation. *J Exp Med*. (1990) 171:265–92.
31. Tillman DM, Jou NT, Hill RJ, Marion TN. Both IgM and IgG anti-DNA antibodies are the products of clonally selective B cell stimulation in (NZB x NZW)F1 mice. *J Exp Med*. (1992) 176: 761–779.
32. Detanico T, Guo W, Wysocki LJ. Predominant role for activation-induced cytidine deaminase in generating IgG anti-nucleosomal antibodies of murine SLE. *J Autoimmun*. (2015) 58:67–77. doi: 10.1016/j.jaut.2015.01.006
33. Guth AM, Zhang X, Smith D, Detanico T, Wysocki LJ. Chromatin specificity of anti-doublestranded DNA antibodies and a role for Arg residues in the third complementarity-determining region of the heavy chain. *J Immunol.* (2003) 171:6260–6. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.171.11.6260
34. Li Z, Schettino EW, Padlan EA, Ikematsu H, Casali P. Structure function analysis of a lupus anti-DNA autoantibody: central role of the heavy chain complementarity-determining region 3 Arg in binding of double- and single-stranded DNA. *Eur J Immunol*. (2000) 30:2015–26.doi: 10.1002/1521-4141(200007)30:7<2015::AID-IMMU2015>3.0.CO;2-5
35. Rekvig OP. The anti-DNA antibody: origin and impact, dogmas and controversies. *Nat Rev Rheumatol*. (2015) 11:530–40. doi: 10.1038/nrrheum.2015.69
36. Srdic-Rajic T, Kekovic G, Davidovic DM, Metlas R. Phosphocholine-binding antibody activities are hierarchically encoded in the sequence of the heavy-chain variable region: dominance of self-association activity in the T15 idiotype. *Int Immunol* (2013) 25:345–52. doi: 10.1093/intimm/dxs156
37. Veljković V, Cosić I, Dimitrijević B, Lalović D. Is it possible to analyze DNA and protein sequence by the method of digital signal processing? *IEEE Trans BME* (1985) 32:337-41.
38. Cosic I. Macromolecular bioactivity: is it Resonant Interaction between Molecules? – Theory and Applications. *IEEE Trans BME* (1994) 41:1101–14.
39. Veljkovic V, Slavic I. Simple general-model pseudopotential. *Phys Rev Let*. (1972) 29:105–6.
40. Veljkovic V. *Theoretical Approach to Preselection of Cancerogens and Chemical Carcinogenesis.* New York, NY: Gordon and Breach (1980).
41. Veljkovic V, Cosic I. A Novel Method of Protein Analysis for Prediction of Biological Function: Application to Tumor Toxins. *Cancer Biochem. Biophys* (1987) 9:139–48.
42. Veljkovic V, Metlas R. Identification of nanopeptide from HTLV3., LAV and ARV-2 envelope gp120 determining binding to T4 cell surface protein. *Cancer Biochem Biophys.* (1988) 10:91–106.
43. Veljkovic N, Glisic S, Prljic J, Perovic V, Botta M, Veljkovic V. Discovery of new therapeutic targets by the informational spectrum method. *Curr Protein Pep Sci*. (2008) 9:493–506. doi: 10.2174/138920308785915245
44. Kofler, R, Strohal R, Balderas RS, Johnson ME, Noonan DJ, Duchosal MA, et al. Immunoglobulin k light chain variable region complex organization and immunoglobulin genesencoding anti-DNA autoantibodies in lupus mice. *J Clin Invest*. (1988) 82:852–60.
45. Clarke SH, Claflin JL, Rudikoff S. Polymorphisms in immunoglobulin heavy chains suggesting gene conversion. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (1982) 79:3280–4.
46. Baccala R, Quang TV, Gilbert M, Ternynck T, Avrameas S. Two murine natural polyreactive autoantibodies are encoded by nonmutated germ-line genes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (1989) 86: 4624–8

47. Kabat EA, Wu TT, Reid-Miller M, Perry HM, Gottesman KS. *Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest*. Bethesda, MD: U.S. Government Printing Office (1987).
48. Maranhão AQ, Costa MBW, Guedes L, Moraes-Vieira PM, Raiol T, Brigido MM. A mouse variable gene fragment binds to DNA independently of the BCR context: a possible role for immature B-cell repertoire establishment. *PLoS ONE* (2013) 8:e72625. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0072625
49. Katz MS, Foster MH, Madaio MP. Independently derived murine glomerular immune deposit-forming anti-DNA antibodies are encoded by near-identical VH gene sequences. *J Clin Invest*. (1993) 91:402–8.

Conflict of Interest Statement: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

ORIGINAL RESEARCH
published: 06 December 2018
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.02873

Expression of a Recombinant High Affinity IgG Fc Receptor by Engineered NK Cells as a Docking Platform for Therapeutic mAbs to Target Cancer Cells

Kristin M. Snyder[1], Robert Hullsiek[1], Hemant K. Mishra[1], Daniel C. Mendez[1], Yunfang Li[1], Allison Rogich[1], Dan S. Kaufman[2], Jianming Wu[1] and Bruce Walcheck[1]**

[1] Department of Veterinary and Biomedical Sciences, University of Minnesota, St. Paul, MN, United States, [2] Department of Medicine, University of California, San Diego, San Diego, CA, United States

OPEN ACCESS

Edited by:
R. Keith Reeves,
Harvard Medical School,
United States

Reviewed by:
Gunnur Deniz,
Istanbul University, Turkey
Ahmed Lasfar,
Rutgers University, The State University of New Jersey,
United States

***Correspondence:**
Jianming Wu
jmwu@umn.edu
Bruce Walcheck
walch003@umn.edu

Specialty section:
This article was submitted to Molecular Innate Immunity, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology

Received: 27 September 2018
Accepted: 22 November 2018
Published: 06 December 2018

Citation:
Snyder KM, Hullsiek R, Mishra HK, Mendez DC, Li Y, Rogich A, Kaufman DS, Wu J and Walcheck B (2018) Expression of a Recombinant High Affinity IgG Fc Receptor by Engineered NK Cells as a Docking Platform for Therapeutic mAbs to Target Cancer Cells. Front. Immunol. 9:2873. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.02873

Anti-tumor mAbs are the most widely used and characterized cancer immunotherapy. Despite having a significant impact on some malignancies, most cancer patients respond poorly or develop resistance to this therapy. A known mechanism of action of these therapeutic mAbs is antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC), a key effector function of human NK cells. CD16A on human NK cells has an exclusive role in binding to tumor-bound IgG antibodies. Though CD16A is a potent activating receptor, it is also a low affinity IgG Fc receptor (FcγR) that undergoes a rapid downregulation in expression by a proteolytic process involving ADAM17 upon NK cell activation. These regulatory processes are likely to limit the efficacy of tumor-targeting therapeutic mAbs in the tumor environment. We sought to enhance NK cell binding to anti-tumor mAbs by engineering these cells with a recombinant FcγR consisting of the extracellular region of CD64, the highest affinity FcγR expressed by leukocytes, and the transmembrane and cytoplasmic regions of CD16A. This novel recombinant FcγR (CD64/16A) was expressed in the human NK cell line NK92 and in induced pluripotent stem cells from which primary NK cells were derived. CD64/16A lacked the ADAM17 cleavage region in CD16A and it was not rapidly downregulated in expression following NK cell activation during ADCC. CD64/16A on NK cells facilitated conjugation to antibody-treated tumor cells, ADCC, and cytokine production, demonstrating functional activity by its two components. Unlike NK cells expressing CD16A, CD64/16A captured soluble therapeutic mAbs and the modified NK cells mediated tumor cell killing. Hence, CD64/16A could potentially be used as a docking platform on engineered NK cells for therapeutic mAbs and IgG Fc chimeric proteins, allowing for switchable targeting elements and a novel cancer cellular therapy.

Keywords: FcR, ADCC, NK cell, immunotherapy, antibody

INTRODUCTION

Natural killer (NK) cells are cytotoxic lymphocytes of the innate immune system that target stressed, infected, and neoplastic cells (1). In contrast to the diverse array of receptors involved in natural cytotoxicity, human NK cells mediate ADCC exclusively through the IgG Fc receptor CD16A (FcγRIIIA) (2–4). This is a potent activating receptor and its signal transduction involves the association of the transmembrane and cytoplasmic regions of CD16A with FcRγ and/or CD3ζ (4–9). Unlike other activating receptors expressed by NK cells, the cell surface levels of CD16A undergo a rapid downregulation upon NK cell activation during ADCC and by other stimuli (10–14). CD16A downregulation also occurs in the tumor environment of patients and contributes to NK cell dysfunction (15–19). A disintegrin and metalloproteinase-17 (ADAM17) expressed by NK cells plays a key role in its downregulation by cleaving CD16A in a *cis* manner at a specific location proximal to the cell membrane upon NK cell activation (13, 14, 20).

There are two allelic variants of CD16A that have either a phenylalanine or valine residue at position 176 (position 158 if amino acid enumeration does not include the signal sequence). The CD16A-176V variant has a higher affinity for IgG (21, 22), but CD16A-176F is the dominant allele in humans (23). Clinical analyses have revealed a positive correlation between the therapeutic efficacy of tumor-targeting therapeutic mAbs and CD16A binding affinity. Patients homozygous for the CD16A valine variant (CD16A-V/V) had an improved clinical outcome after treatment with anti-tumor mAbs compared to those who were either heterozygous (CD16A-V/F) or homozygous (CD16A-F/F) for the lower affinity FcγRIIIA isoform [as reviewed in Wang et al. (4)]. These findings establish that increasing the binding affinity of CD16A for anti-tumor mAbs may lead to improved cancer cell killing.

CD64 (FcγR1) binds to monomeric IgG with 2–3 orders of magnitude higher affinity than CD16A (24–26). CD64 recognizes the same IgG isotypes as CD16A and is expressed by myeloid cells, including monocytes, macrophages, and activated neutrophils, but not NK cells (24, 26). We generated the novel recombinant receptor CD64/16A that consists of the extracellular region of human CD64 for high affinity antibody binding, and the transmembrane and intracellular regions of human CD16A for mediating NK cell signal transduction. CD64/16A also lacked the membrane proximal ADAM17 cleavage site found in CD16A. In this study, we stably expressed CD64/16A in NK92 cells, a cytotoxic human NK cell line that lacks endogenous FcγRs (27), and in induced pluripotent stem cells (iPSCs) that were then differentiated into primary NK cells. We show that in these two NK cell platforms, this novel recombinant FcγR is functional and can capture soluble monomeric IgG therapeutic mAbs that provide targeting elements for tumor cell ADCC.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Antibodies

All mAbs to human hematopoietic and leukocyte phenotypic markers are described in **Table 1**. All isotype-matched negative control mAbs were purchased from BioLegend (San Diego, CA). APC-conjugated $F(ab')_2$ donkey anti-human or goat anti-mouse IgG (H+L) were purchased from Jackson ImmunoResearch Laboratories (West Grove, PA). The human IgG1 mAbs trastuzumab/Herceptin and rituximab/Rituxan, manufactured by Genentech (South San Francisco, CA), and cetuximab/Erbitux, manufactured by Bristol-Myers Squibb (Lawrence, NJ), were purchased through the University of Minnesota Boynton Pharmacy. Recombinant human L-selectin/IgG1 Fc chimera was purchased from R&D Systems (Minneapolis, MN).

TABLE 1 | Antibodies.

Antigen	Clone	Fluorophore	Company
CD56	HCD56	PE-CY7	BioLegend, San Diego, CA
CD3	HIT3a	PE	BioLegend
CD16	3G8	APC	BioLegend
CD16	3G8	none	Ancell, Bayport, MN
CD7	CD7-6B7	PE/CY5	BioLegend
CD336/NKp44	P44-8	APC	BioLegend
CD335/NKp46	9E2	APC	BioLegend
CD159a/NKG2A	Z199	APC	Beckman Coulter, Brea, CA
CD314/NKG2D	1D11	PerCP/Cy5.5	BioLegend
CD158a/KIR2DL1	HP-MA4	PE	BioLegend
CD158b1/KIR2DL2/L3	DX27	PE	BioLegend
CD158e1/KIR3DL1	DX9	PE	BioLegend
CD94	DX22	PE	BioLegend
CD64	10.1	APC	BioLegend
CD64	10.1	none	Ancell
CD34	561zz	PE	BioLegend
CD45	2D1	APC	BioLegend
CD43	CD43-10G7	APC	BioLegend
CD62L/L-selectin	LAM1-116	APC	Ancell

Generation of Human CD64/16A

Total RNA was isolated from human peripheral blood leukocytes using TRIzol total RNA isolation reagent (Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA) and cDNA was synthesized with the SuperScript preamplification system (Invitrogen). The recombinant CD64/16A is comprised of human CD64 extracellular domain and CD16A transmembrane and cytoplasmic domains. PCR fragments for CD64 (885 bps) and CD16A (195 bps) were amplified from the generated cDNA. The PCR fragments were purified and mixed together with the forward primer 5′- CGG *GAA TTC* GGA GAC AAC ATG TGG TTC TTG ACA A-3′, the reverse primer 5′- CCG *GAA TTC* TCA TTT GTC TTG AGG GTC CTT TCT-3′ (underlined nucleotides are EcoR I sites), and Pfx50 DNA polymerase (Invitrogen) to generate the recombinant CD64/16A receptor. CD64/CD16A and CD16A cDNA (CD16A-176V variant) was inserted into the retroviral expression vector pBMN-IRES-EGFP and virus was generated for NK92 cell transduction, as previously described (14). For this study, the transduced NK92 cells were sorted

by flow cytometry to derive populations with homogenous expression of CD16A or CD64/16A, but consisted of a mixed clonal population to avoid the effects of random genomic integration of vector DNA in a single NK92 transductant, as we have done in previous studies (14, 20). Additionally, CD64/CD16A cDNA was inserted into a pKT2 sleeping beauty transposon vector and used along with SB100X transposase for iPSC transduction, as previously described (14). The nucleotide sequences of all constructs were confirmed by direct sequencing from both directions on an ABI 377 sequencer with ABI BigDye terminator cycle sequencing kit (Applied Biosystems, Foster City, CA).

Cells

Fresh human peripheral blood leukocytes from plateletpheresis were purchased from Innovative Blood Resources (St. Paul, MN). Peripheral blood mononuclear cells were further enriched using Ficoll-Paque Plus (GE Healthcare Bio-Sciences AB, Uppsala, Sweden) and NK cells were purified by negative depletion using an EasySep human NK cell kit (StemCell Technologies, Cambridge, MA), as per the manufacturer's instructions, with >95% viability and 90–95% enrichment of $CD56^+CD3^-$ lymphocytes. Viable cell counting was performed using a Countess II automated cell counter (Life Technologies Corporation, Bothell, WA). The human NK cell line NK92 and the ovarian cancer cell line SKOV-3 were obtained from ATCC (Manassas, VA) and cultured per the manufacturer's directions. The NK92 cells required IL-2 for growth (500 IU/ml), which was obtained from R&D Systems and the National Cancer Institute, Biological Resources Branch, Preclinical Biologics Repository (Frederick, MD). Heat inactivated Gibco FBS was purchased from Thermo Fisher Scientific (Waltham, MA), and heat inactivated horse serum was purchased from Sigma-Aldrich (St. Louis, MO). For all assays described below, cells were used when in log growth phase.

The iPSCs UCBiPS7, derived from umbilical cord blood CD34 cells, have been previously characterized and were cultured and differentiated into hematopoietic progenitor cells as described with some modifications (14, 28–31). iPSC culture and hematopoietic differentiation was performed using TeSR-E8 medium and a STEMdiff Hematopoietic Kit (StemCell Technologies), which did not require the use of mouse embryonic fibroblast feeder cells, TrypLE adaption, spin embryoid body formation, or $CD34^+$ cell enrichment. To passage iPSCs, cells were dissociated with Gentle Cell Dissociation Reagent (StemCell Technologies) and aggregates $\geq$50 μm in diameter were counted with a hemocytometer and diluted to 20–40 aggregates/ml with TeSR-E8 medium. Each well of a 12-well plate was pre-coated with Matrigel Matrix (Corning Inc., Tewksbury, MA) and seeded with 40–80 aggregates in 2 ml of TeSR-E8 medium. Cell aggregates were cultured for 24 h before differentiation with the STEMdiff Hematopoietic Kit, as per the manufacturer's instructions. At day 12 of hematopoietic progenitor cell differentiation, the percentage of hematopoietic progenitor cells was determined using flow cytometric analysis with anti-CD34, anti-CD45, and anti-CD43 mAbs. NK cell differentiation was performed as previously described (32). The iPSC-derived NK cells, referred to here as iNK cells, were expanded for examination using γ-irradiated K562-mbIL21-41BBL feeder cells at a 1:2 ratio in cell expansion medium [60% DMEM, 30% Ham's F12, 10% human AB serum (Valley Biomedical, Winchester, VA), 20 μM 2-mercaptoethanol, 50 μM ethanolamine, 20 μg/ml ascorbic Acid, 5 ng/ml sodium selenite, 10 mM HEPES, and 100–250 IU/ml IL-2 (R&D Systems)], as described previously (14, 29–31).

Cell Staining, IFNγ Quantification, and Flow Cytometric Analysis

For cell staining, 0.5×10^6-1×10^6 cells were stained with the indicated mAbs (**Table 1**) using flow buffer (dPBS containing 2.5% FBS and 0.02% sodium azide) and 1×10^4-5×10^4 cells per sample were acquired, as previously described (11, 14, 20). For controls, fluorescence minus one was used as well as appropriate isotype-matched antibodies since the cells of interest expressed FcRs. A FSC-A/SSC-A plot was used to set an electronic gate on leukocyte populations and an FSC-A/FSC-H plot was used to set an electronic gate on single cells. A Zombie viability kit was used to assess live vs. dead cells, as per the manufacturer's instructions (BioLegend).

To assess the capture of soluble trastuzumab, rituximab, cetuximab, or L-selectin/Fc chimera, transduced NK cells were incubated with 5 μg/ml of antibody for 2 h at 37°C in MEM-α basal media (Thermo Fisher Scientific) supplemented with IL-2 (200 IU/ml), HEPES (10 mM), and 2-mercaptoethanol (0.1 mM), washed with MEM-α basal media, and then stained on ice for 30 min with a 1:200 dilution of APC-conjugated $F(ab')_2$ donkey anti-human IgG (H + L). To detect recombinant human L-selectin/Fc binding, cells were stained with the anti-L-selectin mAb APC-conjugated Lam1-116. To compare CD16A and CD64/16A staining levels on NK92 cells, the respective transductants were stained with a saturating concentration of unconjugated anti-CD16 (3G8) or anti-CD64 (10.1) mAbs (5 μg/ml), washed extensively with dPBS containing 2% goat serum and 2 mM sodium azide, and then stained with APC-conjugated $F(ab')_2$ goat anti-mouse IgG (H+L). This approach was used since directly conjugated anti-CD16 and anti-CD64 mAbs can vary in their levels of fluorophore labeling. IFNγ quantification was performed by a cytometric bead-based Flex Set assay (BD Biosciences, San Jose, CA), per the manufacturer's instructions. The minimum and maximum limit of detection for the assay was 1.8 and 2,500 pg/ml, respectively. All flow cytometric analyses were performed on a FACSCelesta instrument (BD Biosciences). Data was analyzed using FACSDIVA v8 (BD Biosciences) and FlowJo v10 (Ashland, OR).

Cell-Cell Conjugation Assay and ADCC

NK92 cells used in these assays were transduced with pBMN-IRES-EGFP empty vector or vector containing CD64/16A or CD16A cDNA. For all transductants, nearly 100% of the cells expressed GFP. The NK92 transductants were initially serum-starved for 2 h at 37°C in MEM-α basal media (Thermo Fisher Scientific, Waltham, MA) supplemented with IL-2 (200 IU/ml),

HEPES (10 mM), and 2-mercaptoethanol (0.1 mM). SKOV-3 cells were labeled with CellTrace Violet (Molecular Probes, Eugene, OR) per the manufacturer's instructions, incubated with 5 μg/ml trastuzumab for 30 min and washed with MEM-α basal media. NK92 cells and SKOV-3 cells were then resuspended in the supplemented MEM-α basal media at 1×10^6 and 2×10^6/ml, respectively. For a 1:2 Effector:Target (E:T) ratio, 100 μl of each cell type was mixed together, centrifuged for 1 min at 20 × g and incubated at 37°C for the indicated time points. After each time point, the cells were gently vortexed for 3 s and immediately fixed with 1% paraformaldehyde in dPBS at 4°C. Cells were immediately analyzed by flow cytometry for which 2×10^4 cells per sample were acquired for analyses. The percentage of conjugated NK cells was calculated by gating on GFP and CellTrace Violet double-positive events.

To evaluate ADCC, a DELFIA EuTDA-based cytotoxicity assay was used according to the manufacturer's instructions (PerkinElmer, Waltham, MA). Briefly, target cells were labeled with Bis(acetoxymethyl)-2-2:6,2 terpyridine 6,6 dicarboxylate (BATDA) for 30 min in their culture medium, washed in culture medium, and pipetted into a 96-well non-tissue culture-treated U-bottom plates at a density of 8×10^3 cells/well. A tumor targeting mAb was added at the indicated concentrations and NK cells were added at the indicated E:T ratios. The plates were centrifuged at 400 × g for 1 min and then incubated for 2 h in a humidified 5% CO_2 atmosphere at 37°C. At the end of the incubation, the plates were centrifuged at 500 × g for 5 min and supernatants were transferred to a 96 well DELFIA Yellow Plate (PerkinElmer) and combined with europium. Fluorescence was measured by time-resolved fluorometry using a BMG Labtech CLARIOstar plate reader (Cary, NC). BATDA-labeled target cells alone with or without therapeutic antibodies were cultured in parallel to assess spontaneous lysis and in the presence of 2% Triton-X to measure maximum lysis. ADCC for each sample is represented as Percent Specific Release and was calculated using the following formula:

$$Percent\ Specific\ Release = \frac{(Experimental\ release - Spontaneous\ release)}{(Maximal\ release - Spontaneous\ release)} * 100$$

For each experiment, measurements were conducted in triplicate using two-three replicate wells.

Statistical Analyses

Statistical analyses were performed by use of GraphPad Prism (GraphPad Software, La Jolla, CA, USA). After assessing for approximate normal distribution, all variables were summarized as mean ± *SD*. Comparison between 2 groups was done with Student's *t*-test, with $p < 0.05$ taken as statistically significant.

RESULTS

Expression and Function of CD64/16A in NK92 Cells

We engineered a recombinant FcγR that consists of the extracellular region of human CD64 and the transmembrane and cytoplasmic regions of human CD16A, referred to as CD64/16A (**Figure 1A**). The human NK cell line NK92 stably expressing this recombinant receptor were initially used to examine its function. These cells lack endogenous FcγRs but can mediate ADCC when expressing recombinant CD16A (14, 20, 27). As shown is **Figure 1B**, NK92 cells expressing CD64/16A were positively stained by an anti-CD64 mAb, whereas parental NK92 cells or NK92 cells expressing CD16A were not. CD16A is known to undergo ectodomain shedding upon NK cell activation resulting in its rapid downregulation in expression (10–13, 20). CD16A as well as its isoform CD16B on neutrophils is cleaved by ADAM17 (10), and this occurs at an extracellular region proximal to the cell membrane (13, 14). The ADAM17 cleavage region of CD16A is not present in CD64 or CD64/16A (**Figure 1A**). We found that CD16A underwent a >50% decrease in expression upon NK92 stimulation by ADCC, whereas CD64/16A demonstrated little to no downregulation (**Figure 1C**).

To establish the functional activity of CD64/16A, we determined its ability to promote E:T conjugation, induce ADCC, and stimulate IFN-γ production. SKOV-3 cells, an ovarian cancer cell line that expresses HER2, were used as the target. A two-color flow cytometric approach was used to quantify the conjugation of NK92-CD64/16A cells and SKOV-3 cells in the absence and presence of the anti-HER2 therapeutic mAb trastuzumab. A bicistronic vector was used for CD64/16A as well as GFP expression, and its fluorescence was used to identify the NK92 cells. SKOV-3 cells were labeled with the fluorescent dye CellTrace Violet. The incubation of NK92-CD64/16A cells with SKOV-3 cells alone resulted in a low level of conjugation after 60 min of exposure (**Figure 2A**). E:T conjugation was markedly increased in the presence of trastuzumab, and this was effectively disrupted by the presence of the anti-CD64 mAb 10.1 (**Figure 2A**), which blocks IgG binding (33). The addition of trastuzumab, however, did not enhance E:T conjugation by NK92 cells transduced with an empty vector expressing only GFP (NK92 control cells) (**Figure 2A**).

An increase in SKOV-3 cell conjugation by NK92-CD64/16A cells corresponded with increased cytolytic activity. We determined direct target cell killing by NK92-CD64/16A cells using an ADCC assay in which various concentrations of trastuzumab and E:T ratios were examined. We show in **Figure 2B** effective SKOV-3 cytotoxicity by NK92-CD64/16A cells in the presence of trastuzumab that decreased with lower mAb concentrations and lower E:T ratios. To confirm the role of CD64/16A in the induction of target cell killing, we also performed the assay in the presence the anti-CD64 mAb 10.1, which effectively blocked ADCC (**Figure 2C**).

Cytokine production is also induced during ADCC and NK cells are major producers of IFNγ (4, 34). NK92-CD64/16A cells exposed to SKOV-3 cells and trastuzumab produced considerably higher levels of IFNγ than when exposed to SKOV-3 cells alone (**Figure 2D**). Taken together, the above findings demonstrate that the CD64 component of the recombinant receptor engages

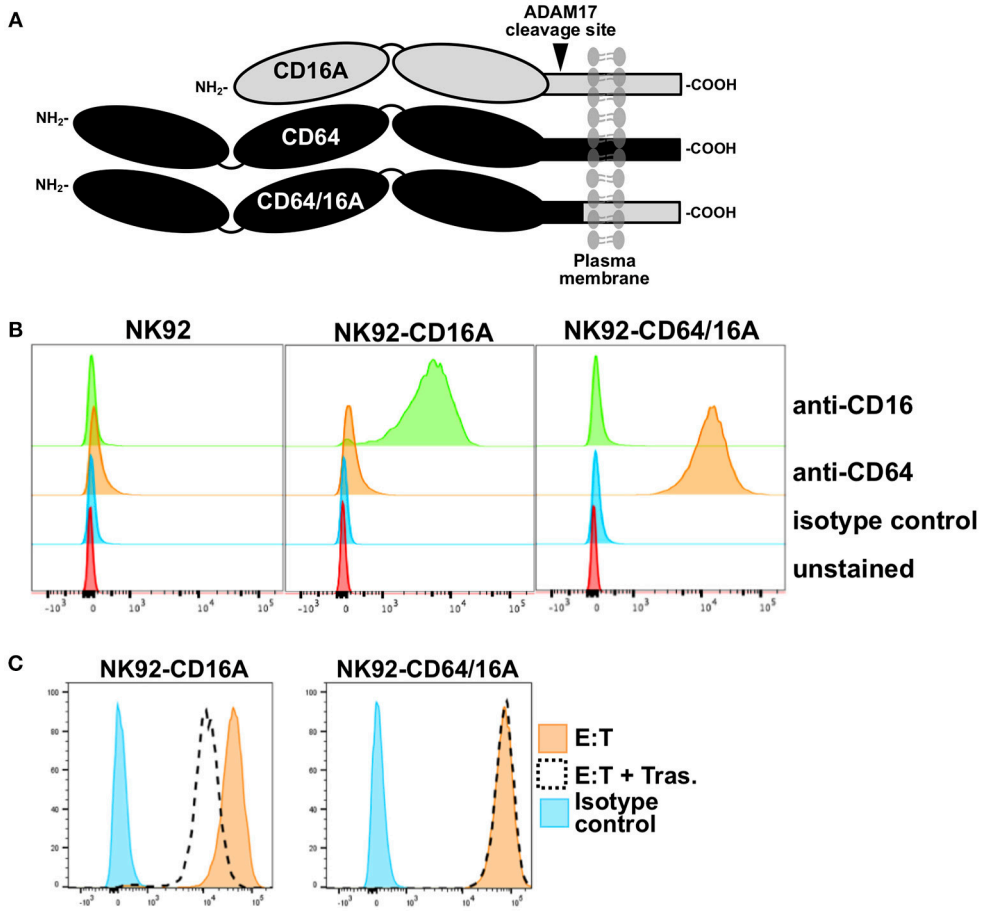


FIGURE 1 | Expression of CD64/16A by NK92 cells**. (A)** Schematic representation of the cell membrane forms of CD16A, CD64, and CD64/16A. CD16A undergoes ectodomain shedding by ADAM17 at a membrane proximal location, as indicated, which is not present in CD64 and CD64/16A. **(B)** NK92 parental cells, NK92-CD16A cells, and NK92-CD64/16A cells were stained with an anti-CD16, anti-CD64, or an isotype-matched negative control mAb and examined by flow cytometry. **(C)** NK92-CD16A and NK92-CD64/16A cells were incubated with SKOV-3 cells with or without trastuzumab (5 μg/ml) at 37° C (E:T = 1:1; 5×10^5 cells to 5×10^5 cells) for 2 h. The NK92-CD16A and NK92-CD64/16A cells were then stained with an anti-CD16 mAb or an anti-CD64 mAb, respectively, and examined by flow cytometry. Non-specific antibody labeling was determined using the appropriate isotype-negative control mAb. **(B,C)** Data is representative of at least three independent experiments.

tumor-bound antibody, and that the CD16A component promotes intracellular signaling leading to degranulation and cytokine production.

CD64/16A as a Docking Platform For Antibodies

CD64 is distinguished from the other FcγR members by its unique third extracellular domain, which contributes to its high affinity and stable binding to soluble monomeric IgG (26). We compared the ability of NK92 cells expressing CD64/16A or the high affinity variant of CD16A (CD16A-176V) to capture soluble therapeutic mAbs. NK92 cell transductants expressing similar levels of CD64/16A and CD16A (**Figure 3A**) were incubated with trastuzumab for 2 h. After which, excess antibody was washed away and the cells were stained with a fluorophore-conjugated anti-human IgG antibody and then evaluated by flow cytometry. As shown in **Figure 3B**, NK92-CD64/16A cells captured considerably higher levels of trastuzumab than did the NK92-CD16A cells (8.1-fold increase ± 1.3, mean ± *SD* of 3 independent experiments). In addition, the NK92-CD64/16A cells efficiently captured the tumor-targeting mAbs Erbitux/cetuximab and Rituxan/rituximab, as well as the fusion protein L-selectin/Fc (**Figure 3C**). We then tested whether NK92-CD64/16A cells with a captured tumor-targeting mAb mediated ADCC. For this assay, we compared equal numbers of NK92-CD64/16A and NK92-CD16A cells that were incubated with the same concentration of soluble trastuzumab, washed, and exposed to SKOV-3 cells. We observed that target cell killing by NK92-CD64/16A cells with captured trastuzumab was significantly higher than by these same cells in the absence trastuzumab and was far superior to NK92-CD16A cells at all E:T ratios examined (**Figure 3D**). In contrast, SKOV-3 cytotoxicity by NK92-CD16A and NK92-CD64/16A cells was not significantly different if trastuzumab was present

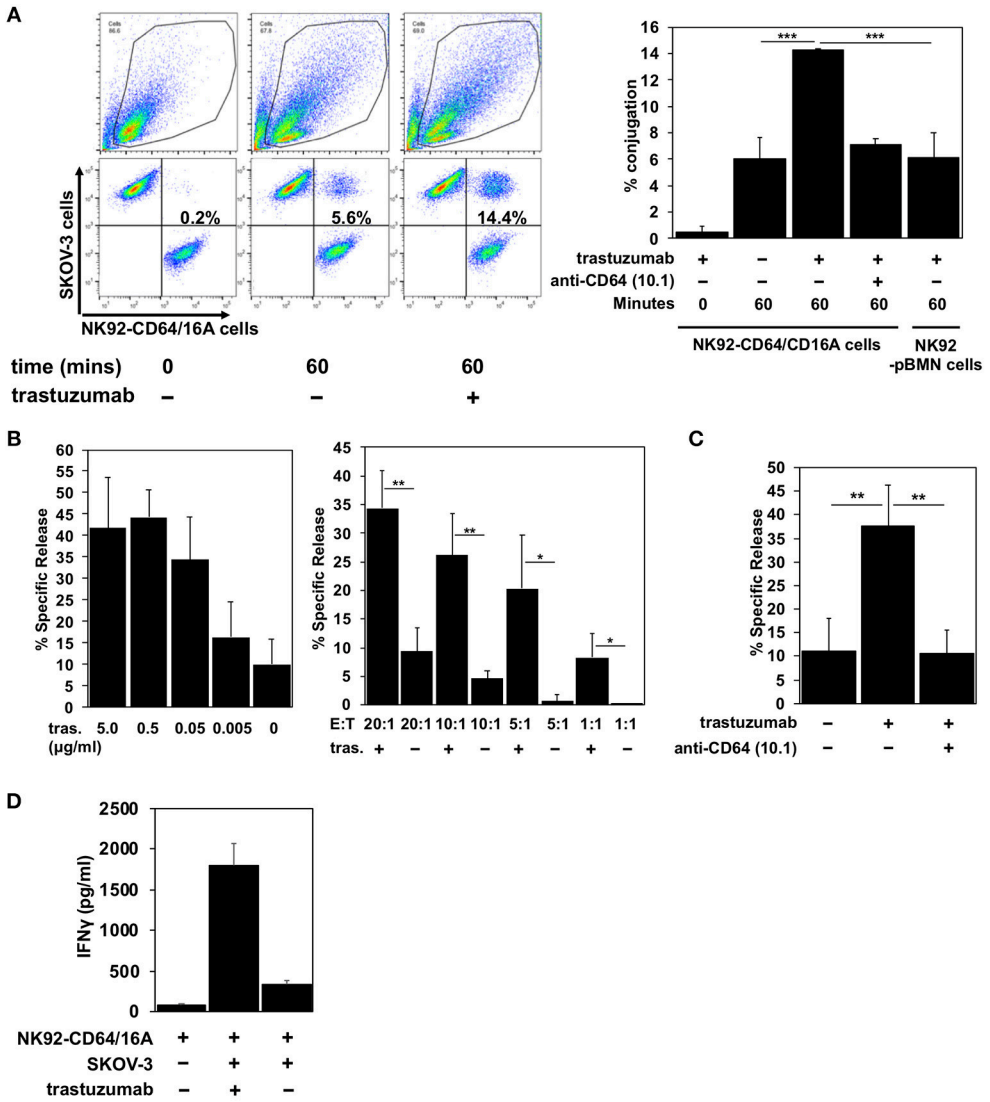


FIGURE 2 | CD64/16A promotes target cell conjugation, ADCC, and IFNγ production**. (A)** NK92 control cells or NK92-CD64/16A cells, both expressing GFP, and SKOV-3 cells, labeled CellTrace Violet, were mixed at an E:T ratio of 1:2 (1×10^5 cells to 2×10^5 cells) in the presence or absence of trastuzumab (5 μg/ml) and the anti-CD64 mAb 10.1 (10 μg/ml), incubated at 37°C up to 60 min, fixed, and then analyzed by flow cytometry, as described in the Materials and Methods. For the flow cytometric data, representative data are shown. For the bar graphs, mean ± *SD* of three independent experiments is shown. Statistical significance is indicated as ***$p < 0.001$. **(B)** NK92-CD64/16A cells were incubated with SKOV-3 cells (E:T = 20:1; 1.6×10^5 cells to 8×10^3 cells) and trastuzumab (tras.) at the indicated concentrations (left panel), or with SKOV-3 cells at the indicated E:T ratios in the presence or absence of trastuzumab (5 μg/ml) (right panel) for 2 h at 37°C. Data are represented as % specific release and the mean ± SD of 3 independent experiments is shown. Statistical significance is indicated as *$p < 0.05$, **$p < 0.01$. **(C)** NK92-CD64/16A cells were incubated with SKOV-3 cells (E:T = 20:1; 1.6×10^5 cells to 8×10^3 cells) in the presence or absence of trastuzumab (5 μg/ml) and the anti-CD64 mAb 10.1 (10 μg/ml), as indicated, for 2 h at 37°C. Data are represented as % specific release and the mean ± *SD* of 3 independent experiments is shown. Statistical significance is indicated as **$p < 0.01$. **(D)** NK92-CD64/16A cells were incubated with SKOV-3 cells (E:T = 1:1; 1×10^5 cells to 1×10^5 cells) with or without trastuzumab (5 μg/ml) for 2 h at 37°C. Secreted IFNγ levels were quantified by ELISA. Data is shown as mean of 2 independent experiments.

during the assay and not initially docked to the transductants (**Figure 3E**). This demonstrates that the different transductants had an equivalent cytolytic capacity. Taken together, these findings show that NK92 cells expressing CD64/16A can stably bind soluble anti-tumor mAbs and IgG fusion proteins, and that these can serve as targeting elements to kill cancer cells.

Expression and Function of CD64/16A in iPSC-Derived NK Cells

We also examined the function of CD64/16A in engineered primary NK cells. Genetically modifying peripheral blood NK cells by retroviral or lentiviral transduction at this point has been challenging (35). Embryonic stem cells and iPSCs can be differentiated into cytolytic NK cells *in vitro* (28–31, 36),

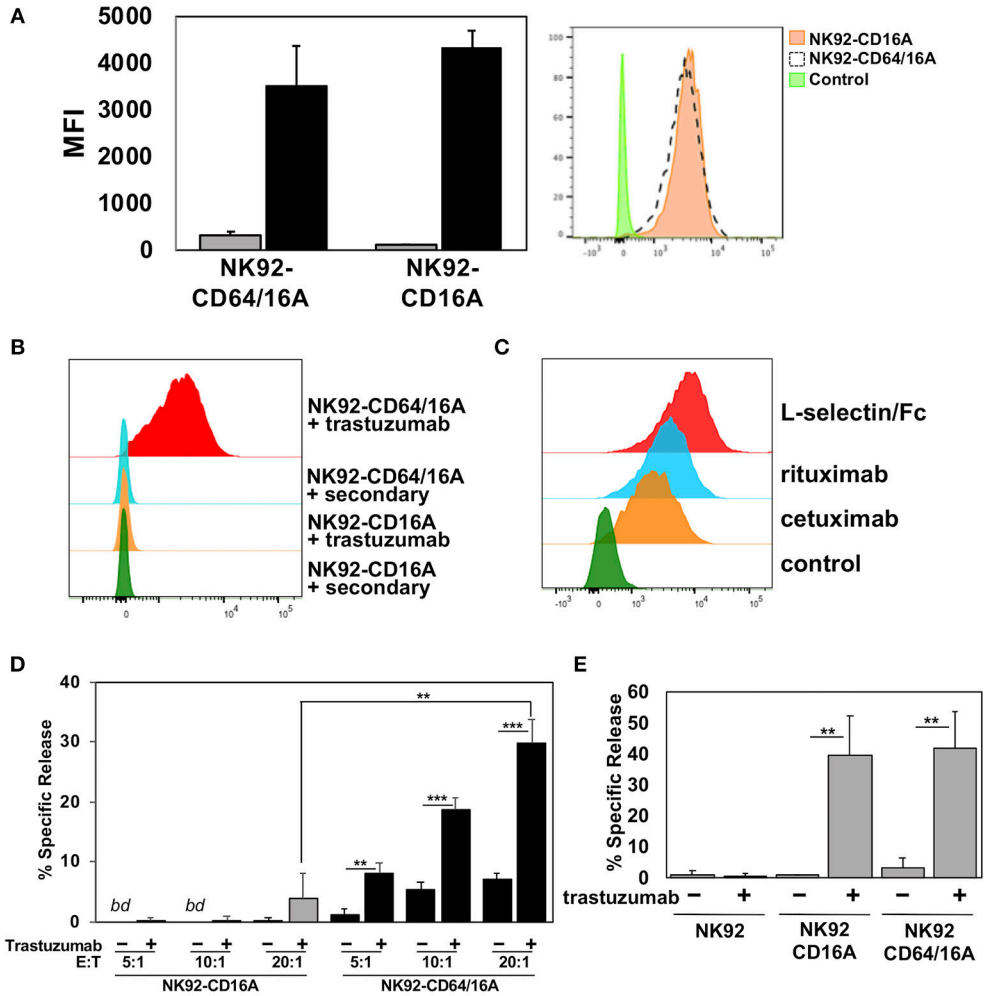


FIGURE 3 | CD64/16A attaches to soluble tumor-targeting mAbs and IgG fusion proteins**. (A)** Relative expression levels of CD16A and CD64/16A on NK92 cells were determined by cell staining with anti-CD16 and anti-CD64 mAbs (black bars), respectively, or an isotype-matched negative control antibody (gray bars). The bar graph shows mean fluorescence intensity (MFI) ± *SD* of three independent experiments. Representative flow cytometric data are shown in the histogram overlay. The dashed line histogram shows CD64 staining of NK92-CD64/16A cells, the orange-filled histogram shows CD16A staining of NK92-CD16A cells, and the green-filled histogram shows isotype control antibody staining of the NK92-CD16A cells. **(B)** NK92-CD16A and NK92-CD64/16A cells were incubated with or without trastuzumab (5 μg/ml) for 2 h at 37°C, washed, stained with a fluorophore-conjugated anti-human secondary antibody, and analyzed by flow cytometry. Data is representative of at least 3 independent experiments. **(C)** NK92-CD64/16A cells were incubated with cetuximab or rituximab (5 μg/ml for each), washed, and then stained with a fluorophore-conjugated anti-human secondary antibody. Control represents cells stained with the anti-human secondary antibody only. NK92-CD64/16A cells were also incubated with L-selectin/Fc (5 μg/ml), washed, and then stained with a fluorophore-conjugated anti-L-selectin mAb. NK92 cells lack expression of endogenous L-selectin (data not shown). All staining was analyzed by flow cytometry. Data shown are representative of 3 independent experiments. **(D)** NK92-CD16A and NK92-CD64/16A cells were incubated in the presence or absence of trastuzumab (5μg/ml), washed, and exposed to SKOV-3 cells (8×10^3) at the indicated E:T cell ratios for 2 h at 37°C. Data is shown as mean ± SD of 3 independent experiments. Statistical significance is indicated as $^{**}p < 0.01$, $^{***}p < 0.001$. *bd* = below detection, (i.e., < spontaneous release by negative control cells). **(E)** NK92-CD16A and NK92-CD64/16A cells were incubated with SKOV-3 cells (E:T = 10:1; 8×10^4 cells to 8×10^3 cells) in the presence or absence of trastuzumab (5 μg/ml), as indicated, for 2 h at 37°C. Data is shown as mean ± SD of 3 independent experiments. Statistical significance is indicated as $^{**}p < 0.01$.

and these cells are highly amendable to genetic engineering (14, 30, 37, 38). Undifferentiated iPSCs were transduced to express CD64/16A using a sleeping beauty transposon plasmid for non-random gene insertion and stable expression. iPSCs were differentiated into hematopoietic cells and then iNK cells by a two-step process that we have previously described (14, 28, 29). For this study, we modified the hematopoietic differentiation method to streamline the procedure by using a commercially available media and hematopoietic differentiation kit, as described in the Materials and Methods. $CD34^+CD43^+CD45^+$ cells were generated, further differentiated into iNK cells, and these cells were expanded for analysis using recombinant IL-2 and K562-mbIL21-41BBL feeder cells. $CD56^+CD3^-$ is a hallmark phenotype of human NK cells, and these cells

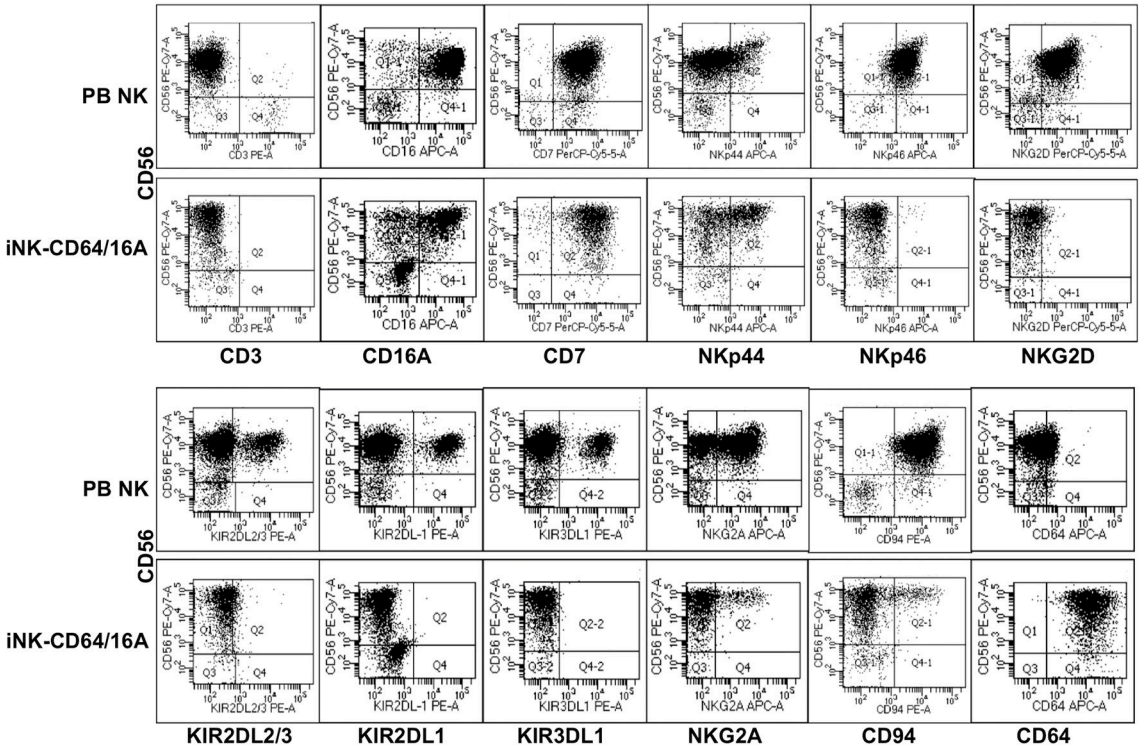


FIGURE 4 | Generation of iNK cells expressing CD64/CD16A. iPSCs were transduced to stably express CD64/16A, differentiated into NK cells, and then expanded using K562-mbIL21-41BBL feeder cells, as described in the Materials and Methods. iNK-CD64/16A cells and freshly isolated peripheral blood (PB) NK cells were stained for CD56, CD3 and various inhibitory and activating receptors, as indicated. CD64/16A expression was determined by staining the cells with an anti-CD64 mAb. For the iNK-CD64/16A cells, representative data from at least three independent experiments are shown. For the PB NK cells, three separate blood donors were examined and data from one donor is shown.

composed the majority of our differentiated cell population (**Figure 4**). We also assessed the expression of a number of activating and inhibitory receptors on the iNK cells and compared this to freshly enriched, peripheral blood NK cells. The latter cells have heterogenous phenotypes among individuals and in particular for their inhibitory receptors (39–41). In contrast to the subsets of peripheral blood NK cells expressing the inhibitory KIR receptors KIR2DL2/3, KIR2DL1, and KIR3DL1, the expanded iNK cells lacked expression of these receptors and the activating receptors NKp46 and NKG2D (**Figure 4**). Of importance is that unlike peripheral blood NK cells, essentially all of the iNK cells were stained with an anti-CD64 mAb (**Figure 4**), demonstrating the expression of CD64/16A.

To assess the function of CD64/16A, we compared iNK cells derived from iPSCs transduced with either a pKT2 empty vector or pKT2-CD64/16A. The NK cell markers mentioned above were expressed at similar levels and proportions by the two iNK cell populations (data not shown), including CD16A (**Figure 5A**), but only the iNK-CD64/16A cells were stained by an anti-CD64 mAb (**Figure 5A**). Both iNK transductants demonstrated increased SKOV-3 cell killing when in the presence of trastuzumab, yet iNK-CD64/16A cells mediated significantly higher levels of ADCC than did the iNK-pKT2 control cells (**Figure 5B**). The anti-CD16 function blocking mAb 3G8, but not the anti-CD64 mAb 10.1, effectively inhibited ADCC by the iNK-pKT2 cells (**Figure 5B**). Conversely, 10.1, but not 3G8, blocked ADCC by the iNK-CD64/16A cells (**Figure 5B**). These findings show that the generated iNK cells were cytolytic effectors responsive to CD16A and CD64/16A engagement of antibody-bound tumor cells. We also treated iNK-CD64/16A and iNK-pKT2 cells with soluble trastuzumab, washed away excess antibody, and exposed them to SKOV-3 cells. Under these conditions, ADCC by the iNK-CD64/16A cells was markedly higher than the iNK-pKT2 cells (**Figure 5C**), further establishing that CD64/16A can capture soluble anti-tumor mAbs that serve as a targeting element for tumor cell killing.

DISCUSSION

CD16A has an exclusive role in inducing ADCC by human NK cells (2–4). The affinity of antibody binding and the expression levels of this IgG Fc receptor modulate NK cell effector functions and affect the efficacy of tumor-targeting therapeutic mAbs (4, 11, 19, 20). To enhance anti-tumor antibody binding by NK cells, we expressed a novel recombinant FcγR consisting of the extracellular region of the high affinity

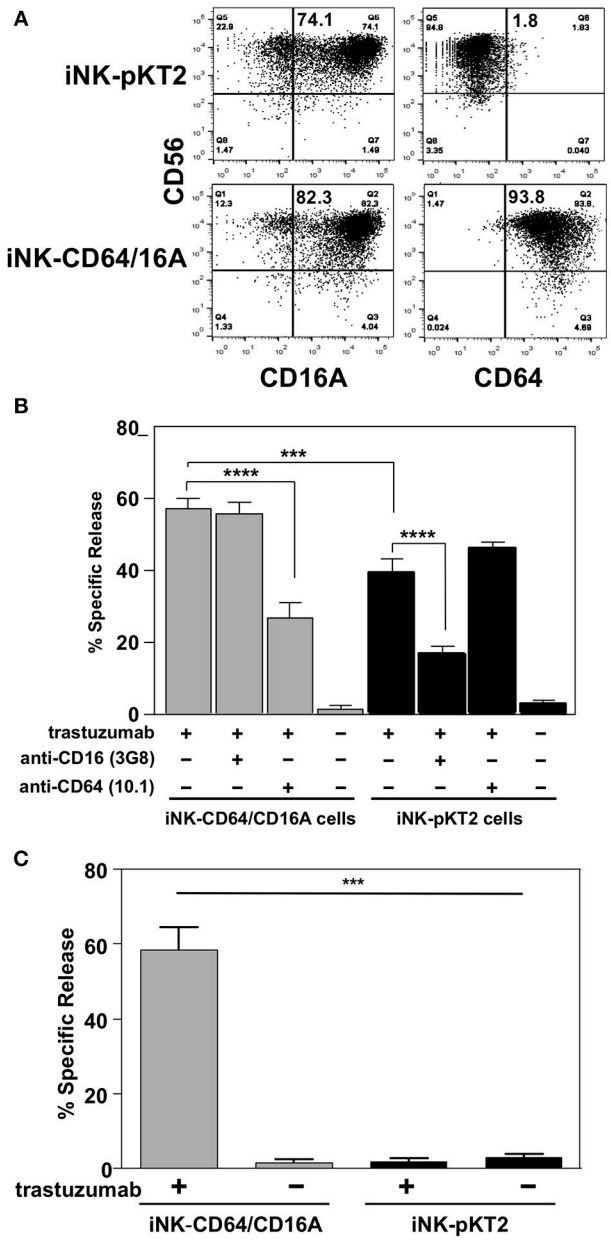


FIGURE 5 | iNK-CD64/16A cells show enhanced ADCC compared to iNK-pKT2 control cells**. (A)** iNK cells derived from empty vector (iNK-pKT2) or CD64/16A (iNK-CD64/16A) transduced iPSCs were stained for CD56, CD64, and CD16A, as indicated. The percentage of $CD56^+$ cells positively staining for CD16A or CD64 are indicated in the top right quadrant. **(B)** iNK-pKT2 or iNK-CD64/16A cells were incubated with SKOV-3 cells (E:T = 10:1; 8×10^4 cells to 8×10^3 cells) in the presence or absence of trastuzumab (5μg/ml), the function blocking anti-CD16 mAb 3G8 (5 μg/ml), and the function blocking anti-CD64 mAb 10.1 (5 μg/ml), as indicated, for 2 h at 37°C. Data is shown as mean ± SD of three independent experiments. Statistical significance is indicated as $^{***}p < 0.001$; $^{****}p < 0.0001$. **(C)** iNK-pKT2 and iNK-CD64/16A cells were incubated in the presence or absence of trastuzumab (5 μg/ml), washed, and exposed to SKOV-3 cells (E:T = 10:1; 8×10^4 cells to 8×10^3 cells) for 2 h at 37°C. Data is shown as mean ± *SD* of three independent experiments. Statistical significance is indicated as $^{***}p < 0.001$.

FcγR CD64 and the transmembrane and intracellular regions of CD16A. NK cells expressing CD64/16A facilitated cell conjugation with antibody-bound tumor cells, cytotoxicity, and IFNγ production, demonstrating function by both components of the recombinant FcγR. CD64/16A lacks the ADAM17 cleavage region found in CD16A and it did not undergo the same level of downregulation in expression during ADCC. Moreover, consistent with the ability of CD64 to stably bind soluble monomeric IgG, NK cells expressing CD64/16A could capture soluble anti-tumor therapeutic mAbs and kill target cells.

We demonstrate that CD64/16A was functional in two human NK cell platforms, the NK92 cell line and primary NK cells derived from iPSCs. NK92 cells lack inhibitory KIR receptors and show high levels of natural cytotoxicity compared to other NK cell lines derived from patients (42). NK92 cells have been widely used to express modified genes to direct their cytolytic effector function, have been evaluated in preclinical studies, and are undergoing clinical testing in cancer patients (42, 43). iPSCs are also very amendable to genetic engineering and can be differentiated into NK cells expressing various receptors to direct their effector functions (14, 30, 37, 38). For this study, we streamlined and standardized the hematopoietic differentiation step using a commercial kit. Though the generated iNK cells lacked several inhibitory and activating receptors compared to peripheral blood NK cells and iNK cells in previous studies (29–31), the majority of the cells were $CD16A^+$, which is expressed by mature NK cells (44), and mediated ADCC, demonstrating they were cytotoxic effector cells. The particular phenotype of the iNK cells will be important for the desired effector functions. However, to better direct and enhance their anti-tumor activity through the expression of engineered receptors and reduce their off-target effects, it may be advantageous for the iNK cells not to express endogenous inhibitory and activating receptors. Tumor cell ADCC by iNK cells expressing CD64/16A cells was significantly blocked by an anti-CD64 mAb. Interestingly, in contrast to pKT2 vector control iNK cells, ADCC by the iNK-CD64/16A cells was not blocked by an anti-CD16 mAb. Why endogenous CD16A in the iNK-CD64/16A cells did not have a role in the *in vitro* ADCC assay is unclear at this time. This may be due to a competitive advantage by CD64/16A over endogenous CD16A in binding antibody and/or in utilizing the same pool of downstream signaling factors.

An individual NK cell can kill multiple tumor cells in different manners. This includes by a process of sequential contacts and degranulations, referred to as serial killing (45, 46), and by the localized dispersion of its granule contents that kills surrounding tumor cells, referred to as bystander killing (47). Further studies are required to determine the effects of CD64/16A expression on these killing processes during ADCC. Inhibiting CD16A shedding has been reported to slow NK cell detachment from target cells and reduce serial killing by NK cells *in vitro* (48). Due to the CD64 component and its lack of ectodomain shedding, NK cells expressing CD64/16A could be less efficient at serial killing

and more efficient at bystander killing. An important next step will be to assess the anti-tumor activity of NK cells expressing CD64/16A *in vivo*, which will include the use of NK92-CD64/16A cells and iNK-CD64/16A cells in tumor xenograft models.

Therapeutic mAbs have become one of the fastest growing classes of drugs, and tumor-targeting mAbs are the most widely used and characterized immunotherapy for hematologic and solid tumors (49). NK cells expressing CD64/16A have several potential advantages as a combination therapy, as their capture of anti-tumor mAbs, either individually or when mixed, prior to adoptive transfer provides diverse options for switchable targeting elements. Modifying NK cells expressing CD64/16A with an antibody would also reduce the dosage of therapeutic antibodies administered to patients. We showed that fusion proteins containing a human IgG Fc region, such as L-selectin/Fc, can also be captured by CD64/16A, which may provide further options for directing the tissue and tumor antigen targeting of engineered NK cells. Advantages of the NK92 and iNK cell platforms for adoptive cell therapies is that they can be readily gene modified on a clonal level and expanded into clinical-scalable cell numbers to produce engineered NK cells with improved effector activities as an off-the-shelf therapeutic for cancer immunotherapy (36, 37, 42, 43, 50).

AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

BW and JW collected, assembled, analyzed, and interpreted the data, and wrote the manuscript. KS collected, analyzed, and interpreted the data, and revised the manuscript. RH, HM, DM, YL, and AR collected, analyzed, and interpreted the data. DK analyzed the data and revised the manuscript. All authors contributed to manuscript preparation, read, and approved the submitted version.

FUNDING

This work was supported by grants from the NIH, award numbers R01CA203348 and R21AI125729, and the Minnesota Ovarian Cancer Alliance. KS was supported by a Howard Hughes Medical Institute and Burroughs Wellcome Fund Medical Research Fellowship. AR was supported by the Office of the Director of the NIH, award number T35OD0 11118.

REFERENCES

1. Carotta S. Targeting NK cells for anticancer immunotherapy: clinical and preclinical approaches. *Front Immunol.* (2016) 7:152. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2016.00152
2. Alderson KL, Sondel PM. Clinical cancer therapy by NK cells via antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity. *J Biomed Biotechnol.* (2011) 2011:379123. doi: 10.1155/2011/379123
3. Long EO, Kim HS, Liu D, Peterson ME, Rajagopalan S. Controlling natural killer cell responses: integration of signals for activation and inhibition. *Annu Rev Immunol.* (2013) 31:227–58. doi: 10.1146/annurev-immunol-020711-075005
4. Wang W, Erbe AK, Hank JA, Morris ZS, Sondel PM. NK Cell-mediated antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity in cancer immunotherapy. *Front Immunol.* (2015) 6:368. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2015.00368
5. Lanier LL, Yu G, Phillips JH. Co-association of CD3 zeta with a receptor (CD16) for IgG Fc on human natural killer cells. *Nature* (1989) 342:803–5. doi: 10.1038/342803a0
6. Anderson P, Caligiuri M, O'Brien C, Manley T, Ritz J, Schlossman SF. Fc gamma receptor type III (CD16) is included in the zeta NK receptor complex expressed by human natural killer cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (1990) 87:2274–8.
7. Letourneur O, Kennedy IC, Brini AT, Ortaldo JR, O'Shea JJ, Kinet JP. Characterization of the family of dimers associated with Fc receptors (Fc epsilon RI and Fc gamma RIII). *J Immunol.* (1991) 147:2652–6.
8. Hou X, Dietrich J, Geisler NO. The cytoplasmic tail of FcgammaRIIIAalpha is involved in signaling by the low affinity receptor for immunoglobulin G. *J Biol Chem*. (1996) 271:22815–22.
9. Li X, Baskin JG, Mangan EK, Su K, Gibson AW, Ji C, et al. The unique cytoplasmic domain of human FcgammaRIIIA regulates receptor-mediated function. *J Immunol.* (2012) 189:4284–94. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1200704
10. Wang Y, Wu J, Newton R, Bahaie NS, Long C, Walcheck B. ADAM17 cleaves CD16b (FcgammaRIIIb) in human neutrophils. *Biochim Biophys Acta* (2013) 1833:680–5. doi: 10.1016/j.bbamcr.2012.11.027
11. Romee R, Foley B, Lenvik T, Wang Y, Zhang B, Ankarlo D, et al. NK cell CD16 surface expression and function is regulated by a disintegrin and metalloprotease-17 (ADAM17). *Blood* (2013) 121:3599–608. doi: 10.1182/blood-2012-04-425397
12. Peruzzi G, Femnou L, Gil-Krzewska A, Borrego F, Weck J, Krzewski K, et al. Membrane-type 6 matrix metalloproteinase regulates the activation-induced downmodulation of CD16 in human primary NK cells. *J Immunol.* (2013) 191:1883–94. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1300313
13. Lajoie L, Congy-Jolivet N, Bolzec A, Gouilleux-Gruart V, Sicard E, Sung HC, et al. ADAM17-mediated shedding of FcgammaRIIIA on human NK cells: identification of the cleavage site and relationship with activation. *J Immunol.* (2014) 192:741–51. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1301024
14. Jing Y, Ni Z, Wu J, Higgins L, Markowski TW, Kaufman DS, et al. Identification of an ADAM17 cleavage region in human CD16 (FcgammaRIII) and the engineering of a non-cleavable version of the receptor in NK cells. *PLoS ONE* (2015) 10:e0121788. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0121788
15. Lai P, Rabinowich H, Crowley-Nowick PA, Bell MC, Mantovani G, Whiteside TL. Alterations in expression and function of signal-transducing proteins in tumor-associated T and natural killer cells in patients with ovarian carcinoma. *Clin Cancer Res.* (1996) 2:161–73.
16. Veeramani S, Wang SY, Dahle C, Blackwell S, Jacobus L, Knutson T, et al. Rituximab infusion induces NK activation in lymphoma patients with the high-affinity CD16 polymorphism. *Blood* (2011) 118:3347–9. doi: 10.1182/blood-2011-05-351411
17. Cox MC, Battella S, La Scaleia R, Pelliccia S, Di Napoli A, Porzia A, et al. Tumor-associated and immunochemotherapy-dependent long-term alterations of the peripheral blood NK cell compartment in DLBCL patients. *Oncoimmunology* (2015) 4:e990773. doi: 10.4161/2162402X.2014.990773
18. Granzin M, Soltenborn S, Muller S, Kollet J, Berg M, Cerwenka A, et al. Fully automated expansion and activation of clinical-grade natural killer cells for adoptive immunotherapy. *Cytotherapy* (2015) 17:621–32. doi: 10.1016/j.jcyt.2015.03.611
19. Felices M, Chu S, Kodal B, Bendzick L, Ryan C, Lenvik AJ, et al. IL-15 super-agonist (ALT-803) enhances natural killer (NK) cell function against ovarian cancer. *Gynecol Oncol.* (2017) 145:453–61. doi: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2017.02.028
20. Mishra HK, Pore N, Michelotti EF, Walcheck B. Anti-ADAM17 monoclonal antibody MEDI3622 increases IFNgamma production by human NK cells in the presence of antibody-bound tumor cells. *Cancer Immunol Immunother*. (2018) 67:1407–16. doi: 10.1007/s00262-018-2193-1

21. Wu J, Edberg JC, Redecha PB, Bansal V, Guyre PM, Coleman K, et al. A novel polymorphism of FcgammaRIIIa (CD16) alters receptor function and predisposes to autoimmune disease. *J Clin Invest*. (1997) 100:1059–70. doi: 10.1172/JCI119616
22. Koene HR, Kleijer M, Algra J, Roos D, von dem Borne AE, de Haas M. Fc gammaRIIIa-158V/F polymorphism influences the binding of IgG by natural killer cell Fc gammaRIIIa, independently of the Fc gammaRIIIa-48L/R/H phenotype. *Blood* (1997) 90:1109–14.
23. Dong C, Ptacek TS, Redden DT, Zhang K, Brown EE, Edberg JC, et al. Fcgamma receptor IIIa single-nucleotide polymorphisms and haplotypes affect human IgG binding and are associated with lupus nephritis in African Americans. *Arthr Rheumatol.* (2014) 66:1291–9. doi: 10.1002/art.38337
24. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Fcgamma receptors as regulators of immune responses. *Nat Rev Immunol.* (2008) 8:34–47. doi: 10.1038/nri2206
25. Bruhns P, Iannascoli B, England P, Mancardi DA, Fernandez N, Jorieux S, et al. Specificity and affinity of human Fcgamma receptors and their polymorphic variants for human IgG subclasses. *Blood* (2009) 113:3716–25. doi: 10.1182/blood-2008-09-179754
26. Kiyoshi M, Caaveiro JM, Kawai T, Tashiro S, Ide T, Asaoka Y, et al. Structural basis for binding of human IgG1 to its high-affinity human receptor FcgammaRI. *Nat Commun*. (2015) 6:6866. doi: 10.1038/ncomms7866
27. Binyamin L, Alpaugh RK, Hughes TL, Lutz CT, Campbell KS, Weiner LM. Blocking NK cell inhibitory self-recognition promotes antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity in a model of anti-lymphoma therapy. *J Immunol*. (2008) 180:6392–401. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.180.9.6392
28. Ni Z, Knorr DA, Kaufman DS. Hematopoietic and nature killer cell development from human pluripotent stem cells. *Methods Mol Biol.* (2013) 1029:33–41. doi: 10.1007/978-1-62703-478-4_3
29. Knorr DA, Ni Z, Hermanson D, Hexum MK, Bendzick L, Cooper LJ, et al. Clinical-scale derivation of natural killer cells from human pluripotent stem cells for cancer therapy. *Stem Cells Transl Med*. (2013) 2:274–83. doi: 10.5966/sctm.2012-0084
30. Ni Z, Knorr DA, Bendzick L, Allred J, Kaufman DS. Expression of chimeric receptor CD4zeta by natural killer cells derived from human pluripotent stem cells improves *in vitro* activity but does not enhance suppression of HIV infection *in vivo*. *Stem cells* (2014) 32:1021–31. doi: 10.1002/stem.1611
31. Hermanson DL, Bendzick L, Pribyl L, McCullar V, Vogel RI, Miller JS, et al. Induced pluripotent stem cell-derived natural killer cells for treatment of ovarian cancer. *Stem Cells* (2016) 34:93–101. doi: 10.1002/stem.2230
32. Woll PS, Grzywacz B, Tian X, Marcus RK, Knorr DA, Verneris MR, et al. Human embryonic stem cells differentiate into a homogeneous population of natural killer cells with potent *in vivo* antitumor activity. *Blood* (2009) 113:6094–101. doi: 10.1182/blood-2008-06-165225
33. Harrison PT, Allen JM. High affinity IgG binding by FcgammaRI (CD64) is modulated by two distinct IgSF domains and the transmembrane domain of the receptor. *Protein Eng.* (1998) 11:225–32.
34. Wang R, Jaw JJ, Stutzman NC, Zou Z, Sun PD. Natural killer cell-produced IFN-gamma and TNF-alpha induce target cell cytolysis through up-regulation of ICAM-1. *J Leukoc Biol*. (2012) 91:299–309. doi: 10.1189/jlb.0611308
35. Carlsten M, Childs RW. Genetic manipulation of NK cells for cancer immunotherapy: techniques and clinical implications. *Front Immunol.* (2015) 6:266. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2015.00266
36. Zeng J, Tang SY, Toh LL, Wang S. Generation of "Off-the-Shelf" natural killer cells from peripheral blood cell-derived induced pluripotent stem cells. *Stem Cell Rep.* (2017) 9:1796–812. doi: 10.1016/j.stemcr.2017.10.020
37. Hermanson DL, Kaufman DS. Utilizing chimeric antigen receptors to direct natural killer cell activity. *Front Immunol.* (2015) 6:195. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2015.00195
38. Li Y, Hermanson DL, Moriarity BS, Kaufman DS. Human iPSC-derived natural killer cells engineered with chimeric antigen receptors enhance anti-tumor activity. *Cell Stem Cell* (2018) 23:181–192.e5. doi: 10.1016/j.stem.2018.06.002
39. Strauss-Albee DM, Horowitz A, Parham P, Blish CA. Coordinated regulation of NK receptor expression in the maturing human immune system. *J Immunol*. (2014) 193:4871–9. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1401821
40. Horowitz A, Strauss-Albee DM, Leipold M, Kubo J, Nemat-Gorgani N, Dogan OC, et al. Genetic and environmental determinants of human NK cell diversity revealed by mass cytometry. *Sci Transl Med*. (2013) 5:208ra145. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3006702
41. Strauss-Albee DM, Fukuyama J, Liang EC, Yao Y, Jarrell JA, Drake AL, et al. Human NK cell repertoire diversity reflects immune experience and correlates with viral susceptibility. *Sci Transl Med*. (2015) 7:297ra115. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.aac5722
42. Klingemann H, Boissel L, Toneguzzo F. Natural killer cells for immunotherapy - advantages of the NK-92 cell line over blood NK Cells. *Front Immunol.* (2016) 7:91. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2016.00091
43. Zhang C, Oberoi P, Oelsner S, Waldmann A, Lindner A, Tonn T, et al. Chimeric antigen receptor-engineered NK-92 Cells: an off-the-shelf cellular therapeutic for targeted elimination of cancer cells and induction of protective antitumor immunity. *Front Immunol.* (2017) 8:533. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2017.00533
44. Seidel UJ, Schlegel P, Lang P. Natural killer cell mediated antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity in tumor immunotherapy with therapeutic antibodies. *Front Immunol.* (2013) 4:76. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2013.00076
45. Bhat R, Watzl C. Serial killing of tumor cells by human natural killer cells–enhancement by therapeutic antibodies. *PLoS ONE* (2007) 2:e326. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0000326
46. Vanherberghen B, Olofsson PE, Forslund E, Sternberg-Simon M, Khorshidi MA, Pacouret S, et al. Classification of human natural killer cells based on migration behavior and cytotoxic response. *Blood* (2013) 121:1326–34. doi: 10.1182/blood-2012-06-439851
47. Hsu HT, Mace EM, Carisey AF, Viswanath DI, Christakou AE, Wiklund M, et al. NK cells converge lytic granules to promote cytotoxicity and prevent bystander killing. *J Cell Biol.* (2016) 215:875–89. doi: 10.1083/jcb.201604136
48. Srpan K, Ambrose A, Karampatzakis A, Saeed M, Cartwright ANR, Guldevall K, et al. Shedding of CD16 disassembles the NK cell immune synapse and boosts serial engagement of target cells. *J Cell Biol*. (2018) 217:3267. doi: 10.1083/jcb.201712085
49. Battella S, Cox MC, Santoni A, Palmieri G. Natural killer (NK) cells and anti-tumor therapeutic mAb: unexplored interactions. *J Leukoc Biol*. (2016) 99:87–96. doi: 10.1189/jlb.5VMR0415-141R
50. Angelos MG, Kaufman DS. Pluripotent stem cell applications for regenerative medicine. *Curr Opin Organ Transplant*. (2015) 20:663–70. doi: 10.1097/MOT.0000000000000244

Conflict of Interest Statement: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

ORIGINAL RESEARCH
published: 15 January 2019
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.03163

VH1-69 Utilizing Antibodies Are Capable of Mediating Non-neutralizing Fc-Mediated Effector Functions Against the Transmitted/Founder gp120

*S. Abigail Smith[1,2], Samantha L. Burton[1,2], William Kilembe[3], Shabir Lakhi[3], Etienne Karita[4], Matt Price[5,6], Susan Allen[7] and Cynthia A. Derdeyn[1,2,7]**

[1] Yerkes National Primate Research Center, Emory University, Atlanta, GA, United States, [2] Emory Vaccine Center, Emory University, Atlanta, GA, United States, [3] Zambia Emory HIV Research Project, Lusaka, Zambia, [4] Projet San Francisco, Kigali, Rwanda, [5] International AIDS Vaccine Initiative, New York, NY, United States, [6] Department of Epidemiology and Biostatistics, University of California, San Francisco, San Francisco, CA, United States, [7] Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine, Emory University, Atlanta, GA, United States

Multiple antibody effector functions arise in HIV-1 infection that could be harnessed to protect against infection or clear the persistent reservoir. Here, we have investigated the genetic and functional memory B cell and antibody landscape present during early infection in six individuals infected with either subtype A, C, or an A/C recombinant HIV-1. These individuals demonstrated varying levels of plasma autologous neutralization (nAb) against the transmitted/founder envelope (T/F Env) pseudovirus and non-neutralizing Fc-mediated effector function (nnFc) antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) against the T/F Env gp120 protein at ~7 months after infection. Genetic analysis of the immunoglobulin heavy (VH) and light (VL) chain variable domain gene segments from 352 autologous T/F Env gp120-specific single B cells recovered at this same 7-month time-point revealed an over-representation of the VH1-69 germline in five of six individuals. A defining feature of the VH1-69 utilizing gp120-specific antibodies was their significantly more hydrophobic complementarity-determining region-2 (CDRH2) regions compared to other VH CDRH2 sequences from each individual. While none of the VH1-69 antibodies possessed strong neutralizing activity against virions pseudotyped with the autologous T/F Env, almost a third were capable of mediating high ADCC activity, as assayed by intracellular granzyme B activity in CEM.NKr.CCR5 target cells coated with autologous T/F Env gp120. High ADCC mediating VH1-69 antibodies exhibited shorter complementarity-determining region-3 (CDRH3) lengths and a more neutral isoelectric point than antibodies lacking this function. In the individual that developed the highest autologous ADCC responses, the high granzyme B producing antibodies bound to surface expressed envelope in the absence of CD4 and were not enhanced by the addition of soluble CD4. Overall, VH1-69 utilizing antibodies are commonly induced against gp120 in diverse HIV-1 infections and a subset of these antibodies can mediate ADCC functions, serving as a bridge between the innate and adaptive immune response to HIV-1.

Keywords: HIV-1, gp120, VH1-69, non-neutralizing Fc-mediated effector function, neutralization

OPEN ACCESS

Edited by:
Guido Ferrari,
Duke University, United States

Reviewed by:
Gabriella Scarlatti,
San Raffaele Hospital (IRCCS), Italy
Marjorie Robert-Guroff,
National Cancer Institute (NCI),
United States

***Correspondence:**
Cynthia A. Derdeyn
cderdey@emory.edu

Specialty section:
This article was submitted to Comparative Immunology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology

Received: *29 October 2018*
Accepted: *21 December 2018*
Published: *15 January 2019*

Citation:
Smith SA, Burton SL, Kilembe W, Lakhi S, Karita E, Price M, Allen S and Derdeyn CA (2019) VH1-69 Utilizing Antibodies Are Capable of Mediating Non-neutralizing Fc-Mediated Effector Functions Against the Transmitted/Founder gp120. Front. Immunol. 9:3163. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.03163

INTRODUCTION

The potential antibody repertoire in humans is a stunning example of the creative capacity of the evolutionary process. Differential combinations of heavy-chain germline V, D, and J gene segments, kappa or lambda light-chain V and J combinations, all combined with the additional junctional diversity found within both the heavy and light-chain rearrangements, results an estimated 1×10^8 to 1×10^{15} potential B cell receptor combinations (1, 2). This diversity is the foundation for B cell receptor repertoires in individuals that can interact, to some degree, with essentially any pathogen encountered over the course of a lifetime. From this starting point, reactive B cells evolve via somatic hypermutation and affinity maturation, generating antibodies with increasing affinity for specific epitopes associated with specific pathogens, and ultimately the ability to exert neutralizing and/or non-neutralizing effector functions, to not only clear current infections, but prevent or reduce the pathogenicity of future infections by the same (or similar) pathogen (3, 4). While this process has been capitalized on by numerous vaccination strategies to generate protective antibody responses in the absence of true primary infection, we have yet to generate a highly protective prophylactic vaccine to HIV-1. An HIV-1 vaccine will need to be given to a genetically diverse human population, and induce a protective immune response against HIV-1 variants of unprecedented genetic diversity (5, 6). However, the antibody response to HIV-1 infection is not necessarily consistent or predictable between individuals. Neutralizing (nAb) and non-neutralizing Fc-mediated (nnFc) activities against the autologous virus develop at different rates between individuals (7–13). Autologous nAb are initially strain-specific and target a single epitope that differs across individuals. In contrast, broadly neutralizing antibodies (bnAbs) are capable of neutralizing a large percentage of genetically diverse HIV-1 variants; however, they develop only after several years of infection in a small percentage of infected individuals, utilize a number of different heavy and light chain germline genes and combinations, and often exhibit exceptionally rare features (14–18). Nevertheless, bnAbs remain a major goal for some HIV vaccine development efforts. A hopeful strategy for the induction of bnAbs is to target germlines of interest and guide the evolution of these specific lineages along a pre-defined trajectory. This remains an uphill battle considering the randomness and diversity inherent in the normal human antibody selection and maturation process (19). Thus, anything resembling immunological convergence, especially within the context of HIV-1 infection, could be a source of cautious optimism.

In HIV-1 infection, nnFc activities such as antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC), have been associated with slower disease progression and elite control of viral replication, as well as reduced transmission in a number of studies in humans and non-human primates (20–27). Unfortunately, relatively little is known about the genetic and biochemical characteristics of antibodies mediating these responses during natural infection, or the defining features of antigens that are capable of inducing them. The immunoglobulin VH1 subgroup has been implicated in two analyses of vaccine-induced monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) capable of anti-HIV ADCC activity (28, 29). More specifically, VH1-69 germline derived antibodies are of interest, due to their propensity to combine a hydrophobic CDRH2 with an acidic CDRH3 that facilitates binding to CD4-induced (CD4i) epitopes on gp120, with the potential to mediate ADCC (30, 31). However, this has yet to be explored in depth within the context of mAb interactions with autologous T/F gp120 in early natural infection.

Here, we have capitalized on a unique opportunity to shed light on the B cell and antibody landscape in six individuals early in Subtype A ($n = 2$), Subtype C ($n = 2$), or Subtype A/C ($n = 2$) HIV-1 infection, where the development of neutralization breadth in plasma at 3-years post-infection was previously characterized (32). While autologous nAb and ADCC activity generally developed by 3 years post-infection in most individuals, marked diversity in both nAb and ADCC responses was observed between these individuals at ∼7 months post-infection. An analysis of 352 memory B cells specific for the autologous T/F Env gp120 surface subunit isolated at this same time-point revealed the VH1-lineage was dominant, with VH1-69 heavy-chain germline genes over-represented in five of six individuals, regardless of subtype of the infecting variant or of individual host VH1-69 allelic variation. A subset (28%) of these dominant VH1-69 utilizing antibodies were capable of mediating high ADCC activity against CEM.NKr.CCR5 target cells coated with autologous T/F gp120. This subset displayed genetic features and epitope specificity distinct from the low ADCC VH1-69 mAbs. These results suggest in HIV-1 infection, VH1-69 utilizing mAbs with distinctive genetic features could be immunological "first-responders," mediating ADCC effector function against autologous gp120 while nAb develops.

METHODS

Ethics Statement

The participants, R774F, R53F, Z1800M, Z1047M, R1142F, and R66M, were among a group of individuals enrolled in heterosexual discordant couple cohorts that were selected for study based on rapid screening of adults with recent history of HIV exposure in Rwanda and Zambia. After obtaining written informed consent, blood samples were collected from participants longitudinally, every 1–3 months, depending on enrollment date. All couples in the cohort were provided monthly counseling and testing prior to the HIV-negative partner becoming positive. The procedures for written informed consent and research activities were approved by institutional review boards at all collaborating clinical research centers, with further compliance to human experimentation guidelines set forth by the United States Department of Health and Human Services. The study was reviewed and approved by the Republic of Rwanda National Ethics Committee, Emory University Institutional Review Board, and the University of Zambia Research Ethics Committee. To protect confidentiality, all subject identification numbers were anonymized by assigning a coded ID that removes any identifying information.

Blood was also obtained from normal, HIV-1 seronegative human volunteers at Emory University through an Institutional Review Board approved phlebotomy protocol. This protocol also anonymized volunteers by assigning coded IDs to remove any identifying information.

Study Population

The subjects studied here were enrolled in Protocol C, a uniform vaccine-preparedness study developed and implemented by the International AIDS Vaccine Initiative (IAVI; http://www.iavi.org) that was carried out at multiple sites in Africa, including the Zambia-Emory HIV Research Project (ZEHRP, coded IDs Z1800M, Z1047M) and Projet San Francisco (coded IDs R774F, R53F, R1142F, R66M) (33, 34). Projet San Francisco subjects were associated with epidemiologically linked donors, while the two subjects from ZEHRP were not. These subjects were also included in our previous study (32).

Cell Line Authentication

Genetica Cell Line Testing was used to authenticate 293 and TZM-bl cell lines. 293T cells: 88.9% identity, 80.00% match to HEK 293T/17. Expi293F: 90.32% identity, 93.33% match to HEK-293 [293] (ATCC CRL-1573). TZM-bl: 100.00% identity, 100% match to HeLa (ATCC CCL-2). All lines were mycoplasma negative. CEM.NKr.CCR5 cells were obtained through the NIH AIDS Reagent Program, Division of AIDS, NIAID, NIH: CEM.NKr.CCR5 Cells from Dr. Alexandra Trkola (35–37).

Neutralization Assays

Generation of Env pseudoviruses and the experimental protocol for the TZM-bl neutralization assay have been described previously (9, 11, 38–49). As R66M began antiretroviral therapy at ∼1.25 years post-infection, which can give a false impression of "neutralization" in the TZM-bl assay, IgG antibodies were purified from the 36.5-month plasma sample (Time Point 3) using a GE Healthcare Life Sciences Ab SpinTrap, according to the manufacturer's instructions (GE 28-4083-47). The concentration of the purified IgG was determined by ELISA and adjusted, and was then used in place of plasma in neutralization assays for this time point. In all other assays, plasma was used to evaluate polyclonal autologous neutralization. 2000 IU of each titered Env pseudovirus (in DMEM with ∼3.5% (vol/vol) FBS (Hyclone, # SH30088.03) and 40 μg/mL DEAE-dextran) was mixed with five-fold serial dilutions (beginning at 1:100) of heat-inactivated plasma samples or purified polyclonal IgG and assayed for its inhibitory potential against the appropriate autologous Env pseudovirus using the TZM-bl indicator cell line, with luciferase as the readout. The average background luminescence from a series of uninfected wells was subtracted from each experimental well. All assays contained duplicate wells and were repeated at least once independently. For mAb neutralization, 2000 IU pseudovirus with 10 μg/ml of mAb and added to plated TZM-bl cells. Samples were run in triplicate, and when antibody yield was sufficient, this was duplicated. "Antibody only" wells were also included as a negative control to monitor for any potential cytotoxic activity of the mAb and/or elution buffer. HIV bnAb VRC01 was used as a positive control and anti-influenza HA mAb EM4C04 was used as a negative control, both at 10 μg/ml.

Granzyme B Activity Assay

A panel of potential HIV-negative effector cell donors at Emory University were screened for CD16 158V/F polymorphisms via flow cytometry, similar to a method previously described (50). Donor PBMC were stained with APC conjugated anti-human CD56 (BioLegend, #318309), PacBlue anti-human CD3 (BioLegend, #300330), and either FITC anti-human CD16 (Thermo, #MHCD1601) for total CD16, or a FITC anti-human CD16 158V-specific clone MEM-154 (Thermo, #MAI-19563) and analyzed on an LSRII (BD Bioscience) instrument and with FlowJo 10.4 software (Treestar). The resulting ratio of the mean fluorescence of FITC-positive, CD56, CD3, cells (MEM-154:Total) was used to eliminate 158F homozygous donors, and identify 158V/F or 158V/V donors for downstream use in the GzB assay. Two donors were selected (Donor 190, Donor 457), and PBMC were isolated via Ficoll centrifugation and cryopreserved in liquid nitrogen (90% FBS, 10% DMSO) until needed.

Assessment of GzB activity was performed as previously described (51). T/F Env gp120 proteins with a C-terminal 6XHis-tag were synthesized by GENEART (ThermoFisher). Genes were synthesized and inserted into pcDNA3.3 and transfected into FreeStyle™ 293 cells. Proteins were purified via 5 ml HisTrap™ FF column, linear gradient from 20 to 500 mM Imidazole in PBS, 500 mM NaCl at 6 days post-transfection, with a HiLoad 26/600 Superdex200 polishing step. Cryopreserved PBMC from uninfected donors were recovered in RPMI (10% FBS (Hyclone) Pen/strep/l-glut) the night before the assay. To ensure consistency across assays, effector cell viability was required to be >80% on the day of the assay to proceed. CEM.NKr.CCR5 cells were coated with 8 μg gp120/million cells at RT for 45 min. Dyes TFL4 and NFL1 were added according to the manufacturer's instructions for 15 min in a 37 degree C water bath (OncoImmunin, Inc. GranToxiLux PLUS! and NFL1). CEM.NKr.CCR5 target cells were washed 2x in complete RPMI media, then mixed with primary donor PBMC cells at a 30:1 Effector:Target ratio (25 μl 300,000 Effector cells; 25 μl 10,000 Target cells), along with 75 μl of GzB substrate, and incubated for 5 min at RT. Twenty five microliters of five-fold serially diluted plasma (beginning at a dilution of 1:200), 50 μg/ml HIV-Ig [NIH AIDS Reagent Program, Division of AIDS, NIAID, NIH: from NABI and NHLBI (cat# 3957) (52)] positive control, or 50 μg/ml commercial IgG (SouthernBiotech, #0150-01) negative control were added, and incubated at RT for 15 min. Tubes were spun at 300 × *g* for 1 min, and incubated at 37°C, 5% CO2, for 1 h. Fixed cells (final concentration 1.85% formaldehyde, 10 min) were washed, then resuspended in buffer for flow cytometric analysis. Because fixation could result in loss of GzB signal, samples were immediately analyzed on an LSRII (BD Bioscience) instrument and with FlowJo 10.4 software (Treestar). Target cell only controls were run to ensure proper gating of targets vs. effector cells. Target with added effector cells in the absence of antibody (media only) were included

to quantify background GzB signaling. Values that became negative after subtraction of background were normalized to 0%. Negative (commercial IgG) and positive (HIV-Ig) controls were included in every assay run. Assays were not valid unless the percentage of GzB positive cells in the positive control tube were >10%, after subtraction of background activity. Only results from valid assays are included. Example Granzyme B assay flow-plots are included in **Supplementary Figure 1**. To test for inherent differences across the gp120 proteins that could influence the assay, negative and positive control GzB activity was examined. There were no statistical differences between the T/F gp120 proteins in background (Target + Effector cell only samples), negative control (commercial IgG), or positive control (HIV-Ig) GzB activity (**Supplementary Figures 2A–C**). There was also no statistical difference in all experimental values between the two effector cell donors, as values obtained from each donor were not statistically different (**Supplementary Figure 2D**, Mann–whitney, $p > 0.05$) and were highly correlated (**Supplementary Figure 2E**, Spearman, $p < 0.0001$, $r = 0.83$). To measure GzB activity induced by mAbs, the protocol was repeated in an identical manner, with all corresponding positive and negative controls, but with experimental mAbs tested at five-fold serial dilutions beginning at 5 μg/ml.

B Cell Sorting

The same preparations of T/F Env gp120 proteins as used in the GzB assay, described in detail above, were used for single B cell sorting. Cryopreserved PBMC obtained from the sites in Rwanda and Zambia (∼5–10 million cells/vial) were washed and resuspended in PBS + 2% FBS. After counting, cells were incubated with 8 μg of the autologous T/F gp120 per million cells and stained with: live/dead Aqua (Invitrogen, # L34957), anti-CD3 Pacific Blue (BD Pharmingen, # 558124), anti-CD19 BV650 (BioLegend, # 302237), anti-IgG FITC (BD Pharmingen, #555786), anti-His PE (Miltenyi Biotec, # 130-098-810), and single-cell sorted into 96-well plates containing 20 μl cell lysis buffer (Superscript III RT buffer, Tween, DTT, Invitrogen, #18080-044) (RNaseOUT, Invitrogen, #100000840). Sorts were carried out using a FACS Aria Cell Sorter and the following gating strategy: size, singlets, live, CD3-, CD19+, IgG+, gp120/His+. CD3+ gp120/His+ cells were monitored as positive controls for gp120 binding and detection.

Immunoglobulin heavy and light chain variable domain regions were PCR-amplified as previously described, using oligo-dT (ThermoScientific, #AM5730G) and SuperScriptIII (Invitrogen, #18080-044) (53). IgG-specific primer was also included in the RT reaction for individuals R53F, R774F, and Z1047M to increase recovery of heavy chain regions. Five microliters of the RT reaction was used to amplify heavy (IgG only), kappa, and lambda chain variable regions using high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) purified primers as described in Liao et al. (53) and Phusion Hotstart II High Fidelity DNA Polymerase (Thermo Scientific, #F537S) for first round nested PCR. For the second round PCR reaction, 2.5 μl of first-round was used as a template. PCR amplified variable regions were gel purified (Qiagen, #28706) and combined with a CMV promoter containing DNA fragment, and the appropriate corresponding constant region DNA fragment (including a polyA tail) via overlapping PCR (53). Plasmids HV0024, HV0023, HV0025, and HV0026 were kindly provided by Dr. Larry (Huaxin) Liao at the Duke Human Vaccine Institute. The assembled full-length heavy- and light-chain segments were then cloned into pCR2.1TOPO-TA (ThermoFisher, # K4500-40) for long-term storage and mAb expression. VH and VL plasmid pairs were co-transfected at a 1:2 ratio into 6-well plates containing Expi293F cells (Thermo Fisher Scientific, Expi293 Expression System Kit, #A14635). Five to seven days post-transfection, mAbs were purified from the cell culture supernatant using Ab SpinTrap with Protein G Sepharose High Performance (GE Healthcare, # 28408347). The concentrations of the purified mAbs were quantified on an Octet RED96 using Anti-Human IgG Fc AHQ biosensors (ForteBio, #18-5001). mAb expression plasmids that could be stably amplified and resulted in transfections with yields >100 μg/ml were carried forward with antibody effector function characterizations.

PCR and Sequence Analysis of Immunoglobulin Variable Domains

The nucleotide sequence of each PCR amplicon was determined by Beckman Coulter Genomics or Sequetech using the following primers: H-R474 (5′- GCTGTGCCCCCAGAGGTG-3′) or K-R405 (5′-GACAGATGGTGCAGCCACAGTTCG-3′) or L-R400 (5′-CAGAGTGACCGAGGGGGCAGC-3′). These partial sequences were analyzed with NCBI IGBLAST for putative germline gene identification (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/igblast/igblast.cgi) (**Supplementary Table 1**) (54). After assembly of the PCR fragments and cloning, plasmids were sequenced with the appropriate reverse primer, as well as CL-F681 (5′- TCTGGGTTCCAGGTTCCACTGGTGAC-3′). The resulting sequences were re-analyzed using IMGT vquest (http://imgt.org/IMGT_vquest/vquest) for germline gene verification, framework and CDR mapping, quantification of percent identity to germline, CDR H3 and L3 amino acid length, molecular mass, and pI (**Supplementary Table 1**) (55, 56). Circos diagrams were generated via the Circos online tool (http://mkweb.bcgsc.ca/tableviewer/) (57). CDRH2 grand average of hydropathy (GRAVY) scores were calculated using an online tool (http://www.gravy-calculator.de/). CDRH3 tyrosine sulfation sites were enumerated with the Sulfinator online tool (http://web.expasy.org/sulfinator/) (58). Sequences were uploaded to Genbank under the following accession numbers: MK269362–MK270058.

Assessment of Affinity and Epitope Binning Using Biolayer Interferometry (BLI)

Affinity assays were performed on an Octet RED96 (ForteBio, Inc, Menlo Park, CA) at 30°C, with 1,000 rpm agitation. Each mAb was immobilized on an Anti-hIgG Fc Capture (AHC) biosensor (Fortebio, # 18-5060) at a concentration of 25 μg/ml for 300 s, and a baseline reading was recorded for 60 s in kinetics buffer (PBS with 0.01% BSA, 0.02% Tween20, and 0.005% sodium azide). Sensors were then immersed in varying molarities of the corresponding autologous T/F gp120 protein for 300 s,

then allowed to dissociate in kinetics buffer for 600 s. Sensors were regenerated before each kinetics assay. Human IgG at 25 μg/ml dipped into kinetics buffer was included on every assay plate for reference during analysis (SouthernBiotech, #0150-01). Molarity (range 5–0.06 μM), association time (range 300–600 s), and dissociation time (range 600–1,200 s) were varied as necessary to obtain appropriate X^2 and R^2 values. Anti-influenza HA antibody EM4C04 (kindly provided by Dr. Jens Wrammert, Emory University) and/or commercial IgG were included to survey for non-specific mAb binding against each gp120.

K_D values were calculated using ForteBio Data Analysis 9.0. After reference subtraction, Y-axis data was aligned to the 50–59.9 s of the baseline reading. For inter-step correction, data was aligned to the dissociation step. Data was then processed with Savitzky-Gola filtering, and curve fitting was performed using a 1:1 binding model. K_D values were averaged from ≥2 reads (average number of reads ≥3) with appropriate X^2 and R^2 (median $X^2 = 0.11$, range = 0.00–1.94; median $R^2 = 0.99$, range = 0.93–1.0) (**Supplementary Table 3**).

Binning (competition) assays were performed at 30 degrees C, with 1,000 rpm agitation. Synthesized gp120 (R66M T/F Env O20) at a concentration of 25 μg/ml was immobilized on an Anti-Penta-HIS (HIS1K, ForteBio, # 18-5120) biosensor for 300 s, and a baseline reading was recorded for 30 s in kinetics buffer. Sensors were then immersed in 0.66 μM primary (R66M-derived) mAb for 10 min. R66M-derived mAbs that resulted in a primary signal of <0.1 at 0.66 uM (lower affinity mAbs) were increased in molarity, as production allowed, to reach that threshold. mAbs that could not be produced at this concentration were not analyzed. After a second baseline reading for 30 s in kinetics buffer, sensors were immersed in 0.66 μM secondary antibody ("reference mAb"—VRC01, 3074, PGT121, R66M 7C12) (VRC01 mAb Heavy Chain Expression Vector and VRC01 mAb Light Chain Expression Vector was obtained through the NIH AIDS Reagent Program, Division of AIDS, NIAID, NIH: from Dr. John Mascola (cat# 12035 and 12036) (59, 60); 3074, kindly provided by Xiangpeng Kong, NYU School of Medicine; PGT121, PGT 121 was obtained through the NIH AIDS Reagent Program, Division of AIDS, NIAID, NIH: Anti-HIV-1 gp120 Monoclonal (PGT121) catalog #12343 (61) to assess reference mAb binding capacity in the presence of primary R66M mAb binding. Reference mAb as primary and secondary mAb was included as a positive control for competition (reduced reference binding). EM4C04 (anti-influenza mAb) primary and reference mAb secondary was used as an additional control for non-specific competition (peak reference binding). Binning values were calculated using ForteBio Data Analysis 9.0. R66M mAbs capable of reducing reference mAb binding to <50% of reference binding in the presence of EM4C04 primary (set at 100% binding), were considered competitors for that reference mAb.

Flow Cytometric Analysis of mAb Binding to Surface Env With and Without sCD4

293T cells were transfected with a plasmid encoding the T/F *env* gene isolated from R66M (the same plasmid utilized for generation of R66M Env pseudovirus) using Fugene HD (Promega). At 48-h after transfection, cells were washed with PBS, and briefly trypsinized. After washing again with PBS, cells were aliquoted and resuspended in flow buffer (PBS + 5% FBS), with or without 25 μg/ml recombinant human sCD4 (R&D Systems, 514-CD), and allowed to incubate for 30 min at RT. Cells were then incubated with 25 μg/ml polyclonal IgG (SouthernBiotech, #0150-01), 5 μg/ml PGT121, 10 μg/ml of CD4i mAb17b, or an R66M mAb at RT for 30 min. After washing with flow buffer, samples were then incubated with Goat Anti-Human IgG Fc biotin (SouthernBiotech, # 2014-08) at 1:200 for 20 min at RT. After washing with flow buffer, samples were incubated with 1:1,000 PE-conjugated streptavidin (BD Pharmingen, #554061) for 20 min at RT, while protected from light. Cells were then washed and fixed for 10 min (3.7% formaldehyde). The percentage of PE/Env positive cells were determined via quantification on an LSRII (BD Bioscience) instrument and with FlowJo 10.4 software (Treestar). All samples were analyzed on at least three independent occasions. PGT 121 was obtained through the NIH AIDS Reagent Program, Division of AIDS, NIAID, NIH: Anti-HIV-1 gp120 Monoclonal (PGT121) (61). 17b was obtained through the NIH AIDS Reagent Program, Division of AIDS, NIAID, NIH: Anti-HIV-1 gp120 Monoclonal (17b) from Dr. James E. Robinson (62–67).

Statistical Analyses

All graphing, calculations, and analyses were performed in Prism 6.0. Non-parametric statistical tests were used. A Mann–Whitney test was used to compare two groups; a Kruskal–Wallis test was used to compare more than two groups. Ordinary one-way ANOVA, Tukey's multiple comparison test was used for multiple comparisons. Chi-square test was used for contingency analyses. Spearman rank test was used to assess correlations.

RESULTS

Marked Variation in the Development of Plasma Autologous nAb and Non-neutralizing Fc Activity During Early HIV-1 Infection

In a previous study, 21 HIV-1 infected individuals from serodiscordant couple cohorts in Zambia (Z) and Rwanda (R) were evaluated for viral and host factors that contributed to the development of plasma nAb breadth at 3-years after infection (32). Here, six of those subjects were included in a more focused investigation of autologous nAb and ADCC activity against the respective T/F Env. These six individuals were selected because they were infected by the types of HIV-1 variants that predominate in these cohorts, subtype A (R774F and R53F), subtype C (Z1800M and Z1047M) and A/C recombinant HIV-1 (R1142F and R66M), and because sample quality, quantity, and availability was suitable for the study, which included sorting of antigen-specific B cells from cryopreserved PBMC. Plasma samples used in the analyses were collected at Time Point 1 (average of 0.89 months post-antigen-positive test date, range 0–2.9 months), Time Point 2 (average

of 7.5 months post-infection, range 5.1–8.7 months), and Time Point 3 (average of 37.5 months post-infection, range 36.4–40.2 months). The same plasma sample was used to measure both nAb and ADCC activity in each case. The T/F Env for each individual had been derived previously using reverse transcription and single genome PCR amplification of plasma collected at an average of 34 days after the estimated date of infection (range 22–65 days), as described in Smith et al. (32). Sequence analysis was used to identify an amplicon representing the T/F Env consensus sequence, which was cloned into an expression plasmid for generation of pseudovirus for use in the neutralization assay (32). The T/F Env gp120 coding sequence of each individual was used to manufacture the protein for use in the ADCC activity assay and subsequent single B cell sorting.

Figure 1 shows the combined nAb and ADCC activity for the three longitudinal plasma samples against the autologous T/F Env for the six subjects. At Time Point 1 (**Figure 1A**, 0.89 months), three of the six individuals exhibited clear nAb activity that reached ∼20% at the lowest dilutions (green, solid lines, left Y-axis). The highest levels of nAb were associated with individuals whose samples were obtained further from transmission (R774F, 1.4 months and R1142F, 2.9 months). ADCC activity was negligible in these early plasma samples, except for R1142F, which reached 4.6% GzB positive cells (green, dashed lines, right Y-axis). Thus, both nAb and ADCC antibody functions can be detected using the autologous T/F Env as early as 2.9 months after infection.

At Time Point 2 (**Figure 1B**, 7.5 months), nAb activity against the T/F Env exceeded 50% in five of six individuals at a 1:100 dilution of plasma, and was more than 80% in two individuals (red, solid lines, left Y-Axis). The exception was R774F, whose plasma nAb activity had not increased from that present at Time Point 1. ADCC activity was also readily detectable in five of six individuals at Time Point 2, with the average peak percentage of GzB positive target cells ranging from 8.1 to 20.2% at various plasma dilutions. In contrast, ADCC activity in R53F plasma remained indistinguishable from background, even though 50% neutralization of the T/F Env was achieved at this time point, suggesting that these two antibody populations were distinct.

At Time Point 3 (**Figure 1C**, 37.5 months), very potent autologous nAb was present in five of six individuals, exceeding 80% neutralization at the lower plasma dilutions, with two individuals exhibiting complete neutralization of the T/F Env (blue, solid lines, left Y-axis). nAb in R66M plasma was notably low at this later time point. High ADCC responses, peaking at 14.7–30.2% positive for GzB at various plasma dilutions, were present in all six individuals. Of note, when this data is compared with previously reported neutralization breadth at 3-years post-infection for this small set of individuals, no association between autologous ADCC activity and the development of neutralization breadth is apparent (18, 32). Overall, autologous nAb and ADCC activity developed in all six subjects to varying degrees, but the individual trajectory and magnitude varied.

Memory B Cells With VH1-69 Dominate the Early Anti-gp120 Response in Five of Six Individuals

To understand the early antibody responses to the autologous HIV-1 T/F Env gp120 at higher resolution, variable heavy (VH) and variable light (VL) gene segments were recovered from single IgG+ memory B cells sorted for reactivity with the autologous T/F Env gp120 protein using cryopreserved PBMC collected at 7.5 months after infection (Time Point 2). This approach was designed to capture a wide variety of Env-specific B cells that were activated and selected for survival during the first 7 months of HIV-1 infection, and had the capacity to contribute to the plasma nAb and ADCC functions observed at this time point (**Figure 1B**). A total of 352 Env-specific memory B cells were recovered, and the VH and VL germline gene usage and pairings present in each subject are illustrated in **Figure 2**. In the Circos plots, each colored ribbon indicates a unique VH/VL combination, and the width is proportional to frequency (57). Broad diversity of VH and VL usage and pairing was observed in each individual, supporting that a highly polyclonal antibody response against epitopes in gp120 had occurred during the first months of infection.

Notably, VH1-derived B cells were commonly elicited in these individuals (**Figure 2**, shades of blue), similar to what has been described in chronic HIV-1 infection, VH1-derived B cells (68–72). Specifically, VH1-69 was the dominant VH germline gene utilized by T/F gp120-specific memory B-cells in five of the six individuals studied (**Figure 2**, royal blue). The frequency of VH1-69 B cells in those five individuals ranged from 21 to 51% (**Figure 3A**). Indeed, the VH1-69-lineage was not only dominant, but also over-utilized in all five individuals when compared to frequencies obtained from circulating B cells with successfully rearranged IGHV genes [reported range 3.1–9.7 (73)], or a previous analysis of eight HIV-1 vaccine volunteers pre-vaccination [reported range 0.7–8.2% IgG peripheral blood (74)]. Therefore, we investigated in more detail the dominance of VH1-69 to understand the impact of this immunological phenomenon on the early antibody responses.

Pathogenically cross-reactive VH1-69 lineages likewise dominated a DNA prime/trivalent gp140 protein boost HIV vaccination regimen (74). And, hydrophobic interactions between VH1-69 CDRH2 and hydrophobic cavities within HIV-1 gp120 have also previously been observed (30). In the data collected here, grand average hydropathy (GRAVY) scores of isolated T/F gp120-specific VH1-69 CDHR2 amino acid sequences ranged from 0.34 to 2.7, with median GRAVY scores ranging from 1.28 to 1.89, indicating high hydrophobicity (**Figure 3B**, **Supplementary Table 1**). In contrast, the median CDRH2 GRAVY score for the corresponding non-VH1-69 T/F gp120-specific B cells for each individual was significantly lower, ranging from −1.16 to −0.46 (Ordinary one-way ANOVA, Tukey's multiple comparisons test: R53F $p = 0.018$, all others $p < 0.0001$). These observations reinforce the concept that high CDRH2 hydrophobicity is a unique and universal feature of the VH1-69 antibodies.

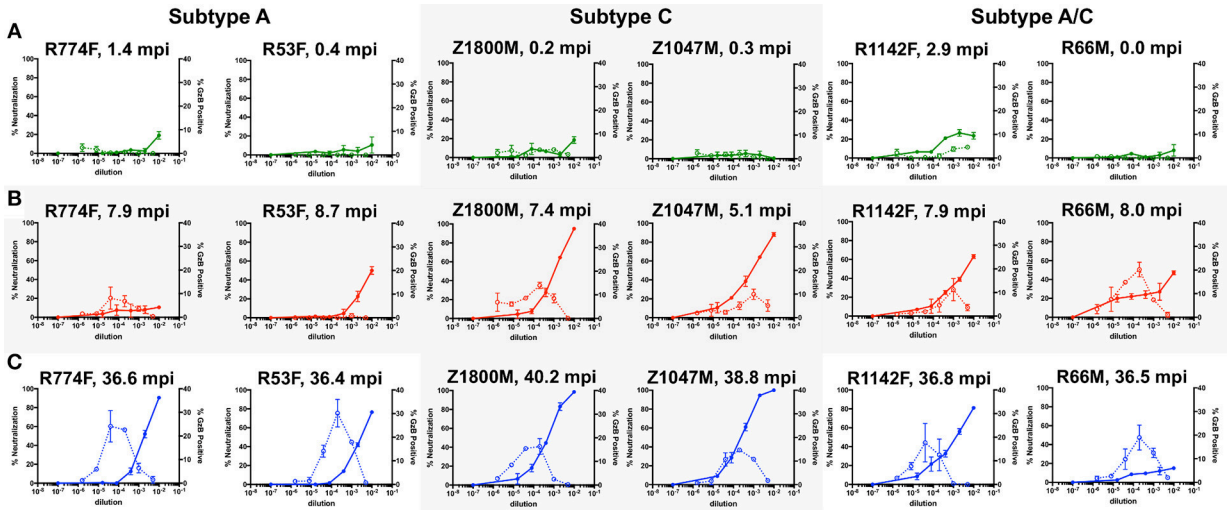


FIGURE 1 | Evaluation of longitudinal nAb and ADCC capacity of plasma samples against the autologous T/F Env. nAb and ADCC activity in plasma collected at chronologic time points 1 (**A**, 0.87 months post infection), 2 (**B**, 7.5 months), and 3 (**C**, 37.5 months); All graphs show the percent neutralization of autologous T/F Env pseudovirus (closed symbols with solid line, left Y-axis) and percentage of fluorogenic GzB substrate positive CEM.NKr.CCR5 cells coated with autologous T/F Env gp120 (open symbols with dashed line, right Y-axis). The subjects are grouped by HIV-1 subtype, which is labeled on the top. The time points shown are 0 to 2.9 months after the first antigen-positive test (green), 5.1–8.7 months after the first antigen positive test (red lines), and 36.4–40.2 months after the first antigen positive test (blue lines). The X-axis indicates the reciprocal dilution of the individual's plasma plotted on a $\log_{10}$ scale. Symbols and error bars represent the mean and standard error of mean, respectively, between at least two replicate experiments for neutralization, and the mean and standard error of mean of independent experiments utilizing cells from two different donors for the GzB assay. Control data for (i) plasma nAb against a negative control VSV-g Env pseudovirus and (ii) GzB mediated by normal human serum against the T/F Env gp120 can be found in **Supplementary Figure 2F**.

During influenza infection, the presence of a phenylalanine (F) or leucine (L) polymorphism at position 54 can strongly influence the frequency of VH1-69 utilization in anti-influenza antibodies, and their resulting functions (75). Though individuals' genomes were not sequenced to determine specific alleles within this study, this information was inferred from the isolated VH1-69 sequences. Within this group of individuals, VH1-69 containing 54F (associated with neutralization of influenza) comprised the majority of anti-gp120 VH1-69 sequences in five of the six individuals (**Figure 4**, green). These findings reflect previous analyses that noted the 54L-homozygous genotype is rarely found in African populations, with 54F-homozygous and 54F/L-heterozygous alleles composing the vast majority of VH1-69 genotypes (2, 76). Interestingly, the 54L polymorphism was observed in the majority of VH1-69 sequences from one individual, R66M (73%, **Figure 4**, **Supplementary Tables 1**, **2**), while it was at a much lower frequency of between 0 and 14% in the other individuals. VH1-69 sequences that contained an amino acid other than F or L at position 54 were isolated from three individuals: R774F, Z1800M, and R66M, further demonstrating the polymorphic nature of VH1-69 alleles.

VH1-69 Utilizing mAbs Mediate ADCC Effector Functions but Are Poorly Neutralizing

In the context of influenza, "innate-like" VH1-69 lineage mAbs can be not only broadly reactive, but broadly neutralizing as well (77). To explore the potential antiviral functions of the dominant anti-gp120 VH1-69 antibody response in early HIV-1 infection, mAbs were produced by cloning VH and VL regions into expression vectors that provided a common IgG1 constant region (53). Thus, all mAbs had identical Fc regions, allowing us to attribute differences solely to the variable domains. Neutralizing activity was present against the autologous T/F Env in five of the six plasma samples contemporaneous to the antibody isolation (**Figure 1B**). We therefore quantified the neutralization capacity of 105 VH1-69 mAbs against virions pseudotyped with the corresponding autologous T/F Env in the same manner. It should be noted that only one VH1-69 mAb was regenerated from subject R53F, due to the genetics of the B cell response (**Figure 2**). At 10 μg/ml, none of the mAbs demonstrated potent autologous neutralizing activity, when defined as the ability to reduce infectivity of the T/F Env to below 50% (**Figure 5A**, **Supplementary Table 4**). These VH1-69 antibodies are therefore probably not responsible for the observed plasma nAb activity.

Additionally, ADCC activity was also present in the 7.5-month plasma samples in all individuals except R53F (**Figure 1B**). We therefore evaluated 94 VH1-69 mAbs (overlapping almost completely with the 105 analyzed for nAb activity) for their capacity to mediate ADCC functions in the same manner, using concentrations of 5, 1, and 0.2 μg/ml of each mAb against CEM.NKr.CCR5 cells coated with the autologous T/F Env gp120 (**Supplementary Table 4**). In contrast to the universally low neutralization capacity exhibited by the VH1-69 mAbs, 27 VH1-69 mAbs mediated high GzB activity, defined as having a peak of GzB positive cells >10% over the course

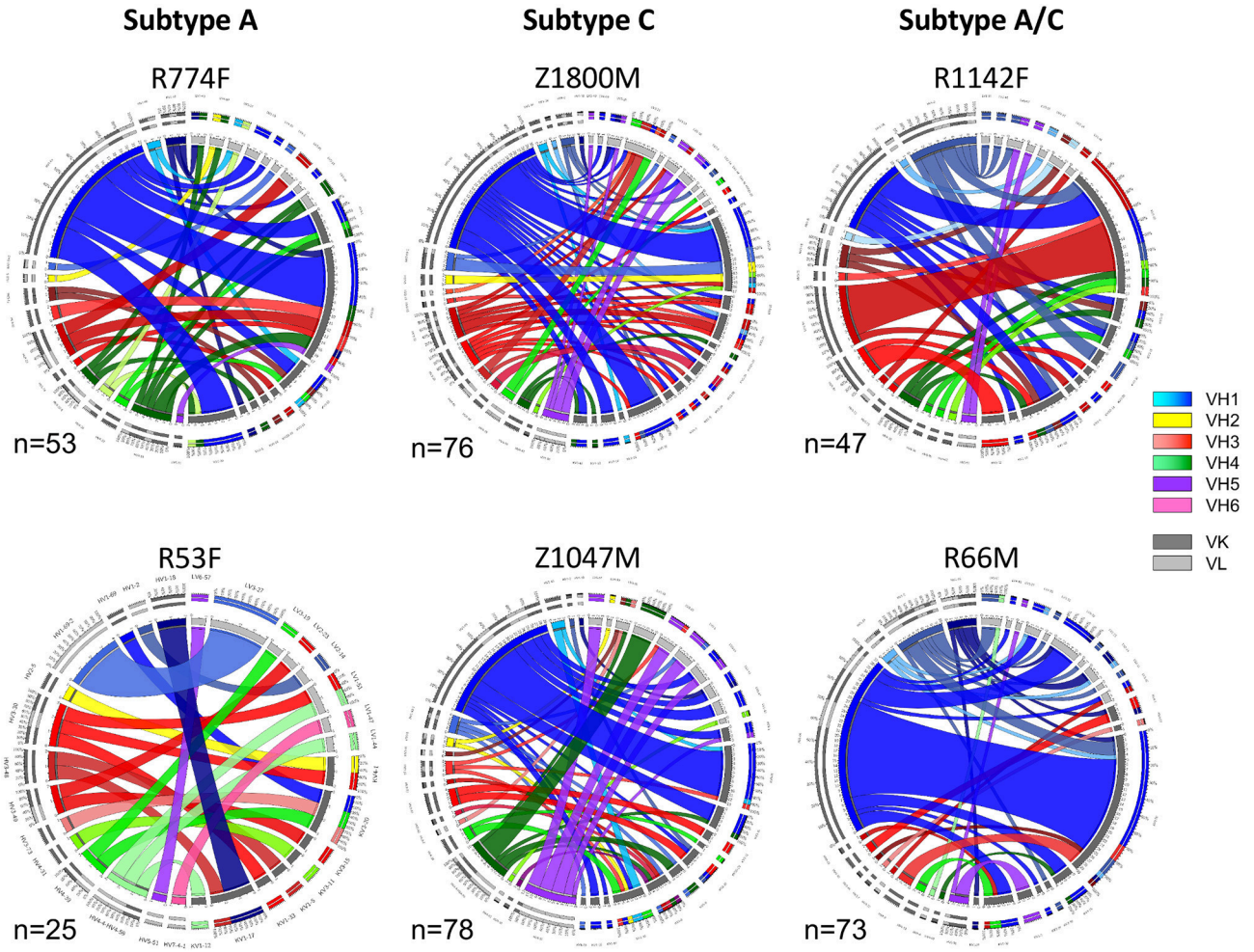


FIGURE 2 | Circos diagrams of VH and VL pairing networks at 7.5-months post-infection (time point 2). Germline genes were assigned to each VH and VL sequence from each gp120-reactive single B cell using NCBI IGBLAST and vquest analysis. Circos diagrams were utilized to illustrate the network of VH germline (shades of blue VH-1, yellow VH-2, shades of red VH-3, shades of green VH-4, purple VH-5, pink VH-6) with the paired VL κ (dark gray) or λ (light gray) germline from individuals infected by HIV-1 Subtype A (left column), Subtype C (center column), and Subtype A/C unique recombinants (right column). Band width is proportional to the number of paired sequences that contain those VH and VL pairs. The total number of paired sequences analyzed for each individual is shown.

of the dilution series (**Figure 5B**, **Supplementary Table 4**), a conservative threshold based on natural variation in "target + effector only" control values between patient-derived gp120s (**Supplementary Figure 2**). Furthermore, "high GzB" VH1-69 mAbs were present in the same five individuals that exhibited plasma ADCC activity (**Figure 1B**). The largest proportion of high ADCC-mediating VH1-69 mAbs was observed in Z1800M (56% of tested mAbs), while the highest magnitude was observed in a subset of R66M mAbs (more than 30% peak GzB signaling). As noted above, only one VH1-69 antibody was recovered and tested from subject R53F. Interestingly, R53F was also the only subject that did not have detectable plasma GzB activity at the 7.5-month time point (**Figure 1B**). Thus, some anti-gp120 VH1-69 mAbs exhibit high ADCC-mediated effector capabilities but poor neutralizing activity in early HIV-1 infection, based on the analysis of memory B cells in these six individuals. These VH1-69 antibodies could contribute to the GzB activity mediated by the contemporaneous plasma.

High ADCC Activity Is Associated With Shorter CDRH3 Regions and Higher Isoelectric Point in VH1-69 mAbs

Because all of the VH1-69 mAbs studied here have the same Fc region, any differences in the ability to mediate ADCC effector function such as GzB signaling must be attributable to the variable regions. Therefore, all of the VH1-69 mAbs shown in **Figure 5B** were divided into two groups: those with peak GzB positive cells >10% (after subtraction of background activity), and those below 10%, to search for defining features. When stratified in this manner, there was no statistical difference between the two groups in a number of genetic and functional features, including VH identity to germline,

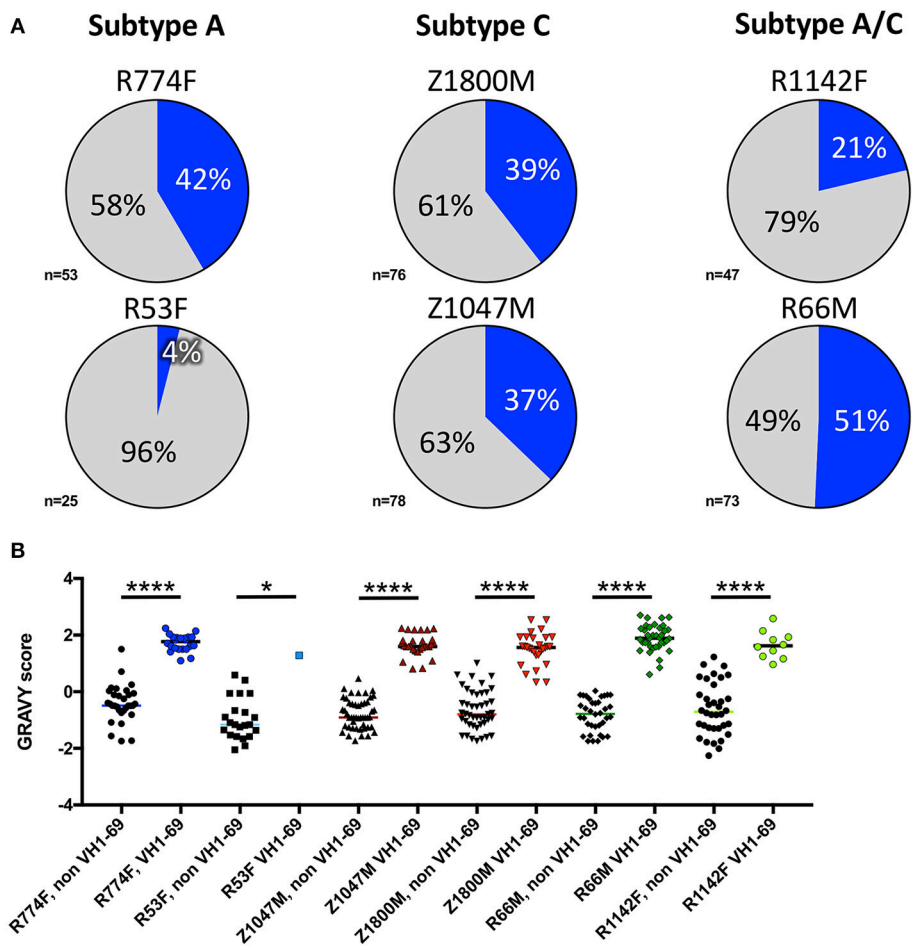


FIGURE 3 | VH1-69 is over-represented among anti-gp120 memory B cells at 7.5-months post-infection. **(A)** Percentages of VH1-69 germline usage (blue graph sections) vs. all other variable heavy-chain germline genes (gray graph sections) isolated from memory B cells reactive to autologous T/F gp120 in six individuals infected with Subtype A (left column), Subtype C (center column), and Subtype A/C unique recombinants (right column). The total number of heavy chain sequences analyzed for each individual is shown. **(B)** To determine whether these VH1-69 sequences maintained a hydrophobic complementarity-determining region-2 (CDRH2) associated with VH1-69, grand average hydropathy (GRAVY) scores (Y-axis) were calculated from non-VH1-69 (black symbols) and VH1-69 sequences (colored symbols) obtained from each individual (http://www.gravy-calculator.de), bars represent median values. Individual codes are listed below the X-axis. VH1-69 CDRH2 were significantly more hydrophobic (positive values) than the non-VH1-69 CDRH2 in every individual (Ordinary one-way ANOVA, Tukey's multiple comparisons test: R53F $p = 0.018$, all others $p < 0.0001$). Raw values are reported in **Supplementary Table 1**.

number of tyrosine sulfation sites within CDRH3 (30, 58), CDRH2 GRAVY score, kappa or lambda VL pairing, or binding affinity for the autologous T/F gp120 (**Supplementary Figure 3**, **Supplementary Tables 1**, **4**). However, there was a significant difference between high and low ADCC VH1-69 antibodies in autologous neutralization capacity, with some of the low GzB antibodies capable of weak autologous neutralization ($p = 0.0015$, **Supplementary Figure 3**, **Supplementary Table 4**). It is important to note that, despite this difference, neither group of antibodies was capable of potent autologous neutralization at 10 μg/ml, which is a relatively high concentration (GzB <10% median = 97% infectivity; GzB >10% median = 106% infectivity).

In contrast, CDRH3 length did emerge as a defining feature of high Gzb activity, with antibodies capable of mediating high ADCC activity having statistically shorter CDRH3 amino acid length ($p = 0.0007$, **Figure 6A**, **Supplementary Tables 1**, **2**). However, the median CDRH3 length for these high GzB antibodies was not unusually short compared to the median length determined for rearranged human B cells (median CDRH3 length for GzB >10% = 14 AA vs. reported median value = 15 AA) (70). This observation suggests that long CDRH3 regions may be less conducive to antibody-Fc interactions as measured in this setting.

To further investigate the association of CDRH3 length and high ADCC function, we focused on the impact of the J region, which is selected during VDJ rearrangement and contributes to the length of CDRH3. While there are six J_H regions in the human repertoire, it is striking that bnAbs commonly use the longest J region, J6, including b12, 3BNC117, 8ANC131, PGT145, PG9,

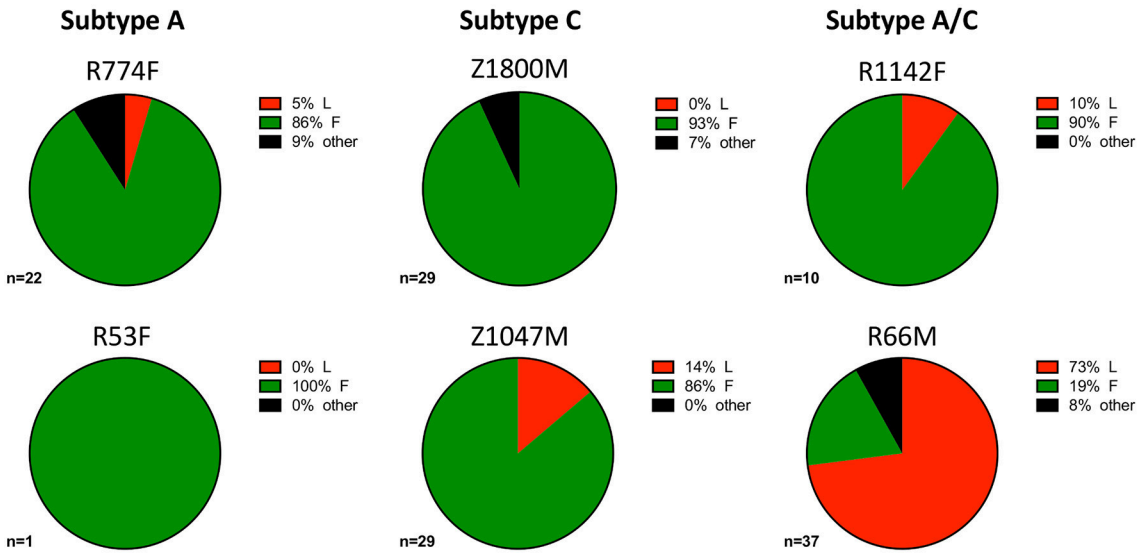


FIGURE 4 | VH1-69 polymorphisms at amino acid 54 within complementarity-determining region-2 (CDRH2)**.** The frequency of 51p1-like 54F (green), hv1263-like 54L (red), and other amino acids in six individuals infected with Subtype A (left column), Subtype C (center column), and Subtype A/C unique recombinants (right column) is illustrated. The 54F polymorphism was dominant except for R66M (bottom right), where 54L was present in the majority of the anti-gp120 VH1-69 sequences and R53F where only one VH1-69 sequence was present. A minority of VH1-69 sequences contained "other" amino acids (black) at this position in three individuals: R774F, Z1800M, and R66M. The total number of VH1-69 sequences analyzed for each individual is shown. Raw values are reported in **Supplementary Table 2**.

PGT121, PGT151, and 2F5 (16). We therefore examined J region usage in the VH1-69 mAbs to gain a better understanding of how CDRH3 length was generated. Using the VH1-69 mAbs grouped by low or high GzB activity as shown in **Figure 6A**, similar J1, J3, and J4 usage was found between the two groups (**Figure 6B** low and **Figure 6C** high, **Supplementary Tables 2, 4**). Conversely, J6 was more frequently utilized by low GzB antibodies (22.0%) compared to the high GzB group (3.9%), the latter of which had higher J5 usage. None of the VH1-69 mAbs contained J2. The overall distribution of J chains was significantly different between the two groups of VH1-69 antibodies (Chi-square, $p = 0.0004$, J2 was excluded due to the zero frequency). Thus, the infrequent presence of J6 could contribute to shorter CDRH3 regions in this antibody population. There was also a significant difference in the calculated isoelectric point (pI) for the heavy chain of the antibodies able to mediate high GzB activity vs. those that did not ($p = 0.035$, **Figure 6D**, **Supplementary Table 2**). The pI is the pH at which the antibody has no net charge, and can be estimated based on the amino acid sequence. pI can influence such parameters as tissue distribution and clearance *in vivo*. Interestingly, mAbs that mediated higher GzB activity exhibited a higher, closer to neutral, median isoelectric point (4.58 vs. 6.15). Thus, at a physiological pH, the high GzB mAbs would be less negatively charged than the low GzB mAbs, perhaps influencing their recognition of certain epitopes. Overall, this analysis revealed that VH1-69 antibodies that mediate higher GzB activity against target cells coated with the autologous T/F Env gp120 protein have unique features that include relatively shorter CDRH3 regions, associated with J chain preference, and a closer to neutral isoelectric point than those with low GzB activity.

mAb Epitope Does Not Define High Autologous ADCC Activity

To investigate the epitopes that were targeted on gp120 by high ADCC-mediating mAbs, a series of binding competition experiments were carried out with VH1-69 mAbs from the individual with the highest ADCC signaling, R66M. We utilized bnAbs with known specificities against the CD4bs, V3, and the mannose patch/base of V3 to gain information about the R66M mAb epitopes. CD4bs mAbs are thought to be unable to mediate ADCC in the gp120 coating assay because the protein is bound to cell-surface CD4. Therefore, to test this hypothesis, 28 R66M VH1-69 mAbs were assessed for their ability to compete with the CD4bs bnAb VRC01 for binding to the R66M T/F gp120 protein using biolayer interferometry. Overall, the majority of VH1-69 mAbs from R66M did not compete with VRC01. Only 2 of 28 mAbs reduced VRC01 binding to <50% (**Figure 7A**, **Supplementary Table 4**). As expected, these two antibodies belonged to the low GzB signaling group; however, there was no statistical difference between the two groups in their ability to compete with VRC01 binding (**Figure 7A**).

We next tested competition against a V3-directed bnAb, 3,074, that recognizes a linear epitope conserved among HIV-1 clades A, B, and C (78). In general, the VH1-69 mAbs recovered from R66M competed only weakly 3,074 (**Figure 7B**, **Supplementary Table 4**). However, the level of V3-directed competition was greater in the low GzB group (**Figure 7B**, Mann–Whitney, $p = 0.005$). Thus, these findings contradict the idea that CD4 binding in the gp120-coating assay preferentially measures V3-mediated GzB activity (**Figure 7B**). Furthermore, none of the six high GzB mAbs from R66M appeared to target V3.

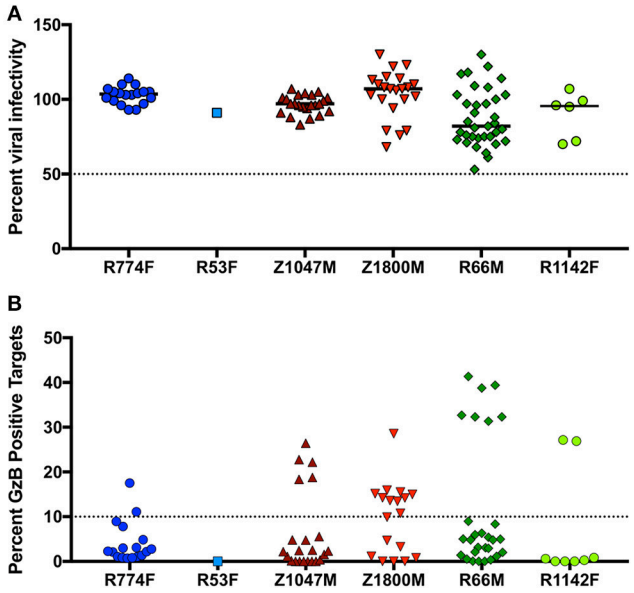


FIGURE 5 | Effector function capabilities of VH1-69 antibodies**. (A)** A concentration of 10 μg/ml of each mAb was evaluated in the TZM-bl neutralization assay against the autologous T/F Env pseudovirus for each individual (labeled below the X-axis). Percent residual infectivity of the T/F Env pseudotyped virus for individual mAbs, relative to virus-only controls, is shown (Y-axis). Symbols represent the mean of triplicate wells, bars represent the median of all mAbs from each individual. **(B)** Each mAb was used in a five-fold dilution series of 5, 1, and 0.2 μg/ml against CEM.NKr.CCR5 cells coated with autologous T/F Env gp120. The peak percentage of cells positive for Granzyme B (GzB) activity over this dilution series, after subtraction of background activity (percentage of GzB positive cells in target + effector reactions), is shown on the Y-axis. Each symbol represents the mean of two separate assays, utilizing effector cells from two independent HIV-negative effector cell donors. The activity of each mAb against target cells coated with the autologous gp120 are labeled for each individual subject below the X-axis. "High" activity was defined as achieving GzB activity >10% (dashed line, Y-axis). Bars indicate the median value for each subject. Raw values are reported in **Supplementary Table 4**.

The R66M mAbs were next competed against bnAb PGT121, which recognizes an epitope formed by V3-proximal glycans and the V3 base. A relatively large proportion of R66M VH1-69 mAbs competed to varying degrees with PGT121 for gp120 binding. In terms of GzB activity, 13 mAbs were capable of reducing PGT121 binding to <50%, including two from the high GzB group and 11 from the low GzB group. A significant difference in PGT121 competition was observed between the two groups (**Figure 7C**, $p = 0.027$). Thus, antibodies with epitopes overlapping that of PGT121 did not commonly mediate high GzB activity. However, two R66M VH1-69 antibodies that competed with PGT121 did mediate high Fc-mediated GzB activity. This finding is significant in that it demonstrates that mAbs arising in the same individual can recognize a similar epitope on gp120 yet some exhibit high ADCC activity while others do not.

To explore this concept further, VH1-69 mAbs from R66M were competed against an autologous mAb 7C12, which was chosen because its CDRH3 length was the median for R66M (20 AA), it exhibited high affinity binding to the R66M T/F gp120, and this mAb lacked ADCC activity. Many of the VH1-69 R66M mAbs competed with 7C12 (75% of all those tested) indicating that they likely recognize overlapping epitopes. When stratified by GzB activity, the VH1-69 mAbs in the low GzB group competed with 7C12 to a greater degree than the high GzB group (**Figure 7D**, $p = 0.006$). However, three mAbs in the high GzB group also strongly reduced 7C12 binding (**Figure 7D**, **Supplementary Table 4**: mAbs 1D10, 6C12, and 7B7). These findings provide additional evidence that the angle of binding and other factors extrinsic to the epitope are important for mediating Fc functions. They further suggest that a novel, immunodominant epitope exists within the R66M gp120 protein that is highly susceptible to autologous ADCC activity.

Additionally, an important observation from these studies is that the gp120 coating assay detected high Fc-mediated GzB activity by antibodies with epitopes that are not expected to require induction by CD4, such as those antibodies competing with PGT121 (**Figure 7C**). This was somewhat unexpected due to the nature of the assay (gp120 pre-bound to surface CD4), and the preponderance of previously described CD4i mAbs that utilize VH1-69, including 17b, c12/SB1/X5, 23e, 47e/412d/E51, and M16 (30). To investigate more directly whether the six R66M VH1-69 mAbs capable of mediating high GzB signaling within this assay are enriched for CD4i epitopes, we first assessed the ability of 16 R66M mAbs to recognize endogenously produced, processed, membrane-bound autologous T/F Env presented on the surface of transfected 293T cells. This panel of mAbs included six that mediated high GzB activity and nine that did not. All of the R66M mAbs tested were capable of recognizing membrane bound, autologous R66M T/F Env except for mAb 6C12, which did mediate ADCC and clearly bound to soluble gp120 in OctetRED and ELISA assays (ELISA data not shown) (**Supplementary Figure 4**).

We next determined whether binding of the remaining 15 mAbs to surface expressed Env was influenced by addition of soluble human CD4 (sCD4). Flow cytometry was performed with R66M mAbs from the high ($n = 6$) and low ($n = 9$) GzB groups to determine the percent of Env-positive 293T cells in the absence and presence of sCD4. Differences in binding, whether an increase (suggestive of a CD4i epitope) or decrease (suggestive of a CD4bs epitope) were compared to PGT121 binding, which is not sensitive to the addition of sCD4. Binding of mAb 17b, which recognizes a CD4i epitope, was used for comparison (**Figure 7E**). Interestingly, the CD4i antibody 17b bound to surface expressed R66M Env in the absence of sCD4, perhaps suggesting this Env trimer is natively in a more "open" conformation. However, 17b binding was significantly increased more than 10% upon pre-incubation of the Env-expressing cells with sCD4 (**Figure 7E**). Remarkably, binding of the six R66M mAbs capable of mediating high ADCC activity (red) to surface-expressed Env was not enhanced by sCD4, while several low ADCC mAbs (blue) did display altered binding profiles in the presence of sCD4 (**Figure 7E**). This latter group included mAb 1F7, which had reduced binding in the presence of sCD4 and also competed with VRC01, although it did not mediate potent neutralization. There were also several mAbs that displayed a

significant increase in binding in the presence of sCD4, similar to 17b, yet none of these mAbs mediated high ADCC activity in the gp120 coating assay.

DISCUSSION

VH1-69 utilizing antibodies have gained notoriety as first-responders in a number of viral infections. An over representation of VH1-69 antibodies has been described in influenza infection, hepatitis C associated cancers, respiratory syncytial virus infection, and HIV-1 infection (70, 77, 79–82). A widely accepted explanation for the ability of VH1-69 antibodies to readily interact with diverse viral proteins is the inherent hydrophobic CDRH2 region that is unique to VH1-69 alleles (30, 75). Here, we also observed an over representation of VH1-69 germline-utilizing antibodies that recognize autologous T/F gp120 proteins, in five of six individuals infected with diverse HIV-1 variants prevalent in Sub-Saharan Africa (Subtype A, C, and A/C recombinants). A unique feature of our study is that it was carried out at ∼7-months post-infection and demonstrates that the VH1-69 response occurs early. The broad predominance of anti-gp120 VH1-69 antibodies in the subjects studied here, infected with diverse HIV-1 variants, prompted us to delve deeper into the features and antiviral functions of individual VH1-69 mAbs. Within ∼100 VH1-69 mAbs from the six HIV-1 infected individuals that were tested for *in vitro* Fc-mediated GzB activity, nearly one-third were able to mediate high ADCC activity against cells coated with autologous T/F gp120. In contrast, none of the VH1-69 antibodies were capable of potent mAb neutralization capacity. Importantly, despite the hypothesis that VH1-69-utilizing mAbs are "innate like," the absence of substantial ADCC activity in the plasma near the time of infection illustrates affinity maturation is required to acquire effector functions.

The VH1-69 mAbs in our study also exhibited CDRH2 regions that were significantly more hydrophobic than the non-VH1-69 anti-gp120 sequences from the same individuals. This observation is consistent with the concept that VH1-69 alleles have evolved in humans to provide a "first-line response" to viral infections (83). The VH1-69 locus itself is genetically diverse, with at least 14 alleles described thus far, and copy number variation from 2 to 4 copies per individual (2, 76, 84–86), perhaps hinting that it might be under selective pressure to continue to diversify within the human population. Further supporting this is the observation that genetic variation within this locus can influence the anti-viral response. In the context of human influenza infection, antibodies that contain phenylalanine at amino acid position 54 are associated with neutralization, while those that contain leucine at this position are not only infrequently induced, but also lack neutralization capacity in comparison to the 54F variants (2, 76). If this division in function remained prominent for other viral infections, such as HIV-1, it could have substantial implications for vaccine design, as these alleles are differentially globally distributed (2). While VH1-69 allelic variation has not been exhaustively defined, especially in African populations relevant to the individuals studied here, we were able to quantify the number of anti-gp120 VH1-69 sequences that contained F, L, or another amino acid at position 54. As previously reported, the 54F-containing sequences were the most frequently utilized, and generally composed the majority of VH1-69 antibodies even when the 54L-containing sequences were also present in the same individual. The one exception to this observation was R66M, where 54L-containing alleles were the dominant VH1-69 genotype. In contrast to influenza infection, where the 54L genotype results in fewer VH1-69 anti-viral antibodies, in R66M, anti-gp120 VH1-69 utilizing antibodies containing both 54F and 54L made up 51% of the isolated sequences (76). This suggests that the dearth of 54L VH1-69 antibodies observed in individuals during influenza infection does not necessarily translate to a similar bias in HIV-1 infection. Also in contrast to influenza infection, where the 54F genotype is associated with neutralization, the ability to mediate neutralization or ADCC effector functions against HIV-1 was not stratified by VH1-69 genotype (76). Both 54F and 54L were found in the high and low ADCC-mediating groups. This could be a reason for cautious optimism, in the context of vaccines specifically designed to elicit polyfunctional antibody responses, that include ADCC effector functions in humans (87). However, VH1-69 allelic diversity is only one component of host genetics that influences ADCC. Other factors likely influence ADCC *in vivo*, such as FcγRIIIa allelic variation (88, 89). For example, polymorphisms present at position 158 in FcγRIIIa, such as valine (V) or phenylalanine (F), can differ in affinity for antibody Fc. This could alter the potency and efficacy of ADCC *in vivo*, even if appropriate ADCC-mediating antibodies are present. The assay utilized here to measure ADCC activity included effector cells from HIV-negative donors, who were screened to eliminate low affinity (F/F homozygous) donors. Though these and other differences in host genetics could alter the performance of these antibodies *in vivo*, we have identified and described a number of antibodies, with distinct genetic features, present in five of six individuals, that have the potential to mediate autologous ADCC effector function against HIV-1 T/F gp120. These antibodies also bind to endogenously expressed Env on the cell surface, and are not dependent on the presence of CD4 to bind to their epitope or mediate Fc-mediated GzB signaling. It will be of interest to further define the novel epitopes that are susceptible to ADCC, whether they are conserved across HIV-1 variants, and what features of Env are important to elicit them.

Interestingly, a number of genetic and biochemical features did not distinguish VH1-69 antibodies capable of mediating high ADCC activity from those that did not. Importantly, and supporting the idea that VH1-69 interactions with viral glycoproteins are innate-like, there was no difference in somatic hypermutation (i.e., percent identity to germline) and likewise, no difference in binding affinity for the autologous T/F gp120 protein between VH1-69 ADCC-mediating and non-mediating antibodies. Thus, it was not necessarily routine selection and affinity maturation that lead to mAbs capable of ADCC, nor generic "ELISA-like" binding of antibody to gp120 that resulted in ADCC effector functions observed here. All of the VH1-69 antibodies bound to soluble gp120, but only a subset could mediate ADCC using the exact same protein coated onto the

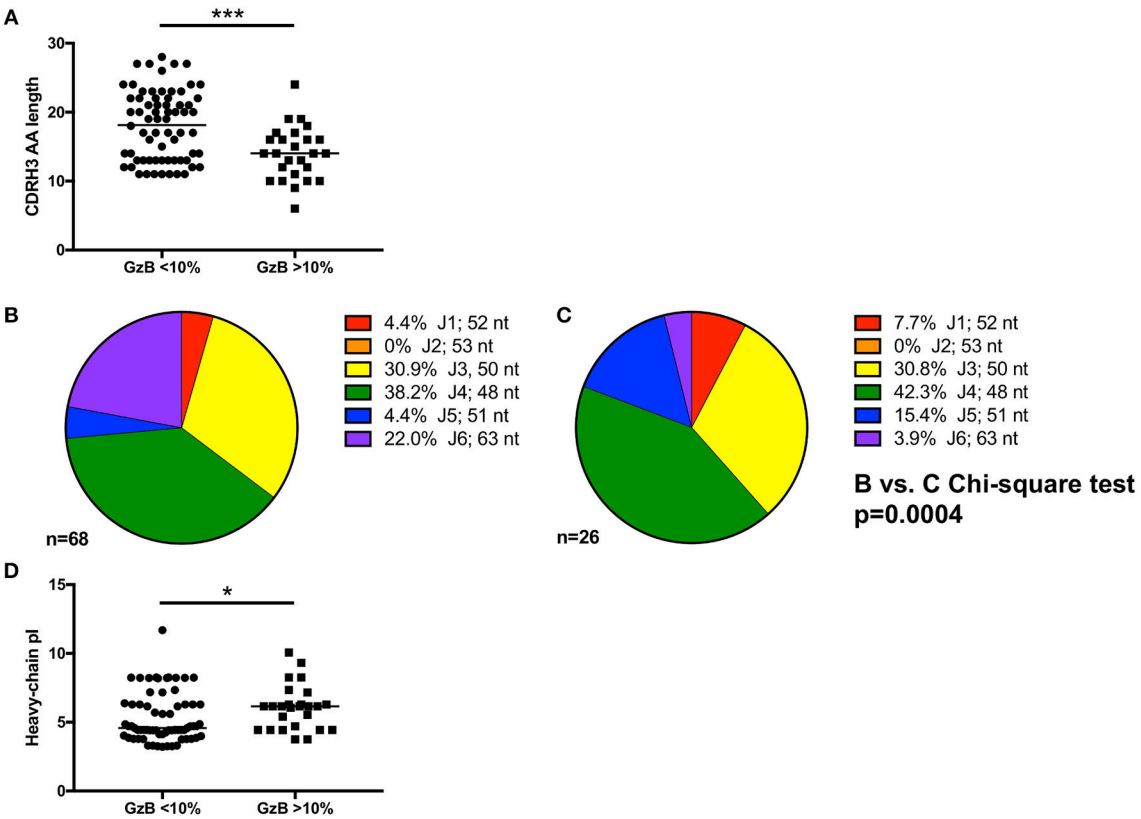


FIGURE 6 | Genetic signatures of VH1-69 mAbs capable of mediating high ADCC activity. **(A)** Amino acid length of mAb complementarity-determining region-3 (CDRH3) (Y-axis) of mAbs with GzB <10% are longer than those from mAbs that mediate high ADCC activity (Mann–Whitney, $p = 0.0007$). **(B)** Distribution of J1 (red), J2 (orange), J3 (yellow), J4 (green), J5 (blue), and J6 (purple) utilization of VH1-69 mAbs that mediated low ADCC activity compared to **(C)** J-region utilization in mAbs that mediated high ADCC activity revealed differential J-region usage between the two groups of mAbs (Chi-square test, $p = 0.0004$). Number of sequences analyzed and percentage of each J-region utilized is indicated. **(D)** A modest difference in isoelectric point (Y-axis) of the heavy chain of the antibodies able to mediate high ADCC vs. low ADCC also emerged (Mann–Whitney, $p = 0.035$). $^{*}p \leq 0.05$, $^{***}p \leq 0.001$.

target cell surface. A possible explanation is that some mAbs bind to gp120 at an angle that facilitates a sufficient number of antibody-Fc interactions with effector cells needed to trigger granzyme B release, i.e., an "angle of attack" conducive to mediating ADCC functions, while other antibodies bind in a manner that was not favorable for Fc receptor engagement. Though structural studies will be necessary to fully appreciate the importance of specific epitopes and angle-of-binding to those epitopes, we describe clear instances where antibodies that share similar epitopes display divergent ADCC activity. Similar findings were reported in previous analyses of anti-HIV ADCC activity, where the importance of not only the recognized epitope, but also the angle of antibody binding, was emphasized (90). Certainly, this is an important observation in the context of HIV-1, but it is also an important concept to consider when generating any therapeutic mAb with a desired ADCC mechanism of action.

A genetic feature that was strongly associated with high ADCC activity in this study was shorter CDRH3 length. In stark contrast with bnAbs, which sometimes include exceptionally long CDRH3 regions, VH1-69 mAbs capable of mediating ADCC had, on average, shorter CDRH3 regions than non-mediating mAbs (16). However, these "short" CDRH3s averaged 14 AA in length, near the expected average lengths of CDRH3 in "control" human antibodies [reported value 15 AA (70)]. This "average" CDRH3 length appeared to be related to a lower frequency (but not absence) of J6 usage in the high ADCC mAb group, which can contribute to longer CDRH3 length [63 nt addition, (91)] and is frequently found in bnAbs with long CDRH3 (16). The infrequent use of J6 was compensated for mainly by a three-fold increase in J5 usage, which is of average size (51 nt addition). An additional genetic metric that was modestly distinctive of high ADCC mAbs was a higher isoelectric point of the heavy chain that was closer to neutral. The isoelectric point of mAbs has been strongly associated with their *in vivo* clearance and half-life (92). Antibodies mutated within the VH to have lower isoelectric points exhibited improved half-lives over the original unmutated mAbs, without modifying the constant region or light chain (92). Considering the lack of protection observed in non-human primate studies that utilized non-neutralizing antibodies (93, 94), it would be tempting to hypothesize that targeted reduction of isoelectric point of established non-neutralizing, ADCC-mediating antibodies could potentially improve the outcome of

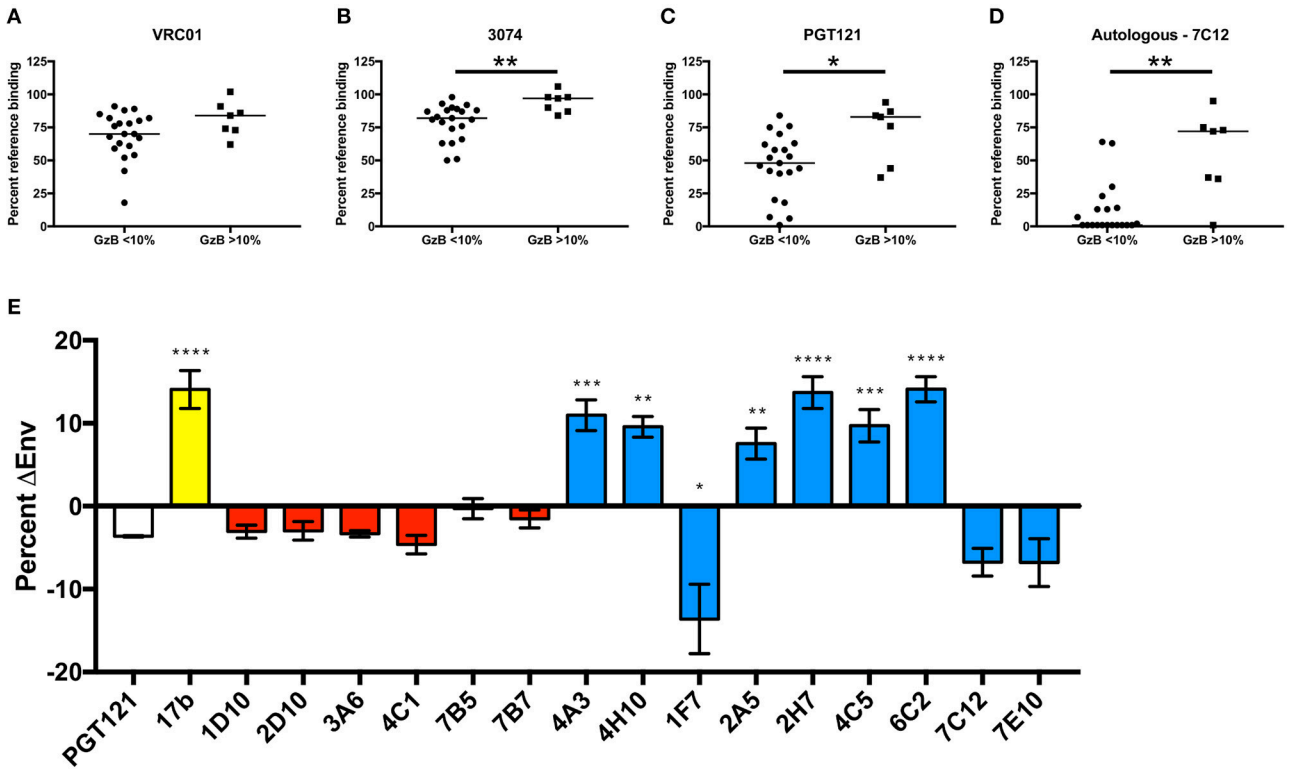


FIGURE 7 | Definition of putative epitopes of R66M VH1-69 mAbs through competition**.** In order to gain insight into the putative T/F Env gp120 epitopes targeted by R66M VH1-69 mAbs, the ability of low ADCC (GzB <10%) and high ADCC (GzB>10%) mAbs to reduce binding of reference mAbs **(A)** VRC01 (CD4 binding site), **(B)** 3074 (V3), **(C)** PGT121 (N332-glycan supersite, V3 base), and **(D)** a "median" autologous R66M mAb 7C12 to the R66M T/F gp120 protein was assessed via epitope binning on the Octet RED96. Percent residual binding of the reference antibody (top label) in the presence of each tested R66M mAb is reported, bar indicates median value. Statistically significant differences between low and high ADCC mAbs was observed for competition with 3074 (Mann–Whitney, $p = 0.005$), PGT121 ($p = 0.02$) and with the autologous mAb, 7C12 (Mann–Whitney, $p = 0.002$). **(E)** CD4bs and CD4i epitopes were identified via quantification of R66M Env-positive transfected 293T cells in the absence and presence of sCD4. Y-axis represents the increase (positive values) or decrease (negative values) of Env-positive cells in the presence of sCD4 relative to no sCD4. Binding of bnAb PGT121 (white bar) to R66M Env is not substantially affected by sCD4, thus was used as a reference. Control CD4i mAb 17b binding (yellow bar) significantly increased when transfected cells were pre-incubated with sCD4 (Ordinary one-way ANOVA, $p = 0.0001$). R66M high ADCC mAbs (red bars) were not significantly affected by sCD4, however several low ADCC mAbs (blue bars) demonstrated likely CD4i epitopes (4A3, $p = 0.0004$; 4H10, $p = 0.0014$; 2A5, $p = 0.0047$; 2H7, $p = 0.0001$; 4C5, $p = 0.0005$; 6C2, $p = 0.0001$) or CD4bs epitope (1F7, $p = 0.027$). $^{*}p \leq 0.05$, $^{**}p \leq 0.01$, $^{***}p \leq 0.001$, $^{****}p \leq 0.0001$.

these trials. Thus, the data presented here begin to generate a picture of antibodies that can mediate ADCC-mediated functions against the autologous Env, providing tangible features that distinguish them from non-ADCC antibodies. Furthermore, these findings highlight three important points. First, the R66M mAbs that mediated high ADCC activity were generally able to recognize membrane-bound Env in the absence of CD4, in addition to their capacity to bind to soluble gp120. Secondly, the high ADCC-mediating mAbs were not directed toward CD4i epitopes, thus this experimental approach was not biased to detect Fc-mediated activity against epitopes exposed by gp120 binding to CD4. Finally, the recognition of CD4i epitopes was not the primary determinant of Fc-mediated GzB activity for R66M mAbs in the gp120 coating assay. Together, these findings suggest that there are many more facets of Fc-mediated antibody activity than are currently appreciated, and that the use of varied *in vitro* assays and multiple approaches can enrich this body of knowledge. Furthermore, the use of novel antibodies and autologous antibody/protein combinations may be key to furthering these discoveries of ADCC epitopes and antibody binding modes.

The data presented here can be considered in the context of unanswered questions. For example, it remains to be seen what impact these ADCC antibodies have on the viral population and disease progression. Plasma neutralization capacity can clearly influence the evolution of an individual's viral quasispecies, while HIV-1 Env's capacity to tolerate mutations and maintain viral fitness makes the influence that nAb and has on disease progression and pathogenesis is less clear (95–97). There is also the question as to whether these mAbs with ADCC function, present pre-exposure, could reduce transmission rates or improve disease progression post-infection using an autologous challenge virus. Alternatively, there is a possibility, especially within the context of the ADCC assay utilized here, that ADCC mAbs present as pre-existing immunity could have a detrimental effect on disease progression and CD4+ T-cell counts, as soluble

gp120 could adhere to the surface of uninfected CD4+ T-cells and target them for cell death (though it should be noted that in the referenced study, uninfected "bystander cells" could not be differentiated from cells bound to virions, in the process of becoming infected) (98). It will also be interesting to investigate whether any of these early autologous ADCC-mediating mAbs, with conservative identities to germline and average affinities for autologous T/F gp120, display ADCC breadth, or whether they display strain specificity, which is frequently observed with early autologous neutralizing antibodies. The ability to recognize and exert multiple antiviral functions against a broad range of genetically and geographically distinct HIV-1 variants is almost certainly required for protection against infection. Although only autologous nAb and ADCC activity were assessed in the current study, we have identified common genetic features of early VH1-69 anti-gp120 antibodies induced in distinct host genetic backgrounds against diverse HIV-1 variants that are associated with higher GzB activity. Future studies will be required to determine whether these antibodies are cross-reactive and if they can also mediate ADCC functions in other assays. The dominance of VH1-69 in these HIV-1 infected individuals suggests an immunologic convergence that could be harnessed to elicit antibodies capable of mediating ADCC activity against gp120, suggesting that a better understanding of this process could inform the design of vaccine immunogens. Understanding the complexities of how ADCC mediating antibodies arise in infected and vaccinated individuals, and carry out effector functions, will likely require the use of varied *in vitro* assays and multiple approaches. The discovery of new antibodies with novel epitopes and binding modes will facilitate this process, expanding our knowledge beyond commonly used prototypical antibodies and viral strains.

AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

CD and SS: conceptualization, methodology, and writing—original draft; CD, SS, and SB: formal analysis; CD: funding acquisition, project administration, and supervision; SS and SB: investigation; WK, SL, EK, MP, and SA: resources; CD, SS, WK, SL, EK, MP, and SA: writing—review & editing.

FUNDING

This study was funded by NIH R01 AI-58706 (CD) and NIH R01 AI-128837 (CD). This study was made possible through samples and data collected as part of the Zambia-Emory HIV Research Project (ZEHRP), Project San Francisco (PSF), the Rwanda Zambia HIV Research Group (RZHRG) at Emory University, and the International AIDS Vaccine Initiative (IAVI) Protocol C Research Network.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We gratefully acknowledge the staff, interns, and participants of the Zambian and Rwandan cohorts. This work was facilitated by the Emory Vaccine Center Flow Core of the Center for AIDS Research at Emory University (P30AI050409). We extend our gratitude to Kiran Gill and Barbara Cervasi for their assistance in the flow core. Plasmids HV0024, HV0023, HV0025, and HV0026 were kindly provided by Dr. Larry (Huaxin) Liao, Duke University (53). Anti-V3 antibody 3074 was kindly provided by Dr. Xiangpeng Kong, NYU School of Medicine. Anti-influenza antibody EM4C04 was kindly provided by Dr. Jens Wrammert, Emory University. This work was funded in part by IAVI and made possible by the support of many donors, including United States Agency for International Development (USAID). The full list of IAVI donors is available at http://www.iavi.org. The contents of this manuscript are the responsibility of the authors and do not necessarily reflect the views of USAID or the US Government.

SUPPLEMENTARY MATERIAL

The Supplementary Material for this article can be found online at: https://www.frontiersin.org/articles/10.3389/fimmu.2018.03163/full#supplementary-material

Supplementary Table 1 | Genetic characterization of paired heavy- and light-chain sequences isolated from autologous T/F gp120 reactive single memory B cells sorted from PBMC collected at 7.5 months after infection (Time Point 2). Sequences from paired heavy- and light-chains from autologous T/F Env gp120-reactive single B cells were analyzed via IMGT vquest (http://imgt.org/IMGT_vquest/vquest) to determine (i) Variable heavy (VH) germline and allele, (ii) VH identity to germline, (iii) CDRH2 sequence determination, (iv) CDRH3 length, (v) CDRH3 sequence determination, (vi) Variable light (VL) germline and allele. CDRH2 GRAVY scores were calculated via (http://www.gravy-calculator.de).

Supplementary Table 2 | Genetic features of VH1-69 utilizing antibody sequences. VH1-69 sequences were analyzed in further detail, due to their overrepresentation in isolated anti-gp120 memory B cells. Variable Joining region (VJ) alleles and heavy-chain isoelectric points were determined via IMGT vquest (http://imgt.org/IMGT_vquest/vquest). Amino acid 54 within CDRH2 is highlighted in bold. CDRH2 GRAVY scores were calculated via (http://www.gravy-calculator.de). The number of tyrosine sulfination sites contained within CDRH3 was quantified via the Sulfinator online tool (http://web.expasy.org/sulfinator/) (58).

Supplementary Table 3 | Quantification of VH1-69 mAb binding affinity for autologous T/F gp120. The affinity of VH1-69 utilizing mAbs for binding to the autologous T/F Env gp120 protein was determined on an Octet RED96. The molarity of gp120 utilized for measurement, calculated KD and KD error, kon and kon error, kdis and kdis error, X^2, and R^2 values are reported. Average KD, kon, and kdis values are reported for each set of measurements. Median X^2 (and range), R^2 (and range), KD, kon, and kdis are reported for each individual.

Supplementary Table 4 | Neutralizing and non-neutralizing Fc-mediated effector function of VH1-69 utilizing antibodies. The ability of virions pseudotyped with autologous T/F Env to infect TZM bl indicator cells in the presence of 10 μg/ml of each mAb was assayed in triplicate, and repeated independently as quantity allowed. Non-neutralizing Fc-mediated effector function was quantified via GranToxiLux assay, in a mAb dilution series of 5, 1, and 0.2 μg/ml against CEM.NKr.CCR5 cells coated with autologous T/F Env gp120. Values reported are the mean peak percentage of cells positive for Granzyme B (GzB) activity over this dilution series, after subtraction of background activity, utilizing effector cells from two independent HIV-negative effector cell donors.

Supplementary Figure 1 | Representative Granzyme B control and experimental flow-plots. CEM.NKr.CCR5 cells were pulsed with gp120 proteins (R66M gp120 illustrated here). After gating for size (targets) and NFL4 negative (live) cells, determination of Granzyme B activity was calculated by drawing gates based on target cells incubated alone (Targets Alone). The percentage calculated within "Targets + Effectors" was inferred to be background GzB activity, and subtracted from all other positive percentages to calculate final positive percentage. Negative

and Positive controls were included in all assays. In groups of tested patient derived mAbs, ADCC high (R66M 1D10) and low (R66M 1F7) were observed.

Supplementary Figure 2 | Impact of T/F Env gp120 proteins and effector cell donor variation on ADCC and autologous plasma control assays. The percentage of GzB positive cells between individuals was compared in reactions containing **(A)** only T/F Env gp120 coated CEM.NKr.CCR5 target cells and donor effector cells (background GzB activity), **(B)** negative control 50 μg/ml commercial polyclonal IgG (minus background), and **(C)** positive control 50 μg/ml HIV-Ig (minus background). There were no significant differences in these parameters between the six T/F Env gp120 proteins (Kruskal–Wallis, ns), although there was ∼2- to 3-fold variation in HIV-Ig responses as would be expected. Bars illustrate standard error of the mean. **(D)** There was no significant difference between GzB percentages between results obtained using Donor 190 and 457 effector cells (Mann–Whitney, ns), and **(E)** the GzB results were highly correlated between the two donors (Spearman, $p < 0.0001$, $r = 0.82$). **(F)** Negative control data for **Figure 1**. nAb and ADCC activity in plasma collected at chronologic Time Points 1, 2, and 3; (i) nAb against a negative control VSV-g Env pseudovirus (closed symbols, solid lines), and (ii) GzB mediated by normal human serum against the T/F Env gp120 (open symbols, dashed lines). Symbols and error bars represent the mean and standard error of mean, respectively, between at least two replicate experiments for neutralization, and the mean and standard error of mean of independent experiments utilizing cells from two different donors for the GzB assay.

Supplementary Figure 3 | Genetic and functional comparison of VH1-69 low ADCC mAbs vs. high ADCC mAbs. VH1-69 mAbs were stratified into two groups, based on low (peak GzB percentage <10%) or high (peak GzB percentage >10%) ADCC activity. No significant differences emerged between these two groups in a number of metrics: **(A)** heavy-chain percent nucleotide identity to germline (Mann–Whitney, $p = 0.74$); **(B)** the number of tyrosine sulfation sites found within the heavy-chain complementarity-determining region-3 (CDRH3) (Mann–Whitney, $p = 0.18$) (30); **(C)** kappa or lambda light-chain pairing (Fisher's exact test, $p = 0.38$); **(D)** heavy-chain complementarity-determining region-2 (CDRH2) grand average hydropathy (GRAVY) scores (Mann–Whitney, $p = 0.89$); **(E)** binding affinity for autologous T/F gp120 (Mann–Whitney, $p = 0.76$). **(F)** There was a significant difference between the two groups and their ability to neutralize virions pseudotyped with the autologous T/F Env (Mann–Whitney, $p = 0.0015$). $^{**}p \leq 0.01$.

Supplementary Figure 4 | Antibody recognition of R66M T/F Env transfected cells in the absence and presence of sCD4. 293T cells were transfected with R66M T/F Envelope expression plasmid. 48-h post-transfection, cells were stained with control and R66M VH1-69 mAbs (indicated above plots), either **(A)** without or **(B)** with pre-incubation with sCD4. X-axis indicates PE intensity, Y-axis indicates side scatter area (SSC-A). "Env-positive" cells are found in the lower right quadrant (Q3), percentage of total events per quadrant are indicated. **(C)** Percent Env-positive cells, minus IgG background, for each mAb in the absence (white) and presence of sCD4 (gray). Columns indicate mean of a minimum of three independent experiments, bars represent SEM.

REFERENCES

1. Lerner RA. Rare antibodies from combinatorial libraries suggests an S.O.S. component of the human immunological repertoire. *Mol Biosyst.* (2011) 7:1004–12. doi: 10.1039/c0mb00310g
2. Watson CT, Glanville J, Marasco WA. The individual and population genetics of antibody immunity. *Trends Immunol.* (2017) 38:459–70. doi: 10.1016/j.it.2017.04.003
3. Burton DR. Antibodies, viruses and vaccines. *Nat Rev Immunol.* (2002) 2:706–13. doi: 10.1038/nri891
4. Rappuoli R, Mandl CW, Black S, De Gregorio E. Vaccines for the twenty-first century society. *Nat Rev Immunol.* (2011) 11:865–72. doi: 10.1038/nri3085
5. Hemelaar J. The origin and diversity of the HIV-1 pandemic. *Trends Mol Med.* (2012) 18:182–92. doi: 10.1016/j.molmed.2011.12.001
6. Kloverpris HN, Leslie A, Goulder P. Role of HLA adaptation in HIV evolution. *Front Immunol.* (2015) 6:665. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2015.00665
7. Richman DD, Wrin T, Little SJ, Petropoulos CJ. Rapid evolution of the neutralizing antibody response to HIV type 1 infection. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (2003) 100:4144–9. doi: 10.1073/pnas.0630530100
8. Wei X, Decker JM, Wang S, Hui H, Kappes JC, Wu X, et al. Antibody neutralization and escape by HIV-1. *Nature* (2003) 422:307–12. doi: 10.1038/nature01470
9. Li B, Decker JM, Johnson RW, Bibollet-Ruche F, Wei X, Mulenga J, et al. Evidence for potent autologous neutralizing antibody titers and compact envelopes in early infection with subtype C human immunodeficiency virus type 1. *J Virol.* (2006) 80:5211–8. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00201-06
10. Gray ES, Moore PL, Choge IA, Decker JM, Bibollet-Ruche F, Li H, et al. Neutralizing antibody responses in acute human immunodeficiency virus type 1 subtype C infection. *J Virol.* (2007) 81:6187–96. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00239-07
11. Rong R, Bibollet-Ruche F, Mulenga J, Allen S, Blackwell JL, Derdeyn CA. Role of V1V2 and other human immunodeficiency virus type 1 envelope domains in resistance to autologous neutralization during clade C infection. *J Virol.* (2007) 81:1350–9. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01839-06
12. Tomaras GD, Yates NL, Liu P, Qin L, Fouda GG, Chavez LL, et al. Initial B-cell responses to transmitted human immunodeficiency virus type 1: virion-binding immunoglobulin M (IgM) and IgG antibodies followed by plasma anti-gp41 antibodies with ineffective control of initial viremia. *J Virol.* (2008) 82:12449–63. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01708-08
13. Moore PL, Ranchobe N, Lambson BE, Gray ES, Cave E, Abrahams MR, et al. Limited neutralizing antibody specificities drive neutralization escape in early HIV-1 subtype C infection. *PLoS Pathog.* (2009) 5:e1000598. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000598
14. Simek MD, Rida W, Priddy FH, Pung P, Carrow E, Laufer DS, et al. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 elite neutralizers: individuals with broad and potent neutralizing activity identified by using a high-throughput neutralization assay together with an analytical selection algorithm. *J Virol.* (2009) 83:7337–48. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00110-09
15. Hraber P, Seaman MS, Bailer RT, Mascola JR, Montefiori DC, Korber BT. Prevalence of broadly neutralizing antibody responses during chronic HIV-1 infection. *AIDS* (2014) 28:163–9. doi: 10.1097/QAD.0000000000000106
16. Yu L, Guan Y. Immunologic basis for long HCDR3s in broadly neutralizing antibodies against HIV-1. *Front Immunol.* (2014) 5:250. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2014.00250
17. Moore PL, Williamson C, Morris L. Virological features associated with the development of broadly neutralizing antibodies to HIV-1. *Trends Microbiol.* (2015) 23:204–11. doi: 10.1016/j.tim.2014.12.007
18. Landais E, Huang X, Havenar-Daughton C, Murrell B, Price MA, Wickramasinghe L, et al. Broadly neutralizing antibody responses in a large longitudinal sub-saharan HIV primary infection cohort. *PLoS Pathog.* (2016) 12:e1005369. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1005369
19. Andrabi R, Bhiman JN, Burton DR. Strategies for a multi-stage neutralizing antibody-based HIV vaccine. *Curr Opin Immunol.* (2018) 53:143–51. doi: 10.1016/j.coi.2018.04.025
20. Rook AH, Lane HC, Folks T, Mccoy S, Alter H, Fauci AS. Sera from HTLV-III/LAV antibody-positive individuals mediate antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity against HTLV-III/LAV-infected T cells. *J Immunol.* (1987) 138:1064–7.
21. Lambotte O, Ferrari G, Moog C, Yates NL, Liao HX, Parks RJ, et al. Heterogeneous neutralizing antibody and antibody-dependent cell cytotoxicity responses in HIV-1 elite controllers. *AIDS* (2009) 23:897–906. doi: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e328329f97d
22. Alpert MD, Harvey JD, Lauer WA, Reeves RK, Piatak MJr, Carville A, et al. ADCC develops over time during persistent infection with live-attenuated SIV and is associated with complete protection against SIV(mac)251 challenge. *PLoS Pathog.* (2012) 8:e1002890. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002890
23. Mabuka J, Nduati R, Odem-Davis K, Peterson D, Overbaugh J. HIV-specific antibodies capable of ADCC are common in breastmilk and are associated with reduced risk of transmission in women with high viral loads. *PLoS Pathog.* (2012) 8:e1002739. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002739
24. Wren LH, Chung AW, Isitman G, Kelleher AD, Parsons MS, Amin J, et al. Specific antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity responses associated

with slow progression of HIV infection. *Immunology* (2013) 138:116–23. doi: 10.1111/imm.12016
25. Milligan C, Richardson BA, John-Stewart G, Nduati R, Overbaugh J. Passively acquired antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) activity in HIV-infected infants is associated with reduced mortality. *Cell Host Microbe* (2015) 17:500–6. doi: 10.1016/j.chom.2015.03.002
26. Ackerman ME, Mikhailova A, Brown EP, Dowell KG, Walker BD, Bailey-Kellogg C, et al. Polyfunctional HIV-specific antibody responses are associated with spontaneous HIV control. *PLoS Pathog.* (2016) 12:e1005315. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1005315
27. Bradley T, Pollara J, Santra S, Vandergrift N, Pittala S, Bailey-Kellogg C, et al. Pentavalent HIV-1 vaccine protects against simian-human immunodeficiency virus challenge. *Nat Commun.* (2017) 8:15711. doi: 10.1038/ncomms15711
28. Bonsignori M, Pollara J, Moody MA, Alpert MD, Chen X, Hwang KK, et al. Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity-mediating antibodies from an HIV-1 vaccine efficacy trial target multiple epitopes and preferentially use the VH1 gene family. *J Virol.* (2012) 86:11521–32. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01023-12
29. Costa MR, Pollara J, Edwards RW, Seaman MS, Gorny MK, Montefiori DC, et al. Fc receptor-mediated activities of env-specific human monoclonal antibodies generated from volunteers receiving the DNA prime-protein boost HIV vaccine DP6-001. *J Virol.* (2016) 90:10362–78. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01458-16
30. Huang CC, Venturi M, Majeed S, Moore MJ, Phogat S, Zhang MY, et al. Structural basis of tyrosine sulfation and VH-gene usage in antibodies that recognize the HIV type 1 coreceptor-binding site on gp120. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (2004) 101:2706–11. doi: 10.1073/pnas.0308527100
31. Williams KL, Cortez V, Dingens AS, Gach JS, Rainwater S, Weis JF, et al. HIV-specific CD4-induced antibodies mediate broad and potent antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity activity and are commonly detected in plasma from HIV-infected humans. *EBioMedicine* (2015) 2:1464–77. doi: 10.1016/j.ebiom.2015.09.001
32. Smith SA, Burton SL, Kilembe W, Lakhi S, Karita E, Price M, et al. Diversification in the HIV-1 envelope hyper-variable domains V2, V4, and V5 and higher probability of transmitted/founder envelope glycosylation favor the development of heterologous neutralization breadth. *PLoS Pathog.* (2016) 12:e1005989. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1005989
33. Haaland RE, Hawkins PA, Salazar-Gonzalez J, Johnson A, Tichacek A, Karita E, et al. Inflammatory genital infections mitigate a severe genetic bottleneck in heterosexual transmission of subtype A and C HIV-1. *PLoS Pathog.* (2009) 5:e1000274. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000274
34. Price MA, Wallis CL, Lakhi S, Karita E, Kamali A, Anzala O, et al. Transmitted HIV type 1 drug resistance among individuals with recent HIV infection in East and Southern Africa. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses* (2011) 27:5–12. doi: 10.1089/aid.2010.0030
35. Howell DN, Andreotti PE, Dawson JR, Cresswell P. Natural killing target antigens as inducers of interferon: studies with an immunoselected, natural killing-resistant human T lymphoblastoid cell line. *J Immunol.* (1985) 134:971–6.
36. Lyerly HK, Reed DL, Matthews TJ, Langlois AJ, Ahearne PA, Petteway SRJr, et al. Anti-GP 120 antibodies from HIV seropositive individuals mediate broadly reactive anti-HIV ADCC. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses* (1987) 3:409–22. doi: 10.1089/aid.1987.3.409
37. Trkola A, Matthews J, Gordon C, Ketas T, Moore JP. A cell line-based neutralization assay for primary human immunodeficiency virus type 1 isolates that use either the CCR5 or the CXCR4 coreceptor. *J Virol.* (1999) 73:8966–74.
38. Derdeyn CA, Decker JM, Bibollet-Ruche F, Mokili JL, Muldoon M, Denham SA, et al. Envelope-constrained neutralization-sensitive HIV-1 after heterosexual transmission. *Science* (2004) 303:2019–22. doi: 10.1126/science.1093137
39. Rong R, Gnanakaran S, Decker JM, Bibollet-Ruche F, Taylor J, Sfakianos JN, et al. Unique mutational patterns in the envelope {alpha}2 amphipathic helix and acquisition of length in gp120 hyper-variable domains are associated with resistance to autologous neutralization of subtype C human immunodeficiency virus type 1. *J Virol.* (2007) 81:5658–68. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00257-07
40. Rong R, Li B, Lynch RM, Haaland RE, Murphy MK, Mulenga J, et al. Escape from autologous neutralizing antibodies in acute/early subtype C HIV-1 infection requires multiple pathways. *PLoS Pathog.* (2009) 5:e1000594. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000594
41. Li B, Stefano-Cole K, Kuhrt DM, Gordon SN, Else JG, Mulenga J, et al. Nonpathogenic simian immunodeficiency virus infection of sooty mangabeys is not associated with high levels of autologous neutralizing antibodies. *J Virol.* (2010) 84:6248–53. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00295-10
42. Lynch RM, Rong R, Li B, Shen T, Honnen W, Mulenga J, et al. Subtype-specific conservation of isoleucine 309 in the envelope V3 domain is linked to immune evasion in subtype C HIV-1 infection. *Virology* (2010) 404:59–70. doi: 10.1016/j.virol.2010.04.010
43. Lynch RM, Rong R, Boliar S, Sethi A, Li B, Mulenga J, et al. The B cell response is redundant and highly focused on V1V2 during early subtype C infection in a Zambian seroconverter. *J Virol.* (2011) 85:905–15. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02006-10
44. Ortiz AM, Klatt NR, Li B, Yi Y, Tabb B, Hao XP, et al. Depletion of CD4(+) T cells abrogates post-peak decline of viremia in SIV-infected rhesus macaques. *J Clin Invest.* (2011) 121:4433–45. doi: 10.1172/JCI46023
45. Archary D, Rong R, Gordon ML, Boliar S, Madiga M, Gray ES, et al. Characterization of anti-HIV-1 neutralizing and binding antibodies in chronic HIV-1 subtype C infection. *Virology* (2012) 433:410–20. doi: 10.1016/j.virol.2012.08.033
46. Boliar S, Murphy MK, Tran TC, Carnathan DG, Armstrong WS, Silvestri G, et al. B-Lymphocyte dysfunction in chronic HIV-1 infection does not prevent cross-clade neutralization breadth. *J Virol.* (2012) 86:8031–40. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00771-12
47. Murphy MK, Yue L, Pan R, Boliar S, Sethi A, Tian J, et al. Viral escape from neutralizing antibodies in early subtype A HIV-1 infection drives an increase in autologous neutralization breadth. *PLoS Pathog.* (2013) 9:e1003173. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1003173
48. Burton SL, Kilgore KM, Smith SA, Reddy S, Hunter E, Robinson HL, et al. Breakthrough of SIV strain smE660 challenge in SIV strain mac239-vaccinated rhesus macaques despite potent autologous neutralizing antibody responses. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (2015) 112:10780–5. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1509731112
49. Kilgore KM, Murphy MK, Burton SL, Wetzel KS, Smith SA, Xiao P, et al. Characterization and implementation of a diverse simian immunodeficiency virus SIVsm envelope panel in the assessment of neutralizing antibody breadth elicited in rhesus macaques by multimodal vaccines expressing the SIVmac239 envelope. *J Virol.* (2015) 89:8130–51. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01221-14
50. Bottcher S, Ritgen M, Bruggemann M, Raff T, Luschen S, Humpe A, et al. Flow cytometric assay for determination of FcgammaRIIIA-158 V/F polymorphism. *J Immunol Methods* (2005) 306:128–36. doi: 10.1016/j.jim.2005.08.004
51. Pollara J, Hart L, Brewer F, Pickeral J, Packard BZ, Hoxie JA, et al. High-throughput quantitative analysis of HIV-1 and SIV-specific ADCC-mediating antibody responses. *Cytometry A* (2011) 79:603–12. doi: 10.1002/cyto.a.21084
52. Cummins LM, Weinhold KJ, Matthews TJ, Langlois AJ, Perno CF, Condie RM, et al. Preparation and characterization of an intravenous solution of IgG from human immunodeficiency virus-seropositive donors. *Blood* (1991) 77:1111–7.
53. Liao HX, Levesque MC, Nagel A, Dixon A, Zhang R, Walter E, et al. High-throughput isolation of immunoglobulin genes from single human B cells and expression as monoclonal antibodies. *J Virol Methods* (2009) 158:171–9. doi: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2009.02.014
54. Ye J, Ma N, Madden TL, Ostell JM. IgBLAST: an immunoglobulin variable domain sequence analysis tool. *Nucleic Acids Res.* (2013) 41:W34–40. doi: 10.1093/nar/gkt382
55. Brochet X, Lefranc MP, Giudicelli V. IMGT/V-QUEST: the highly customized and integrated system for IG and TR standardized V-J and V-D-J sequence analysis. *Nucleic Acids Res.* (2008) 36:W503–8. doi: 10.1093/nar/gkn316
56. Giudicelli V, Brochet X, Lefranc MP. IMGT/V-QUEST: IMGT standardized analysis of the immunoglobulin (IG) and T cell receptor (TR) nucleotide sequences. *Cold Spring Harb Protoc.* (2011) 2011:695–715. doi: 10.1101/pdb.prot5633
57. Krzywinski M, Schein J, Birol I, Connors J, Gascoyne R, Horsman D, et al. Circos: an information aesthetic for comparative genomics. *Genome Res.* (2009) 19:1639–45. doi: 10.1101/gr.092759.109
58. Monigatti F, Gasteiger E, Bairoch A, Jung E. The Sulfinator: predicting tyrosine sulfation sites in protein sequences. *Bioinformatics* (2002) 18:769–70. doi: 10.1093/bioinformatics/18.5.769

59. Barouch DH, Yang ZY, Kong WP, Korioth-Schmitz B, Sumida SM, Truitt DM, et al. A human T-cell leukemia virus type 1 regulatory element enhances the immunogenicity of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 DNA vaccines in mice and nonhuman primates. *J Virol.* (2005) 79:8828–34. doi: 10.1128/JVI.79.14.8828-8834.2005
60. Wu X, Yang ZY, Li Y, Hogerkorp CM, Schief WR, Seaman MS, et al. Rational design of envelope identifies broadly neutralizing human monoclonal antibodies to HIV-1. *Science* (2010) 329:856–61. doi: 10.1126/science.1187659
61. Walker LM, Huber M, Doores KJ, Falkowska E, Pejchal R, Julien JP, et al. Broad neutralization coverage of HIV by multiple highly potent antibodies. *Nature* (2011) 477:466–70. doi: 10.1038/nature10373
62. Thali M, Moore JP, Furman C, Charles M, Ho DD, Robinson J, et al. Characterization of conserved human immunodeficiency virus type 1 gp120 neutralization epitopes exposed upon gp120-CD4 binding. *J Virol.* (1993) 67:3978–88.
63. Wyatt R, Moore J, Accola M, Desjardin E, Robinson J, Sodroski J. Involvement of the V1/V2 variable loop structure in the exposure of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 gp120 epitopes induced by receptor binding. *J Virol.* (1995) 69:5723–33.
64. Trkola A, Dragic T, Arthos J, Binley JM, Olson WC, Allaway GP, et al. CD4-dependent, antibody-sensitive interactions between HIV-1 and its co-receptor CCR-5. *Nature* (1996) 384:184–7. doi: 10.1038/384184a0
65. Kwong PD, Wyatt R, Robinson J, Sweet RW, Sodroski J, Hendrickson WA. Structure of an HIV gp120 envelope glycoprotein in complex with the CD4 receptor and a neutralizing human antibody. *Nature* (1998) 393:648–59. doi: 10.1038/31405
66. Sullivan N, Sun Y, Binley J, Lee J, Barbas CF. III, Parren PW, et al. Determinants of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 envelope glycoprotein activation by soluble CD4 and monoclonal antibodies. *J Virol.* (1998) 72:6332–8.
67. Wyatt R, Kwong PD, Desjardins E, Sweet RW, Robinson J, Hendrickson WA, et al. The antigenic structure of the HIV gp120 envelope glycoprotein. *Nature* (1998) 393:705–11. doi: 10.1038/31514
68. Gorny MK, Wang XH, Williams C, Volsky B, Revesz K, Witover B, et al. Preferential use of the VH5-51 gene segment by the human immune response to code for antibodies against the V3 domain of HIV-1. *Mol Immunol.* (2009) 46:917–26. doi: 10.1016/j.molimm.2008.09.005
69. Scheid JF, Mouquet H, Feldhahn N, Seaman MS, Velinzon K, Pietzsch J, et al. Broad diversity of neutralizing antibodies isolated from memory B cells in HIV-infected individuals. *Nature* (2009) 458:636–40. doi: 10.1038/nature07930
70. Breden F, Lepik C, Longo NS, Montero M, Lipsky PE, Scott JK. Comparison of antibody repertoires produced by HIV-1 infection, other chronic and acute infections, and systemic autoimmune disease. *PLoS ONE* (2011) 6:e16857. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0016857
71. Zhou T, Lynch RM, Chen L, Acharya P, Wu X, Doria-Rose NA, et al. Structural repertoire of HIV-1-neutralizing antibodies targeting the CD4 supersite in 14 donors. *Cell* (2015) 161:1280–92. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2015.05.007
72. Meffre E, Louie A, Bannock J, Kim LJ, Ho J, Frear CC, et al. Maturational characteristics of HIV-specific antibodies in viremic individuals. *JCI Insight* (2016) 1:e84610. doi: 10.1172/jci.insight.84610
73. Boyd SD, Gaeta BA, Jackson KJ, Fire AZ, Marshall EL, Merker JD, et al. Individual variation in the germline Ig gene repertoire inferred from variable region gene rearrangements. *J Immunol.* (2010) 184:6986–92. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1000445
74. Williams WB, Liao HX, Moody MA, Kepler TB, Alam SM, Gao F, et al. HIV-1 VACCINES. diversion of HIV-1 vaccine-induced immunity by gp41-microbiota cross-reactive antibodies. *Science* (2015) 349:aab1253. doi: 10.1126/science.aab1253
75. Xu R, Krause JC, Mcbride R, Paulson JC, Crowe JEJr, Wilson IA. A recurring motif for antibody recognition of the receptor-binding site of influenza hemagglutinin. *Nat Struct Mol Biol.* (2013) 20:363–70. doi: 10.1038/nsmb.2500
76. Avnir Y, Watson CT, Glanville J, Peterson EC, Tallarico AS, Bennett AS, et al. IGHV1-69 polymorphism modulates anti-influenza antibody repertoires, correlates with IGHV utilization shifts and varies by ethnicity. *Sci Rep.* (2016) 6:20842. doi: 10.1038/srep20842
77. Lang S, Xie J, Zhu X, Wu NC, Lerner RA, Wilson IA. Antibody 27F3 broadly targets influenza a group 1 and 2 hemagglutinins through a further variation in VH1-69 antibody orientation on the HA Stem. *Cell Rep.* (2017) 20:2935–43. doi: 10.1016/j.celrep.2017.08.084
78. Gorny MK, Williams C, Volsky B, Revesz K, Wang XH, Burda S, et al. Cross-clade neutralizing activity of human anti-V3 monoclonal antibodies derived from the cells of individuals infected with non-B clades of human immunodeficiency virus type 1. *J Virol.* (2006) 80:6865–72. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02202-05
79. Chan CH, Hadlock KG, Foung SK, Levy S. V(H)1-69 gene is preferentially used by hepatitis C virus-associated B cell lymphomas and by normal B cells responding to the E2 viral antigen. *Blood* (2001) 97:1023–6. doi: 10.1182/blood.V97.4.1023
80. Marasca R, Vaccari P, Luppi M, Zucchini P, Castelli I, Barozzi P, et al. Immunoglobulin gene mutations and frequent use of VH1-69 and VH4-34 segments in hepatitis C virus-positive and hepatitis C virus-negative nodal marginal zone B-cell lymphoma. *Am J Pathol.* (2001) 159:253–61. doi: 10.1016/S0002-9440(10)61691-4
81. Avnir Y, Watson CT, Glanville J, Peterson EC, Tallarico AS, Bennett AS, et al. Erratum: IGHV1-69 polymorphism modulates anti-influenza antibody repertoires, correlates with IGHV utilization shifts and varies by ethnicity. *Sci Rep.* (2016) 6:23876. doi: 10.1038/srep23876
82. Gilman MS, Castellanos CA, Chen M, Ngwuta JO, Goodwin E, Moin SM, et al. Rapid profiling of RSV antibody repertoires from the memory B cells of naturally infected adult donors. *Sci Immunol.* (2016) 1:eaaj1879. doi: 10.1126/sciimmunol.aaj1879
83. Lerner RA. Combinatorial antibody libraries: new advances, new immunological insights. *Nat Rev Immunol.* (2016) 16:498–508. doi: 10.1038/nri.2016.67
84. Schroeder HWJr, Hillson JL, Perlmutter RM. Early restriction of the human antibody repertoire. *Science* (1987) 238:791–3. doi: 10.1126/science.3118465
85. Chen PP, Liu MF, Glass CA, Sinha S, Kipps TJ, Carson DA. Characterization of two immunoglobulin VH genes that are homologous to human rheumatoid factors. *Arthritis Rheum.* (1989) 32:72–6. doi: 10.1002/anr.1780320112
86. Sasso EH, Willems Van Dijk K, Bull AP, Milner EC. A fetally expressed immunoglobulin VH1 gene belongs to a complex set of alleles. *J Clin Invest.* (1993) 91:2358–67. doi: 10.1172/JCI116468
87. Stephenson KE, D'couto HT, and Barouch DH. New concepts in HIV-1 vaccine development. *Curr Opin Immunol.* (2016) 41:39–46. doi: 10.1016/j.coi.2016.05.011
88. Koene HR, Kleijer M, Algra J, Roos D, Von Dem Borne AE, De Haas M. Fc gammaRIIIa-158V/F polymorphism influences the binding of IgG by natural killer cell Fc gammaRIIIa, independently of the Fc gammaRIIIa-48L/R/H phenotype. *Blood* (1997) 90:1109–14.
89. Wu J, Edberg JC, Redecha PB, Bansal V, Guyre PM, Coleman K, et al. A novel polymorphism of FcgammaRIIIa (CD16) alters receptor function and predisposes to autoimmune disease. *J Clin Invest.* (1997) 100:1059–70. doi: 10.1172/JCI119616
90. Acharya P, Tolbert WD, Gohain N, Wu X, Yu L, Liu T, et al. Structural definition of an antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity response implicated in reduced risk for HIV-1 infection. *J Virol.* (2014) 88:12895–906. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02194-14
91. Ruiz M, Pallares N, Contet V, Barbi V, Lefranc MP. The human immunoglobulin heavy diversity (IGHD) and joining (IGHJ) segments. *Exp Clin Immunogenet.* (1999) 16:173–84. doi: 10.1159/000019109
92. Liu L. Pharmacokinetics of monoclonal antibodies and Fc-fusion proteins. *Protein Cell* (2018) 9:15–32. doi: 10.1007/s13238-017-0408-4
93. Santra S, Tomaras GD, Warrier R, Nicely NI, Liao HX, Pollara J, et al. Human Non-neutralizing HIV-1 envelope monoclonal antibodies limit the number of founder viruses during SHIV mucosal infection in rhesus macaques. *PLoS Pathog.* (2015) 11:e1005042. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1005042
94. Hessell AJ, Shapiro MB, Powell R, Malherbe DC, Mcburney SP, Pandey S, et al. Reduced cell-associated DNA and improved viral control in macaques following passive transfer of a single anti-V2 monoclonal antibody and repeated SHIV challenges. *J Virol.* (2018) 92:e02198–17. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02198-17
95. Piantadosi A, Panteleeff D, Blish CA, Baeten JM, Jaoko W, McClelland RS, et al. Breadth of neutralizing antibody response to human immunodeficiency

virus type 1 is affected by factors early in infection but does not influence disease progression. *J Virol.* (2009) 83:10269–74. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01149-09

96. Van Gils MJ, Euler Z, Schweighardt B, Wrin T, Schuitemaker H. Prevalence of cross-reactive HIV-1-neutralizing activity in HIV-1-infected patients with rapid or slow disease progression. *AIDS* (2009) 23:2405–14. doi: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32833243e7
97. Euler Z, Van Gils MJ, Bunnik EM, Phung P, Schweighardt B, Wrin T, et al. Cross-reactive neutralizing humoral immunity does not protect from HIV type 1 disease progression. *J Infect Dis.* (2010) 201:1045–53. doi: 10.1086/651144
98. Richard J, Prevost J, Baxter AE, Von Bredow B, Ding S, Medjahed H, et al. Uninfected bystander cells impact the measurement of HIV-specific antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity responses. *MBio* (2018) 9:e00358–18. doi: 10.1128/mBio.00358-18

Conflict of Interest Statement: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

REVIEW
published: 28 February 2019
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00332

Antibody-Dependent Cellular Phagocytosis in Antiviral Immune Responses

Matthew Zirui Tay[1†], *Kevin Wiehe*[2] *and Justin Pollara*[2,3*]

[1] Department of Molecular Genetics and Microbiology, Duke University School of Medicine, Durham, NC, United States, [2] Human Vaccine Institute, Duke University School of Medicine, Durham, NC, United States, [3] Department of Surgery, Duke University School of Medicine, Durham, NC, United States

Antiviral activities of antibodies may either be dependent only on interactions between the antibody and cognate antigen, as in binding and neutralization of an infectious virion, or instead may require interactions between antibody–antigen immune complexes and immunoproteins or Fc receptor expressing immune effector cells. These Fc receptor-dependent antibody functions provide a direct link between the innate and adaptive immune systems by combining the potent antiviral activity of innate effector cells with the diversity and specificity of the adaptive humoral response. The Fc receptor-dependent function of antibody-dependent cellular phagocytosis (ADCP) provides mechanisms for clearance of virus and virus-infected cells, as well as for stimulation of downstream adaptive immune responses by facilitating antigen presentation, or by stimulating the secretion of inflammatory mediators. In this review, we discuss the properties of Fc receptors, antibodies, and effector cells that influence ADCP. We also provide and interpret evidence from studies that support a potential role for ADCP in either inhibiting or enhancing viral infection. Finally, we describe current approaches used to measure antiviral ADCP and discuss considerations for the translation of studies performed in animal models. We propose that additional investigation into the role of ADCP in protective viral responses, the specific virus epitopes targeted by ADCP antibodies, and the types of phagocytes and Fc receptors involved in ADCP at sites of virus infection will provide insight into strategies to successfully leverage this important immune response for improved antiviral immunity through rational vaccine design.

Keywords: antibody effector functions, antibody-dependent cellular phagocytosis (ADCP), Fc receptors, phagocytes, antiviral antibodies

OPEN ACCESS

Edited by:
Gabriella Scarlatti,
San Raffaele Hospital (IRCCS), Italy

Reviewed by:
Xiaobo Zhang,
Zhejiang University, China
Stephen Kent,
The University of Melbourne, Australia

***Correspondence:**
Justin Pollara
justin.pollara@duke.edu

†Present Address:
Matthew Zirui Tay,
*Singapore Immunology Network, Agency for Science, Technology and Research (A*STAR), Singapore, Singapore*

Specialty section:
This article was submitted to Comparative Immunology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology

Received: *17 December 2018*
Accepted: *08 February 2019*
Published: *28 February 2019*

Citation:
Tay MZ, Wiehe K and Pollara J (2019) Antibody-Dependent Cellular Phagocytosis in Antiviral Immune Responses. Front. Immunol. 10:332. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00332

INTRODUCTION

Antibodies are a key component of the human adaptive immune system, and the elicitation of antibodies has been correlated with vaccine efficacy in many diseases (1). Passively infused antibodies have been used in anti-toxin, anti-viral, and anti-inflammatory treatments; and monoclonal recombinant antibodies are also currently being pursued for prevention of HIV-1 infection in large Phase IIb clinical trials (NTC02716675 and NCT02568215). Antibodies can exert

their protective functions via a multitude of mechanisms. Some functions, such as neutralization, mainly depend on interaction of the Fv domain (**Figure 1A**) with antigen and are therefore predominantly Fc domain independent. Other functions, including antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) and antibody-dependent cellular phagocytosis (ADCP), require interactions between the antibody Fc domain with other proteins or immune effector cells via recognition by Fc receptors (9–11) (**Figures 1A–C**). These Fc receptor-dependent antibody functions provide a direct link between the innate and adaptive immune systems, harnessing the potent anti-pathogen functions of the innate immune system, and overcoming its inherent limited pattern recognition capacity by utilizing the diversity and specificity of the adaptive immune response. Fc receptor-dependent antibody functions are important components of the immune response that provide mechanisms for clearance of infected host cells, immune complexes, or opsonized pathogens. Fc receptor-dependent antibody functions are also involved in activation of downstream adaptive immune responses by facilitating antigen presentation or by stimulating the secretion of inflammatory mediators (12, 13). This review is focused on the antibody Fc receptor-dependent effector function ADCP in immune responses against viruses and targets three areas of interest: (1) discussion of the biophysical factors that influence ADCP including the properties of the receptors, antibodies, and effector cells; (2) survey and interpretation of evidence supporting a potential role for ADCP in either inhibiting or enhancing viral infection; and (3) description of current approaches used to measure ADCP with consideration for the translation of studies performed in animal models.

ANTIBODY AND Fc RECEPTOR INTERACTIONS INVOLVED IN ADCP

Immune complexes formed between antigen and antibody are capable of engaging a diversity of Fc receptors on innate immune cells. The type I IgG Fc receptors are activatory FcγRI, FcγRIIa, FcγRIIc, FcγRIIIa, FcγRIIIb, and inhibitory FcγRIIb (**Figure 1C**). Other IgG Fc receptors include the non-classical (type II) IgG Fc receptors CD209 and CD23, neonatal FcR (FcRn) which is involved in IgG transport and recycling, and the cytosolic Fc receptor TRIM21. IgA antibodies are specifically engaged by FcαRI (**Figure 1C**), and the specific receptor for IgE is FcεRI—which is involved in rapid allergic responses. Immune complexes may also interact with other receptors that have been described to bind to immunoglobulins but have been relatively uncharacterized, including FCA/MR (14), FCMR (15), IgD-R (16), CD71 (17), secretory component receptors (18), asialoglycoprotein receptors (19), and M cell receptors (20).

When engaged, most Fc receptors are capable of cytoplasmic signaling. For instance, as shown in **Figure 1C**, FcγRIIa and FcγRIIc signal via their immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif (ITAM) domains, whereas FcγRI and FcγRIIIa lack ITAM domains but associate with an FcRγ signaling chain (γ_2) and signal via its ITAM domain. The inhibitory FcγRIIb signals via an immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibition motif (ITIM) domain. The IgA receptor, FcαRI, also associates with the FcRγ signaling chain (**Figure 1C**), but this seems to be dispensable for signaling, and signaling is dependent on dephosphorylation of the intracellular domain of FcαRI (21). Downstream signaling pathways are complex and dependent on the Fc receptor, cell type, and stimulation mechanism, but generally act via increasing intracellular calcium cation concentration, activation of PKC, or activation of ras (22).

As a result of the ubiquitous presence of antibody in both the systemic and mucosal microenvironments, regulatory systems are required to prevent constitutive Fc receptor signaling. This is achieved via several mechanisms that are either intrinsic to Fc receptor signal pathways, impacted by external soluble signals detected by the phagocyte, or established at the genetic level (**Figure 2**). A key intrinsic regulator is the inability of free antibody to activate Fc receptor signaling. The low-affinity Fc receptors, including FcγRIIa, FcγRIIb, FcγRIIc, and FcγRIIIa require multiple coordinated interactions for sufficient binding avidity, and thus can only be triggered by multivalent antibody-antigen immune complexes (22). Even for the high-affinity FcγRI, which is able to bind monomeric IgG, binding does not trigger signaling through its associated γ-chain; instead, signaling requires receptor clustering and cross-linking (23). Moreover, activatory Fc receptors can also produce inhibitory signals when engaged at a low level–the mechanisms for this phenomenon are not well-understood but may involve ITAM monophosphorylation which activates the inhibitory SHIP-1 (24) rather than the diphosphorylation required for activatory Syk engagement (25). Similarly, immunostimulatory and immunoinhibitory Fc receptors are often co-expressed on the same cell, thus the outcome of antibody-mediated signaling is often dependent on the balance of activating or inhibiting signals. The abundance of these receptors on the cell-surface and their ability to interact with immune complexes is influenced by soluble signaling molecules, which allows the local inflammatory milieu to also contribute to the regulation of Fc receptor-dependent responses of phagocytes (26–28). Finally, Fc receptor signaling is regulated at the genetic level. Single nucleotide polymorphisms in human Fc receptors affect interactions with antibody Fc, resulting in Fc receptor variants with lower or higher relative affinities for immune complexes (2, 6, 11, 12, 29). Several Fc receptor polymorphisms have been associated with the occurrence or progress of disease resulting from infection with viruses including dengue virus (30, 31), influenza virus (32), human coronavirus (33), Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) (34), Kaposi's Sarcoma virus (KSV) (35), and HIV-1 (36–38).

The specific Fc receptor engagements involved in ADCP of different viruses or virus-infected cells at sites of infection and throughout antiviral immune responses have not been completely defined, and are not expected to follow a generalizable rule. As will be described in the following sections, the receptors involved will differ depending on the characteristics of the antibody forming the complex —such as isotype, subclass, and glycosylation— as well as on the particular type of phagocyte encountering the immune complex.

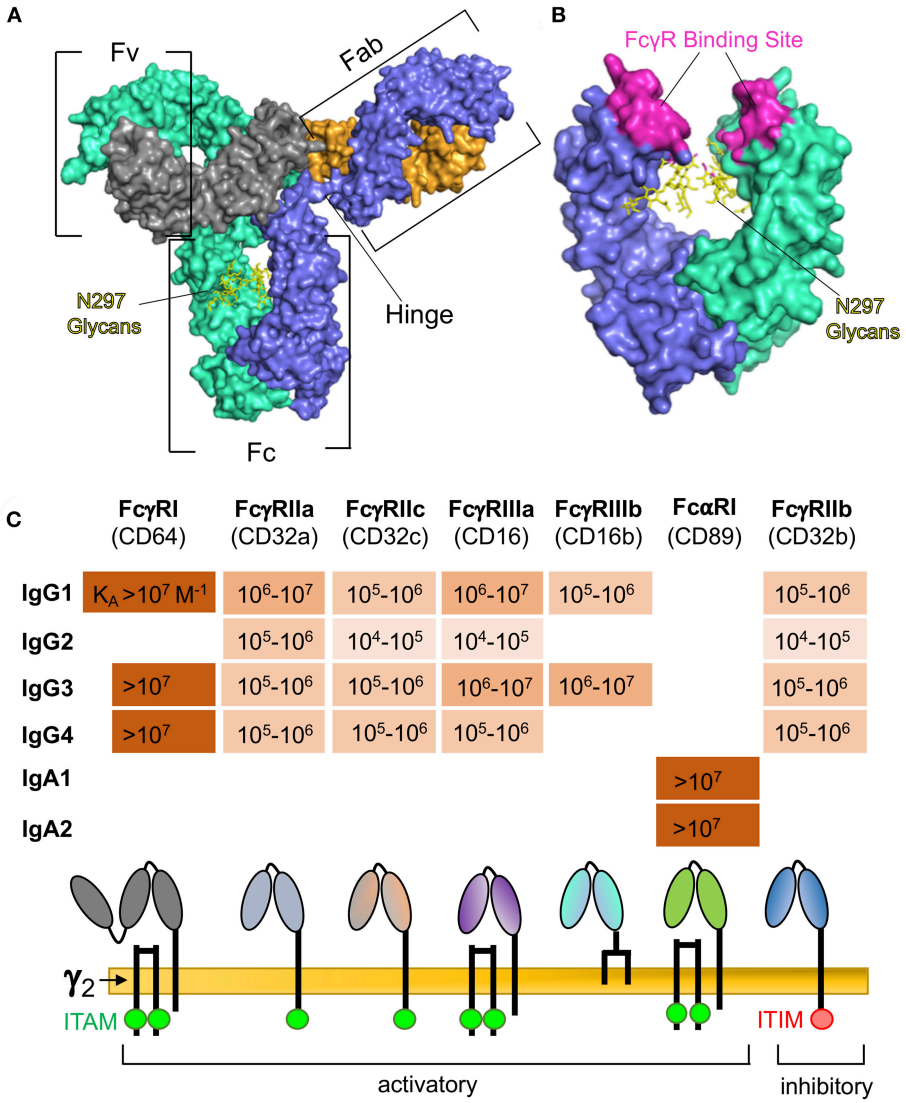


FIGURE 1 | (A) Surface representation of human IgG1 indicating: the Fv regions, which are the portions of the Fab arms required for antigen binding; the Fc region, which interacts with immunoproteins and specific receptors for effector functions; and the hinge region, which provides flexibility for the Fab and Fc regions. The IgG heavy chain 1 is depicted in blue, heavy chain 2 in teal, light chain 1 in orange, and light chain 2 in gray. Glycans are represented by yellow sticks. Rendering was made in PyMOL software using protein data bank ID 1HZH. **(B)** Expanded view of human IgG1 Fc region after 180° rotation, indicating residues involved in binding to Fcγ receptors (2–5), and the glycosylation site at asparagine 297 (N297). **(C)** Binding affinities (6–8) of Fc receptors commonly implicated in ADCP and comparison of receptor composition and signaling domains. Absence of values indicates no detectable binding.

ANTIBODY CHARACTERISTICS THAT IMPACT ADCP

In addition to the Fc receptor regulatory mechanisms described above, the ability of interactions between immune complexes and Fc receptors to result in Fc receptor signal transduction is further regulated by specific characteristics of the antibody Fc region. Antibody isotype serves as the principal level of regulation, as most Fc receptors are specific for only one isotype of antibody. Within isotype, there is additional regulation at the level of antibody subclass (**Figure 1C**). For the human IgG isotype, IgG3 has the highest affinity for most of the type I FcγRs, followed by IgG1, then IgG4, then IgG2 (6). In contrast, subclass is not a predominant source of regulation for ADCP by IgA, as human FcαR has been demonstrated to have similar affinity for IgA1, and IgA2 (7).

Additional regulation of Fc–Fc receptor interactions required for ADCP occurs via diversity in glycosylation of the antibody Fc (39). The IgG Fc region contains an N-linked glycan at asparagine 297 (**Figure 1B**) that impacts the conformation of the antibody and affinity for Fc receptors (39). As described in a comprehensive recent review by Jennewein and Alter, for IgG antibodies there are 36 possible glycoforms and 4 different subclasses, yielding a total of 144 possible unique Fc regions

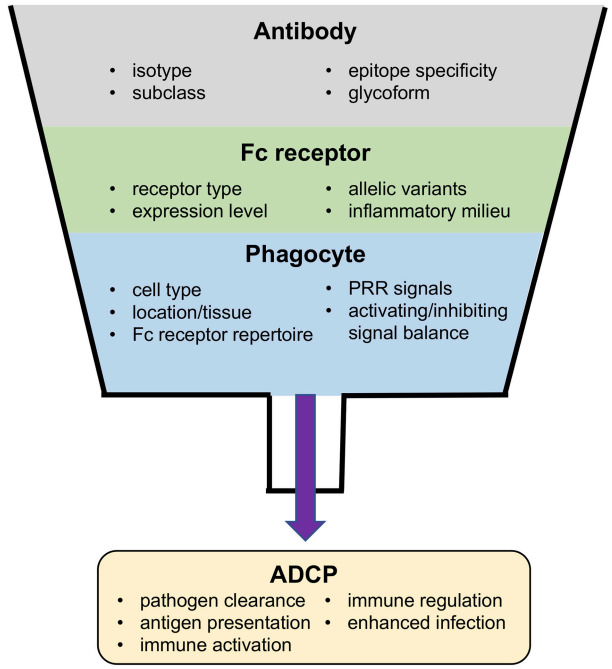


FIGURE 2 | Factors impacting ADCP and potential outcomes of the ADCP response to virus infection.

(40). Importantly, antibody glycovariation can be modulated by inflammatory responses, allowing the immune system to adapt and adjust antibody Fc glycoforms to modulate biologic activities in response to infection (40). Changes in antibody glycosylation have been described during the course of HIV-1 infection (41, 42), and in response to influenza vaccination (43, 44), but for many viral diseases the role of glycovariation in antiviral antibody responses has yet to be defined.

Fc RECEPTOR SIGNALING FOR ADCP

Leukocytes involved in ADCP must express at least one type of Fc receptor. This includes monocytes, macrophages, neutrophils, and eosinophils; canonically referred to as professional phagocytes. In ADCP the phagocyte is engaged by antibody, either directly via Fc receptor or indirectly via antibody-fixed complement, to engulf one or more opsonized particles or molecules, which typically including pathogens, infected cells, and their derivatives (45, 46). The internalization in most cases leads to the destruction of the internalized target by phagolysosomal degradation, though it is important to note that several human pathogens have evolved to co-opt this process and survive within phagocytes (47–50). Phagocytosis leads to different immune outcomes depending on the cell type—for instance, antibody-mediated phagocytosis by macrophages leads to enhanced pathogen destruction and antigen presentation, whereas antibody-mediated phagocytosis by plasmacytoid dendritic cells leads to enhanced secretion of interferon alpha (51–53).

In Fc receptor-mediated phagocytosis, ligated and aggregated Fc receptor become phosphorylated via Src family tyrosine kinases (54) on their ITAM domains (either their own or from an associated γ-subunit), forming a docking site for Syk (55) and triggering a signaling cascade involving PKC (56, 57), PI3K (58–60), and synthesis of PI(4,5)P2, (3,4,5)-PIP3, and DAG (61). These lead to actin cytoskeleton remodeling (62), allowing the advance of the phagocytic cell over the target. The strength of early signaling events is proportional to the number of engaged Fc receptors, whereas late signaling events required to complete phagocytosis require a concentration threshold of 3′PI to be satisfied (63).

PHAGOCYTES INVOLVED IN VIRUS ADCP

The type of phagocyte involved in an ADCP responses to virus infection depends not only on the profile of Fc receptors expressed by the cell and characteristics of the antiviral antibodies as described above, but also on the phagocyte being present at, or recruited to, sites of infection. Professional phagocytes are differentially distributed in the circulation and tissues (64–67), and inflammatory signaling can promote both ingress and egress of immune effector cells (68). Therefore, cells present at the site of infection and involved in the antiviral response likely change over time. Transgenic mouse models and cell-type specific depletions can help to identify essential cell populations, but a clear view of the specific interactions involved in the tissue at the site of virus infection is often limited, especially in humans. Despite the difficulties inherent to accessing and studying immune cells *in situ* within human tissues, a remarkable study by Sips et al. defined the distribution and frequency of Fc receptor expressing immune cells in mucosal and lymphoid tissues (69). They identified differential distribution of professional phagocytes —with macrophages being the dominant phagocyte population in lymph nodes, and intestinal tissues and neutrophils representing the dominant phagocyte population in tissues from the lower female reproductive tract. Using a novel tissue phagocytosis assay, they compared the HIV-1-specific ADCP activity of neutrophils and macrophages from the colon and cervix. They found that although abundant in the colon, colon-resident macrophages were deficient in ADCP compared to colon- and cervix-resident neutrophils as well as cervix-resident macrophages. This seminal study likely only partially defines the diversity of professional phagocytes, both for phenotype and functionality, within tissues that can be encountered by antibody-virus immune complexes during virus infection, and that inevitably impacts outcome of these encounters.

BALANCE OF ACTIVATORY AND INHIBITORY SIGNALS DETERMINE HOW PHAGOCYTES RESPOND TO IMMUNE COMPLEXES

Importantly, most phagocytes are capable of other Fc-dependent effector functions in addition to ADCP. Thus, the outcome of each interaction between phagocytes and immune complexes

is determined by a combination of signals (**Figure 2**). Many phagocytes express more than one type of Fc receptor, often expressing both activatory and inhibitory Fc receptors. The balance of these divergent signal pathways is critical to simulating and regulating each potential effector response. Signals mediated by other types of receptors also contribute to determining the type of effector response a phagocyte will mount. Among them, information from pattern recognition receptors (PRRs) that can detect molecular patters associated with different types of pathogens are integrated in the response to Fc receptor stimuli. For example, Toll-like receptor 3, 7, 8, and 9 have the ability to detect viral nucleic acids and activate immune cells (70), and are therefore able to potentiate effective antiviral responses including ADCP. In contrast, alternative inhibitory signals, such as CD47 SIPα can negatively regulate phagocytosis. Intriguingly, some viruses express homologues of CD47, which may act to prevent activation of professional phagocytes as a strategy for immune evasion (71, 72).

Apart from direct antiviral activity through uptake and elimination of virus or infected cells, antibody-dependent phagocytosis is also important in the development and regulation of immune responses themselves (**Figure 2**) (12). Pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) derived from virus antigens can be released upon phagocytosis and digestion of antibody–virus immune complexes. The released virus PAMPs can prime an inflammatory response upon sensing by PRRs, which may then stimulate additional immune cells and activate subsequent immune responses (12, 13). For instance, in adenovirus infection of the respiratory tract, alveolar macrophages are responsible for internalizing adenovirus and initiating early pro-inflammatory signaling (73). A similar response, termed antibody-induced inflammation, has been demonstrated to have an important role in protection against influenza infection (74). There are also direct roles for ADCP in modulation of adaptive immunity. ADCP of immune complexes by dendritic cells via FcγRIIa promotes MHC class I and II antigen presentation and induces cellular and humoral immune responses, while uptake through FcγRIIb prevents dendritic cell maturation and does not promote immune activation (75). Antibody production and affinity is also regulated by FcγRIIb-mediated induction of B-cell apoptosis, which helps to eliminate B cells with low affinity B cell receptors (75). Based on the diverse roles of ADCP in immune responses it is unsurprising that ADCP has been shown to be an important component of immune responses to infection by many different viruses.

EVIDENCE FOR THE IMPORTANCE OF ADCP IN IMMUNE RESPONSES AGAINST VIRUSES

Phagocytosis has traditionally been known for its role in clearance of bacteria and fungi, as evidenced by the fact that persons with defects in phagocytosis are susceptible to common bacterial and fungal infections (76). It is important to note that these observations relate to total phagocytosis (antibody dependent and antibody independent) and thus do not allow for dissection of the specific contribution of ADCP to protection from bacterial and fungal infection. The role of ADCP in immune responses against viruses is similarly complex and difficult to dissect given its association with other antibody functions in the settings of infection, vaccination, and passive immunization.

HIV-1

In the context of natural infection with HIV-1, the first line of evidence for a role of ADCP in the antiviral immune response is associations between Fc receptor genetics and disease progression or risk of infection. Forthal and collaborators (37) performed FcγRIIa genotyping of a large cohort HIV-1 infected men ($n = 559$), over 90% of which were entered into the study prior to the availability of antiretroviral therapy, and all of whom were enrolled into the cohort with $CD4^+$ T cell counts above $500/mm^3$. They found that homozygosity for the low affinity allele of FcγRIIa (R/R131), the Fc receptor implicated in IgG-mediated ADCP activity of antibody responses against HIV-1 (77, 78), significantly predicted an accelerated rate of disease progression —defined as $CD4^+$ T cell counts under $200/mm^3$– when compared to subjects that were heterozygous for this allele (H/R131), or homozygous for the high affinity allele (H/H131) of FcγRIIa (37). No such correlation was observed for FcγRIIIa allelic variants, which is conventionally regarded as the primary Fc receptor involved in natural killer (NK) cell ADCC. Associations between Fc receptor genetics and risk of HIV-1 infection have also been studied in the setting of vertical transmission. Using samples collected from antiretroviral-naïve HIV-seropositive mothers and paired infants in western Kenya, Brouwer et al. (36) identified infant homozygosity for the high affinity allele of FcγRIIa as a risk factor for perinatal HIV-1 infection. They observed no impact of maternal FcγRIIa alleles on transmission. Recently, a similar study was conducted using samples collected from 79 HIV-1 transmitting mothers, 234 non-transmitting mothers, and their offspring, in a South African cohort with contrasting results (79). In this latter study, the infant FcγRIIa acquisition risk factor identified by Brouwer et al. was not recapitulated, but instead the authors reported that mothers with the high affinity allele for FcγRIIIa (homozygous or heterozygous) were associated with a significantly lower risk of HIV-1 vertical transmission (79). Taken collectively, these three observations highlight the complexity in interpreting correlative studies. How can the seemingly contradictory findings be explained? Many factors are likely contributing to the divergent outcomes including differential requirements for immune control of disease progression vs. infection when comparing the Forthal study to the two studies investigating vertical transmission. Within the transmission studies, the authors of the South African study put forth the hypothesis that differences in timepoints used for determination of HIV infection may have resulted in inclusion of more postnatal breastfeeding transmission events in the Brouwer study, which likely have different requirements for protection compared to infections occurring in utero or perinatally. Although this may be the case, it is also important to reiterate that Fc receptor genetics is only one level of regulation for ADCP and other Fc receptor-dependent immune responses. As previously described,

further regulation occurs at the level of the cell (type of phagocyte and combination of receptors expressed), within tissue immune environment (presence or absence of inflammatory signals), and via the antibody comprising the immune complex (specificity, isotype, subclass, and glycoforms). Thus, although studies based on genetic factors alone may provide insight into the potential for ADCP and other Fc receptor-dependent antibody functions to contribute to immune responses to HIV-1 they are limited by an inability to account for the myriad of factors that impact these antibody effector functions *in vivo*. Other studies have helped to address some of these limitations and provide additional evidence that ADCP plays an important antiviral role against HIV-1. By comparing ADCP activity of polyclonal IgG collected from HIV-1 infected individuals and healthy controls, Ackerman and collaborators determined that phagocytosis activity was higher for IgG from viremic patients and HIV-1 controllers compared to IgG collected from patients on highly active antiretroviral therapy. Importantly, they found that the antibodies from controllers were able to outcompete phagocytic activity of antibodies from viremic individuals and were biased toward interactions with activatory FcγRIIa over interactions with inhibitory FcγRIIb (78). In follow-up studies, they demonstrated that ADCP was a component of a polyfunctional response in HIV-1 controllers that included NK cell activation, ADCC, and complement deposition (80), and that was likely impacted by skewing of antibody glycoforms (42). Unlike that observed for HIV controllers, impaired phagocytosis is one of the hallmarks of chronic viremic HIV-1 infection (81–83), and may be related to a loss of FcγRII expression on monocytes and dendritic cells (77).

Preclinical and clinical trials of candidate HIV-1 vaccines have provided more opportunities to evaluate the importance of ADCP in protection against SIV/SHIV/HIV-1 infection. Immune correlates analyses suggest that protection against infection as well as inhibition of virus replication after establishment of infection is mediated not only by direct neutralization, but also by Fc-mediated antibody effector functions (80, 84–92).

In rhesus macaque SIV and SHIV preclinical animal models, non-broadly neutralizing antibody functions, including phagocytosis, correlated with reduced risk of infection as measured by increased number of low-dose challenges to infection (86, 90, 93). Of particular interest is the elegant study by Ackerman and colleagues, which identified distinct immune signatures of vaccine-mediated protection dependent on the route of immunization (94). In this study, rhesus macaques were immunized with a DNA prime-Ad5 SIVmac239 Env-based vaccine regime, either via the intramuscular (IM) route, or intranasally in an aerosol (AE) formulation. Equivalent levels of vaccine efficacy (∼70%) against repeated low dose smE660 intra-rectal challenge were observed for both the IM and AE immunization groups, although unique humoral immune profiles and correlates of risk were identified. ADCP however, was identified as a correlate of reduced infection risk in both the IM and AE vaccine groups. Remarkably, although ADCP was a common immune function linked to protection independently of the route of immunization, the phagocytes and antibody isotypes associated with ADCP differed. For animals vaccinated by the IM route, monocyte ADCP and IgG were associated with reduced risk of infection, while ADCP by neutrophils (termed antibody-dependent neutrophil phagocytosis, ADNP) and IgA were associated with reduced risk of infection in animals vaccinated via the AE route. Importantly, a cross study validation of the ADCP correlate was preformed, and ADCP was also identified as associated with reduced risk of infection by low dose SHIV challenge in rhesus macaques vaccinated with an ALVAC prime gp120-boost vaccine regimen (93, 94), providing evidence for ADCP in vaccine-elicited protection afforded by different vaccine regimens and routes of inoculation, and against different challenge viruses.

Consistent with the observations from efficacious preclinical studies performed in rhesus macaque models, an immune correlates analysis of the partially efficacious RV144 vaccine human clinical trial provided evidence that non-neutralizing antibodies contributed to reduced risk of infection. Vaccine-elicited variable region 1 and 2 (V1/V2) IgG antibodies correlated with decreased risk of HIV-1 infection (85, 89, 91, 95) and these V1/V2 antibodies were not broadly neutralizing but were capable of multiple antiviral functions, such as ADCC, virion capture, ADCP, and tier-1 neutralization (91, 96–98). Notably, the RV144 vaccine regimen elicited antibodies that exhibited coordinated Fc-mediated effector responses (87, 91). Fc receptor polymorphisms also influenced RV144 vaccine efficacy (99), although these polymorphisms were for FcγRIIc and have not been associated with ADCP. Other HIV-1 vaccine efficacy trials that showed no efficacy either lacked a coordinated Fc receptor-dependent effector response (87) or lacked evidence of strong Fc-mediated antibody functions (100, 101).

When considered collectively, the results from non-human primate and HIV-1 candidate vaccine clinical trials provide strong evidence that ADCP is an achievable and potentially protective antiviral immune response to induce by preventative HIV-1 vaccines. As efforts continue toward development of vaccines that can induce broad-neutralizing antibodies it will be important to ensure that ADCP and other Fc receptor-dependent antibody responses are elicited. Fortunately, although HIV-1 broadly neutralizing antibodies (bnAbs) are defined based on their ability to neutralize a broad range of viruses, many bnAbs are also capable of mediating Fc receptor-dependent antiviral functions including ADCC and ADCP (69, 102–104).

Passive immunization trials have also show that antibody-mediated protective activity is not solely due to neutralization, but also in part due to Fc receptor-dependent functions. In non-human primate (NHP) passive immunization studies, with both high and low dose vaginal challenge of rhesus macaques with SHIV162p3, protection decreased by about 50% when the administered passive antibody was incapable of binding Fc receptors (105, 106). Similarly, in passive immunization studies performed with humanized mice, antibodies with enhanced ability to bind activating Fc receptors gave greater protection than their epitope-matched counterparts (107, 108). Although the specific role of ADCP in these observations has not been determined, when combined with the evidence provided from studies of HIV-1 virus control and disease progression, and from candidate vaccine trials, there is strong evidence to support

ADCP as contributing to antibody-mediated protection from HIV-1. However, a recent study by Parsons and collaborators demonstrated that for the highly potent neutralizing antibody PGT121, Fc-receptor dependent functions were dispensable for maximal protection (109). These results suggest that the extent to which Fc receptor-dependent antibody functions contribute to protection is variable, and likely dependent on multiple factors including neutralization potency and/or characteristics of the virus challenge (110).

Influenza Virus

Huber and colleagues used a murine vaccination and challenge model to provide evidence supporting a role of ADCP in protective immune responses to influenza virus infection (111). Normal BALB/c mice and BALB/c mice engineered to lack expression of the Fc receptor γ-chain—and thus deficient in Fc receptor signaling—were given identical influenza immunizations and challenges. Mice lacking the Fc receptor γ-chain were incapable of antibody-mediated phagocytosis, and were highly susceptible to influenza infection, despite the presence of normal levels of cytokines (IFN-γ and IL-10) and antibodies. The condition was not reversed even in the presence of passively-infused anti-influenza antibodies from immune wild type mice, indicating that a defect in interactions of antibody with immune effector cells caused the susceptibility. The effector mechanism was narrowed down by demonstrating protection after passive transfer of immune sera into CD3ε-transgenic mice that lack T cells and NK cells, thereby showing lack of dependence on NK cells and suggesting against ADCC as the mechanism of inhibition. In contrast, macrophages were observed to be ingesting opsonized virus particles, implicating ADCP in inhibition of influenza infection (111). Subsequent work demonstrated that neutrophils may be an essential phagocyte that interacts with influenza specific antibody in protection from disease (112).

Another line of evidence showed that depletion of lung phagocytes, i.e., neutrophils and alveolar macrophages, caused uncontrolled growth of influenza in mice, and caused mortality at doses that were sub-lethal to normal mice (112, 113). Passive immunization studies performed in normal mice or neutrophil-depleted mice demonstrated that the effector mechanism responsible for control of influenza infection by phagocytes was likely antibody-dependent, since control of infection was enhanced by passively infused antiserum (112). Consistent with these results, DeLillo and collaborators used humanized Fcγ receptor mice in a passive immunization model to demonstrate that influenza hemagglutinin protein stalk-specific neutralizing human monoclonal antibodies (see Epitope section below) were dependent on interactions with activatory Fcγ receptors for protection from influenza challenge (114). The antiviral mechanisms of this protection were found to likely be dependent on both ADCC (114) and ADCP (115). Passive immunization experiments performed by He and collaborators, and in a second study by DiLillo and collaborators, also demonstrated a requirement for Fc receptor interactions in order to achieve maximal protection with both neutralizing, and non-neutralizing influenza-specific antibodies (74, 116). He and collaborators found that protection was dependent on alveolar macrophages, and that these cells were capable of ADCP of immune complexes formed with influenza virus and non-neutralizing or neutralizing antibodies, suggesting a role for ADCP in the observed protective efficacy of passive immunization.

The contribution of ADCP to protection from influenza infection observed in passive immunization studies supports antibodies capable of ADCP as a desirable outcome of active immunization to protect against influenza infection. A paramount goal for the armamentarium against influenza pandemics is development of a universal vaccine that is efficacious against the high diversity of influenza subtypes and strain variants that result from antigenic drift. Many approaches toward this goal attempt to focus the immune response on highly conserved influenza antigens. Results of testing such candidate vaccine regimens have suggested that ADCP may be an important immune response elicited by antibodies that target conserved influenza epitopes. Using influenza virus like particles (VLPs) as an immunogen to elicit responses to the highly conserved matrix protein 2 (M2), Song and colleagues demonstrated, in mice, that M2 VLP immunes sera induced cross protection across heterologous influenza A viruses including the 2009 H1N1 pandemic virus, as well as the heterosubtypic H3N2 and H5N1 influenza viruses. They also found that the immune sera responsible for this cross-protection required the presence of dendritic cells and macrophages (117). Another group independently identified similar observations and reached similar conclusions. Using a vaccine approach based on the conserved M2e influenza epitope, they showed that passive immunization by M2e-specific antibodies depends on the presence of alveolar macrophages with intact FcγRI and FcγRIII for immune protection (118). The authors of this study point out that the M2 protein is highly expressed on the surface of infected cells, but limited on influenza virions. They therefore hypothesized that the anti-M2e antibodies preferentially target influenza infected cells and eliminate them via ADCC and ADCP prior to virus propagation and release by budding. ADCP of infected cells is an understudied aspect of immune responses to all viral infections, and it should be further investigated in this context. Collectively, these preclinical candidate vaccine studies provide evidence that protection by Fc receptor-dependent processes including ADCP may be broad and stretch across influenza subtypes. However, ADCP activity has also been shown to be a component of the non-cross-reactive immune response induced by the seasonal trivalent influenza vaccine (119), and anti-influenza sera ADCP activity is common in healthy adults (120). It remains unknown how ADCP and other Fc receptor-dependent functions contribute to persistent natural and vaccine-induced responses to seasonal influenza.

While most evidence from studies performed in animal models suggests that phagocytes and ADCP contribute to protective immune responses against influenza virus there may also be aspects of their function that augment influenza infection. For example, inhibition or removal of the ability of phagocytes to produce reactive oxygen species improved the resolution of lung influenza infection in mice (121), and the high affinity allele

of FcγRIIa was found to be a risk factor for severe pneumonia during the 2009 A/H1N1 pandemic (32).

Herpesviruses

ADCP of herpes simplex virus-infected fibroblast by both neutrophils and monocytes has been observed *in vitro* (122), and several studies have implicated ADCP as having a role in immune responses to herpesvirus infections. ADCP was recently identified as a component of the antibody response elicited by vaccination with a cytomegalovirus (CMV) subunit vaccine. Nelson and collaborators investigated the humoral components of reduced risk of CMV acquisition observed in the moderately (∼50%) efficacious clinical trial of the CMV glycoprotein gB/MF59 vaccine conducted in postpartum women (123, 124). Consistent with previous observations (125), they found that this vaccine induced only modest neutralizing antibody responses. However, the vaccine-elicited antibodies were demonstrated to bind to the surface of infected cells and mediate robust ADCP of both gB-protein coated beads and fluorescently-labeled whole CMV virions (124). Interestingly, the vaccine elicited high magnitude gB-specific IgG3 responses, which likely contributes to the high levels of ADCP observed as the IgG3 isotype has previously been shown to be superior to IgG1 for virion ADCP in studies performed with HIV-1 (104). The study by Nelson et al. is novel in that it implicates non-neutralizing antibody responses as having an important role in antibody responses against CMV, and therefore may help to open new pathways toward development of highly effective next-generation CMV vaccines.

A genetic link providing evidence of a role ADCP in immune responses to herpesviruses was described for EBV. The low affinity allele of FcγRIIa was found to be enriched in EBV infection and correlated with the expression of the latency protein LMP1, suggesting that this allele may be a risk factor for latent EBV infection (34).

Collectively these studies provide evidence that ADCP contributes to vaccine-elicited and natural immune responses to herpesvirus infection. Due to the prevalence of herpesviruses worldwide, and the need for additional strategies for treatment and prevention, additional research in this area is warranted.

Other Virus Infections

Although the ADCP has not been comprehensively studied in the context of most virus infections, it may be a common component of antiviral humoral immune responses to diverse types of viruses as supported by the study of respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), ebola virus, human papilloma virus (HPV), foot-and-mouth disease virus (FMDV), severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus (SARS-CoV), and West Nile virus (WNV).

For RSV and ebola virus, evidence of ADCP in immune responses is limited to *in vitro* assessment of virus-specific monoclonal antibodies. ADCC and ADCP activity was observed for RSV G protein-specific monoclonal antibodies produced by B cells from healthy (presumably RSV exposed and immune) adults (126). For ebola virus, glycoprotein-specific monoclonal antibodies produced by B cells in response to ebola virus glycoprotein DNA prime and virus-vectored boost vaccination were shown to have ADCP activity (127).

The contribution of ADCP activity to protection from HPV infection was reported for anti-HPV neutralizing monoclonal antibodies. Using passive transfer experiments in mouse models, Wang and collaborators provided evidence that HPV-specific IgG monoclonal antibodies can cross the vaginal epithelial at sites of local disruption, and that this IgG had ADCP activity (128). They propose that ADCP augmented protection against vaginal HPV infection resulting from virus neutralization because protection was less efficacious when passive transfers were performed with $F(ab')_2$ instead of whole IgG, when performed in Fcγ-deficient mice, or with mice depleted of neutrophils and $Gr1^+$ macrophages.

FcγRII genotyping of 180 people previously infected with SARS-CoV and 200 region-matched normal donors was used to identify homozygosity for the low affinity allele of FcγRIIa as significantly associated with severe SARS-CoV infection (33). Further evidence supporting a role for ADCP in the immune response that attenuates SARS-CoV infection comes from depletion studies that demonstrated a requirement for infiltrating and tissue resident macrophages, as well as SARS immune sera, for clearance of SARS-CoV from pulmonary cells in a mouse model (129). NK cells were not required, suggesting against ADCC as the immune mechanism involved in the reduction of infection (129). The SARS immune sera use in these experiments had the ability to neutralize SARS-CoV. Thus, this study provides another example of ADCP contributing to the protection mediated by antibodies with the ability to neutralize virus, as described above for HPV and HIV-1. Similar observations have been made for FMDV (129–131). Taken together, these observations suggest the compelling possibility that for many viruses where neutralization has been shown to have the ability prevent or control infection, ADCP or other Fc receptor-dependent effector functions may also contribute and enhance their protective function to an extent that has yet to be fully defined.

For WNV, passive antibody transfer of WNV non-structural protein-1 (NS1)-specific monoclonal antibodies into normal mice and Fcγ receptor knock-out mice demonstrated Fc receptor-dependent protection (132). Protection was maintained in mice lacking only FcγRIII, suggesting that NK cell ADCC was not essential. The authors demonstrated that murine macrophages were able to internalize NS1-expressing target cells in the presence of anti-NS1 antibodies, generating the hypothesis that ADCP contributed to protection against WNV infection in this model system. Interestingly, this study demonstrates a role for ADCP of virus-infected cells in protection, which is understudied when compared to ADCP of whole virus or virus proteins. It is possible that infected-cell and virion ADCP may in some contexts have divergent contributions to antiviral responses as it has been shown that virion ADCP promotes higher replication of WNV and other flaviviruses using *in vitro* cell culture models (133, 134).

POTENTIAL FOR ADCP TO ENHANCE VIRAL INFECTION

ADCP is not always associated with beneficial or protective immune responses. In some cases, ADCP has been demonstrated to promote infection. Termed antibody-dependent enhancement (ADE), this has predominantly been described for viruses from the genus *Flavivirus* including dengue virus, yellow fever virus, Japanese encephalitis virus, and zika virus (135–140). Fc receptor-dependent ADE is a particular concern for infections by dengue virus (141–143). There are four serotypes of dengue virus, and antibodies generated in response to infection with one serotype have variable degrees of cross reactivity to the other three serotypes. Upon re-challenge with the original serotype, antibodies are protective. However, the pre-existing antibody response will augment infection and promote more severe disease upon secondary infection with any of the other serotypes (143). Moreover, ADE resulting from cross reactivity may not be limited to secondary infection with another strain of the same virus; ADE might also occur when the secondary infection is a different but closely related virus. For example, the results of recent studies have suggested that dengue virus-specific antibodies may be capable of enhancing zika virus infection (144), and reciprocally, that zika virus-specific antibodies may be capable of enhancing dengue virus infection (140). These observations have been met with skepticism (145), and additional work will be required to demonstrate that this type of ADE has clinical relevance to dengue and zika incidence and disease. ADE is thought to occur when non-neutralizing antibodies, or suboptimal concentrations of neutralizing antibodies, bind and opsonize virus, and are subsequently internalized by Fc receptor expressing cells via ADCP. Within the cells these immune complexes may perturb normal antiviral immune functions resulting in the virus not being destroyed. Instead, the virus exploits ADCP as a tool to expand access to host cells, resulting in higher infection burden and often stimulating an overt inflammatory response that contributes to disease pathogenesis (143). How do viruses such as dengue subvert the process of ADCP to promote increased infection? One potential mechanism that has been proposed to allow for dengue virus to escape Fc receptor-mediated antiviral signaling is through engaging the inhibitory receptor leukocyte immunoglobulin-like receptor-B1 (LILRB1) (146). Thus, for dengue and other viruses, the outcome of each interaction between antibody-virus immune complexes and phagocytes depends on the balance of activating signals, which are expected to promote ADCP and virus elimination, and inhibitory signals, which have the potential to enhance infection.

In the studies of HIV-1 infection, early papers reported that complement and antibodies at low titers could enhance HIV-1 infection *in vitro* (147–150). Since monocytes and macrophages can be infected with HIV-1, one theory is that antibody-mediated phagocytosis may have caused increased viral infection of these phagocytes. More specifically, enhancement may have been due solely to weakly or non-neutralizing antibodies that remain capable of engaging but not neutralizing HIV-1 virus (151). However, it is notable that no enhancement of infection in the vaccine arm was observed in the VAX003 and VAX004 clinical trials, both of which elicited high levels of non-neutralizing antibodies (152, 153).

As described in a comprehensive review of the topic by Taylor and collaborators (143), there is evidence of ADE for many other viruses including influenza, SARS-CoV, RSV, and ebola virus—for all of which there also exists evidence of ADCP as being part of beneficial antiviral antibody responses. These dichotomous observations emphasize the balancing act faced by the immune system as it attempts to respond to virus infection. Immune responses of sufficient specificity and potency are required to protect against infection and disease, but suboptimal responses can be exploited by pathogens resulting in higher levels of infection and more severe disease. Because of this, ADE remains a concern for the development of vaccines against viruses for which potent neutralizing antibody response cannot be elicited.

VIRAL EPITOPES RECOGNIZED IN ADCP

One of the best examples of how epitope specificity can impact ADCP was described for influenza-specific antibodies. Two distinct epitope regions of the influenza hemagglutinin protein are recognized by influenza-specific antibodies: the immunodominant and antigenically variable head domain; and the more antigenically conserved stalk region (**Figure 3**). DiLillo and colleagues demonstrated a requirement for antibody–Fcγ receptor interactions for protection by the stalk-specific antibodies, but not for antibodies recognizing the head domain (114). They further demonstrated that the stalk-specific antibodies were capable of activating NK cells for ADCC, and that the protective efficacy of stalk-specific antibodies could be improved with mutations that selectively enhance engagement with FcγRIIa and FcγRIIIa (114). Mullarkey and colleagues followed-up on these insights and identified a similar epitope-dependent dichotomy of anti-hemagglutinin antibody responses in antiviral assays performed with neutrophils as the source of innate effector cells. Using recombinantly-produced chimeric antibodies with mouse Fv and human Fc regions, they demonstrated that stalk-specific, but not head-specific, antibodies induced ADCP, and reactive oxygen production by neutrophils. Similar observations were made for antibodies made both as IgG1, and as IgA, indicating that the epitope dichotomy for interaction with Fc receptors is conserved for Fcγ and Fcα receptors (115). Their use of recombinantly produced antibodies with identical Fc regions confirms that at least for influenza virus, antibody epitope specificity can play an essential role in establishing downstream antiviral effector responses. A subsequent study by DiLillo and collaborators expanded upon their initial observations, and demonstrated that the requirement for Fc receptor involvement for protection *in vivo* was not restricted only to stalk-specific antibodies, but instead was a common feature of antibodies capable or recognizing a breadth of influenza strains. Using mouse models, Fc receptor dependent protection was shown for both broadly neutralizing stalk and head specific antibodies, as well as broadly-binding non-neutralizing head-specific antibodies (116). Thus,

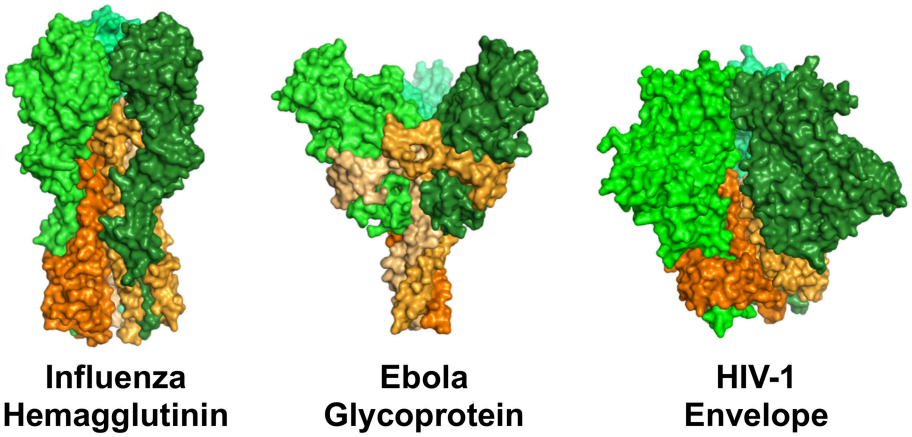


FIGURE 3 | Surface representation of structures of the viral fusion proteins of influenza virus, ebola virus, and HIV-1 that are targets of antiviral antibodies. Perspective is from the side, such that the proteins are standing atop the virus envelope. These envelope proteins share a general structural architecture as trimers of dimeric proteins comprised of a receptor binding domain (head, represented by shades of green) and a viral membrane-bound domain (stem/stalk, represented by shades of orange). Renderings were made in PyMOL using protein data bank ID 3GBN (influenza), 5JQ3 (ebola), and 5FYL (HIV-1).

there exists a yet to be explained relationship between breadth and Fc receptor-dependence in protective antibody response to influenza. Sera from human donors has the ability to mediate anti-influenza ADCP (119, 120), it will therefore be important for future research to further map the specificities of natural human influenza ADCP antibodies, and to explain the mechanisms underlying the differential functions of the strain-specific head antibodies from multi-strain specific head and stalk antibodies.

A similar epitope dichotomy has been described for ebola virus. The ebola virus envelope glycoprotein is similar to the envelope fusion glycoproteins of influenza and HIV-1 in that they share a common architecture of trimers of dimeric proteins. The dimers are comprised of a distal receptor-binding head region, and a membrane-bound stem/stalk region (**Figure 3**). The stem/stalk regions are less variable than the head regions, however the head regions are generally regarded as immunodominant. Ebola stalk-specific specific antibodies were demonstrated to be capable of mediating multiple Fc receptor-dependent effector functions including NK cell activation and ADCP by monocytes or neutrophils, while glycan cap-specific mAbs lacked this functionality (154). Thus, it will be interesting to study parallels and differences between broad-binding influenza and ebolavirus stalk-specific ADCP antibodies as the biomolecular interactions underlying the relationships between epitope and function are elucidated.

Diverse HIV-1 epitopes can be targeted for virion phagocytosis, including broadly neutralizing epitopes such as the gp41 MPER (stem region), and gp120 head-region targets such as the CD4 binding site, V2 glycan, and trimer apex. Non-broadly neutralizing epitopes such as the gp41 principal immunodominant domain (stem region), V1/V2 loop and V3 loop (gp120 head region) (104, 155–157) are also targets of ADCP antibodies. The CD4-induced epitopes found on HIV-infected cells are not engaged alone for phagocytosis, but can be engaged synergistically, at least with V2 epitopes, for virus engagement (98). The ability of these epitopes to be engaged for phagocytosis varies by strain, indicating the substantial heterogeneity between viruses. Furthermore, antibodies targeting the same epitope can vary in their phagocytosis potency, emphasizing the fact that the rules of antibody-epitope engagement that allow for ADCP are not completely understood. These may include antibody Fc availability which can be affected by antigen binding valency and angle of approach (158). It is also likely that there are non-neutralizing antigenic targets on the HIV-1 virion surface that are involved in ADCP or other Fc-dependent functions but have not been discovered. Our understanding of the HIV-1 envelope protein (Env) surface is strongly biased toward neutralizing epitopes, since the search for anti-HIV-1 antibodies typically involves the selection and characterization antibodies positive for neutralization. However, these typically make up only a portion of the antibodies that are elicited in response to HIV-1 infection or vaccination, but the non-neutralizing specificities capable of binding and engaging Env are typically not further studied. In addition, monomeric gp140 or gp120 proteins, and even the current generation of stabilized trimeric proteins that are typically used as hooks for antibody selection likely do not fully recapitulate the diversity of natural Env forms on the virion envelope, which may include both functional trimers and non-functional forms of envelope (159). If so, large-scale unbiased antibody screening may identify additional crucial antibody specificities for Fc-mediated effector functions against virions that may be targeted by vaccines or passive immunotherapy. It is important to note that most virion ADCP methods do not differentiate between infectious and non-infectious virion particles–thus, an open question remains as to whether non-neutralizing antibodies that appear to mediate virus ADCP do indeed cause uptake of infectious viruses, or whether they merely engage non-infectious epitopes on defective particles.

Virus-infected cells and virion particles are distinct biological targets of antibody-mediated internalization. The epitope specificities involved for each process may differ, given different epitope exposure on viruses and infected cells. For instance, in the

context of HIV-1, the gp41 principal immunodominant domain targeted by antibodies such as 7B2 and F240 is frequently found on virions, but not on infected cells, whereas the converse is true for the conserved region 1 conformational domain targeted by antibodies such as A32 and C11 (104, 160, 161). The majority of studies describing the ADCP response to HIV-1 have been focused on gp120/gp140 proteins or whole virions, thus there is much less known about ADCP of HIV-1 infected cells and the epitopes that may be involved in this process. Additional research in this area is needed for HIV-1 and other viruses.

Comparatively less has been described regarding the fine epitope specificity of ADCP antibodies in the immune responses to other virus infections or vaccination. As a general rule, for ADCP of virions the epitope must be present on the surface of the virions, while for ADCP of infected cells any epitope expressed on the surface of a virus-infected cell may be a potential target. For most viruses limited antibody specificities have been described to mediate ADCP: CMV gB (124) protein, RSV G protein (126), ebola virus glycoproteins (127), HPV L2 protein (128), and WNV NS1 protein (132). In most of these studies, the ADCP activity was identified by testing available antibodies, or antibodies selected for alternative functionality such as neutralization. Therefore, many potential specificities remain unexplored and it is likely that antibodies that target other epitope regions are capable of ADCP activity but have not yet been identified. Overall, there is a dearth of knowledge regarding specific epitopes that can be targeted by ADCP antibodies against most viruses, and more insight into this area may inform new strategies for rational design of vaccines intended to elicit ADCP responses.

APPROACHES TO MEASURE VIRUS ADCP

Virus ADCP is typically measured via a cell-based assay, where the amount of viral target internalized by a phagocyte is quantified. Sample monoclonal or polyclonal antibodies are first pre-mixed with the viral target to form immune complexes. Phagocytes are then introduced for antibody-dependent phagocytosis to occur. Such phagocytes include primary monocytes, macrophages, neutrophils, or corresponding cell lines (104, 162, 163). Phagocytes can be spinoculated (164) with the immune complexes to increase the signal-to-noise ratio, though this is not necessary to achieve detectable signal in the case of antibody-dependent phagocytosis of HIV-1 virions (165). Non-internalized virus particles are then washed off, and the amount of internalized viral target is quantified.

In theory, any method capable of quantifying target particles (e.g., nucleic-acid based RT-PCR, protein-based ELISA, or fluorescence) can be used as the assay readout, as long as internalized virus particles can be separated from extracellular or cell-attached particles. In practice, fluorescence-based approaches are the most popular due to the capability for high-throughput readout via flow cytometry (162). In fluorescence-based approaches, the target particle could be a live fluorescently-labeled virion (104, 120, 166) or a virus-derived protein conjugated to a fluorescent bead (120, 162). Where virions are labeled, this can be done with direct labeling [including viral membrane labeling which would exclude detection of membrane-fused viruses (167)], or internal labeling via co-transfection of genes encoding fluorescent non-structural proteins, resulting in their random incorporation into packaged virus particles (168). Fluorescence labels can also be engineered to report internalization, either by the addition of a non-cell-permeable fluorescence quencher during the wash step (169), or by using a pH-sensitive dye.

It is as yet unclear how results compare between different types of viral targets. Notably, phagocytosis signaling pathways and particle uptake dynamics are impacted by the physical properties of the target, including ligand spacing (170, 171), size (170, 172), shape (173), stiffness (174), and antigen height (175). Since virus particles differ from protein-coated beads in a number of these attributes, it remains unclear how these differences affect Fc-Fc receptor signaling, or how they influence the range of virus epitope-Fab conformations that are capable of mediating phagocytosis. In the case of HIV-1, one group has argued that HIV-1 virus particles cannot undergo ADCP due to insufficient surface ligand density (176). This was based on their observation of undetectable internalization of HIV-1 viruses by HIV-specific antibodies as compared with an anti-phosphatidylserine antibody. However, this result is at odds with our work demonstrating epitope-specific internalization of HIV-1 virus particles using a variety of HIV-specific monoclonal antibodies of different Env specificities (100), as well as polyclonal antibodies from sera and breast milk (165). Since the experimental procedures used by both groups were similar, the reasons for this discrepancy are unclear, and may involve the method of virus preparation.

Moving forward, it will be important to determine how the nature of the immune complex affects phagocytosis. Current assays do not routinely measure the size of the immune complex engulfed, but only the number of intracellular or intravesicular virions, which may be either a single immune complex or an amalgamation of multiple co-phagocytosed viruses. In fact, for many viruses, it is not even clear whether antibody-dependent virion internalization is strictly a process of phagocytosis, or whether other processes including endocytosis and macropinocytosis are involved. It will also be important to determine the signaling outcomes of such phagocytosis in multiple cell types and inflammatory conditions, in order to determine the role of phagocytosis in the recruitment of other effector functions as well as the subsequent development of the local inflammatory response and longer term adaptive immune priming. For highly polymorphic viruses including HIV-1 and influenza, it will also be useful to develop a panel of representative viral strains (fluorescent if necessary) for use as a reproducible measure of the breadth of ADCP activity which can be compared across different settings and clinical trials. Indeed, just as HIV-1 antibody neutralization potency against tier 1 viruses did not necessarily predict neutralization breadth, ADCP breadth may provide surprising clues for the development of vaccines that elicit strong Fc effector function.

In contrast to ADCP of virus particles, methodology for ADCP of virus-infected cells remains underexplored, as

most current ADCP assays have been developed to measure internalization of immune complexes formed with virions, or protein-coated beads. Thus, it remains difficult to quantify how antibody epitope specificity and Fc profile contribute toward their potency for ADCP of virus-infected cells. Methodologies to investigate ADCP of virus-infected cells both *in vitro* and *in vivo*, in particular differentiating such events from non-antibody-mediated phagocytosis of virus-infected cells, will also be important to determine whether infected-cell ADCP results in virus inhibition or spread.

In addition to ADCP, trogocytosis is another potential outcome of Fc-dependent interactions between antibodies and virus-infected cells. Two assays developed to measure HIV/SIV-specific ADCC responses have been shown to also detect antibody-mediated interactions between monocytes and virus-infected or protein-coated cells (177, 178). Both assays use fluorescent dyes to label infected or protein-coated target cells. Flow cytometric analysis of cell populations after incubation of these target cells with antiviral antibodies and innate effector cells identified $CD14^+$ cells present in the effector cell population as having acquired the fluorescent dye used to label the target cells —indicating transfer of target cell membrane (trogocytosis) and/or ADCP of cells or cell fragments. More recently, an *in vitro* HIV-1 trogocytosis assay has been developed, using flow cytometry to specifically measure the transfer of membrane fragments from a gp120-coated $CD4^+$ T cell line to the THP-1 monocytic cell line (179). The relationship between trogocytosis and phagocytosis remains unclear. It may be that these two processes are not mutually exclusive, and that trogocytosis occurs as a result of "aborted phagocytosis" (180). Alternatively, antibody-dependent trogocytosis may represent an alternative mechanism for elimination of target cells (181–183). Presently, the roles of trogocytosis in immune responses to virus infection are not known, and additional research will be needed to determine how this process impacts virus pathogenesis and to further explore potential integrations with ADCP.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR TRANSLATION OF STUDIES PERFORMED IN ANIMAL MODELS

There are significant barriers to the translation of Fc effector functions between animals and humans. The most notable is the difference between the Fc/Fc receptor systems of rhesus, mice, and humans. The differences between the mouse and human Fc/Fc receptor system have been reviewed previously (184). While rhesus and human Fc/Fc receptor systems might be expected to be more similar, there remain substantial differences. Fc differences are apparent when comparing IgA and IgG subclasses between rhesus macaques and humans (**Figure 4**). Rhesus macaques have only one IgA gene, whereas humans have two IgA genes, IgA1 and IgA2. While both rhesus macaques and humans have four IgG subclasses, rhesus IgGs are not structurally or functionally analogous to human IgG1-4. In fact, rhesus IgG subclasses are genetically more similar to each other than they are to their human homologues (**Figure 4A**), and the diversity in the germline immunoglobulin genes is higher in rhesus macaques than in humans (188, 189). Structural differences between rhesus and human antibodies are best exemplified by the IgG3 subclass. The human IgG3 C_H domain encodes repeats of a hinge region exon, resulting in a hinge that is approximately four times longer (in number of amino acids) than that of human IgG1 (**Figure 4B**) (190). There is no such exon duplication and hinge elongation in rhesus macaque IgG3 (188). The structure of the hinge dictates the flexibility of the antibody (185), and therefore impacts biological functions and has implications for translation of studies performed in humans and rhesus macaques. For example, vaccine-elicited HIV-specific IgG3 was identified as a correlate of reduced risk of infection in the RV144 clinical trial (87, 89), and *in vitro* studies have demonstrated higher ADCP activity for IgG3 HIV monoclonal antibodies compared to other IgG subclasses (104). Given the differences between human and rhesus IgG3 it is unlikely that preclinical studies performed in the rhesus model would have predicted that vaccine-elicited IgG3 could play a crucial role in reducing the risk of HIV infection as observed in RV144. Caveats such as this must be considered when using animal models.

There are also differences in how human and rhesus macaque antibodies interact with Fc receptors. For instance, rhesus IgG2 and IgG4 retain strong binding to Fc receptors (191, 192), whereas human IgG2 and IgG4 have severely attenuated binding (6). Thus, there is more similarity in Fc receptor interactions and effector functions (191) across rhesus IgG compared to that observed for humans. This suggests that rhesus macaques do not use IgG subclasses to tune antibody responses to the same extent as humans, and highlights the need for caution when comparing subclass profiles in humoral responses across these species. In addition, rhesus macaque Fc receptors are more highly polymorphic than human Fc receptors (189, 192) and the functional implications of many of these polymorphisms have yet to be defined. Importantly, while rhesus and human Fc and Fc receptors can cross-react in binding, antibody binding to FcγRIIa is different between humans and rhesus macaques when comparing antibody Fc mutants, suggesting that antibodies may not behave similarly against human and rhesus macaque FcγRIIa (193), which is commonly engaged for ADCP (162). Despite these differences, our preliminary data indicate that there remains cross-reactivity and some level of functional homology for phagocytosis between humans and rhesus macaques, with similar rank order of phagocytosis activity across species when human IgG and IgA isotypes/subclasses are tested against human or rhesus monocytes and neutrophils (Pollara et al., unpublished observations).

Further studies are required on the interactions between Fc and Fc receptors in different species, their effects on phagocytosis, and the subsequent effects of phagocytosis to determine what findings from preclinical studies can be translated. Passive immunotherapy may be simpler to model since there appears to be functional homology for phagocytosis between human and rhesus systems when human Ig is used. Humanized mice will also be valuable for these types of studies. Specifically, the mouse model developed by Smith and collaborators in the laboratory of Dr. Jeffrey Ravetch is expected to provide the most utility (194).

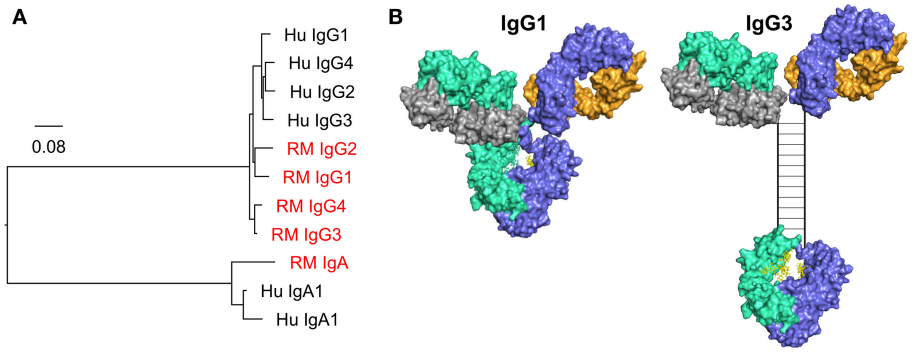


FIGURE 4 | (A) Phylogenic tree of human (Hu) and rhesus macaque (RM, red) IgG and IgA C_H genes. Scale bar represents the percentage sequence dissimilarity as a measure of phylogenetic distance. **(B)** The human IgG3 hinge region is elongated when compared to IgG1. The hinge region in the hybrid surface/schematic rendering of human IgG3 is drawn to scale, with an estimated hinge length of 80 angstroms, as estimated by Lu and colleagues using small angle x-ray scattering data, and consistent with prior estimates from electron microscopy data (185, 186). Disulfide bonds ($n = 11$) are represented by rungs in the ladder structure (187).

In their model, the mouse Fcγ receptor genes have been deleted and human Fcγ receptor transgenes have been inserted. This results in mice that express functional human Fcγ receptors on the same types of cells and at the same levels as found in humans. The primary limitations of this model are that only human Fcγ receptors are expressed. Thus, Fcα-receptors, FcεRI, Fc receptor neonatal, Type II Fc receptors, and other Fc-binding proteins remain as native mouse forms. Moreover, repeated infusion of human IgG can result the development of anti-human IgG antibodies in these mice (195).

CONCLUSIONS AND FUTURE PERSPECTIVES

ADCP is an Fc receptor-dependent function of antibodies that is likely common to immune responses elicited by virus infection and in response to vaccination. Importantly, there is substantial evidence that supports ADCP as contributing either to protection from infection, or reduction in disease severity for diverse types of viruses. In most cases, it is likely that ADCP works in tandem with additional Fc-independent and Fc-dependent antiviral activities as part of an effective polyfunctional humoral response. In fact, for many viruses that have been demonstrated to have antibody-dependent correlates of protection it is highly likely that ADCP is involved, but perhaps was not thoroughly explored. Additional investigation into the role of ADCP in protective viral responses, and the specific virus epitopes targeted by ADCP antibodies, may provide insight into strategies for rational vaccine design to elicit these types of antibody responses while avoiding deleterious ADE activity. Additionally, identifying the types of phagocytes and Fc receptors involved in ADCP at sites of virus infection within tissues, throughout the course of infection and virus clearance, remains an understudied aspect of host and virus interactions. Finally, as most ADCP assays used to measure this immune response *in vitro* quantify uptake of virus subunits, virions, and in some cases infected cells, there remains a gap in knowledge regarding the outcome of phagocytosis. Further research into this area could determine if protection by ADCP is dependent on clearance and elimination of virus and virus infected cells, or by potentiating subsequent immune responses via antigen presentation or immune signaling. As our understanding of ADCP grows, it is likely that approaches to successfully leverage this important immune response for improved antiviral immunity will be discovered.

AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

MT and JP conceived and wrote the manuscript. KW performed protein modeling for the figures and wrote the manuscript.

FUNDING

This work was supported by NIH NIAID P01 grant AI120756, K01 grant OD024877, the Duke University Center for AIDS Research (CFAR; NIH 5P30 AI064518), and a fellowship from the Agency for Science, Technology and Research, Singapore (A*STAR).

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank Amit Kumar for assistance with phylogenic analysis of human and rhesus macaque C_H genes.

REFERENCES

1. Plotkin SA. Correlates of protection induced by vaccination. *Clin Vaccine Immunol.* (2010) 17:1055–65. doi: 10.1128/CVI.00131-10
2. Shields RL, Namenuk AK, Hong K, Meng YG, Rae J, Briggs J, et al. High resolution mapping of the binding site on human IgG1 for Fc gamma RI, Fc gamma RII, Fc gamma RIII, and FcRn and design of IgG1 variants with improved binding to the Fc gamma R. *J Biol Chem.* (2001) 276:6591–604. doi: 10.1074/jbc.M009483200
3. Sondermann P, Huber R, Oosthuizen V, Jacob U. The 3.2-A crystal structure of the human IgG1 Fc fragment-Fc gammaRIII complex. *Nature.* (2000) 406:267–73. doi: 10.1038/35018508

4. Ramsland PA, Farrugia W, Bradford TM, Sardjono CT, Esparon S, Trist HM, et al. Structural basis for Fc gammaRIIa recognition of human IgG and formation of inflammatory signaling complexes. *J Immunol*. (2011) 187:3208–17. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1101467
5. Lu J, Chu J, Zou Z, Hamacher NB, Rixon MW, Sun PD. Structure of FcgammaRI in complex with Fc reveals the importance of glycan recognition for high-affinity IgG binding. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2015) 112:833–8. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1418812112
6. Bruhns P, Iannascoli B, England P, Mancardi DA, Fernandez N, Jorieux S, et al. Specificity and affinity of human Fcgamma receptors and their polymorphic variants for human IgG subclasses. *Blood*. (2009) 113:3716–25. doi: 10.1182/blood-2008-09-179754
7. Mazengera RL, Kerr MA. The specificity of the IgA receptor purified from human neutrophils. *Biochem J*. (1990) 272:159–65. doi: 10.1042/bj2720159
8. Morton HC, Brandtzaeg P. CD89: the human myeloid IgA Fc receptor. *Arch Immunol Ther Exp*. (2001) 49:217–29.
9. Wang Y-Y, Kannan A, Nunn KL, Murphy MA, Subramani DB, Moench T, et al. IgG in cervicovaginal mucus traps HSV and prevents vaginal Herpes infections. *Mucosal Immunol*. (2014) 7:1036. doi: 10.1038/mi.2013.120
10. Gunn BM, Schneider JR, Shansab M, Bastian AR, Fahrbach KM, Smith ADT, et al. Enhanced binding of antibodies generated during chronic HIV infection to mucus component MUC16. *Mucosal Immunol*. (2016) 9:1549–58. doi: 10.1038/mi.2016.8
11. Ravetch JV, Kinet JP. Fc receptors. *Annu Rev Immunol*. (1991) 9:457–92. doi: 10.1146/annurev.iy.09.040191.002325
12. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Fcgamma receptors as regulators of immune responses. *Nat Rev Immunol*. (2008) 8:34–47. doi: 10.1038/nri2206
13. Pincetic A, Bournazos S, Dilillo DJ, Maamary J, Wang TT, Dahan R, et al. Type I and type II Fc receptors regulate innate and adaptive immunity. *Nat Immunol*. (2014) 15:707–16. doi: 10.1038/ni.2939
14. Shibuya A, Sakamoto N, Shimizu Y, Shibuya K, Osawa M, Hiroyama T, et al. Fcα/μ receptor mediates endocytosis of IgM-coated microbes. *Nat Immunol*. (2000) 1:441. doi: 10.1038/80886
15. Wang H, Coligan JE, Morse Iii HC. Emerging functions of natural IgM and its Fc receptor FCMR in immune homeostasis. *Front Immunol*. (2016) 7:99. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2016.00099
16. Coico R, Xue B, Wallace D, Pernis B, Siskind G, Thorbecke G. T cells with receptors for IgD. *Nature*. (1985) 316:744. doi: 10.1038/316744a0
17. Moura IC, Centelles MN, Arcos-Fajardo M, Malheiros DM, Collawn JF, Cooper MD, et al. Identification of the transferrin receptor as a novel immunoglobulin (Ig) A1 receptor and its enhanced expression on mesangial cells in IgA nephropathy. *J Exp Med*. (2001) 194:417–26. doi: 10.1084/jem.194.4.417
18. Lamkhioued B, Gounni AS, Gruart V, Pierce A, Capron A, Capron M. Human eosinophils express a receptor for secretory component. Role in secretory IgA-dependent activation. *Eur J Immunol*. (1995) 25:117–25. doi: 10.1002/eji.1830250121
19. Stockert RJ, Kressner MS, Collins JC, Sternlieb I, Morell AG. IgA interaction with the asialoglycoprotein receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (1982) 79:6229–31. doi: 10.1073/pnas.79.20.6229
20. Mantis NJ, Cheung MC, Chintalacharuvu KR, Rey J, Corthésy B, Neutra MR. Selective adherence of IgA to murine Peyer's patch M cells: evidence for a novel IgA receptor. *J Immunol*. (2002) 169:1844–51. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.169.4.1844
21. Bakema JE, Bakker A, De Haij S, Honing H, Bracke M, Koenderman L, et al. Inside-out regulation of FcαRI (CD89) depends on PP2A. *J Immunol*. (2008) 181:4080–8. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.181.6.4080
22. Daëron M. Fc receptor biology. *Annu Rev Immunol*. (1997) 15:203–34. doi: 10.1146/annurev.immunol.15.1.203
23. Duchemin A-M, Ernst LK, Anderson CL. Clustering of the high affinity Fc receptor for immunoglobulin G (Fc gamma RI) results in phosphorylation of its associated gamma-chain. *J Biol Chem*. (1994) 269:12111–7.
24. O'neill SK, Getahun A, Gauld SB, Merrell KT, Tamir I, Smith MJ, et al. Monophosphorylation of CD79a and CD79b ITAM motifs initiates a SHIP-1 phosphatase-mediated inhibitory signaling cascade required for B cell anergy. *Immunity*. (2011) 35:746–56. doi: 10.1016/j.immuni.2011.10.011
25. Kurosaki T, Johnson SA, Pao L, Sada K, Yamamura H, Cambier JC. Role of the Syk autophosphorylation site and SH2 domains in B cell antigen receptor signaling. *J Exp Med*. (1995) 182:1815–23. doi: 10.1084/jem.182.6.1815
26. Sinclair NS, Chan P. Regulation of the immune response. IV The role of the Fc-fragment in feedback inhibition by antibody. In: Lindahl-Kiessling K, Alm G, Hanna MG Jr., editors. *Morphological and Functional Aspects of Immunity*. Boston, MA: Springer (1971). p. 609–15. doi: 10.1007/978-1-4615-9011-8_74
27. Weisbart R, Kacena A, Schuh A, Golde D. GM-CSF induces human neutrophil IgA-mediated phagocytosis by an IgA Fc receptor activation mechanism. *Nature*. (1988) 332:647. doi: 10.1038/332647a0
28. Bracke M, Dubois G, Bolt K, Bruijnzeel P, Vaerman J, Lammers J, et al. Differential effects of the T helper cell type 2-derived cytokines IL-4 and IL-5 on ligand binding to IgG and IgA receptors expressed by human eosinophils. *J Immunol*. (1997) 159:1459–65.
29. Bournazos S, Woof JM, Hart SP, Dransfield I. Functional and clinical consequences of Fc receptor polymorphic and copy number variants. *Clin Exp Immunol*. (2009) 157:244–54. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2249.2009.03980.x
30. Loke H, Bethell D, Phuong CX, Day N, White N, Farrar J, et al. Susceptibility to dengue hemorrhagic fever in vietnam: evidence of an association with variation in the vitamin d receptor and Fc gamma receptor IIa genes. *Am J Trop Med Hyg*. (2002) 67:102–6. doi: 10.4269/ajtmh.2002.67.102
31. Garcia G, Sierra B, Perez AB, Aguirre E, Rosado I, Gonzalez N, et al. Asymptomatic dengue infection in a Cuban population confirms the protective role of the RR variant of the FcgammaRIIa polymorphism. *Am J Trop Med Hyg*. (2010) 82:1153–6. doi: 10.4269/ajtmh.2010.09-0353
32. Zuniga J, Buendia-Roldan I, Zhao Y, Jimenez L, Torres D, Romo J, et al. Genetic variants associated with severe pneumonia in A/H1N1 influenza infection. *Eur Respir J*. (2012) 39:604–10. doi: 10.1183/09031936.00020611
33. Yuan FF, Tanner J, Chan PK, Biffin S, Dyer WB, Geczy AF, et al. Influence of FcgammaRIIA and MBL polymorphisms on severe acute respiratory syndrome. *Tissue Antigens*. (2005) 66:291–6. doi: 10.1111/j.1399-0039.2005.00476.x
34. Diamantopoulos PT, Kalotychou V, Polonyfi K, Sofotasiou M, Anastasopoulou A, Galanopoulos A, et al. Correlation of Fc-gamma RIIA polymorphisms with latent Epstein-Barr virus infection and latent membrane protein 1 expression in patients with low grade B-cell lymphomas. *Leuk Lymphoma*. (2013) 54:2030–4. doi: 10.3109/10428194.2012.762512
35. Lehrnbecher TL, Foster CB, Zhu S, Venzon D, Steinberg SM, Wyvill K, et al. Variant genotypes of FcgammaRIIIA influence the development of Kaposi's sarcoma in HIV-infected men. *Blood*. (2000) 95:2386–90.
36. Brouwer KC, Lal RB, Mirel LB, Yang C, Van Eijk AM, Ayisi J, et al. Polymorphism of Fc receptor IIa for IgG in infants is associated with susceptibility to perinatal HIV-1 infection. *AIDS*. (2004) 18:1187–94. doi: 10.1097/00002030-200405210-00012
37. Forthal DN, Landucci G, Bream J, Jacobson LP, Phan TB, Montoya B. FcgammaRIIa genotype predicts progression of HIV infection. *J Immunol*. (2007) 179:7916–23. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.179.11.7916
38. Poonia B, Kijak GH, Pauza CD. High affinity allele for the gene of FCGR3A is risk factor for HIV infection and progression. *PLoS ONE*. (2010) 5:e15562. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0015562
39. Hayes JM, Cosgrave EF, Struwe WB, Wormald M, Davey GP, Jefferis R, et al. Glycosylation and Fc receptors. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. (2014) 382:165–99. doi: 10.1007/978-3-319-07911-0_8
40. Jennewein MF, Alter G. The immunoregulatory roles of antibody glycosylation. *Trends Immunol*. (2017) 38:358–72. doi: 10.1016/j.it.2017.02.004
41. Moore JS, Wu X, Kulhavy R, Tomana M, Novak J, Moldoveanu Z, et al. Increased levels of galactose-deficient IgG in sera of HIV-1-infected individuals. *AIDS*. (2005) 19:381–9. doi: 10.1097/01.aids.0000161767.21405.68
42. Ackerman ME, Crispin M, Yu X, Baruah K, Boesch AW, Harvey DJ, et al. Natural variation in Fc glycosylation of HIV-specific antibodies impacts antiviral activity. *J Clin Invest*. (2013) 123:2183–92. doi: 10.1172/JCI65708
43. Selman MH, De Jong SE, Soonawala D, Kroon FP, Adegnika AA, Deelder AM, et al. Changes in antigen-specific IgG1 Fc N-glycosylation upon influenza and tetanus vaccination. *Mol Cell Proteomics*. (2012) 11:M111014563. doi: 10.1074/mcp.M111.014563

44. Wang JR, Guan WD, Yau LF, Gao WN, Zhan YQ, Liu L, et al. Glycomic signatures on serum IgGs for prediction of postvaccination response. *Sci Rep*. (2015) 5:7648. doi: 10.1038/srep07648
45. Wright AE, Douglas SR. An experimental investigation of the role of the blood fluids in connection with phagocytosis. *Proc R Soc Lond*. (1903) 72:357–70.
46. Ward HK, Enders JF. An analysis of the opsonic and tropic action of normal and immune sera based on experiments with the pneumococcus. *J Exp Med*. (1933) 57:527–47. doi: 10.1084/jem.57.4.527
47. Courtney HS, Hasty DL, Dale JB. Anti-phagocytic mechanisms of *Streptococcus pyogenes*: binding of fibrinogen to M-related protein. *Mol Microbiol*. (2006) 59:936–47. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2958.2005.04977.x
48. Pieters J. Mycobacterium tuberculosis and the macrophage: maintaining a balance. *Cell Host Microbe*. (2008) 3:399–407. doi: 10.1016/j.chom.2008.05.006
49. Tonello F, Zornetta I. *Bacillus anthracis* factors for phagosomal escape. *Toxins*. (2012) 4:536–53. doi: 10.3390/toxins4070536
50. Thammavongsa V, Kim HK, Missiakas D, Schneewind O. Staphylococcal manipulation of host immune responses. *Nat Rev Microbiol*. (2015) 13:529. doi: 10.1038/nrmicro3521
51. Parcina M, Wendt C, Goetz F, Zawatzky R, Zähringer U, Heeg K, et al. Staphylococcus aureus-induced plasmacytoid dendritic cell activation is based on an IgG-mediated memory response. *J Immunol*. (2008) 181:3823–33. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.181.6.3823
52. Henault J, Martinez J, Riggs JM, Tian J, Mehta P, Clarke L, et al. Noncanonical autophagy is required for type I interferon secretion in response to DNA-immune complexes. *Immunity*. (2012) 37:986–97. doi: 10.1016/j.immuni.2012.09.014
53. Guilliams M, Bruhns P, Saeys Y, Hammad H, Lambrecht BN. The function of Fcgamma receptors in dendritic cells and macrophages. *Nat Rev Immunol*. (2014) 14:94–108. doi: 10.1038/nri3582
54. Ghazizadeh S, Bolen J, Fleit H. Physical and functional association of Src-related protein tyrosine kinases with Fc gamma RII in monocytic THP-1 cells. *J Biol Chem*. (1994) 269:8878–84.
55. Ghazizadeh S, Bolen JB, Fleit HB. Tyrosine phosphorylation and association of Syk with Fc gamma RII in monocytic THP-1 cells. *Biochem J*. (1995) 305:669–74. doi: 10.1042/bj3050669
56. Karimi K, Gemmill TR, Lennartz MR. Protein kinase C and a calcium-independent phospholipase are required for IgG-mediated phagocytosis by Mono-Mac-6 cells. *J Leukoc Biol*. (1999) 65:854–62. doi: 10.1002/jlb.65.6.854
57. Larsen EC. A role for PKC-ε in FcγR-mediated phagocytosis by RAW 264.7 Cells. *J Cell Biol*. (2002) 159:939–44. doi: 10.1083/jcb.200205140
58. Ninomiya N, Hazeki K, Fukui Y, Seya T, Okada T, Hazeki O, et al. Involvement of phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase in Fc gamma receptor signaling. *J Biol Chem*. (1994) 269:22732–7.
59. Araki N, Johnson MT, Swanson JA. A role for phosphoinositide 3-kinase in the completion of macropinocytosis and phagocytosis by macrophages. *J Cell Biol*. (1996) 135:1249–60. doi: 10.1083/jcb.135.5.1249
60. Cox D, Tseng CC, Bjekic G, Greenberg S. A requirement for phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase in pseudopod extension. *J Biol Chem*. (1999) 274:1240–7. doi: 10.1074/jbc.274.3.1240
61. Botelho RJ, Teruel M, Dierckman R, Anderson R, Wells A, York JD, et al. Localized biphasic changes in phosphatidylinositol-4,5-bisphosphate at sites of phagocytosis. *J Cell Biol*. (2000) 151:1353–68. doi: 10.1083/jcb.151.7.1353
62. Martin TF. Phosphoinositide lipids as signaling molecules: common themes for signal transduction, cytoskeletal regulation, and membrane trafficking. *Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol*. (1998) 14:231–64. doi: 10.1146/annurev.cellbio.14.1.231
63. Zhang Y, Hoppe AD, Swanson JA. Coordination of Fc receptor signaling regulates cellular commitment to phagocytosis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2010) 107:19332–7. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1008248107
64. Summers C, Rankin SM, Condliffe AM, Singh N, Peters AM, Chilvers ER. Neutrophil kinetics in health and disease. *Trends Immunol*. (2010) 31:318–24. doi: 10.1016/j.it.2010.05.006
65. Davies LC, Jenkins SJ, Allen JE, Taylor PR. Tissue-resident macrophages. *Nat Immunol*. (2013) 14:986–95. doi: 10.1038/ni.2705
66. Heath WR, Carbone FR. The skin-resident and migratory immune system in steady state and memory: innate lymphocytes, dendritic cells and T cells. *Nat Immunol*. (2013) 14:978–85. doi: 10.1038/ni.2680
67. Jenne CN, Kubes P. Immune surveillance by the liver. *Nat Immunol*. (2013) 14:996–1006. doi: 10.1038/ni.2691
68. Luster AD, Alon R, Von Andrian UH. Immune cell migration in inflammation: present and future therapeutic targets. *Nat Immunol*. (2005) 6:1182–90. doi: 10.1038/ni1275
69. Sips M, Krykbaeva M, Diefenbach TJ, Ghebremichael M, Bowman BA, Dugast AS, et al. Fc receptor-mediated phagocytosis in tissues as a potent mechanism for preventive and therapeutic HIV vaccine strategies. *Mucosal Immunol*. (2016) 9:1584–95. doi: 10.1038/mi.2016.12
70. Kawai T, Akira S. Toll-like receptors and their crosstalk with other innate receptors in infection and immunity. *Immunity*. (2011) 34:637–50. doi: 10.1016/j.immuni.2011.05.006
71. Seet BT, Johnston JB, Brunetti CR, Barrett JW, Everett H, Cameron C, et al. Poxviruses and immune evasion. *Annu Rev Immunol*. (2003) 21:377–423. doi: 10.1146/annurev.immunol.21.120601.141049
72. Cameron CM, Barrett JW, Mann M, Lucas A, Mcfadden G. Myxoma virus M128L is expressed as a cell surface CD47-like virulence factor that contributes to the downregulation of macrophage activation *in vivo*. *Virology*. (2005) 337:55–67. doi: 10.1016/j.virol.2005.03.037
73. Zsengeller Z, Otake K, Hossain SA, Berclaz PY, Trapnell BC. Internalization of adenovirus by alveolar macrophages initiates early proinflammatory signaling during acute respiratory tract infection. *J Virol*. (2000) 74:9655–67. doi: 10.1128/JVI.74.20.9655-9667.2000
74. He W, Chen CJ, Mullarkey CE, Hamilton JR, Wong CK, Leon PE, et al. Alveolar macrophages are critical for broadly-reactive antibody-mediated protection against influenza A virus in mice. *Nat Commun*. (2017) 8:846. doi: 10.1038/s41467-017-00928-3
75. Bournazos S, Ravetch JV. Fcgamma receptor function and the design of vaccination strategies. *Immunity*. (2017) 47:224–33. doi: 10.1016/j.immuni.2017.07.009
76. Andrews T, Sullivan KE. Infections in patients with inherited defects in phagocytic function. *Clin Microbiol Rev*. (2003) 16:597–621. doi: 10.1128/CMR.16.4.597-621.2003
77. Dugast AS, Tonelli A, Berger CT, Ackerman ME, Sciaranghella G, Liu Q, et al. Decreased Fc receptor expression on innate immune cells is associated with impaired antibody-mediated cellular phagocytic activity in chronically HIV-1 infected individuals. *Virology*. (2011) 415:160–7. doi: 10.1016/j.virol.2011.03.012
78. Ackerman ME, Dugast AS, Mcandrew EG, Tsoukas S, Licht AF, Irvine DJ, et al. Enhanced phagocytic activity of HIV-specific antibodies correlates with natural production of immunoglobulins with skewed affinity for FcgammaR2a and FcgammaR2b. *J Virol*. (2013) 87:5468–76. doi: 10.1128/JVI.03403-12
79. Lassauniere R, Musekiwa A, Gray GE, Kuhn L, Tiemessen CT. Perinatal HIV-1 transmission: Fc gamma receptor variability associates with maternal infectiousness and infant susceptibility. *Retrovirology*. (2016) 13:40. doi: 10.1186/s12977-016-0272-y
80. Ackerman ME, Mikhailova A, Brown EP, Dowell KG, Walker BD, Bailey-Kellogg C, et al. Polyfunctional HIV-specific antibody responses are associated with spontaneous HIV control. *PLoS Pathog*. (2016) 12:e1005315. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1005315
81. Biggs BA, Hewish M, Kent S, Hayes K, Crowe SM. HIV-1 infection of human macrophages impairs phagocytosis and killing of Toxoplasma gondii. *J Immunol*. (1995) 154:6132–9.
82. Kedzierska K, Mak J, Mijch A, Cooke I, Rainbird M, Roberts S, et al. Granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor augments phagocytosis of *Mycobacterium avium* complex by human immunodeficiency virus type 1-infected monocytes/macrophages *in vitro* and *in vivo*. *J Infect Dis*. (2000) 181:390–4. doi: 10.1086/315191
83. Kedzierska K, Ellery P, Mak J, Lewin SR, Crowe SM, Jaworowski A. HIV-1 down-modulates gamma signaling chain of Fc gamma R in human macrophages: a possible mechanism for inhibition of phagocytosis. *J Immunol*. (2002) 168:2895–903. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.168.6.2895

84. Barouch DH, Liu J, Li H, Maxfield LF, Abbink P, Lynch DM, et al. Vaccine protection against acquisition of neutralization-resistant SIV challenges in rhesus monkeys. *Nature*. (2012) 482:89–93. doi: 10.1038/nature10766
85. Haynes BF, Gilbert PB, Mcelrath MJ, Zolla-Pazner S, Tomaras GD, Alam SM, et al. Immune-correlates analysis of an HIV-1 vaccine efficacy trial. *N Engl J Med*. (2012) 366:1275–86. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa1113425
86. Barouch DH, Stephenson KE, Borducchi EN, Smith K, Stanley K, Mcnally AG, et al. Protective efficacy of a global HIV-1 mosaic vaccine against heterologous SHIV challenges in rhesus monkeys. *Cell*. (2013) 155:531–9. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2013.09.061
87. Chung AW, Ghebremichael M, Robinson H, Brown E, Choi I, Lane S, et al. Polyfunctional Fc-effector profiles mediated by IgG subclass selection distinguish RV144 and VAX003 vaccines. *Sci Transl Med*. (2014) 6:228ra238. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3007736
88. Lewis GK. Role of Fc-mediated antibody function in protective immunity against HIV-1. *Immunology*. (2014) 142:46–57. doi: 10.1111/imm.12232
89. Yates NL, Liao HX, Fong Y, Decamp A, Vandergrift NA, Williams WT, et al. Vaccine-induced Env V1-V2 IgG3 correlates with lower HIV-1 infection risk and declines soon after vaccination. *Sci Transl Med*. (2014) 6:228ra239. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3007730
90. Barouch DH, Alter G, Broge T, Linde C, Ackerman ME, Brown EP, et al. HIV-1 vaccines. Protective efficacy of adenovirus/protein vaccines against SIV challenges in rhesus monkeys. *Science*. (2015) 349:320–4. doi: 10.1126/science.aab3886
91. Chung AW, Kumar MP, Arnold KB, Yu WH, Schoen MK, Dunphy LJ, et al. Dissecting polyclonal vaccine-induced humoral immunity against HIV using systems serology. *Cell*. (2015) 163:988–98. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2015.10.027
92. Santra S, Tomaras GD, Warrier R, Nicely NI, Liao HX, Pollara J, et al. Human non-neutralizing HIV-1 envelope monoclonal antibodies limit the number of founder viruses during SHIV mucosal infection in rhesus macaques. *PLoS Pathog*. (2015) 11:e1005042. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1005042
93. Bradley T, Pollara J, Santra S, Vandergrift N, Pittala S, Bailey-Kellogg C, et al. Pentavalent HIV-1 vaccine protects against simian-human immunodeficiency virus challenge. *Nat Commun*. (2017) 8:15711. doi: 10.1038/ncomms15711
94. Ackerman ME, Das J, Pittala S, Broge T, Linde C, Suscovich TJ, et al. Route of immunization defines multiple mechanisms of vaccine-mediated protection against SIV. *Nat Med*. (2018) 24:1590–8. doi: 10.1038/s41591-018-0161-0
95. Rerks-Ngarm S, Pitisuttithum P, Nitayaphan S, Kaewkungwal J, Chiu J, Paris R, et al. Vaccination with ALVAC and AIDSVAX to prevent HIV-1 infection in Thailand. *N Engl J Med*. (2009) 361:2209–20. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa0908492
96. Liao HX, Bonsignori M, Alam SM, Mclellan JS, Tomaras GD, Moody MA, et al. Vaccine induction of antibodies against a structurally heterogeneous site of immune pressure within HIV-1 envelope protein variable regions 1 and 2. *Immunity*. (2013) 38:176–86. doi: 10.1016/j.immuni.2012.11.011
97. Liu P, Williams LD, Shen X, Bonsignori M, Vandergrift NA, Overman RG, et al. Capacity for infectious HIV-1 virion capture differs by envelope antibody specificity. *J Virol*. (2014) 88:5165–70. doi: 10.1128/JVI.03765-13
98. Pollara J, Bonsignori M, Moody MA, Liu P, Alam SM, Hwang KK, et al. HIV-1 vaccine-induced C1 and V2 Env-specific antibodies synergize for increased antiviral activities. *J Virol*. (2014) 88:7715–26. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00156-14
99. Li SS, Gilbert PB, Tomaras GD, Kijak G, Ferrari G, Thomas R, et al. FCGR2C polymorphisms associate with HIV-1 vaccine protection in RV144 trial. *J Clin Invest*. (2014) 124:3879–90. doi: 10.1172/JCI75539
100. Hammer SM, Sobieszczyk ME, Janes H, Karuna ST, Mulligan MJ, Grove D, et al. Efficacy trial of a DNA/rAd5 HIV-1 preventive vaccine. *N Engl J Med*. (2013) 369:2083–92. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa1310566
101. Corey L, Gilbert PB, Tomaras GD, Haynes BF, Pantaleo G, Fauci AS. Immune correlates of vaccine protection against HIV-1 acquisition. *Sci Transl Med*. (2015) 7:310rv317. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.aac7732
102. Moldt B, Schultz N, Dunlop DC, Alpert MD, Harvey JD, Evans DT, et al. A panel of IgG1 b12 variants with selectively diminished or enhanced affinity for Fcgamma receptors to define the role of effector functions in protection against HIV. *J Virol*. (2011) 85:10572–81. doi: 10.1128/JVI.05541-11
103. Pollara J, Bonsignori M, Moody MA, Pazgier M, Haynes BF, Ferrari G. Epitope specificity of human immunodeficiency virus-1 antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity [ADCC] responses. *Curr HIV Res*. (2013) 11:378–87. doi: 10.2174/1570162X113116660059
104. Tay MZ, Liu P, Williams LD, Mcraven MD, Sawant S, Gurley TC, et al. Antibody-mediated internalization of infectious HIV-1 virions differs among antibody isotypes and subclasses. *PLoS Pathog*. (2016) 12:e1005817. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1005817
105. Hessell AJ, Hangartner L, Hunter M, Havenith CE, Beurskens FJ, Bakker JM, et al. Fc receptor but not complement binding is important in antibody protection against HIV. *Nature*. (2007) 449:101–4. doi: 10.1038/nature06106
106. Hessell AJ, Poignard P, Hunter M, Hangartner L, Tehrani DM, Bleeker WK, et al. Effective, low-titer antibody protection against low-dose repeated mucosal SHIV challenge in macaques. *Nat Med*. (2009) 15:951–4. doi: 10.1038/nm.1974
107. Bournazos S, Klein F, Pietzsch J, Seaman MS, Nussenzweig MC, Ravetch JV. Broadly neutralizing anti-HIV-1 antibodies require Fc effector functions for *in vivo* activity. *Cell*. (2014) 158:1243–53. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2014.08.023
108. Halper-Stromberg A, Lu C-L, Klein F, Horwitz JA, Bournazos S, Nogueira L, et al. Broadly neutralizing antibodies and viral inducers decrease rebound from HIV-1 latent reservoirs in humanized mice. *Cell*. (2014) 158:989–99. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2014.07.043
109. Parsons MS, Lee WS, Kristensen AB, Amarasena T, Khoury G, Wheatley AK, et al. Fc-dependent functions are redundant to efficacy of anti-HIV antibody PGT121 in macaques. *J Clin Invest*. (2019) 129:182–91. doi: 10.1172/JCI122466
110. Forthal D, Finzi A. Blocking HIV-1 replication: are Fc-Fcgamma receptor interactions required? *J Clin Invest*. (2019) 129:53–4. doi: 10.1172/JCI125264
111. Huber VC, Lynch JM, Bucher DJ, Le J, Metzger DW. Fc receptor-mediated phagocytosis makes a significant contribution to clearance of influenza virus infections. *J Immunol*. (2001) 166:7381–8. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.166.12.7381
112. Fujisawa H. Neutrophils play an essential role in cooperation with antibody in both protection against and recovery from pulmonary infection with influenza virus in mice. *J Virol*. (2008) 82:2772–83. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01210-07
113. Tumpey TM, Garcia-Sastre A, Taubenberger JK, Palese P, Swayne DE, Pantin-Jackwood MJ, et al. Pathogenicity of influenza viruses with genes from the 1918 pandemic virus: functional roles of alveolar macrophages and neutrophils in limiting virus replication and mortality in mice. *J Virol*. (2005) 79:14933–44. doi: 10.1128/JVI.79.23.14933-14944.2005
114. Dilillo DJ, Tan GS, Palese P, Ravetch JV. Broadly neutralizing hemagglutinin stalk-specific antibodies require FcgammaR interactions for protection against influenza virus *in vivo*. *Nat Med*. (2014) 20:143–51. doi: 10.1038/nm.3443
115. Mullarkey CE, Bailey MJ, Golubeva DA, Tan GS, Nachbagauer R, He W, et al. Broadly neutralizing hemagglutinin stalk-specific antibodies induce potent phagocytosis of immune complexes by neutrophils in an Fc-dependent manner. *MBio*. (2016) 7. doi: 10.1128/mBio.01624-16
116. Dilillo DJ, Palese P, Wilson PC, Ravetch JV. Broadly neutralizing anti-influenza antibodies require Fc receptor engagement for *in vivo* protection. *J Clin Invest*. (2016) 126:605–10. doi: 10.1172/JCI84428
117. Song JM, Van Rooijen N, Bozja J, Compans RW, Kang SM. Vaccination inducing broad and improved cross protection against multiple subtypes of influenza A virus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2011) 108:757–61. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1012199108
118. El Bakkouri K, Descamps F, De Filette M, Smet A, Festjens E, Birkett A, et al. Universal vaccine based on ectodomain of matrix protein 2 of influenza A: Fc receptors and alveolar macrophages mediate protection. *J Immunol*. (2011) 186:1022–31. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.0902147
119. Ana-Sosa-Batiz F, Johnston APR, Hogarth PM, Wines BD, Barr I, Wheatley AK, et al. Antibody-dependent phagocytosis (ADP) responses following trivalent inactivated influenza vaccination of younger and older adults. *Vaccine*. (2017) 35:6451–8. doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2017.09.062
120. Ana-Sosa-Batiz F, Vanderven H, Jegaskanda S, Johnston A, Rockman S, Laurie K, et al. Influenza-specific antibody-dependent phagocytosis. *PLoS ONE*. (2016) 11:e0154461. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0154461
121. Snelgrove RJ, Edwards L, Rae AJ, Hussell T. An absence of reactive oxygen species improves the resolution of lung influenza infection. *Eur J Immunol*. (2006) 36:1364–73. doi: 10.1002/eji.200635977

122. Van Strijp JA, Van Kessel KP, Van Der Tol ME, Fluit AC, Snippe H, Verhoef J. Phagocytosis of herpes simplex virus by human granulocytes and monocytes. *Arch Virol*. (1989) 104:287–98. doi: 10.1007/BF01315550
123. Pass RF, Zhang C, Evans A, Simpson T, Andrews W, Huang ML, et al. Vaccine prevention of maternal cytomegalovirus infection. *N Engl J Med*. (2009) 360:1191–9. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa0804749
124. Nelson CS, Huffman T, Jenks JA, Cisneros De La Rosa E, Xie G, Vandergrift N, et al. HCMV glycoprotein B subunit vaccine efficacy mediated by nonneutralizing antibody effector functions. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2018) 115:6267–72. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1800177115
125. Cui X, Meza BP, Adler SP, Mcvoy MA. Cytomegalovirus vaccines fail to induce epithelial entry neutralizing antibodies comparable to natural infection. *Vaccine*. (2008) 26:5760–6. doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2008.07.092
126. Cortjens B, Yasuda E, Yu X, Wagner K, Claassen YB, Bakker AQ, et al. Broadly reactive anti-respiratory syncytial virus G antibodies from exposed individuals effectively inhibit infection of primary airway epithelial cells. *J Virol*. (2017) 91:e02357-16. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02357-16
127. Duehr J, Wohlbold TJ, Oestereich L, Chromikova V, Amanat F, Rajendran M, et al. Novel cross-reactive monoclonal antibodies against ebolavirus glycoproteins show protection in a murine challenge model. *J Virol*. (2017) 91:e00652-17. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00652-17
128. Wang JW, Wu WH, Huang TC, Wong M, Kwak K, Ozato K, et al. Roles of Fc domain and exudation in L2 antibody-mediated protection against human papillomavirus. *J Virol*. (2018) 92:e00572-18. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00572-18
129. Yasui F, Kohara M, Kitabatake M, Nishiwaki T, Fujii H, Tateno C, et al. Phagocytic cells contribute to the antibody-mediated elimination of pulmonary-infected SARS coronavirus. *Virology*. (2014) 454–455:157–68. doi: 10.1016/j.virol.2014.02.005
130. Quattrocchi V, Langellotti C, Pappalardo JS, Olivera V, Di Giacomo S, Van Rooijen N, et al. Role of macrophages in early protective immune responses induced by two vaccines against foot and mouth disease. *Antiviral Res*. (2011) 92:262–70. doi: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2011.08.007
131. Lannes N, Python S, Summerfield A. Interplay of foot-and-mouth disease virus, antibodies and plasmacytoid dendritic cells: virus opsonization under non-neutralizing conditions results in enhanced interferon-alpha responses. *Vet Res*. (2012) 43:64. doi: 10.1186/1297-9716-43-64
132. Chung KM, Thompson BS, Fremont DH, Diamond MS. Antibody recognition of cell surface-associated NS1 triggers Fc-gamma receptor-mediated phagocytosis and clearance of West Nile Virus-infected cells. *J Virol*. (2007) 81:9551–5. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00879-07
133. Peiris JS, Porterfield JS. Antibody-mediated enhancement of Flavivirus replication in macrophage-like cell lines. *Nature*. (1979) 282:509–11. doi: 10.1038/282509a0
134. Peiris JS, Gordon S, Unkeless JC, Porterfield JS. Monoclonal anti-Fc receptor IgG blocks antibody enhancement of viral replication in macrophages. *Nature*. (1981) 289:189–91. doi: 10.1038/289189a0
135. Halstead SB, O'rourke EJ. Antibody-enhanced dengue virus infection in primate leukocytes. *Nature*. (1977) 265:739–41. doi: 10.1038/265739a0
136. Halstead SB, O'rourke EJ. Dengue viruses and mononuclear phagocytes. I. Infection enhancement by non-neutralizing antibody. *J Exp Med*. (1977) 146:201–17. doi: 10.1084/jem.146.1.201
137. Halstead SB, O'rourke EJ, Allison AC. Dengue viruses and mononuclear phagocytes. II. Identity of blood and tissue leukocytes supporting *in vitro* infection. *J Exp Med*. (1977) 146:218–29. doi: 10.1084/jem.146.1.218
138. Barrett AD, Gould EA. Antibody-mediated early death in vivo after infection with yellow fever virus. *J Gen Virol*. (1986) 67:2539–42. doi: 10.1099/0022-1317-67-11-2539
139. Gould EA, Buckley A. Antibody-dependent enhancement of yellow fever and Japanese encephalitis virus neurovirulence. *J Gen Virol*. (1989) 70:1605–8. doi: 10.1099/0022-1317-70-6-1605
140. Fowler AM, Tang WW, Young MP, Mamidi A, Viramontes KM, Mccauley MD, et al. Maternally acquired zika antibodies enhance dengue disease severity in mice. *Cell Host Microbe*. (2018) 24:743–50 e745. doi: 10.1016/j.chom.2018.09.015
141. Littaua R, Kurane I, Ennis FA. Human IgG Fc receptor II mediates antibody-dependent enhancement of dengue virus infection. *J Immunol*. (1990) 144:3183–6.
142. Chan KR, Zhang SL, Tan HC, Chan YK, Chow A, Lim AP, et al. Ligation of Fc gamma receptor IIB inhibits antibody-dependent enhancement of dengue virus infection. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2011) 108:12479–84. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1106568108
143. Taylor A, Foo SS, Bruzzone R, Dinh LV, King NJ, Mahalingam S. Fc receptors in antibody-dependent enhancement of viral infections. *Immunol Rev*. (2015) 268:340–64. doi: 10.1111/imr.12367
144. Dejnirattisai W, Supasa P, Wongwiwat W, Rouvinski A, Barba-Spaeth G, Duangchinda T, et al. Dengue virus sero-cross-reactivity drives antibody-dependent enhancement of infection with zika virus. *Nat Immunol*. (2016) 17:1102–8. doi: 10.1038/ni.3515
145. Martin-Acebes MA, Saiz JC, Jimenez De Oya N. Antibody-dependent enhancement and zika: real threat or phantom menace? *Front Cell Infect Microbiol*. (2018) 8:44. doi: 10.3389/fcimb.2018.00044
146. Chan KR, Ong EZ, Tan HC, Zhang SL, Zhang Q, Tang KF, et al. Leukocyte immunoglobulin-like receptor B1 is critical for antibody-dependent dengue. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2014) 111:2722–7. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1317454111
147. Robinson WE Jr, Montefiori DC, Mitchell WM. Antibody-dependent enhancement of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection. *Lancet*. (1988) 1:790–4. doi: 10.1016/S0140-6736(88)91657-1
148. Homsy J, Meyer M, Tateno M, Clarkson S, Levy JA. The Fc and not CD4 receptor mediates antibody enhancement of HIV infection in human cells. *Science*. (1989) 244:1357–60. doi: 10.1126/science.2786647
149. Homsy J, Meyer M, Levy JA. Serum enhancement of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection correlates with disease in HIV-infected individuals. *J Virol*. (1990) 64:1437–40.
150. Takeda A, Sweet RW, Ennis FA. Two receptors are required for antibody-dependent enhancement of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection: CD4 and Fc gamma R. *J Virol*. (1990) 64:5605–10.
151. Gach JS, Venzon D, Vaccari M, Keele BF, Franchini G, Forthal DN. Relationship between vaccine-induced antibody capture of infectious virus and infection outcomes following repeated low-dose rectal challenges with Simian immunodeficiency virus SIVmac251. *J Virol*. (2016) 90:8487–95. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00812-16
152. Flynn NM, Forthal DN, Harro CD, Judson FN, Mayer KH, Para MF. Placebo-controlled phase 3 trial of a recombinant glycoprotein 120 vaccine to prevent HIV-1 infection. *J Infect Dis*. (2005) 191:654–65. doi: 10.1086/428404
153. Pitisuttithum P, Gilbert P, Gurwith M, Heyward W, Martin M, Van Griensven F, et al. Randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled efficacy trial of a bivalent recombinant glycoprotein 120 HIV-1 vaccine among injection drug users in Bangkok, Thailand. *J Infect Dis*. (2006) 194:1661–71. doi: 10.1086/508748
154. Ilinykh PA, Santos RI, Gunn BM, Kuzmina NA, Shen X, Huang K, et al. Asymmetric antiviral effects of ebolavirus antibodies targeting glycoprotein stem and glycan cap. *PLoS Pathog*. (2018) 14:e1007204. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1007204
155. Decamp AC, Rolland M, Edlefsen PT, Sanders-Buell E, Hall B, Magaret CA, et al. Sieve analysis of breakthrough HIV-1 sequences in HVTN 505 identifies vaccine pressure targeting the CD4 binding site of Env-gp120. *PLoS ONE*. (2017) 12:e0185959. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0185959
156. Musich T, Li L, Liu L, Zolla-Pazner S, Robert-Guroff M, Gorny MK. Monoclonal antibodies specific for the V2, V3, CD4-binding site, and gp41 of HIV-1 mediate phagocytosis in a dose-dependent manner. *J Virol*. (2017) 91:e02325–e02316. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02325-16
157. Wills S, Hwang KK, Liu P, Dennison SM, Tay MZ, Shen X, et al. HIV-1 specific IgA monoclonal antibodies from an HIV-1 vaccinee mediate galcer blocking and phagocytosis. *J Virol*. (2018) 92:e01552–01517. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01552-17
158. Mazor Y, Yang C, Borrok MJ, Ayriss J, Aherne K, Wu H, et al. Enhancement of immune effector functions by modulating IgG's intrinsic affinity for target antigen. *PLoS ONE*. (2016) 11:e0157788. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0157788
159. Moore PL, Crooks ET, Porter L, Zhu P, Cayanan CS, Grise H, et al. Nature of nonfunctional envelope proteins on the surface of human immunodeficiency virus type 1. *J Virol*. (2006) 80:2515–28. doi: 10.1128/JVI.80.5.2515-2528.2006
160. Ferrari G, Pollara J, Kozink D, Harms T, Drinker M, Freel S, et al. An HIV-1 gp120 envelope human monoclonal antibody that recognizes a C1 conformational epitope mediates potent antibody-dependent cellular

cytotoxicity (ADCC) activity and defines a common ADCC epitope in human HIV-1 serum. *J Virol*. (2011) 85:7029–36. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00171-11
161. Liu P, Overman RG, Yates NL, Alam SM, Vandergrift N, Chen Y, et al. Dynamic antibody specificities and virion concentrations in circulating immune complexes in acute to chronic HIV-1 infection. *J Virol*. (2011) 85:11196–207. doi: 10.1128/JVI.05601-11
162. Ackerman ME, Moldt B, Wyatt RT, Dugast AS, Mcandrew E, Tsoukas S, et al. A robust, high-throughput assay to determine the phagocytic activity of clinical antibody samples. *J Immunol Methods*. (2011) 366:8–19. doi: 10.1016/j.jim.2010.12.016
163. Worley MJ, Fei K, Lopez-Denman AJ, Kelleher AD, Kent SJ, Chung AW. Neutrophils mediate HIV-specific antibody-dependent phagocytosis and ADCC. *J Immunol Methods*. (2018) 457:41–52. doi: 10.1016/j.jim.2018.03.007
164. O'doherty U, Swiggard WJ, Malim MH. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 spinoculation enhances infection through virus binding. *J Virol*. (2000) 74:10074–80. doi: 10.1128/JVI.74.21.10074-10080.2000
165. Tay MZ, Kunz EL, Deal A, Zhang L, Seaton KE, Rountree W, et al. Rare detection of antiviral functions of polyclonal IgA isolated from plasma and breast milk compartments in HIV-1 chronically infected women. *J Virol*. (2019) doi: 10.1128/jvi.02084-18. [Epub ahead of print].
166. Ayala-Nunez NV, Hoornweg TE, Van De Pol DP, Sjollema KA, Flipse J, Van Der Schaar HM, et al. How antibodies alter the cell entry pathway of dengue virus particles in macrophages. *Sci Rep*. (2016) 6:28768. doi: 10.1038/srep28768
167. Van Der Schaar HM, Rust MJ, Chen C, Van Der Ende-Metselaar H, Wilschut J, Zhuang X, et al. Dissecting the cell entry pathway of dengue virus by single-particle tracking in living cells. *PLoS Pathog*. (2008) 4:e1000244. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000244
168. Shukair SA, Allen SA, Cianci GC, Stieh DJ, Anderson MR, Baig SM, et al. Human cervicovaginal mucus contains an activity that hinders HIV-1 movement. *Mucosal Immunol*. (2013) 6:427–34. doi: 10.1038/mi.2012.87
169. Ana-Sosa-Batiz F, Johnston AP, Liu H, Center RJ, Rerks-Ngarm S, Pitisuttithum P, et al. HIV-specific antibody-dependent phagocytosis matures during HIV infection. *Immunol Cell Biol*. (2014) 92:679–87. doi: 10.1038/icb.2014.42
170. Pacheco P, White D, Sulchek T. Effects of microparticle size and Fc density on macrophage phagocytosis. *PLoS ONE*. (2013) 8:e60989. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0060989
171. Richards DM, Endres RG. The mechanism of phagocytosis: two stages of engulfment. *Biophys J*. (2014) 107:1542–53. doi: 10.1016/j.bpj.2014.07.070
172. Huang ZY, Barreda DR, Worth RG, Indik ZK, Kim MK, Chien P, et al. Differential kinase requirements in human and mouse Fc-gamma receptor phagocytosis and endocytosis. *J Leukoc Biol*. (2006) 80:1553–62. doi: 10.1189/jlb.0106019
173. Richards DM, Endres RG. Target shape dependence in a simple model of receptor-mediated endocytosis and phagocytosis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2016) 113:6113–8. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1521974113
174. Beningo KA, Wang YL. Fc-receptor-mediated phagocytosis is regulated by mechanical properties of the target. *J Cell Sci*. (2002) 115:849–56.
175. Bakalar MH, Joffe AM, Schmid EM, Son S, Podolski M, Fletcher DA. Size-Dependent segregation controls macrophage phagocytosis of antibody-opsonized targets. *Cell*. (2018) 174:131–42 e113. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2018.05.059
176. Gach JS, Bouzin M, Wong MP, Chromikova V, Gorlani A, Yu KT, et al. Human immunodeficiency virus type-1 (HIV-1) evades antibody-dependent phagocytosis. *PLoS Pathog*. (2017) 13:e1006793. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1006793
177. Kramski M, Schorcht A, Johnston AP, Lichtfuss GF, Jegaskanda S, De Rose R, et al. Role of monocytes in mediating HIV-specific antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity. *J Immunol Methods*. (2012) 384:51–61. doi: 10.1016/j.jim.2012.07.006
178. Pollara J, Orlandi C, Beck C, Edwards RW, Hu Y, Liu S, et al. Application of area scaling analysis to identify natural killer cell and monocyte involvement in the GranToxiLux antibody dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity assay. *Cytometry A*. (2018) 93:436–47. doi: 10.1002/cyto.a.23348
179. Richardson SI, Crowther C, Mkhize NN, Morris L. Measuring the ability of HIV-specific antibodies to mediate trogocytosis. *J Immunol Methods*. (2018) 463:71–83. doi: 10.1016/j.jim.2018.09.009
180. Valgardsdottir R, Cattaneo I, Klein C, Introna M, Figliuzzi M, Golay J. Human neutrophils mediate trogocytosis rather than phagocytosis of CLL B cells opsonized with anti-CD20 antibodies. *Blood*. (2017) 129:2636–44. doi: 10.1182/blood-2016-08-735605
181. Velmurugan R, Challa DK, Ram S, Ober RJ, Ward ES. Macrophage-mediated trogocytosis leads to death of antibody-opsonized tumor cells. *Mol Cancer Ther*. (2016) 15:1879–89. doi: 10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-15-0335
182. Liew PX, Kim JH, Lee WY, Kubes P. Antibody-dependent fragmentation is a newly identified mechanism of cell killing *in vivo*. *Sci Rep*. (2017) 7:10515. doi: 10.1038/s41598-017-10420-z
183. Matlung HL, Babes L, Zhao XW, Van Houdt M, Treffers LW, Van Rees DJ, et al. Neutrophils kill antibody-opsonized cancer cells by trogoptosis. *Cell Rep*. (2018) 23:e3946. doi: 10.1016/j.celrep.2018.05.082
184. Bruhns P. Properties of mouse and human IgG receptors and their contribution to disease models. *Blood*. (2012) 119:5640–9. doi: 10.1182/blood-2012-01-380121
185. Roux KH, Strelets L, Michaelsen TE. Flexibility of human IgG subclasses. *J Immunol*. (1997) 159:3372–82.
186. Lu Y, Harding SE, Michaelsen TE, Longman E, Davis KG, Ortega A, et al. Solution conformation of wild-type and mutant IgG3 and IgG4 immunoglobulins using crystallohydrodynamics: possible implications for complement activation. *Biophys J*. (2007) 93:3733–44. doi: 10.1529/biophysj.107.108993
187. Liu H, May K. Disulfide bond structures of IgG molecules: structural variations, chemical modifications and possible impacts to stability and biological function. *MAbs*. (2012) 4:17–23. doi: 10.4161/mabs.4.1.18347
188. Scinicariello F, Engleman CN, Jayashankar L, Mcclure HM, Attanasio R. Rhesus macaque antibody molecules: sequences and heterogeneity of alpha and gamma constant regions. *Immunology*. (2004) 111:66–74. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2567.2004.01767.x
189. Ramesh A, Darko S, Hua A, Overman G, Ransier A, Francica JR, et al. Structure and diversity of the rhesus macaque immunoglobulin loci through Multiple *De Novo* genome assemblies. *Front Immunol*. (2017) 8:1407. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2017.01407
190. Vidarsson G, Dekkers G, Rispens T. IgG subclasses and allotypes: from structure to effector functions. *Front Immunol*. (2014) 5:520. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2014.00520
191. Boesch AW, Osei-Owusu NY, Crowley AR, Chu TH, Chan YN, Weiner JA, et al. Biophysical and functional characterization of rhesus macaque IgG subclasses. *Front Immunol*. (2016) 7:589. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2016.00589
192. Chan YN, Boesch AW, Osei-Owusu NY, Emileh A, Crowley AR, Cocklin SL, et al. IgG binding characteristics of rhesus macaque FcγR. *J Immunol*. (2016) 197:2936–47. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1502252
193. Boesch AW, Miles AR, Chan YN, Osei-Owusu NY, Ackerman ME. IgG Fc variant cross-reactivity between human and rhesus macaque FcγRs. *MAbs* 9:455–65. doi: 10.1080/19420862.2016.1274845
194. Smith P, Dilillo DJ, Bournazos S, Li F, Ravetch JV. Mouse model recapitulating human Fcgamma receptor structural and functional diversity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2012) 109:6181–6. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1203954109
195. Bournazos S, Dilillo DJ, Ravetch JV. humanized mice to study FcgammaR function. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. (2014) 382:237–48. doi: 10.1007/978-3-319-07911-0_11

Conflict of Interest Statement: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

ORIGINAL RESEARCH
published: 07 March 2019
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00390

Impact of Human FcγR Gene Polymorphisms on IgG-Triggered Cytokine Release: Critical Importance of Cell Assay Format

*Khiyam Hussain[1†], Chantal E. Hargreaves[1,2,3†], Tania F. Rowley[4], Joshua M. Sopp[1], Kate V. Latham[3], Pallavi Bhatta[4], John Sherington[4], Rona M. Cutler[4], David P. Humphreys[4], Martin J. Glennie[1], Jonathan C. Strefford[3] and Mark S. Cragg[1]**

[1] Antibody and Vaccine Group, Centre for Cancer Immunology, Cancer Sciences, Faculty of Medicine, University of Southampton, Southampton, United Kingdom, [2] Nuffield Department of Medicine, John Radcliffe Hospital, University of Oxford, Oxford, United Kingdom, [3] Cancer Genomics Group, Southampton Experimental Cancer Medicine Centre, Cancer Sciences Unit, Faculty of Medicine, University of Southampton, Southampton, United Kingdom, [4] UCB Pharma, Slough, United Kingdom

OPEN ACCESS

Edited by:
Guido Ferrari,
Duke University, United States

Reviewed by:
Michael Eller,
United States Military HIV Research Program, United States
David Easterhoff,
Duke University, United States

***Correspondence:**
Mark S. Cragg
msc@soton.ac.uk

[†] These authors have contributed equally to this work

Specialty section:
This article was submitted to Comparative Immunology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology

Received: 29 October 2018
Accepted: 14 February 2019
Published: 07 March 2019

Citation:
Hussain K, Hargreaves CE, Rowley TF, Sopp JM, Latham KV, Bhatta P, Sherington J, Cutler RM, Humphreys DP, Glennie MJ, Strefford JC and Cragg MS (2019) Impact of Human FcγR Gene Polymorphisms on IgG-Triggered Cytokine Release: Critical Importance of Cell Assay Format. Front. Immunol. 10:390. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00390

Monoclonal antibody (mAb) immunotherapy has transformed the treatment of allergy, autoimmunity, and cancer. The interaction of mAb with Fc gamma receptors (FcγR) is often critical for efficacy. The genes encoding the low-affinity FcγR have single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) and copy number variation that can impact IgG Fc:FcγR interactions. Leukocyte-based *in vitro* assays remain one of the industry standards for determining mAb efficacy and predicting adverse responses in patients. Here we addressed the impact of FcγR genetics on immune cell responses in these assays and investigated the importance of assay format. FcγR genotyping of 271 healthy donors was performed using a Multiplex Ligation-Dependent Probe Amplification assay. Freeze-thawed/pre-cultured peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) and whole blood samples from donors were stimulated with reagents spanning different mAb functional classes to evaluate the association of FcγR genotypes with T-cell proliferation and cytokine release. Using freeze-thawed/pre-cultured PBMCs, agonistic T-cell-targeting mAb induced T-cell proliferation and the highest levels of cytokine release, with lower but measurable responses from mAb which directly require FcγR-mediated cellular effects for function. Effects were consistent for individual donors over time, however, no significant associations with FcγR genotypes were observed using this assay format. In contrast, significantly elevated IFN-γ release was associated with the *FCGR2A*-131H/H genotype compared to *FCGR2A*-131R/R in whole blood stimulated with Campath ($p \leq 0.01$) and IgG1 Fc hexamer ($p \leq 0.05$). Donors homozygous for both the high affinity *FCGR2A*-131H and *FCGR3A*-158V alleles mounted stronger IFN-γ responses to Campath ($p \leq 0.05$) and IgG1 Fc Hexamer ($p \leq 0.05$) compared to donors homozygous for the low affinity alleles. Analysis revealed significant reductions in the proportion of $CD14^{hi}$ monocytes, $CD56^{dim}$ NK cells ($p \leq 0.05$) and FcγRIIIa expression ($p \leq 0.05$), in donor-matched freeze-thawed PBMC compared to whole blood samples, likely explaining the difference in association between FcγR genotype and mAb-mediated cytokine release

in the different assay formats. These findings highlight the significant impact of *FCGR2A* and *FCGR3A* SNPs on mAb function and the importance of using fresh whole blood assays when evaluating their association with mAb-mediated cytokine release *in vitro*. This knowledge can better inform on the utility of *in vitro* assays for the prediction of mAb therapy outcome in patients.

Keywords: Fc gamma receptors, antibody immunotherapy, Fc gamma receptor polymorphism, cytokine release syndrome, cytokine release assays

INTRODUCTION

The advent of monoclonal antibodies (mAb) has revolutionized the treatment of malignant and autoimmune disease (1, 2). However, there is considerable variability in response to mAb therapy, as some patients may not respond to treatment whilst others experience toxic side effects, of which cytokine release syndrome (CRS) is the most detrimental to patient safety (3). CRS is characterized by rapid immune cell activation and systemic elevations of proinflammatory cytokines, in particular IFN-γ, TNF-α, and IL-6. CRS has been observed with the clinical use of several antibodies, including muromonab (anti-CD3), TGN1412 (anti-CD28), Rituximab (anti-CD20) and alemtuzumab (Campath-1H, anti-CD52) (3–6).

In the first-in-man trial of TGN1412, rapid, life-threatening CRS was observed in healthy volunteers (6). Preclinical *in vitro* testing using soluble TGN1412 to stimulate human whole blood or purified peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) failed to predict this toxicity (7). Following these failures, there has been a concerted effort to develop predictive *in vitro* assays that enable a better understanding of mAb *in vivo* action and potential toxicity (8–10). mAb target density, immunoglobulin G (IgG) isotype, tissue microenvironment and Fc gamma receptor (FcγR) expression levels are all key to the outcome of therapy (11). Importantly, several studies have reported that *in vivo* expression levels and distribution of FcγR profoundly influence mAb effector function (12–15). Recapitulating the *in vivo* interaction of the mAb with FcγR *in vitro* is therefore of significant value.

Six FcγR are present in humans, consisting of high and low affinity receptors. The high-affinity FcγRI (CD64) is encoded by *FCGR1A* on chromosome 1q21. The low-affinity receptors, FcγRIIa, FcγRIIb, FcγRIIc, FcγRIIIa, and FcγRIIIb are encoded by genes *FCGR2A*, *FCGR2B*, *FCGR2C*, *FCGR3A*, and *FCGR3B*, respectively, in a 200 kb region on chromosome 1q23-24. These genes are subject to numerous single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) and copy number variation (CNV) (16). There are four reported copy number regions (CNRs) in the low-affinity locus, each encompassing a differing combination of genes (17). Genetic variation can impact upon receptor function and associations have been made between FcγR genetic variants and disease. SNPs in *FCGR2A* (rs1801274; 131H) and *FCGR3A* (rs396991; 158V) increase receptor affinity for IgG (18) while CNV can alter the level of FcγR expressed at the cell surface available for IgG binding. SNPs altering receptor affinity have been associated with superior responses in some cohorts of cancer patients treated with mAb immunotherapy (19–24). *FCGR2A*-131R (25) and *FCGR2B*-232T (26) have been implicated in increased risk of systemic lupus erythematous, while *FCGR3B* HNA 1B and decreased copy number of *FCGR3B* have been associated with reduced immune complex clearance and increased risk of autoimmunity (25, 27).

Given the impact of FcγR SNPs and CNV on receptor function via IgG Fc:FcγR interactions on immune cells (28, 29), studies investigating treatment efficacy and side effect profile in the context of FcγR genotypes and expression levels are warranted. We hypothesized that since the *FCGR2A*-131H and *FCGR3A*-158V alleles in particular, markedly enhance receptor affinity for IgG (18), mAbs and an IgG1 Fc Hexamer construct, have the potential to elicit enhanced cytokine release amongst individuals possessing these gene variants. Furthermore, we aimed to determine the association of several FcγR SNPs with the magnitude of IgG Fc triggered cytokine release in two widely used assay formats: freeze-thawed precultured PBMCs and whole blood. The whole blood assay (but not freeze-thawed PBMC) format recapitulates immune cell subset frequencies, FcγR cellular distribution and expression levels at physiological levels more accurately, revealing associations between FcγR genotype and magnitude of cytokine release in response to mAb treatment. These findings highlight FcγR genotype characterization paired with *vitro* assessment of mAb therapeutics may indeed better predict the magnitude, and variability of responses observed in clinical settings and inform on enhanced therapy design.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Healthy Donor Cohorts and Ethical Approval

This study comprises two independent cohorts of anonymous healthy donors (total $n = 271$). The Southampton cohort (30), consisted of 178 anonymous healthy donors entering local transfusion services (National Blood Service, Southampton, UK). This study was approved by the University of Southampton Faculty of Medicine Ethics Committee and the National Research Ethics Service Committee South Central, Hampshire, UK. The UCB cohort consisted of 93 anonymous healthy donors based at UCB Celltech, Slough, UK. Blood samples obtained from these donors were taken with informed consent under UCB Celltech UK HTA license number 12504. All donors gave written informed consent in accordance with the Declaration of Helsinki.

PBMC Preparation and Blood Collection

PBMCs were sourced from leukocyte cones (National Blood Service, Southampton, UK) and whole blood was collected

from the UCB donor cohort in lithium heparin vacutainers (BD). PBMCs were isolated from these samples immediately by density gradient centrifugation (Lymphoprep, Axis-Shield). Samples were subsequently frozen in 10% DMSO and 90% fetal bovine serum (FBS, Sigma-Aldrich) and stored in liquid nitrogen for 3–24 months.

Genomic DNA Extraction and Multiplex Ligation-Dependent Probe Amplification (MLPA) Assay

Frozen PBMC samples were rapidly thawed and genomic DNA (gDNA) was extracted (DNeasy Blood and Tissue Kit, Qiagen, GmbH, Hilden, Germany). DNA quality was assessed by UV spectrophotometry.

CNV and SNPs in the low-affinity FcγR locus were measured as previously described (30). 100 ng DNA was analyzed in triplicate using the SALSA MLPA P110 and P111 probe mixes (MRC-Holland, Amsterdam, The Netherlands). PCR products were analyzed using the Genetic Analysis System CEQ 8800 capillary electrophoresis machine and GenomeLab software (Beckman Coulter, High Wycombe, UK). CNV across the locus and SNPs in *FCGR2A* 131R/H (rs1801274), *FCGR3A* 158F/V (rs396991), *FCGR2B* 232I/T (rs1050501), *FCGR2C* 57X/Q (rs759550223), *FCGR3B* HNA 1A/B/C isoforms were assessed.

Intra-sample data normalization was performed using the Coffalyser.NET software (MRC-Holland) by comparing the peak heights of PCR products generated by probes detecting regions of interest against the peak heights of PCR products targeting control genes of known normal copy number. Inter-sample normalization was performed by comparing test cases against a reference sample of 96 pooled European Collection of Cell Cultures (ECACC) Human Random Control panel 1 (Porton Down, Public Health England, UK) gDNA samples. Normalized MLPA data was analyzed using Microsoft Excel 2010.

Antibodies and IgG1 Fc Hexamer

Avastin (Bevacizumab) was sourced from Genentech. Hybridoma cells expressing OKT3 (mouse IgG2a) were obtained from the American Type Culture Committee (ATCC) and mAb isolated from tissue culture media by standard procedures in-house. TGN1412 was produced in-house using published sequences (US patent number US7585960). Variable regions were sub-cloned into expression vectors (pEE6.4 heavy chain and pEE12.4 light chain; Lonza) containing constant regions of human IgG4. Heavy- and light-chain vectors were sub-cloned together before transfection into 293F cells for transient production or CHO-K1 cells for stable production. mAb was purified on Protein A-Sepharose, and aggregates were removed by gel filtration. Campath-1H (Campath) human IgG1 was sourced from Professor Geoffrey Hale (University of Cambridge, UK).

To generate a recombinant hexameric Fc construct (IgG1 Fc hexamer), human IgG1 Fc with mature N-termini starting with an IgG1 core hinge (CPPC) were directly fused at their C-terminal lysine residues to the 18 amino-acid C-terminal extension or "tail-piece" (PTLYNVSLVMSDTAGTCY) of human IgM, which promotes covalent multimerization. IgG1 Fc hexamer was expressed transiently in CHO cells and purified using Protein A and S200 size exclusion chromatography as described previously (28, 29). IgG1 Fc hexamer fraction purity was >98% on analytical HPLC after size exclusion chromatography (SEC). IgG1 Fc hexamer was stored at 4°C in PBS or frozen in aliquots at −80°C.

Endotoxin levels for all antibodies and IgG1 Fc Hexamer used in this study were measured and found to be <1 ng/mg protein (Endosafe-PTS, Charles River Laboratories).

PBMC Assay

Frozen PBMCs were rapidly thawed at 37°C and cultured for 24 h in a flat-bottomed 24-plate at high density (HD), defined as 1.5×10^7 cells/well (total volume 1.5 mL/well), in serum-free medium (CTL-Test Medium, CTL Europe GmbH, Bonn, Germany) supplemented with glutamine (2 mM), pyruvate (1 mM), penicillin, and streptomycin (100 IU/mL), at 37°C in 5% CO_2. PBMCs were washed and cultured in CTL-Test medium at 1×10^5 cells per well, in a round-bottomed 96-well plate. These cultures were then stimulated with soluble Avastin (5 μg/mL), OKT3 (5 μg/mL), TGN1412 (5 μg/mL), Campath (5 μg/mL), or IgG1 Fc Hexamer (100 μg/mL) and incubated at 37°C in 5% CO_2. T-cell proliferation was quantified at 72 h and cytokine release was quantified 24 h post-stimulation.

Whole Blood Assay

Blood from healthy human volunteers was collected into lithium heparin vacutainers (BD) and used within 2 h of the blood draw. Minimally-diluted blood was stimulated with either 100 μg/mL of IgG1 Fc hexamer or 10 μg/mL Campath (Genzyme). Briefly, 12.5 μL of 20x final concentration Avastin (5 μg/mL), OKT3 (5 μg/mL), TGN1412 (5 μg/mL), Campath (5 μg/mL), or IgG1 Fc Hexamer (100 μg/mL) was transferred to a 96-well round bottom tissue culture plate (Costar). 237.5 μL of whole blood was added and mixed gently by pipetting. Plates were incubated at 37°C, 5 % CO_2, 100 % humidity for 24 h, centrifuged at 300 g for 5 min and plasma collected for cytokine analysis. Plasma not analyzed immediately was stored at −80°C until analysis.

Flow Cytometry

1×10^6 PBMCs or 100 μL of whole blood (diluted 1:2 with PBS) were stained with the appropriate fluorochrome-conjugated mAb for 30 min at 4°C and washed once. Samples were stained with anti-CD3 PerCP (clone: SK7), anti-CD56–PE (clone: HCD56), anti-CD19 APC-Cy7 (clone: HIB19), anti-CD14–Pacific Blue (clone: M5E2) and IgG1κ-FITC (clone: MOPC-21) isotype control (all from BioLegend). FcγR staining was carried out using anti-FcγRI FITC (clone: 10.1, $F(ab')_2$), anti-FcγRIIa FITC (clone: E08, $F(ab')_2$), anti-FcγRIIb FITC (clone: 6G11, $F(ab')_2$), anti-hFcγRIIIa FITC (clone: 3G8, $F(ab')_2$), and isotype control human IgG1 FITC (clone: FITC8 $F(ab')_2$), (generated from published sequences in-house or sourced from BioInvent International AB). Results are shown as geometric mean fluorescent intensity (MFI) for FcγR expression on B cells (FSC-A^{lo}SSC-$A^{lo}$$CD19^+CD3^-$), NK cells (FSC-$A^{lo}$SSC-$A^{lo}$$CD56^{dim}CD3^-$, $CD56^{bright}CD3^+$ or $CD56^{hi}CD3^+$), classical

monocytes (FSC-A^{int}SSC-A^{int}CD14^{hi}), non-classical monocytes (FSC-A^{int}SSC-A^{int}CD14^{lo}) and granulocytes (CD14^{-}SSC^{hi}), (see **Supplementary Figure 1** for FACS gating strategy). FcγR expression levels were corrected by subtracting the geometric MFI of the corresponding isotype control staining.

Intracellular IFN-γ staining of PBMCs was carried out by culturing mAb-treated PBMCs with Golgi plug (BD Biosciences) for 24 h. Cells were stained with anti-CD4 Pacific blue (clone: SK3, BioLegend), anti-CD8 V500 (clone: RPA-T8, BD Biosciences) and anti-CD56 PE (clone: HCD56, BioLegend). PBMCs were fixed with FOXP3 Fix/Perm buffer (BioLegend) and permeabilized with FOXP3 Perm buffer before staining with anti-IFN-γ PE-Cy7 (clone: 4S.B3, eBiosciences). Samples were analyzed on a BD FACSCanto II (BD Biosciences) and data was analyzed using FlowJo Version 9.4.11 (Tree Star).

T-Cell Proliferation Assay

PBMCs were labeled with 2 μM carboxyfluorescein succinimidyl ester (CFSE). Cells were cultured in a 24-well plate at 1×10^7/mL for 24 h prior to the stimulation assays. Cells were transferred into round-bottomed 96-well plates at 1×10^5 per well. On day 3, cells were labeled with anti-CD8-APC (clone: SK1, BioLegend) and anti-CD4-PE (clone C4/120: in-house), and proliferation was assessed by CFSE dilution on a FACSCalibur or FACSCanto flow cytometer (BD Biosciences). CD4$^+$ and CD8$^+$ T cell division is defined as a percentage of total cells excluding the parent population (first peak).

Cytokine Determination

Supernatants from PBMC and plasma from whole blood assays were taken 24 h post-stimulation. IFN-γ, TNFα, IL-1β, and IL-6 levels were determined using the V-plex Proinflammatory Panel 1 (human) 4-plex Kit (Cat No: K15052D-2, Meso Scale Discovery) as per the manufacturer's protocol.

Statistical Analysis

Chi-squared tests were used to compare cohorts in terms of genotype frequency and to test for Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium. Where appropriate to conform to the assumption of "Normality" and constant variance, continuous data was log-transformed prior to analysis, results back-transformed to give geometric means and cytokine release data plotted with a logarithmic axis. One-way analysis of variance (ANOVA) with *post-hoc* pairwise comparisons was used to compare donor groups with different *FCGR* alleles. Two-way ANOVA with *post-hoc* pairwise comparisons or a paired student's *t*-test were used to compare groups where the same donors were used in each group (e.g., comparing immune cells subset frequencies in donor matched whole blood and freeze-thawed PBMCs). As a large number of statistical tests have been carried out in a range of contexts, there may be an issue with multiplicity of *p*-values. Formal multiplicity adjustments have not been used, so *p*-values should be interpreted with care and within the overall scientific context. Data analysis was carried out using the Graphpad Prism version 8.0.1 software. Statistical significance defined as $^*p < 0.05$, $^{**}p < 0.01$ $^{***}p < 0.001$ and $^{****}p < 0.0001$ and ns = non-significant.

RESULTS

Low-Affinity FcγR Gene Locus Characterization in Two Independent Cohorts

We assessed the frequency of common SNPs in the low-affinity FcγR locus in two independent cohorts using an FcγR-specific MLPA assay (**Supplementary Table 1**). Genotype frequencies for the combined cohorts are displayed in **Table 1**. Genotyping of the genes not reported to be affected by CNV, *FCGR2A* and *FCGR2B*, showed allele frequencies of 23.99% RR, 52.77% RH and 21.4% HH, and of 77.86% II, 20.66% IT and 0.37% TT, respectively. Genotypes reported for *FCGR3A, FCGR2C,* and *FCGR3B* include those with CNV. Frequencies for *FCGR3A* were 33.58% FF, 49.45% FV, and 8.86% VV; *FCGR2C* were 53.14% XX, 21.03% XQ and 2.21% QQ; and *FCGR3B* were 4.43% AA, 43.54% AB, and 31.37% BB. Reported genotypes were within Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium.

Copy gain (25.8%) across the locus was more prevalent than copy loss (20.2%). We found alterations in CNRs 1 and 2, with CNR2 the most prevalent event (**Table 2**). Frequencies of CNV and CNR events for each cohort are described individually in **Supplementary Tables 2, 3** and for samples with available functional data in **Supplementary Tables 4, 5**.

Immune Cell Subset Frequencies and FcγR Expression on Healthy Donor PBMCs

Using flow cytometry (see **Supplementary Figure 1** for FACS gating strategy), we assessed the cellular constituents and FcγR expression in freeze-thawed PBMC samples from 107 healthy individuals from the Southampton cohort. These donors were selected to generate a cohort with the full range of FcγR SNPs and CNV status with the potential to confer low- and high-affinity IgG binding. As expected, T cells were the most abundant cell type in these samples (median 59.8%, range 38.8–81.8%), followed by monocytes (median 12.3%, range 5.1–30.2%), CD56^{dim} NK cells (median 7.6%, range 1.8–14.3%), CD3$^+$ NK cells (median 5.9%, range 1.7–15.1%) and B cells (median 3.9%, range 1.1–10.1%). CD4$^+$ T cells (median 47.6%, range 25.2–71.2%) were more abundant than CD8$^+$ T cells (median 10.5%, range 3.6–37%) in all donor samples. The frequencies of CD56^{bright} NK cells and dendritic cells (DCs) in these samples were <0.01% of total cells (**Figure 1A**).

Monocytes can be categorized into classical and non-classical subsets on the basis of CD14 high (CD14^{hi}) or low (CD14^{lo}) expression, respectively. FcγR expression levels on each monocyte population were assessed separately. As previously reported (31), CD14^{hi} monocytes abundantly expressed FcγRI and FcγRIIa, but were low or negative for FcγRIIb and FcγRIIIa (**Figure 1B**). In contrast, the less frequent CD14^{lo} non-classical monocytes expressed lower levels of FcγRI and FcγRIIa and higher levels FcγRIIb and FcγRIIIa (**Figure 1C**). B cells expressed high levels of FcγRIIb in comparison to non–classical monocytes but did not express any other FcγR (**Figure 1D**). CD56^{dim} NK cells expressed very variable levels of FcγRIIIa (**Figure 1E**, median MFI 2242, and range 97-8987). Finally, CD3$^+$ T and

TABLE 1 | Combined genotype frequencies of common low-affinity FcγR genes in the combined cohorts.

Gene	SNP(s)	Genotype	*N*	%	*p*-value	Chi^2 test
FCGR2A	rs1208724	RR	65	23.99	0.42	0.51
		RH	143	52.77		
		HH	58	21.40		
		Failed	5	1.85		
FCGR3A	rs396991	FF	91	33.58	0.42	0.66
		FV	134	49.45		
		VV	24	8.86		
		F	1	0.37		
		V	1	0.37		
		FFF	6	2.21		
		FFV	1	0.37		
		VVV	1	0.37		
		Failed	12	4.43		
FCGR2C	rs759550223	XX	144	53.14	0.48	0.5
		XQ	57	21.03		
		QQ	6	2.21		
		X	17	6.27		
		Q	9	3.32		
		XXX	25	9.23		
		XXQ	4	1.48		
		XQQ	1	0.37		
		QQQ	4	1.48		
		XXXX	1	0.37		
		Failed	3	1.11		
FCGR3B	HNA isoforms (rs200688856 and rs5030738)	AA	12	4.43	0.09	2.86
		AB	118	43.54		
		BB	85	31.37		
		A	8	2.95		
		B	15	5.54		
		AAA	4	1.48		
		AAB	11	4.06		
		ABB	10	3.69		
		BBBB	1	0.00		
		Failed	7	0.37		
FCGR2B	rs1050501	II	211	77.86	0.9	0.02
		IT	56	20.66		
		TT	1	0.37		
		Failed	3	1.11		

HWE was calculated based on diploid genotypes within the population. A p-value >0.05 (Chi^2 >3.84) was considered to be within HWE.

TABLE 2 | Copy number variation event frequencies across low-affinity FcγR genes in the combined cohorts.

Gene	Gene copy	Total (n)	Total (%)
FCGR3A	1	2	0.7
	2	243	90.7
	3	7	2.6
FCGR2C	1	26	9.7
	2	207	77.2
	3	31	11.6
	4	1	0.4
FCGR3B	1	23	8.6
	2	215	80.2
	3	25	9.3
	4	1	0.4
Event	**Gain (%)**	**Loss (%)**	**Total (%)**
CNR1	7 (12.1)	2 (3.4)	9 (15.5)
CNR2	25 (43.1)	23 (39.7)	48 (82.8)
CNR1/2	1 (1.7)	0 (0)	1 (1.8)

$CD3^+$ NK cells were negative for any cell surface FcγR expression (data not shown).

mAb Mediated T-Cell Proliferation and Cytokine Release Using a PBMC-Based Assay Format

Pre-stored frozen PBMC samples are widely used in academia and industry, to facilitate genotyping and subsequent analysis. In the current study, PBMC samples from healthy donors, were frozen and then re-thawed for use in a PBMC-based cytokine release assay. In these assays, we opted to test the T cell-targeting antibodies, OKT3 (anti-CD3, mouse IgG2a) and TGN1412 (anti-CD28, human IgG4), renowned for inducing CRS in human subjects (5, 6). In order to establish a methodology to predict such CRS *in vitro*, Hunnig et al. developed a modified PBMC-based assay. They showed that PBMCs precultured at high density (HD), but not fresh PBMCs or whole blood, respond to TGN1412 with cytokine release *in vitro*, mimicking the proinflammatory effects observed in the clinic (8). We subsequently reported that the response to TGN1412 was a consequence of a pronounced upregulation of FcγRIIb on monocytes in the HD PBMC culture (10). Given these results and the accepted importance of FcγRs in mediating mAb effector functions, we utilized this PBMC-based HD preculture assay to assess the impact of donor FcγR genotype on T-cell proliferation and cytokine release in response to mAbs of differing functional classes which bind functionally disparate targets.

Consequently, OKT3, TGN1412 and the clinically relevant anti-CD52 (Campath, human IgG1) were used to assess the magnitude and variability of the cytokine release across our donor cohort using this assay platform. We observed a predominant but highly variable, $CD8^+$ T-cell division in response to the anti-CD3 mAb (**Figure 2A**, range 10-92% division of total $CD8^+$ cells). In contrast, TGN1412 predominantly induced $CD4^+$ T-cell division (**Figure 2A**, range 12–74% of total $CD4^+$ cells). T-cell proliferation in response to the control anti-VEGF mAb Avastin was negligible in both T cell subsets (**Figures 2A,B**).

We next assessed cytokine release in response to OKT3, TGN142 and Campath. All 3 mAb induced strong IFN-γ, TNF-α, IL-1β, and IL-6 responses in comparison to Avastin. Cytokine responses to the T-cell specific mAb OKT3 and TGN1412 were

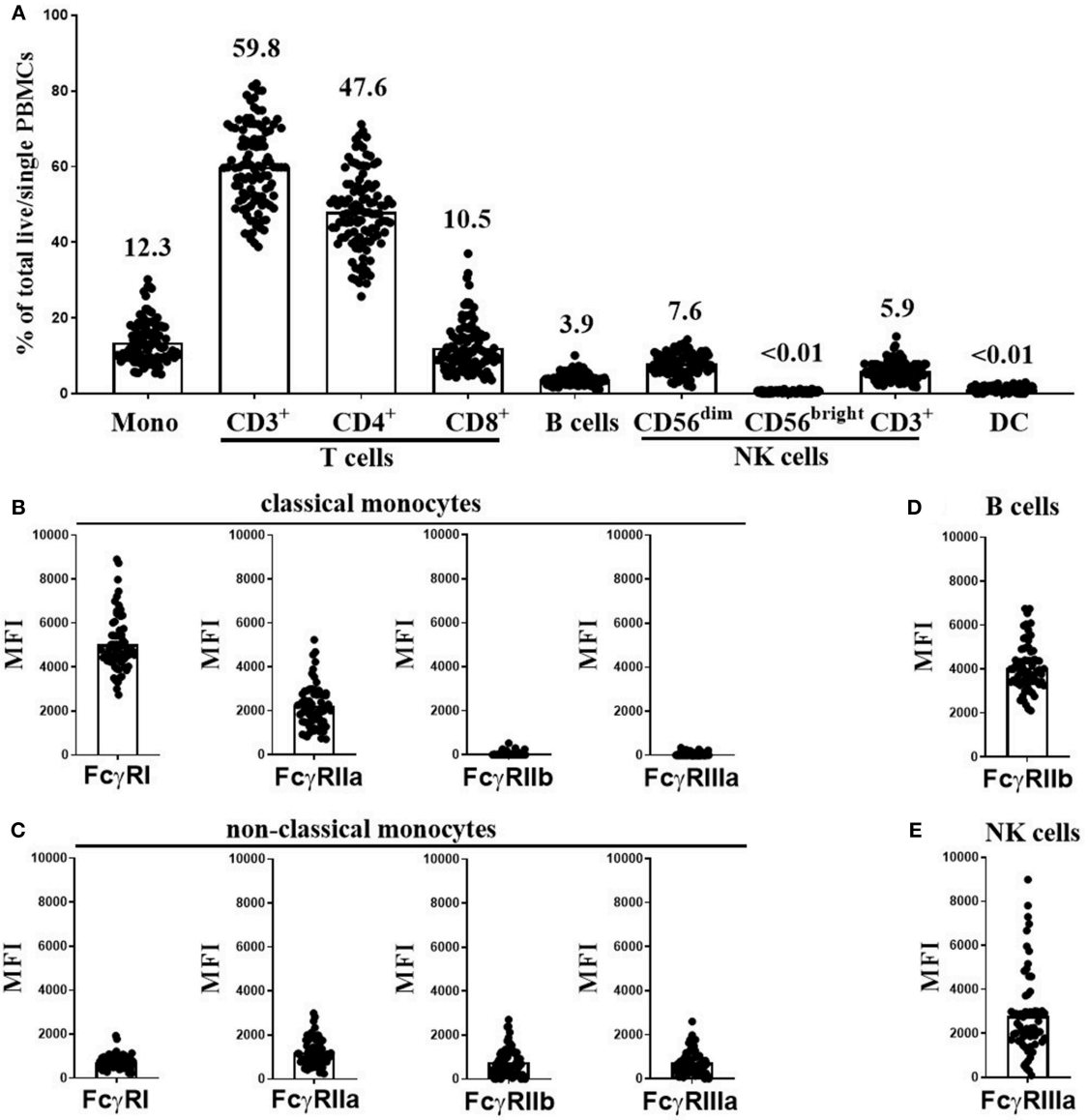


FIGURE 1 | Immune cell subset frequencies and FcγR expression on PBMCs from healthy donors. Immune cell subset frequencies and FcγR expression on freeze-thawed PBMCs using flow cytometry. **(A)** Quantification of monocytes (Mono), $CD3^+$, $CD4^+$, and $CD8^+$ T cells, B cells, $CD56^{dim}$, $CD56^{bright}$, and $CD3^+$ NK cells and dendritic cell (DC) frequencies in freeze-thawed PBMCs from healthy human subjects (mean frequency of each cell subset stated above bar). FcγR expression on **(B)** classical, and **(C)** non-classical monocytes, **(D)** FcγRIIb expression on B cells and **(E)** FcγRIIIa expression on $CD56^{dim}$ NK cells ($n = 107$). Each point represents a donor, bars represent group means.

stronger than those observed in Campath-stimulated cultures. However, there was marked variability in the magnitude of donor responses to all three mAb treatments (**Figures 2C–F**). IFN-γ responses to OKT3, TGN1412 and Campath were stable over time, since stimulating PBMCs from the same donor on five separate occasions (over a 6-month period) revealed a similar response on each occasion (**Supplementary Figure 2**). The IFN-γ response to OKT3, TGN1412, and Campath, was significantly correlated with TNF-α, IL-1β, and IL-6 release ($R^2 = 0.27$–0.83, $p \leq 0.002$–0.0001 for IFN-γ vs. the other three cytokines (except IFN-γ vs. TNF-α for Campath), **Supplementary Figure 3**), and therefore we chose to present IFN-γ release as an exemplar read-out to assess all further cytokine responses in these assays.

To assess the cell populations responsible for this IFN-γ release, we performed intracellular cytokine staining on permeabilized cells stimulated with OKT3, TGN1412, or Campath. Flow cytometry was used to identify and determine the percentage of each cell population secreting IFN-γ. The source of IFN-γ was $CD8^+$ T cells in response to OKT3, both $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells in response to TGN1412 and NK cells

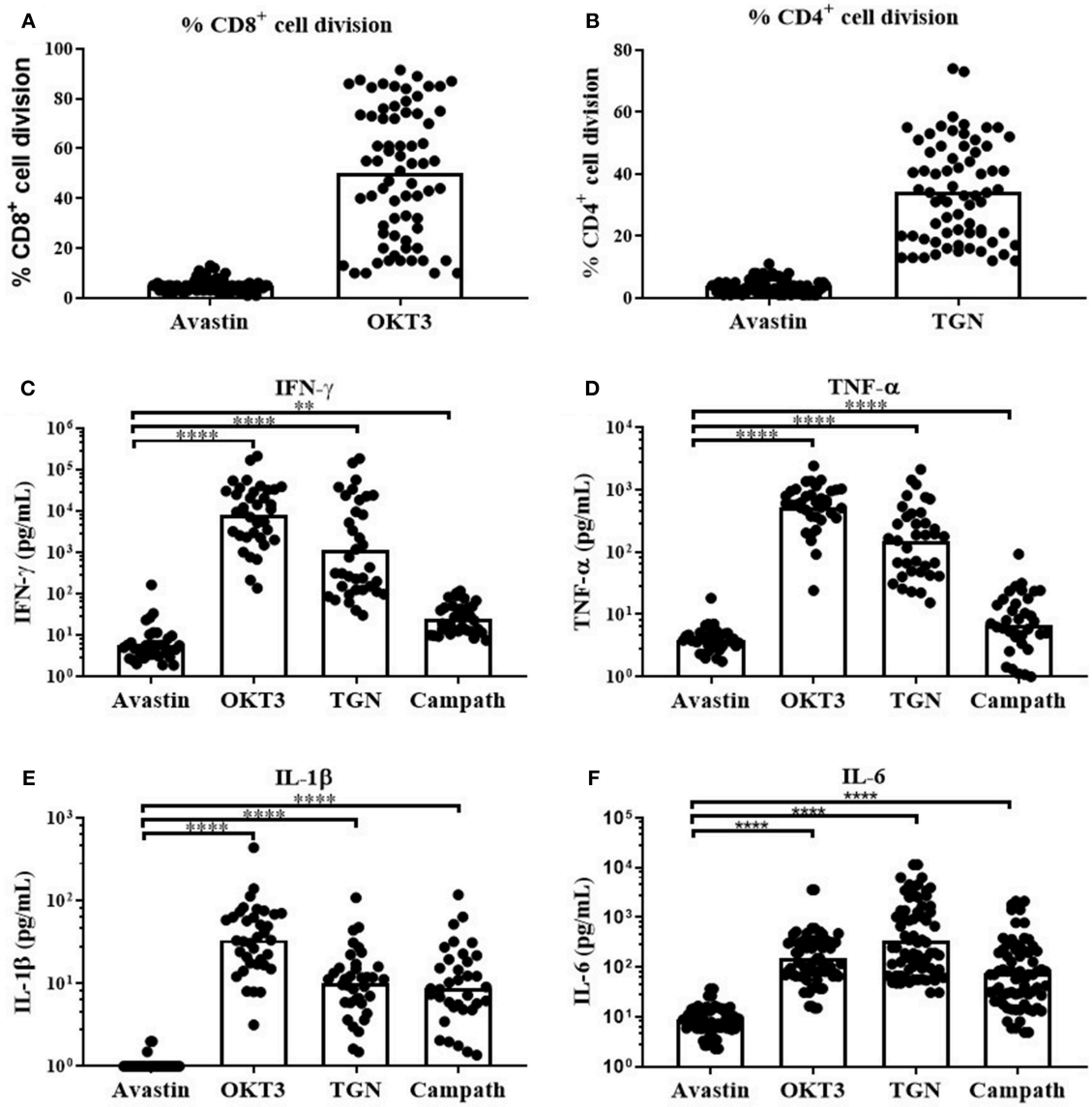


FIGURE 2 | *In vitro* T-cell proliferation and cytokine release in response to mAb stimulation of freeze-thawed PBMCs. T-cell proliferation and cytokine release in response to mAb stimulation. **(A)** % $CD8^+$ cell division in PBMC cultures stimulated with Avastin or OKT3 and **(B)** % $CD4^+$ cell division in PBMC cultures stimulated with Avastin or TGN1412 (TGN), ($n = 69$, bars represent group means). **(C)** IFN-γ, **(D)** TNF-α, **(E)** IL-1β, and **(F)** IL-6 release by PBMCs stimulated with Avastin, OKT3, TGN1412 or Campath ($n = 36$, bars represent group geometric means). $^{**}p < 0.01$ and $^{****}p < 0.0001$.

in response to Campath (**Figures 3A,B**). We next assessed the impact of donor FcγR genotype on the magnitude and variability of these responses observed using this HD freeze-thawed PBMC assay format.

FcγR Genotype Does Not Significantly Impact on mAb-Mediated IFN-γ Secretion in a HD PBMC Assay Format

Three key FcγR polymorphisms have been previously associated with mAb effector capacity, defining high or low affinity receptors for FcγRIIa, FcγRIIIa and a stop codon in FcγRIIc (20–24). We therefore determined the effects of the FcγRIIa 131H/R, FcγRIIIa 158V/F, and FcγRIIc Q/X polymorphisms on IFN-γ release in response to Campath and TGN1412 using the HD PBMC-based cytokine release assay in 36 donors. When stimulating PBMCs with Campath or TGN1412, no significant association of increased IFN-γ release was observed with any of the FcγRIIa, FcγRIIIa, or FcγRIIc alleles (**Figures 4A–F**). Furthermore, no significant associations were observed between FcγR SNPs and magnitude of OKT3 or TGN1412 mediated T-cell proliferation (data not shown). We hypothesized that key properties of the relevant FcγR-expressing immune cell subsets may have been altered during the isolation and storing/thawing/culture

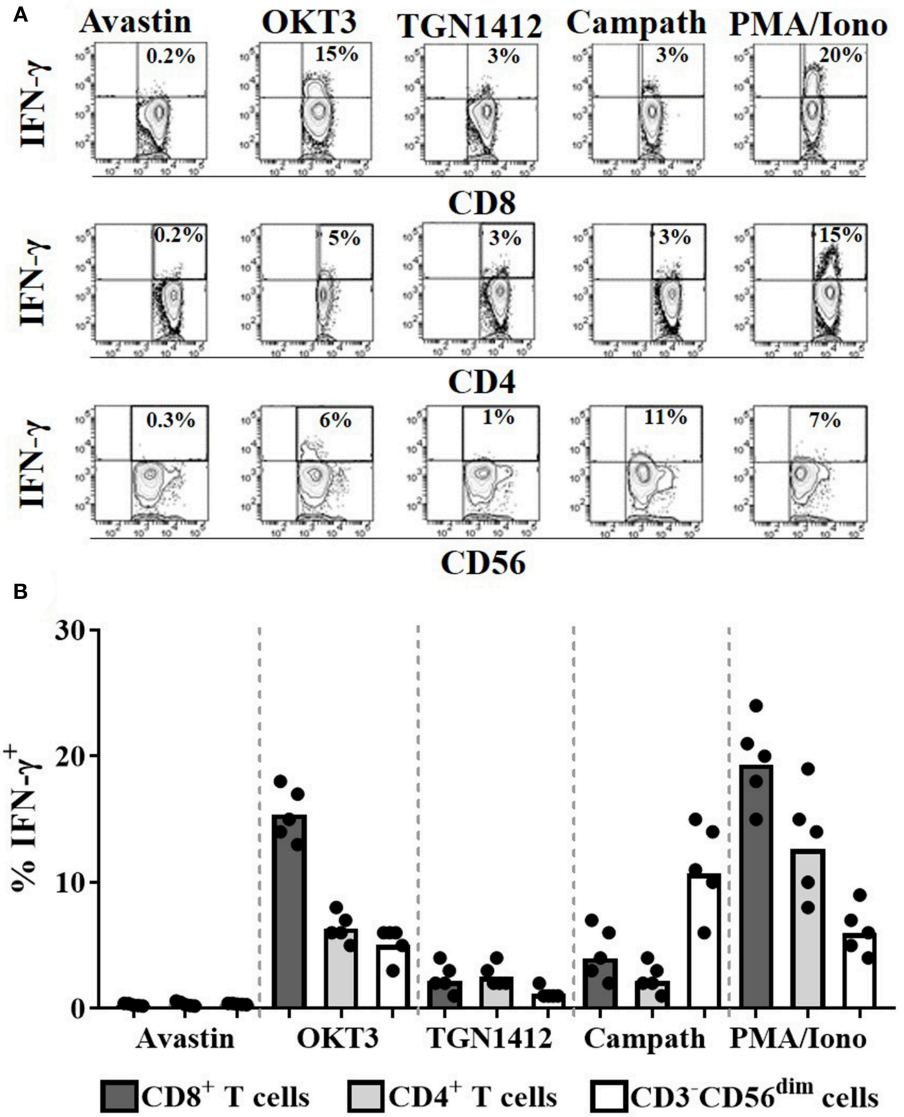


FIGURE 3 | Cellular source of the IFN-γ in response to mAb stimulation. Intracellular IFN-γ staining of PBMCs stimulated for 24 h with Avastin, OKT3, TGN1412, Campath or PMA/Ionomycin (PMA/Iono). **(A)** Representative FACS contour plots of IFN-γ vs. CD8, CD4, or CD56 staining of PBMC cultures stimulated with the aforementioned treatments. **(B)** % $CD8^+$ T cells, $CD4^+$ T cells, and $CD56^{dim}$ NK cells that are IFN-γ^+ post-stimulation ($n = 5$, bars represent group means).

of PBMCs, potentially compromising any associations between FcγR genotype and magnitude of mAb mediated IFN-γ response. To address this, we next compared the frequencies of immune cell subsets between donor matched whole blood and freeze-thawed PBMC samples.

Freeze-Thawed PBMCs Display Altered Immune Subset Frequencies and FcγR Expression Profiles Compared to Matched Whole Blood Samples

As expected, whole blood had a significantly higher frequency of granulocytes in comparison to donor matched freeze-thawed (frozen) PBMC samples as a percentage of total live cells (**Figure 5A**); (Granulocyte median = 54.38% in whole blood compared to 1% for frozen PBMCs, $p < 0.0001$). The proportions of T cells (median = 44.41% for whole blood, 50.04% for frozen PBMCs, $p < 0.05$) were significantly enriched in frozen PBMC samples (**Figure 5B**). In contrast significant reductions in $CD14^{hi}$ classical monocytes (median = 7.6% for whole blood and 5.5% for frozen PBMCs, **Figure 5C**), B cells (median = 11.7% for whole blood, 8.9% for frozen PBMCs, **Figure 5E**) and $CD56^{dim}$ NK cells (median = 5.9% for whole blood, 5.3% for frozen PBMCs, **Figure 5F**) were observed when comparing whole blood to frozen PBMC samples ($p < 0.05$, $p < 0.001$ and $p < 0.05$, respectively). $CD14^{lo}$ non-classical monocyte frequencies were not significantly altered in frozen PBMC when compared to whole blood samples (**Figure 5D**). The proportions of $CD56^{bright}$

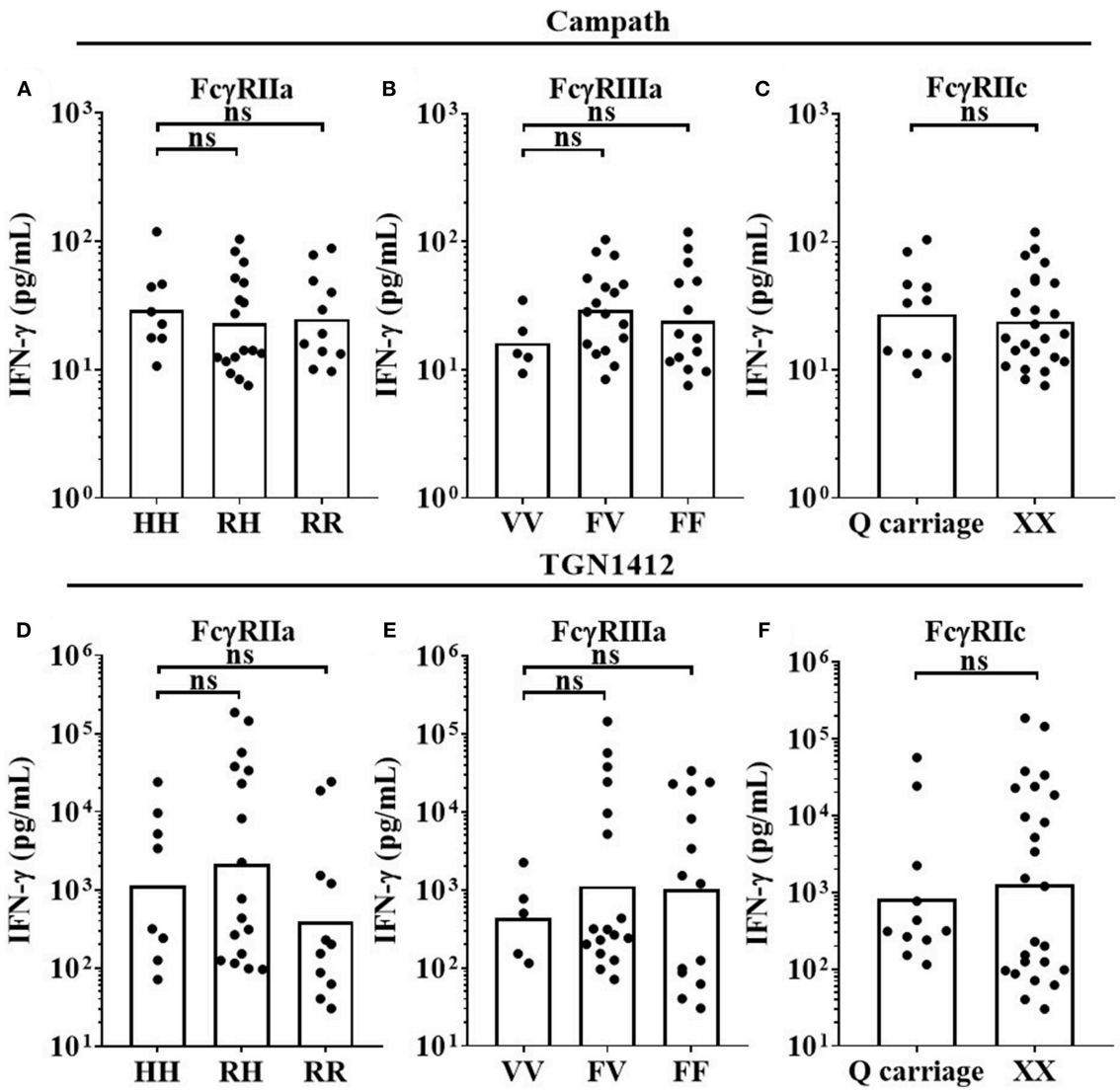


FIGURE 4 | Impact of FcγR polymorphisms on mAb mediated IFN-γ release in a PBMC based assay format. Healthy donors were grouped by FcγRIIa polymorphisms; HH ($n = 8$), RH ($n = 17$) and RR ($n = 11$), FcγRIIIa polymorphisms; VV ($n = 5$), FV ($n = 17$) and FF ($n = 14$), and FcγRIIc polymorphisms; QQ/XQ (n = 11) and XX ($n = 25$). PBMCs were stimulated with **(A–C)** Campath or **(D–F)** TGN1412 and IFN-γ release was quantified 24 h post-stimulation. Each point represents a donor and bars represent group geometric means. ns = non-significant.

NK cells (median = 0.15% for whole blood, 0.4% for frozen PBMCs, $p < 0.01$) and $CD3^+$ NK cells (median = 2.4% for whole blood, 4.3% for frozen PBMCs, $p < 0.001$) were significantly enriched in frozen PBMC samples (**Figures 5G,H**).

We also observed significant change in FcγR expression levels when comparing whole blood to frozen PBMCs. Significant reductions in FcγRIIb on B cells (median = 2,904 for whole blood, 2115 for frozen PBMCs, $p < 0.01$ **Figure 6A**) and FcγRIIIa (median = 4,618 for whole blood, 3,144 for frozen PBMCs, $p < 0.05$, **Figure 6B**) on NK cells were observed in frozen PBMCs compared to whole blood. FcγRI expression remained constant whereas FcγRIIa was significantly upregulated on classical monocytes in frozen PBMCs (median = 327 for whole blood, 1,124 for frozen PBMCs, $p < 0.0001$, **Figure 6C**). FcγRIIa (median = 701 for whole blood, 2,167 for frozen PBMCs, $p < 0.0001$) and FcγRIIb (median = 264 for whole blood, 733 for frozen PBMCs, $p < 0.01$) expression levels were both significantly upregulated on non-classical monocytes (**Figures 6D,E**) in frozen PBMCs, whereas FcγRIIIa expression levels remained unaltered (**Figure 6G**). Granulocytes (present only in whole blood), did not express FcγRI and FcγRIIb, but did express low levels of FcγRIIa and high, but variable levels of FcγRIIIB (**Figure 6H**).

FcγR expression on freeze-thawed PBMCs was also assessed pre- and post-HD culture. As previously reported (10), FcγRI expression on monocytes was not significantly altered (**Supplementary Figure 4A**). In contrast FcγRIIb was markedly

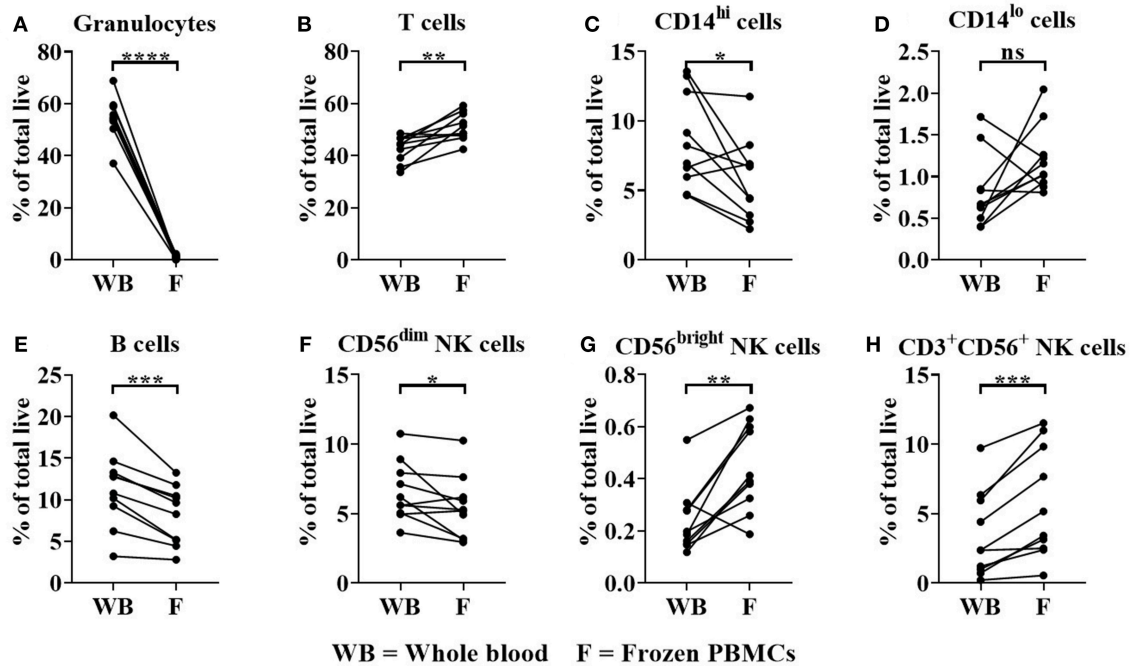


FIGURE 5 | Immune cell subset frequencies in donor matched whole blood (WB) and frozen (F) PBMC samples. Immune cell subset frequencies were quantified in donor matched whole blood, fresh and frozen PBMCs using flow cytometry. Immune cell frequencies were quantified as % of total live/single cells **(A)** % Granulocytes, **(B)** T cells, **(C)** $CD14^{hi}$ monocytes, **(D)** $CD14^{lo}$ monocytes, **(E)** B cells, **(F)** $CD3^{-}CD56^{dim}$, **(G)** $CD3^{-}CD56^{bright}$, and **(H)** $CD3^{+}CD56^{+}$ NK cells of total live/single cells. Each point represents a donor, bars represent group means, ($n = 10$). *$p < 0.05$, **$p < 0.01$ ***$p < 0.001$ and ****$p < 0.0001$ and ns = non-significant.

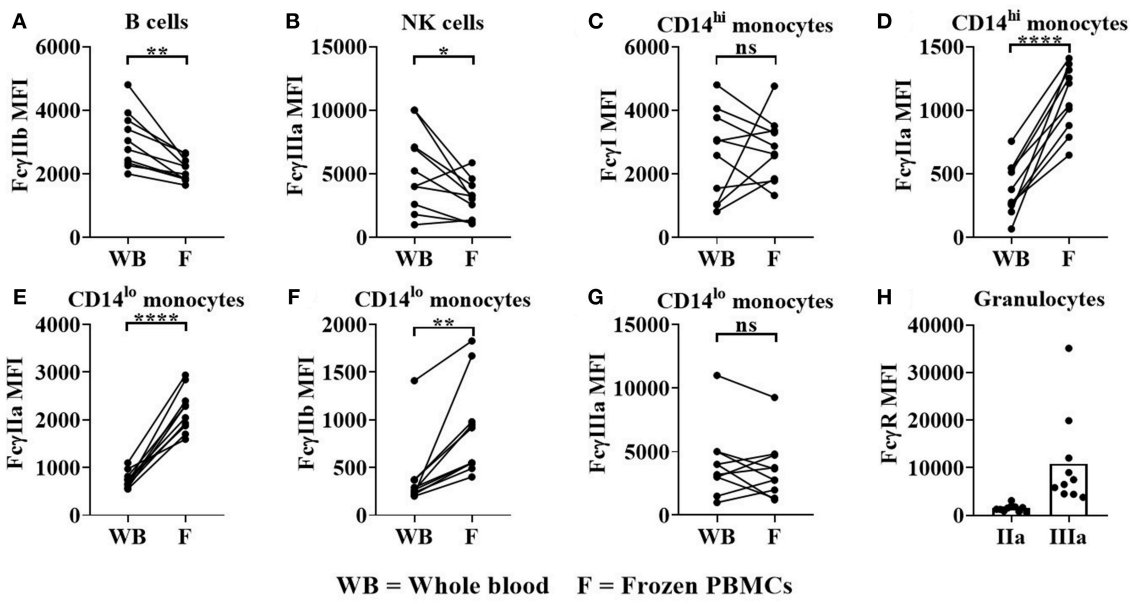


FIGURE 6 | FcγR expression in donor matched whole blood (WB) and frozen (F) PBMCs. Using flow cytometry, FcγR expression was quantified on **(A)** B cells **(B)** NK cells, **(C,D)** classical monocytes, **(E–G)** non-classical monocytes and **(H)** granulocytes in donor matched WB and frozen PBMC samples. FcγRIIa (IIa) and FcγRIIIa (IIIa) expression on granulocytes was quantified in WB only. Each point represents a donor, bars represent group means, ($n = 10$). *$p < 0.05$, **$p < 0.01$, ****$p <$ 0.0001 and ns = non-significant.

increased (100-fold increase post-HD culture, $p < 0.01$), whereas increases in FcγRIIa (0.75-fold increase, $p < 0.05$) and FcγRIIIa (3-fold increase, $p < 0.05$) were less pronounced (**Supplementary Figures 4B–D**). FcγRIIb expression on B cells (**Supplementary Figure 4E**) and FcγRIIIa expression on NK cells were also not significantly modified in freeze-thawed PBMCs after HD culture (**Supplementary Figure 4F**).

These effects of freeze-thawing on FcγR expression and NK cell/monocyte frequencies in PBMC samples prompted us to re-assess the IFN-γ response of those therapeutics which induce cytokine release via Fc:FcγR interactions, using a whole blood assay format.

FcγR Polymorphisms Determine the Magnitude of mAb Dependent IFN-γ Secretion in a Whole Blood Assay Format

To determine whether the impact of FcγR polymorphisms on IFN-γ release in response to Campath stimulation (an effect largely mediated by Fc:FcγR interactions) can be assessed *in vitro*, we utilized the whole blood assay format and samples from 88 UCB cohort donors. Furthermore, to restrict ourselves solely to Fc:FcγR effects, without a bias from the target receptor (e.g., CD52) we also stimulated these whole blood samples with an IgG1 Fc hexamer, which is a recombinant human IgG1 Fc construct generated by fusing the human IgG1 Fc domain to the tail-piece domain of human IgM (28). The IgG1 Fc hexamer was designed as a high-avidity FcγR blocking agent, but was demonstrated to induce high levels of pro-inflammatory cytokine release in whole blood *in vitro* assays, but not PBMC assays via a mechanism dependent on the presence of neutrophils and interactions with FcγRIIa and FcγRIIIb (29). We used this IgG1 Fc Hexamer here as a target receptor-independent mimic for ordered immune complexes which may form after mAb infusion and pose a CRS risk.

IFN-γ responses to Campath (median = 4,051 pg/ml) and the IgG1 Fc hexamer (5,588 pg/mL, $p < 0.001$) for both reagents were significantly stronger than PBS-treated controls, (11.72 pg/ml, **Supplementary Figure 5A**). Furthermore, there was a significant correlation ($R^2 = 0.53$, $p < 0.0001$) of IFN-γ release between Campath and IgG1 Fc Hexamer treatment (**Supplementary Figure 5B**). Longitudinal assessment of IFN-γ release over a period of four months using repeat whole blood samples from nine heathy donors, in five separate assays, revealed stable responses from all donors to Campath and IgG1 Fc hexamer stimulation (**Supplementary Figures 6A,B**)—again indicating a stable donor-specific response profile, with potential value as a prognostic test.

This assay format revealed that donors homozygous for the high-affinity *FCGR2A*-131H allele mounted significantly stronger IFN-γ responses to Campath (median = 5,273 pg/mL), than individuals homozygous for the low IgG affinity *FCGR2A*-131R allele (median = 2,788 pg/mL, $p < 0.01$ when comparing HH individuals with RR individuals, **Figure 7A**). Heterozygous individuals (RH) elicited intermediate responses (median = 3,331 pg/mL, $p < 0.05$ when comparing HH individuals with RH individuals, **Figure 7A**). There were no statistically significant differences in IFN-γ release, between the high affinity homozygous *FCGR3A*-158V allele, heterozygous VF and homozygous *FCGR3A*-158F low IgG affinity donors, in response to Campath stimulation. However, this may have been due to the low numbers of donors homozygous for the high affinity *FCGR3A*-158V allele in our cohort (median; VV = 6,005 pg/mL, VF = 3,847 pg/mL and FF = 2,869 pg/mL, $p = 0.26$ when comparing VV vs. FF donor responses, **Figure 7B**). Significantly greater IFN-γ release was observed in response to Campath stimulation amongst donors homozygous for both high affinity *FCGR2A*-131H and *FCGR3A*-158V SNPs (median = 9204 pg/mL) in comparison to donors homozygous for the low IgG affinity *FCGR2A*-131R and *FCGR3A*-158F alleles (median = 2,684 pg/mL, $p < 0.05$, **Figure 7C**). When comparing *FCGR2C*-57Q SNP-carrying donors, who are predicted to express this additional activatory FcγR on NK cells, with *FCGR2C*-57X homozygous donors who are FcγRIIc negative, no significant associations with IFN-γ release were observed ($p = 0.34$, when comparing QQ/QX with XX donors, **Figure 7D**). Furthermore, no significant associations between the *FCGR3B* and *FCGR2B* SNPs and Campath induced IFN-γ release were revealed using this assay format (**Figures 7E,F**).

For the IgG1 Fc hexamer, *FCGR2A*-131H homozygous high affinity donors mounted significantly stronger IFN-γ responses (median = 7,867 pg/mL) when compared to *FCGR2A*-131R low affinity homozygous donors (median = 3,470 pg/mL, $p < 0.05$). The *FCGR2A*-131RH heterozygous donors mounted an intermediate response (median = 5,066 pg/mL, **Figure 8A**). There were no statistically significant differences in IFN-γ release between the homozygous high affinity *FCGR3A*-158V allele, heterozygous VF and homozygous *FCGR3A*-158F low IgG affinity donors, in response to IgG1 Fc Hexamer stimulation. (median IFN-γ responses (pg/mL); VV = 7441, VF = 5,066 and FF = 5,443.14, **Figure 8B**). IFN-γ release in response to IgG1 Fc hexamer amongst donors homozygous for both the high affinity *FCGR2A*-131H and *FCGR3A*-158V alleles were significantly elevated compared to donors homozygous for the low IgG affinity alleles (median for HH/VV = 9,472 and RR/FF = 4,324 pg/mL, $p < 0.05$, **Figure 8C**). No significant associations between the *FCGR2C*, *FCGR3B* and *FCGR2B* SNPs and IgG1 Fc hexamer induced IFN-γ release were observed using this assay format (**Figures 8D–F**). Assessing the effects of *FCGR3A*, *FCGR2C,* and *FCGR3B* gene CNV with FcγR expression on immune cells or mAb mediated cytokine release was not possible in the current study due to the limited size of donor cohorts and relative rarity of gene CNV >2.

Finally, we stimulated matched whole blood and precultured freeze-thawed PBMC cultures with OKT3, TGN1412, Campath and the IgG1 Fc Hexamer, to directly compare both assay formats and modified IFN-γ release amongst five high IgG affinity *FCGR2A*-131H homozygous donors compared to five low IgG affinity *FCGR2A*-131R homozygous donors. A trend toward increased IFN-γ release was observed in the *FCGR2A*-131H homozygous donors. However, with such small donor numbers a clear statistically significant relationship could not be confirmed using either assay format (data not shown). Altogether, these results demonstrate the importance of donor assay format and

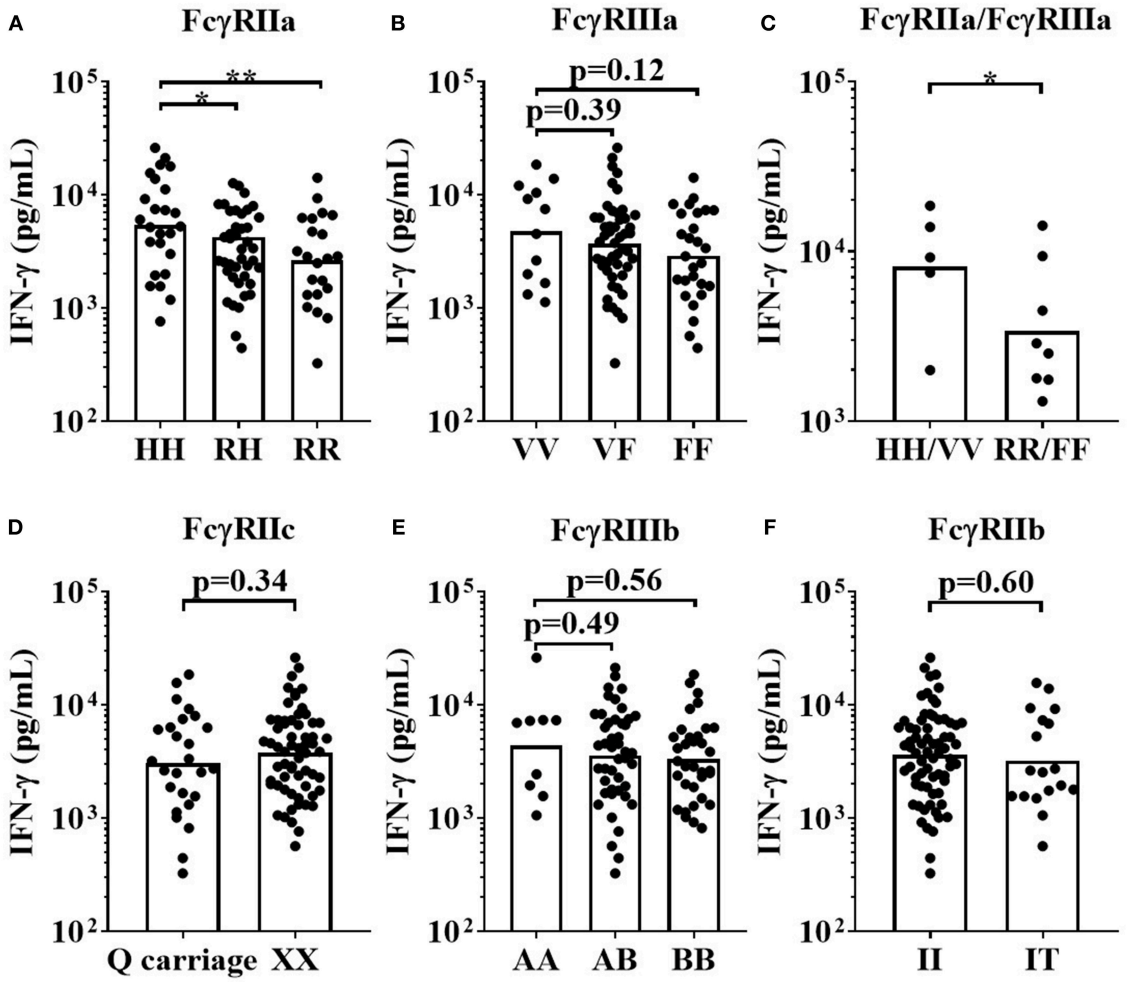


FIGURE 7 | Impact of FcγR polymorphisms on Campath induced IFN-γ release in a whole blood assay format. Healthy donors were grouped by **(A)** FcγRIIa polymorphisms; HH ($n = 25$), RH ($n = 41$) and RR ($n = 22$), **(B)** FcγRIIIa polymorphisms; VV ($n = 12$), FV ($n = 49$) and FF ($n = 27$), **(C)** high affinity FcγR polymorphisms HH/VV ($n = 5$) and low affinity FcγR polymorphisms RR/FF ($n = 8$), **(D)** FcγRIIc polymorphisms; Q carriage ($n = 26$) and XX ($n = 62$), **(E)** FcγRIIIb polymorphisms; AA ($n = 9$), AB ($n = 45$) and BB ($n = 34$) and **(F)** FcγRIIb polymorphisms; II ($n = 70$) and IT ($n = 18$). Whole blood from each donor was stimulated with Campath and IFN-γ release was quantified 24 h post-stimulation. Each point represents a donor, bars represent group geometric means. $^*p < 0.05$ and $^{**}p < 0.01$.

sufficient sample numbers when determining the impact of *FCGR2A* and *FCGR3A* polymorphisms on the magnitude of the IFN-γ response elicited by antibodies and IgG constructs with CRS-inducing potential.

DISCUSSION

Beyond their effects resulting from specific binding of cell surface antigens, mAb possess additional biological activity mediated through their Fc:FcγR interactions which are typically critical for efficacious antibody immunotherapy in patients. mAb interactions with FcγRIIa and FcγRIIIa mediate antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) and antibody dependent cellular phagocytosis (ADCP) by tumor targeting mAb such as Rituximab, Herceptin and Campath. SNPs in *FCGR2A* and *FCGR3A* genes influencing mAb affinity for FcγR have previously been shown to modify antibody immunotherapy in cancer patients (32). Here we report that whole blood assays are potentially more sensitive for hazard identification of mAb mediated cytokine release, as well as the assessment of the impact of *FCGR2A* and *FCGR3A* SNPs on the magnitude of this cytokine release *in vitro*.

MLPA remains the current gold standard assay for comprehensive FcγR genotyping. Using PBMC samples from healthy donors, we observed considerable variability across the FcγR locus in the form of SNPs and CNV, with homology between FcγR genes further complicating analysis as a result of the ancestral segmental duplication (33, 34). SNP frequencies described in this study are in line with others (35, 36) and while the reported SNP frequencies are within Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium, it is not optimized for loci with

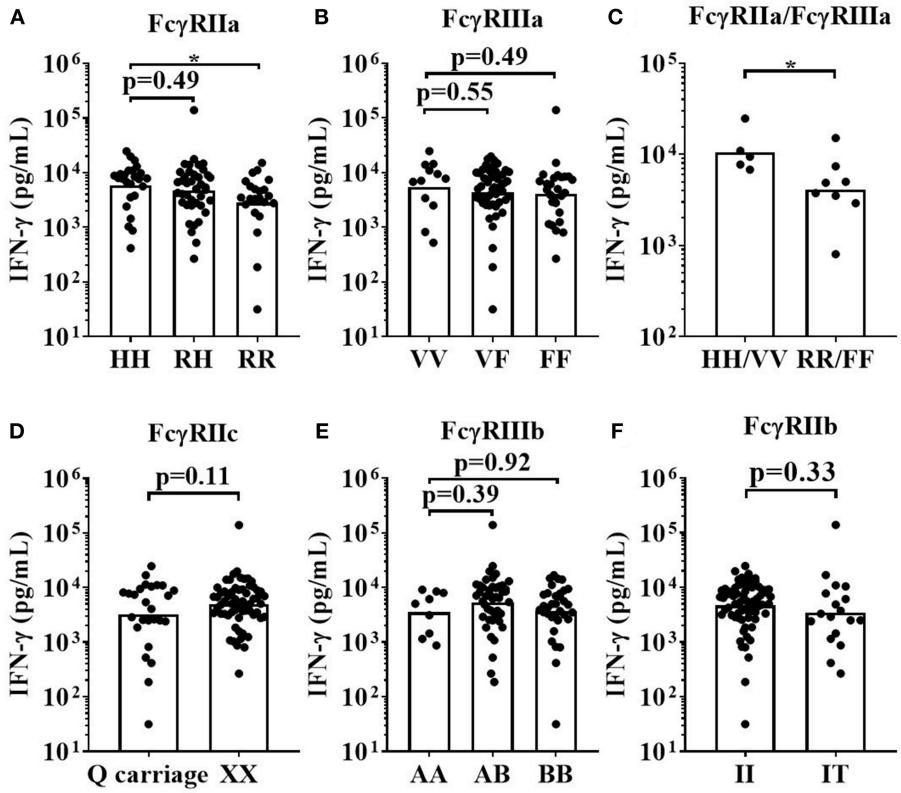


FIGURE 8 | Impact of FcγR polymorphisms on IFN-γ release induced by IgG1 Fc Hexamer stimulation in a whole blood assay format. Healthy donors were grouped by; **(A)** FcγRIIa polymorphisms; HH ($n = 25$), R/H ($n = 41$), and RR ($n = 22$), **(B)** FcγRIIIa polymorphisms; VV ($n = 12$), FV ($n = 49$) and FF ($n = 27$), **(C)** high affinity FcγR polymorphisms HH/VV ($n = 5$) and low affinity FcγR polymorphisms RR/FF ($n = 8$), **(D)** FcγRIIc polymorphisms; Q carriage ($n = 26$) and XX ($n = 62$), **(E)** FcγRIIIb polymorphisms; AA ($n = 9$), AB ($n = 45$) and BB ($n = 34$) and **(F)** FcγRIIb polymorphisms; II ($n = 70$) and IT ($n = 18$). Whole blood from each donor was stimulated with IgG1 Fc Hexamer and IFN-γ release was quantified 24 h post-stimulation. Each point represents a donor, bars represent group geometric means. *$p < 0.05$.

CNV. CNV represents a significant source of genetic diversity and can affect the function of FcγR gene products. Alterations in copy number of FcγR genes have reported gene dosage effects on protein expression (27, 37). CNV has been described in *FCGR3A*, *FCGR2C,* and *FCGR3B* (30, 35, 37), with rare events reported to affect *FCGR2B* (34). Regions of copy number alteration, CNR1-4, encompassing multiple genes in the locus have been described (17). As previously described (17, 35), CNV of *FCGR3A* is rare (3.6% of individuals), with alterations affecting *FCGR2C* and *FCGR3A* the most common CNV events. To date, these CNV have not been associated with mAb-mediated effects in the clinic, perhaps due to their relative rarity, leading to insufficient statistical power. Similar deficiencies were observed here in our study, with several 100 donors being required to study the impacts of CNV comprehensively. While many studies have reported associations between the high affinity *FCGR2A* and *FCGR3A* alleles and greater mAb efficacy in numerous cancers (20, 23), others have not observed such associations (38, 39), perhaps due to differing and complex biological backgrounds. We postulated that FcγR genotypes may correlate with *in vitro* IFN-γ responses to mAb stimulation and further enable prediction of CRS risk in the clinic.

In recent years, the limited value of rodent models for predicting treatment responses in humans set in motion intensive research to establish *in vitro* assays using human PBMCs; for example to predict the magnitude of cytokine release induced by therapeutic mAb (40). Assessment of mAb function and toxicity *in vitro* often utilizes banked frozen PBMC samples in both commercial pharmaceutical and academic settings. We previously used a PBMC-based assay format in which freeze-thawed PBMCs are first cultured at high density prior to stimulation with mAb. The high density preculture step promotes PBMC sensitivity to TGN1412 which otherwise elicits no immune cell activation in fresh untouched PBMC cultures (8, 10). Thus using this assay format which allows for the assessment of a CRS-inducing mAb (TGN1412), we sought to determine the impact of FcγR SNPs on mAb-induced cytokine release. Although assays were reproducible and stable per donor over time (indicating an inherent factor underpinning the level of response), no significant impact of *FCGR2A*, *FCGR2C,* or *FCGR3A* polymorphisms was observed with any mAb with respect to the magnitude of cytokine release (**Figure 4**). Larger cohorts would be required to accurately study the impact of CNV at the low-affinity locus given the low-frequency of events

in *FCGR3A*, for example, whose gene product, FcγRIIIa, is an important mediator of NK cell-mediated ADCC.

This prompted a detailed comparison of immune cell subset frequencies and FcγR expression in whole blood and previously frozen PBMC samples. Significant reductions in monocytes, NK cells ($CD3^{-}CD56^{dim}$ cells) and FcγRIIIa expression on the latter were observed in freeze-thawed PBMCs relative to whole blood (**Figures 5C,F**, **6B**). These observations were in concordance with previous studies reporting reduction in FcγRIIIa positive NK cells in freeze-thawed PBMC samples (41). In addition, FcγRIIa expression was significantly increased on monocytes in PBMC samples (**Figures 6D,E**), however, monocyte frequencies were reduced (**Figure 5C**), further impacting the likelihood of observing any *FCGR2A* SNP association with mAb-mediated cytokine release. The absence of FcγR-bearing neutrophils, platelets, donor IgG and complement proteins from serum in PBMC samples further justifies the utility of whole blood assays when determining the effects of FcγR SNPs on mAb-mediated cytokine release.

In the current study minimally diluted whole blood (95% blood / 5% mAb diluent) combined with aqueous mAb presentation was shown to be a useful and promising format, with only minimal sample and mAb manipulation aiming to preserve the natural peripheral blood molecular and cellular composition. We used this system to test Campath which binds CD52, a cell surface membrane antigen abundantly expressed on the surface of B cells, T cells, and monocytes (42). Campath triggering of FcγRIIIa on NK cells directly leads to IFN-γ release (12). We also tested an IgG1 Fc Hexamer construct which interacts with FcγRs, not target antigen. We have previously reported that cytokine release associated with this construct is primarily via interaction with FcγRIIa and FcγRIIIb and dependent on the presence of neutrophils (28, 29). Thus, both Campath and the IgG1 Fc Hexamer were suitable candidates for the assessment of the impact of FcγR SNPs on cytokine release in this assay format.

FcγRIIa is a monomeric receptor possessing an ITAM in its intracellular domain. It is the most broadly distributed FcγR, being expressed on monocytes, macrophages, platelets, and neutrophils and also in a soluble form (FcγRIIa2), (43). Our quantification of FcγRIIa expression in whole blood confirmed expression is restricted to monocytes and neutrophils (**Figure 6**). IgG triggering of FcγRIIa-mediated ITAM signaling results in cellular activation, phagocytosis, oxidative burst and the production of pro-inflammatory cytokines by monocytes and neutrophils (44). In whole blood, we observed a significantly elevated IFN-γ release in response to Campath and IgG1 Fc Hexamer stimulation amongst *FCGR2A*-131H/H donors compared to R/R donors. As Campath primarily stimulates cytokine release by triggering FcγRIIIa on NK cells (12), it was unexpected to observe a significant association with the *FCGR2A*-131H allele (**Figure 7A**). This enhanced IFN-γ release amongst the *FCGR2A*-131H homozygous donors may therefore be an indirect consequence of Campath triggered FcγRIIa activation on monocytes and neutrophils leading to pro-inflammatory cytokine release in these cell types, that then activates NK cells to secrete IFN-γ (45). We have previously demonstrated that the IgG1 Fc hexamer stimulates IFN-γ production in whole blood in a neutrophil-dependent manner, in contrast to the response to Campath which was not affected by depletion of neutrophils from whole blood (29). Isolated neutrophils have also been shown to be capable of producing pro-inflammatory cytokines (29, 46) and TLR-independent neutrophil-derived IFN-γ is important for host resistance to intracellular pathogens (28), emphasizing the importance of maintaining the presence of these FcγR bearing cells in *in vitro* cytokine release assays, especially when testing reagents with the potential to form immune complexes. Neutrophils express both FcγRIIa and FcγRIIIb and this study, along with our previous data, suggests both receptors are important in this immune-complex induced cytokine response and that polymorphisms in FcγRIIa in particular may modulate this. This is in agreement with earlier studies indicating a complex interplay between FcγRIIa and FcγRIIIb haplotype and sensitivity of neutrophils to IgG-induced respiratory burst (47).

FcγRIIIa is a type I transmembrane receptor and signals via its association with the ITAM-expressing FcRγ chain, encoded by the *FCER1G* gene (48). In whole peripheral blood its expression is largely restricted to $CD3^{-}CD56^{dim}$ NK cells, and non-classical monocytes (**Figures 6B,C**). Additionally, FcγRIIIa is also abundantly expressed on macrophages (not present in whole blood) as well as on tumor-associated macrophages (49). FcγRIIIa has been reported to be the most potent activating receptor on freshly isolated peripheral blood NK cells, able to elicit potent ADCC and cytokine production in response to Campath treatment (50). Although not significant, we observed enhanced IFN-γ responses to Campath and IgG1 Fc hexamer stimulated whole blood cultures sourced FCGR3A-158V/V donors relative to *FCGR3A*-158V/F and *FCGR3A*-158F/F donors. Given the lower frequency of the *FCGR3A*-158V/V genotype in Western European populations (<10%), large sample size is essential for these studies to achieve statistically significant associations with mAb mediated cytokine release. In the current study only 12/88 donors (UCB cohort) possessed the *FCGR3A*-158V/V genotype, likely explaining the lack of statistical significance.

In the whole blood assay format, mAb-mediated effector functions are profoundly influenced by simultaneous mAb interactions with FcγRIIa, FcγRIIIa, FcγRIIb, and FcγRIIIb. To partially address the impact of IgG Fc interaction with more than one FcγR species, we analyzed a subset of donors homozygous for high or low affinity *FCGR2A*-131 and *FCGR3A*-158 alleles. The HH/VV donors had a 4-fold higher IFN-γ response to Campath and a 2-fold higher response to IgG1 Fc Hexamer, in comparison to the RR/FF donors. Encouragingly, these significant differences were observed with a relatively low number of donors and were again stable over time (indicating a stable donor-specific response profile), with potential value for development of prognostic tests. However, greater donor numbers are required for sufficient statistical powering for other associations, especially when also taking into account the low frequency of certain SNPs and large variability of cytokine responses to mAb stimulation of whole blood cultures. Based upon power calculations on our data to date, we recommend ≥20 donors for each FcγR SNP for assessing associations of FcγR genotype with mAb-mediated

cytokine release hazard identification. This gives more than 80% power to detect a 3-fold difference between groups, using the whole blood IFN-γ release assay (**Supplementary Figure 7**).

Using the whole blood assay format, we did not observe statistically significant associations between *FCGR2C*, *FCGR2B,* or *FCGR3B* SNPs with the magnitude of Campath or IgG1 Fc hexamer-mediated cytokine release. FcγRIIc expression has been reported on NK cells, however, using flow cytometry we observed negligible or no FcγRIIc expression on NK cells, in >100 PBMC or whole blood samples (manuscript in preparation). This may explain the lack of significant association of *FCGR2C* SNPs with the magnitude of cytokine release. In whole blood samples, FcγRIIb expression is almost entirely restricted to B cells, which are unlikely to contribute to Campath or IgG1 Fc Hexamer induced IFN-γ release. Furthermore, it is worth recollecting that FcγRIIb is an ITIM-signaling inhibitory receptor, more likely to restrict cytokine release mediated by ITAM signaling on cell types co-expressing activatory and inhibitory FcγR. In addition, the I232T *FCGR2B* SNP leading to lack of inhibitory signaling, is extremely rare in Caucasian populations and so would require an extremely large cohort to study (26). Although FcγRIIIb has been reported to play a role in IgG1 Fc Hexamer induced cytokine release (29), we observed large variability in the expression levels of this receptor on neutrophils (MFI range 3771-35100) between donor samples. This may have compromised observing significant associations of *FCGR3B* SNPs with the extent of cytokine release in the IgG1 Fc Hexamer treated samples.

In summary, while there is considerable variability in the magnitude of cytokine responses elicited by cytokine storm-inducing IgG1 antibodies and Fc constructs in the whole blood assay format, key cell populations such as NK cells, monocytes and neutrophils remain intact and express FcγR at physiological levels. Our findings suggest that high-throughput genotyping combined with whole blood assays may be a powerful pharmacogenetic approach to predict both mAb therapy outcome and hazard identification but requires sufficient donors of each FcγR genotype if these associations are sought.

AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

KH, CH, TR, KL, and JMS performed experiments. KH, CH, and JS performed statistical analyses. KH, CH, TR, MG, JCS, and MC designed experiments. KH and CH wrote the manuscript with contributions from TR, DH, and MC. All authors contributed to manuscript revision and read and approved the submitted version.

FUNDING

This work was supported by an NC3R CRACKIT grant awarded to MG (Award number: NC3Rs 15402-106217), a CRUK programme grant awarded to MC (Award number: A24721) and a BBSRC iCASE studentship to DH and MC (Award number: BB/N5039927/1).

SUPPLEMENTARY MATERIAL

The Supplementary Material for this article can be found online at: https://www.frontiersin.org/articles/10.3389/fimmu.2019.00390/full#supplementary-material

REFERENCES

1. Glennie MJ, French RR, Cragg MS, Taylor RP. Mechanisms of killing by anti-CD20 monoclonal antibodies. *Mol Immunol.* (2007) 44:3823–37. doi: 10.1016/j.molimm.2007.06.151
2. Lee CS, Cragg M, Glennie M, Johnson P. Novel antibodies targeting immune regulatory checkpoints for cancer therapy. *Br J Clin Pharmacol.* (2013) 76:233–47. doi: 10.1111/bcp.12164
3. Lee DW, Gardner R, Porter DL, Louis CU, Ahmed N, Jensen M, et al. Current concepts in the diagnosis and management of cytokine release syndrome. *Blood*. (2014) 124:188–95. doi: 10.1182/blood-2014-05-552729
4. Coles AJ, Wing MG, Molyneux P, Paolillo A, Davie CM, Hale G, et al. Monoclonal antibody treatment exposes three mechanisms underlying the clinical course of multiple sclerosis. *Ann Neurol.* (1999) 46:296–304. doi: 10.1002/1531-8249(199909)46:3<296::AID-ANA4>3.0.CO;2-#
5. Norman DJ, Vincenti F, de Mattos AM, Barry JM, Levitt DJ, Wedel NI, et al. Phase I trial of HuM291, a humanized anti-CD3 antibody, in patients receiving renal allografts from living donors. *Transplantation.* (2000) 70:1707–12. doi: 10.1097/00007890-200012270-00008
6. Suntharalingam G, Perry MR, Ward S, Brett SJ, Castello-Cortes A, Brunner MD, et al. Cytokine storm in a phase 1 trial of the anti-CD28 monoclonal antibody TGN1412. *N Engl J Med.* (2006) 355:1018–28. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa063842
7. Stebbings R, Poole S, Thorpe R. Safety of biologics, lessons learnt from TGN1412. *Curr Opin Biotechnol*. (2009) 20:673–7. doi: 10.1016/j.copbio.2009.10.002
8. Romer PS, Berr S, Avota E, Na SY, Battaglia M, ten Berge I, et al. Preculture of PBMCs at high cell density increases sensitivity of T-cell responses, revealing cytokine release by CD28 superagonist TGN1412. *Blood*. (2011) 118:6772–82. doi: 10.1182/blood-2010-12-319780
9. Bartholomaeus P, Semmler LY, Bukur T, Boisguerin V, Romer PS, Tabares P, et al. Cell contact-dependent priming and Fc interaction with CD32+ immune cells contribute to the TGN1412-triggered cytokine response. *J Immunol.* (2014) 192:2091–8. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1302461
10. Hussain K, Hargreaves CE, Roghanian A, Oldham RJ, Chan HT, Mockridge CI, et al. Upregulation of FcgammaRIIb on monocytes is necessary to promote the superagonist activity of TGN1412. *Blood*. (2015) 125:102–10. doi: 10.1182/blood-2014-08-593061
11. Nimmerjahn F. Translating inhibitory fc receptor biology into novel therapeutic approaches. *J Clin Immunol.* (2016) 36 (Suppl. 1):83–7. doi: 10.1007/s10875-016-0249-6
12. Wing MG, Moreau T, Greenwood J, Smith RM, Hale G, Isaacs J, et al. Mechanism of first-dose cytokine-release syndrome by CAMPATH 1-H: involvement of CD16 (FcgammaRIII) and CD11a/CD18 (LFA-1) on NK cells. *J Clin Invest.* (1996) 98:2819–26. doi: 10.1172/JCI119110
13. White AL, Chan HT, Roghanian A, French RR, Mockridge CI, Tutt AL, et al. Interaction with FcgammaRIIB is critical for the agonistic activity of anti-CD40 monoclonal antibody. *J Immunol.* (2011) 187:1754–63. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1101135
14. Dahan R, Barnhart BC, Li F, Yamniuk AP, Korman AJ, Ravetch JV. Therapeutic activity of agonistic, human anti-CD40 monoclonal antibodies requires selective fcgammar engagement. *Cancer Cell*. (2016) 29:820–31. doi: 10.1016/j.ccell.2016.05.001
15. Arce Vargas F, Furness JS, Litchfield K, Joshi K, Rosenthal R, Ghorani E, et al. Fc Effector Function Contributes to the Activity of Human Anti-CTLA-4 Antibodies. *Cancer Cell*. (2018) 33:649–63 e4.

16. Hargreaves CE, Rose-Zerilli MJ, Machado LR, Iriyama C, Hollox EJ, Cragg MS, et al. Fcgamma receptors: genetic variation, function, and disease. *Immunol Rev*. (2015) 268:6–24. doi: 10.1111/imr.12341
17. Niederer HA, Willcocks LC, Rayner TF, Yang W, Lau YL, Williams TN, et al. Copy number, linkage disequilibrium and disease association in the FCGR locus. *Hum Mol Genet*. (2010) 19:3282–94. doi: 10.1093/hmg/ddq216
18. Bruhns P, Iannascoli B, England P, Mancardi DA, Fernandez N, Jorieux S, et al. Specificity and affinity of human Fcgamma receptors and their polymorphic variants for human IgG subclasses. *Blood*. (2009) 113:3716–25. doi: 10.1182/blood-2008-09-179754
19. Cartron G, Dacheux L, Salles G, Solal-Celigny P, Bardos P, Colombat P, et al. Therapeutic activity of humanized anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody and polymorphism in IgG Fc receptor FcgammaRIIIa gene. *Blood*. (2002) 99:754–8. doi: 10.1182/blood.V99.3.754
20. Zhang W, Gordon M, Schultheis AM, Yang DY, Nagashima F, Azuma M, et al. FCGR2A and FCGR3A polymorphisms associated with clinical outcome of epidermal growth factor receptor expressing metastatic colorectal cancer patients treated with single-agent cetuximab. *J Clin Oncol*. (2007) 25:3712–8. doi: 10.1200/JCO.2006.08.8021
21. Musolino A, Naldi N, Bortesi B, Pezzuolo D, Capelletti M, Missale G, et al. Immunoglobulin G fragment C receptor polymorphisms and clinical efficacy of trastuzumab-based therapy in patients with HER-2/neu-positive metastatic breast cancer. *J Clin Oncol*. (2008) 26:1789–96. doi: 10.1200/JCO.2007.14.8957
22. Calemma R, Ottaiano A, Trotta AM, Nasti G, Romano C, Napolitano M, et al. Fc gamma receptor IIIa polymorphisms in advanced colorectal cancer patients correlated with response to anti-EGFR antibodies and clinical outcome. *J Transl Med*. (2012) 10:232. doi: 10.1186/1479–5876-10–232
23. Persky DO, Dornan D, Goldman BH, Braziel RM, Fisher RI, Leblanc M, et al. Fc gamma receptor 3a genotype predicts overall survival in follicular lymphoma patients treated on SWOG trials with combined monoclonal antibody plus chemotherapy but not chemotherapy alone. *Haematologica*. (2012) 97:937–42. doi: 10.3324/haematol.2011.050419
24. Lee YH, Bae SC, Song GG. Functional FCGR3A 158 V/F and IL-6—174 C/G polymorphisms predict response to biologic therapy in patients with rheumatoid arthritis: a meta-analysis. *Rheumatol Int*. (2014) 34:1409–15. doi: 10.1007/s00296-014-3015-1
25. Tsang MW, Nagelkerke SQ, Bultink IE, Geissler J, Tanck MW, Tacke CE, et al. Fc-gamma receptor polymorphisms differentially influence susceptibility to systemic lupus erythematosus and lupus nephritis. *Rheumatology (Oxford)*. (2016) 55:939–48. doi: 10.1093/rheumatology/kev433
26. Floto RA, Clatworthy MR, Heilbronn KR, Rosner DR, MacAry PA, Rankin A, et al. Loss of function of a lupus-associated FcgammaRIIb polymorphism through exclusion from lipid rafts. *Nat Med*. (2005) 11:1056–8. doi: 10.1038/nm1288
27. Willcocks LC, Lyons PA, Clatworthy MR, Robinson JI, Yang W, Newland SA, et al. Copy number of FCGR3B, which is associated with systemic lupus erythematosus, correlates with protein expression and immune complex uptake. *J Exp Med*. (2008) 205:1573–82. doi: 10.1084/jem.20072413
28. Qureshi OS, Rowley TF, Junker F, Peters SJ, Crilly S, Compson J, et al. Multivalent Fcgamma-receptor engagement by a hexameric Fc-fusion protein triggers Fcgamma-receptor internalisation and modulation of Fcgamma-receptor functions. *Sci Rep*. (2017) 7:17049. doi: 10.1038/s41598-017-17255-8
29. Rowley TF, Peters SJ, Aylott M, Griffin R, Davies NL, Healy LJ, et al. Engineered hexavalent Fc proteins with enhanced Fc-gamma receptor avidity provide insights into immune-complex interactions. *Commun Biol*. (2018) 1:146. doi: 10.1038/s42003-018-0149-9
30. Hargreaves CE, Iriyama C, Rose-Zerilli MJ, Nagelkerke SQ, Hussain K, Ganderton R, et al. Correction: evaluation of high-throughput genomic assays for the Fc gamma receptor locus. *PLoS ONE*. (2016) 11:e0145040. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0145040
31. Tutt AL, James S, Laversin SA, Tipton TR, Ashton-Key M, French RR, et al. Development and characterization of monoclonal antibodies specific for mouse and human fcgamma receptors. *J Immunol*. (2015) 195:5503–16. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1402988
32. Kim DH, Jung HD, Kim JG, Lee JJ, Yang DH, Park YH, et al. FCGR3A gene polymorphisms may correlate with response to frontline R-CHOP therapy for diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. *Blood*. (2006) 108:2720–5. doi: 10.1182/blood-2006-01-009480
33. Machado LR, Hardwick RJ, Bowdrey J, Bogle H, Knowles TJ, Sironi M, et al. Evolutionary history of copy-number-variable locus for the low-affinity Fcgamma receptor: mutation rate, autoimmune disease, and the legacy of helminth infection. *Am J Hum Genet*. (2012) 90:973–85. doi: 10.1016/j.ajhg.2012.04.018
34. Nagelkerke SQ, Tacke CE, Breunis WB, Geissler J, Sins JW, Appelhof B, et al. Nonallelic homologous recombination of the FCGR2/3 locus results in copy number variation and novel chimeric FCGR2 genes with aberrant functional expression. *Genes Immun*. (2015) 16:422–9. doi: 10.1038/gene.2015.25
35. Breunis WB, van Mirre E, Bruin M, Geissler J, de Boer M, Peters M, et al. Copy number variation of the activating FCGR2C gene predisposes to idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura. *Blood*. (2008) 111:1029–38. doi: 10.1182/blood-2007-03-079913
36. Lassauniere R, Tiemessen CT. Variability at the FCGR locus: characterization in Black South Africans and evidence for ethnic variation in and out of Africa. *Genes Immun*. (2016) 17:93–104. doi: 10.1038/gene.2015.60
37. Breunis WB, van Mirre E, Geissler J, Laddach N, Wolbink G, van der Schoot E, et al. Copy number variation at the FCGR locus includes FCGR3A, FCGR2C and FCGR3B but not FCGR2A and FCGR2B. *Hum Mutat*. (2009) 30:E640–50. doi: 10.1002/humu.20997
38. Ghesquieres H, Cartron G, Seymour JF, Delfau-Larue MH, Offner F, Soubeyran P, et al. Clinical outcome of patients with follicular lymphoma receiving chemoimmunotherapy in the PRIMA study is not affected by FCGR3A and FCGR2A polymorphisms. *Blood*. (2012) 120:2650–7. doi: 10.1182/blood-2012–05-431825
39. Kenkre VP, Hong F, Cerhan JR, Lewis M, Sullivan L, Williams ME, et al. Fc Gamma Receptor 3A and 2A Polymorphisms Do Not Predict Response to Rituximab in Follicular Lymphoma. *Clin Cancer Res*. (2016) 22:821–6. doi: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-15-1848
40. Stebbings R, Findlay L, Edwards C, Eastwood D, Bird C, North D, et al. "Cytokine storm" in the phase I trial of monoclonal antibody TGN1412: better understanding the causes to improve preclinical testing of immunotherapeutics. *J Immunol*. (2007) 179:3325–31. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.179.5.3325
41. Mata MM, Mahmood F, Sowell RT, Baum LL. Effects of cryopreservation on effector cells for antibody dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) and natural killer (NK) cell activity in (51)Cr-release and CD107a assays. *J Immunol Methods*. (2014) 406:1–9. doi: 10.1016/j.jim.2014.01.017
42. Coles AJ, Twyman CL, Arnold DL, Cohen JA, Confavreux C, Fox EJ, et al. Alemtuzumab for patients with relapsing multiple sclerosis after disease-modifying therapy: a randomised controlled phase 3 trial. *Lancet*. (2012) 380:1829–39. doi: 10.1016/S0140-6736(12)61768-1
43. Bruhns P, Jonsson F. Mouse and human FcR effector functions. *Immunol Rev*. (2015) 268:25–51. doi: 10.1111/imr.12350
44. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Fcgamma receptors as regulators of immune responses. *Nat Rev Immunol*. (2008) 8:34–47. doi: 10.1038/nri2206
45. Sun JC, Madera S, Bezman NA, Beilke JN, Kaplan MH, Lanier LL. Proinflammatory cytokine signaling required for the generation of natural killer cell memory. *J Exp Med*. (2012) 209:947–54. doi: 10.1084/jem.20111760
46. Sturge CR, Benson A, Raetz M, Wilhelm CL, Mirpuri J, Vitetta ES, et al. TLR-independent neutrophil-derived IFN-gamma is important for host resistance to intracellular pathogens. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2013) 110:10711–6. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1307868110

47. van der Heijden J, Nagelkerke S, Zhao X, Geissler J, Rispens T, van den Berg TK, et al. Haplotypes of FcgammaRIIa and FcgammaRIIIb polymorphic variants influence IgG-mediated responses in neutrophils. *J Immunol.* (2014) 192:2715–21. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1203570
48. Mandelboim O, Malik P, Davis DM, Jo CH, Boyson JE, Strominger JL. Human CD16 as a lysis receptor mediating direct natural killer cell cytotoxicity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (1999) 96:5640–4. doi: 10.1073/pnas.96.10.5640
49. Grugan KD, McCabe FL, Kinder M, Greenplate AR, Harman BC, Ekert JE, et al. Tumor-associated macrophages promote invasion while retaining Fc-dependent anti-tumor function. *J Immunol.* (2012) 189:5457–66. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1201889
50. Bryceson YT, March ME, Ljunggren HG, Long EO. Synergy among receptors on resting NK cells for the activation of natural cytotoxicity and cytokine secretion. *Blood.* (2006) 107:159–66. doi: 10.1182/blood-2005–04-1351

Conflict of Interest Statement: MC is a retained consultant for BioInvent International and has performed educational and advisory roles for Baxalta and Boehringer Ingleheim. He has received research funding from Roche, Gilead and GSK. TR, PB, JS, RC, and DH are employees of UCB Pharma.

The remaining authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

REVIEW
published: 22 March 2019
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00548

Fc-Mediated Antibody Effector Functions During Respiratory Syncytial Virus Infection and Disease

Elisabeth A. van Erp[1,2,3], *Willem Luytjes*[1], *Gerben Ferwerda*[2,3] *and Puck B. van Kasteren*[1]*

[1] Centre for Infectious Disease Control, National Institute for Public Health and the Environment (RIVM), Bilthoven, Netherlands, [2] Section Pediatric Infectious Diseases, Laboratory of Medical Immunology, Radboud Institute for Molecular Life Sciences, Nijmegen, Netherlands, [3] Radboud Center for Infectious Diseases, Nijmegen, Netherlands

Respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) is a major cause of severe lower respiratory tract infections and hospitalization in infants under 1 year of age and there is currently no market-approved vaccine available. For protection against infection, young children mainly depend on their innate immune system and maternal antibodies. Traditionally, antibody-mediated protection against viral infections is thought to be mediated by direct binding of antibodies to viral particles, resulting in virus neutralization. However, in the case of RSV, virus neutralization titers do not provide an adequate correlate of protection. The current lack of understanding of the mechanisms by which antibodies can protect against RSV infection and disease or, alternatively, contribute to disease severity, hampers the design of safe and effective vaccines against this virus. Importantly, neutralization is only one of many mechanisms by which antibodies can interfere with viral infection. Antibodies consist of two structural regions: a variable fragment (Fab) that mediates antigen binding and a constant fragment (Fc) that mediates downstream effector functions via its interaction with Fc-receptors on (innate) immune cells or with C1q, the recognition molecule of the complement system. The interaction with Fc-receptors can lead to killing of virus-infected cells through a variety of immune effector mechanisms, including antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) and antibody-dependent cellular phagocytosis (ADCP). Antibody-mediated complement activation may lead to complement-dependent cytotoxicity (CDC). In addition, both Fc-receptor interactions and complement activation can exert a broad range of immunomodulatory functions. Recent studies have emphasized the importance of Fc-mediated antibody effector functions in both protection and pathogenesis for various infectious agents. In this review article, we aim to provide a comprehensive overview of the current knowledge on Fc-mediated antibody effector functions in the context of RSV infection, discuss their potential role in establishing the balance between protection and pathogenesis, and point out important gaps in our understanding of these processes. Furthermore, we elaborate on the regulation of these effector functions on both the cellular and humoral side. Finally, we discuss the implications of Fc-mediated antibody effector functions for the rational design of safe and effective vaccines and monoclonal antibody therapies against RSV.

Keywords: RSV, antibody, Fc gamma receptor, Fc-mediated effector functions, antibody functionality, ADCC, ADCP, vaccine

OPEN ACCESS

Edited by:
Guido Ferrari,
Duke University, United States

Reviewed by:
Stephen Kent,
The University of Melbourne, Australia
George Kenneth Lewis,
University of Maryland, United States

***Correspondence:**
Puck B. van Kasteren
puck.van.kasteren@rivm.nl

Specialty section:
This article was submitted to Comparative Immunology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology

Received: *26 October 2018*
Accepted: *28 February 2019*
Published: *22 March 2019*

Citation:
van Erp EA, Luytjes W, Ferwerda G and van Kasteren PB (2019) Fc-Mediated Antibody Effector Functions During Respiratory Syncytial Virus Infection and Disease. Front. Immunol. 10:548. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00548

INTRODUCTION

Respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) infection is a major cause of severe respiratory illness requiring hospitalization in young infants (1). Hospitalization for severe RSV-mediated disease peaks between 6 weeks and 6 months of life (2, 3), when infants mainly depend on their innate immune system and maternal antibodies for protection against infectious diseases. However, the exact role of RSV-specific maternal antibodies is unclear. Some studies show that high titers of maternal antibodies are associated with protection against RSV infection (4–6); whereas others indicate that high maternal antibody titers do not have a beneficial effect or even associate with an increased risk of recurrent wheezing (7–11). It is important to note that the antibody titers in these studies are determined by *in vitro* binding or neutralization assays, while additional antibody effector functions are not taken into account.

For nearly all licensed vaccines, antibodies are the presumed correlate of protection, but the underlying mechanisms of protection often remain unknown (12). Recent research suggests that, in addition to binding and neutralization, antibody effector functions are important contributors to protective immunity against several viruses, including influenza virus (13–15), HIV (16, 17), and Ebola virus (18, 19).

In contrast to their beneficial role in providing protection against infection and disease, antibodies have also been implicated in disease enhancement. For example, non-neutralizing dengue-specific antibodies have been shown to mediate antibody-dependent enhancement (ADE) of disease (20, 21). Interestingly, the 1960's formalin-inactivated (FI) RSV vaccine induced poorly-neutralizing antibodies which have been suggested to be involved in vaccine-enhanced disease upon natural infection (22–24). These examples illustrate the possibility that virus-specific antibodies contribute to pathogenesis when failing to protect.

Currently, the RSV field lacks a comprehensive overview of antibody effector functions in the context of RSV infection and disease. Here, we review what is known about various antibody effector functions during RSV infection, discuss their potential role in establishing the balance between protection and pathogenesis, and point out important gaps in our understanding of these processes. Moreover, we elaborate on the regulation of these effector functions on both the cellular and humoral side. Finally, we discuss the implications of antibody-mediated effector functions for the rational design of safe and effective vaccines and monoclonal antibody therapies against RSV. A thorough understanding of the role of antibodies in protection or disease during RSV infection is crucial for the development of new and improved vaccination strategies and may provide much-needed new insights into the precise mechanisms of antibody-mediated protective immunity.

FC-MEDIATED ANTIBODY EFFECTOR FUNCTIONS

Antibody effector functions are an important part of the humoral immune response and form an essential link between innate and adaptive immunity. Most of these effector functions are induced via the constant (Fc) region of the antibody, which can interact with complement proteins and specialized Fc-receptors. The latter can induce activating or inhibitory pathways, depending on the type of receptor, and are found on B cells and most innate immune cells in various combinations. The most well-known Fc-mediated antibody effector functions are antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC), antibody-dependent cellular phagocytosis (ADCP), and complement-dependent cytotoxicity (CDC). In addition, antibodies have been found to mediate inflammation and immunomodulation through the induction of cellular differentiation and activation. Each of these functions is described in detail below and a schematic overview is depicted in **Figure 1**.

ANTIBODY-DEPENDENT CELL-MEDIATED CYTOTOXICITY (ADCC)

ADCC is induced when Fc gamma receptors (FcγRs) on innate effector cells are engaged by the Fc domain of antibodies that are bound to viral proteins on the surface of virus-infected cells. This interaction induces the release of cytotoxic granules (containing perforins and granzymes) resulting in killing of infected cells (25). Multiple innate effector cells, including natural killer (NK) cells, neutrophils, monocytes, and macrophages, are capable of ADCC *in vitro*. However, the most important contributors to ADCC *in vivo* are thought to be NK cells, which express only FcγRIIIA. **Figure 2** shows a schematic representation of ADCC.

In the field of tumor immunology, ADCC has been recognized as an important mechanism of action for therapeutic monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) that target tumor cells [as reviewed by (26)]. For infectious diseases, ADCC only recently started to gain attention. ADCC has been shown to form a critical component of effective immunity against HIV and influenza virus. ADCC-inducing HIV-specific antibodies were identified as a key correlate of protection in the RV144 HIV vaccine trial (27–29). Moreover, HIV-infected individuals who control the virus without antiretroviral therapy demonstrated a broader polyfunctional humoral immune response including ADCC activity compared to viremic individuals (30–33). There has been much debate about the role of ADCC during influenza-induced disease. Some studies point to the protective capacity of ADCC-inducing antibodies (34, 35), whereas others do not show any role for NK cells in antibody-mediated protection (36), or even suggest involvement of ADCC in exaggeration of the immune response (37–39). For multiple other clinically important viral infections, including dengue virus and Ebola virus, research into the effect of ADCC is ongoing (40–42). Taken together, ADCC seems to be involved in the immune response against multiple viruses and is therefore potentially of interest in the context of RSV infection.

ADCC in RSV Infection

NK cells are the most important contributors to ADCC *in vivo* and important effector cells during RSV infection. In mice, increased numbers of NK cells are present in the lungs early after RSV infection (43–45). In RSV-infected infants, the

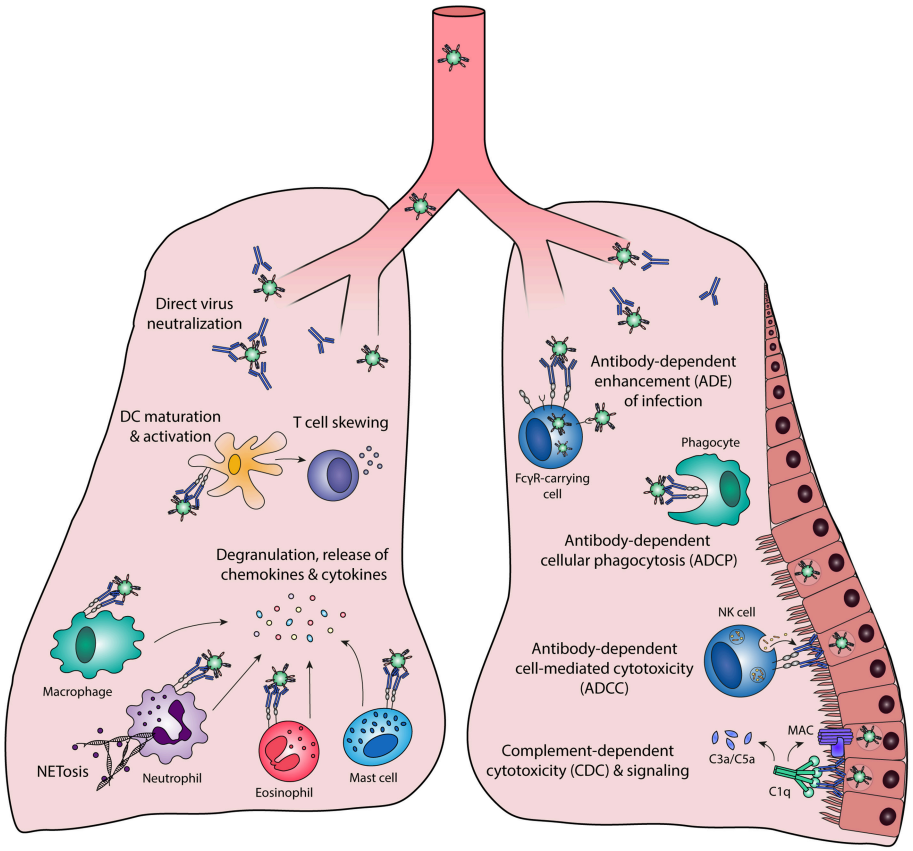


FIGURE 1 | Fc-mediated antibody effector functions. Antibodies elicit a wide range of effector functions during viral infections. These include but are not necessarily limited to the functions depicted in this figure. DC, dendritic cell; FcγR, Fc gamma receptor; MAC, membrane attack complex; NK cell, natural killer cell.

proportion of NK cells has been reported both to be decreased (46–49) or increased (50, 51) in comparison with healthy controls or infants with mild symptoms. Since maternally-derived antibodies are virtually always present during primary RSV infection and antibody-coated virus-infected cells are a trigger for ADCC, it can be assumed that ADCC occurs during primary RSV infection.

Although NK cells are thought to be the most important mediators of ADCC against virus-infected cells, this has never been shown for RSV. All studies mentioned below are performed with peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs), without distinction between different cell types. RSV-specific immunoglobulin G (IgG) has been shown to induce ADCC toward RSV-infected epithelial cells *in vitro* (52, 53). The major surface antigens of RSV are the fusion (F) and the attachment (G) protein which are both required for infectivity *in vivo*. The RSV F protein has two conformational states: post-fusion (post-F) and pre-fusion (pre-F), of which the latter is a potent target for neutralization (54). Multiple studies show that anti-RSV G antibodies are efficient inducers of ADCC *in vitro* (55, 56), and the involvement of this process in virus clearance *in vivo* has been proposed (57, 58). In contrast, anti-RSV F antibodies do not efficiently induce ADCC *in vitro* (55), although it must be noted that no distinction between pre- and post-F antibodies was made and the ADCC potential could differ between the two functional states of the F protein.

Antibodies from breast milk, cord blood, and nasopharyngeal secretions and serum from RSV-infected infants show ADCC activity *in vitro* (52, 53, 59). This shows that the antibodies that are present *in vivo* are capable of eliciting ADCC activity *in vitro*. Two studies showed that the level of ADCC activity measured *in vitro* was independent of clinical symptoms and age, suggesting that ADCC is not a determining factor in the varying clinical manifestations of primary RSV infection (53, 59). Interestingly, the ADCC capacity of serum antibodies from RSV-infected infants rapidly declines over time, whereas the neutralization capacity remains more stable. If ADCC is important in protection against infection, this decline could partly explain the susceptibility to repeated infections throughout life.

Limited evidence is present on the occurrence of ADCC during RSV infection *in vivo*. The most convincing data is provided by mouse studies performed with anti-RSV G protein-specific Fab- or $F(ab')_2$ fragments lacking the complete Fc domain, or aglycosylated antibodies lacking the glycosylation site

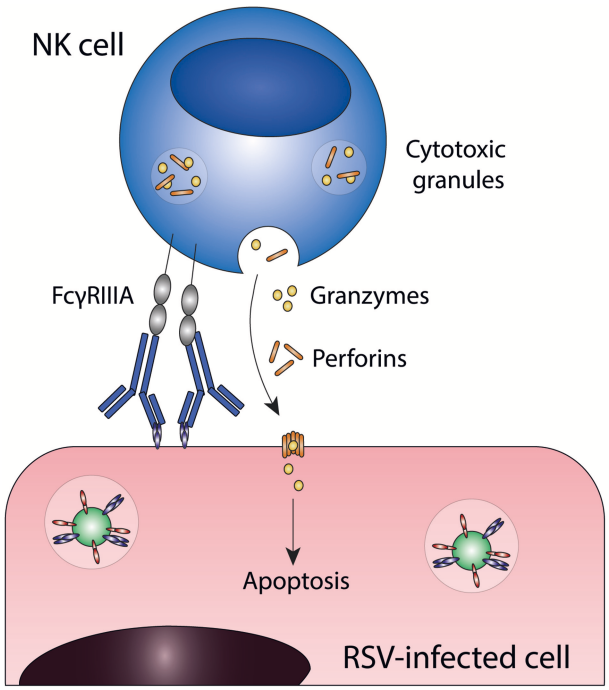


FIGURE 2 | Antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC). Fc gamma receptors present on for example natural killer (NK) cells engage antibody-bound infected cells and induce target cell death through the release of cytotoxic granules. FcγRIIIA, Fc gamma receptor IIIA; NK cell, natural killer cell; RSV, respiratory syncytial virus.

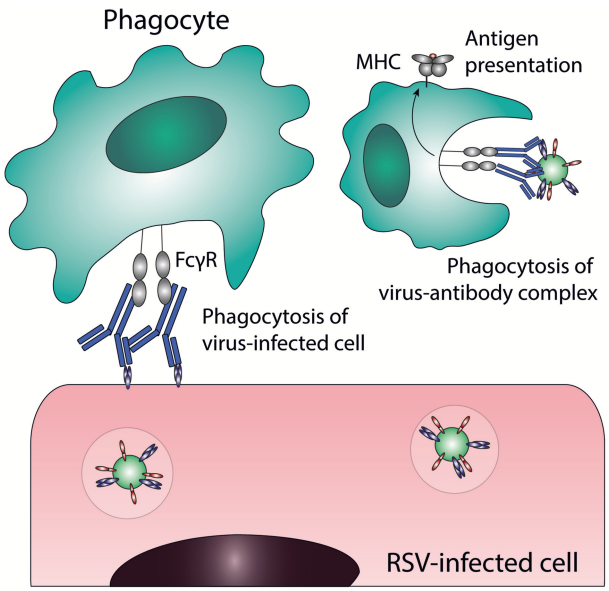


FIGURE 3 | Antibody-dependent cellular phagocytosis (ADCP). Phagocytes can clear virus-infected cells and immune complexes that are engaged by Fc gamma receptors through phagocytosis. Uptake of viral particles or proteins leads to antigen presentation, which induces the adaptive immune system. FcγR, Fc gamma receptor; MHC, major histocompatibility complex; RSV, respiratory syncytial virus.

that is required for efficient FcγR and complement interactions (58, 60, 61). It was shown that Fab fragments of the 1812A2B anti-RSV G antibody and $F(ab')_2$ fragments of the 131-2G anti-RSV G antibody do not reduce viral load, whereas the corresponding intact antibodies do confer protection (58, 60). The authors propose that virus clearance by the 131-2G antibody is mediated through ADCC, however, the involvement of other Fc-mediated effector functions in this study cannot be ruled out. In an attempt to ascertain the role of ADCC by NK cells in the protective mechanisms of the anti-RSV G antibody 18A2B2, SCID beige mice (which are deficient in NK cell activity) were passively immunized with the full antibody (60). In this study, the absence of NK cells had no effect on the protective capacity of 18A2B2, pointing to the involvement of other Fc effector functions. Further research is needed to study the exact role of ADCC for other mAbs and RSV-immune serum. Passive immunization with aglycosylated 1C2 anti-RSV G antibodies reduced virus titers significantly but were not as effective as wildtype antibodies, indicating that protection by the 1C2 antibody is mediated by both Fc-dependent and Fc-independent mechanisms (61). Although these studies highlight the importance of Fc-mediated antibody effector functions in protection against RSV infection in the case of these specific anti-RSV G mAbs, the role of ADCC in protection or pathogenesis during natural RSV infection remains to be determined.

ANTIBODY-DEPENDENT CELLULAR PHAGOCYTOSIS (ADCP)

ADCP or opsonophagocytosis is the uptake of virus-antibody complexes or antibody-coated virus-infected cells by phagocytic cells (for a schematic representation of this process see **Figure 3**). Phagocytic cells, including monocytes, macrophages, neutrophils, eosinophils and dendritic cells (DCs), express FcγRI, FcγRII, and FcαRI, which can all mediate immune complex uptake. The exact phagocytic capacity of effector leukocytes is dependent upon the cell type, differentiation stage, and level of FcγR expression. ADCP results in the clearance of immune complexes from the infected host, by trafficking of the complexes to lysosomes for degradation and antigen processing for presentation on Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC)-molecules on the cell surface. Interestingly, some viruses have exploited this mechanism to infect phagocytes by escaping from lysosomal degradation (described below in "Antibody-dependent enhancement of infection").

ADCP has been extensively described for its role in protection against bacteria, but its importance during viral infections is unclear. Some studies have been performed for influenza virus, showing that phagocytosis by (alveolar) macrophages may contribute to protection from infection in mice (36, 62) and potentially plays a role in the recovery from severe infections in humans (15, 63). Also for cytomegalovirus (CMV), it was shown that vaccine-induced antibodies play an important role in vaccine efficacy, independent of neutralization or ADCC capacity (64). In accordance with these results, a study by Nelson et al. showed no

role for neutralization or ADCC, while robust ADCP induction was observed (65). Antibody-mediated clearance by phagocytes *in vivo* has also been suggested for HIV (66, 67), adenovirus (68), West Nile Virus (WNV) (69), and foot-and-mouth disease virus (70, 71).

ADCP in RSV Infection

Phagocytosis of RSV-antibody complexes or RSV-infected cells has to our knowledge never been directly explored as a protective immune mechanism for RSV. *In vitro* studies show phagocytosis of RSV immune complexes by neutrophils (56, 72, 73) and eosinophils (74). Varying levels of phagocytic activity have been observed for different RSV-specific monoclonal antibodies, suggesting that ADCP activity depends on epitope and/or affinity (56, 73). An *in vivo* mouse study has shown that macrophages are essential in conferring antibody-mediated restriction of RSV replication, whereas neutrophil depletion did not significantly affect pulmonary viral replication (75). This suggests that Fc-mediated effector functions executed by macrophages rather than neutrophils are important in protection against RSV infection in a mouse model.

Besides the uptake of viral particles, phagocytosis initiates the activation of cells. This can result in the release of a broad range of effector molecules (72–74), which will be described in detail in "Antibody-dependent immunomodulation during RSV infection." Although there is limited evidence on the role of ADCP during RSV infection, the importance of macrophages in antibody-mediated protection in mice provides a basis for further investigation.

ANTIBODY-MEDIATED COMPLEMENT ACTIVATION

Besides ADCC and ADCP, antibodies can also induce complement activation. The complement cascade contributes to pathogen elimination either directly, by means of complement-dependent cytotoxicity (CDC), or indirectly, through phagocytic clearance of complement-coated targets and the induction of an inflammatory response. Activation of the classical complement pathway results from binding of the recognition molecule C1q to the Fc domain of antibodies bound to virus-infected cells (76, 77), as depicted in **Figure 4**. Upon binding of C1q, the proteases of the classical pathway are activated, leading to cleavage of C2 and C4. Together, the resulting cleavage products form the C3 convertase (C4bC2a) that cleaves C3 into C3a and C3b. One of the mechanisms by which the complement cascade is regulated, is cleavage of active C4b, which serves as a marker for complement activation. The release of anaphylatoxins C3a and C5a stimulates a pro-inflammatory environment by inducing the recruitment of immune effector cells and the activation of leukocytes, endothelial cells, epithelial cells, and platelets (78, 79). The highly reactive C3b binds to pathogens and infected cells, leading to immune complex clearance and phagocytosis through complement receptors found on immune cells. The terminal complement components will assemble into the membrane attack complex (MAC), resulting in lysis of the infected cell. Besides direct antiviral activity, the complement system can also regulate B cell responses. The binding of complement-coated immune complexes to complement receptor 2 on B cells is reported to lower the B cell activation threshold, thereby promoting long-lived adaptive immunity and higher antibody levels (80, 81).

Complement can have both a protective and pathogenic role during viral infections. The protective capacity of poorly neutralizing antibodies during WNV infection is mediated by the complement system, as was shown using knockout mice (69). The presence of complement even enhances the neutralization capacity of WNV-specific antibodies (82). In addition, an important role for complement has been shown in the protective capacity of (monoclonal) antibodies against influenza virus (38, 83), vaccinia virus (84), CMV (85), and HIV (66, 67). In contrast, complement activation has also been suggested to contribute to disease severity in dengue virus (86, 87) and HIV infection (88, 89).

Antibody-Mediated Complement Activation in RSV Infection

The complement system consists of multiple components and elicits its effector functions through different pathways. Early studies have shown antibody and complement deposition on nasopharyngeal cells of RSV-infected infants (90). Whether this contributed to viral clearance or disease was not determined. Studies in complement-deficient mice have shown that complement is important in antibody-mediated protection against RSV infection (60, 75). A number of different mechanisms have been suggested for this complement-enhanced protection. Firstly, direct enhancement of the neutralization capacity of antibodies by fixation of complement components to virus-antibody complexes may increase the steric hindrance of bound antibodies (91). Another mechanism that could be at play is complement-dependent opsonization of virus-infected cells, which leads to subsequent uptake by phagocytes. Finally, complement has also been shown to increase the CD4(+) T cell response in the presence of RSV immune serum in an *in vivo* mouse model (92).

Besides its potential role in the clearance and/or pathogenesis of natural RSV infection, complement activation has been suggested to contribute to disease enhancement induced by natural infection following FI-RSV vaccination. C3a receptor (C3aR)-deficient mice had decreased airway hyperresponsiveness (AHR) and less mucus production in an FI-RSV vaccination-challenge model (93). In this study, C3aR expression was enhanced in C5-knockout mice, showing that the balance in activation of different complement factors (C3a vs. C5a) is important in determining disease outcome. Moreover, Polack et al. demonstrated the co-localization of IgG and C3 in the lungs of mice with enhanced RSV disease, but not in control mice (22). In addition, both C3- and B cell-knockout mice showed a decrease in bronchoconstriction compared to WT mice vaccinated with FI-RSV. Therefore, in a mouse model of vaccine-enhanced disease, the presence of C5 seems protective, whereas C3a promotes enhanced disease. This is also supported by the

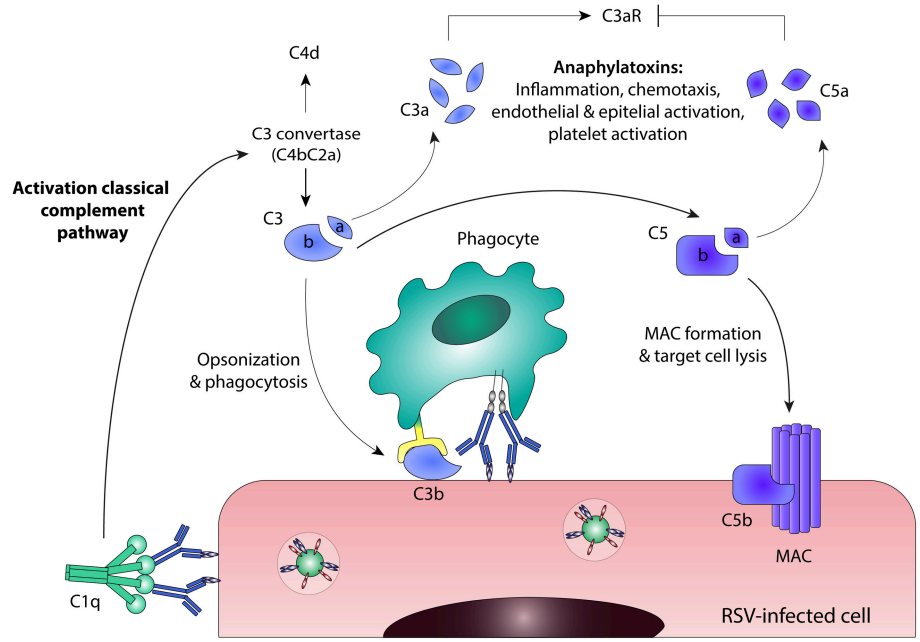


FIGURE 4 | Antibody-mediated complement activation. Binding of C1q to antibody-bound virus-infected cells leads to activation of the classical complement pathway. C3 convertase (C4bC2a) is formed and cleaves C3 into C3a and C3b. Active C4b can be cleaved into the enzymatically inactive form C4d, which serves as a marker for complement activation. Further downstream in the classical complement pathway, C5 is cleaved into C5a and C5b. C3a and C5a are anaphylatoxins that stimulate a pro-inflammatory environment, although they act in different ways: C3a induces C3aR signaling, whereas C5a inhibits C3aR expression. C3b binds to pathogens and infected cells, leading to phagocytosis through complement receptors found on immune cells. The terminal complement components will assemble into the membrane attack complex (MAC), resulting in direct lysis of the infected cell. C3aR, C3a Receptor; MAC, membrane attack complex; RSV, respiratory syncytial virus.

limited data available on complement activation during vaccine-enhanced disease in infants. Lung sections of the two children who died of vaccine-enhanced disease had extensive deposition of complement cleavage product C4d, which serves as a stable marker for complement activation (22). The presence of C4d provides evidence for complement activation during vaccine-enhanced disease in infants, but it remains to be determined whether there is a causal relation between complement activation and vaccine-enhanced disease. Finally, mouse studies point to the involvement of complement components in the development of AHR and asthma upon RSV infection (94, 95). Taken together, the complement system seems to be important in antibody-dependent protection *in vivo*, but it also potentially contributes to (vaccine-enhanced) disease and asthma, suggesting a dual role in RSV infection that requires further investigation.

ANTIBODY-MEDIATED IMMUNOMODULATION

Besides the well-defined classical Fc-mediated effector functions (ADCC, ADCP, CDC), immune complexes can also promote immune cell maturation and activation, leading to a wide range of effector activities and production of pro-inflammatory and immunomodulatory mediators (a limited overview is depicted in **Figure 5**). Some of these pro-inflammatory cytokine responses correlate with protection as has been shown for influenza (62) and HIV (96). The importance of FcγRs in this process has been shown by the use of FcγR-deficient mice [as extensively reviewed in (97)]. In contrast to the pro-inflammatory responses caused by immune complexes, injection with intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIg) can induce an anti-inflammatory state. It is proposed that this anti-inflammatory effect is partly due to the presence of sialylated antibodies in IVIg, which induce expression of FcγRIIB (the only inhibitory FcγR) and thereby dampen the inflammatory response (98).

Immune complexes can also regulate cellular maturation and activation. The balance between inhibitory and activating FcγR interactions is crucial in regulating B cell IgG responses (99–101), and skewing APC maturation and antigen presentation (102–105), which can modulate T cell activation. Immune complexes have also been shown to bias the macrophage immune response toward a Th2-like phenotype (106).

Antibody-Mediated Immunomodulation in RSV Infection

RSV-antibody complexes can lead to activation of phagocytes either directly or after phagocytosis, resulting in the production of reactive oxygen species (ROS), thromboxane, (pro-inflammatory) cytokines, and chemokines (72, 73, 107), which may contribute to viral clearance. However, these mediators can also have immunopathological effects, including tissue damage, platelet aggregation, and bronchoconstriction. Given that neutrophils are the predominant airway leukocytes

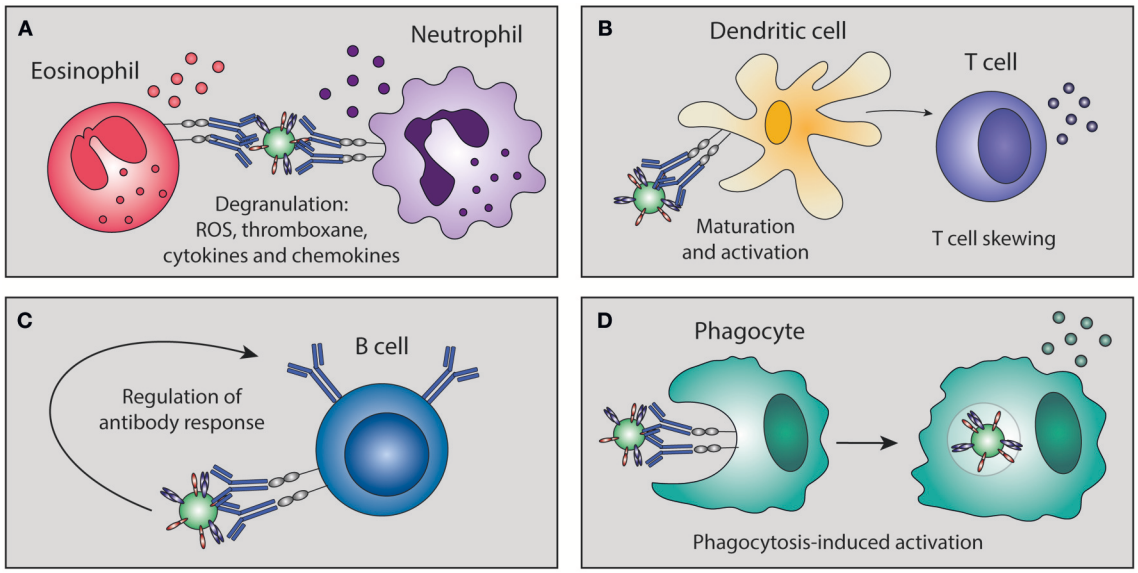


FIGURE 5 | Antibody-mediated immunomodulation. Immune complexes can skew immune cell maturation and activation of granulocytes, dendritic cells, T cells, B cells, and phagocytes. This immunomodulation can lead to **(A)** degranulation, **(B)** skewing of T cell responses, **(C)** regulation of B cell antibody responses, and **(D)** phagocytosis-induced secretion of immunomodulatory mediators. ROS, reactive oxygen species.

present in RSV-infected infants, their activation is suggested to be involved in the induction of severe RSV disease (108). Interestingly, in contrast to RSV immune complexes, it has been reported that RSV alone does not lead to ROS production by granulocytes (107) and can even inhibit this process (73, 109). It has been suggested that anti-RSV G mAbs are less potent inducers of ROS and cytokine production than anti-RSV F mAbs (73), but this was based on experiments with only two RSV-specific antibodies. Notably, differences in the capacity to induce a response may not be due to antigen-specificity *per se* but rather due to epitope localization, as described in the paragraph "Important epitopes in RSV infection."

Excessive eosinophilic activation has been suggested to play a role in the immunopathology of FI-RSV-induced disease in mice (22). Whether the non-neutralizing antibodies induced by the FI-RSV vaccine play a role in this activation remains unknown. *In vitro* studies have shown that eosinophils can phagocytose RSV-antibody complexes, leading to degranulation (74). The use of heat-inactivated serum abolished this effect, indicating complement involvement.

Besides an immunomodulatory effect on granulocytes, RSV-antibody complexes can also affect T cell responses. Kruijsen et al. show in an *in vivo* mouse model that IFN-γ secretion by CD4(+) T cells is increased in the presence of RSV immune serum (92). This increase is dependent on both FcγRs and the complement system. Additional *in vitro* experiments indicate that both anti-RSV G, as well as anti-RSV F antibodies can induce this enhanced CD4(+) T cell response, whereas CD8(+) T cells are only activated by the presence of anti-RSV G antibodies. Another *in vitro* study found that DCs primed with complexes composed of RSV and F-specific antibodies displayed an impaired capacity to activate CD8(+) and CD4(+) T cells (110).

RSV-antibody complexes also contribute to antibody-mediated immunomodulation through the induction or inhibition of cytokine and chemokine production in PBMCs. In an *in vitro* study, RSV-antibody complexes inhibited IFN-α production in PBMCs, whereas these complexes enhanced IFN-α production of PBMCs in the absence of CD14(+) cells (111). Another *in vitro* study showed that, compared to RSV alone, RSV immune complexes induce increased IFN-α, IFN-γ, CXCL10, and CXCL11 production in monocytes (112). In infant PBMCs, only CXCL10 production was significantly enhanced. CXCL10 can mediate a neutrophil-dependent excessive pulmonary inflammation (113), which could contribute to RSV pathogenesis. This indicates that immune complexes can potentially also activate neutrophils indirectly, through the induction of chemokines and cytokines in PBMCs. Altogether, these studies show that immune complexes are able to skew the RSV-specific immune response in multiple ways, but more research is needed to clarify the exact contribution of antibody-mediated immunomodulation to protection and disease during RSV infection.

ANTIBODY-DEPENDENT ENHANCEMENT (ADE) OF INFECTION

ADE refers to a phenomenon in which virus-specific antibodies promote, rather than inhibit, infection and/or disease. In ADE of infection, also known as extrinsic ADE (114), the number of virus-infected cells is increased in the

presence of (natural or monoclonal) antibodies that are non-neutralizing or present in sub-neutralizing concentrations. ADE of infection requires the presence of FcγRs on target cells and is an efficient *in vitro* tool to assess Fc-FcγR interactions. However, while ADE of infection has been observed for many viruses *in vitro* [as extensively reviewed in (115)], its significance *in vivo* remains uncertain. A schematic representation of ADE of infection is depicted in **Figure 6**.

ADE of RSV Infection

ADE of RSV infection has been demonstrated *in vitro* for both mAbs and RSV-immune serum in monocytic cell lines, PBMCs, neonatal, and adult NK cells, and primary mouse and cotton rat immune cells (110, 116–120). However, whether the ADE of infection observed *in vitro* is related to *in vivo* disease outcome is doubtful. No correlation has been found between disease severity in infants and the capacity of serum antibodies to induce ADE of RSV infection *in vitro* (119). Furthermore, ADE of infection has never been demonstrated *in vivo*. However, it must be noted that this has never been assessed during FI-RSV vaccine-enhanced disease.

ANTIBODY-DEPENDENT ENHANCEMENT (ADE) OF DISEASE

ADE of disease, or instrinsic ADE (114), refers to a process in which the presence of pathogen-specific antibodies contributes to disease severity. For example, immune complexes might bind to FcγR-expressing immune cells, modulating the immune response, and subsequently leading to enhanced inflammation. ADE of disease has been a presumed cause of severe disease following various viral infections and vaccinations (37, 114, 121–123). However, the underlying mechanisms are largely unknown and *in vivo* data supporting these claims are often lacking. However, for dengue virus infection some first clues to unravel the mechanism underlying ADE of disease have recently been published. Wang et al. have been able to show a correlation between FcγRIIIA binding capacity of dengue virus antibodies and disease severity *in vivo* (21). The dengue-specific antibodies are thought to cross-react with platelet antigens and induce thrombocytopenia. Suggested underlying mechanisms are FcγR-mediated platelet activation, phagocytosis, or ADCC, but further investigation is needed to confirm these hypotheses. In addition, Katzelnick et al. have shown that high dengue-specific antibody titers correlate with protection, whereas intermediate antibody titers correlate with severe dengue disease (124). Although low or no antibody titers are not protective, they do not enhance disease. It is possible that RSV-specific antibodies show a similar pattern, as illustrated schematically in **Figure 7**.

ADE of RSV Disease

Although *in vitro* ADE of infection does not seem to be a determinant for severe RSV disease (119), other antibody-mediated mechanisms could be involved, as has recently been shown for dengue virus infection (21). Many animal studies on RSV infection highlight the role of an excessive immune response in FI-RSV vaccine-enhanced disease. It is likely that poorly-neutralizing vaccine-induced antibodies play a role in the development of FI-RSV vaccine-enhanced disease (22–24), although it remains uncertain which Fc-mediated effector functions are involved.

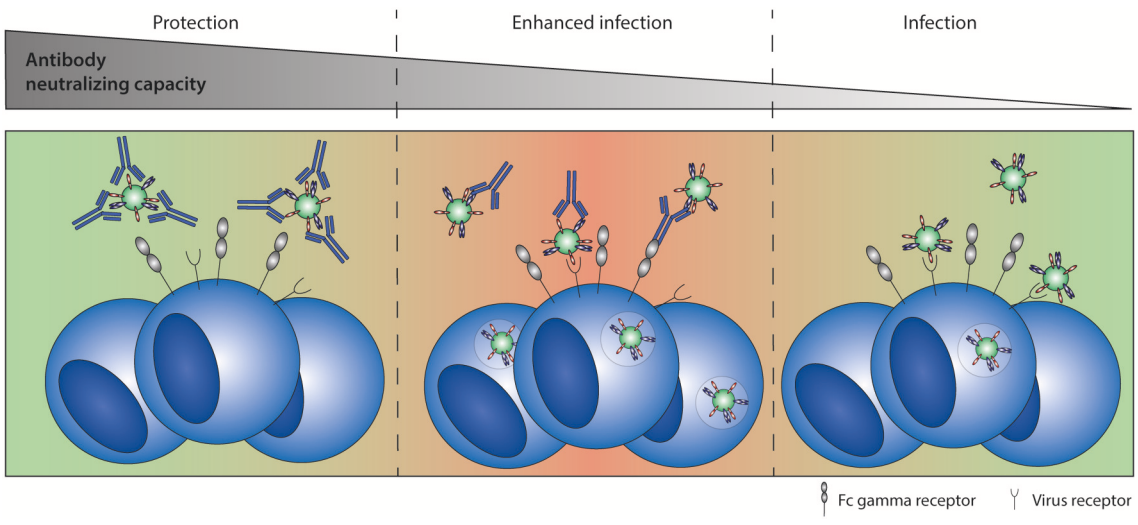


FIGURE 6 | Antibody-dependent enhancement (ADE) of infection. ADE of infection has been shown *in vitro* for multiple viruses, including RSV. High antibody titers neutralize the virus completely. Sub-neutralizing antibody titers form immune complexes that can interact with both the virus receptor and Fc gamma receptors, leading to enhanced infection levels compared to infection in the absence of antibodies.

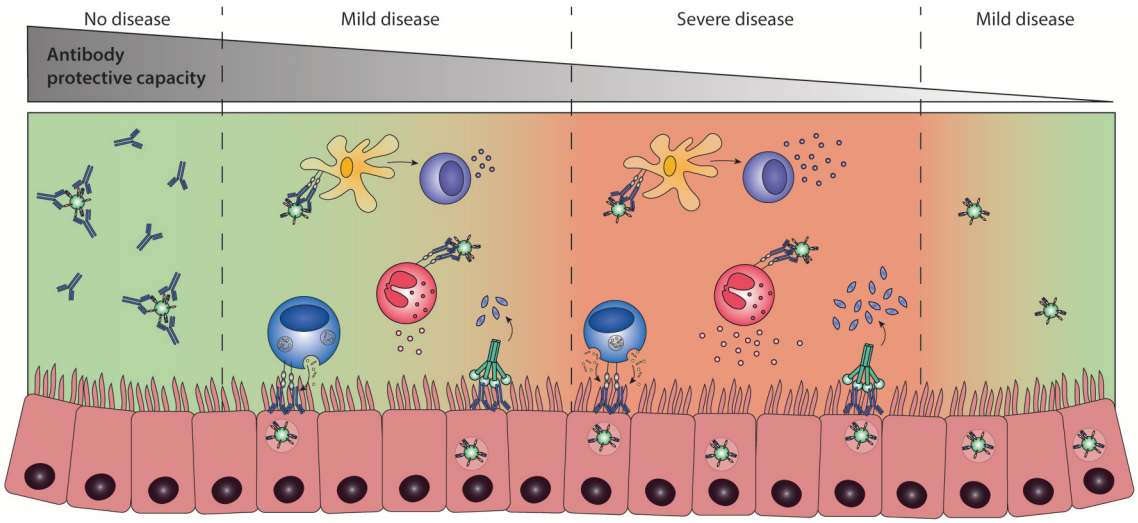


FIGURE 7 | Antibody-dependent enhancement (ADE) of disease. ADE of disease refers to a process in which the presence of pathogen-specific antibodies contributes to disease severity. Highly neutralizing antibodies result in sterile immunity, preventing infection and disease (left panel). The presence of low levels of protective antibodies allows for viral replication and leads to an Fc-mediated immune response that can either contribute to protection (second panel) or potentially lead to more severe disease (third panel) compared to infection in the absence of antibodies (right panel). It is currently unknown whether Fc-mediated effector functions can lead to severe disease and which immunological mechanisms determine the difference between protective or enhancing Fc-mediated responses.

Little is known on the involvement of (maternal) antibodies in the development of severe disease after natural RSV infection. Severe RSV infections are most frequently seen in the first 6 months of life when infants have circulating maternal RSV-specific antibodies (2). This suggests that RSV-specific antibodies may contribute to the induction of severe RSV disease. Results from animal studies with Fab fragments and FcγR-knockout mice indeed show the involvement of antibody-mediated effector functions both in protection against viral replication (58, 60, 61) and in promoting inflammation (92).

Some studies have reported enhanced RSV disease to occur in the presence of waning immunity. Murphy et al. reported enhanced pulmonary pathology 3 months after immunization with a RSV F glycoprotein vaccine (125), which was not seen 1 week after immunization (126). In a follow-up study, enhanced lung pathology was observed upon immunization with low doses of recombinant F protein, mimicking waning immunity (127). Interestingly, the enhanced disease was independent of the presence of a Th1- or Th2-biasing adjuvant.

Taken together, there are clear indications suggesting that Fc-mediated antibody effector functions may contribute to severe RSV disease. Complement activation has been linked to vaccine-enhanced disease and asthma, and may therefore also be involved in severe RSV disease upon natural infection. In addition, the immunomodulatory effects of immune complexes can lead to a pro-inflammatory environment, which is thought to be the underlying cause of RSV-mediated pathology. However, more research on the involvement of individual Fc-mediated effector functions in disease outcome following RSV infection is needed.

REGULATION OF FC-MEDIATED EFFECTOR FUNCTIONS

Fc-mediated antibody effector functions play an important role in shaping the immune response and their active regulation is crucial to prevent excessive immune activation. A number of determinants have been found to influence Fc-mediated effector functions on both the cellular and antibody side of the Fc-Fc receptor (FcR) interaction. Important antibody characteristics are the isotype, subclass, glycosylation pattern, and antigen specificity, while important cellular determinants are the epitope position relative to the target cell membrane and FcR expression and polymorphisms on the effector cell, which together determine the capacity of the antibody to interact with specific FcRs. Most antibodies are not specifically eliciting a single effector function, and therefore the combination of all these characteristics determines the outcome of the various Fc-FcR interactions and the interaction with the complement system.

ANTIBODY ISOTYPE AND SUBCLASS

Antibodies consist of two functional domains: the variable antigen-binding fragment (Fab) and the constant fragment (Fc) that interacts with FcRs and C1q. The isotype of the Fc domain (IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG, and IgM) represents the major determinant of Fc-mediated effector functions. Of these isotypes, IgG is the most important when it comes to Fc-mediated effector functions, as this is the only isotype known to interact with the widely expressed FcγRs. Whereas, the majority of antibodies in serum are of the IgG subtype, IgA is the major isotype present in mucosal secretions. This isotype interacts with its specific

receptor FcαRI, which is present on neutrophils, eosinophils, monocytes, and macrophages [extensively reviewed in (128)]. Activation of FcαRI by IgA-opsonized pathogens can induce ADCC, phagocytosis, degranulation, and cytokine release. Other important isotypes to briefly mention are IgM, which is a potent complement activator (76), and IgE, which has been linked to various allergic diseases.

In humans, four different IgG subclasses (IgG1-IgG4) are known. These subclasses differ in amino acid sequence, which influences their capacity to interact with certain classes of FcγRs and complement components as depicted in **Table 1**. Production of different isotypes and subclasses is tightly regulated and dependent on differentiation of the B cell, which can be influenced by cytokines and interactions with pattern-recognition receptors. The response to protein antigens usually involves T cell help and induces class switching to IgG1 or IgG3, whereas polysaccharide antigens induce class switching to IgG2 in the absence of T cell help (132). Viral infections, including RSV infections, mostly induce IgG1 and IgG3 antibody responses (133–135).

IgG1 and IgG3 have the highest affinity for FcγRs and are potent activators of complement, ADCC and phagocytosis (129, 136, 137). IgG3 is the subclass with the highest potential to activate both FcγRs and complement, but due to its short half-life the preferred subclass for therapeutic cytotoxic activity is IgG1 (138). In contrast, receptor-blocking antibodies are often of the IgG2 or IgG4 subclass to avoid Fc-mediated cytotoxic side effects (139). Induction of specific subclasses can have major effects on the outcome of vaccine trials as has been shown for the HIV RV144 and VAX003 vaccines. RV144 recipients produced highly functional IgG3 antibodies that provided 31.2% efficacy, whereas VAX003 recipients elicited a monofunctional IgG4 antibody response that was not protective at all (140).

Antibody Isotype and Subclass in RSV Infection

Severe RSV-mediated disease is most prevalent in infants below 6 months of age. These children mainly rely on maternally-derived IgG for protection against infectious diseases, but the correlation between serum IgG levels and protection against RSV disease is poor (7, 9–11). A recent study by Habibi et al. found that mucosal IgA titers are a better predictor of susceptibility to RSV infection than serum IgG levels in an adult challenge model (141). In addition, they showed a hampered IgA memory B cell response to RSV, which may explain the life-long susceptibility to repeated RSV infections. In accordance with these results, lower levels of nasal IgA were found in naturally RSV-infected adults compared to healthy controls (142). These findings highlight the importance of mucosal IgA in protection against RSV infection. However, it is questionable whether IgA plays a role in protection or disease during primary infection. IgA antibodies to RSV are only found in secretions after 4 months of age, confirming they are synthesized as a result of (primary) infection (143). RSV-specific IgA has been shown to induce antibody-mediated effector functions. Although palivizumab-IgA demonstrated slightly higher lysis of RSV-infected HEp2 cells by neutrophils (but not monocytes) *in vitro,* there was a somewhat decreased efficacy *in vivo* compared to palivizumab-IgG (144). Additional experiments with FcαRI transgenic mice suggest that IgA-mediated protection is Fc receptor-independent. No further research with RSV-IgA immune complexes has been published to date and therefore their role in protection or disease remains to be investigated.

Another interesting isotype is IgE, as the results from multiple studies suggest the involvement of this isotype in the development of RSV-mediated bronchiolitis and wheezing (145–148). In a mouse model, RSV-specific IgE has been shown to enhance airway hyperresponsiveness (149). Since all infants produce IgE in response to RSV infection (150), it is thought that the height and duration of the IgE response are important for the induction of subsequent immunopathology (148, 151, 152). Mast cells abundantly express the IgE-specific Fc receptor (FcεRI) and were shown to play an important role in IgE-induced airway hyperresponsiveness in an RSV reinfection mouse model (149).

In addition to studies on isotypes, extensive studies have been performed on the presence of IgG subclasses during RSV infection. Wagner et al. have performed some early studies into the antibody subclass response to the RSV F and G glycoproteins in both infants and adults (133, 153, 154). Primary RSV infections predominantly gave rise to IgG1 and IgG3 antibodies, whereas subsequent infection only led to an increase in IgG1 and IgG2 titers (133). RSV infection led to a poor IgG4 antibody response in all subjects. RSV F protein was the most immunogenic, leading to higher antibody titers compared to the RSV G protein (154). The IgG1/IgG2 ratio of antibody titers to the RSV F protein was fourfold higher than to the RSV G protein after the first three RSV infections in infants. This difference was thought to be due to the extensive glycosylation of the G

TABLE 1 | Binding capacity and functionality of IgG subclasses.

Subclass	Serum abundance (%)	FcγRI	FcγRIIa	FcγRIIb	FcγRIIIa	FcγRIIIb	C1q	Effector functions
IgG1	60	+++	+++	+	++	+++	++	ADCC, ADCP, CDC
IgG2	32	–	++	–	–	–	+	
IgG3	4	++++	++++	++	++++	++++	+++	ADCC, ADCP, CDC
IgG4	4	++	++	+	–	–	–	

(129–131). ADCC, antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity; ADCP, antibody-dependent cellular phagocytosis; CDC, complement-dependent cytotoxicity; FcγR, Fc gamma receptor; IgG, immunoglobulin G.

protein, resulting in IgG2 antibodies. IgG1 and IgG3 are the most potent FcγR-binding subclasses. This suggests that the majority of anti-RSV F antibodies are effective inducers of Fc-mediated effector functions, in contrast to the IgG2 subset of anti-RSV G antibodies. Experimental RSV infection in adults showed similar subclass responses to RSV F and G protein (153). A recent study confirms the findings of Wagner et al. showing a strong IgG3 response in infants younger than 4 months, despite the presence of high levels of maternal antibodies (155). A rise in RSV-specific IgG1 and IgG2 was only observed in infants older than 7 months.

Besides human studies, several mouse studies have been performed to investigate the subclass antibody response. Although some homology between mouse and human IgG subclasses has been found, it is unclear whether they induce the same downstream immune responses. In mice, neonatal IgG responses to RSV infection are significantly skewed toward mIgG1 (homologous to human IgG4), indicating a Th2 bias (156), whereas primary infection in adult mice leads to a balanced mIgG2a/mIgG1 response (homologous to human IgG1/IgG4) (157). Compared to wild-type RSV infection, immunization with inactivated or non-replicative RSV led to a low mIgG2a/mIgG1 ratio (24, 158). The largest proportion of antibodies directed at the RSV-F protein was mIgG2 (homologous to human IgG1), whereas the G protein response had a significantly lower proportion of mIgG2 (158). These results indicate that both the age of the host and the antigens determine the subclass response. However, it is remarkable that RSV infection leads to a poor IgG4 antibody response in humans, but to a high mIgG1 (homolog of human IgG4) response in (neonatal) mice. Thus, caution is warranted in the translation between human and mouse antibody studies.

Although extensive studies have been performed on the presence of specific subclasses, evidence on the role of these different subclasses during RSV infection is limited. One study describes a direct comparison between the functionality of palivizumab-IgG1 and -IgG2 (159). The neutralizing potential of both subclasses was comparable. However, the IgG2 antibody showed negligible binding to murine FcγRs and human C1q, resulting in less efficacy *in vivo* as measured by increased viral lung titers in challenged cotton rats (159). This finding underscores the protective potential of IgG1-mediated effector functions during RSV infection.

ANTIBODY GLYCOSYLATION

Glycosylation of the antibody Fc domain is another important regulator of Fc-mediated effector functions. Each IgG molecule contains a highly conserved asparagine at position 297 (N297) that functions as a glycosylation site that can harbor a variety of glycans, consisting of varying combinations of mannose, (bisecting) N-acetylglycosamine (GlcNAc), fucose, galactose, and sialic acid (**Figure 8**). The complete absence of this glycan leads to a conformational state that is non-permissive for FcγR or complement binding, thereby impairing Fc-mediated antibody effector functions.

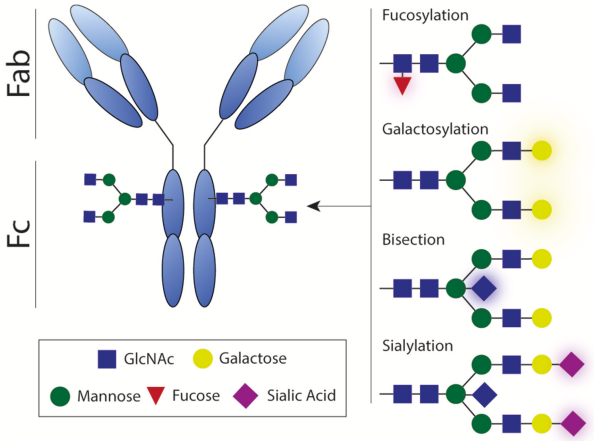


FIGURE 8 | Antibody glycosylation. Each IgG molecule contains a glycosylation site that can harbor a variety of glycans, consisting of varying combinations of mannose, (bisecting) N-acetylglycosamine, fucose, galactose, and sialic acid. Antibody effector activity is substantially impaired in absence of this glycan. Fab, antigen-binding fragment; Fc, crystallizable fragment; GlcNAc, N-acetylglycosamine.

Afucosylation has the most straightforward influence on antibody effector functions. The absence of the core fucose on the Fc-glycan directly boosts ADCC activity by enhancing the interaction with FcγRIIIA (**Figure 2**) (160–162). Interestingly, afucosylated mAbs have shown to be more protective against various infectious agents (163, 164) and more efficacious in cancer therapy (165, 166). However, increased levels of afucosylation are also associated with severe disease during secondary dengue infection (21).

Another biologically important modification to the Fc glycan is sialylation. The presence of sialic acid inhibits FcγR binding and is reported to be partly responsible for the anti-inflammatory activity of IVIg (98, 167). Besides having anti-inflammatory properties, sialylated Fc glycans have also been shown to induce the production of high-affinity broadly neutralizing antibodies against influenza virus (101).

Besides its effect on Fc receptor interactions, Fc glycosylation also affects complement C1q binding to immune complexes. A recent study shows that elevated galactosylation and sialylation increase C1q-binding, downstream complement deposition, and complement dependent cytotoxicity (168). In contrast, agalactosylated IgG has also been suggested to elicit enhanced complement activation, considering its role in several autoimmune diseases (169). These findings suggest that activation of complement potentially contributes to pathogen clearance, but can also contribute to inflammation in autoimmune disease, highlighting the dual role of complement.

Fc glycosylation is subject to active regulatory mechanisms that control the composition of the glycan structure. Major changes in glycosylation occur during pregnancy (170, 171), upon vaccination (101, 172), and during certain viral infections (101). Therefore, insight in the glycosylation pattern during RSV infection and disease may provide valuable clues on the cause of severe RSV disease.

Antibody Glycosylation in RSV Infection

To our knowledge, only one group has investigated the effect of glycosylation in the response toward RSV infection. Hiatt et al. compared the original Palivizumab mAb with an afucosylated and agalactosylated plant-produced glycovariant (G0) in different *in vitro* and *in vivo* assays (159). The G0 glycovariant showed enhanced binding to murine FcγRs but less binding to human C1q compared to the parental Palivizumab, whereas neutralization capacity was comparable. The *in vivo* protective capacity of the G0 glycovariant was improved compared to the original, as evidenced by decreased pulmonary viral titers. In conclusion, this study suggests that the influence of Fc-glycosylation may be important in the protective capacity of RSV-specific antibodies but this needs to be studied in more detail for other mAbs and virus- and vaccine-induced antibodies.

EPITOPE POSITION

Next to antibody structure and glycosylation, the location of the antibody-bound epitope with respect to the membrane of the infected cell has been shown to be pivotal in determining Fc-mediated effector functions. Since the use of mAbs, it has been noticed that different mAbs binding the same target protein can elicit different effector mechanisms (173). Antibodies binding to epitopes closer to the membrane (membrane proximal epitopes) mediate ADCC and CDC activity more efficiently, whereas antibodies that target membrane distal epitopes are often highly neutralizing and efficient ADCP-inducers (13, 174–176). More specifically, recent research suggests that ADCP is most efficiently triggered when antibodies bind within 10 nm from the cell surface (177), indicating that the optimal ADCP-inducing epitope is located neither too close, nor too far away from the cell membrane. These studies suggest that besides the common need for particular Fc-FcγR interactions, there are fundamental differences in the activation requirements of specific Fc-mediated effector functions. For CDC activity, stabilization of complement components on the cell surface is essential. This would require a short distance from epitope to cell membrane. During ADCC, the formation of an immune synapse is essential. This small synapse can only be formed when the NK cells engage antibodies bound in close proximity to the cell membrane, explaining the need for membrane proximal epitopes (175).

Important Epitopes in RSV Infection

Neutralization of RSV is mainly established by antibodies against the RSV F and RSV G protein (178). Antibodies against the SH and N protein have also been described (179, 180) and although these antibodies are not involved in neutralization, they may have other important (Fc-mediated) functions (181). Capella et al. recently showed that antibodies against the pre-F protein were the most prevalent RSV-specific serum antibodies in infants below 2 years of age (182). Both serum IgG levels against anti-RSV pre-F and G correlated with disease severity in this study.

Various antigenic sites (named Ø and I-VIII) have been described for the two conformational states of the RSV F protein (183, 184). Pre-F-specific antibodies are better neutralizers than post-F-specific antibodies (185). However, not all pre-fusion F antibodies have similar neutralizing activity (183). The most potent neutralizing antibodies bind to distal epitopes, suggesting that the neutralizing potential of anti-RSV F antibodies not only relies on the conformation of F on which the epitope is present (e.g., pre- vs. post-F), but may also depend on the location of the epitope relative to the viral or cellular membrane. As described above, the proximity to the membrane determines the efficiency of Fc-mediated effector functions (13, 174, 175). This suggests that potently-neutralizing antibodies, binding to distal epitopes, may also be efficient inducers of ADCP. Antibodies binding to proximal epitopes are generally less neutralizing, but may be more potent in inducing ADCC and CDC.

The most important antigenic site for the RSV G protein is the central conserved domain (CCD). Despite the high variability of RSV G, antibodies against the CCD are broadly neutralizing against both RSV A and B strains (186). The G protein CCD binds to the CX3CR1 receptor, leading to attachment of RSV to its target cells (187). Antibodies against this receptor-binding domain efficiently neutralize RSV infection and decrease pathogenesis by binding soluble G protein, an immune evasion protein secreted by RSV-infected cells (56, 57, 188). Soluble G protein has been found to inhibit Fc-mediated antiviral effects of macrophages and complement (75), and to modulate trafficking of CX3CR1(+) cells (189). Next to the important roles mentioned above, antibodies against the CCD domain are also able to induce Fc-mediated effector functions like ADCP and ADCC (56).

Taken together, not only the antigen but also the epitope determines the efficacy of antibodies. Interestingly, evidence suggests that targeted epitopes may differ between infants and adults (190), but the effect of these changes on the efficacy of the antibody response is unknown. Further research may uncover the relation between antigenic site and effector functions against RSV infection, and thereby reveal preferred antibody-binding sites for protection against RSV disease.

FCγR EXPRESSION AND POLYMORPHISMS

Another regulator of Fc-mediated effector functions is the expression pattern and polymorphisms of FcγRs. The majority of leukocytes express more than one FcγR type with varying downstream signaling activities. The level and variety of FcγR expression is tightly regulated during leukocyte development and can be modulated by certain mediators present during infection, inflammation, or even vaccination (103, 191). As stated before, the balance between inhibitory and activating FcγR interactions is crucial in regulating B cell IgG responses (99–101) and skewing APC maturation and antigen presentation (102–105). Additionally, co-engagement and signaling through other receptors such as TLRs may influence the activation threshold (192). Altogether, this points out the importance of receptor expression patterns on effector cells.

Besides variation in FcγR expression patterns, single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) in FcγRs occur. Although

many SNPs have been identified, only few have been shown to impact receptor function (193). One of the functional SNPs has been identified in FcγRIIa. Only the R131H allelic variant of this receptor is capable of interacting with IgG2, enabling efficient phagocytosis (194, 195). Another SNP affecting binding affinity has been characterized for FcγRIII, which has two co-dominantly expressed allotypes: V158 and F158. The presence of a valine residue at position 158 increases the affinity for IgG1 and IgG3, augmenting for example NK cell activity (196, 197).

FcγR Expression and Polymorphisms in RSV Infection

Different FcγRs can have opposing effects on the immune response, as has also been shown for RSV. In FcγR$^{-/-}$ mouse models, Gomez et al. demonstrate that murine FcγRIII (homolog of human FcγRIIA) contributes to viral replication and airway inflammation, whereas murine FcγRIIb (homolog of human FcγRIIb) has a protective effect as was shown by a decrease in viral titers (110). *In vitro,* RSV infection has been found to increase mFcγRII and mFcγRIII expression in murine macrophage cultures which subsequently showed enhanced phagocytosis (198).

Although the clinical relevance of FcγR SNPs has been studied intensively for auto-immune diseases (199), cancer treatment (200) and various viral infections (201–204), there is no data on the role of these polymorphisms in RSV infection or disease. In a genetic association study, performed to identify genes that are involved in RSV susceptibility, a SNP in FCER1A was found (205). This polymorphism had previously been found to be associated with altered FcεRI expression levels and allergic disease, supporting the involvement of IgE in RSV-mediated disease.

IMPLICATIONS FOR VACCINE AND mAb DEVELOPMENT

Currently there are no market-approved vaccines or antivirals available against RSV. The only available treatment is the administration of a prophylactic F protein-specific mAb (Palivizumab) to reduce hospitalization in high-risk infants (206). However, the use of Palivizumab is restricted and its cost-effectiveness is often discussed (207). Improved mAbs with higher efficacy rates are thus highly needed and many research efforts are ongoing to develop these mAbs. A recent clinical trial with a pre-F-specific mAb (Suptavamab) failed to demonstrate efficacy in pre-term infants although the mAb was superior to Palivizumab in neutralization tests *in vitro* and in reducing viral load in the cotton rat model (208) (press release Regeneron, August 14, 2017). The failure of this highly neutralizing mAb indicates that protection against RSV-mediated disease, which is known to be immunopathological in nature, depends on more than just neutralization of the virus.

In addition to efforts made to develop improved therapeutic mAbs, there is an extensive pipeline of vaccines that are currently being tested in different phases of clinical development (https://www.path.org/resources/rsv-vaccine-and-mab-snapshot/). The development of vaccines is of great importance, especially for developing countries where RSV-related mortality is high and mAb therapy is inaccessible due to high costs. The majority of vaccine candidates currently in clinical trials are designed to induce systemic IgG, mostly against the RSV F protein. The results of the pre-F-specific Suptuvamab and the recent failures of two F-specific vaccine candidates tested in elderly, imply that a broader and more polyfunctional immune response may be needed to confer protection against RSV-mediated disease (209, 210) (press release Novavax, September 15, 2016).

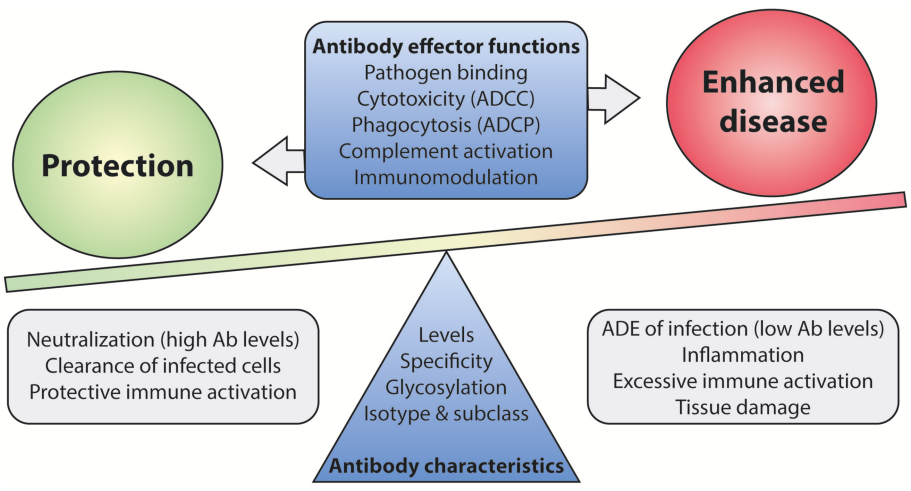


FIGURE 9 | The balance between Fc-mediated protection and enhanced disease. Antibody effector functions, regulated by differences in antibody characteristics, are suspected to play a role in disease outcome upon RSV infection. Immune activation by Fc-mediated effector functions is likely needed for efficient viral clearance. However, excessive activation may lead to inflammation and tissue damage. A balanced and contained immune response is most likely the key to protection upon infection. Ab, antibody; ADCC, antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity; ADCP, antibody-dependent cellular phagocytosis; ADE, antibody-dependent enhancement.

To this date, no accurate correlate of protection has been defined for RSV infection as virus-specific antibody levels or neutralization titers do not seem of use in this respect. The lack of a well-defined correlate of protection complicates the development of new vaccines, as efficacy now has to be demonstrated in expensive large-scale clinical trials. Mounting evidence suggests that antibody effector functions beyond neutralization can contribute to both protection and disease (110, 159, 181, 211). A balanced activation of different Fc-mediated effector functions is key to prevent excessive inflammation and tissue damage (**Figure 9**). It will be of importance to implement assays that identify Fc-mediated effector functions of mAbs and vaccine-induced antibodies. Studies in FcγR-knockout mice have indicated the importance of Fc-FcγR interactions for protection against RSV infection (110, 181), but the testing of mAbs and vaccines demands high-throughput approaches. Systems serology captures a wide array of antibody characteristics and effector functions. It has proven effective in identifying antibody features that contribute to protection for various (viral) pathogens (19, 212, 213). Such an approach will provide detailed information on the characteristics that are required for a protective RSV antibody response.

The ability to generate an antibody profile that selectively binds particular epitopes and FcγRs is important to enable the induction of only the desired antibody effector functions. Recent developments now allow targeted modifications to mAbs that can lead to enhancement or inhibition of specific Fc-mediated antibody effector functions through glyco-engineering or the induction of specific antibody subclasses or isotypes (159). In the future, this might also be possible for vaccines.

One can conclude from the studies presented above that Fc-FcR interactions are an integral component of the immune response against RSV and should be considered in the rational design of next generation RSV-specific mAbs and vaccines. Only limited data is available on the effect of specific Fc-mediated antibody effector functions during RSV infection, but it is clear that these can be both beneficial and detrimental for protection against RSV infection and disease outcome. In the future, Fc-mediated effector functions might be harnessed to optimize the efficacy of RSV-specific mAbs and vaccine-induced antibodies. However, our current knowledge on the precise role of individual effector functions in RSV disease is too limited to rationally design such antibodies and vaccines. Therefore, until the individual contributions of Fc-mediated effector functions to protection and disease are unraveled, aiming to induce highly neutralizing antibodies seems the safest approach. These antibodies will need to halt the infection at the site of entry and thereby prevent excessive (antibody-mediated) immune activation. It remains to be seen whether complete neutralization can be achieved via the induction of serum IgG alone, or whether the induction of mucosal IgA is necessary for reliable neutralization activity. The many clinical trials that are currently ongoing with maternal and neonatal vaccine candidates will show whether these approaches indeed result in protection during the first, most vulnerable, months of life.

CONCLUDING REMARKS

Neutralizing antibody titers do not adequately correlate with protection against RSV disease. Interestingly, antibodies have additional Fc-mediated effector functions besides neutralization, but this area of research is currently underappreciated in the RSV field. With this review, we aim to encourage a paradigm shift from neutralization-based studies toward functional studies examining the precise role of Fc-mediated antibody effector functions in vaccine efficacy and RSV disease. We have evaluated the current literature on the effect of RSV-specific antibodies on NK cells, phagocytes, the complement system, cytokine production, and B- and T-cell skewing. Multiple *in vivo* studies using FcγR-knockout mice or modified RSV-specific antibodies indicate the importance of Fc-mediated effector functions in protection from RSV infection and disease (110, 159, 181, 211). In addition, Fc-mediated effector functions might have a role in ADE of RSV disease (22, 23). However, most studies into vaccine and mAb efficacy still only report antibody (neutralization) titers and disregard any Fc-mediated effector functions. The importance of these antibody effector functions has already been shown for multiple clinically important viral pathogens and is only starting to be explored for RSV. In our view, a better understanding of the broad range of effector mechanisms that are induced by RSV-specific antibodies will greatly contribute to the much-needed development and testing of next generation mAbs and vaccines against this virus.

AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

EvE, WL, and PvK conceived the topic and scope of this review. EvE researched the literature and designed the figures. EvE and PvK drafted the first version of the manuscript. WL and GF critically reviewed the manuscript. All authors approved the final manuscript.

FUNDING

This work was supported by the Dutch Ministry of Health, Welfare and Sport (Strategic Program RIVM S/112008), the Virgo consortium (FES0908), and the Netherlands Genomics Initiative (050-060-452).

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We want to thank Dr. Elise Hovingh for support on the design of the figures and Dr. Diana Wouters for helpful comments.

REFERENCES

1. Shi T, McAllister DA, O'Brien KL, Simoes, EAF, Madhi SA, Gessner BD, et al. Global, regional, and national disease burden estimates of acute lower respiratory infections due to respiratory syncytial virus in young children in 2015: a systematic review and modelling study. *Lancet.* (2017) 390:946–58. doi: 10.1016/S0140-6736(17)30938-8
2. Hall CB, Weinberg GA, Iwane MK, Blumkin AK, Edwards KM, Staat MA, et al. The burden of respiratory syncytial virus infection in young children. *N Engl J Med.* (2009) 360:588–98. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa0804877
3. Geoghegan S, Erviti A, Caballero MT, Vallone F, Zanone SM, Losada JV, et al. Mortality due to respiratory syncytial virus. Burden and Risk Factors. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med.* (2017) 195:96–103. doi: 10.1164/rccm.201603-0658OC
4. Glezen WP, Taber LH, Frank AL, Kasel JA. Risk of primary infection and reinfection with respiratory syncytial virus. *Am J Dis Child.* (1986) 140:543–6. doi: 10.1001/archpedi.1986.02140200053026
5. Eick A, Karron R, Shaw J, Thumar B, Reid R, Santosham M, et al. The role of neutralizing antibodies in protection of American Indian infants against respiratory syncytial virus disease. *Pediatr Infect Dis J.* (2008) 27:207–12. doi: 10.1097/INF.0b013e31815ac585
6. Chu HY, Steinhoff MC, Magaret A, Zaman K, Roy E, Langdon G, et al. Respiratory syncytial virus transplacental antibody transfer and kinetics in mother-infant pairs in Bangladesh. *J Infect Dis.* (2014) 210:1582–9. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jiu316
7. Vieira SE, Gilio AE, Durigon EL, Ejzenberg B. Lower respiratory tract infection caused by respiratory syncytial virus in infants: the role played by specific antibodies. *Clinics.* (2007) 62:709–16. doi: 10.1590/S1807-59322007000600009
8. Stensballe LG, Ravn H, Kristensen K, Agerskov K, Meakins T, Aaby P, et al. Respiratory syncytial virus neutralizing antibodies in cord blood, respiratory syncytial virus hospitalization, and recurrent wheeze. *J Allergy Clin Immunol.* (2009) 123:398–403. doi: 10.1016/j.jaci.2008.10.043
9. Nyiro JU, Sande CJ, Mutunga M, Kiyuka PK, Munywoki PK, Scott JA, et al. Absence of association between cord specific antibody levels and severe Respiratory Syncytial Virus (RSV) disease in early infants: a case control study from Coastal Kenya. *PLoS ONE.* (2016) 11:e0166706. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0166706
10. Chu HY, Tielsch J, Katz J, Magaret AS, Khatry S, LeClerq SC, et al. Transplacental transfer of maternal respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) antibody and protection against RSV disease in infants in rural Nepal. *J Clin Virol.* (2017) 95:90–5. doi: 10.1016/j.jcv.2017.08.017
11. Jans J, Wicht O, Widjaja I, Ahout IM, de Groot R, Guichelaar T, et al. Characteristics of RSV-specific maternal antibodies in plasma of hospitalized, acute RSV patients under three months of age. *PLoS ONE.* (2017) 12:e0170877. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0170877
12. Plotkin SA, Gilbert P. (2018). Correlates of protection. In: Plotkin SA, editor. *Plotkin's Vaccines.* 7th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier. 35–40. doi: 10.1016/B978-0-323-35761-6.00003-1
13. DiLillo DJ, Tan GS, Palese P, Ravetch JV. Broadly neutralizing hemagglutinin stalk-specific antibodies require FcγR interactions for protection against influenza virus *in vivo*. *Nat Med.* (2014) 20:143–51. doi: 10.1038/nm.3443
14. Henry Dunand CJ, Leon PE, Huang M, Choi A, Chromikova V, Ho IY, et al. Both neutralizing and non-neutralizing human H7N9 influenza vaccine-induced monoclonal antibodies confer protection. *Cell Host Microbe.* (2016) 19:800–13. doi: 10.1016/j.chom.2016.05.014
15. Vanderven HA, Liu L, Ana-Sosa-Batiz F, Nguyen TH, Wan Y, Wines B, et al. Fc functional antibodies in humans with severe H7N9 and seasonal influenza. *JCI Insight.* (2017) 2:92750. doi: 10.1172/jci.insight.92750
16. Hessell AJ, Hangartner L, Hunter M, Havenith CE, Beurskens FJ, Bakker JM, et al. Fc receptor but not complement binding is important in antibody protection against HIV. *Nature.* (2007) 449:101–4. doi: 10.1038/nature06106
17. Bournazos S, Klein F, Pietzsch J, Seaman MS, Nussenzweig MC, Ravetch JV. Broadly neutralizing anti-HIV-1 antibodies require Fc effector functions for *in vivo* activity. *Cell.* (2014) 158:1243–53. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2014.08.023
18. Gunn BM, Yu WH, Karim MM, Brannan JM, Herbert AS, Wec AZ, et al. A role for Fc function in therapeutic monoclonal antibody-mediated protection against ebola virus. *Cell Host Microbe.* (2018) 24:221–233.e225. doi: 10.1016/j.chom.2018.07.009
19. Saphire EO, Schendel SL, Fusco ML, Gangavarapu K, Gunn BM, Wec AZ, et al. Systematic analysis of monoclonal antibodies against ebola virus GP defines features that contribute to protection. *Cell.* (2018) 174:938–52 e913. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2018.07.033
20. Acosta EG, Bartenschlager R. Paradoxical role of antibodies in dengue virus infections: considerations for prophylactic vaccine development. *Expert Rev Vacc.* (2016) 15:467–82. doi: 10.1586/14760584.2016.1121814
21. Wang TT, Sewatanon J, Memoli MJ, Wrammert J, Bournazos S, Bhaumik SK, et al. IgG antibodies to dengue enhanced for FcγRIIIA binding determine disease severity. *Science.* (2017) 355:395–8. doi: 10.1126/science.aai8128
22. Polack FP, Teng MN, Collins PL, Prince GA, Exner M, Regele H, et al. A role for immune complexes in enhanced respiratory syncytial virus disease. *J Exp Med.* (2002) 196:859–65. doi: 10.1084/jem.20020781
23. Openshaw PJ, Tregoning JS. Immune responses and disease enhancement during respiratory syncytial virus infection. *Clin Microbiol Rev.* (2005) 18:541–55. doi: 10.1128/CMR.18.3.541-555.2005
24. Delgado MF, Coviello S, Monsalvo AC, Melendi GA, Hernandez JZ, Batalle JP, et al. Lack of antibody affinity maturation due to poor Toll-like receptor stimulation leads to enhanced respiratory syncytial virus disease. *Nat Med.* (2009) 15:34–41. doi: 10.1038/nm.1894
25. Smyth MJ, Cretney E, Kelly JM, Westwood JA, Street SE, Yagita H, et al. Activation of NK cell cytotoxicity. *Mol Immunol.* (2005) 42:501–10. doi: 10.1016/j.molimm.2004.07.034
26. Scott AM, Wolchok JD, Old LJ. Antibody therapy of cancer. *Nat Rev Cancer.* (2012) 12:278–87. doi: 10.1038/nrc3236
27. Bonsignori M, Pollara J, Moody MA, Alpert MD, Chen X, Hwang KK, et al. Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity-mediating antibodies from an HIV-1 vaccine efficacy trial target multiple epitopes and preferentially use the VH1 gene family. *J Virol.* (2012) 86:11521–32. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01023-12
28. Haynes BF, Gilbert PB, McElrath MJ, Zolla-Pazner S, Tomaras GD, Alam SM, et al. Immune-correlates analysis of an HIV-1 vaccine efficacy trial. *N Engl J Med.* (2012) 366:1275–86. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa1113425
29. Corey L, Gilbert PB, Tomaras GD, Haynes BF, Pantaleo G, Fauci AS. Immune correlates of vaccine protection against HIV-1 acquisition. *Sci Transl Med.* (2015) 7:310rv317. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.aac7732
30. Baum LL, Cassutt KJ, Knigge K, Khattri R, Margolick J, Rinaldo C, et al. HIV-1 gp120-specific antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity correlates with rate of disease progression. *J Immunol.* (1996) 157:2168–73.
31. Lambotte O, Ferrari G, Moog C, Yates NL, Liao HX, Parks RJ, et al. Heterogeneous neutralizing antibody and antibody-dependent cell cytotoxicity responses in HIV-1 elite controllers. *AIDS.* (2009) 23:897–906. doi: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e328329f97d
32. Wren LH, Chung AW, Isitman G, Kelleher AD, Parsons MS, Amin J, et al. Specific antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity responses associated with slow progression of HIV infection. *Immunology.* (2013) 138:116–23. doi: 10.1111/imm.12016
33. Ackerman ME, Mikhailova A, Brown EP, Dowell KG, Walker BD, Bailey-Kellogg C, et al. Polyfunctional HIV-Specific Antibody Responses Are Associated with Spontaneous HIV Control. *PLoS Pathog.* (2016) 12:e1005315. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1005315
34. Jegaskanda S, Luke C, Hickman HD, Sangster MY, Wieland-Alter WF, McBride JM, et al. Generation and protective ability of influenza virus-specific antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity in humans elicited by vaccination, natural infection, and experimental challenge. *J Infect Dis.* (2016) 214:945–52. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jiw262
35. Vanderven HA, Jegaskanda S, Wheatley AK, Kent SJ. Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity and influenza virus. *Curr Opin Virol.* (2017) 22:89–96. doi: 10.1016/j.coviro.2016.12.002
36. Huber VC, Lynch JM, Bucher DJ, Le J, Metzger DW. Fc receptor-mediated phagocytosis makes a significant contribution to clearance of influenza virus infections. *J Immunol.* (2001) 166:7381–8. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.166.12.7381
37. Khurana S, Loving CL, Manischewitz J, King LR, Gauger PC, Henningson J, et al. Vaccine-induced anti-HA2 antibodies promote virus fusion and enhance influenza virus respiratory disease. *Sci Transl Med.* (2013) 5:200ra114. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3006366
38. Co MD, Terajima M, Thomas SJ, Jarman RG, Rungrojcharoenkit K, Fernandez S, et al. Relationship of preexisting influenza hemagglutination

inhibition, complement-dependent lytic, and antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity antibodies to the development of clinical illness in a prospective study of A(H1N1)pdm09 Influenza in children. *Viral Immunol.* (2014) 27:375–82. doi: 10.1089/vim.2014.0061

39. Ye ZW, Yuan S, Poon KM, Wen L, Yang D, Sun Z, et al. Antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity epitopes on the hemagglutinin head region of pandemic H1N1 influenza virus play detrimental roles in H1N1-infected mice. *Front Immunol.* (2017) 8:317. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2017.00317
40. Garcia G, Arango M, Perez AB, Fonte L, Sierra B, Rodriguez-Roche R, et al. Antibodies from patients with dengue viral infection mediate cellular cytotoxicity. *J Clin Virol.* (2006) 37:53–7. doi: 10.1016/j.jcv.2006.04.010
41. Laoprasopwattana K, Libraty DH, Endy TP, Nisalak A, Chunsuttiwat S, Ennis FA, et al. Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity mediated by plasma obtained before secondary dengue virus infections: potential involvement in early control of viral replication. *J Infect Dis.* (2007) 195:1108–16. doi: 10.1086/512860
42. Liu Q, Fan C, Li Q, Zhou S, Huang W, Wang L, et al. Antibody-dependent-cellular-cytotoxicity-inducing antibodies significantly affect the post-exposure treatment of Ebola virus infection. *Sci Rep.* (2017) 7:45552. doi: 10.1038/srep45552
43. Hussell T, Openshaw PJ. Intracellular IFN-gamma expression in natural killer cells precedes lung CD8+ T cell recruitment during respiratory syncytial virus infection. *J Gen Virol.* (1998) 79(Pt 11):2593–601. doi: 10.1099/0022-1317-79-11-2593
44. Li F, Zhu H, Sun R, Wei H, Tian Z. Natural killer cells are involved in acute lung immune injury caused by respiratory syncytial virus infection. *J Virol.* (2012) 86:2251–8. doi: 10.1128/JVI.06209-11
45. Long X, Xie J, Zhao K, Li W, Tang W, Chen S, et al. NK cells contribute to persistent airway inflammation and AHR during the later stage of RSV infection in mice. *Med Microbiol Immunol.* (2016) 205:459–70. doi: 10.1007/s00430-016-0459-9
46. Welliver TP, Garofalo RP, Hosakote Y, Hintz KH, Avendano L, Sanchez K, et al. Severe human lower respiratory tract illness caused by respiratory syncytial virus and influenza virus is characterized by the absence of pulmonary cytotoxic lymphocyte responses. *J Infect Dis.* (2007) 195:1126–36. doi: 10.1086/512615
47. Larranaga CL, Ampuero SL, Luchsinger VF, Carrion FA, Aguilar NV, Morales PR, et al. Impaired immune response in severe human lower tract respiratory infection by respiratory syncytial virus. *Pediatr Infect Dis J.* (2009) 28:867–73. doi: 10.1097/INF.0b013e3181a3ea71
48. Brand HK, Ferwerda G, Preijers F, de Groot R, Neeleman C, Staal FJ, et al. CD4+ T-cell counts and interleukin-8 and CCL-5 plasma concentrations discriminate disease severity in children with RSV infection. *Pediatr Res.* (2013) 73:187–93. doi: 10.1038/pr.2012.163
49. Leahy TR, McManus R, Doherty DG, Grealy R, Coulter T, Smyth P, et al. Interleukin-15 is associated with disease severity in viral bronchiolitis. *Eur Respir J.* (2016) 47:212–22. doi: 10.1183/13993003.00642-2015
50. Tripp RA, Moore D, Barskey A IV, Jones L, Moscatiello C, Keyserling H, et al. Peripheral blood mononuclear cells from infants hospitalized because of respiratory syncytial virus infection express T helper-1 and T helper-2 cytokines and CC chemokine messenger RNA. *J Infect Dis.* (2002) 185:1388–94. doi: 10.1086/340505
51. Kerrin A, Fitch P, Errington C, Kerr D, Waxman L, Riding K, et al. Differential lower airway dendritic cell patterns may reveal distinct endotypes of RSV bronchiolitis. *Thorax.* (2017) 72:620–7. doi: 10.1136/thoraxjnl-2015-207358
52. Scott R, de Landazuri MO, Gardner PS, Owen JJ. Human antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity against target cells infected with respiratory syncytial virus. *Clin Exp Immunol.* (1977) 28:19–26.
53. Meguro H, Kervina M, Wright PF. Antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity against cells infected with respiratory syncytial virus: characterization of *in vitro* and *in vivo* properties. *J Immunol.* (1979) 122:2521–6.
54. McLellan JS, Chen M, Leung S, Graepel KW, Du X, Yang Y, et al. Structure of RSV fusion glycoprotein trimer bound to a prefusion-specific neutralizing antibody. *Science.* (2013) 340:1113–7. doi: 10.1126/science.1234914
55. Gupta N, LeGoff J, Chamat S, Mercier-Delarue S, Touzelet O, Power UF, et al. Affinity-purified respiratory syncytial virus antibodies from intravenous immunoglobulin exert potent antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity. *PLoS ONE.* (2013) 8:e69390. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0069390
56. Cortjens B, Yasuda E, Yu X, Wagner K, Claassen YB, Bakker AQ, et al. ls. *J Virol.* (2017) 91:e02357-16. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02357-16
57. Haynes LM, Caidi H, Radu GU, Miao C, Harcourt JL, Tripp RA, et al. Therapeutic monoclonal antibody treatment targeting respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) G protein mediates viral clearance and reduces the pathogenesis of RSV infection in BALB/c mice. *J Infect Dis.* (2009) 200:439–47. doi: 10.1086/600108
58. Miao C, Radu GU, Caidi H, Tripp RA, Anderson LJ, Haynes LM. Treatment with respiratory syncytial virus G glycoprotein monoclonal antibody or F(ab')2 components mediates reduced pulmonary inflammation in mice. *J Gen Virol.* (2009) 90(Pt 5):1119–23. doi: 10.1099/vir.0.009308-0
59. Kaul TN, Welliver RC, Ogra PL. Development of antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity in the respiratory tract after natural infection with respiratory syncytial virus. *Infect Immun.* (1982) 37:492–8.
60. Corbeil S, Seguin C, Trudel M. Involvement of the complement system in the protection of mice from challenge with respiratory syncytial virus Long strain following passive immunization with monoclonal antibody 18A2B2. *Vaccine.* (1996) 14:521–5. doi: 10.1016/0264-410X(95)00222-M
61. Mekseepralard C, Toms GL, Routledge EG. Protection of mice against Human respiratory syncytial virus by wild-type and aglycosyl mouse-human chimaeric IgG antibodies to subgroup-conserved epitopes on the G glycoprotein. *J Gen Virol.* (2006) 87(Pt 5):1267–73. doi: 10.1099/vir.0.81660-0
62. He W, Chen CJ, Mullarkey CE, Hamilton JR, Wong CK, Leon PE, et al. Alveolar macrophages are critical for broadly-reactive antibody-mediated protection against influenza A virus in mice. *Nat Commun.* (2017) 8:846. doi: 10.1038/s41467-017-00928-3
63. Ana-Sosa-Batiz F, Vanderven H, Jegaskanda S, Johnston A, Rockman S, Laurie K, et al. Influenza-specific antibody-dependent phagocytosis. *PLoS ONE.* (2016) 11:e0154461. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0154461
64. Baraniak I, Kropff B, Ambrose L, McIntosh M, McLean GR, Pichon S, et al. Protection from cytomegalovirus viremia following glycoprotein B vaccination is not dependent on neutralizing antibodies. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (2018) 115:6273–8. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1800224115
65. Nelson CS, Huffman T, Jenks JA, Cisneros de la Rosa E, Xie G, Vandergrift N, et al. HCMV glycoprotein B subunit vaccine efficacy mediated by nonneutralizing antibody effector functions. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2018) 115:6267–72. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1800177115
66. Barouch DH, Stephenson KE, Borducchi EN, Smith K, Stanley K, McNally AG, et al. Protective efficacy of a global HIV-1 mosaic vaccine against heterologous SHIV challenges in rhesus monkeys. *Cell.* (2013) 155:531–9. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2013.09.061
67. Barouch DH, Alter G, Broge T, Linde C, Ackerman ME, Brown EP, et al. Protective efficacy of adenovirus/protein vaccines against SIV challenges in rhesus monkeys. *Science.* (2015) 349:320–4. doi: 10.1126/science.aab3886
68. Zaiss AK, Vilaysane A, Cotter MJ, Clark SA, Meijndert HC, Colarusso P, et al. Antiviral antibodies target adenovirus to phagolysosomes and amplify the innate immune response. *J Immunol.* (2009) 182:7058–68. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.0804269
69. Vogt MR, Dowd KA, Engle M, Tesh RB, Johnson S, Pierson TC, et al. Poorly neutralizing cross-reactive antibodies against the fusion loop of West Nile virus envelope protein protect *in vivo* via Fcgamma receptor and complement-dependent effector mechanisms. *J Virol.* (2011) 85:11567–80. doi: 10.1128/JVI.05859-11
70. McCullough KC, Parkinson D, Crowther JR. Opsonization-enhanced phagocytosis of foot-and-mouth disease virus. *Immunology.* (1988) 65:187–91.
71. Quattrocchi V, Langellotti C, Pappalardo JS, Olivera V, Di Giacomo S, van Rooijen N, et al. Role of macrophages in early protective immune responses induced by two vaccines against foot and mouth disease. *Antiviral Res.* (2011) 92:262–70. doi: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2011.08.007
72. Faden H, Kaul TN, Ogra PL. Activation of oxidative and arachidonic acid metabolism in neutrophils by respiratory syncytial virus antibody complexes: possible role in disease. *J Infect Dis.* (1983) 148:110–6. doi: 10.1093/infdis/148.1.110

73. Arnold R, Werner F, Humbert B, Werchau H, Konig W. Effect of respiratory syncytial virus-antibody complexes on cytokine (IL-8, IL-6, TNF-alpha) release and respiratory burst in human granulocytes. *Immunology.* (1994) 82:184–91.
74. Kimpen JL, Garofalo R, Welliver RC, Fujihara K, Ogra PL. An ultrastructural study of the interaction of human eosinophils with respiratory syncytial virus. *Pediatr Allergy Immunol.* (1996) 7:48–53. doi: 10.1111/j.1399-3038.1996.tb00105.x
75. Bukreyev A, Yang L, Collins PL. The secreted G protein of human respiratory syncytial virus antagonizes antibody-mediated restriction of replication involving macrophages and complement. *J Virol.* (2012) 86:10880–4. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01162-12
76. Borsos T, Rapp HJ. Complement fixation on cell surfaces by 19S and 7S antibodies. *Science.* (1965) 150:505–6. doi: 10.1126/science.150.3695.505
77. Diebolder CA, Beurskens FJ, de Jong RN, Koning RI, Strumane K, Lindorfer MA, et al. Complement is activated by IgG hexamers assembled at the cell surface. *Science.* (2014) 343:1260–3. doi: 10.1126/science.1248943
78. Merle NS, Church SE, Fremeaux-Bacchi V, Roumenina LT. Complement system part I - molecular mechanisms of activation and regulation. *Front Immunol.* (2015) 6:262. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2015.00262
79. Merle NS, Noe R, Halbwachs-Mecarelli L, Fremeaux-Bacchi V, Roumenina LT. Complement system part II: role in immunity. *Front Immunol.* (2015) 6:257. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2015.00257
80. Hebell T, Ahearn JM, Fearon DT. Suppression of the immune response by a soluble complement receptor of B lymphocytes. *Science.* (1991) 254:102–5. doi: 10.1126/science.1718035
81. Gonzalez SF, Lukacs-Kornek V, Kuligowski MP, Pitcher LA, Degn SE, Turley SJ, et al. Complement-dependent transport of antigen into B cell follicles. *J Immunol.* (2010) 185:2659–64. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1000522
82. Mehlhop E, Nelson S, Jost CA, Gorlatov S, Johnson S, Fremont DH, et al. Complement protein C1q reduces the stoichiometric threshold for antibody-mediated neutralization of West Nile virus. *Cell Host Microbe.* (2009) 6:381–91. doi: 10.1016/j.chom.2009.09.003
83. Wu Y, Cho M, Shore D, Song M, Choi J, Jiang T, et al. A potent broad-spectrum protective human monoclonal antibody crosslinking two haemagglutinin monomers of influenza A virus. *Nat Commun.* (2015) 6:7708. doi: 10.1038/ncomms8708
84. Benhnia MR, McCausland MM, Laudenslager J, Granger SW, Rickert S, Koriazova L, et al. Heavily isotype-dependent protective activities of human antibodies against vaccinia virus extracellular virion antigen B5. *J Virol.* (2009) 83:12355–67. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01593-09
85. Li F, Freed DC, Tang A, Rustandi RR, Troutman MC, Espeseth AS, et al. Complement enhances *in vitro* neutralizing potency of antibodies to human cytomegalovirus glycoprotein B (gB) and immune sera induced by gB/MF59 vaccination. *NPJ Vacc.* (2017) 2:36. doi: 10.1038/s41541-017-0038-0
86. Churdboonchart V, Bhamarapravati N, Futrakul P. Crossed immunoelectrophoresis for the detection of split products of the third complement in dengue hemorrhagic fever. I. Observations in patients' plasma. *Am J Trop Med Hyg.* (1983) 32:569–76. doi: 10.4269/ajtmh.1983.32.569
87. Nascimento EJ, Silva AM, Cordeiro MT, Brito CA, Gil LH, Braga-Neto U, et al. Alternative complement pathway deregulation is correlated with dengue severity. *PLoS ONE.* (2009) 4:e6782. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0006782
88. Senaldi G, Peakman M, McManus T, Davies ET, Tee DE, Vergani D. Activation of the complement system in human immunodeficiency virus infection: relevance of the classical pathway to pathogenesis and disease severity. *J Infect Dis.* (1990) 162:1227–32. doi: 10.1093/infdis/162.6.1227
89. Fust G, Toth FD, Kiss J, Ujhelyi E, Nagy I, Banhegyi D. Neutralizing and enhancing antibodies measured in complement-restored serum samples from HIV-1-infected individuals correlate with immunosuppression and disease. *AIDS.* (1994) 8:603–9. doi: 10.1097/00002030-199405000-00005
90. Kaul TN, Welliver RC, Ogra PL. Appearance of complement components and immunoglobulins on nasopharyngeal epithelial cells following naturally acquired infection with respiratory syncytial virus. *J Med Virol.* (1982) 9:149–58. doi: 10.1002/jmv.1890090210
91. Kaul TN, Welliver RC, Ogra PL. Comparison of fluorescent-antibody, neutralizing-antibody, and complement-enhanced neutralizing-antibody assays for detection of serum antibody to respiratory syncytial virus. *J Clin Microbiol.* (1981) 13:957–62.
92. Kruijsen D, Bakkers MJ, van Uden NO, Viveen MC, van der Sluis TC, Kimpen JL, et al. Serum antibodies critically affect virus-specific CD4+/CD8+ T cell balance during respiratory syncytial virus infections. *J Immunol.* (2010) 185:6489–98. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1002645
93. Melendi GA, Hoffman SJ, Karron RA, Irusta PM, Laham FR, Humbles A, et al. C5 modulates airway hyperreactivity and pulmonary eosinophilia during enhanced respiratory syncytial virus disease by decreasing C3a receptor expression. *J Virol.* (2007) 81:991–9. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01783-06
94. Bera MM, Lu B, Martin TR, Cui S, Rhein LM, Gerard C, et al. Th17 cytokines are critical for respiratory syncytial virus-associated airway hyperreponsiveness through regulation by complement C3a and tachykinins. *J Immunol.* (2011) 187:4245–55. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1101789
95. Hu X, Li X, Hu C, Qin L, He R, Luo L, et al. Respiratory Syncytial Virus Exacerbates OVA-mediated asthma in mice through C5a-C5aR regulating CD4(+)T cells Immune Responses. *Sci Rep.* (2017) 7:15207. doi: 10.1038/s41598-017-15471-w
96. Bradley T, Pollara J, Santra S, Vandergrift N, Pittala S, Bailey-Kellogg C, et al. Pentavalent HIV-1 vaccine protects against simian-human immunodeficiency virus challenge. *Nat Commun.* (2017) 8:15711. doi: 10.1038/ncomms15711
97. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Fcgamma receptors: old friends and new family members. *Immunity.* (2006) 24:19–28. doi: 10.1016/j.immuni.2005.11.010
98. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Anti-inflammatory actions of intravenous immunoglobulin. *Annu Rev Immunol.* (2008) 26:513–33. doi: 10.1146/annurev.immunol.26.021607.090232
99. Pearse RN, Kawabe T, Bolland S, Guinamard R, Kurosaki T, Ravetch JV. SHIP recruitment attenuates Fc gamma RIIB-induced B cell apoptosis. *Immunity.* (1999) 10:753–60. doi: 10.1016/S1074-7613(00)80074-6
100. Bolland S, Ravetch JV. Spontaneous autoimmune disease in Fc(gamma)RIIB-deficient mice results from strain-specific epistasis. *Immunity.* (2000) 13:277–85. doi: 10.1016/S1074-7613(00)00027-3
101. Wang TT, Maamary J, Tan GS, Bournazos S, Davis CW, Krammer F, et al. Anti-HA glycoforms drive B cell affinity selection and determine influenza vaccine efficacy. *Cell.* (2015) 162:160–9. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2015.06.026
102. Amigorena S, Salamero J, Davoust J, Fridman WH, Bonnerot C. Tyrosine-containing motif that transduces cell activation signals also determines internalization and antigen presentation via type III receptors for IgG. *Nature.* (1992) 358:337–41. doi: 10.1038/358337a0
103. Boruchov AM, Heller G, Veri MC, Bonvini E, Ravetch JV, Young JW. Activating and inhibitory IgG Fc receptors on human DCs mediate opposing functions. *J Clin Invest.* (2005) 115:2914–23. doi: 10.1172/JCI24772
104. Dhodapkar KM, Kaufman JL, Ehlers M, Banerjee DK, Bonvini E, Koenig S, et al. Selective blockade of inhibitory Fcgamma receptor enables human dendritic cell maturation with IL-12p70 production and immunity to antibody-coated tumor cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (2005) 102:2910–5. doi: 10.1073/pnas.0500014102
105. Dhodapkar KM, Banerjee D, Connolly J, Kukreja A, Matayeva E, Veri MC, et al. Selective blockade of the inhibitory Fcgamma receptor (FcgammaRIIB) in human dendritic cells and monocytes induces a type I interferon response program. *J Exp Med.* (2007) 204:1359–69. doi: 10.1084/jem.20062545
106. Anderson CF, Mosser DM. Cutting edge: biasing immune responses by directing antigen to macrophage Fc gamma receptors. *J Immunol.* (2002) 168:3697–701. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.168.8.3697
107. Kaul TN, Faden H, Ogra PL. Effect of respiratory syncytial virus and virus-antibody complexes on the oxidative metabolism of human neutrophils. *Infect Immun.* (1981) 32:649–54.
108. Everard ML, Swarbrick A, Wrightham M, McIntyre J, Dunkley C, James PD, et al. Analysis of cells obtained by bronchial lavage of infants with respiratory syncytial virus infection. *Arch Dis Child.* (1994) 71:428–32. doi: 10.1136/adc.71.5.428
109. Bataki EL, Evans GS, Everard ML. Respiratory syncytial virus and neutrophil activation. *Clin Exp Immunol.* (2005) 140:470–7. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2249.2005.02780.x

110. Gomez RS, Ramirez BA, Cespedes PF, Cautivo KM, Riquelme SA, Prado CE, et al. Contribution of Fcγ receptors to human respiratory syncytial virus pathogenesis and the impairment of T cell activation by dendritic cells. *Immunology*. (2015) 147:55–72. doi: 10.1111/imm.12541
111. Schijf MA, Lukens MV, Kruijsen D, van Uden NO, Garssen J, Coenjaerts FE, et al. Respiratory syncytial virus induced type I IFN production by pDC is regulated by RSV-infected airway epithelial cells, RSV-exposed monocytes and virus specific antibodies. *PLoS ONE.* (2013) 8:e81695. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0081695
112. Vissers M, Schreurs I, Jans J, Heldens J, de Groot R, de Jonge MI, et al. Antibodies enhance CXCL10 production during RSV infection of infant and adult immune cells. *Cytokine.* (2015) 76:458–64. doi: 10.1016/j.cyto.2015.07.024
113. Ichikawa A, Kuba K, Morita M, Chida S, Tezuka H, Hara H, et al. CXCL10-CXCR3 enhances the development of neutrophil-mediated fulminant lung injury of viral and nonviral origin. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med.* (2013) 187:65–77. doi: 10.1164/rccm.201203-0508OC
114. Halstead SB, Mahalingam S, Marovich MA, Ubol S, Mosser DM. Intrinsic antibody-dependent enhancement of microbial infection in macrophages: disease regulation by immune complexes. *Lancet Infect Dis.* (2010) 10:712–22. doi: 10.1016/S1473-3099(10)70166-3
115. Taylor A, Foo SS, Bruzzone R, Vu Dinh L, King NJ, Mahalingam S. Fc receptors in antibody-dependent enhancement of viral infections. *Immunol Rev.* (2015) 268:340–64. doi: 10.1111/imr.12367
116. Krilov LR, Anderson LJ, Marcoux L, Bonagura VR, Wedgwood JF. Antibody-mediated enhancement of respiratory syncytial virus infection in two monocyte/macrophage cell lines. *J Infect Dis.* (1989) 160:777–82. doi: 10.1093/infdis/160.5.777
117. Osiowy C, Horne D, Anderson R. Antibody-dependent enhancement of respiratory syncytial virus infection by sera from young infants. *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol.* (1994) 1:670–77.
118. Gimenez HB, Chisholm S, Dornan J, Cash P. Neutralizing and enhancing activities of human respiratory syncytial virus-specific antibodies. *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol.* (1996) 3:280–6.
119. van Erp EA, van Kasteren PB, Guichelaar T, Ahout IML, de Haan CAM, Luytjes W, et al. *In vitro* enhancement of respiratory syncytial virus infection by maternal antibodies does not explain disease severity in infants. *J Virol.* (2017) 91:e00851-17. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00851-17
120. van Erp EA, Feyaerts D, Duijst M, Mulder HL, Wicht O, Luytjes W, et al. Respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) infects primary neonatal and adult natural killer cells and affects their antiviral effector function. *J Infect Dis.* (2018) 219:723–33. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jiy566
121. Mascola JR, Mathieson BJ, Zack PM, Walker MC, Halstead SB, Burke DS. Summary report: workshop on the potential risks of antibody-dependent enhancement in human HIV vaccine trials. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses.* (1993) 9:1175–84. doi: 10.1089/aid.1993.9.1175
122. Polack FP. Atypical measles and enhanced respiratory syncytial virus disease (ERD) made simple. *Pediatr Res.* (2007) 62:111–5. doi: 10.1203/PDR.0b013e3180686ce0
123. Skowronski DM, De Serres G, Crowcroft NS, Janjua NZ, Boulianne N, Hottes TS, et al. Association between the 2008-09 seasonal influenza vaccine and pandemic H1N1 illness during Spring-Summer 2009: four observational studies from Canada. *PLoS Med.* (2010) 7:e1000258. doi: 10.1371/journal.pmed.1000258
124. Katzelnick LC, Gresh L, Halloran ME, Mercado JC, Kuan G, Gordon A, et al. Antibody-dependent enhancement of severe dengue disease in humans. *Science.* (2017) 358:929–32. doi: 10.1126/science.aan6836
125. Murphy BR, Sotnikov AV, Lawrence LA, Banks SM, Prince GA. Enhanced pulmonary histopathology is observed in cotton rats immunized with formalin-inactivated respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) or purified F glycoprotein and challenged with RSV 3-6 months after immunization. *Vaccine.* (1990) 8:497–502.
126. Murphy BR, Sotnikov A, Paradiso PR, Hildreth SW, Jenson AB, Baggs RB, et al. Immunization of cotton rats with the fusion (F) and large (G) glycoproteins of respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) protects against RSV challenge without potentiating RSV disease. *Vaccine.* (1989) 7:533–40.
127. Schneider-Ohrum K, Cayatte C, Bennett AS, Rajani GM, McTamney P, Nacel K, et al. Immunization with low doses of recombinant postfusion or prefusion respiratory syncytial virus F primes for vaccine-enhanced disease in the cotton rat model independently of the presence of a Th1-Biasing (GLA-SE) or Th2-biasing (alum) adjuvant. *J Virol.* (2017) 91:e02180–16. doi: 10.1128/jvi.02180-16
128. Aleyd E, Heineke MH, van Egmond M. The era of the immunoglobulin A Fc receptor FcαRI; its function and potential as target in disease. *Immunol Rev.* (2015) 268:123–38. doi: 10.1111/imr.12337
129. Vidarsson G, Dekkers G, Rispens T. IgG subclasses and allotypes: from structure to effector functions. *Front Immunol.* (2014) 5:520. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2014.00520
130. Bruhns P, Iannascoli B, England P, Mancardi DA, Fernandez N, Jorieux S, et al. Specificity and affinity of human Fcgamma receptors and their polymorphic variants for human IgG subclasses. *Blood.* (2009) 113:3716–25. doi: 10.1182/blood-2008-09-179754
131. Jennewein MF, Alter G. The immunoregulatory roles of antibody glycosylation. *Trends Immunol.* (2017) 38:358–72. doi: 10.1016/j.it.2017.02.004
132. Pone EJ, Zhang J, Mai T, White CA, Li G, Sakakura JK, et al. BCR-signalling synergizes with TLR-signalling for induction of AID and immunoglobulin class-switching through the non-canonical NF-kappaB pathway. *Nat Commun.* (2012) 3:767. doi: 10.1038/ncomms1769
133. Wagner DK, Graham BS, Wright PF, Walsh EE, Kim HW, Reimer CB, et al. Serum immunoglobulin G antibody subclass responses to respiratory syncytial virus F and G glycoproteins after primary infection. *J Clin Microbiol.* (1986) 24:304–6.
134. Watt PJ, Zardis M, Lambden PR. Age related IgG subclass response to respiratory syncytial virus fusion protein in infected infants. *Clin Exp Immunol.* (1986) 64:503–9.
135. Ferrante A, Beard LJ, Feldman RG. IgG subclass distribution of antibodies to bacterial and viral antigens. *Pediatr Infect Dis J.* (1990) 9(8 Suppl.):S16–24. doi: 10.1097/00006454-199008001-00004
136. Bruggemann M, Williams GT, Bindon CI, Clark MR, Walker MR, Jefferis R, et al. Comparison of the effector functions of human immunoglobulins using a matched set of chimeric antibodies. *J Exp Med.* (1987) 166:1351–61. doi: 10.1084/jem.166.5.1351
137. Tay MZ, Liu P, Williams LD, McRaven MD, Sawant S, Gurley TC, et al. Antibody-mediated internalization of infectious HIV-1 virions differs among antibody isotypes and subclasses. *PLoS Pathog.* (2016) 12:e1005817. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1005817
138. Stapleton NM, Andersen JT, Stemerding AM, Bjarnarson SP, Verheul RC, Gerritsen J, et al. Competition for FcRn-mediated transport gives rise to short half-life of human IgG3 and offers therapeutic potential. *Nat Commun.* (2011) 2:599. doi: 10.1038/ncomms1608
139. Bournazos S, Ravetch JV. Fcγ receptor function and the design of vaccination strategies. *Immunity.* (2017) 47:224–33. doi: 10.1016/j.immuni.2017.07.009
140. Chung AW, Ghebremichael M, Robinson H, Brown E, Choi I, Lane S, et al. Polyfunctional Fc-effector profiles mediated by IgG subclass selection distinguish RV144 and VAX003 vaccines. *Sci Transl Med.* (2014) 6:228ra238. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3007736
141. Habibi MS, Jozwik A, Makris S, Dunning J, Paras A, DeVincenzo JP, et al. Impaired Antibody-mediated protection and defective IgA B-cell memory in experimental infection of adults with respiratory syncytial virus. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med.* (2015) 191:1040–9. doi: 10.1164/rccm.201412-2256OC
142. Walsh EE, Falsey AR. Humoral and mucosal immunity in protection from natural respiratory syncytial virus infection in adults. *J Infect Dis.* (2004) 190:373–8. doi: 10.1086/421524
143. Leschinskaya NP, Pokrovskaya EE, Kantorovitch EA, Grigorjeva SK, Shvartsman Ya S. Ontogenesis of the formation of secretory antibodies to respiratory syncytial (RS) virus. *Epidemiol Infect.* (1988) 101:565–75.
144. Jacobino SR, Nederend M, Reijneveld JF, Augustijn D, Jansen JHM, Meeldijk J, et al. Reformatting palivizumab and motavizumab from IgG to human IgA impairs their efficacy against RSV infection *in vitro* and *in vivo*. *MAbs.* (2018) 10:453–62. doi: 10.1080/19420862.2018.1433974
145. Welliver RC, Wong DT, Sun M, Middleton E Jr, Vaughan RS, et al. The development of respiratory syncytial virus-specific IgE and the release of histamine in nasopharyngeal secretions after infection. *N Engl J Med.* (1981) 305:841–6. doi: 10.1056/NEJM198110083051501

146. Russi JC, Delfraro A, Borthagaray MD, Velazquez B, Garcia-Barreno B, Hortal M. Evaluation of immunoglobulin E-specific antibodies and viral antigens in nasopharyngeal secretions of children with respiratory syncytial virus infections. *J Clin Microbiol.* (1993) 31:819–23.
147. Welliver RC, Duffy L. The relationship of RSV-specific immunoglobulin E antibody responses in infancy, recurrent wheezing, and pulmonary function at age 7-8 years. *Pediatr Pulmonol.* (1993) 15:19–27. doi: 10.1002/ppul.1950150104
148. Smith-Norowitz TA, Mandal M, Joks R, Norowitz LT, Weaver D, Durkin HG, et al. IgE anti-respiratory syncytial virus antibodies detected in serum of pediatric patients with asthma. *Hum Immunol.* (2015) 76:519–24. doi: 10.1016/j.humimm.2015.06.002
149. Dakhama A, Lee YM, Ohnishi H, Jing X, Balhorn A, Takeda K, et al. Virus-specific IgE enhances airway responsiveness on reinfection with respiratory syncytial virus in newborn mice. *J Allergy Clin Immunol.* (2009) 123:138–145.e135. doi: 10.1016/j.jaci.2008.10.012
150. Welliver RC, Kaul TN, Ogra PL. The appearance of cell-bound IgE in respiratory-tract epithelium after respiratory-syncytial-virus infection. *N Engl J Med.* (1980) 303:1198–202. doi: 10.1056/NEJM198011203032103
151. Welliver RC, Sun M, Rinaldo D, Ogra PL. Predictive value of respiratory syncytial virus-specific IgE responses for recurrent wheezing following bronchiolitis. *J Pediatr.* (1986) 109:776–80. doi: 10.1016/S0022-3476(86)80692-8
152. Lee Chung H, Jang YY. High serum IgE level in the children with acute respiratory syncytial virus infection is associated with severe disease. *J Allergy Clin Immunol.* (2016) 137:AB110. doi: 10.1016/j.jaci.2015.12.486
153. Wagner DK, Nelson DL, Walsh EE, Reimer CB, Henderson FW, Murphy BR. Differential immunoglobulin G subclass antibody titers to respiratory syncytial virus F and G glycoproteins in adults. *J Clin Microbiol.* (1987) 25:748–50.
154. Wagner DK, Muelenaer P, Henderson FW, Snyder MH, Reimer CB, Walsh EE, et al. Serum immunoglobulin G antibody subclass response to respiratory syncytial virus F and G glycoproteins after first, second, and third infections. *J Clin Microbiol.* (1989) 27:589–92.
155. Jounai N, Yoshioka M, Tozuka M, Inoue K, Oka T, Miyaji K, et al. Age-specific profiles of antibody responses against respiratory syncytial virus infection. *EBioMed.* (2017) 16:124–35. doi: 10.1016/j.ebiom.2017.01.014
156. Stevens TL, Bossie A, Sanders VM, Fernandez-Botran R, Coffman RL, Mosmann TR, et al. Regulation of antibody isotype secretion by subsets of antigen-specific helper T cells. *Nature.* (1988) 334:255–8. doi: 10.1038/334255a0
157. Tregoning JS, Wang BL, McDonald JU, Yamaguchi Y, Harker JA, Goritzka M, et al. Neonatal antibody responses are attenuated by interferon-γ produced by NK and T cells during RSV infection. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (2013) 110:5576–81. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1214247110
158. Reuman PD, Keely SP, Schiff GM. Comparison of class and subclass antibody response to live and UV-inactivated RSV administered intranasally in mice. *J Med Virol.* (1991) 35:198–205. doi: 10.1002/jmv.1890350310
159. Hiatt A, Bohorova N, Bohorov O, Goodman C, Kim D, Pauly MH, et al. Glycan variants of a respiratory syncytial virus antibody with enhanced effector function and *in vivo* efficacy. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (2014) 111:5992–7. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1402458111
160. Umana P, Jean-Mairet J, Moudry R, Amstutz H, Bailey JE. Engineered glycoforms of an antineuroblastoma IgG1 with optimized antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxic activity. *Nat Biotechnol.* (1999) 17:176–80. doi: 10.1038/6179
161. Shields RL, Lai J, Keck R, O'Connell LY, Hong K, Meng YG, et al. Lack of fucose on human IgG1 N-linked oligosaccharide improves binding to human Fcgamma RIII and antibody-dependent cellular toxicity. *J Biol Chem.* (2002) 277:26733–40. doi: 10.1074/jbc.M202069200
162. Ferrara C, Grau S, Jager C, Sondermann P, Brunker P, Waldhauer I, et al. Unique carbohydrate-carbohydrate interactions are required for high affinity binding between FcgammaRIII and antibodies lacking core fucose. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (2011) 108:12669–74. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1108455108
163. Forthal DN, Gach JS, Landucci G, Jez J, Strasser R, Kunert R, et al. Fc-glycosylation influences Fcγ receptor binding and cell-mediated anti-HIV activity of monoclonal antibody 2G12. *J Immunol.* (2010) 185:6876–82. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1002600
164. Zeitlin L, Pettitt J, Scully C, Bohorova N, Kim D, Pauly M, et al. Enhanced potency of a fucose-free monoclonal antibody being developed as an Ebola virus immunoprotectant. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (2011) 108:20690–4. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1108360108
165. Junttila TT, Parsons K, Olsson C, Lu Y, Xin Y, Theriault J, et al. Superior *in vivo* efficacy of afucosylated trastuzumab in the treatment of HER2-amplified breast cancer. *Cancer Res.* (2010) 70:4481–9. doi: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-09-3704
166. Dalle S, Reslan L, Besseyre de Horts T, Herveau S, Herting F, Plesa A, et al. Preclinical studies on the mechanism of action and the anti-lymphoma activity of the novel anti-CD20 antibody GA101. *Mol Cancer Ther.* (2011) 10:178–85. doi: 10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-10-0385
167. Kaneko Y, Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Anti-inflammatory activity of immunoglobulin G resulting from Fc sialylation. *Science.* (2006) 313:670–3. doi: 10.1126/science.1129594
168. Dekkers G, Treffers L, Plomp R, Bentlage AEH, de Boer M, Koeleman CAM, et al. Decoding the human immunoglobulin G-Glycan repertoire reveals a spectrum of Fc-receptor- and complement-mediated-effector activities. *Front Immunol.* (2017) 8:877. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2017.00877
169. Maverakis E, Kim K, Shimoda M, Gershwin ME, Patel F, Wilken R, et al. Glycans in the immune system and The Altered Glycan Theory of Autoimmunity: a critical review. *J Autoimmun.* (2015) 57:1–13. doi: 10.1016/j.jaut.2014.12.002
170. Rook GA, Steele J, Brealey R, Whyte A, Isenberg D, Sumar N, et al. Changes in IgG glycoform levels are associated with remission of arthritis during pregnancy. *J Autoimmun.* 4:779–94. doi: 10.1016/0896-8411(91)90173-A
171. van de Geijn FE, Wuhrer M, Selman MH, Willemsen SP, de Man YA, Deelder AM, et al. Immunoglobulin G galactosylation and sialylation are associated with pregnancy-induced improvement of rheumatoid arthritis and the postpartum flare: results from a large prospective cohort study. *Arthritis Res Ther.* (2009) 11:R193. doi: 10.1186/ar2892
172. Mahan AE, Jennewein MF, Suscovich T, Dionne K, Tedesco J, Chung AW, et al. Antigen-specific antibody glycosylation is regulated via vaccination. *PLoS Pathog.* (2016) 12:e1005456. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1005456
173. Shim H. One target, different effects: a comparison of distinct therapeutic antibodies against the same targets. *Exp Mol Med.* (2011) 43:539–49. doi: 10.3858/emm.2011.43.10.063
174. He W, Tan GS, Mullarkey CE, Lee AJ, Lam MM, Krammer F, et al. Epitope specificity plays a critical role in regulating antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity against influenza A virus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (2016) 113:11931–6. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1609316113
175. Cleary KLS, Chan HTC, James S, Glennie MJ, Cragg MS. Antibody distance from the cell membrane regulates antibody effector mechanisms. *J Immunol.* (2017) 198:3999–4011. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1601473
176. Jegaskanda S, Job ER, Kramski M, Laurie K, Isitman G, de Rose R, et al. Cross-reactive influenza-specific antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity antibodies in the absence of neutralizing antibodies. *J Immunol.* (2013) 190:1837–48. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1201574
177. Bakalar MH, Joffe AM, Schmid EM, Son S, Podolski M, Fletcher DA. Size-dependent segregation controls macrophage phagocytosis of antibody-opsonized targets. *Cell.* (2018) 174:131–142.e113. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2018.05.059
178. Connors M, Collins PL, Firestone CY, Murphy BR. Respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) F, G, M2 (22K), and N proteins each induce resistance to RSV challenge, but resistance induced by M2 and N proteins is relatively short-lived. *J Virol.* (1991) 65:1634–7.
179. Akerlind-Stopner B, Hu A, Mufson MA, Utter G, Norrby E. Antibody responses of children to the C-terminal peptide of the SH protein of respiratory syncytial virus and the immunological characterization of this protein. *J Med Virol.* (1993) 40:112–20. doi: 10.1002/jmv.1890400207
180. Kumari S, Crim RL, Kulkarni A, Audet SA, Mdluli T, Murata H, et al. Development of a luciferase immunoprecipitation system assay to detect IgG antibodies against human respiratory syncytial virus nucleoprotein. *Clin Vaccine Immunol.* (2014) 21:383–90. doi: 10.1128/CVI.00594-13
181. Schepens B, Sedeyn K, Vande Ginste L, De Baets S, Schotsaert M, Roose K, et al. Protection and mechanism of action of a novel human respiratory syncytial virus vaccine candidate based on the extracellular domain of small hydrophobic protein. *EMBO Mol Med.* (2014) 6:1436–54. doi: 10.15252/emmm.201404005
182. Capella C, Chaiwatpongsakorn S, Gorrell E, Risch ZA, Ye F, Mertz SE, et al. Prefusion F, postfusion F, G antibodies and disease severity in infants and

young children with acute respiratory syncytial virus infection. *J Infect Dis.* (2017). doi: 10.1093/infdis/jix489
183. Gilman MS, Castellanos CA, Chen M, Ngwuta JO, Goodwin E, Moin SM, et al. Rapid profiling of RSV antibody repertoires from the memory B cells of naturally infected adult donors. *Sci Immunol.* (2016) 1:eaaj1879. doi: 10.1126/sciimmunol.aaj1879
184. Mousa JJ, Kose N, Matta P, Gilchuk P, Crowe JE Jr. A novel pre-fusion conformation-specific neutralizing epitope on the respiratory syncytial virus fusion protein. *Nat Microbiol.* (2017) 2:16271. doi: 10.1038/nmicrobiol.2016.271
185. Ngwuta JO, Chen M, Modjarrad K, Joyce MG, Kanekiyo M, Kumar A, et al. Prefusion F-specific antibodies determine the magnitude of RSV neutralizing activity in human sera. *Sci Transl Med.* (2015) 7:309ra162. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.aac4241
186. Fedechkin SO, George NL, Wolff JT, Kauvar LM, DuBois RM. Structures of respiratory syncytial virus G antigen bound to broadly neutralizing antibodies. *Sci Immunol.* (2018) 3:eaar3534. doi: 10.1126/sciimmunol.aar3534
187. Johnson SM, McNally BA, Ioannidis I, Flano E, Teng MN, Oomens AG, et al. Respiratory syncytial virus uses CX3CR1 as a receptor on primary human airway epithelial cultures. *PLoS Pathog.* (2015) 11:e1005318. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1005318
188. Boyoglu-Barnum S, Todd SO, Chirkova T, Barnum TR, Gaston KA, Haynes LM, et al. An anti-G protein monoclonal antibody treats RSV disease more effectively than an anti-F monoclonal antibody in BALB/c mice. *Virology.* (2015) 483:117–25. doi: 10.1016/j.virol.2015.02.035
189. Tripp RA, Jones LP, Haynes LM, Zheng H, Murphy PM, Anderson LJ. CX3C chemokine mimicry by respiratory syncytial virus G glycoprotein. *Nat Immunol.* (2001) 2:732–8. doi: 10.1038/90675
190. Fuentes S, Coyle EM, Beeler J, Golding H, Khurana S. Antigenic fingerprinting following primary RSV infection in young children identifies novel antigenic sites and reveals unlinked evolution of human antibody repertoires to fusion and attachment glycoproteins. *PLoS Pathog.* (2016) 12:e1005554. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1005554
191. Goodier MR, Lusa C, Sherratt S, Rodriguez-Galan A, Behrens R, Riley EM. Sustained immune complex-mediated reduction in CD16 expression after vaccination regulates NK cell function. *Front Immunol.* (2016) 7:384. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2016.00384
192. van Egmond M, Vidarsson G, Bakema JE. Cross-talk between pathogen recognizing Toll-like receptors and immunoglobulin Fc receptors in immunity. *Immunol Rev.* (2015) 268:311–27. doi: 10.1111/imr.12333
193. Bournazos S, Woof JM, Hart SP, Dransfield I. Functional and clinical consequences of Fc receptor polymorphic and copy number variants. *Clin Exp Immunol.* (2009) 157:244–54. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2249.2009.03980.x
194. Warmerdam PA, van de Winkel JG, Gosselin EJ, Capel PJ. Molecular basis for a polymorphism of human Fc gamma receptor II (CD32). *J Exp Med.* (1990) 172:19–25. doi: 10.1084/jem.172.1.19
195. Salmon JE, Edberg JC, Brogle NL, Kimberly RP. Allelic polymorphisms of human Fc gamma receptor IIA and Fc gamma receptor IIIB. Independent mechanisms for differences in human phagocyte function. *J Clin Invest.* (1992) 89:1274–81. doi: 10.1172/JCI115712
196. Koene HR, Kleijer M, Algra J, Roos D, von dem Borne AE, de Haas M. Fc gammaRIIIa-158V/F polymorphism influences the binding of IgG by natural killer cell Fc gammaRIIIa, independently of the Fc gammaRIIIa-48L/R/H phenotype. *Blood.* (1997) 90:1109–14.
197. Wu J, Edberg JC, Redecha PB, Bansal V, Guyre PM, Coleman K, et al. A novel polymorphism of FcgammaRIIIa (CD16) alters receptor function and predisposes to autoimmune disease. *J Clin Invest.* (1997) 100:1059–70. doi: 10.1172/JCI119616
198. Guerrero-Plata A, Ortega E, Gomez B. Persistence of respiratory syncytial virus in macrophages alters phagocytosis and pro-inflammatory cytokine production. *Viral Immunol.* (2001) 14:19–30. doi: 10.1089/08828240151061347
199. Li X, Kimberly RP. Targeting the Fc receptor in autoimmune disease. *Expert Opin Ther Targets.* (2014) 18:335–50. doi: 10.1517/14728222.2014.877891
200. Mellor JD, Brown MP, Irving HR, Zalcberg JR, Dobrovic A. A critical review of the role of Fc gamma receptor polymorphisms in the response to monoclonal antibodies in cancer. *J Hematol Oncol.* (2013) 6:1. doi: 10.1186/1756-8722-6-1
201. Forthal DN, Gabriel EE, Wang A, Landucci G, Phan TB. Association of Fcγ receptor IIIa genotype with the rate of HIV infection after gp120 vaccination. *Blood.* (2012) 120:2836–42. doi: 10.1182/blood-2012-05-431361
202. Li SS, Gilbert PB, Tomaras GD, Kijak G, Ferrari G, Thomas R, et al. FCGR2C polymorphisms associate with HIV-1 vaccine protection in RV144 trial. *J Clin Invest.* (2014) 124:3879–90. doi: 10.1172/JCI75539
203. Dettogni RS, Tristao-Sa R, Dos Santos M, da Silva FF, Louro ID. Single nucleotide polymorphisms in immune system genes and their association with clinical symptoms persistence in dengue-infected persons. *Hum Immunol.* (2015) 76:717–23. doi: 10.1016/j.humimm.2015.09.026
204. Moraru M, Black LE, Muntasell A, Portero F, Lopez-Botet M, Reyburn HT, et al. NK Cell and Ig Interplay in Defense against Herpes Simplex Virus Type 1: epistatic interaction of CD16A and IgG1 allotypes of variable affinities modulates antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity and susceptibility to clinical reactivation. *J Immunol.* (2015) 195:1676–84. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1500872
205. Janssen R, Bont L, Siezen CL, Hodemaekers HM, Ermers MJ, Doornbos G, et al. Genetic susceptibility to respiratory syncytial virus bronchiolitis is predominantly associated with innate immune genes. *J Infect Dis.* (2007) 196:826–34. doi: 10.1086/520886
206. IMpact. Palivizumab, a humanized respiratory syncytial virus monoclonal antibody, reduces hospitalization from respiratory syncytial virus infection in high-risk infants. The IMpact-RSV Study Group. *Pediatrics.* (1998) 102(3 Pt 1):531–7.
207. Wang D, Cummins C, Bayliss S, Sandercock J, Burls A. Immunoprophylaxis against respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) with palivizumab in children: a systematic review and economic evaluation. *Health Technol Assess.* (2008) 12:iii, ix–x, 1–86. doi: 10.3310/hta12360
208. Mejias A, Garcia-Maurino C, Rodriguez-Fernandez R, Peeples ME, Ramilo O. Development and clinical applications of novel antibodies for prevention and treatment of respiratory syncytial virus infection. *Vaccine.* (2017) 35:496–502. doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2016.09.026
209. Falloon J, Yu J, Esser MT, Villafana T, Yu L, Dubovsky F, et al. An adjuvanted, postfusion F protein-based vaccine did not prevent respiratory syncytial virus illness in older adults. *J Infect Dis.* (2017) 216:1362–70. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jix503
210. Tripp RA, Power UF, Openshaw PJM, Kauvar LM. Respiratory syncytial virus: targeting the G protein provides a new approach for an old problem. *J Virol.* (2018) 92:e01302-17. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01302-17
211. Boyoglu-Barnum S, Chirkova T, Todd SO, Barnum TR, Gaston KA, Jorquera P, et al. Prophylaxis with a respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) anti-G protein monoclonal antibody shifts the adaptive immune response to RSV rA2-line19F infection from Th2 to Th1 in BALB/c mice. *J Virol.* (2014) 88:10569–83. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01503-14
212. Lu LL, Chung AW, Rosebrock TR, Ghebremichael M, Yu WH, Grace PS, et al. A functional role for antibodies in tuberculosis. *Cell.* (2016) 167:433–43 e414. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2016.08.072
213. Ackerman ME, Barouch DH, Alter G. Systems serology for evaluation of HIV vaccine trials. *Immunol Rev.* (2017) 275:262–70. doi: 10.1111/imr.12503

Conflict of Interest Statement: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

ORIGINAL RESEARCH
published: 02 April 2019
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00677

Induction of Fc-Mediated Effector Functions Against a Stabilized Inner Domain of HIV-1 gp120 Designed to Selectively Harbor the A32 Epitope Region

Maria L. Visciano†, Neelakshi Gohain†, Rebekah Sherburn, Chiara Orlandi, Robin Flinko, Amir Dashti, George K. Lewis, William D. Tolbert and Marzena Pazgier‡*

Division of Vaccine Research of Institute of Human Virology, University of Maryland School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, United States

Recent clinical trials and studies using nonhuman primates (NHPs) suggest that antibody-mediated protection against HIV-1 will require α-HIV envelope humoral immunity beyond direct neutralization to include Fc-receptor (FcR) mediated effector functions such as antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC). There is also strong evidence indicating that the most potent ADCC response in humans is directed toward transitional non-neutralizing epitopes associated with the gp41-interactive face of gp120, particularly those within the first and second constant (C1–C2) region (A32-like epitopes). These epitopes were shown to be major targets of ADCC responses during natural infection and have been implicated in vaccine-induced protective immunity. Here we describe the immunogenicity of ID2, an immunogen consisting of the inner domain of the clade A/E 93TH057 HIV-1 gp120 expressed independently of the outer domain (OD) and stabilized in the CD4-bound conformation to harbor conformational A32 region epitopes within a minimal structural unit of HIV-1 Env. ID2 induced A32-specific antibody responses in BALB/c mice when injected alone or in the presence of the adjuvants Alum or GLA-SE. Low α-ID2 titers were detected in mice immunized with ID2 alone whereas robust responses were observed with ID2 plus adjuvant, with the greatest ID2 and A32-specific titers observed in the GLA-SE group. Only sera from groups immunized in the presence of GLA-SE were capable of mediating significant ADCC using NKr cells sensitized with recombinant BaL gp120 as targets and human PBMCs as effectors. A neutralization response to a tier 2 virus was not observed. Altogether, our studies demonstrate that ID2 is highly immunogenic and elicits A32-specific ADCC responses in an animal host. The ID2 immunogen has significant translational value as it can be used in challenge studies to evaluate the role of non-neutralizing antibodies directed at the A32 subregion in HIV-1 protection.

Keywords: HIV envelope, ID (Inner domain) immunogen, ADCC (Antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity), A32 epitope, Fc-mediated effector function

OPEN ACCESS

Edited by:
Gabriella Scarlatti, San Raffaele Hospital (IRCCS), Italy

Reviewed by:
Christiane Moog, Institut National de la Santé et de la Recherche Médicale (INSERM), France
Cynthia Ann Derdeyn, Emory University, United States

****Correspondence:***
Marzena Pazgier
marzena.pazgier@usuhs.edu

†These authors have contributed equally to this work

‡Present Address:
Marzena Pazgier, Infectious Disease Division of Department of Medicine of Uniformed Services of University of the Health Sciences, Bethesda, MD, United States

Specialty section:
This article was submitted to Comparative Immunology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology

Received: *19 October 2018*
Accepted: *12 March 2019*
Published: *02 April 2019*

Citation:
Visciano ML, Gohain N, Sherburn R, Orlandi C, Flinko R, Dashti A, Lewis GK, Tolbert WD and Pazgier M (2019) Induction of Fc-Mediated Effector Functions Against a Stabilized Inner Domain of HIV-1 gp120 Designed to Selectively Harbor the A32 Epitope Region. Front. Immunol. 10:677. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00677

INTRODUCTION

The design of immunogens which induce broadly protective antibody responses against human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1) is a major goal of HIV-1 vaccine development. This goal is formidable as HIV-1 evades immune surveillance via a number of escape mechanisms (1–3). Over the last few years neutralizing humoral responses have been observed to overcome some of these obstacles and provide protection in a subpopulation of chronically infected individuals (1, 4–9). Despite the significant progress in identification and characterization of broadly neutralizing antibodies (bnAbs) there are still multiple, challenging obstacles in the design of a successful candidate immunogen which, when coupled with appropriate immunization strategies, can induce effective neutralizing responses *in vivo* (10). These challenges are primarily linked to the unusual structural features associated bnAbs; such as the long complementary determining region 3 (CDR H3) and the high level of somatic mutation of the variable (V) domain. The frequency of B cells for these unusual antibodies is very low and the time required for their full development from progenitors is remarkably long (11), making them very complex candidates for vaccine design.

By contrast, less is known about mechanisms of vaccine induced humoral responses that act solely through Fc-mediated effector functions, including antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC). Epitopes involved solely in Fc-mediated processes are usually exposed late during viral entry and are thus targeted by antibodies that lack direct neutralizing activity. One group of these potent ADCC targets constitute the CD4-inducible (CD4i) epitopes within the gp120 molecule, referred to as Cluster A epitopes (12–16). These epitopes become exposed on the target cell surface during viral entry after envelope trimers engage the host CD4 receptor and they persist on newly infected cell surfaces for extended periods of time (17–20), reviewed in (21–23). They are also expressed at the surface of infected cells, but only in cell populations that retain some levels of the CD4 receptor which is required for triggering envelope trimers on budding virions (15, 16, 23). We recently isolated and characterized, at the molecular level, the complexes of CD4-triggered gp120 with a number of monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) known to be capable of potent Fc-receptor mediated function from memory B cells of HIV-1 infected individuals that recognize the A32-like epitope within the Cluster A epitope region (14, 24, 25). Based on these studies, we mapped the A32 epitope into the highly conserved constant regions 1 and 2 (C1–C2) of the gp120 inner domain in the CD4-bound conformation. We also found that A32-like antibodies differ significantly from those involved in neutralization as they mostly possess moderate length CDR H3 loops and low degrees of V affinity maturation and therefore bypass the frequently observed somatic hypermutation hurdle in eliciting a protective antibody response (12, 26, 27). The high sequence conservation of the A32 epitope among different HIV isolates indicates the possibility that ADCC responses specific for this epitope region may be cross-reactive and multiple strains would therefore undergo limited immune escape. Indeed, the recent vaccination strategy tested in the RV144 vaccine trial partially confirmed these predictions. A32-like responses were induced with the RV144 vaccine and ADCC responses directed to the A32 epitope region were implicated in its protective effect (28). In the absence of IgA responses, ADCC correlated with a reduced infection risk (29, 30) with a very narrow array of antibody specificities involved in the protective effect. RV144 ADCC specificities included the linear epitopes in the V2 loop region (31) and the CD4-inducible conformational epitopes within the A32 region (32, 33), confirmed by blocking the plasma ADCC activity with the A32 Fab (32). Furthermore, most ADCC mAbs (19 of 23) isolated from vaccine recipients targeted multiple related but distinct conformational epitopes in the A32 region (31, 32). These antibodies displayed low levels of V_H chain somatic mutation (0.5–1.5%) and mediated cross-clade ADCC activity; clade B and CRF01 AE, as well as clade C, which was not represented in the vaccine (32); a canarypox ALVAC prime with the E.92TH023 gp120 membrane anchored insert and an AIDSVAX B/E gp120 boost.

Here we describe the immunogenicity of a gp120 sub domain immunogen, referred to as ID2, designed by our group to stimulate humoral responses involving solely FcR-effector mechanisms designed to elicit an ADCC response in the absence of a neutralizing response (34). ID2 consists of the inner domain (ID) of the clade A/E HIV-1 gp120 93TH057 isolate and was made to confer the minimal structural unit of gp120 stably presenting the non-neutralizing epitopes in the A32 region without any other known epitopes present (34). When injected into BALB/c mice, ID2 was able to elicit cross-clade A32-like antibody responses with ADCC activities against $gp120_{BaL}$ coated cells.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

ID2 Immunogen Expression and Purification

A HEK 293 cell line stably expressing the ID2 immunogen was generated using the plasmid previously used for transient protein production, as in (34). Freestyle 293 medium (Gibco) from cells grown for 6–7 days (8% CO2 at 37°C in shaker flasks rotating at 145 rpm) after inoculation (1×10^6 cells/ml) was collected and passed through a 0.45 μm filter. ID2 was purified from the media using an N5-i5 IgG affinity column, which was made by coupling N5-i5 IgG to protein A resin using the Pierce protein A IgG plus orientation kit (Thermo Fisher Sci.). Media was passed over the column after equilibration in phosphate buffered saline (PBS) pH 7.2. The column was washed with 5–10 column volumes of PBS pH 7.2 and ID2 protein eluted with 0.1 M glycine pH 3.0. Elution fractions were concentrated and dialyzed against PBS pH 7.2 prior to use in animal studies.

Immunization and Blood Collections

BALB/c mice were purchased from The Jackson Laboratory and housed in the animal facility managed by BIOQUAL's, Inc., Rockville, MD. The mice were cared for in accordance with the Association for the Assessment and Accreditation of Laboratory Animal Care International (AAALAC) standards and all procedures involving animals were approved by the University

Committee on Use and Care of Animals (UCUCA) of BIOQUAL, Inc. 6–8 weeks old BALB/c mice (male and female, 6 animals per group) were immunized at week 0, 2, 4, and 8 via IP injections of 20 μg of ID2 protein in different adjuvants. The control group received ID2 immunogen in PBS and two adjuvants were also trialed; ID2 immunogen in Alum (2% aluminum hydroxide wet gel suspension, InvivoGen, Catalog # vac-alu-250), and ID2 immunogen in GLA-SE adjuvant (stable oil-in water emulsion containing TLR-4 agonist developed by Infectious Disease Research Institute, Catalog # IDRI-GLA-SE, known also under the name EM082). Serum samples were collected prior to immunization and 2 weeks after each immunization according to the scheme shown in **Figure 1**.

Detection of Serum Immunoglobulin Specific for ID2

The presence and titers of total IgG, IgG1, IgG2a, IgG2b or IgG2c, IgG3, IgA, and IgM antibodies, specific for ID2 recombinant protein in sera of immunized mice were determined by an Enzyme Linked Immunosorbent Assay (ELISA) using a 100-μL-per-well volume format. Blocking Buffer (Tris-buffered saline (TBS; 10 mM Tris and 100 mM NaCl; pH 8.0) with 5% no fat dry milk and 0.1% Nonidet P-40) was used as blocking solution and as diluting solution for sera and detecting Abs. TBS-T buffer (TBS with 0.1% Tween-20) was used as washing solution. ELISAs were performed as follows: ID2 recombinant protein (0.5 μg/ml) was adsorbed onto ELISA plates (Immunoblot 2HB Thermo, Milford, MA) overnight at 4°C. The plates were washed three times and incubated with 100 μl blocking buffer per well for 2 h at room temperature. Serially diluted sera, beginning at 1:100, were then added and allowed to react with the coated antigen for 2 h at 37°C. Sera was removed, the plates washed, and alkaline phosphatase-conjugated goat anti-mouse IgG (Sigma cat#A3562), IgG1, IgG2a, IgG2b, IgG2c, and IgG3 (SouthernBiotech cat# 1071-04, 1081-04, 1091-04, 1078-04, 1103-04, respectively), IgA and IgM antibodies (SouthernBiotech cat #1040-04 and 1021-04, respectively) diluted 1:1000 in blocking buffer, were added followed by incubation for 1 h at 37°C. After removal of unbound antibody and washing, the Blue Phos Microwell Phosphatase Substrate System (KPL 50–88-00) was used as a substrate to quantitate bound antibody. After 15 min incubation at room temperature, the reaction was stopped using APstop Solution (KPL 50-89-00) and the optical density was read on a microplate reader (SpectraMax Paradigm Multi-Mode Detection Platform Molecular Devices) at 620 nm. The anti-ID2 antibody half-max binding serum titer was calculated using a Microsoft Excel iteration formula.

Competition ELISAs

To determine if the immunization with ID2 immunogen had induced Cluster A like serum Abs, sera from the terminal bleed were tested for their ability to compete with Cluster A mAbs (A32, N5-i5) for the binding to ID2 in an ELISA setting. Plates were coated o/n at 4°C with 0.5 μg/ml of ID2. Ten-fold serial dilutions of immune sera and pre-immunization sera were mixed 1:1 with biotinylated human CD4i anti-envelope mAb at a concentration correspondent to the half max binding concentrations for each tested mAb; 0.66 μg/mL of A32 and 0.2 μg/ml of N5-i5. The mixtures were then added to previously washed and blocked plates. As a control, a 10-fold dilution of unbiotinylated CD4i mAbs A32 and N5-i5, starting at 10 μg/mL, were tested in the same assay. Sera and Abs were prepared as 2x solutions. After 2 h incubation at r.t. assay wells were washed and incubated with avidin-AP (Invitrogen 1:1,000 dilution) and then with the Blue Phos Microwell Phosphatase Substrate System. Biotinylated-mAb binding was determined by measuring absorbance at 620 nm. Competition percentage was calculated using GraphPad Prism as follows: 0% inhibition was defined as the mean OD value of the lowest serial dilution of the pre-immunization sera ($1{:}10^6$) while 100% inhibition was defined as the mean OD value of the highest concentration tested for unbiotinylated mAbs A32 and N5-i5 (10 μg/ml).

Sera Reactivity With Denatured ID2 Protein

To assess if immunization with ID2 recombinant protein elicited serum antibodies recognizing conformational epitopes on ID2, pooled sera collected 2 weeks after the last immunization were incubated in solution o/n at 4°C with 1 μg/mL of denatured ID2. ID2 recombinant protein denaturation was performed as previously described in Moore et al. (35), with little modification. Briefly ID2 protein (final concentration 200 μg/ml) was mixed with 10 mM DTT, 0.1% SDS (Sigma-Aldrich), 0.1% FBS (GIBCO-Termo Fisher Scientific), and incubated at 70°C for 10 min. After incubation, the denatured protein was diluted 1:10 in TBS and stored at −20°C until used. The mixtures of denatured protein and pooled sera were then added to a plate coated with ID2. Pooled sera from each group were used as a control. Goat anti-mouse IgG Alkaline Phosphatase conjugated was used as secondary Ab. Plates were read at 620 nM after addition of Blue Phos Microwell Phosphatase Substrate System as previously described.

Antibody-Dependent Cell-Mediated Cytotoxicity (ADCC)

The ADCC activity of immunoglobulins present in mouse sera collected at week 10 were tested with the optimized rapid fluorometric antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (RFADCC) assay (36). Briefly, EGFP-CEM-NKr-CCR5SNAP cells sensitized with recombinant BaL gp120 were used as targets and human PBMCs were utilized as effectors. Sera were serially diluted three-fold starting at 1:100 through 1:1,968,300 together with control mAbs (N5-i5-positive and Synagis-negative controls). After 2 h of incubation the samples were fixed and collected (at approximately 20,000 events per sample) on a Fortessa Special Order instrument (BD Biosciences) and analyzed using FlowJo software (Tree Star, Ashland, OR). ADCC activity (shown as % cytotoxicity) was defined as the percentage of EGFP-CEM-NKr-CCR5-SNAP target cells that lost GFP staining but retained the CCR5-SNAP tag staining. The results represent the average of the samples tested in triplicate and normalized to the N5-i5 positive control. Max lysis was defined as the maximum percent lysis at any sera concentration. Ec_{50} was determined using a GraphPad prism formula of Log(agonist) vs. Normalized response for a variable slope.

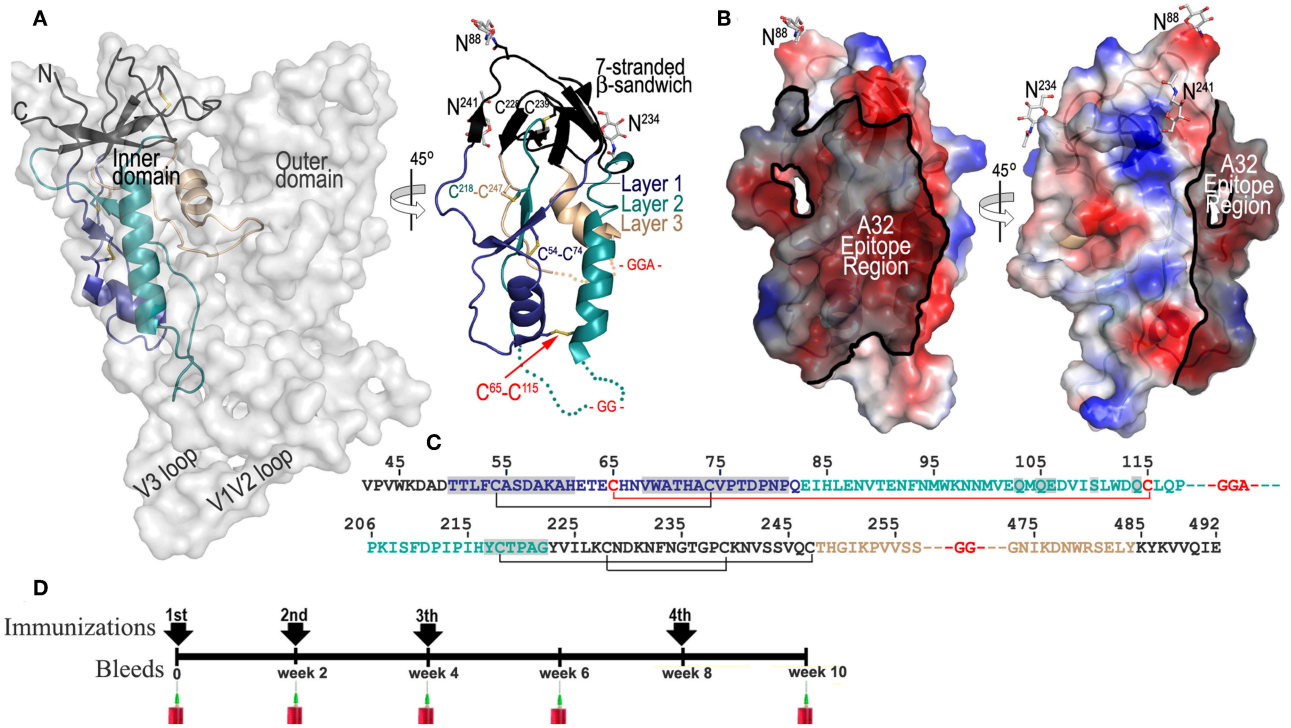


FIGURE 1 | ID2 immunogen design and immunization scheme. **(A)** Putative and crystallographic structure of ID2 immunogen. Putative structure of ID2 is shown overlaid over the structure of full length gp120 from the CD4-triggered BG505 SOSIP trimer (PDB code:1U1F) and a 45° rotation shows the crystal structure of ID2 immunogen from the ID2-Fab A32 complex structure (PDB code:4YC2). "Layered" architecture of gp120 inner domain is shown with the 7-stranded β-sandwich colored black, layer 1 in blue, layer 2 in cyan, layer 3 in light orange. The C^{65}-C^{115} disulfide bond introduced to stabilize ID2 in the CD4-bound conformation and GGA(GG)-linkers are shown in red. Sugars at positions 88, 234, and 241 are shown as sticks. The region of ID2 disordered in the ID2-Fab A32 complex are show as broken lines. **(B)** The A32 epitope region in the context of ID2 immunogen. The gp120 residues involved in binding of A32 and A32-like antibodies N5-i5, 2.2c, N60-i3, JR4 are highlighted in black over the ID2 molecule. The molecular surface is displayed over the ID2 molecule and the electrostatic potential is shown as red for negative, blue for positive, and white for apolar. **(C)** Primary sequence of the ID2 construct (from gp120 sequence of clade A/E 93TH057 isolate) with disulfide bonds and –GG—linkers shown. Residues forming the A32 epitope region are highlighted in gray. **(D)** Schematic of immunization protocol.

Neutralization Assay

Mouse sera collected 2 weeks after the 4th immunization and pre-immune sera, were tested in a TZM-bl assay for the presence of neutralizing antibodies. Briefly, 3-fold serial dilution (starting from 1/100 dilution) of sera were mixed with JR-FL pseudo-virus (TCID of 45000 Relative Luminescence Unit) and incubated at 37°C in 5% CO_2 atmosphere for 60 min at room temperature. TZM-bl cells (10,000/well in complete RPMI with 11 μg/mL DEAE-Dextran) were then added to the sera-pseudo virus mix and plates were incubated for 48 h at 37°C in 5% CO_2 atmosphere. One hundred and Fifty Microliter of supernatant were removed and 100 μL/well of BrightGlo was then added to each well and after a 2 min incubation to allow complete cell lysis, 100μL from each well was transferred to 96 well black plates. Plates were read with a luminometer using the Promega BrightGlo program. Percent neutralization was determined by calculating the difference in average relative luminescence units (RLU) between virus control (no serum/antibody) and test wells (cells + serum or antibody sample + virus), dividing this result by the difference in average RLU between virus control (cell + virus) and cell only wells, and multiplying by 100.

Statistical Analysis

Differences in responses between ID2 alone, ID2+Alum, and ID2+GLA-SE were analyzed using a Two-way ANOVA with Bonferroni post-test comparing every sample to every other sample. All statistical analysis was carried out using GraphPad Prism (Version 5 for Windows, San Diego, CA, USA). ****represents statistical significance of $P < 0.0001$, ***$P < 0.001$, **$P < 0.01$, and *$P < 0.05$. Blue stars represent the difference between ID2 alone and ID2 + Alum, red stars represent differences between ID2 alone and ID2 + GLA-SE and purple stars represent differences between ID2 + Alum and ID2 + GLA-SE.

RESULTS

ID2 as an Immunogen Candidate Selectively and Stably Presents the A32 Region

ID2 was designed to stably present the conformational CD4-inducable epitopes of the A32 region within a minimal structural

unit of gp120 without any other known (neutralizing or non-neutralizing) epitopes present (34). The design of ID2 was guided by detailed analysis of the epitope structures of A32 and several A32-like antibodies (14, 24, 25) that involve the Env antigen binding residues exclusively within the gp120 inner domain of the constant regions 1 and 2 (C1–C2). Through several steps of structure-guided design we obtained a construct consisting of only 154 residues of the gp120 inner domain which is stabilized in the CD4-bound conformation by the addition of a C_{65}-C_{115} disulfide bond (**Figures 1A–C**). In the ID2 construct the outer domain, variable loops and receptor binding sites were removed to form a minimal structural unit which engrafts only the A32 epitope region. **Figures 1A,B** show the putative and crystallographic structure of ID2, determined previously in a complex with the Fab of the A32 antibody. ID2 constitutes only one third of the full length gp120 molecule with the A32 epitope region mapping to almost half of the ID2 surface. In addition, a significant area of the ID2 face which does not harbor the A32 epitope is masked by N-glycosylation (asparagines at positions 88, 234, and 241) most likely rendering this part of molecule immunologically silent (**Figures 1B,C**). We showed previously that ID2 is folded to fully preserve the conformation of the inner domain as seen in the context of CD4-triggered gp120 and stably presents the functional A32 epitopes within the C1–C2 region and thus constitutes a novel immunogen candidate for selective induction of A32-like responses (34).

To evaluate if ID2 indeed is capable of selective induction of humoral response to the desired A32 region we performed immunogenicity studies using the recombinant preparation of ID2 obtained by mammalian cell culture (to preserve wild-type glycosylation) and BALB/c mice as an animal host. Purified ID2 protein, 20 μg per injection, was used to immunize groups of mice (6 animals per group) in the absence of adjuvant (in PBS) and with two adjuvant choices; Alum (2% aluminum hydroxide wet gel suspension) and GLA-SE (a stable oil-in water emulsion containing TLR-4 agonist adjuvant developed by Infectious Disease Research Institute). Immunizations were done according to the immunization scheme shown in **Figure 1D** with three immunizations in 2-week intervals and a fourth at week 8. Sera was collected 2 weeks after each immunization and analyzed individually for each mouse.

Immunization With Recombinant ID2 Protein Induced Specific Anti-ID2 Responses in BALB/c Mice

Sera collected 2 weeks after each immunization were tested in a sandwich ELISA to assess the presence of specific anti-ID2 serum antibodies. As shown in **Figures 2A–D**, immunization with ID2 with and without adjuvant elicited an anti-ID2 humoral immune response in all immunized mice, although with significant differences among the 3 immunization groups. Some mice immunized with ID2 without adjuvant developed a weak anti-ID2 specific humoral immune response with a half max binding titers above 1:500, but only after the 4th immunization (**Figure 2E**). In contrast, titers and kinetics of the humoral immune response was quite different in mice immunized with ID2 delivered alongside Alum or GLA-SE adjuvants. In both groups the immunization induced a detectable specific humoral immune response after the 1st immunization, however, only mice injected with ID2+Alum had higher levels of specific IgG compared to ID2 injected alone (**Figure 2A**). After 2 and 3 injections, both adjuvants induced significant levels of ID2-specific IgG above mice injected with ID2 alone (**Figures 2B,C**) and following the final injection, specific IgG levels were significantly higher in the GLA-SE adjuvant group compared to the Alum group (**Figure 2D**). For mice immunized in GLA-SE, all sera showed an enhancement in the anti-ID2 specific antibody immune response from 1 to 2 logs after each immunization with half-max binding titers ranging from 1:3,400 to 1:36,000 after the 4th immunization (**Figures 2D,E**). Altogether, these results clearly indicate that recombinant protein ID2 is immunogenic and that such immunogenicity can be improved by administrating the recombinant protein in combination with an adjuvant. As for the adjuvant, our data clearly suggested that mice immunized with ID2 in GLA-SE produced higher titers of anti-ID2 serum antibodies.

Immunization With ID2 Immunogen Induces an Antibody Response Specific for the Conformational Epitopes Within the A32 Region

By design ID2 consists of two faces; a face that harbors the conformational epitopes of the A32 region and a face that is exposed by the removal of the OD which does not have any known epitope targets. Although the epitopes within the newly exposed face are not known, this face might harbor epitopes that are rendered immunodominant by their exposure. To assess if the antibody response induced by ID2 is indeed specific for the desired A32 epitope region we tested sera collected after the final immunization in a competition ELISA with mAb A32 and the A32-like antibody N5-i5 (14). Our assay format was designed to detect if serum antibodies inhibited the binding of mAb A32 or N5-i5 to the recombinant ID2 protein immobilized on microplates. As shown in **Figures 3A,B**, the immune sera of mice immunized with ID2 alone were not able to inhibit the binding of the tested mAbs to the coated ID2 protein. In contrast, mice immunized either with ID2 in Alum or in GLA-SE elicited antibodies capable of blocking A32 (**Figure 3A**) and N5-i5 (**Figure 3B**) at a significantly higher level than sera from mice injected with ID2 alone. Sera from mice immunized with the GLA-SE adjuvant inhibited the binding of over 80% of both N5-i5 and A32, significantly higher than mice injected in the presence of Alum. These data indicate that immunization with ID2 leads to elicitation of a serum antibody response specific for Env targets that overlap with epitopes recognized by the A32 region antibodies A32 and N5-i5 with the adjuvant GLA-SE eliciting the most robust humoral responses.

Next, we asked if the elicited antibody responses were directed toward conformational or linear epitopes within the ID2 immunogen. Pooled sera collected after the final immunization were incubated in solution with denatured ID2 (dID2) protein

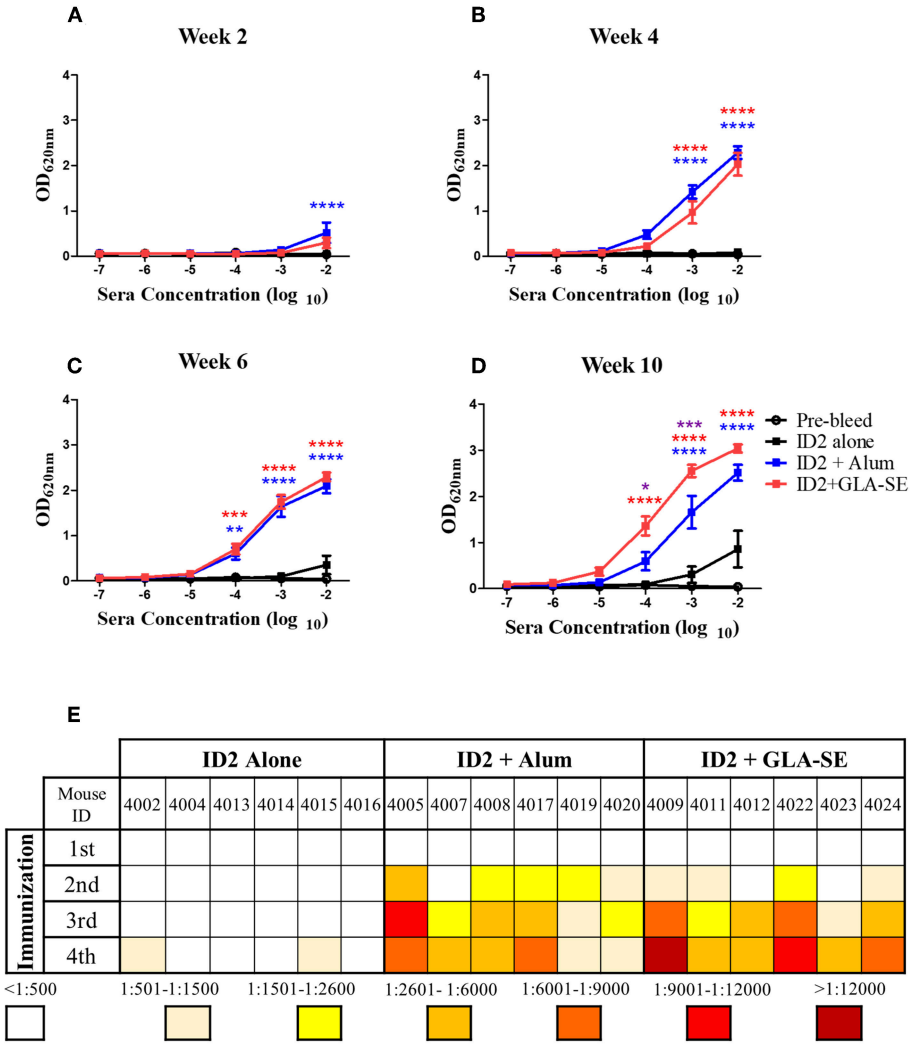


FIGURE 2 | Kinetics and titers of anti-ID2 immune response in immunized mice. Sera collected 2 weeks after each immunization were tested in ELISA for the presence of anti-ID2 specific immune responses (total αID2 IgG). Each sample was assayed in duplicate, displayed is the Mean ± SEM of the 6 mice in each group for **(A)** Week 2, **(B)** Week 4, **(C)** Week 6, and **(D)** Week 10. **(E)** The half-max binding for each individual mouse, identified with a unique number, at each time point following an immunization (1–4) was calculated. $n = 6$ mice for each group. **** represents statistical significance of $P < 0.0001$, ***$P < 0.001$, **$P < 0.01$, and *$P < 0.05$. Blue stars represent the difference between ID2 alone and ID2 + Alum, red stars represent differences between ID2 alone and ID2 + GLA-SE and purple stars represent differences between ID2 + Alum and ID2 + GLA-SE.

and then probed in ELISAs with non-denatured ID2 immunogen coated on microplates. As shown in **Figure 3C**, after being adsorbed with denatured ID2 in solution, sera of all 3 immunization groups were still able to bind the non-denatured ID2. The residual sera of mice immunized with ID2 + GLA-SE adjuvant showed higher levels of binding to conformationally intact ID2 than mice injected with ID2 alone and GLA-SE led to significantly higher levels than alum. This indicates that immunization with ID2 protein alone or in combination with adjuvants leads to elicitation of sera antibodies that recognize and bind conformational ID2 epitopes with a higher titer of conformational antibodies present in sera of mice immunized with the GLA-SE adjuvant.

Sera of Mice Immunized With ID2 in GLA-SE Mediates ADCC

The ID2 immunogen was designed to harbor A32 or A32-like epitopes involved in potent ADCC responses against target cells during the earliest stage of viral entry i.e., at the interaction of gp120 of the Env trimer with the host cell receptor CD4 (14, 21–23, 37) and HIV infected/budding cells which retain CD4 at the target cell surface. Antibodies recognizing the A32 region epitopes were shown to lack conventional neutralizing activities [(12–16, 38), reviewed in (21–23)]. To test if ID2 elicited antibodies capable of ADCC against CD4 inducible (CD4i) targets of a cross clade gp120 we characterized the terminal sera of immunized mice with the optimized RFADCC assay

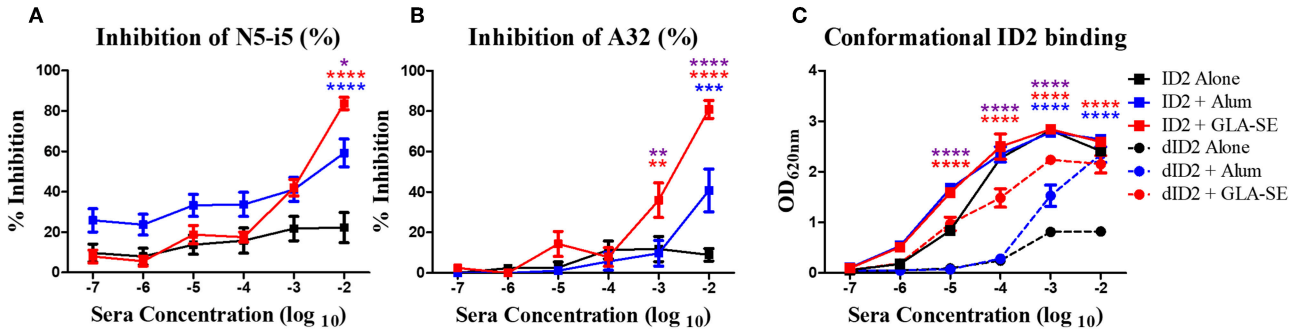


FIGURE 3 | Epitope and conformational specificity of serum antibodies elicited in immunized mice. Sera collected 2 weeks after the final immunization (week 10) were tested for their ability to compete with Cluster A biotinylated mAbs for the binding to ID2 recombinant protein in ELISA. Plates were coated with 0.5 μg/mL of ID2 and serum was incubated with **(A)** A32 and **(B)** N5-i5 (right panel) at half max binding concentrations. Each sample was assayed in duplicate before calculation of % inhibition from the average. **(C)** To assess if immunization with ID2 alone or in combination with adjuvants induced serum antibodies recognizing conformational or linear epitopes different dilutions of pooled sera collected 2 weeks after the last immunization (week 10) were mixed o/n at 4°C with a fixed concentration of denatured ID2. Sera were then reacted in ELISA on ID2 coated plates. Anti-mouse IgG alkaline phosphatase conjugated was used to detect the binding of serum antibodies. **** represents statistical significance of $P < 0.0001$, ***$P < 0.001$, **$P < 0.01$ and *$P < 0.05$. Blue stars represent the difference between ID2 alone and ID2 + Alum, red stars represent differences between ID2 alone and ID2 + GLA-SE and purple stars represent differences between ID2 + Alum and ID2 + GLA-SE.

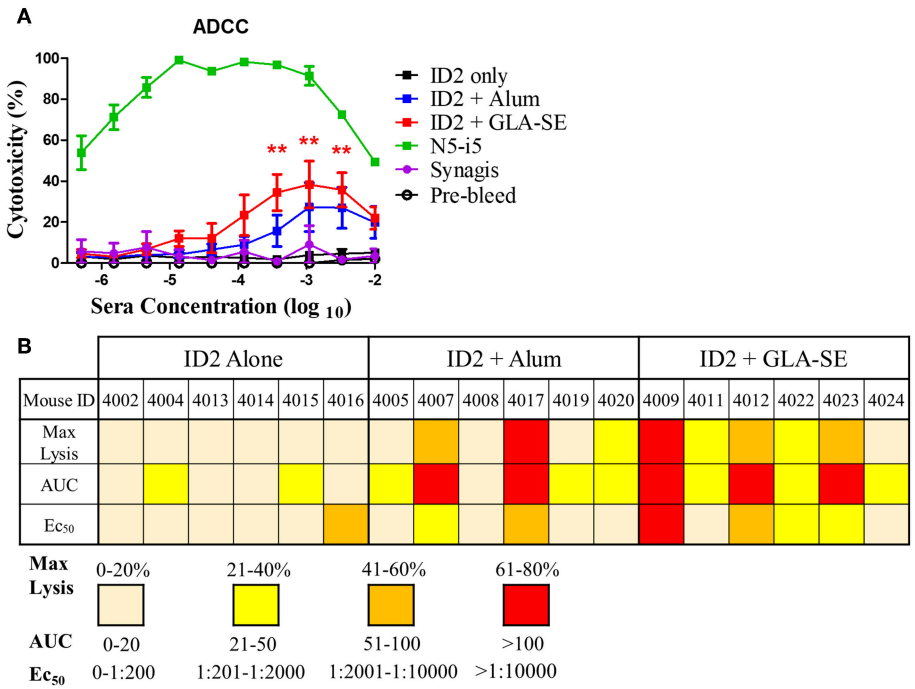


FIGURE 4 | ADCC in sera from mice immunized with ID2 with and without adjuvant. **(A)** Pre-immune sera and sera collected after the last immunization were tested in Rapid Fluorescence ADCC assay against EGFP-CEM-NKr-CCR5SNAP cells sensitized with recombinant BaL gp120 to assess their ability to mediate cytotoxicity. Results are reported as % Cytotoxicity, in relation to maximal cytotoxicity by N5-i5. All samples were analyzed in triplicate before calculating the % cytotoxicity from the mean. No statistical difference existed between ID2+Alum and ID2+GLA-SE at any sera concentration, determined using a Two-way ANOVA test with Bonferroni post-test. **(B)** The maximum lysis (%), Area under the curve (AUC) and Ec_{50} for each individual mouse, identified with a unique number, at each time point following the final immunization was calculated. Max lysis was defined as the maximum percent lysis at any sera concentration. Area under the curve (AUC) was calculated using an Excel formula. Ec_{50} was determined using a GraphPad prism formula of Log(agonist) vs. Normalized response for a variable slope. $N = 6$ for each group. ** represents statistical significance of $P < 0.01$. Red stars represent differences between ID2 alone and ID2 + GLA-SE.

(36) using NKr cells sensitized with recombinant BaL gp120. As shown in **Figure 4A**, sera from mice immunized with ID2 in the absence of adjuvant showed no ADCC activity, with cytotoxicity readings comparable to the negative control Synagis and the pre-bleed samples. Sera analyzed from mice immunized with ID2 + Alum were capable of modest but not significant ADCC

above ID2 alone samples with peaks of cytotoxicity for sera dilutions of 10^2-10^4. In contrast, sera from mice injected with ID2 + GLA-SE elicited significant ADCC when compared to ID2 alone (**Figures 4A,B**).

ID2 was designed specifically to contain no known neutralizing epitope targets (34) in order to closely mimic the response observed in the RV144 vaccine trial in which ADCC in the absence of neutralization was associated with protection (28). To test if the ID2 immunized sera contained any neutralizing antibodies we performed a standard neutralization TZM-bl assay against the Tier 2 clade B virus JRFL. This virus was selected to represent a biologically relevant strain for demonstrating neutralization. The recent publication by Montefiori et al. (39) concludes that tier 2 viruses represent the Env conformation of most circulating viruses and are therefore the most appropriate for determining neutralization potential of antibodies. Using sera collected after the last immunization and mAbs A32 and P7 as respective negative and positive controls, we were able to determine that none of the tested sera was able to robustly neutralize the JRFL virus (**Figure 5**).

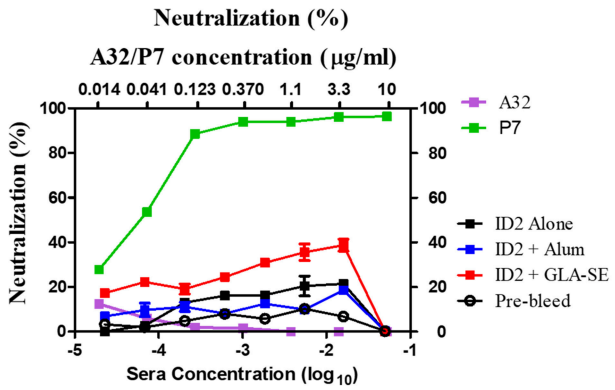


FIGURE 5 | Neutralization in sera from mice immunized with ID2 with and without adjuvant. Sera were tested in a TZM-bl assay for the presence of neutralizing activities against clade B Tier 2 JRFL pseudo-virus. Sera from Pre-bleed (Hollow circle), ID2 Alone (Black square), ID2 + Alum (Blue square), and ID2 + GLA-SE (Red square) were diluted and assayed for their ability to neutralize a clade B Tier 2 JR pseudo-virus (Bottom X axis). These samples were run alongside diluted A32 antibody (orange square) for a negative control and P7 antibody (green square) as a positive control, beginning at 10 μg/ml (Top X axis).

Mice Immunized With ID2 in GLA-SE Show a Larger Diversity of Anti-ID2 Ig Subclasses

In addition to showing that ADCC in the absence of robust neutralization was adequate for protection against HIV, the RV144 trial also highlighted the importance of the type of antibody repertoire raised. A strong IgG response in the absence of IgA conferred the best protection (28). We therefore aimed to determine the antibody repertoire triggered in response to ID2 in the presence and absence of adjuvants. We tested sera collected after the last immunization (week 10) for the presence of anti-ID2 specific IgG1, IgG2a, IgG2b, IgG2c, IgG3, IgA, and IgM (**Figures 6A–G**). As expected, the IgG1 subclass was detected in all immunization groups albeit with different titers. Mice immunized with ID2 alone had very low half-max binding titers, ranging between 1:341 and 1:2,344 (**Figure 6H**). The addition of Alum increased the level of ID2-specific IgG1 with half-max binding titers ranging from 1:7,597 to 1:66,337 in these sera. The half-max binding titers were similar for mice immunized in the presence of GLA-SE, ranging between 1:16,678 and 1:72,864. In contrast, significant differences existed in titers of IgG2a and 2b subclasses between the Alum and GLA-SE adjuvant groups. Mice immunized in the presence of Alum generated a very low titer for both IgG2a and 2b, with half max binding titers for both below 1:500 in all but two mice, while the addition of GLA-SE resulted in half max binding titers for IgG2a ranging between 1:1,833 and 1:20,585 and for IgG2b between 1:572 and 1:3,139 (**Figures 5B,C,H**). Low levels of anti-ID2 specific IgG2c, IgG3, IgA, and IgM responses were detected only in sera of mice immunized in presence of GLA-SE adjuvant (**Figures 6D–G**). Combined, these data indicate that immunizations with GLA-SE adjuvant induce a larger diversity of anti-ID2 IgG subclasses as compared to Alum.

DISCUSSION

Antibodies capable of effective Fc-mediated effector functions, including ADCC, have recently received increasing interest as important components of a vaccine induced humoral response. Although the enthusiasm for this type of antibody function was mostly evoked by the RV144 trial, the evidence also exists from vaccination strategies with Env immunogens in non-human primates (NHP) that link FcR effector functions of antibodies with post-infection control of viremia and/or blocking HIV-1 acquisition, often in the absence of neutralization (40–45), reviewed in (27).

Correlate analyses of the infection risk in the RV144 trial have indicated two gp120 epitope regions; the conformational C1-C2 and the linear V2 loop epitopes, as the major players involved in the Fc-mediated protective response (21, 22, 46). Although only the ADCC response of antibodies directed at the crown of the V2 loop region directly correlated with a lower risk of infection (29–31) the non-neutralizing C1-C2-specific A32-like antibodies synergized with the weakly-neutralizing V2 antibodies (33) to deliver ADCC against neutralization resistant tier 2 isolates. The synergistic crosstalk between antibodies directed at these two epitopes was recognized to be an important component of the protective effect of the RV144 vaccine trial suggesting that C1-C2- and V2-specifc antibodies may act in tandem in a polyfunctional antibody profile to deliver a broad and potent Fc-effector response (33).

Similarly, antibodies specific for Cluster A epitope region (including the A32 subregion) and the co-receptor binding site correlated with sterilizing heterologous protection against SHIV162p3 in NHPs immunized with the conformationally constrained gp120 immunogen, full-length single chain (FLSC) (41, 47). As with the RV144 trial, no correlation

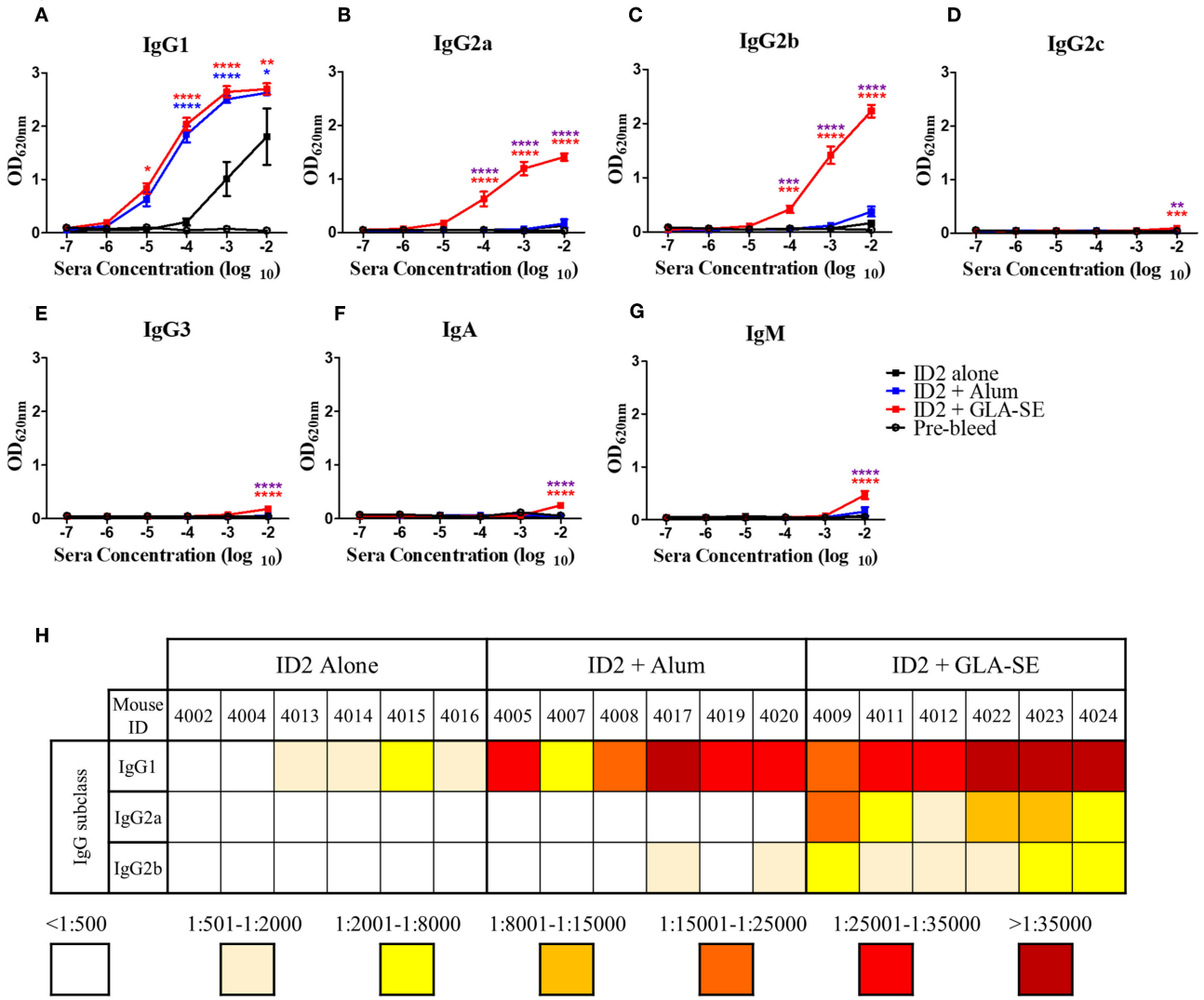


FIGURE 6 | Evaluation of IgG subclasses, IgA and IgM elicited in immunized mice. 10-fold dilutions of pre-immunized (pre-bleed, Black circle) and immunized mice sera collected after last immunization (week 10), were evaluated in ELISA to assess the IgG subtypes; **(A)** IgG1, **(B)** IgG2a, **(C)** IgG2b, **(D)** IgG2c, **(E)** IgG3, as well as **(F)** IgA, and **(G)** IgM induced with no adjuvant (Black square), with Alum (Blue square), or with GLA-SE (Red square). **(H)** The half-max binding for each individual mouse sera sample, identified by an individual number, for the terminal bleed was calculated and displayed for IgG1, IgG2a, and IgG2b. $n = 6$ mice for each group. **** represents statistical significance of $P < 0.0001$, ***$P < 0.001$, **$P < 0.01$, and *$P < 0.05$. Blue stars represent the difference between ID2 alone and ID2 + Alum, red stars represent differences between ID2 alone and ID2 + GLA-SE and purple stars represent differences between ID2 + Alum and ID2 + GLA-SE.

between neutralizing activity and protection was observed in these studies pointing again at a role for Fc-mediated effector function in protection against SHIV-1 transmission. In both the RV144 and FLSC trials described above the C1–C2 specific antibodies acted in tandem with antibodies directed at other Env epitopes to contribute to the vaccine efficacy through Fc effector mechanisms. The question remains open if antibodies directed at these non-neutralizing epitope targets could alone afford protection or if they act only as a component of a polyclonal response with antibodies targeting other epitopes. This question has not been addressed, mostly due to the lack of an appropriate immunogen which could selectively bear only this conformational epitope target.

In this study, we investigated the immunogenicity and ability to induce an effective cross-clade ADCC response of a new immunogen candidate ID2, developed previously in our laboratory, as a minimal structural unit of HIV Env stably presenting the non-neutralizing epitopes within the A32 region (C1–C2 epitopes). ID2 consists of the inner domain construct stabilized in CD4-bound conformation by C_{65}-C_{115} disulfide bond preserving the A32 region epitopes in the context of CD4-triggered full length gp120, derived from a clade A/E strain, without the complication of any other known neutralizing

epitopes. We immunized BALB/c mice intraperitoneally (IP) with 4 doses of ID2 (20 μg /dose) over a period of 8 weeks with three immunizations with 2 weeks intervals and one final immunization delivered 4 weeks later to assess the induction of a memory antibody response. ID2 was administered either alone or with an adjuvant: Alum or GLA-SE. The resulting immune sera were evaluated for the presence of anti-ID2 antibodies (total IgG, IgG subclasses, IgA, and IgM) as well as for their capacity to bind to conformational A32 region epitopes and compete for the binding with mAbs specific for those epitopes. Immune sera were also tested in our RFADCC assay for their ability to mediate ADCC with CEM-NKr-CCR5 target cells sensitized with recombinant gp120 from the Clade B HIV-1_{BaL} isolate and to neutralize a Tier 2 strain of HIV-1. Our results showed that immunization with ID2 alone elicited no or very low anti-ID2 serum antibodies and those elicited were only after the 4th immunization, whereas mice in the groups immunized with ID2 in adjuvants showed robust anti-ID2 responses. Of the two adjuvants, mice immunized with ID2 in GLA-SE exhibited higher anti-ID2 titers at the end of study (week 10) as compared with the Alum group. Interestingly, both groups showed comparable titers after the 3rd immunization, but while in the GLA-SE group the 4th immunization boosted the immune response significantly above the alum group, mice in the Alum group presented a comparable titer to week 6. These data indicate that administration of ID2 in combination with GLA-SE induces enhanced and easily boosted responses to the target antigen. This agrees with the data regarding GLA-SE as an adjuvant, which was designed to promote strong and long lasting T_H1 responses to protein vaccine antigens (48, 49). Quality analyses of the immune responses elicited by ID2 with adjuvants indicated that antibodies elicited by ID2 with GLA-SE were directed more toward conformational epitopes within the A32 region as shown by the ability of these sera to inhibit the binding of mAb A32 and the A32-like mAb N5-i5 to ID2 and by the residual binding of sera previously incubated with a denatured/linear ID2. Differences were also detected in terms of the IgG isotypes of the elicited antibodies. Mice immunized with ID2 in Alum produced mostly IgG1 antibodies, whereas the immunization with ID2 in GLA-SE induced a broader range and a higher titer of IgG isotypes IgG1, IgG2a, and IgG2b, together with low but detectable IgG3 in addition to IgA and IgM. This difference in antibody isotypes between the two adjuvant groups likely explains the significant higher titers of total IgG in the GLA-SE adjuvant group over the alum group following the final immunization.

ADCC was only significantly increased over the negative control in sera isolated from the GLA-SE adjuvant group, indicating that high titers of ID2-specific mouse IgG1, IgG2a, and IgG2b in addition to small amounts of other isotypes are required for effective RFADCC. In addition to generating more diverse isotypes of ID2 specific antibodies, immunizing with GLA-SE also led to the generation of more specific antibodies – as indicated by significantly higher percent competition for both A32 and N5-i5 antibodies. Interestingly, some sera displayed high ADCC yet low levels of ID2-specific IgG and an absence of class switching from IgG1. One example of this is sample 4,007; when looking at the individual data for the competition ELISA, 4,007 sera inhibits the binding of A32 by 39.7% at the highest sera concentration and N5-i5 by 45%, an average amount for A32 and below average for N5-i5 when compared to other mice in the Alum group. One possibility for a more potent ADCC response is that antibodies to different epitopes were raised in this particular mouse. While the design of ID2 prevents the elicitation of classical C11-like antibodies, some antibodies may be specific for C11-like epitopes which would not have been identified by the competition ELISAs carried out. One known examples of an antibody which could be raised to this area of ID2 is JR4 (24). As previously reported, the RFADCC assay (36) uses antigen sensitized NKr cells and human PBMCs, in which mostly monocyte activity (through their FcγRIIA receptors) is measured. Although interactions between mouse immunoglobulins and human FcγRs are largely understudied there are reports indicating that human FcγRIIA binds mouse IgG1, 2a, and 2b, but not mouse IgG3 (50). All together this suggests that the presence of IgG1 and IgG2a in immunized mouse sera is sufficient to stimulate human PBMCs to mediate the killing of cross-clade antigen sensitized NKr cells.

In conclusion, these results indicate that ID2 can be highly immunogenic, especially when administered together with GLA-SE as an adjuvant, and that the elicited immune response can mediate ADCC in a RFADCC assay using human PBMCs as effector cells. None of the immune sera showed robust neutralization activity against the tier 2 JRFL virus indicating that ID2 as an immunogen induces mostly a humoral immune response against the desired non-neutralizing epitopes within the A32 region. ID2 in combination with GLA-SE was successfully utilized to demonstrate that Fc-effector mechanisms in the absence of strong neutralizing antibodies could be directed toward the A32 subregion which has the potential for HIV-1 protection and ID2 could therefore be utilized for future studies in a NHP challenge study.

DATA AVAILABILITY

All datasets generated for this study are included in the manuscript and/or the supplementary files.

AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

MV, NG, WT, and MP designed, performed research, and analyzed the data. AD, CO, RF, and GL carried out assays and analyzed the ADCC data. RS analyzed the data. MV, RS, and MP wrote the paper. All authors read the manuscript and provided comments or revisions.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank our IHV colleagues for outstanding support of the studies leading to the ideas presented above. This work was supported by NIH Grants: NIAID R01 AI116274 to MP, R01AI129769 to MP and Andres Finzi and NIAID P01 AI120756 to Georgia Tomaras.

REFERENCES

1. Kwong PD, Doyle ML, Casper DJ, Cicala C, Leavitt SA, Majeed S, et al. HIV-1 evades antibody-mediated neutralization through conformational masking of receptor-binding sites. *Nature.* (2002) 420:678–82. doi: 10.1038/nature01188
2. Phogat S, Wyatt RT, Hedestam GBK. Inhibition of HIV-1 entry by antibodies: potential viral and cellular targets. *J Intern Med.* (2007) 262:26–43. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2796.2007.01820.x
3. Schief WR, Ban Y-EA, Stamatatos L. Challenges for structure-based HIV vaccine design. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS.* (2009) 4:431. doi: 10.1097/COH.0b013e32832e6184
4. Agarwal A, Hioe CE, Swetnam J, Zolla-Pazner S, Cardozo T. Quantitative assessment of masking of neutralization epitopes in HIV-1. *Vaccine.* (2011) 29:6736–41. doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2010.12.052
5. Correia BE, Ban Y-EA, Holmes MA, Xu H, Ellingson K, Kraft Z, et al. Computational design of epitope-scaffolds allows induction of antibodies specific for a poorly immunogenic HIV vaccine epitope. *Structure.* (2010) 18:1116–26. doi: 10.1016/j.str.2010.06.010
6. Joyce JG, Krauss IJ, Song HC, Opalka DW, Grimm KM, Nahas DD, et al. An oligosaccharide-based HIV-1 2G12 mimotope vaccine induces carbohydrate-specific antibodies that fail to neutralize HIV-1 virions. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (2008) 105:15684–9. doi: 10.1073/pnas.0807837105
7. Klasse PJ, Sanders RW, Cerutti A, Moore JP. How can HIV-type-1-env immunogenicity be improved to facilitate antibody-based vaccine development? *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses.* (2012) 28:1–15. doi: 10.1089/aid.2011.0053
8. Krachmarov CP, Honnen WJ, Kayman SC, Gorny MK, Zolla-Pazner S, Pinter A. Factors determining the breadth and potency of neutralization by V3-specific human monoclonal antibodies derived from subjects infected with clade A or clade B strains of human immunodeficiency virus type 1. *J Virol.* (2006) 80:7127–35. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02619-05
9. Wei X, Decker JM, Wang S, Hui H, Kappes JC, Wu X, et al. Antibody neutralization and escape by HIV-1. *Nature.* (2003) 422:307–12. doi: 10.1038/nature01470
10. Burton DR, Weiss RA. A boost for HIV vaccine design. *Science.* (2010) 329:770–3. doi: 10.1126/science.1194693
11. Briney BS, Willis JR, Jr, Crowe JE Jr. Human peripheral blood antibodies with long HCDR3s are established primarily at original recombination using a limited subset of germline genes. *PLOS ONE.* (2012) 7:e36750. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0036750
12. Acharya P, Tolbert WD, Gohain N, Wu X, Yu L, Liu T, et al. Structural definition of an antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity response implicated in reduced risk for HIV-1 infection. *J Virol.* (2014) 88:12895–906. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02194-14
13. Ferrari G, Pollara J, Kozink D, Harms T, Drinker M, Freel S, et al. An HIV-1 gp120 envelope human monoclonal antibody that recognizes a C1 conformational epitope mediates potent antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) activity and defines a common ADCC epitope in human HIV-1 serum. *J Virol.* (2011) 85:7029–36. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00171-11
14. Guan Y, Pazgier M, Sajadi MM, Kamin-Lewis R, Al-Darmarki S, Flinko R, et al. Diverse specificity and effector function among human antibodies to HIV-1 envelope glycoprotein epitopes exposed by CD4 binding. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (2013) 110:E69–78. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1217609110
15. Veillette M, Désormeaux A, Medjahed H, Gharsallah N-E, Coutu M, Baalwa J, et al. Interaction with cellular CD4 exposes HIV-1 envelope epitopes targeted by antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity. *J Virol.* (2014) 88:2633–44. doi: 10.1128/JVI.03230-13
16. Veillette M, Coutu M, Richard J, Batraville L-A, Dagher O, Bernard N, et al. The HIV-1 gp120 CD4-bound conformation is preferentially targeted by antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity-mediating antibodies in sera from HIV-1-infected individuals. *J Virol.* (2015) 89:545–51. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02868-14
17. Finnegan CM, Berg W, Lewis GK, DeVico AL. Antigenic properties of the human immunodeficiency virus envelope during cell-cell fusion. *J Virol.* (2001) 75:11096–105. doi: 10.1128/JVI.75.22.11096-11105.2001
18. Finnegan CM, Berg W, Lewis GK, DeVico AL. Antigenic properties of the human immunodeficiency virus transmembrane glycoprotein during cell-cell fusion. *J Virol.* (2002) 76:12123–34. doi: 10.1128/JVI.76.23.12123-12134.2002
19. Mengistu M, Ray K, Lewis GK, DeVico AL. Antigenic properties of the human immunodeficiency virus envelope glycoprotein Gp120 on virions bound to target cells. *PLoS Pathog.* (2015) 11:e1004772. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1004772
20. Ray K, Mengistu M, Lewis GK, Lakowicz JR, DeVico AL. Antigenic properties of the HIV envelope on virions in solution. *J Virol.* (2014) 88:1795–808. doi: 10.1128/JVI.03048-13
21. Lewis GK, Guan Y, Kamin-Lewis R, Sajadi M, Pazgier M, DeVico AL. Epitope target structures of fc-mediated effector function during HIV-1 acquisition. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS.* (2014) 9:263–70. doi: 10.1097/COH.0000000000000055
22. Pollara J, Bonsignori M, Moody MA, Pazgier M, Haynes BF, Ferrari G. Epitope specificity of human immunodeficiency virus-1 antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity [ADCC] responses. *Curr HIV Res.* (2013) 11:378–87. doi: 10.2174/1570162X113116660059
23. Veillette M, Richard J, Pazgier M, Lewis GK, Parsons MS, Finzi A. Role of HIV-1 Envelope Glycoproteins conformation and accessory proteins on ADCC responses. *Curr HIV Res.* (2016) 14:9–23. doi: 10.2174/1570162X13666150827093449
24. Gohain N, Tolbert WD, Acharya P, Yu L, Liu T, Zhao P, et al. Cocrystal structures of antibody N60-i3 and antibody JR4 in complex with gp120 define more cluster A epitopes involved in effective antibody-dependent effector function against HIV-1. *J Virol.* (2015) 89:8840–54. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01232-15
25. Tolbert WD, Gohain N, Alsahafi N, Van V, Orlandi C, Ding S, et al. Targeting the late stage of HIV-1 entry for antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity: structural basis for env epitopes in the C11 region. *Structure.* (2017) 25:1719–31.e4. doi: 10.1016/j.str.2017.09.009
26. Lewis GK, Pazgier M, Evans DT, Ferrari G, Bournazos S, Parsons MS, et al. Beyond viral neutralization. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses.* (2017) 33:760–4. doi: 10.1089/aid.2016.0299
27. Lewis GK, Pazgier M, DeVico AL. Survivors remorse: antibody-mediated protection against HIV-1. *Immunol Rev.* (2017b) 275:271–84. doi: 10.1111/imr.12510
28. Rerks-Ngarm S, Pitisuttithum P, Nitayaphan S, Kaewkungwal J, Chiu J, Paris R, et al. Vaccination with ALVAC and AIDSVAX to Prevent HIV-1 Infection in Thailand. *N Engl J Med.* (2009) 361:2209–20. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa0908492
29. Chung AW, Ghebremichael M, Robinson H, Brown E, Choi I, Lane S, et al. Polyfunctional Fc-effector profiles mediated by IgG subclass selection distinguish RV144 and VAX003 vaccines. *Sci Transl Med.* (2014) 6:228ra38. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3007736
30. Yates NL, Liao H-X, Fong Y, deCamp A, Vandergrift NA, Williams WT, et al. Vaccine-induced env V1–V2 IgG3 correlates with lower HIV-1 infection risk and declines soon after vaccination. *Sci Transl Med.* (2014) 6:228ra39. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3007730
31. Haynes BF, Gilbert PB, McElrath MJ, Zolla-Pazner S, Tomaras GD, Alam SM, et al. Immune-Correlates analysis of an HIV-1 vaccine efficacy trial. *N Engl J Med.* (2012) 366:1275–86. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa1113425
32. Bonsignori M, Pollara J, Moody MA, Alpert MD, Chen X, Hwang K-K, et al. Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity-mediating antibodies from an hiv-1 vaccine efficacy trial target multiple epitopes and preferentially use the VH1 gene family. *J Virol.* (2012) 86:11521–32. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01023-12
33. Pollara J, Bonsignori M, Moody MA, Liu P, Alam SM, Hwang K-K, et al. HIV-1 vaccine-induced C1 and V2 Env-specific antibodies synergize for increased antiviral activities. *J Virol.* (2014) 88:7715–26. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00156-14
34. Tolbert WD, Gohain N, Veillette M, Chapleau J-P, Orlandi C, Visciano ML, et al. Paring down HIV Env: design and crystal *structure* of a stabilized inner domain of HIV-1 gp120 displaying a major ADCC target of the A32 region. *Structure.* (2016) 24:697–709. doi: 10.1016/j.str.2016.03.005
35. Moore JP, Ho DD. Antibodies to discontinuous or conformationally sensitive epitopes on the gp120 glycoprotein of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 are highly prevalent in sera of infected humans. *J Virol.* (1993) 67:863–75.
36. Orlandi C, Flinko R, Lewis GK. A new cell line for high throughput HIV-specific antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) and cell-to-cell virus transmission studies. *J Immunol Methods.* (2016) 433:51–8. doi: 10.1016/j.jim.2016.03.002
37. Kramski M, Stratov I, Kent SJ. The role of HIV-specific antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity in HIV prevention and the influence of the HIV-1 Vpu protein. *AIDS.* (2015) 29:137–44. doi: 10.1097/QAD.0000000000000523

38. Ding S, Veillette M, Coutu M, Prévost J, Scharf L, Bjorkman PJ, et al. A highly conserved residue of the HIV-1 gp120 inner domain is important for antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity responses mediated by anti-cluster A antibodies. *J Virol.* (2016) 90:2127–34. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02779-15
39. Montefiori DC, Roederer M, Morris L, Seaman MS. Neutralization tiers of HIV-1. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS.* (2018) 13:128. doi: 10.1097/COH.0000000000000442
40. DeVico A, Fouts T, Lewis GK, Gallo RC, Godfrey K, Charurat M, et al. Antibodies to CD4-induced sites in HIV gp120 correlate with the control of SHIV challenge in macaques vaccinated with subunit immunogens. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (2007) 104:17477–82. doi: 10.1073/pnas.0707399104
41. Fouts TR, Bagley K, Prado IJ, Bobb KL, Schwartz JA, Xu R, et al. Balance of cellular and humoral immunity determines the level of protection by HIV vaccines in rhesus macaque models of HIV infection. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (2015) 112:E992–9. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1423669112
42. Gómez-Román VR, Florese RH, Patterson LJ, Peng B, Venzon D, Aldrich K, et al. A simplified method for the rapid fluorometric assessment of antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity. *J Immunol Methods.* (2006) 308:53–67. doi: 10.1016/j.jim.2005.09.018
43. Gómez-Román VR, Florese RH, Peng B, Montefiori DC, Kalyanaraman VS, Venzon D, et al. An adenovirus-based HIV subtype B prime/boost vaccine regimen elicits antibodies mediating broad antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity against non-subtype B HIV strains. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr.* (2006) 43:270–7. doi: 10.1097/01.qai.0000230318.40170.60
44. Malkevitch NV, Patterson LJ, Aldrich MK, Wu Y, Venzon D, Florese RH, et al. Durable protection of rhesus macaques immunized with a replicating adenovirus-SIV multigene prime/protein boost vaccine regimen against a second SIVmac251 rectal challenge: role of SIV-specific CD8+ T cell responses. *Virology.* (2006) 353:83–98. doi: 10.1016/j.virol.2006.05.012
45. Smith AJ, Wietgrefe SW, Shang L, Reilly CS, Southern PJ, Perkey KE, et al. Live SIV vaccine correlate of protection: immune complex-inhibitory Fc receptor interactions that reduce target cell availability. *J Immunol.* (2014) 193:3126–33. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1400822
46. Lewis GK. Qualitative and quantitative variables that affect the potency of Fc- mediated effector function *in vitro* and *in vivo*: considerations for passive immunization using non-neutralizing antibodies. *Curr HIV Res.* (2013) 11:354–64. doi: 10.2174/1570162X113116660060
47. Fouts TR, Tuskan R, Godfrey K, Reitz M, Hone D, Lewis GK, et al. Expression and characterization of a single-chain polypeptide analogue of the human immunodeficiency virus type 1 gp120-CD4 receptor complex. *J Virol.* (2000) 74:11427. doi: 10.1128/JVI.74.24.11427-11436.2000
48. Carter D, Fox CB, Day TA, Guderian JA, Liang H, Rolf T, et al. A structure-function approach to optimizing TLR4 ligands for human vaccines. *Clin Transl Immunol.* (2016) 5:e108. doi: 10.1038/cti.2016.63
49. Desbien AL, Cauwelaert ND, Reed SJ, Bailor HR, Liang H, Carter D, et al. IL-18 and subcapsular lymph node macrophages are essential for enhanced B cell responses with TLR4 agonist adjuvants. *J Immunol.* (2016) 197:4351–9. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1600993
50. Bruhns P. Properties of mouse and human IgG receptors and their contribution to disease models. *Blood.* (2012) 119:5640–9. doi: 10.1182/blood-2012-01-380121

Conflict of Interest Statement: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

REVIEW
published: 08 April 2019
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00697

Mind the Gap: How Interspecies Variability in IgG and Its Receptors May Complicate Comparisons of Human and Non-human Primate Effector Function

Andrew R. Crowley[1] *and Margaret E. Ackerman*[1,2]*

[1] *Molecular and Cellular Biology Program, Dartmouth College, Hanover, NH, United States,* [2] *Thayer School of Engineering, Dartmouth College, Hanover, NH, United States*

The field of HIV research relies heavily on non-human primates, particularly the members of the macaque genus, as models for the evaluation of candidate vaccines and monoclonal antibodies. A growing body of research suggests that successful protection of humans will not solely rely on the neutralization activity of an antibody's antigen binding fragment. Rather, immunological effector functions prompted by the interaction of the immunoglobulin G constant region and its cognate Fc receptors help contribute to favorable outcomes. Inherent differences in the sequences, expression, and activities of human and non-human primate antibody receptors and immunoglobulins have the potential to produce disparate results in the observations made in studies conducted in differing species. Having a more complete understanding of these differences, however, should permit the more fluent translation of observations between model organisms and the clinic. Here we present a guide to such translations that encompasses not only what is presently known regarding the affinity of the receptor-ligand interactions but also the influence of expression patterns and allelic variation, with a focus on insights gained from use of this model in HIV vaccines and passive antibody therapy and treatment.

Keywords: non-human primate, rhesus, cynomolgus, HIV, SIV, IgG, Fcγ receptor, neonatal Fc receptor

OPEN ACCESS

Edited by:
Gabriella Scarlatti,
San Raffaele Hospital (IRCCS), Italy

Reviewed by:
Davide Corti,
Vir Biotechnology, Switzerland
Amy W. Chung,
The University of Melbourne, Australia

***Correspondence:**
Margaret E. Ackerman
margaret.e.ackerman@dartmouth.edu

Specialty section:
This article was submitted to Comparative Immunology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology

Received: *01 November 2018*
Accepted: *13 March 2019*
Published: *08 April 2019*

Citation:
Crowley AR and Ackerman ME (2019) Mind the Gap: How Interspecies Variability in IgG and Its Receptors May Complicate Comparisons of Human and Non-human Primate Effector Function. Front. Immunol. 10:697. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00697

INTRODUCTION

Advances in the treatment and prevention of HIV have relied heavily on the macaque animal model. Infection of animals with simian immunodeficiency virus (SIV) or chimeric simianized human immunodeficiency virus (SHIV) allows researchers to both model transmission and induce in a variety of macaque species a disease state characterized by sequelae closely resembling those found over the course of human HIV infection (1–5), against which therapeutic interventions can be compared. The similarities of the macaque model to humans has permitted the screening of drug candidates prior to elaborate and expensive human trials, which has contributed to the development of lifesaving drugs such as tenofovir (6, 7). In addition to its successes in the development of small molecule inhibitors, work in macaques has demonstrated that vaccines and antibodies are capable of mediating protection against SIV/SHIV infection, offering important

insights into the characteristics of effective immunological responses that serve as a model for vaccine research and development.

However, the high-profile failures of all but one of the vaccine candidates tested in humans to protect against HIV-1 infection also suggest the limitations of the macaque model. For all of the beneficial contributions the model has made to the understanding and treatment of HIV, discrepancies between outcomes in macaque studies and in the clinic suggest that a better understanding of how human and macaque immunobiology differ may be necessary in order to more reliably draw translatable conclusions from animal studies. Fundamental differences between humans and macaques, here focusing particularly in the area of humoral immune responses, mean that in some cases, the result of a vaccination study or a passive transfer experiment conducted in macaques may not be recapitulated if attempted in humans. Promisingly, with a more complete understanding of this interspecies diversity, it should be possible to better translate observations likely to be meaningful to human protection and therapy. While numerous Fc receptors for IgG exist, many of these, including FcRL5, mucins, and TRIM21 (8–10), have yet to be evaluated thoroughly in the macaque model. However, recent work has greatly enhanced our knowledge of IgG, FcγR, and FcRn biology in rhesus macaques. This review summarizes the current understanding of what differences exist in the setting of receptor and antibody interactions between humans and non-human primates, with a particular emphasis on those facets that have the potential to affect the evaluation of candidate vaccines and antibody-based strategies for the prevention or treatment of HIV-1 infection in humans.

ANTIBODIES IN HIV PREVENTION AND THERAPY

A wealth of data from non-human primate studies has demonstrated that monoclonal antibodies can provide sterilizing protection from viral challenge (11–13); additionally, because humoral immune responses are often correlates of vaccine-mediated protection, it has become clear that closer inspection of immunoglobulin biology in macaques has the potential to significantly advance research and development of vaccines and therapeutic antibodies. This potential was made all the more apparent following the conclusion of the single successful human vaccine trial to date, the RV144 trial conducted in Thailand, in which a moderate degree of protection was observed (14). A subsequent study of vaccine-induced immune responses identified binding, rather than broadly neutralizing, antibodies directed against the envelope glycoprotein as a correlate of reduced risk of infection (15). Furthermore, additional correlates analysis suggested that binding antibody responses with certain characteristics, such as a bias toward IgG3, away from IgA, and with antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC), and complement cascade-initiating activity were associated with reduced risk (15–18). These findings reinforce those of numerous other studies in both humans and macaques (summarized in **Table 1**) that have concluded that innate immune effector functions, such as ADCC, correlate with and may directly contribute to improved outcomes at all stages of HIV infection, from potentially blocking acquisition of the virus altogether to maintaining a lower viral load and delaying the onset of AIDS.

One of the most illustrative examples is the work of Hessell et al. which compared the protective efficacy of the broadly neutralizing antibody b12 with variants engineered to lack affinity for Fcγ receptors (FcγR) and/or the complement cascade-initiating protein C1q. Passive transfer of the native b12 was able to successfully block infection of rhesus macaques (27). Comparative analysis of the engineered variant lacking affinity for cellular antibody receptors to the crystallizable fragment (Fc) of IgG demonstrated that effector function driven by FcγRs, but not complement, contributed to protection. Similarly, humanized mouse models of HIV prevention and therapy have led to similar observations regarding the contribution of effector functions to the *in vitro* effect of other broadly neutralizing antibodies (69–71). However, given the lack of impact of effector function on the protection afforded by the neutralizing antibody PGT121 (59), and the inability of Fc glycosylation changes that result in enhanced ADCC activity specifically to enhance b12's protective efficacy (64), the generalizability of this observation to other antibodies, and the specific FcγR-dependent effector activities that may play a role in protection, remain to be determined. Nonetheless, a wealth of diverse data from studies of vaccines, monoclonal antibodies, and natural infection converge to point toward the importance of Fc receptor-mediated antiviral activities *in vivo*. Thus, fully leveraging the macaque model of HIV to identify vaccine and antibody candidates that bear desirable effector function profiles requires accounting for the ways in which immunoglobulins and their receptors differ between non-human primates and humans.

ANTIBODY RECEPTORS

The considerable interspecies diversity existing between the members of the FcγR family (itself a member of the immunoglobulin superfamily) (**Figure 1**) dramatically complicates comparisons of immune responses in humans and macaques. When cross-linked through their binding of antigen-antibody immune complexes, FcγRs transmit activating or inhibitory signals to the immune cell, depending on the identity of the signaling domain associated with the receptor in question. By enabling innate immune effector cells to potently respond to antigenic targets that the humoral immune system has adapted to recognize, FcγRs serve as a critical bridge between the arms of the immune system. Among other outcomes, FcγR engagement can lead to the release of cytokines, the direct killing of virus-infected, antibody-opsonized cells via ADCC, and phagocytosis and subsequent antigen processing and display (72).

This review will also briefly consider a receptor unrelated to the FcγR family—the MHC class I-like neonatal Fc receptor (FcRn). Much like the Fcγ receptors, FcRn acts as an important link between arms of the immune system, connecting humoral,

TABLE 1 | A partial summary of human and NHP studies that investigated the role of antiviral antibody effector functions in the context of (S)HIV infection.

Year	Species	Setting	Relevant findings, quoted	References
Fc RECEPTOR-MEDIATED EFFECTOR FUNCTION IS ASSOCIATED WITH REDUCED ACQUISITION OF HIV-1/SIV/SHIV				
2018	*M. mulatta*	Vaccination	• Reduced risk of infection was associated with IgG-driven antibody-dependent monocyte-mediated phagocytosis in the [intramuscular] vaccinees, but with vaccine-elicited IgA-driven neutrophil-mediated phagocytosis in [aerosol]-immunized animals	(19)
2017	*M. mulatta*	Vaccination	• Systems serology of the antibody responses identifies plasma antibody binding to HIV-infected cells, peak ADCC antibody titres, NK cell-mediated ADCC and antibody-mediated activation of MIP-1b in NK cells as the four immunological parameters that best predict decreased infection risk	(20)
2015	*M. mulatta*	Vaccination	• Protective efficacy correlated with the functionality of Env-specific antibody responses • These data demonstrate robust protection by Ad/Env vaccines against acquisition of neutralization-resistant virus challenge in rhesus monkeys	(21)
2015	*M. mulatta*	Vaccination	• Protection correlated with antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity specific for CD4-induced epitopes, provided that the concurrent antivaccine T-cell responses were minimal. Protection was lost in instances when T-cell responses were high or when the requisite antibody titers had declined	(22)
2014	*H. sapiens*	Vaccination	• These data suggest that subclass selection differences associated with coordinated humoral functional responses targeting strain-specific protective V2 loop epitopes may underlie differences in vaccine efficacy observed	(16)
2013	*M. mulatta*	Vaccination	• Protection against acquisition of infection correlated with vaccine-elicited binding, neutralizing, and functional non-neutralizing antibodies	(23)
2012	*M. mulatta*	Vaccination	• Measures of ADCC activity were higher among the SIVΔnef-inoculated macaques that remained uninfected than among those that became infected	(24)
2012	*H. sapiens*	Vaccination	• The binding of IgG antibodies to variable regions 1 and 2 (V1V2) of HIV envelope proteins (Env) correlated inversely with the rate of HIV-1 infection	(15)
2011	*M. mulatta*	Vaccination	• All protected animals showed gp41-specific vaginal IgAs with HIV-1 transcytosis-blocking properties and vaginal IgGs with neutralizing and/or [ADCC] activities • Plasma IgGs totally lacked virus-neutralizing activity	(25)
2007	*H. sapiens*	Vaccination	• The level of vaccine-induced ADCVI activity correlated inversely with the rate of acquiring HIV infection • ADCVI correlated poorly with neutralizing or CD4-gp120-blocking Ab activity • degree to which the ADCVI Ab response predicted the rate of infection was influenced by polymorphisms at the FcgR2a and FcgR3a gene loci	(26)
2007	*M. mulatta*	Passive transfer	• There is a dramatic decrease in the ability of a broadly neutralizing antibody to protect macaques against SHIV challenge when Fc receptor and complement-binding activities are engineered out of the antibody • No loss of antibody protective activity is associated with the elimination of complement binding alone	(27)
1998	*M. mulatta*	Passive transfer	• SIV hyperimmune sera given subcutaneously prior to oral SIV inoculation protected 6 newborns against infection • SIV hyperimmune sera was given… 3 weeks after oral SIV inoculation, viremia was not reduced	(28)
Fc RECEPTOR-MEDIATED EFFECTOR FUNCTION IS ASSOCIATED WITH REDUCED VIREMIA AND/OR HIGHER CD4$^+$ T CELL COUNTS				
2018	*M. mulatta*	Challenge model	• There was a significant reduction in the seeding of virus to the lymph nodes and a decrease in plasma viremia in the HIV antibody-infused macaques compared with the control antibody-infused animals	(29)
2016	*H. sapiens*	Infected patients	• [elite controllers] demonstrated polyfunctional humoral immune responses able to coordinately recruit ADCC, other NK functions, monocyte and neutrophil phagocytosis, and complement	(30)
2016	*M. mulatta*	Vaccination	• gp140-specific IgG3 Abs of females but not males were correlated with [ADCC] against gp120 targets ($p = 0.026$) and with [ADCP] ($p = 0.010$) • IgG3 Ab of females but not males also correlated with decreased peak viremia ($p = 0.028$)	(31)
2015	*M. mulatta*	Passive transfer	• Passive infusion of each of the three antibodies significantly reduced the number of [transmitted/founder] genomes	(32)
2011	*M. mulatta*	Vaccination	• Pre- and post-challenge memory B cells were correlated with functional antibody responses including [ADCC], [ADCVI], and transcytosis inhibition • Post-challenge, Env-specific IgG and IgA memory B cells were correlated with reduced chronic viremia	(33)
2011	*H. sapiens*	Infected patients	• ADCC responses to whole gp140 Env protein were strongly associated with a slower decline in CD4 T cell loss	(34)
2013	*H. sapiens*	Infected patients	• Found significantly higher levels of ADCC antibodies in controllers verses viremic subjects ($p = 0.017$)	(35)

(Continued)

TABLE 1 | Continued

Year	Species	Setting	Relevant findings, quoted	References
2010	*M. mulatta*	Vaccination	• Both ADCVI and percent ADCC killing prechallenge were significantly correlated with reduced acute viremia • [percent ADCC killing prechallenge], as well as post-challenge ADCVI and ADCC, was also significantly correlated with reduced chronic viremia	(36)
2009	*M. mulatta*	Vaccination	• The higher ADCC and ADCVI activities seen in the Tat/Env group provide a plausible mechanism responsible for the greater chronic-phase protection	(37)
2009	*M. mulatta*	Vaccination	• Reduced acute viremia was significantly correlated with higher serum binding titer, stronger [ADCC] activity, and peak prechallenge and 2-week-postchallenge [ADCVI]	(38)
2009	*H. sapiens*	Infected patients	• ADCC was detectable in all controllers tested and was significantly higher than in viremic individuals ($P < 0.0002$)	(39)
2005	*M. mulatta*	Vaccination	• *In vitro* ADCC activity correlated with *in vivo* reduced acute viremia after a mucosal challenge with pathogenic SIV	(40)
2004	*H. sapiens*	Infected patients	• Women with [cervical-lavage] ADCC activity had lower genital viral loads than did women with serum ADCC activity only	(41)
2001	*H. sapiens*	Infected patients	• Serum titers of anti-HIV-1 ADCC antibodies bear a significant ($P < 0.05$) positive correlation with the peripheral blood CD+ T cell counts and a negative one with the number of copies of HIV-1 RNA in the plasma of HIV-infected individuals	(42)
2001	*H. sapiens*	Infected patients	• ADCC effector cell function…correlated inversely with viral load ($R = -0.42$, $p = 0.007$) and directly with $CD4^+$ cell counts ($R = 0.52$, $p = 0.001$) • ADCC reduced virus yields from CD4+ lymphocytes infected with a primary HIV isolate	(43)
2001	*H. sapiens*	Infected patients	• The magnitude of this effector cell-mediated antiviral antibody response was inversely associated with plasma viremia level	(44)
1994	*H. sapiens*	Infected patients	• Individuals with CD4 counts <200/mm^3 were found to have the lowest titres of [ADCC-mediating] antibodies in their sera • ADCC-effector function of the [PBMCs] of HIV-infected individuals was significantly ($p < 0.05$) reduced as compared to PBMC from healthy, HIV-seronegative individuals	(45)
1990	*H. sapiens*	Infected patients	• Early ADCC responses were associated with high mean %$CD4^+$ T cell numbers and absence of lymphadenopathy throughout the 2-year observation period	(46)
Fc RECEPTOR-MEDIATED EFFECTOR FUNCTION IS ASSOCIATED WITH IMPROVED CLINICAL STATUS AND/OR DELAYED PROGRESSION TO (S)AIDS				
2017	*H. sapiens*	Infected patients	• [elite controllers] had higher levels of HIV Env-specific antibodies capable of binding Fc RIIIa, activating NK cells, and mediating granzyme B activity (all $P < 0.01$) than viremic subjects	(47)
2013	*H. sapiens*	Infected patients	• Although the magnitude of ADCC responses in the LTSP cohort were not higher and did not correlate with CD4 T-cell depletion rates, the LTSP cohort had significantly broader ADCC responses compared with the non-LTSP cohort	(48)
2002	*M. mulatta*	Challenge model	• Our study shows a correlation between humoral response, ADCC activity, and disease progression (as measured by $CD4^+$ T cell counts) • In these animals, ADCC activity is associated with delayed progression to AIDS	(49)
1999	*H. sapiens*	Vertical transmission	• Titres of [ADCC] were similar in transmitting vs. non-transmitting mothers… however, high [ADCC] titres were correlated with a good clinical status of children	(50)
1996	*H. sapiens*	Infected patients	• Rapid progessors had significantly lower titres of Abs that mediate ADCC against HIV-1 gp120 than those of non-rapid progressors…or…non-progressors • High titres of Abs that mediate ADCC correlate with successful host defense against AIDS	(51)
1993	*H. sapiens*	Vertical transmission	• Presence and titres of ADCC mediating and/or neutralizing antibodies in maternal sera did not predict HIV-1 infection in their respective children • Significantly higher frequency of ADCC was seen in the seropositive non-AIDS children compared with the AIDS children	(52)
1990	*H. sapiens*	Vertical transmission	• ADCC antibody frequencies were much higher (70%) in the non-AIDS group than in the AIDS group (30%) • HIV-specific ADCC and neutralizing antibodies do not seem to protect against transmission of HIV from mother to child but are significantly correlated with a better clinical stage of childhood HIV infection	(53)
1988	*H. sapiens*	Infected patients	• All sera of asymptomatic individuals… had a higher mean ADCC titer as compared to sera from patients progressing to AIDS or ARC	(54)
1987	*H. sapiens*	Infected patients	• ADCC titers were lower in patients with [AIDS] than in asymptomatic carriers	(55)
1987	*H. sapiens*	Infected patients	• Sera from healthy HTLV-III/LAV seropositive individuals in the presence of mononuclear cells from healthy HTLV-III/LAV seronegative donors exhibited significantly higher levels of ADCC activity compared to sera from patients with AIDS	(56)

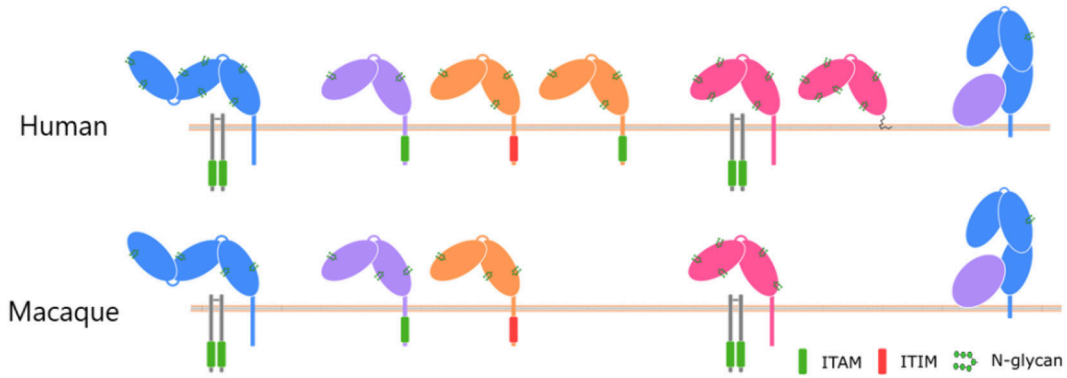
(Continued)

TABLE 1 | Continued

Year	Species	Setting	Relevant findings, quoted	References
Fc RECEPTOR-MEDIATED EFFECTOR FUNCTION IS ASSOCIATED WITH A REDUCED RISK OF MORTALITY				
2015	*H. sapiens*	Vertical transmission	• ADCC levels were higher in uninfected than infected infants, although not significantly • Increase in ADCC antibody activity in infected infants was associated with reduced mortality risk	(57)
1999	*H. sapiens*	Infected patients	• High baseline ADCC (>median) was associated with improved survival ($P = 0.05$)	(58)
Fc RECEPTOR-MEDIATED EFFECTOR FUNCTION IS DISPENSIBLE TO PROTECTION AGAINST HIV-1/SHIV				
2018	*M. mulatta*	Challenge model	• The single V2 antibody at the dose given did not significantly reduce the number of infections	(29)
2018	*M. nemestrina*	Challenge model	• The potent neutralizing capacity of PGT121 renders the Fc-dependent functions of the Ab at least partially redundant	(59)
2016	*M. mulatta*	Passive transfer	• CH31 IgG1 and IgA2 isoforms infused before high-dose SHIV challenge were completely to partially protective, respectively, while [non-neutralizing]Abs (CH54 IgG1 and CH38 mIgA2) were non-protective	(60)
2016	*H. sapiens*	*Ex vivo* model	• CD4 binding site bnAbs b12 IgG1 and CH31 IgG1 and IgA2 isoforms potently blocked HIV-1JR-CSF and HIV-1Bal26 infection. However, IgG1 and IgA nnAbs, either alone, or together, did not inhibit infection despite the presence of FcR-expressing effector cells in the tissue	(60)
2015	*M. mulatta*	Passive transfer	• 7B2 IgG1 or A32 IgG1, each containing mutations to enhance Fc function, was administered passively to rhesus macaques but afforded no protection against productive clinical infection	(32)
2014	*M. mulatta*	Passive transfer	• Passive transfer of a low-dose of ADCC inducing antibodies did not protect from infection following SHIV-SF162P3 challenge	(61)
2013	*M. mulatta*	Challenge model	• Despite virus-specific suppressive activity of the non-NAbs having been observed *in vitro*, their passive immunization post-infection did not result in SIV control *in vivo* • Virion binding and ADCVI activity with lack of virus neutralizing activity were indicated to be insufficient for antibody-triggered non-sterile SIV control	(62)
2014	*M. mulatta*	Vaccination	• We identify blocking CD4+ T cell recruitment to thereby inhibit local expansion of infected founder populations as a second correlate of protection • Virus-specific immune complex interactions with the inhibitory FcgRIIb receptor in the epithelium lining the cervix initiate expression of genes that block recruitment of target cells	(63)
2012	*M. mulatta*	Passive transfer	• NFb12 had higher affinity for human and rhesus macaque FcgR3a and was more efficient in inhibiting viral replication and more effective in killing HIV-infected cells in an ADCC assay • Despite these more potent *in vitro* antiviral activities, NFb12 did not enhance protection *in vivo* against repeated low-dose vaginal challenge in the [SHIV/macaque] model compared to wild-type b12	(64)
2011	*M. mulatta*	Challenge model	• Compared with control animals, the protection by [neutralizing] b12 achieved statistical significance, whereas that caused by [non-neutralizing] F240 did not	(65)
2005	*M. mulatta*	Passive transfer	• Six neonatal macaques were infused [subcutaneously] with immune IgG...positive for ADCC and Ab-dependent cell-mediated viral inhibition • No protection, assessed by viral burdens, CD4 counts, and time to euthanasia was observed	(40)
1994	*H. sapiens*	Vertical transmission	• High levels of anti-HIV-1 ADCC antibody at birth are not protective against vertical transmission of HIV-1	(66)
1990	*H. sapiens*	Infected patients	• There is no significant difference in ADCC values between those who remained asymptomatic and those who progressed to disease	(67)
1989	*H. sapiens*	Infected patients	• Levels of serum and effector-cell ADCC activity do not predict whether an individual will develop AIDS	(68)

and cellular immunity through its diverse activities. The receptor's capacity to distinguish monomeric IgG from that found in immune complex both imparts IgG with a lengthy serum half-life (73), and ensures that captured antigens are efficiently processes and presented to T cells (74, 75).

The differences in the sequences, ligand binding affinities, and expression patterns of human and macaque IgG and IgG receptors raise the possibility that a potent effector function-driven immune response may have a different phenotypic character in each species. This situation is further complicated by the frequent use of species-mismatched reagents and cell lines for *in vitro* activity assays. For example, the high baseline activity of macaque natural killer cells has driven most analyses of the ADCC potential found in the sera of vaccinated animals to be performed using human cell lines (40, 76). Similarly, the macaque/SHIV model is routinely used to evaluate the ability of passively transferred human antibodies to protect against infection (11–13). Absent a convincing case that the subclass of the transfused antibody or the receptor profile of the effector cell lines do not differ meaningfully between species, caution is required when attempting to extrapolate the findings of such studies from one species to another. Such risks may be mitigated, however, if given the means to more confidently translate observations between primate species and humans.



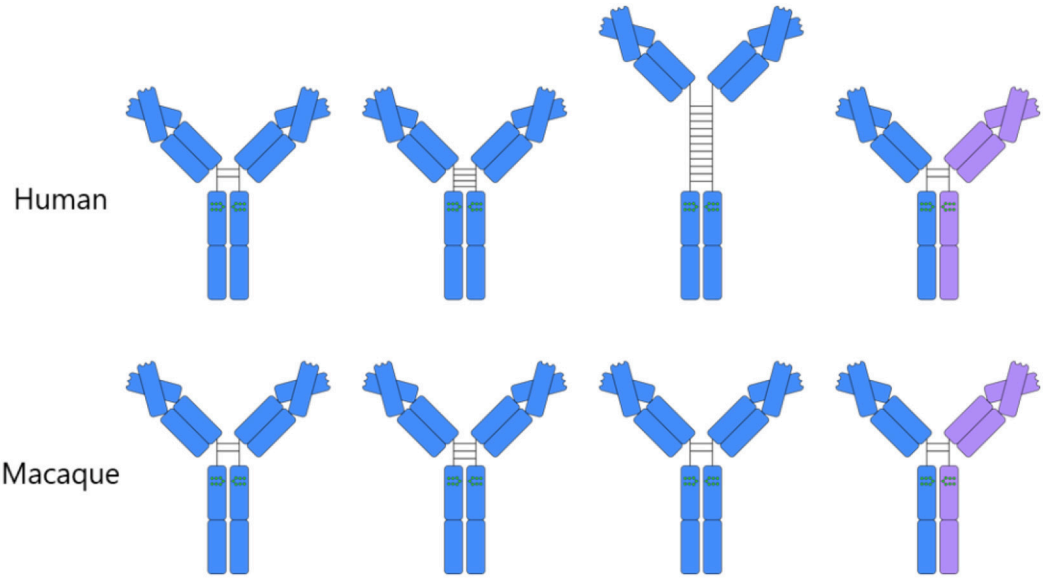
		FcγR1	FcγR2a	FcγR2b	FcγR2c	FcγR3a	FcγR3b	FcRn [β_2M]
Total Expressed Variants	Human	1	2	2	1	2	3	1 [1]
	Rhesus	3	4	2	–	3	–	1 [1]
Total N-glycan motifs	Human	7	2	3	3	5	6	1 [0]
	Macaque[1]	4	3	3	–	5	–	1 [0]
Amino Acid Substitutions[2] – Human vs. Rhesus	Extracellular Domain	15 – 17	20 – 24	18 – 20	–	15 – 18	–	7 [16]
	Transmembrane and Cytoplasmic Domains	6 + Δ17[3]	15	6	–	6	–	3 [–]

FIGURE 1 | A comparison of selected Fc receptors between humans and rhesus macaque species. Differences in protein coding sequences reflects insertions, deletions, and sites of polymorphism.
(1) The number of N glycan motifs is conserved across rhesus and cynomolgus macaques.
(2) The ranges of values represent the minimum and maximum changes involved in shifting from human to rhesus; exact numbers depend on the allelic variants being compared.
(3) Rhesus macaque FcγRI is truncated by 17 amino acids at its C terminus relative to the human variant.

DISTINCTIONS BETWEEN HUMAN AND NHP IgG TYPES

The other participant in the FcγR-antibody interaction, immunoglobulin G, introduces an additional dimension that must be accounted for when translating observations between macaques and humans. Primate species nominally share the same IgG subclasses, having IgG1 through IgG4, numbered according to serum prevalence, but in the case of humans and macaques, the similarities largely end with this convention. Macaque IgG subclasses are in fact a much less structurally and functionally diverse group of proteins than those found in humans (**Figure 2**). For example, human IgG3 features an elongated hinge, up to 62 amino acids in length (81, 82), for which no analog has been found in any species of macaque. Human IgG2, on the other hand, has a shortened hinge, and exists in several disulfide bond-based structural isoforms whose activity profile can differ (83). The similarities between macaque subclasses do not end with their sequences, however; the functional activity of macaque IgG, assessed by the ability to promote monocyte phagocytosis and natural killer cell degranulation, and binding to FcγR is relatively consistent across each of the four subclasses in rhesus (80) and cynomolgus (77), as compared to the more distinct activity and binding profiles observed for human IgG subclasses.

The human IgG response, conversely, can progress through better delineated phases during the course of infection, phases which may have arisen because they can collectively lead to an immune response activity profile that rises and falls when appropriate – fighting infection early on, and having the capacity to wane before the damage caused by inflammation is too severe. Within this framework, the role of IgG3, the first subclass within the immunoglobulin locus and the form that tends to be observed early on in infection (84), is to rapidly activate the immune response, particularly the effector cells of the innate immune system. In keeping with this role, human IgG3 strongly interacts with Fcγ receptors (85) and is a potent promoter of phagocytosis and degranulation. Switching downstream in the locus to IgG1 gives rise to this abundant, long-lived molecule. In fact, it has been theorized that the relative affinities of the human subclasses differ as beneficial mutations accumulate and switching to downstream subclasses occurs (86). By virtue of their generally reduced affinity for FcγR (85), subsequent or direct class-switching to IgG2 or IgG4 reduces activating potential, leading to the formation of less potent immune complexes (78). IgG4 may be particularly well-suited for this role because of its ability to undergo the process of Fab arm exchange, through which naturally-occurring bispecific antibodies are produced (87, 88). Because bivalent targeting normally aids in immune complex formation, the inability to avidly bind may further reduce the inflammatory potential of IgG4. Indeed, in humans, switching to IgG4 is often associated with amelioration of antibody-mediated allergy (89–92). Cynomolgus macaque



		IgG1	IgG2	IgG3	IgG4
Mass (kDa)	Human	146	145	150 – 156	145
	Rhesus	146	146	146	146
Hinge length [disulfide bonds]	Human	15 [2]	12 [4]	32 – 63 [5 – 11]	12 [2]
	Rhesus	18 [2]	12 [3]	17 [3]	10 [2]
Half-life (days)	Human	21	21	7 | 21[1]	21
Closest Human Homolog (% AA match)	Rhesus	IgG1 (90.7)	IgG1 (88.5)	IgG1 + 4 (89.2)	IgG4 (90.2)
In vivo Depletion[2]	Rhesus	++	++	+	+

FIGURE 2 | Comparison of human and rhesus macaque subclass properties. Human IgG3 is depicted with the most commonly expressed number of hinge unit repeats. IgG4 coloration reflects the potential for Fab arm exchange, which is a feature of human and rhesus IgG4, but not of cynomolgus macaques. References: (77–79).

(1) The allotype-dependent inclusion or absence of His435 determines half-life of human IgG3, with histidine-containing having a longer half-life.

(2) Plus signs denote the relative degree and durability of the decline in the $CD8^+$ T cell population based on treatment with subclass-switched anti-CD8 monoclonal antibody (80).

antibodies cannot perform this Fab arm exchange (77, 93), and the quantity of IgG4 in macaques is thought to be quite minor (79, 80, 94).

Further, while the IgG subclasses are generally ordered from most to least activating in the immunoglobulin locus of humans (IgG3, IgG1, IgG2, IgG4), they are ordered from least to most activating in rhesus (IgG4, IgG3, IgG2, IgG1) (80, 95), though again, the differences in activity across rhesus and cynomolgus macaque subclasses are considerably less pronounced than in humans, and IgG sequences suggest this may hold in other macaque species as well (96). Left unanswered is the question of what significance observed polymorphisms in macaque IgG subclasses may hold—evidence of polymorphisms despite limited sequencing efforts may suggest the presence of significant allotypic diversity in rhesus and cynomolgus macaques (95, 97). It is likely that, to date, immunoglobulin sequence variation existing within macaque species has been undersampled.

While little is known about the progression of subclass switching over time in macaques, in humans, an early but waning IgG3 response has been observed in the setting of both natural infection and vaccination (16, 98, 99). Repetitive protein boosts in the setting of vaccination have also been observed to increase the magnitude of the IgG4 response (16, 17, 99). Most importantly, the range of effector activity differences and structural distinctions among subclasses are considerably more broad in humans than in macaques (80, 100). When making immunological comparisons between species, it is important to consider the ways in which human antibodies have been functionally honed that are not shared by the non-human primates relied on as research models.

DISTINCTIONS BETWEEN HUMAN AND NHP FcγR

Members of the FcγR family share several common traits. Typically, two extracellular C-like domains are responsible for binding residues of IgG located in the lower hinge region (101–105). A molecule of IgG is bound by a single Fcγ receptor (106–108) through contacts made with both heavy chain constituents of the IgG homodimer. The character of those contacts differs between the protomers, with each side tending to favor a different class of intermolecular interactions (109). The extracellular domains of the receptors are followed by a transmembrane domain and a cytoplasmic domain, which may contain an activating or inhibitory signaling motif. In the absence of an intrinsic signaling motif, the task of communicating the antibody-mediated binding and receptor clustering is handled through association with the Fc receptor γ chain or other accessory receptors. An overview of the similarities and differences between receptors can be found in **Figure 1**.

Organization of this review will follow according to the type of signal a receptor transduces. Fcγ receptor crosslinking may lead to the generation of an activating signal though the involvement of an immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activating motif (ITAM) located in the cytoplasmic domain of the receptor or on the Fc receptor γ chain [reviewed in (72, 110–112)]. Briefly, activating receptors include the human and macaque FcγRI, FcγRIIa, and FcγRIIIa receptors. FcγRIIb, bearing an immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif (ITIM), is then the sole member of the inhibitory category of FcγR. The FcγRIIIb receptor found exclusively on human granulocytes, and apparently not present in the macaque genome, represents a special case as it lacks the normal transmembrane and cytoplasmic domains and is instead anchored to the cell membrane via a lipid chain. Although not as well-characterized as the other human Fcγ receptors, much of the available evidence suggests that FcγRIIIb contributes to the activation of granulocytes and that it is most appropriately included in the ITAM-bearing category of receptors.

FcγRI

Among members of the Fcγ receptor family, FcγRI stands apart by virtue of its three extracellular domains and high ligand-binding affinity. As in humans, the receptor's elevated affinity in rhesus and cynomolgus macaques, has been measured in the low nanomolar to high picomolar range (77, 100), allows it to readily bind circulating monomeric IgG (85). As **Figure 1** illustrates, the cytoplasmic domain of FcγRI lacks an intrinsic ITAM and this receptor instead utilizes the Fc receptor common γ chain to activate the cell (113, 114).

Characterization of FcγRI's role initially presented a challenge to researchers as the failure to express the receptor in humans apparently does not lead to any obvious immunodeficiency or associate with more frequent infections (115). Furthermore, the high concentration of IgG in circulation coupled with the receptor's high affinity suggested that FcγRI would be fully occupied by monomeric IgG at steady state (110). However, the conservation of this receptor across primate species and the rarity of individuals with expression defects suggests an important biological role. It is now thought that a primary role of FcγRI may be in antigen processing and display, as well as triggering the release of cytokines (116–118).

The single major allele of FcγRI expressed by humans (NP_000557) shares a high degree of amino acid sequence identity (∼90%) with the macaque variants characterized to date, although several noteworthy differences do exist. The three major rhesus variants and one cynomolgus variant differ from the human receptor at four predicted contact residues and lack three N-linked glycosylation motifs found in the human molecule. Furthermore, in rhesus macaques (see NP_001244233), but not cynomolgus (NP_001270969), there is a 17 amino acid truncation at the intracellular C terminus. The consequences of this deletion, if any, for the receptor's association with the common γ chain have not been determined.

Within the macaque genus, FcγRI's extracellular domain phenotype is extremely similar, with the most common rhesus allele (FcγRI-1) and the major cynomolgus allele sharing identical extracellular domains. Furthermore, the rhesus FcγRI-2 allele differs from these at only two extracellular residues and the FcγRI-3 allele at just one. None of these polymorphic positions are predicted to contact the IgG Fc based on homology models. This high degree of conservation is also thought to extend to FcγRI's pattern of expression by immune cells. In keeping with its role in antigen presentation, the receptor is expressed by dendritic cells (117, 119), monocytes, and macrophages (120) (**Table 2**). Granulocytes are also capable of expressing FcγRI following induction by interferon γ (130, 131).

In light of the high degree of homology shared by human and macaque FcγRI, it should come as no great surprise that the receptors have strikingly similar preferences for IgG subclasses. Within a fully human context (receptor and IgG), FcγRI binds IgG1 and IgG3 with similarly high affinities, and has an intermediate preference for IgG4. The receptor demonstrates significantly reduced affinity for IgG2 (77, 85). In rhesus macaques, however, FcγRI has nearly equivalent affinities for all four subclasses of rhesus IgG (100); this trend is also observed in cynomolgus macaques (77). The cause of this difference is not the sequence of the receptors, but the IgG. This becomes apparent when mixing receptors and antibodies of different species—human FcγRI has relatively uniform affinity for different subclasses of macaque IgG while macaque receptors exhibit preferences between human subclasses (77, 100). Human IgG2 contains a unique motif (VAGP) in its upper CH2 domain, a motif not present in any macaque subclass or other human subclasses [instead—LLGGP, for all but human IgG4; accession numbers: [human] P01857; P01859; P01860; P08161 [rhesus macaque] see (79)], that impairs binding to FcγRI and accounts for this observation (136). Interestingly, human IgG4 has a slightly altered motif (FLGGP) at this position, which may explain the intermediate recognition of this subclass.

The high degree of FcγRI conservation between humans and macaques imposes fewer restrictions on the comparison process than is the case for other receptors handled in this review. IgG1, which is perhaps the most likely candidate for comparison due to its prevalence *in vivo* and among licensed therapeutics (137–139), is a particularly straightforward case

TABLE 2 | Expression of members of Fcγ receptor family by immune cell subsets in humans and macaques.

Lineage	Role	Cell type	Species	FcγRI	FcγRIIa	FcγRIIb	FcγRIIc	FcγRIIIa	FcγRIIIb
Myeloid	Granulocytes	Neutrophils	*H. sapiens*	I	+	+ / −	+	−	+
			M. fascicularis	ND	○	○	−	−	−
		Eosinophils	*H. sapiens*	ND	+	−	ND	−	+
			M. fascicularis	ND	○	○	−	−	−
		Basophils	*H. sapiens*	−	+	+	ND	−	+
			M. fascicularis	ND	○	○	−	−	−
		Mast Cells	*H. sapiens*	I	+	−	+/−	−	+
			M. fascicularis	ND	○	○	−	−	−
	Phagocytes	Monocytes/Macrophages	*H. sapiens*	I	+	+/−	−	+	−
			M. mulatta	+	○	○	−	+	−
		Dendritic Cells	*H. sapiens*	+	+	+	−	−	−
			M. mulatta	+	○	○	−	−	−
		Platelets	*H. sapiens*	ND	+	−	−	ND	ND
			M. mulatta	ND	ND	ND	−	ND	−
Lymphoid		B Cells	*H. sapiens*	−	−	+	+	−	−
			M. mulatta	−	○	○	−	−	−
		T Cells	*H. sapiens*	−	−	+/−[1]	−	+/−[2]	−
			M. mulatta	−	○	○	−	−	−
		Natural Killer Cells	*H. sapiens*	−	−	−	+	+	−
			M. mulatta	−	○	○	−	+	−

○ Positive for FcγR2 but a/b not determined.
I, Inducible by interferon γ.
ND, Not determined.
+ / − Expressed by a low percentage of cells, or by a specific subset.
Subset-specific expression is:
(1) FcγRIIb has been observed on human memory CD8$^+$ T cells (121).
(2) FcγRIIIa has been observed on activated human CD4$^+$ T cells (122).
References: (72, 117, 119–135).

and FcγRI-bearing macaque cells are expected to recognize a passively transfused human antibody near natively. In the case of human IgG2 and IgG4 however, there is evidence to suggest that while macaque FcγRI mirrors the human receptor's hierarchy of subclass preference outlined above, the receptor's affinity may be up to 4-fold stronger than in humans (77, 100). Since human IgG2 and IgG4 Fc domains have been used for monoclonal antibodies in instances where a silent Fc profile is desired (139), as well as for extending the half-life of therapeutic proteins by expression as Fc fusions, the heightened inflammatory potential of these molecules when evaluated in a macaque model may need to be taken into account.

FcγRIIa

A sharp increase in complexity, both with and between species, occurs when surveying the most widely expressed activating receptor—FcγRIIa (140). This receptor plays a central role in the phagocytosis of antibody-opsonized antigens, which it triggers by means of an intrinsic ITAM located in its cytoplasmic domain (110).

Humans express two major allelic variants of FcγRIIa, which are distinguished by the identity of the amino acid found at position 131 of the extracellular domain (141). Expression of an arginine at this location results in weakened binding of IgG, particularly for IgG2 (142). Conversely, the histidine-containing variant demonstrates substantially higher affinity across multiple subclasses, including IgG2, and can effectively bind immune complexes composed of this subclass (85, 143). The consequences of this polymorphism can be dramatic. In the treatment of cancer, multiple monoclonal antibodies indicated for a range of malignancies have demonstrated differing responses based on the allelic makeup of the recipients (144). Protection against extracellular bacteria, often mediated by IgG2 targeting polysaccharide antigens, can also be impaired by the lower affinity allele; this may lead to an increase in the frequency and severity of certain infections among R131 individuals, particularly those homozygous for the allele (145–147). In the context of HIV, infected individuals that are homozygous for the lower affinity R131 variant experience a more rapid decline in CD4$^+$ T cells than subjects having one or two copies of the high affinity H131 allele (148). Interestingly, no impact of this polymorphism on risk of infection was observed in the Vax004 HIV vaccine trial (149).

In macaques, a considerably greater number of major allelic variants have been characterized. Based on records in GenBank, numerous variants of this receptor have been defined in rhesus, pigtailed and cynomolgus macaques. While H131 is the minor allele in several human populations (150, 151), most macaque FcγRIIa alleles feature a histidine at this position and therefore

resemble the high affinity human receptor in sequence and antibody recognition (100). The FcγRIIa-4 allele of rhesus macaques is an important exception to this trend, having a proline substitution at this residue that is likely detrimental to the receptor's affinity for IgG (100). Similarly, although the FcγRIIa-1 allele includes the critical histidine, it also contains an additional N-linked glycan motif at position 128, a residue that contacts the Fc region of IgG in the cocrystal structure of human proteins (152), which apparently interferes with the receptor's IgG affinity (100). The consequence of these differences is that alleles 1 (at least when produced recombinantly) and 4 have reduced affinity for macaque IgG compared to alleles 2 and 3 (100), creating high and low affinity variation analogous to the R131/H131 polymorphism in humans. Although the exact allelic frequencies have not been reported, the allotypic variants have been roughly numbered by prevalence (100). Accordingly, the FcγRIIa-1 allele is expected to occur most frequently, and its impact on passive transfer experiments and vaccine studies could prove to be substantial, provided that the native receptor is glycosylated similarly to the recombinantly-produced receptor utilized in *in vitro* studies. Relevant to the potential for differences between macaque and human FcγRII to drive differences in outcomes of antibody infusions between species, it is clear from evaluation of the binding profiles of engineered IgG sequence variants across human and rhesus receptors, that greater phenotypic differences are observed for FcγRII as compared to FcγRIII between species (153).

Receptor variation is not limited to the extracellular domain of FcγRIIa. While the four reported receptor alleles of rhesus macaques are identical intracellularly, they differ from the human and cynomolgus macaque variants in the sequence of their signaling domains. The activating ITAM motif takes the form of two semi-conserved sequences separated by six to eight amino acids. In the available sequences reviewed ([human] P12318; [rhesus] H9BMP0; [cynomolgus] Q8SPW4), the first ITAM unit takes the form Tyr-Met-Thr-Leu. Rhesus macaques repeat this sequence for the second iteration of the motif. Humans and cynomolgus macaques on the other hand use the slightly altered sequence of Tyr-Leu-Thr-Leu (154). This is in addition to a handful of residues flanking the second ITAM that are conserved among the available macaque sequences, but that differ when compared to the human receptors. The consequences of these substitutions, if any, are not known.

The comparison of sequence diversity alone is not sufficient to capture all of the differences between human and macaque FcγRIIa; among other factors, the patterns of expression must also be accounted for when translating observations between species. In humans, FcγRIIa is the most commonly expressed Fc receptor of monocytes and macrophages (155), and is also expressed by dendritic cells and granulocytes. Analysis of expression in macaques has been complicated by the fact that the extracellular domain of FcγRIIa and the inhibitory FcγRIIb receptor have even more highly conserved amino acid sequences (95%) than is the case in humans (92%) (100) ([human] P12318 vs. P31994; [rhesus] H9BMP0 vs. F7GVR0; [cynomolgus] Q8SPW4 vs. Q8SPW3). Difficulty in obtaining flow cytometry reagents capable of reliably discriminating between the receptors has meant that much of the literature published to date omits the specific form of the receptor expressed by a given cell type, reporting instead only the presence or absence of FcγRII (156). Even so, there is data that suggests that cynomolgus and pigtail macaque neutrophils express 3–5 fold more total FcγRII than their human counterparts (77, 156), which are known to express only the activating form of the receptor (132). Given this known difference in expression levels and additional differences potentially associated with activating vs. inhibitory and allotypic FcγRII composition, there is the potential for altered neutrophil biology in non-human primate model systems.

FcγRIII

In many of the studies summarized in **Table 1**, subjects producing antibodies capable of carrying out directed killing of virally-infected cells through the process of antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) experienced significantly better clinical outcomes. In macaques and most, but not all, humans, the cell type most commonly associated with performing ADCC, natural killer (NK) cells, exclusively express FcγRIIIa, making the receptor a potent potential contributor to antiviral effector function. Humans express two major allelic variants of FcγRIIIa that are distinguished based on differing levels of activity attributed to a single polymorphic residue in the extracellular domain—position 158 in this case (157, 158). Expression of a valine at this position results in greater affinity for human IgG1 and IgG3, and to a lesser extent IgG4, as compared to the phenylalanine-containing variant (85). Although it is found less frequently in the population (159), the V158 allele can confer significant benefits. For example, V158 individuals respond more strongly to anti-tumor monoclonal antibody therapy, an observation attributed to enhanced ADCC directed against the tumor cells (160–162).

The extracellular domain of rhesus macaque FcγRIIIa also exhibits a polymorphism at position 158. However, the isoleucine expressed by the FcγRIIIa-1 and−2 alleles has similar side chain chemistry to the valine of FcγRIIIa-3 and as a result, the extracellular domains of known rhesus alleles resemble the high affinity human receptor in both sequence and affinity (153). Interestingly, the FcγRIIIa-2 allele, which is identical to FcγRIIIa-1 extracellularly but carries a pair of polymorphisms that introduce valine residues to the transmembrane domain and membrane-proximal region of the cytoplasmic domain (positions 229 and 233, respectively), is associated with more complete depletion of B cells following treatment with rituximab (163). More broadly, the amino acid sequences of the non-human primates surveyed maintained > 90% homology to humans in their extracellular domains. In each of the macaque sequences though, there is an altered residue that leads to the elimination of a N-glycan motif known to be modified in humans. This is potentially offset by the introduction of a new motif close by, but it is not known whether this new site is accessible for glycosylation.

Based on biophysical and functional data gathered thus far (77, 100, 153), one can reasonably conclude that the macaque forms of the receptor are a fair approximation of the high affinity

human allele, FcγRIIIa V158. Unfortunately, the prevalence of the lower affinity F158 allele in humans exceeds that of the high affinity allele (164–166). All else being equal, this difference in allelic frequencies suggests that most humans may be likely to generate a less robust ADCC response than a macaque would based on the lower affinity of their FcγRIIIa receptor. Significantly, human polymorphic variation at this position has been associated with rate of infection among low risk HIV vaccine recipients, and development of Kaposi's sarcoma, an AIDS defining illness, in HIV infected men (148, 167).

Human granulocytes uniquely express a variant of FcγRIII that is apparently not found in any species of macaque—FcγRIIIb (168). The receptor's homology to the extracellular domain of human FcγRIIIa and the weight of experimental evidence generated to date argue for the inclusion of FcγRIIIb alongside the activating Fcγ receptors. This classification has been far from straightforward however (169), in part because FcγRIIIb uniquely lacks both a transmembrane domain and cytoplasmic signaling domains, instead being tethered to the cell membrane via a glycosylphosphatidylinositol (GPI) anchor (168). Even so, upregulation of FcγRIIIb in response to engagement has been observed as well as an association with Syk signaling in neutrophils (170). In order to transduce such signals, FcγRIIIb would require an accessory signaling element, the proposed candidates for which include the complement receptor (171) and FcγRIIa (172). The latter receptor has been hypothesized to act in synergy with FcγRIIIb to increase the flux of Ca^{2+} into granulocytes and enhance their effector functions (173), which include the release of cytotoxic granules (174) and phagocytosis (175, 176). Conversely, a competing view of FcγRIIIb holds that the receptor merely serves as a decoy that competes with activating receptors for immune complexes. Experimental support for this model lies in the observation that enhancing the affinity of IgG for FcγRIII broadly resulted in lower levels of neutrophil ADCC (177). This alternate hypothesis raises the possibility that human granulocytes may have a means to receive an inhibitory input that is not available to macaque effector cells, potentially further skewing signaling in neutrophils.

INHIBITORY RECEPTOR

FcγRIIb

All humans and macaques express a single form of inhibitory FcγR—FcγRIIb. The receptor contains an intrinsic ITIM in its cytoplasmic domain that allows it to rein in immune responses. FcγRIIb is abundantly expressed by phagocytic cells (120, 132) and is typically the sole Fcγ receptor found on human B cells (132, 133). It is additionally expressed by liver sinusoidal endothelial cells, where it is thought to play an role in recognition and uptake of immune complexes (178, 179). Evaluation of the role of this receptor on immune cells has been especially hampered by the limited availability of staining reagents capable of discriminating FcγRIIa from FcγRIIb. In humans, an FcγRIIb-specific reagent is available (132), however, its specificity toward macaque receptors has not been reported. All major human variants of FcγRIIb feature identical extracellular domains and contain an arginine at residue 131 (P31994), making them phenotypically more similar to the low affinity variant of the activating FcγRIIa (85, 153). Of the two human alleles which have been characterized, the rarer variant contains an isoleucine to threonine mutation in the transmembrane domain, at residue 232. This change renders the receptor incompatible with inclusion in lipid rafts and as a result, unable to signal (180, 181).

In contrast to humans, both reported alleles of rhesus macaque FcγRIIb feature a histidine at position 131 and therefore more closely resemble the high affinity variants of FcγRIIa. This is superceded, however, in the FcγRIIb-2 allele by a leucine to proline substitution at residue 88, a site immediately adjacent to a predicted Fc contact residue, which abrogates the receptor's affinity for all subclasses of both rhesus macaque and human IgG (100). While this variant is the less common of the two alleles, its precise frequency has yet to be reported. However, it is possible that the inclusion of FcγRIIb-2 animals in a study could have significant consequences. Intracellularly, FcγRIIb is well-conserved between humans and macaques; the cytoplasmic domains differ at just two residues ([human] P31994; [rhesus] F7GVR0; [cynomolgus] Q8SPW3). Of these differences, one is a conservative change from isoleucine in humans to valine in rhesus macaques. Furthermore, neither of the mutations occurs proximal to the signaling motif.

That FcγRIIb is the sole inhibitory Fc receptor in humans and macaques means the consequences of the interspecies FcγRIIb differences have the potential to be far-reaching. For example, according to one proposed model of SIV and HIV infection, FcγRIIb engagement at the mucosa somewhat paradoxically has been suggested to contribute to protection by generating an inhibitory signal that slows the migration of $CD4^+$ T cells to the region and deprives the virus of host cells for replication (63). However, the high affinity phenotype of macaque FcγRIIb could mean that the receptor stands on an equal footing (or greater, in the case of FcγRIIa alleles 1 and 4) with the activating receptors in the competition for immune complexes—a scenario that is not recapitulated in humans where even FcγRIIa-R131 has higher affinity for IgG than FcγRIIb (85, 100).

ADDITIONAL RECEPTORS

FcγRIIc

In ∼20–45% of humans (182, 183), an unequal genetic crossover between the activating cytoplasmic domain of FcγRIIa and the extracellular domain of FcγRIIb results in the expression of the receptor FcγRIIc (184) on B cells and natural killer cells (134, 135). FcγRIIc provides an additional means of activating immune cells and is capable of triggering ADCC in natural killer cells (185). In the context of HIV infection, the receptor is noteworthy based on the observation that a single nucleotide polymorphism located in an intron of FcγRIIc was associated with greater vaccine efficacy in the RV144 trial (186). A similar receptor has not been reported in macaques.

Neonatal Fc Receptor (FcRn)

The similarities between macaques and humans that make these non-human primates a tractable model for the study of HIV also make them useful for determining the pharmacokinetic

properties of biologic drugs. Cynomolgus macaques in particular are a widely utilized species for the evaluation of antibodies and Fc fusion proteins (187), biologics that depend heavily on FcRn to achieve half-lives that can extend beyond 3 weeks (73, 188–191).

FcRn is a heterodimeric protein composed of a β_2-microglobulin (β_2m) subunit and an MHC class I-like heavy chain (192–194). Diverse tissues and cell types express FcRn (195–198), but it functions principally in intestinal epithelia, vascular endothelia, and syncytiotrophoblasts (199–203) where the receptor's ability to bind to the Fc portion of IgG in a pH-dependent manner, having high affinity under acidic conditions (pH $<$ 6.5) and relatively low affinity at a physiological pH of 7.4 (204–206), permits the uptake, transfer, and release of IgG across compartments of the body. This property of FcRn enables the maternofetal transfer of IgG across the placenta (207) and the absorption of IgG present in maternal milk by the intestinal epithelium of neonatal rodents (204, 208). FcRn's high level of expression in vascular endothelial cells leads to the sorting and recycling of endocytosed IgG from acidified endosomes, where the receptor's affinity for IgG is high, to circulation, where the physiological pH causes the release of IgG (73, 189–191). Additionally, FcRn can contribute to the accelerated processing of antigens derived from multivalent immune complexes and their subsequent presentation by both forms of major histocompatibility complex (74, 75).

The heavy chain of FcRn is well-conserved among the macaque species commonly used in biomedical research; the most frequent variants are identical to one another (accession numbers: NM_001257520, NM_001284551, and XM_011768102). Among the ten residues that differ between humans and macaques, none occur in a location known to contact the Fc, or in the receptor's N-linked glycan sequon (209). Similarly, of the four polymorphisms observed in cynomolgus macaques, only two occur in the extracellular domain and neither involves putative IgG Fc contact residues (210). Interestingly, a promoter polymorphism in FcRn has been identified to associate with reduced levels of serum IgG, though the impact of this polymorphism on the half-life or biodistribution of passively administered mAb or polyclonal samples remains to be defined (211).

The β_2-microglobulin subunit that makes up the remainder of the heterodimeric receptor is somewhat more diverse than the heavy chain, both between species of macaques and when macaques are compared to humans; the N-terminal isoleucine required for interaction with IgG (212) is present in all species under review, and the impact of sequence diversity in this protein has been less well-studied in all species.

CONCLUSIONS

The sheer number of factors to consider when translating observations between macaques and humans makes the process a challenging, multidimensional one. Differences in the structures and activities of IgG subclasses, and polymorphisms in protein sequence and post-translational modification of antibody receptors are a subset of the many relevant considerations. Copy number variation, splice variants, and alleles with sequence variation outside of coding regions have been associated with a diversity of phenotypes in humans (183, 213–217), and are presumed to exist in NHP. A number of differences in the patterns of cellular expression of FcγRs between species are well-established, and while genetically-associated differences in expression levels likely exist, they have not been fully characterized. Linkage disequilibrium between FcRs and a diversity of major and minor alleles make it difficult to define the potential effect of these polymorphisms with high confidence even in large cohorts. Thus, the process of precisely translating results between species is a complex and potentially intractable challenge. However, the highly significant contributions to drug development demonstrates that macaques can nonetheless serve as an excellent preclinical model.

When considering exceptional scenarios, several simplifying assumptions may help to smooth the process. The first—treating the members of the macaque genus largely interchangeably—has already achieved widespread adoption (156) as the shifting landscape of cost, conservation, and ethical considerations have driven changes in the decades since the model's introduction in the preferred macaque species, and among NHP more generally, for biomedical research (218). In light of the considerable similarities between macaque species (including shared allotypic diversity) outlined in this review, it is our view that under common research circumstances, this practice serves as a useful simplifying assumption; however, exceptions do exist. For example, evaluation of passive infusion of human IgG4 in NHP is one such example. Human IgG4 can undergo Fab arm exchange with endogenous human IgG4, but would not exchange with any serum antibody in some, though not all macaque species. Similarly, outcomes of vaccination studies in humans have been associated with the subclasses of antibodies induced. However, the extensive differences between the repertoire of subclasses in humans and the relatively more monolithic structural and activity profiles of NHP IgG types may pose challenges to easy translation of vaccine studies. These differences may preclude attempts to model means to induce specific subclasses by altered regimens, adjuvants, and immunogens, or to explore the relevance of class-switching patterns observed in humans to challenge outcomes.

Of the cell types and FcγR-mediated immune processes potentially impacted by the differences in human and macaque biology, two in particular stand out as deserving of additional comment. Unlike the low affinity phenotype of human FcγRIIb, the inclusion of a histidine at a critical contact residue in macaques grants equivalent affinity (or greater, in the case of alleles 1 and 4) to that of the activating FcγRIIa. While this has the potential to alter the ratio of activating and inhibitory signals relative to what is observed in humans for any cell type expressing a mix of receptors, the effect could be even more pronounced in B cells where FcγRIIb is the only member of the family expressed.

Neutrophil biology is another aspect of macaque immunity likely to differ significantly from that of humans based on differences in Fcγ receptors. The reasons for this are twofold. The first is the substantially higher level of expression of

FcγRII receptor that has been observed on macaque neutrophils. This expression profile potentially contributes to a stronger response by these cells in macaques, although this assumes that macaque neutrophils, like those of humans, express FcγRIIa, and do not express inhibitory the FcγRIIb, which could offset the larger number of activating receptors. The second major difference is the unique expression of FcγRIIIb, which is absent from macaques, by human neutrophils, although the effect of expression of this receptor is more difficult to determine as its role has not been definitively determined.

The recent history of biomedical research well-illustrates the utility of the members of the macaque genus for modeling human diseases and evaluating therapeutic interventions. Much of the progress left to be made in understanding the non-human primate model resides on the margins and need only be considered under particular circumstances. However, consideration of the interspecies variability that has been defined to date and the gaps in our present understanding, if filled, have the potential to make macaques an even more enabling model organism. These insights in turn may increase the rate at which pre-clinical observations are converted to clinical success stories.

AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

All authors listed have made a substantial, direct and intellectual contribution to the work, and approved it for publication.

FUNDING

This work was supported by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation (OPP1114729) and National Institutes of Health NIAID and NIGMS (R01AI131975) and NIAID (P01AI120756 and R01AI129801).

REFERENCES

1. Letvin NL, Daniel MD, Sehgal PK, Desrosiers RC, Hunt RD, Waldron LM, et al. Induction of AIDS-like disease in macaque monkeys with T-cell tropic retrovirus STLV-III. *Science.* (1985) 230:71–3. doi: 10.1126/science.2412295
2. Kestler H, Kodama T, Ringler D, Marthas M, Pedersen N, Lackner A, et al. Induction of AIDS in rhesus monkeys by molecularly cloned simian immunodeficiency virus. *Science*. (1990) 248:1109–12. doi: 10.1126/science.2160735
3. Hirsch VM, Dapolito G, Johnson PR, Elkins WR, London WT, Montali RJ, et al. Induction of AIDS by simian immunodeficiency virus from an African green monkey: species-specific variation in pathogenicity correlates with the extent of *in vivo* replication. *J Virol*. (1995) 69:955–67.
4. Reimann KA, Li JT, Veazey R, Halloran M, Park IW, Karlsson GB, et al. A chimeric simian/human immunodeficiency virus expressing a primary patient human immunodeficiency virus type 1 isolate env causes an AIDS-like disease after *in vivo* passage in rhesus monkeys. *J Virol*. (1996) 70:6922–8.
5. Reimann KA, Parker RA, Seaman MS, Beddall M, Peterson L, Kenneth C, et al. Pathogenicity of simian-human immunodeficiency virus SHIV-89 . 6P and SIVmac Is attenuated in cynomolgus macaques and associated with early T-lymphocyte responses pathogenicity of simian-human immunodeficiency virus SHIV-89 . 6P and SIVmac Is Attenuated i. *J Virol*. (2005) 79:8878–85. doi: 10.1128/JVI.79.14.8878
6. Tsai CC, Follis KE, Sabo A, Grant R, Bischofberger N. Efficacy of 9-(2-phosphonylmethoxyethyl)adenine treatment against chronic simian immunodeficiency virus infection in macaques. *J Infect Dis*. (1995) 171:1338–43. doi: 10.1093/infdis/171.5.1338
7. Van Rompay KK, Cherrington JM, Marthas ML, Berardi CJ, Mulato AS, Spinner A, et al. 9-[2-(Phosphonomethoxy)propyl]adenine therapy of established simian immunodeficiency virus infection in infant rhesus macaques. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother*. (1996) 40:2586–91. doi: 10.1128/AAC.40.11.2586
8. Wilson TJ, Fuchs A, Colonna M. Cutting edge: human FcRL4 and FcRL5 are receptors for IgA and IgG. *J Immunol*. (2012) 188:4741–5. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1102651
9. Fahrbach KM, Malykhina O, Stieh DJ, Hope TJ. Differential binding of IgG and IgA to mucus of the female reproductive tract. *PLoS ONE*. (2013) 8:e76176. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0076176
10. Foss S, Watkinson R, Sandlie I, James LC, Andersen JT. TRIM21: a cytosolic Fc receptor with broad antibody isotype specificity. *Immunol Rev*. (2015) 268:328–39. doi: 10.1111/imr.12363
11. Mascola JR, Lewis MG, Stiegler G, Harris D, VanCott TC, Hayes D, et al. Protection of Macaques against pathogenic simian/human immunodeficiency virus 89.6PD by passive transfer of neutralizing antibodies. *J Virol*. (1999) 73:4009–18.
12. Shibata R, Igarashi T, Haigwood N, Buckler-White A, Ogert R, Ross W, et al. Neutralizing antibody directed against the HIV-1 envelope glycoprotein can completely block HIV-1/SIV chimeric virus infections of macaque monkeys. *Nat Med*. (1999) 5:204–10. doi: 10.1038/5568
13. Mascola JR, Stiegler G, VanCott TC, Katinger H, Carpenter CB, Hanson CE, et al. Protection of macaques against vaginal transmission of a pathogenic HIV-1/SIV chimeric virus by passive infusion of neutralizing antibodies. *Nat Med*. (2000) 6:207–10. doi: 10.1097/00002030-200102001-00018
14. Rerks-Ngarm S, Pitisuttithum P, Nitayaphan S, Kaewkungwal J, Chiu J, Paris R, et al. Vaccination with ALVAC and AIDSVAX to Prevent HIV-1 Infection in Thailand. *N Engl J Med*. (2009) 361:2209–20. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa0908492
15. Haynes BF, Gilbert PB, McElrath MJ, Zolla-Pazner S, Tomaras GD, Alam SM, et al. Immune-correlates analysis of an HIV-1 vaccine efficacy trial. *N Engl J Med*. (2012) 366:1275–86. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa1113425
16. Chung AW, Ghebremichael M, Robinson H, Brown E, Choi I, Lane S, et al. Polyfunctional Fc-effector profiles mediated by IgG subclass selection distinguish RV144 and VAX003 vaccines. *Sci Transl Med*. (2014) 6:228–38. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3007736
17. Yates NL, Liao H-X, Fong Y, deCamp A, Vandergrift NA, Williams WT, et al. Vaccine-induced Env V1-V2 IgG3 correlates with lower HIV-1 infection risk and declines soon after vaccination. *Sci Transl Med*. (2014) 6:228ra39. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3007730
18. Perez LG, Martinez DR, DeCamp AC, Pinter A, Berman PW, Francis D, et al. V1V2-specific complement activating serum IgG as a correlate of reduced HIV-1 infection risk in RV144. *PLoS ONE*. (2017) 12:e180720. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0180720
19. Ackerman ME, Das J, Pittala S, Broge T, Linde C, Suscovich TJ, et al. Route of immunization defines multiple mechanisms of vaccine-mediated protection against SIV. *Nat Med*. (2018) 24:1. doi: 10.1038/s41591-018-0161-0
20. Bradley T, Pollara J, Santra S, Vandergrift N, Pittala S, Bailey-Kellogg C, et al. Pentavalent HIV-1 vaccine protects against simian-human immunodeficiency virus challenge. *Nat Commun*. (2017) 8:1–15. doi: 10.1038/ncomms15711
21. Barouch DH, Alter G, Broge T, Linde C, Ackerman ME, Brown EP, et al. Protective efficacy of adenovirus/protein vaccines against SIV challenges in rhesus monkeys. *Science*. (2015) 349:320–4. doi: 10.1126/science.aab3886
22. Fouts TR, Bagley K, Prado IJ, Bobb KL, Schwartz JA, Xu R, et al. Balance of cellular and humoral immunity determines the level of protection by HIV vaccines in rhesus macaque models of HIV infection. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2015) 112:E992–9. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1423669112

23. Barouch DH, Stephenson KE, Borducchi EN, Smith K, Stanley K, et al. XProtective efficacy of a global HIV-1 mosaic vaccine against heterologous SHIV challenges in rhesus monkeys. *Cell*. (2013) 155:531–9. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2013.09.061
24. Alpert MD, Harvey JD, Lauer WA, Reeves RK, Piatak M, Carville A, et al. ADCC develops over time during persistent infection with live-attenuated SIV and is associated with complete protection against SIVmac251 Challenge. *PLoS Pathog*. (2012) 8:e1002890. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002890
25. Bomsel M, Tudor D, Drillet AS, Alfsen A, Ganor Y, Roger MG, et al. Immunization with HIV-1 gp41 subunit virosomes induces mucosal antibodies protecting nonhuman primates against vaginal SHIV challenges. *Immunity*. (2011) 34:269–80. doi: 10.1016/j.immuni.2011.01.015
26. Forthal DN, Gilbert PB, Landucci G, Phan T. Recombinant gp120 vaccine-induced antibodies inhibit clinical strains of HIV-1 in the presence of Fc receptor-bearing effector cells and correlate inversely with HIV infection rate. *J Immunol*. (2007) 178:6596–603. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.178.10.6596
27. Hessell AJ, Hangartner L, Hunter M, Havenith CEG, Beurskens FJ, Bakker JM, et al. Fc receptor but not complement binding is important in antibody protection against HIV. *Nature*. (2007) 449:101–4. doi: 10.1038/nature06106
28. Van Rompay KK, Berardi CJ, Dillard-Telm S, Tarara RP, Canfield DR, Valverde CR, et al. Passive immunization of newborn rhesus macaques prevents oral simian immunodeficiency virus infection. *J Infect Dis*. (1998) 177:1247–59.
29. Hessell AJ, Shapiro MB, Powell R, Malherbe DC, McBurney SP, Pandey S, et al. Reduced cell-associated DNA and improved viral control in macaques following passive transfer of a single Anti-V2 monoclonal antibody and repeated Simian/Human immunodeficiency virus challenges. *J Virol*. (2018) 92:1–24. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02198-17
30. Ackerman ME, Mikhailova A, Brown EP, Dowell KG, Walker BD, Bailey-Kellogg C, Suscovich TJ, et al. Polyfunctional HIV-specific antibody responses are associated with spontaneous HIV control. *PLoS Pathog*. (2016) 12:e1005315. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1005315
31. Mohanram V, Demberg T, Musich T, Tuero I, Vargas-Inchaustegui DA, Miller-Novak L, et al. B cell responses associated with vaccine-induced delayed SIVmac251 acquisition in female rhesus macaques. *J Immunol*. (2016) 197:2316–24. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1600544
32. Santra S, Tomaras GD, Warrier R, Nicely NI, Liao HX, Pollara J, et al. Human non-neutralizing HIV-1 envelope monoclonal antibodies limit the number of founder viruses during SHIV mucosal infection in rhesus macaques. *PLoS Pathog*. (2015) 11:e1005042. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1005042
33. Brocca-Cofano E, McKinnon K, Demberg T, Venzon D, Hidajat R, Xiao P, et al. Vaccine-elicited SIV and HIV envelope-specific IgA and IgG memory B cells in rhesus macaque peripheral blood correlate with functional antibody responses and reduced viremia. *Vaccine*. (2011) 29:3310–9. doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2011.02.066
34. Chung AW, Navis M, Isitman G, Wren L, Silvers J, Amin J, et al. Activation of NK cells by ADCC antibodies and HIV disease progression. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr*. (2011) 58:127–31. doi: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e31822c62b9
35. Lambotte O, Pollara J, Boufassa F, Moog C, Venet A, Haynes BF, et al. High antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity responses are correlated with strong CD8 T cell viral suppressive activity but not with B57 Status in HIV-1 Elite Controllers. *PLoS ONE*. (2013) 8:e74855. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0074855
36. Xiao P, Zhao J, Patterson LJ, Brocca-Cofano E, Venzon D, Kozlowski PA, et al. Multiple vaccine-elicited nonneutralizing antienvelope antibody activities contribute to protective efficacy by reducing both acute and chronic viremia following simian/human immunodeficiency virus SHIV89.6P challenge in rhesus macaques. *J Virol*. (2010) 84:7161–73. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00410-10
37. Florese RH, Demberg T, Xiao P, Kuller L, Larsen K, Summers LE, et al. Contribution of nonneutralizing vaccine-elicited antibody activities to improved protective efficacy in rhesus macaques immunized with Tat/Env compared with multigenic vaccines. *J Immunol*. (2009) 182:3718–27. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.0803115
38. Hidajat R, Xiao P, Zhou Q, Venzon D, Summers LE, Kalyanaraman VS, et al. Correlation of vaccine-elicited systemic and mucosal nonneutralizing antibody activities with reduced acute viremia following intrarectal simian immunodeficiency virus SIV mac251 challenge of rhesus macaques. *J Virol*. (2009) 83:791–801. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01672-08
39. Lambotte O, Ferrari G, Moog C, Yates NL, Liao H-X, Parks RJ, et al. Heterogeneous neutralizing antibody and antibody-dependent cell cytotoxicity responses in HIV-1 elite controllers. *AIDS*. (2009) 23:897–906. doi: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e328329f97d
40. Gomez-Roman VR, Patterson LJ, Venzon D, Liewehr D, Aldrich K, Florese R, et al. Vaccine-elicited antibodies mediate antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity correlated with significantly reduced acute viremia in rhesus macaques challenged with SIVmac251. *J Immunol*. (2005) 174:2185–9. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.174.4.2185
41. Nag P, Kim J, Sapiega V, Landay AL, Bremer JW, Mestecky J, et al. Women with cervicovaginal antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity have lower genital HIV-1 RNA loads. *J Infect Dis*. (2004) 190:1970–8. doi: 10.1086/425582
42. Ahmad R, Sindhu STAK, Toma E, Morisset R, Vincelette J, Menezes J, et al. Evidence for a correlation between antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity-mediating anti-HIV-1 antibodies and prognostic predictors of HIV infection. *J Clin Immunol*. (2001) 21:227–33. doi: 10.1023/A:1011087132180
43. Forthal DN, Landucci G, Keenan B. Relationship between antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity, plasma HIV type 1 RNA, and CD4+ lymphocyte count. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses*. (2001) 17:553–61. doi: 10.1089/08892220151126661
44. Forthal DN, Landucci G, Daar ES. Antibody from Patients with Acute Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV) Infection Inhibits Primary Strains of HIV Type 1 in the presence of natural-killer effector cells. *Society*. (2001) 75:6953–61. doi: 10.1128/JVI.75.15.6953
45. Ahmad A, Morisset R, Thomas R, Menezes J. Evidence for a defect of antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxic (ADCC) effector function and anti-HIV gp120/41-specific ADCC-mediating antibody titres in HIV-infected individuals. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr*. (1994) 7:428–37.
46. Sawyer LA, Katzenstein DA, Hendry RM, Boone EJ, Vujcic LK, Williams CC, et al. Possible beneficial effects of neutralizing antibodies and antibody-dependent, cell-mediated cytotoxicity in human immunodeficiency virus infection. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses*. (1990) 6:341–56. doi: 10.1089/aid.1990.6.341
47. Madhavi V, Wines BD, Amin J, Emery S, ENCORE1 Study Group, Lopez E, et al. HIV-1 Env- and Vpu-Specific antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity responses associated with elite control of HIV. *J Virol*. (2017) 91:1–16. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00700-17
48. Wren LH, Chung AW, Isitman G, Kelleher AD, Parsons MS, Amin J, et al. Specific antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity responses associated with slow progression of HIV infection. *Immunology*. (2013) 138:116–23. doi: 10.1111/imm.12016
49. Banks ND, Kinsey N, Clements J, Hildreth JEK. Sustained antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) in SIV-infected macaques correlates with delayed progression to AIDS. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses*. (2002) 18:1197–205. doi: 10.1089/08892220260387940
50. Tranchat C, Van de Perre P, Simonon-Sorel A, Karita E, Benchaïb M, Lepage P, et al. Maternal humoral factors associated with perinatal human immunodeficiency virus type-1 transmission in a cohort from Kigali, Rwanda, 1988-1994. *J Infect*. (1999) 39:213–20. doi: 10.1016/S0163-4453(99)90052-X
51. Baum LL, Cassutt KJ, Knigge K, Khattri R, Margolick J, Rinaldo C, et al. HIV-1 gp120-specific antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity correlates with rate of disease progression. *J Immunol*. (1996) 157:2168–73.
52. Broliden K, Sievers E, Tovo PA, Moschese V, Scarlatti G, Broliden PA, et al. Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity and neutralizing activity in sera of HIV-1-infected mothers and their children. *Clin Exp Immunol*. (1993) 93:56–64. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2249.1993.tb06497.x
53. Ljunggren K, Moschese V, Broliden PA, Giaquinto C, Quinti I, Fenyo EM, et al. Antibodies mediating cellular cytotoxicity and neutralization correlate with a better clinical stage in children born to human immunodeficiency virus-infected mothers. *J Infect Dis*. (1990) 161:198–202. doi: 10.1093/infdis/161.2.198
54. Goudsmit J, Ljunggren K, Smit L, Jondal M, Fenyö EM, Jonda M. Biological significance of the antibody response to HIV antigens expressed on the cell surface. *Arch Virol*. (1988) 103:189–206.

55. Ljunggren K, Böttiger B, Biberfeld G, Karlson A, Fenyö EM, Jondal M. Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity-inducing antibodies against human immunodeficiency virus. Presence at different clinical stages. *J Immunol*. (1987) 139:2263–7.
56. Rook AH, Lane HC, Folks T, McCoy S, Alter H, Fauci AS. Sera from HTLV-III/LAV antibody-positive individuals mediate antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity against HTLV-III/LAV-infected T cells. *J Immunol*. (1987) 138:1064–7.
57. Milligan C, Richardson BA, John-Stewart G, Nduati R, Overbaugh J. Passively Acquired Antibody-Dependent Cellular Cytotoxicity (ADCC) activity in HIV-infected infants is associated with reduced mortality. *Cell Host Microbe*. (2015) 17:500–6. doi: 10.1016/j.chom.2015.03.002
58. Forthal DN, Landucci G, Haubrich R, Keenan B, Kuppermann BD, Tilles JG, et al. Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity independently predicts survival in severely immunocompromised human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients. *J Infect Dis*. (1999) 180:1338–41.
59. Parsons MS, Lee WS, Kristensen AB, Amarasena T, Khoury G, Wheatley AK, et al. Fc-dependent functions are redundant to efficacy of anti-HIV antibody PGT121 in macaques. *J Clin Invest*. (2018) 129:182–91. doi: 10.1172/JCI122466
60. Astronomo RD, Santra S, Ballweber-Fleming L, Westerberg KG, Mach L, Hensley-McBain T, et al. Neutralization Takes Precedence Over IgG or IgA Isotype-related Functions in Mucosal HIV-1 antibody-mediated protection. *EBioMedicine*. (2016) 14:97–111. doi: 10.1016/j.ebiom.2016.11.024
61. Dugast AS, Chan Y, Hoffner M, Licht A, Nkolola J, Li H, et al. Lack of protection following passive transfer of polyclonal highly functional low-dose non-neutralizing antibodies. *PLoS ONE*. (2014) 9:e97229. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0097229
62. Nakane T, Nomura T, Shi S, Nakamura M, Naruse TK, Kimura A. Limited impact of passive non-neutralizing antibody immunization in acute SIV infection on viremia control in rhesus macaques. *PLoS ONE*. (2013) 8:e73453. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0073453
63. Smith AJ, Wietgrefe SW, Shang L, Reilly CS, Southern PJ, Perkey KE, et al. Live simian immunodeficiency virus vaccine correlate of protection: immune complex-inhibitory Fc receptor interactions that reduce target cell availability. *J Immunol*. (2014) 193:3126–33. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1400822
64. Moldt B, Shibata-Koyama M, Rakasz EG, Schultz N, Kanda Y, Dunlop DC, et al. A nonfucosylated variant of the anti-HIV-1 monoclonal antibody b12 has enhanced FcγRIIIa-mediated antiviral activity *in vitro* but does not improve protection against mucosal SHIV challenge in macaques. *J Virol*. (2012) 86:6189–96. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00491-12
65. Burton DR, Hessell AJ, Keele BF, Johan P, Ketas TA, Moldt B. Limited or no protection by weakly or nonneutralizing antibodies against vaginal SHIV challenge of macaques compared with a strongly neutralizing antibody. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2011) 108:11181–6. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1103012108
66. Jenkins M, Landers D, Williams-Herman D, Wara D, Viscarello RR, Hammill HA, et al. Association between Anti-Human Immunodeficiency Virus Type 1 (HIV-1) antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity antibody titers at birth and vertical transmission of HIV-1. *J Infect Dis*. (1994) 170:308–12. doi: 10.2307/30134706
67. Dalgleish A, Sinclair A, Steel M, Beatson D, Ludlam C, Habeshaw J. Failure of ADCC to predict HIV-associated disease progression or outcome in a haemophiliac cohort. *Clin Exp Immunol*. (1990) 81:5–10. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2249.1990.tb05283.x
68. Ojo-Amaize E, Nishanian PG, Heitjan DF, Rezai A, Esmail I, Korns E, et al. Serum and effector-cell antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) activity remains high during human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) disease progression. *J Clin Immunol*. (1989) 9:454–61. doi: 10.1007/BF00918014
69. Pietzsch J, Gruell H, Bournazos S, Donovan BM, Klein F, Diskin R, et al. A mouse model for HIV-1 entry. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2012) 109:15859–64. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1213409109
70. Bournazos S, Klein F, Pietzsch J, Seaman MS, Nussenzweig MC, Ravetch JV. Broadly Neutralizing Anti-HIV-1 antibodies require fc effector functions for *in vivo* activity. *Cell*. (2014) 158:1243–53. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2014.08.023
71. Lu C-L, Murakowski DK, Bournazos S, Schoofs T, Sarkar D, Halper-Stromberg A, et al. Enhanced clearance of HIV-1-infected cells by broadly neutralizing antibodies against HIV-1 *in vivo*. *Science*. (2016) 352:1001–4. doi: 10.1126/science.aaf1279
72. Ackerman ME, Nimmerjahn F, editors. *Antibody Fc*. London: Elsevier. (2014). doi: 10.1016/C2011-0-07091-6
73. Junghans RP, Anderson CL. The protection receptor for IgG catabolism is the beta2-microglobulin-containing neonatal intestinal transport receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (1993) 93:5512–6. doi: 10.1073/pnas.93.11.5512
74. Qiao S-W, Kobayashi K, Johansen F-E, Sollid LM, Andersen JT, Milford E, et al. Dependence of antibody-mediated presentation of antigen on FcRn. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2008) 105:9337–42. doi: 10.1073/pnas.0801717105
75. Baker K, Qiao S-W, Kuo TT, Aveson VG, Platzer B, Andersen J-T, et al. Neonatal Fc receptor for IgG (FcRn) regulates cross-presentation of IgG immune complexes by CD8-CD11b+ dendritic cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2011) 108:9927–32. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1019037108
76. Vowels BR, Gershwin ME, Gardner MB, McGraw TP. Natural killer cell activity of rhesus macaques against retrovirus-pulsed CD4+ target cells. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses*. (1990) 6:905–18. doi: 10.1089/aid.1990.6.905
77. Warncke M, Calzascia T, Coulot M, Balke N, Touil R, Kolbinger F, et al. Different adaptations of IgG effector function in human and nonhuman primates and implications for therapeutic antibody treatment. *J Immunol*. (2012) 188:4405–11. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1200090
78. Vidarsson G, Dekkers G, Rispens T. IgG subclasses and allotypes: from structure to effector functions. *Front Immunol*. (2014) 5:520. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2014.00520
79. Scinicariello F, Engleman CN, Jayashankar L, McClure HM, Attanasio R. Rhesus macaque antibody molecules: sequences and heterogeneity of alpha and gamma constant regions. *Immunology*. (2004) 111:66–74. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2567.2004.01767.x
80. Boesch AW, Osei-Owusu NY, Crowley AR, Chu TH, Chan YN, Weiner JA, et al. Biophysical and Functional Characterization of Rhesus Macaque IgG Subclasses. *Front Immunol*. (2016) 7:589. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2016.00589
81. Saluk PH, Clem LW. The unique molecular weight of the heavy chain from human IgG3. *J Immunol*. (1971) 107:298–301.
82. Michaelsen TE, Frangione B, Franklin EC. Primary structure of the "hinge" region of human IgG3. Probable quadruplication of a 15-amino acid residue basic unit. *J Biol Chem*. (1977) 252:883–9.
83. Dillon TM, Ricci MS, Vezina C, Flynn GC, Liu YD, Rehder DS, et al. Structural and functional characterization of disulfide isoforms of the human IgG2 subclass. *J Biol Chem*. (2008) 283:16206–15. doi: 10.1074/jbc.M709988200
84. Ferrante A, Beard LJ, Feldman RG. IgG subclass distribution of antibodies to bacterial and viral antigens. *Pediatr Infect Dis J*. (1990) 9:S16–24.
85. Bruhns P, Iannascoli B, England P, Mancardi DA, Fernandez N, Jorieux S, et al. Specificity and affinity of human Fcgamma receptors and their polymorphic variants for human IgG subclasses. *Blood*. (2009) 113:3716–25. doi: 10.1182/blood-2008-09-179754
86. Collins AM, Jackson KJL. A temporal model of human IgE and IgG antibody function. *Front Immunol*. (2013) 4:235. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2013.00235
87. van der Neut Kolfschoten M, Schuurman J, Losen M, Bleeker WK, Martinez-Martinez P, Vermeulen E, et al. Anti-inflammatory activity of human IgG4 antibodies by dynamic fab arm exchange. *Science*. (2007) 317:1554–7. doi: 10.1126/science.1144603
88. Labrijn AF, Buijsse AO, Van Den Bremer ETJ, Verwilligen AYW, Bleeker WK, Thorpe SJ, et al. Therapeutic IgG4 antibodies engage in Fab-arm exchange with endogenous human IgG4 *in vivo*. *Nat Biotechnol*. (2009) 27:767–71. doi: 10.1038/nbt.1553
89. Gehlhar K, Schlaak M, Becker WM, Bufe A. Monitoring allergen immunotherapy of pollen-allergic patients: the ratio of allergen-specific IgG4 to IgG1 correlates with clinical outcome. *Clin Exp Allergy*. (1999) 29:497–506. doi: 10.1046/j.1365-2222.1999.00525.x
90. Torres Lima M, Wilson D, Pitkin L, Roberts A, Nouri-Aria K, Jacobson M, Walker S, et al. Grass pollen sublingual immunotherapy for seasonal rhinoconjunctivitis: a randomized controlled trial. *Clin Exp Allergy*. (2002) 32:507–14. doi: 10.1046/j.0954-7894.2002.01327.x
91. Matsui EC, Diette GB, Krop EJM, Aalberse RC, Smith AL, Curtin-Brosnan J, et al. Mouse allergen-specific immunoglobulin G and immunoglobulin G4 and allergic symptoms in immunoglobulin E-sensitized laboratory animal workers. *Clin Exp Allergy*. (2005) 35:1347–53. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2222.2005.02331.x

92. Boonpiyathad T, Meyer N, Moniuszko M, Sokolowska M, Eljaszewicz A, Wirz OF, et al. High-dose bee venom exposure induces similar tolerogenic B-cell responses in allergic patients and healthy beekeepers. *Allergy Eur J Allergy Clin Immunol*. (2017) 72:407–15. doi: 10.1111/all.12966
93. Jacobsen FW, Padaki R, Morris AE, Aldrich TL, Armitage RJ, Allen MJ, et al. Molecular and functional characterization of cynomolgus monkey IgG subclasses. *J Immunol*. (2011) 186:341–9. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1001685
94. Martin LN. Chromatographic fractionation of rhesus monkey (Macaca mulatta) IgG subclasses using DEAE cellulose and protein A-Sepharose. *J Immunol Methods*. (1982) 50:319–29. doi: 10.1016/0022-1759(82)90170-3
95. Ramesh A, Darko S, Hua A, Overman G, Ransier A, Francica JR, et al. Structure and diversity of the rhesus macaque immunoglobulin loci through multiple *de novo* genome assemblies. *Front Immunol*. (2017) 8:407. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2017.01407
96. Nguyen DC, Sanghvi R, Scinicariello F, Pulit-Penaloza J, Hill N, Attanasio R. Cynomolgus and pigtail macaque IgG subclasses: Characterization of IGHG genes and computational analysis of IgG/Fc receptor binding affinity. *Immunogenetics*. (2014) 66:361–77. doi: 10.1007/s00251-014-0775-4
97. Calvas P, Apoil P, Fortenfant F, Roubinet F, Andris J, Capra D, et al. Characterization of the three immunoglobulin G subclasses of macaques. *Scand J Immunol*. (1999) 49:595–610. doi: 10.1046/j.1365-3083.1999.00540.x
98. Dugast A-S, Stamatatos L, Tonelli A, Suscovich TJ, Licht AF, Mikell I, Ackerman ME, et al. Independent evolution of Fc- and Fab-mediated HIV-1-specific antiviral antibody activity following acute infection. *Eur J Immunol*. (2014) 44:2925–37. doi: 10.1002/eji.201344305
99. Karnasuta C, Akapirat S, Madnote S, Savadsuk H, Puangkaew J, Rittiroongrad S, et al. Comparison of antibody responses induced by RV144, VAX003, and VAX004 vaccination regimens. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses*. (2017) 33:410–23. doi: 10.1089/aid.2016.0204
100. Chan YN, Boesch AW, Osei-Owusu NY, Emileh A, Crowley AR, Cocklin SL, et al. IgG binding characteristics of rhesus macaque FcγR. *J Immunol*. (2016) 197:2936–47. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1502252
101. Duncan AR, Woof JM, Partridge LJ, Burton DR, Winter G. Localization of the binding site for the human high-affinity Fc receptor on IgG. *Nature*. (1988) 332:563–4. doi: 10.1038/332563a0
102. Lund J, Winter G, Jones PT, Pound JD, Tanaka T, Walker MR, et al. Human Fc gamma RI and Fc gamma RII interact with distinct but overlapping sites on human IgG. *J Immunol*. (1991) 147:2657–62.
103. Lund J, Pound JD, Jones PT, Duncan AR, Bentley T, Goodall M, et al. Multiple binding sites on the CH2 domain of IgG for mouse FcγR11. *Mol Immunol*. (1992) 29:53–9. doi: 10.1016/0161-5890(92)90156-R
104. Sarmay G, Lund J, Rozsnyay Z, Gergely J, Jefferis R. Mapping and comparison of the interaction sites on the Fc region of IgG responsible for triggering antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) through different types of human Fcγ receptor. *Mol Immunol*. (1992) 29:633–9. doi: 10.1016/0161-5890(92)90200-H
105. Morgan A, Jones ND, Nesbitt AM, Chaplin L, Bodmer MW, Emtage JS. The N-terminal end of the CH2 domain of chimeric human IgG1 anti-HLA-DR is necessary for C1q, Fc gamma RI and Fc gamma RIII binding. *Immunology*. (1995) 86:319–24.
106. Koolwijk P, Spierenburg GT, Frasa H, Boot JH, van de Winkel JG, Bast BJ. Interaction between hybrid mouse monoclonal antibodies and the human high-affinity IgG FCR, huFc gamma RI, on U937. Involvement of only one of the mIgG heavy chains in receptor binding. *J Immunol*. (1989) 143:1656–62.
107. Ghirlando R, Keown MB, Mackay GA, Lewis MS, Unkeless JC, Gould HJ. Stoichiometry and thermodynamics of the interaction between the Fc fragment of human IgG1 and its low-affinity receptor FcγRIII. *Biochemistry*. (1995) 34:13320–7. doi: 10.1021/bi00041a007
108. Kato K, Sautès-Fridman C, Yamada W, Kobayashi K, Uchiyama S, Kim H, et al. Structural basis of the interaction between IgG and Fcγ receptors. *J Mol Biol*. (2000) 295:3351. doi: 10.1006/jmbi.1999.3351
109. Radaev S, Motyka S, Fridman WH, Sautes-Fridman C, Sun PD. The structure of a human type III Fcgamma receptor in complex with Fc. *J Biol Chem*. (2001) 276:16469–77. doi: 10.1074/jbc.M100350200
110. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Fcgamma receptors as regulators of immune responses. *Nat Rev Immunol*. (2008) 8:34–47. doi: 10.1038/nri2206
111. Getahun A, Cambier JC. Of ITIMs, ITAMs, and ITAMis: Revisiting immunoglobulin Fc receptor signaling. *Immunol Rev*. (2015) 268:66–73. doi: 10.1111/imr.12336
112. Bournazos S. IgG Fc receptors: evolutionary considerations. In: Ahmed R, Aktories K, Casadevall A, Compans RW, Galan JE, Garcia-Sastre A, Malissen B, Palme K, Rappuoli R, Iwasaki A, Akira S, editors. *Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology*. Berlin; Heidelberg: Springer (2019). p. 1–11. doi: 10.1007/82_2019_149
113. Ernst LK, Duchemin AM, Anderson CL. Association of the high-affinity receptor for IgG (Fc gamma RI) with the gamma subunit of the IgE receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (1993) 90:6023–7. doi: 10.1073/pnas.90.13.6023
114. Scholl PR, Geha RS. Physical association between the high-affinity IgG receptor (Fc gamma RI) and the gamma subunit of the high-affinity IgE receptor (Fc epsilon RI gamma). *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (1993) 90:8847–50. doi: 10.1073/pnas.90.19.8847
115. van de Winkel JG, de Wit TP, Ernst LK, Capel PJ, Ceuppens JL. Molecular basis for a familial defect in phagocyte expression of IgG receptor I (CD64). *J Immunol*. (1995) 154:2896–903.
116. Indik ZK, Hunter S, Huang MM, Pan XQ, Chien P, Kelly C, et al. The high affinity Fc gamma receptor (CD64) induces phagocytosis in the absence of its cytoplasmic domain: the gamma subunit of Fc gamma RIIIA imparts phagocytic function to Fc gamma RI. *Exp Hematol*. (1994) 22:599–606.
117. Fanger NNA, Voigtlaender D, Liu C, Swink S, Wardwell K, Fisher J, et al. Characterization of expression, cytokine regulation, and effector function of the high affinity IgG receptor Fc gamma RI (CD64) expressed on human blood dendritic cells. *J Immunol*. (1997) 158:3090–8.
118. Okayama Y, Hagaman DD, Metcalfe DD. A Comparison of mediators released or generated by IFN- -treated human mast cells following aggregation of Fc RI or Fc RI. *J Immunol*. (2001) 166:4705–12. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.166.7.4705
119. O'Doherty U, Ignatius R, Bhardwaj N, Pope M. Generation of monocyte-derived dendritic cells from precursors in rhesus macaque blood. *J Immunol Methods*. (1997) 207:185–94. doi: 10.1016/S0022-1759(97)00119-1
120. Carter DL, Shieh TM, Blosser RL, Chadwick KR, Margolick JB, Hildreth JE, et al. CD56 identifies monocytes and not natural killer cells in rhesus macaques. *Cytometry*. (1999) 37:41–50. doi: 10.1002/(SICI)1097-0320(19990901)37:1<41::AID-CYTO5>3.0.CO;2-4
121. Starbeck-Miller GR, Badovinac VP, Barber DL, Harty JT. Cutting edge: expression of Fc RIIB tempers memory CD8 t cell function *in vivo*. *J Immunol*. (2014) 192:35–9. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1302232
122. Chauhan AK, Chen C, Moore TL, DiPaolo RJ. Induced expression of FcγRIIIa (CD16a) on CD4+ T cells triggers generation of IFN-γhigh subset. *J Biol Chem*. (2015) 290:5127–40. doi: 10.1074/jbc.M114.599266
123. Anselmino LM, Perussia B, Thomas LL. Human basophils selectively express the FcγRII (CDw32) subtype of IgG receptor. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. (1989) 84:907–14. doi: 10.1016/0091-6749(89)90388-6
124. Rogers KA, Scinicariello F, Attanasio R. IgG Fc receptor III homologues in nonhuman primate species: genetic characterization and ligand interactions. *J Immunol*. (2006) 177:3848–56. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.177.6.3848
125. Zhao W, Kepley CL, Morel PA, Okumoto LM, Fukuoka Y, Schwartz LB. Fc RIIa, Not Fc RIIb, is constitutively and functionally expressed on skin-derived human mast cells. *J Immunol*. (2006) 177:694–701. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.177.1.694
126. Choi EI, Wang R, Peterson L, Letvin NL, Reimann KA. Use of an anti-CD16 antibody for *in vivo* depletion of natural killer cells in rhesus macaques. *Immunology*. (2008) 124:215–22. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2567.2007.02757.x
127. Meknache N, Jonsson F, Laurent J, Guinnepain M-T, Daeron M. Human basophils express the glycosylphosphatidylinositol-anchored low-affinity IgG Receptor Fc RIIIB (CD16B). *J Immunol*. (2009) 182:2542–50. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.0801665
128. Cady CT, Powell MS, Harbeck RJ, Giclas PC, Murphy JR, Katial RK, et al. IgG antibodies produced during subcutaneous allergen immunotherapy mediate inhibition of basophil activation via a mechanism involving both FcγRIIA and FcγRIIB. *Immunol Lett*. (2010) 130:57–65. doi: 10.1016/j.imlet.2009.12.001
129. Cassard L, Jönsson F, Arnaud S, Daëron M. Fcγ Receptors inhibit mouse and human basophil activation. *J Immunol*. (2012) 189:2995–3006. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1200968

130. Perussia B, Dayton ET, Lazarus R, Fanning V, Trinchieri G. Immune interferon induces the receptor for monomeric IgG1 on human monocytic and myeloid cells. *J Exp Med*. (1983) 158:1092–113. doi: 10.1084/jem.158.4.1092
131. Okayama Y, Kirshenbaum AS, Metcalfe DD. Expression of a functional high-affinity IgG Receptor, FcγRI, on human mast cells: up-regulation by IFN-γ. *J Immunol*. (2000) 164:4332–39. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.164.8.4332
132. Veri MC, Gorlatov S, Li H, Burke S, Johnson S, Stavenhagen J, et al. Monoclonal antibodies capable of discriminating the human inhibitory Fcγ-receptor IIB (CD32B) from the activating Fcγ-receptor IIA (CD32A): Biochemical, biological and functional characterization. *Immunology*. (2007) 121:392–404. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2567.2007.02588.x
133. Sestak K, Scheiners C, Wu XW, Hollemweguer E. Identification of anti-human CD antibodies reactive with rhesus macaque peripheral blood cells. *Vet Immunol Immunopathol*. (2007) 119:21–6. doi: 10.1016/j.vetimm.2007.06.011
134. Metes D, Ernst LK, Chambers WH, Sulica A, Herberman RB, Morel PA. Expression of functional CD32 molecules on human NK cells is determined by an allelic polymorphism of the FcgammaRIIC gene. *Blood*. (1998) 91:2369–80.
135. Li X, Wu J, Ptacek T, Redden DT, Brown EE, Alarcon GS, et al. Allelic-dependent expression of an activating Fc receptor on B cells enhances humoral immune responses. *Sci Transl Med*. (2013) 5:216ra175-216ra175. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3007097
136. Chappel MS, Isenman DE, Everett M, Xu YY, Dorrington KJ, Klein MH. Identification of the Fc gamma receptor class I binding site in human IgG through the use of recombinant IgG1/IgG2 hybrid and point-mutated antibodies. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (1991) 88:9036–40. doi: 10.1073/pnas.88.20.9036
137. Morell A, Skvaril F, van Loghem E, Kleemola M. Human IgG subclasses in maternal and fetal serum. *Vox Sang*. (1971) 21:481–92.
138. van der Giessen M, Rossouw E, van Veen TA, van Loghem E, Zegers BJ, Sander PC. Quantification of IgG subclasses in sera of normal adults and healthy children between 4 and 12 years of age. *Clin Exp Immunol*. (1975) 21:501–9.
139. Irani V, Guy AJ, Andrew D, Beeson JG, Ramsland PA, Richards JS. Molecular properties of human IgG subclasses and their implications for designing therapeutic monoclonal antibodies against infectious diseases. *Mol Immunol*. (2015) 67:171–82. doi: 10.1016/j.molimm.2015.03.255
140. Bruhns P. Properties of mouse and human IgG receptors and their contribution to disease models. *Blood*. (2012) 119:5640–9. doi: 10.1182/blood-2012-01-380121
141. Clark MR, Clarkson SB, Ory PA, Stollman N, Goldstein IM. Molecular basis for a polymorphism involving Fc receptor II on human monocytes. *J Immunol*. (1989) 143:1731–4.
142. Sanders LA, Feldman RG, Voorhorst-Ogink MM, de Haas M, Rijkers GT, Capel PJ, et al. Human immunoglobulin G (IgG) Fc Receptor IIA (CD32) Polymorphism and IgG2-Mediated Bacterial Phagocytosis by neutrophils. *Infect Immun*. (1995) 63:73–81.
143. Warmerdam PA, van de Winkel JG, Gosselin EJ, Capel PJ. Molecular basis for a polymorphism of human Fc gamma receptor II (CD32). *J Exp Med*. (1990) 172:19–25. doi: 10.1084/jem.172.1.19
144. Mellor JD, Brown MP, Irving HR, Zalcberg JR, Dobrovic A. A critical review of the role of Fc gamma receptor polymorphisms in the response to monoclonal antibodies in cancer. *J Hematol Oncol*. (2013) 6:1. doi: 10.1186/1756-8722-6-1
145. Platonov, Kuijper, Vershinina, Shipulin, Westerdaal, Fijen, Van DE Winkel. Meningococcal disease and polymorphism of FcgammaRIIa (CD32) in late complement component-deficient individuals. *Clin Exp Immunol*. (1998) 111:97–101. doi: 10.1046/j.1365-2249.1998.00484.x
146. Yee a M, Phan HM, Zuniga R, Salmon JE, Musher DM. Association between Fc gamma RIIa-R131 allotype and bacteremic pneumococcal pneumonia. *Clin Infect Dis*. (2000) 30:25–8. doi: 10.1086/313588
147. Endeman H, Cornips MC, Grutters JC, van den Bosch JM, Ruven HJ, van Velzen-Blad H, et al. The Fcgamma receptor IIA-R/R131 genotype is associated with severe sepsis in community-acquired pneumonia. *Clin Vaccine Immunol*. (2009) 16:1087–90. doi: 10.1128/cvi.00037-09
148. Forthal DN, Landucci G, Bream J, Jacobson LP, Phan TB, Montoya B. FcγRIIa Genotype Predicts Progression of HIV Infection. *J Immunol*. (2007) 179:7916–23. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.179.11.7916
149. Forthal DN, Gabriel EE, Wang A, Landucci G, Phan TB. Association of Fcγ receptor IIIa genotype with the rate of HIV infection after gp120 vaccination. *Blood*. (2012) 120:2836–42. doi: 10.1182/blood-2012-05-431361
150. Osborne JM, Chacko GW, Brandt JT, Anderson CL. Ethnic variation in frequency of an allelic polymorphism of human FcγRIIA determined with allele specific oligonucleotide probes. *J Immunol Methods*. (1994) 173:207–17. doi: 10.1016/0022-1759(94)90299-2
151. Norsworthy P, Theodoridis E, Botto M, Athanassiou P, Beynon H, Gordon C, et al. Overrepresentation of the Fcγ receptor type IIA R131/R131 genotype in Caucasoid systemic lupus erythematosus patients with autoantibodies to C1q and glomerulonephritis. *Arthritis Rheum*. (1999) 42:1828–32. doi: 10.1002/1529-0131(199909)42:9<1828::AID-ANR6>3.0.CO;2-F
152. Ramsland PA, Farrugia W, Bradford TM, Sardjono CT, Esparon S, Trist HM, et al. Structural Basis for Fc{gamma}RIIa Recognition of Human IgG and formation of inflammatory signaling complexes. *J Immunol*. (2011) 187:3208–17. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1101467
153. Boesch AW, Miles AR, Chan YN, Osei-Owusu NY, Ackerman ME. IgG Fc variant cross-reactivity between human and rhesus macaque FcγRs. *MAbs*. (2017) 9:455–65. doi: 10.1080/19420862.2016.1274845
154. Haj AK, Arbanas JM, Yamniuk AP, Karl JA, Bussan HE, Drinkwater KY, et al. Characterization of mauritian cynomolgus macaque FcγR alleles using long-read sequencing. *J Immunol*. (2019) 202:151–9. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1800843
155. Richards JO, Karki S, Lazar GA, Chen H, Dang W, Desjarlais JR. Optimization of antibody binding to FcgammaRIIa enhances macrophage phagocytosis of tumor cells. *Mol Cancer Ther*. (2008) 7:2517–27. doi: 10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-08-0201
156. Trist HM, Tan PS, Wines BD, Ramsland PA, Orlowski E, Stubbs J, et al. Polymorphisms and Interspecies Differences of the Activating and Inhibitory Fc RII of macaca nemestrina influence the binding of human IgG subclasses. *J Immunol*. (2014) 192:792–803. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1301554
157. Ravetch JV, Perussia B. Alternative membrane forms of Fc gamma RIII(CD16) on human natural killer cells and neutrophils. Cell type-specific expression of two genes that differ in single nucleotide substitutions. *J Exp Med*. (1989) 170:481–97.
158. Wu J, Edberg JC, Redecha PB, Bansal V, Guyre PM, Coleman K, et al. A novel polymorphism of FcgammaRIIIa (CD16) alters receptor function and predisposes to autoimmune disease. *J Clin Invest*. (1997) 100:1059–70. doi: 10.1172/JCI119616
159. Leppers-van de Straat FG, Jansen M, Kobayashi T, Yoshie H, Sugita N, van de Winkel JG, et al. A novel PCR-based method for direct Fcγ receptor IIIa (CD16) allotyping. *J Immunol Methods*. (2002) 242:127–32. doi: 10.1016/s0022-1759(00)00240-4
160. Weng WK, Levy R. Two immunoglobulin G fragment C receptor polymorphisms independently predict response to rituximab in patients with follicular lymphoma. *J Clin Oncol*. (2003) 21:3940–7. doi: 10.1200/JCO.2003.05.013
161. Ghielmini M, Schmitz SFH, Cogliatti S, Bertoni F, Waltzer U, Fey MF, et al. Effect of single-agent rituximab given at the standard schedule or as prolonged treatment in patients with mantle cell lymphoma: a study of the Swiss group for clinical cancer research (SAKK). *J Clin Oncol*. (2005) 23:705–11. doi: 10.1200/JCO.2005.04.164
162. Friedberg JW. Unique toxicities and resistance mechanisms associated with monoclonal antibody therapy. *ASH Educ B*. (2005) 2005:329–34. doi: 10.1182/asheducation-2005.1.329
163. Miller CJ, Genescà M, Abel K, Montefiori D, Forthal D, Bost K, et al. Antiviral antibodies are necessary for control of simian immunodeficiency virus replication. *J Virol*. (2007) 81:5024–35. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02444-06
164. Morgan AW, Griffiths B, Ponchel F, Montague BMN, Ali M, Gardner PP, et al. Fcγ receptor type IIIA is associated with rheumatoid arthritis in two distinct ethnic groups. *Arthritis Rheum*. (2000) 43:2328–34. doi: 10.1002/1529-0131(200010)43:10<2328::AID-ANR21>3.0.CO;2-Z
165. Aksu K, Kitapcioglu G, Keser G, Berdeli A, Karabulut G, Kobak S, et al. FcgammaRIIa, IIIa and IIIb gene polymorphisms in Behçet's disease: do they have any clinical implications? *Clin Exp Rheumatol*. (2008) 26:S77–83.

166. Gulen F, Tanac R, Altinoz S, Berdeli A, Zeyrek D, Koksoy H, et al. The Fc gammaRIIa polymorphism in Turkish children with asthma bronchial and allergic rhinitis. *Clin Biochem*. (2007) 40:392–6. doi: 10.1016/j.clinbiochem.2006.11.014
167. Lehrnbecher TL, Foster CB, Zhu S, Venzon D, Steinberg SM, Wyvill K, et al. Variant genotypes of FcgammaRIIIA influence the development of Kaposi's sarcoma in HIV-infected men. *Blood*. (2000) 95:2386–90.
168. Selvaraj P, Rosse WF, Silber R, Springer TA. The major Fc receptor in blood has a phosphatidylinositol anchor and is deficient in paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria. *Nature*. (1988) 333:565–7. doi: 10.1038/333565a0
169. Treffers LW, van Houdt M, Bruggeman CW, Heineke MH, Zhao XW, van der Heijden J, et al. FcγRIIIb restricts antibody-dependent destruction of cancer cells by human neutrophils. *Front Immunol*. (2018) 9:3124. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.03124
170. Fernandes MJG, Rollet-Labelle E, Paré G, Marois S, Tremblay M-L, Teillaud J-L, et al. CD16b associates with high-density, detergent-resistant membranes in human neutrophils. *Biochem J*. (2006) 393:351–9. doi: 10.1042/BJ20050129
171. Galon J, Gauchat JF, Mazières N, Spagnoli R, Storkus W, Lötze M, Bonnefoy JY, et al. Soluble Fcgamma receptor type III (FcgammaRIII, CD16) triggers cell activation through interaction with complement receptors. *J Immunol*. (1996) 157:1184–92.
172. Chuang FY, Sassaroli M, Unkeless JC. Convergence of Fc gamma receptor IIA and Fc gamma receptor IIIB signaling pathways in human neutrophils. *J Immunol*. (2000) 164:350–60. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.164.1.350
173. Vossebeld PJM, Kessler J, von dem Borne AEGK, Roos D, Verhoeven AJ. Heterotypic FcγR clusters evoke a synergistic Ca2+ response in human neutrophils. *J Biol Chem*. (1995) 270:10671–9. doi: 10.1074/jbc.270.18.10671
174. Huizinga TW, Dolman KM, van der Linden NJ, Kleijer M, Nuijens JH, von dem Borne AE, et al. Phosphatidylinositol-linked FcRIII mediates exocytosis of neutrophil granule proteins, but does not mediate initiation of the respiratory burst. *J Immunol*. (1990) 144:1432–7.
175. Shibata-Koyama M, Iida S, Misaka H, Mori K, Yano K, Shitara K, et al. Nonfucosylated rituximab potentiates human neutrophil phagocytosis through its high binding for FcγRIIIb and MHC class II expression on the phagocytotic neutrophils. *Exp Hematol*. (2009) 37:309–21. doi: 10.1016/j.exphem.2008.11.006
176. Golay J, Da Roit F, Bologna L, Ferrara C, Leusen JH, Rambaldi A, et al. Glycoengineered CD20 antibody obinutuzumab activates neutrophils and mediates phagocytosis through CD16B more efficiently than rituximab. *Blood*. (2013) 122:3482–91. doi: 10.1182/blood-2013-05-504043
177. Derer S, Glorius P, Schlaeth M, Lohse S, Klausz K, Muchhal U, et al. Increasing FcaγRIIa affinity of an FcaγRIII-optimized anti-EGFR antibody restores neutrophil-mediated cytotoxicity. *MAbs*. (2014) 6:409–21. doi: 10.4161/mabs.27457
178. Mousavi SA, Sporstøl M, Fladeby C, Kjeken R, Barois N, Berg T. Receptor-mediated endocytosis of immune complexes in rat liver sinusoidal endothelial cells is mediated by FcγRIIb2. *Hepatology*. (2007) 46:871–84. doi: 10.1002/hep.21748
179. Ganesan LP, Kim J, Wu Y, Mohanty S, Phillips GS, Birmingham DJ, et al. Fc RIIb on liver sinusoidal endothelium clears small immune complexes. *J Immunol*. (2012) 189:4981–8. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1202017
180. Floto RA, Clatworthy MR, Heilbronn KR, Rosner DR, MacAry PA, Rankin A, et al. Loss of function of a lupus-associated FcgammaRIIb polymorphism through exclusion from lipid rafts. *Nat Med*. (2005) 11:1056–8. doi: 10.1038/nm1288
181. Kono H, Kyogoku C, Suzuki T, Tsuchiya N, Honda H, Yamamoto K, et al. FcγRIIB Ile232Thr transmembrane polymorphism associated with human systemic lupus erythematosus decreases affinity to lipid rafts and attenuates inhibitory effects on B cell receptor signaling. *Hum Mol Genet*. (2005) 14:2881–92. doi: 10.1093/hmg/ddi320
182. Ernst LK, Metes D, Herberman RB, Morel PA. Allelic polymorphisms in the FcγRIIC gene can influence its function on normal human natural killer cells. *J Mol Med*. (2002) 80:248–57. doi: 10.1007/s00109-001-0294-2
183. Breunis WB, van Mirre E, Bruin M, Geissler J, de Boer M, Peters M, et al. Copy number variation of the activating FCGR2C gene predisposes to idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura. *Blood*. (2007) 111:1029–38. doi: 10.1182/blood-2007-03-079913
184. Warmerdam PAM, Nabben NMJM, Van de Graaf SAR, Van de Winkel JGJ, Capel PJA. The human low affinity immunoglobulin G Fc receptor IIC gene is a result of an unequal crossover event. *J Biol Chem*. (1993) 268:7346–9.
185. Metes D, Galatiuc C, Moldovan I, Morel PA, Chambers WH, DeLeo AB, et al. Expression and function of Fc gamma RII on human natural killer cells. *Nat Immun*. (1994) 13:289–300.
186. Li SS, Gilbert PB, Tomaras GD, Kijak G, Ferrari G, Thomas R, et al. FCGR2C polymorphisms associate with HIV-1 vaccine protection in RV144 trial. *J Clin Invest*. (2014) 124:3879–90. doi: 10.1172/JCI75539
187. Liu L. Pharmacokinetics of monoclonal antibodies and Fc-fusion proteins. *Protein Cell*. (2017) 9:15–32. doi: 10.1007/s13238-017-0408-4.
188. Spiegelberg HL, Fishkin BG. The catabolism of human G immunoglobulins of different heavy chain subclasses. 3. The catabolism of heavy chain disease proteins and of Fc fragments of myeloma proteins. *Clin Exp Immunol*. (1972) 10:599–607.
189. Ghetie V, Hubbard JG, Kim JK, Tsen MF, Lee Y, Ward ES. Abnormally short serum half - lives of IgG in beta 2 - microglobulin - deficient mice. *Eur J Immunol*. (1996) 26:690–6.
190. Roopenian DC, Christianson GJ, Sproule TJ, Brown AC, Akilesh S, Jung N, et al. The MHC class I-like IgG receptor controls perinatal IgG transport, IgG homeostasis, and fate of IgG-Fc-coupled drugs. *J Immunol*. (2003) 170:3528–33. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.170.7.3528
191. Ward ES. Evidence to support the cellular mechanism involved in serum IgG homeostasis in humans. *Int Immunol*. (2003) 15:187–95. doi: 10.1093/intimm/dxg018
192. Simister NE, Mostov KE. An Fc receptor structurally related to MHC class I antigens. *Nature*. (1989) 337:184–7. doi: 10.1038/337184a0
193. Burmeister WP, Huber AH, Bjorkman PJ. Crystal structure of the complex of rat neonatal Fc receptor with Fc. *Nature*. (1994) 372:379–83. doi: 10.1038/372379a0
194. Burmeister WP, Gastinel LN, Simister NE, Blum ML, Bjorkman PJ. Crystal structure at 2.2 Å resolution of the MHC-related neonatal Fc receptor. *Nature*. (1994) 372:336–43. doi: 10.1038/372336a0
195. Haymann JP, Levraud JP, Bouet S, Kappes V, Hagège J, Nguyen G, et al. Characterization and localization of the neonatal Fc receptor in adult human kidney. *J Am Soc Nephrol*. (2000) 11:632–9.
196. Zhu X, Meng G, Dickinson BL, Li X, Mizoguchi E, Miao L, et al. MHC class I-related neonatal Fc receptor for IgG is functionally expressed in monocytes, intestinal macrophages, and dendritic cells. *J Immunol*. (2001) 166:3266–76. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.166.5.3266
197. Schlachetzki F, Zhu C, Pardridge WM. Expression of the neonatal Fc receptor (FcRn) at the blood-brain barrier. *J Neurochem*. (2002) 81:203–6. doi: 10.1046/j.1471-4159.2002.00840.x
198. Spiekermann GM, Finn PW, Ward ES, Dumont J, Dickinson BL, et al. Receptor-mediated immunoglobulin G transport across mucosal barriers in adult life: functional expression of FcRn in the mammalian lung. *J Exp Med*. (2002) 196:303–10. doi: 10.1084/jem.20020400
199. Leach JL, Sedmak DD, Osborne JM, Rahill B, Lairmore MD, Anderson CL. Isolation from human placenta of the IgG transporter, FcRn, and localization to the syncytiotrophoblast: implications for maternal-fetal antibody transport. *J Immunol*. (1996) 157:3317–22.
200. Simister NE, Story CM, Chen HL, Hunt JS. An IgG - transporting Fc receptor expressed in the syncytiotrophoblast of human placenta. *Eur J Immunol*. (1996) 26:1527–31.
201. Israel EJ, Taylor S, Wu Z, Mizoguchi E, Blumberg RS, Bhan A, Simister NE. Expression of the neonatal Fc receptor, FcRn, on human intestinal epithelial cells. *Immunology*. (1997) 92:69–74. doi: 10.1046/j.1365-2567.1997.00326.x
202. Borvak J, Richardson J, Medesan C, Antohe F, Radu C, Simionescu M, et al. Functional expression of the MHC class I-related receptor, FcRn, in endothelial cells of mice. *IntImmunol*. (1998) 10:1289–98.
203. Shah U, Dickinson BL, Blumberg RS, Simister NE, Lencer WI, Walker AW. Distribution of the IgG Fc Receptor, FcRn, in the Human Fetal Intestine. *Pediatr Res*. (2003) 53:295–301. doi: 10.1203/01.PDR.0000047663.81816.E3
204. Jones EA, Waldmann TA. The mechanism of intestinal uptake and transcellular transport of IgG in the neonatal rat. *J Clin Invest*. (1972) 51:2916–27. doi: 10.1172/JCI107116
205. Rodewald R. pH-dependent binding of immunoglobulins to intestinal cells of the neonatal rat. *J Cell Biol*. (1976) 71:666–9. doi: 10.1083/jcb.71.2.666

206. Simister NE, Rees AR. Isolation and characterization of an Fc receptor from neonatal rat intestine. *Eur J Immunol*. (1985) 15:733–8.
207. Firan M, Bawdon R, Radu C, Ober RJ, Eaken D, Antohe F, et al. The MHC class I-related receptor, FcRn, plays an essential role in the maternofetal transfer of gamma-globulin in humans. *Int Immunol*. (2001) 13:993–1002. doi: 10.1093/intimm/13.8.993
208. Israel EJ, Patel VK, Taylor SF, Marshak-Rothstein A, Simister NE. Requirement for a beta 2-microglobulin-associated Fc receptor for acquisition of maternal IgG by fetal and neonatal mice. *J Immunol*. (1995) 154:6246–51.
209. Martin WL, West AP, Gan L, Bjorkman PJ. Crystal structure at 2.8 A of an FcRn/heterodimeric Fc complex: mechanism of pH-dependent binding. *Mol Cell*. (2001) 7:867–77.
210. Uno Y, Utoh M, Iwasaki K. Polymorphisms of neonatal Fc receptor in cynomolgus and rhesus macaques. *Drug Metab Pharmacokinet*. (2014) 29:427–30. doi: 10.2133/dmpk.DMPK-14-NT-033
211. Shubin Z, Tagaya Y, Poonia B. Functional polymorphisms in rhesus macaque FCGRT and β2-m. *Immunogenetics*. (2018) 70:179–83. doi: 10.1007/s00251-017-1022-6
212. Vaughn DE, Milburn CM, Penny DM, Martin WL, Johnson JL, Bjorkman PJ. Identification of critical IgG binding epitopes on the neonatal Fc receptor. *J Mol Biol*. (1997) 274:597–607. doi: 10.1006/jmbi.1997.1388
213. Su K, Li X, Edberg JC, Wu J, Ferguson P, Kimberly RP. A promoter haplotype of the immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif-bearing Fc RIIb alters receptor expression and associates with autoimmunity. II. differential binding of GATA4 and Yin-Yang1 transcription factors and correlated receptor expression. *J Immunol*. (2004) 172:7192–9. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.172.11.7192
214. Willcocks LC, Lyons PA, Clatworthy MR, Robinson JI, Yang W, Newland SA, et al. Copy number of *FCGR3B,* which is associated with systemic lupus erythematosus, correlates with protein expression and immune complex uptake. *J Exp Med*. (2008) 205:1573–82. doi: 10.1084/jem.20072413
215. Breunis WB, Van Mirre E, Geissler J, Laddach N, Wolbink G, Van Schoot E et al. Copy number variation at the FCGR locus includes FCGR3A, FCGR2C and FCGR3B but not FCGR2A and FCGR2B. *Hum Mutat*. (2009) 30:640–50. doi: 10.1002/humu.20997
216. Van Der Heijden J, Geissler J, Van Mirre E, Van Deuren M, Van Der Meer JWM, Salama A, et al. A novel splice variant of FcγRIIa: A risk factor for anaphylaxis in patients with hypogammaglobulinemia. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. (2013) 131:1408–16.e5. doi: 10.1016/j.jaci.2013.02.009
217. van der Heijden J, Nagelkerke S, Zhao X, Geissler J, Rispens T, van den Berg TK, et al. Haplotypes of Fc RIIa and Fc RIIIb polymorphic variants influence IgG-mediated responses in neutrophils. *J Immunol*. (2014) 192:2715–21. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1203570
218. Yan G, Zhang G, Fang X, Zhang Y, Li C, Ling F, et al. Genome sequencing and comparison of two nonhuman primate animal models, the cynomolgus and Chinese rhesus macaques. *Nat Biotechnol*. (2011) 29:1019–23. doi: 10.1038/nbt.1992

Conflict of Interest Statement: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

The reviewer AC declared a past co-authorship with one of the authors MA to the handling editor.

frontiers in Immunology

ORIGINAL RESEARCH
published: 11 April 2019
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00735

Chronic HIV-1 Infection Alters the Cellular Distribution of FcγRIIIa and the Functional Consequence of the FcγRIIIa-F158V Variant

Ntando G. Phaahla[1,2], *Ria Lassaunière*[1,3], *Bianca Da Costa Dias*[1,2], *Ziyaad Waja*[4,5], *Neil A. Martinson*[4,5] *and Caroline T. Tiemessen*[1,2]*

[1] *Centre for HIV and STIs, National Institute for Communicable Diseases, Johannesburg, South Africa,* [2] *Faculty of Health Sciences, University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg, South Africa,* [3] *Department of Virus and Microbiological Special Diagnostics, Statens Serum Institut, Copenhagen, Denmark,* [4] *Perinatal HIV Research Unit, University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg, South Africa,* [5] *MRC Soweto Matlosana Centre for HIV/AIDS and TB Research, Johannesburg, South Africa*

OPEN ACCESS

Edited by:
Guido Ferrari,
Duke University, United States

Reviewed by:
Francisco Borrego,
BioCruces Health Research Institute, Spain
Bin Su,
Capital Medical University, China

***Correspondence:**
Caroline T. Tiemessen
carolinet@nicd.ac.za

Specialty section:
This article was submitted to NK and Innate Lymphoid Cell Biology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology

Received: *17 December 2018*
Accepted: *19 March 2019*
Published: *11 April 2019*

Citation:
Phaahla NG, Lassaunière R, Da Costa Dias B, Waja Z, Martinson NA and Tiemessen CT (2019) Chronic HIV-1 Infection Alters the Cellular Distribution of FcγRIIIa and the Functional Consequence of the FcγRIIIa-F158V Variant. Front. Immunol. 10:735. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00735

Chronic HIV-infection modulates the expression of Fc gamma receptors (FcγRs) on immune cells and their antibody-dependent effector function capability. Given the increasingly recognized importance of antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) in HIV-specific immunity, we investigated the cellular distribution of FcγRIIIa on cytotoxic lymphocytes—natural killer cells and $CD8^+$ T cells—and the effect of the FcγRIIIa-F158V variant on ADCC capacity in HIV-infected individuals ($n = 23$) and healthy controls ($n = 23$). Study participants were matched for F158V genotypes, carried two copies of the *FCGR3A* gene and were negative for FcγRIIb expression on NK cells. The distribution of $CD56^{dim}FcγRIIIa^{bright}$ and $CD56^{neg}FcγRIIIa^{bright}$ NK cell subsets, but not FcγRIIIa surface expression, differed significantly between HIV-1 negative and HIV-1 positive donors. NK cell-mediated ADCC responses negatively correlated with the proportion of the immunoregulatory $CD56^{bright}FcγRIIIa^{dim/neg}$ cells and were lower in the HIV-1 positive group. Intriguingly, the FcγRIIIa-F158V variant differentially affected the NK-mediated ADCC responses for HIV-1 negative and HIV-1 positive donors. Healthy donors bearing at least one 158V allele had higher ADCC responses compared to those homozygous for the 158F allele (48.1 vs. 34.1%), whereas the opposite was observed for the HIV-infected group (26.4 vs. 34.6%), although not statistically significantly different. Furthermore, $FcγRIIIa^+CD8^{bright}$ and $FcγRIIIa^+CD8^{dim}$ T cell subsets were observed in both HIV-1 negative and HIV-1 positive donors, with median proportions that were significantly higher in HIV-1 positive donors compared to healthy controls (15.7 vs. 8.3%; $P = 0.016$ and 18.2 vs. 14.1%; $P = 0.038$, respectively). Using an HIV-1-specific GranToxiLux assay, we demonstrate that $CD8^+$ T cells mediate ADCC through the delivery of granzyme B, which was overall lower compared to that of autologous NK cells. In conclusion, our findings demonstrate that in the presence of an HIV-1 infection, the cellular distribution

of FcγRIIIa is altered and that the functional consequence of FcγRIIIa variant is affected. Importantly, it underscores the need to characterize FcγR expression, cellular distribution and functional consequences of FcγR genetic variants within a specific environment or disease state.

Keywords: NK cells, CD8 T cells, antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity, Fc gamma receptor, polymorphism, HIV, infection

INTRODUCTION

Receptors for the Fc domain of immunoglobulin G (IgG), so called Fc gamma receptors (FcγRs), link the specificity of IgG with potent effector functions of the innate immune system. FcγRs comprise a family of activating (FcγRI, FcγRIIa, and FcγRIIIa) and inhibiting (FcγRIIb) receptors that are differentially expressed on innate immune cells such as natural killer (NK) cells, monocytes, dendritic cells, neutrophils, and granulocytes (1–3). During an infection, these receptors play an important role in activating IgG-induced protective inflammatory processes and regulating immune responses (4–7).

Increasing evidence support an important role for FcγR-mediated effector functions, in particular antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC), in HIV-1-specific immunity (6, 8). In adults, ADCC has been associated with a reduced risk of HIV-1 acquisition in the RV144 vaccine trial, whereas in infants born to HIV-1 infected mothers, passively acquired ADCC activity associated with reduced mortality (9). Similarly, ADCC responses associate with slower disease progression in HIV-1 infected adults (10–14).

In the periphery, $CD56^{dim}$FcγRIIIa^{bright} NK cells are the primary effectors of ADCC responses (15). During a chronic HIV-1 infection, however, shedding of FcγRIIIa from the surface of cytotoxic $CD56^{dim}$FcγRIIIa^{bright} NK cells together with an increase in the $CD56^{neg}$FcγRIIIa^{bright} NK cell subset leads to a significant reduction in NK cell function (16, 17). It is unknown whether this loss in NK cell-mediated ADCC capacity is compensated for by other cytotoxic cells, where FcγR expression is induced upon immune cell activation. For chronic hepatitis C virus or Epstein Barr virus infections, for instance, it has been shown that FcγRIIIa expression is induced on an effector memory $CD8^+$ T cell subset (18, 19). This FcγRIIIa^+CD8^+ T cell subset acquires NK cell-like functional properties, including ADCC activity accompanied by the release of pore forming perforin and serine protease granzyme B (18, 19). The presence and role of this $CD8^+$ T cell subset in HIV-1 infection is currently undefined.

In addition to the effect of an actively replicating virus on FcγRIIIa expression, host genetics also contribute to variability of FcγRIIIa expression and/or ADCC responses. *FCGR3A* copy number variation directly correlates with the surface density of FcγRIIIa, with individuals bearing a single *FCGR3A* copy and correspondingly lower FcγRIIIa surface densities, having reduced ADCC responses compared to individuals with two or more gene copies (20). In addition, a phenylalanine (F) to valine (V) substitution at amino acid 158 in the proximal Ig-like domain of FcγRIIIa confers increased binding for IgG1, IgG3, and IgG4, which has been associated with higher NK cell activation and ADCC responses (21–23). Unlike *FCGR3A* copy number and the FcγRIIIa-F158V variant, a deletion of a copy number variable region (CNR) encompassing *FCGR3B* and *FCGR2C*—known as CNR1—does not affect FcγRIIIa directly (24). However, it juxtaposes the 5′-regulatory sequences of *FCGR2C* with the open reading frame of *FCGR2B*, creating a chimeric *FCGR2B'* gene (25). This results in the expression of the inhibitory FcγRIIb on NK cells where it regulates FcγRIIIa-mediated ADCC responses (25, 26).

FCGR variants are rarely adjusted for in studies that compare NK cell-mediated ADCC capacity between HIV-positive and HIV-negative individuals. Moreover, it is unclear if the altered immune milieu accompanying an HIV-1 infection modulates the functional consequences of the aforementioned variants. In this study, we sought to characterize FcγRIIIa expression on cytotoxic lymphocytes—NK cells and $CD8^+$ T cells—and associated ADCC responses in healthy donors and viraemic HIV-1 individuals matched for *FCGR* genetic variants.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Cohort

All study participants were black South Africans recruited from the city of Johannesburg, Gauteng province, South Africa (**Table 1**). Self-reported HIV-1 uninfected individuals who did not have an acute or chronic illness at the time of sample collection were prospectively recruited from the National Institute for Communicable Diseases as healthy controls. Viraemic, treatment naïve HIV-1 infected individuals were identified from an existing cohort recruited from hospitals in Johannesburg and Soweto. This study was carried out in accordance with the recommendations of the National Health Research Ethics Council (NHREC) of the South African Department of Health. The protocol was approved by the University of the Witwatersrand Ethics Committee (Ethics clearance certificate no. M1511102). All participants provided written informed consent in accordance with the Declaration of Helsinki.

Abbreviations: NK, natural killer cell; IgG, immunoglobulin G; HIV-1, human immunodeficiency virus 1; ADCC, antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity; *FCGR*, Fc gamma receptor gene; FcγR, Fc gamma receptor protein; CNR1, gene copy number variable region 1; EDTA, ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid; HNA, Human neutrophil antigen; MLPA, multiplex ligation-dependent probe amplification; FMO, flurescence minus one; PBMCs, peripheral blood mononuclear cells; KIR2DL2/L3, killer immunoglobulin-like receptor 2 DL2/L3; NKG2A/D, natural killer group 2A or−2D.

TABLE 1 | Clinical and demographic characteristics of study cohort.

	HIV-1 negative	HIV-1 positive	*P*-value
N	23	23	
Age [mean (SD)]	36.3 [8.5]	40.2 (8.8)	0.143*
Gender [% Females]	69.6	82.6	0.491*
HIV-1 VIRAL LOAD [MEDIAN (IQR)]			
158FF	–	6,931 (3,598–15,090)	0.563†
158FV/VV	–	4,732 (1,134–11,430)	
CD4 T CELL COUNT [MEAN (*SD*)]			
158FF	–	508 (267)	0.629†
158FV/VV	–	562 (261)	
OTHER DISEASES OR INFECTIONS			
Mycobacterium tuberculosis	0 (0%)	2 (8.7%)	

*Comparison between HIV-1 negative and HIV-1 positive groups.
†Comparison between genotypes.

FCGR Variant Genotyping

Genomic DNA was isolated from ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA)-anticoagulated whole blood. Study participants were genotyped for *FCGR* variants using the *FCGR*-specific multiplex ligation-dependent probe amplification (MLPA) assay (MRC Holland, Amsterdam, The Netherlands) as previously described (27, 28). This assay detects the genomic copy number of *FCGR2A*, *FCGR2B*, *FCGR2C*, *FCGR3A*, and *FCGR3B* and functional allelic variants that include FcγRIIa-H131R (alias H166R, c.497A>G, rs1801274); FcγRIIb-I232T (c.695T>C, rs1050501), FcγRIIIa-F158V (alias F176V, c.634T>G, rs396991), FcγRIIIb-HNA1a/b/c, *FCGR2C* gene expression variants c.169T>C (X57Q) and c.798+1A>G (rs76277413), and the *FCGR2B/C* promoter variants c.-386G>C (rs3219018) and c.-120T>A (rs34701572) in two multiplex reactions. Capillary electrophoresis was used to separate the MLPA assay amplicons on an ABI Genetic Analyzer 3500. Data were analyzed with Coffalyser.NET software created by the MLPA assay manufacturer, MRC Holland.

Monoclonal Antibodies and Flow Cytometric Analysis

The following monoclonal antibodies were used: CD3-PerCP (SK7), CD56-AF647 (B159), CD8-APC-H7 (SK1), CD16-PE (3G8), CD16-FITC (NKP15), CD32-FITC (2B6), and CD32-PE (FLI8.26). All antibodies were obtained from BD Biosciences (San Jose, CA). Dead cells were labeled with the BD Horizon™ Fixable Viability Stain 510. Samples were acquired on a BD Fortessa X20 (BD biosciences) and analyzed on FlowJo version 9.8.1 software (Tree Star, San Carlos, CA). Fluorescence-minus-one (FMO) controls were used to set the appropriate gates for analyses.

Isolation of Specific Cell Populations

Peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) were isolated from EDTA-anticoagulated whole blood using Ficoll-Paque™ PLUS density gradient centrifugation (GE Healthcare) and stored at −80°C. NK cells and $CD8^+$ T cells were positively selected from overnight rested PBMCs using MACS® magnetic cell separation technology (Miltenyl Biotec). To limit the presence of NK cells in the enriched $CD8^+$ T cell preparation, NK cells were first isolated from PBMCs using $CD56^+$ beads prior to isolation of $CD8^+$ T cells with $CD8^+$ beads. Viability and number of each participant's NK and $CD8^+$ T cells were determined by trypan blue exclusion through direct cell counting on a haemocytometer. The purity of enriched cell fractions was determined by flow cytometric phenotyping assays.

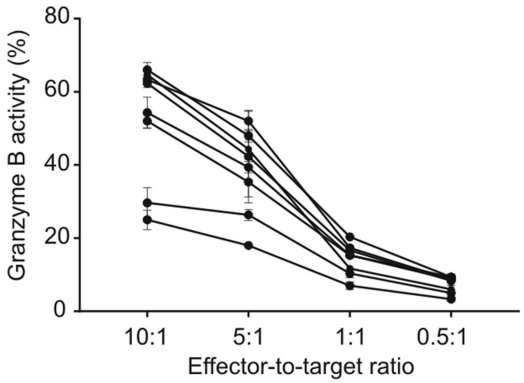
Antibodies

ADCC capacity was evaluated using pooled IgG isolated from the HIV-1 infected individuals included in the study. IgG was isolated from plasma using the Melon Gel IgG Purification kit according to the manufacturer's instructions (Thermo Scientific) and quantitated using the Bicinchoninic acid (BCA) assay. HIV immune globulin (HIVIG; NIH AIDS reagent program) was used as a positive control.

ADCC

NK cells and $CD8^+$ T cells both utilize the pore forming perforin and serine protease granzyme B during cytotoxic responses. It is therefore possible to evaluate ADCC responses of both NK cells and $CD8^+$ T cells with the HIV-specific GranToxiLux assay (15). In brief, CEM.NK^R.CCR5 cells were coated with recombinant HIV-1 ConC gp120, followed by opsonisation with HIV-1-specific antibodies and incubation for 45 min in the presence of NK cells or $CD8^+$ T cells at an effector-to-target (E:T) ratio of 10:1. The optimal concentration of isolated IgG (30 μg/ml) was determined empirically. Samples were acquired on BD Fortessa X20 flow cytometer and data analyzed on FlowJo version 9.8.1 software (Tree Star, San Carlos, CA). Granzyme B activity in the absence of any antibody (background killing) was determined for each subject—NK cells and $CD8^+$ T cells—and subtracted from granzyme B activity in the presence of antibody. The inter assay coefficient of variation, as calculated from a HIVIG-specific ADCC response measured for a single donor included in every run, was <10%.

To assess $CD8^+$ T cell mediated granzyme B responses, HIV-1 positive donors with <5% NK cell contamination in their enriched $CD8^+$ T cell fractions were identified and selected for further analysis. This proportion of NK cells equates to a <0.5:1 NK-to-target ratio in a 10:1 CD8-to-target preparation. In our experience, the NK cell-mediated granzyme B activity at 0.5:1 is on average 14.1% (standard deviation [SD]: 2.8%) of that observed for NK cells at a ratio of 10:1 (**Figure 1**). Using these data, a positivity threshold for $CD8^+$ T cell-mediated granzyme B responses was calculated relative to autologous NK cell-mediated granzyme B responses whereby the mean granzyme B activity for autologous NK cells (E:T = 10:1) was multiplied with 22.4% (14.1% + 3 × SD:2.8%).



	Granzyme B activity		
	1:10	0.5:1	0.5:1 / 1:10
Donor 1	66%	9%	0.136
Donor 2	62%	8%	0.129
Donor 3	30%	5%	0.167
Donor 4	65%	6%	0.092
Donor 5	52%	9%	0.173
Donor 6	54%	9%	0.167
Donor 7	63%	9%	0.143
Donor 8	25%	3%	0.120
		Mean	0.141
		Mean + 3*STD	**0.224**

FIGURE 1 | NK cell-mediated ADCC responses at different effector-to-target (E:T) cell ratios. NK cells isolated from eight HIV-1 negative donors were tested at different E:T ratios in an HIV-specific GranToxiLux assay using an ADCC-mediating monoclonal antibody (A32) at 2.5 μg/ml. The mean fraction of Granzyme B activity observed at an E:T of 0.5:1 relative to 10:1 was used to calculate a 99% confidence level cut-off value for NK cell-mediated ADCC responses at an E:T of 0.5:1. Data points represent the mean of triplicate measures and the standard deviation indicated by error bars.

Statistics

All statistical analyses were performed using GraphPad Prism 7 software version 7.04 (GraphPad Software). *P*-values from 2-tailed tests <0.05 were considered statistically significant. The significance of differences between unpaired data sets were analyzed with the Mann-Whitney U tests and paired data sets with the Wilcoxon matched-pairs signed rank test. The significance of differences between more than two data sets were analyzed using Kruskal-Wallis tests. Correlation analyses of data between two groups were assessed using the non-parametric Spearman rank correlation coefficient. To determine the role of FcγRIIIa-F158V alleles in ADCC responses, the V allele was studied under a dominant model due to the low prevalence of VV homozygotes (29).

RESULTS

Study Population

Thirty-seven chronic HIV-1 infected, viraemic, and antiretroviral naïve individuals with sufficient sample available were identified from an existing cohort of HIV-1 positive individuals (**Figure 2**). Following *FCGR* genotyping, seven individuals were excluded due to the possession of an *FCGR3A* gene duplication ($n = 1$), *FCGR3A* gene deletion ($n = 2$), or CNR1 deletion that results in the expression of the inhibitory FcγRIIb on NK cells ($n = 4$). To ensure that individuals carrying an undetectable CNR1 deletion—possess a duplication of this region on a single chromosome and a deletion on the other—were also excluded, expression of FcγRIIb on NK cells was monitored using flow cytometry. During the eligibility screening of individuals, such an individual was indeed identified and excluded from the study; thus, five HIV-1 positive individuals in total expressed FcγRIIb on their NK cells and were excluded.

Within the HIV-1 positive group, FcγRIIIa-158FF donors were paired with FcγRIIIa-158FV donors according to their HIV-1 RNA plasma viral load. Twenty-three HIV-1 positive individuals were eligible for further analysis, with the FcγRIIIa-F158V genotype distribution closely resembling that observed in the general black population from the same region in South Africa (29). As a comparative group, thirty-three HIV-1 negative individuals were genotyped for *FCGR* variants. Six individuals were excluded due to the possession of an *FCGR3A* duplication ($n = 1$) or CNR1 deletion ($n = 5$). Twenty-three eligible HIV-1 negative individuals were subsequently paired with HIV-1 positive individuals based on the FcγRIIIa-F158V genotype. None of the study participants expressed the activating FcγRIIc on their NK cells, as determined by the *FCGR2C* c.798+1A>G splice-site variant, or carried the *FCGR3A* intragenic haplotype previously associated with increased FcγRIIIa surface density (26, 30).

Age and gender did not differ significantly between HIV-1 negative and positive donors (**Table 1**). Two HIV-1 positive individuals had tuberculosis, of which one was an FcγRIIIa-158FF donor and the other an FcγRIIIa-158FV donor. No other infections were noted for these patients. Human cytomegalovirus (HCMV) infection status was not determined for study participants. However, the prevalence is likely 100% for the HIV-1 positive individuals and >85% for HIV-1 negative individuals as observed in other cohorts in rural and urban South Africa [(31) and Tiemessen, unpublished data]. Other sexually transmitted infections were not tested for in the study cohort.

FcγRIIIa Expression on NK Cell Subsets

NK cell subsets were defined based on the relative surface expression of CD56 and FcγRIIIa. Four subsets were identified that include $CD56^{bright}FcγRIIIa^{dim/neg}$, $CD56^{dim}FcγRIIIa^{bright}$, $CD56^{neg}FcγRIIIa^{bright}$, and $CD56^{dim}FcγRIIIa^{dim/neg}$ (**Figure 3A**). The distribution of these subsets within the NK cell population differed significantly between HIV-1 positive and HIV-1 negative donors. Compared to the HIV-1 negative group, the HIV-1 positive group had a smaller median proportion of $CD56^{dim}FcγRIIIa^{bright}$ cells (60.2 vs. 77.0%, $P = 0.0002$, **Figure 3B**) that was offset by a larger median

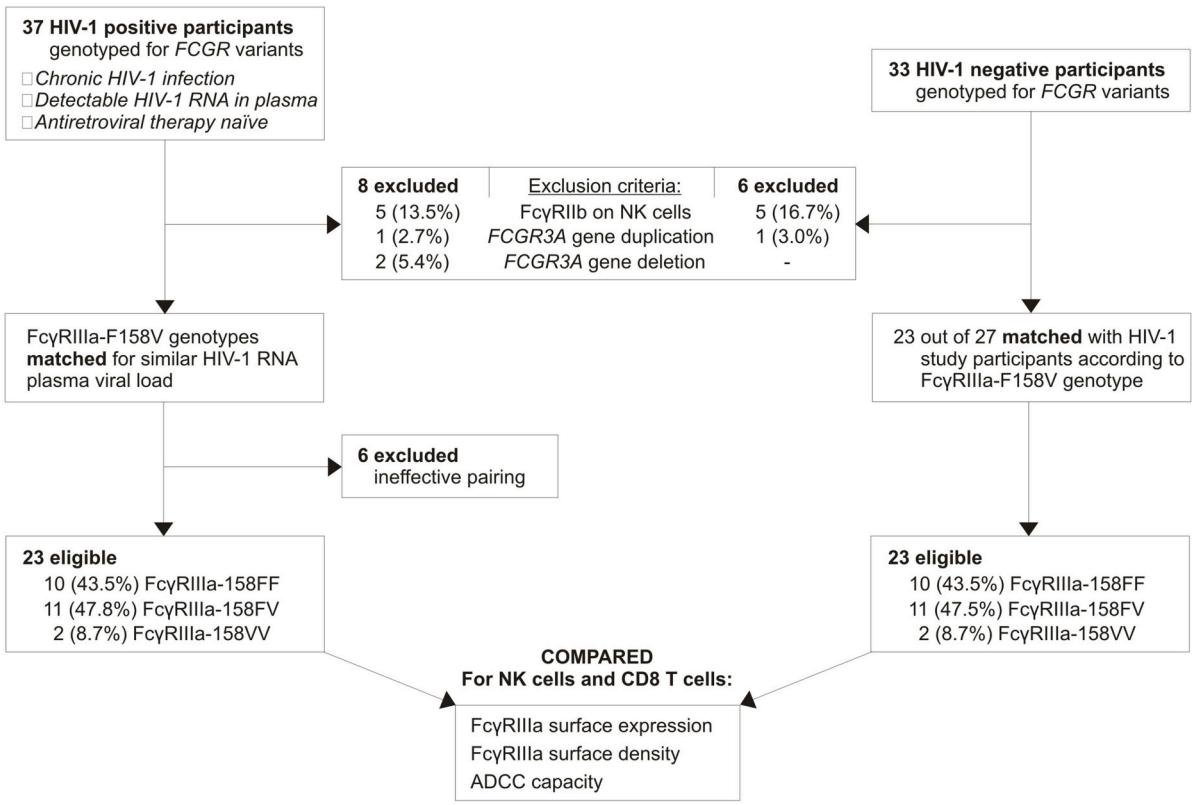


FIGURE 2 | Study participant selection.

proportion of $CD56^{neg}Fc\gamma RIIIa^{bright}$ cells (14.9 vs. 2.1%, $P < 0.0001$, **Figure 3B**). The inverse relationship between the NK cell subsets in HIV-1 positive individuals, but not HIV-1 negative individuals, was further observed in a correlation analysis ($R = -0.633$, $P = 0.001$, **Figure 3F**). The relative proportions of $CD56^{bright}Fc\gamma RIIIa^{dim/neg}$ and $CD56^{dim}Fc\gamma RIIIa^{dim/neg}$ did not differ significantly between HIV-1 positive and HIV-1 negative donors. In contrast to the observed differences in NK cell subsets, FcγRIIIa surface density on neither cytotoxic $CD56^{dim}Fc\gamma RIIIa^{bright}$ nor $CD56^{neg}Fc\gamma RIIIa^{bright}$ NK cells differed between the two groups ($P = 0.948$ and $P = 0.486$, respectively; **Figure 3C**).

NK Cell-Mediated ADCC Responses

The capacity of $CD56^{+}$ NK cells to mediate ADCC was tested in an HIV-1-specific granzyme B assay in the presence of pooled IgG isolated from HIV-1-infected South Africans. ADCC responses, measured as granzyme B activity in target cells, were reduced in the HIV-1 positive group compared to the HIV-1 negative group, although not statistically significantly different (31.0 vs. 43.3%, $P = 0.184$, **Figure 3D**). In both groups, the ADCC responses were affected by the FcγRIIIa-F158V variant (**Figure 3E**). Healthy donors bearing at least one V allele had a higher median NK cell-mediated granzyme B activity compared to those homozygous for the F allele (48.1 vs. 34.1%, $P = 0.284$). This trend was, however, not observed in the HIV-1 positive group. In contrast, HIV-1 positive donors bearing at least one V allele had reduced granzyme B activity compared to those homozygous for the F allele (26.4 vs. 34.6%, $P = 0.522$).

ADCC responses of both HIV-1 negative and HIV-1 positive donors negatively correlated with the proportion of immunoregulatory $CD56^{bright}Fc\gamma RIIIa^{dim/neg}$ cells ($R = -0.486$, $P = 0.019$; and $R = -0.454$, $P = 0.030$, respectively; **Figure 3F**). Furthermore, ADCC responses of HIV-1 negative donors, but not HIV-1 positive donors, positively correlated with the proportion of $CD56^{dim}Fc\gamma RIIIa^{bright}$ cells ($R = 0.665$, $P = 0.0005$; and $R = 0.233$, $P = 0.284$, respectively; **Figure 3F**). FcγRIIIa expression levels on the cytotoxic $CD56^{dim}Fc\gamma RIIIa^{bright}$ cell subset did not correlate with ADCC responses in either HIV-1 negative or HIV-1 positive group.

Expression of FcγRIIIa on $CD8^{+}$ T Cells

During the course of characterizing FcγRIIIa expression on peripheral leukocytes in whole blood obtained from a preliminary cohort of HIV-1 negative and HIV-1 positive donors, we observed a $CD8^{bright}$ T cell subset expressing FcγRIIIa in both groups (**Figure 4**). The proportion of $Fc\gamma RIIIa^{+}CD8^{bright}$ T cells within the $CD8^{bright}$ T cell population varied extensively, ranging from 4.4 to 45.9%, with the median proportion significantly higher in the HIV-1 infected group compared to the healthy control group (17.8 vs. 9.8%, $P = 0.002$; **Figure 4**).

In the present validation study, two $CD8^{+}$ T cell subsets are identified, designated $CD8^{bright}$ and $CD8^{dim}$ (also referred to as

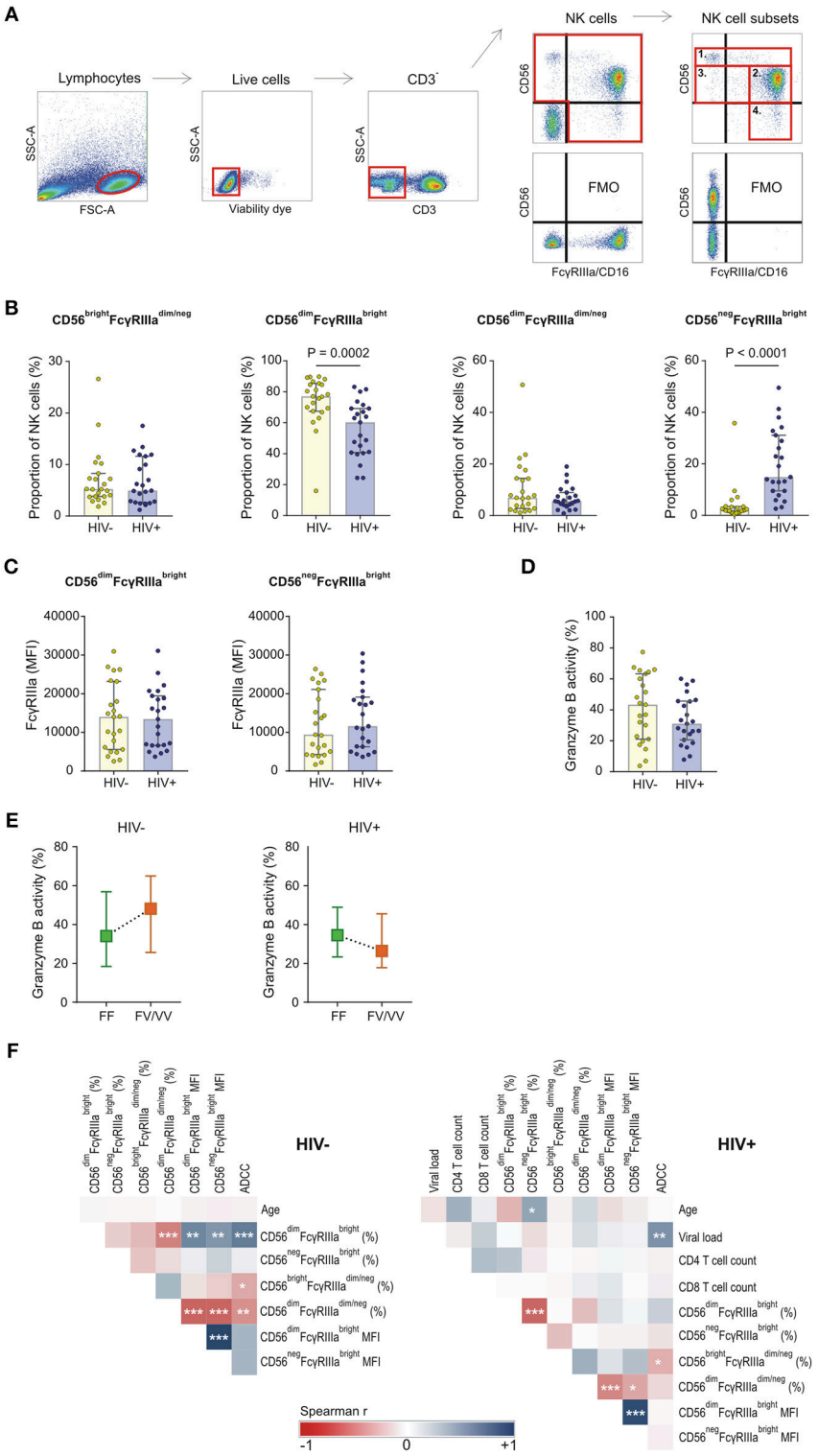


FIGURE 3 | FcγRIIIa expression on NK cell subsets in HIV-1 uninfected and HIV-1 infected individuals matched for *FCGR* genetic variants. **(A)** Gating strategy for defining four NK cell subsets: 1. CD56^{bright}FcγRIIIa$^{dim/neg}$, 2. CD56^{dim}FcγRIIIa^{bright}, 3. CD56^{dim}FcγRIIIa$^{dim/neg}$, and 4. CD56^{neg}FcγRIIIa^{bright}; **(B)** Comparison of NK cell subsets between HIV-1 uninfected and infected individuals; **(C)** FcγRIIIa surface density on FcγRIIIa^{bright} NK cell subsets; **(D)** ADCC activity of NK cells at a target-to-effector cell ratio of 10:1 with isolated IgG pooled from HIV-1 study participants; **(E)** Median ADCC responses for individuals homozygous for the FcγRIIIa-158F allele and individuals bearing at least one FcγRIIIa-158V allele; **(F)** Correlation analysis between demographic, clinical, phenotypic and functional variables in HIV-1 uninfected and HIV-1 infected individuals (***$P < 0.001$; **$P < 0.01$; *$P < 0.05$).

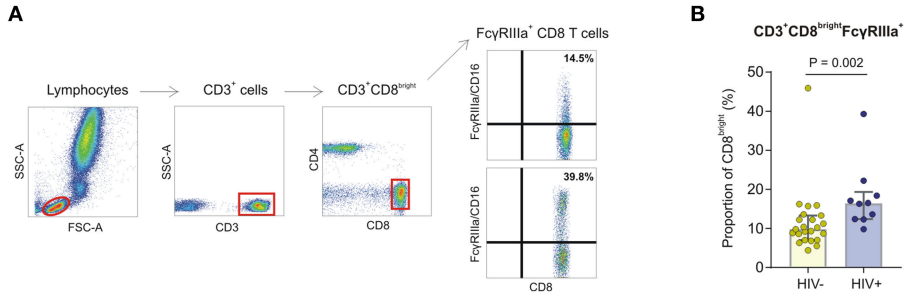


FIGURE 4 | FcγRIIIa expression on CD8 T cells in whole blood obtained from HIV-1 negative and HIV-1 positive donors. **(A)** Gating strategy showing two representative individuals with low and high proportions of FcγRIIIa^{+}CD8^{bright} T cell subsets. **(B)** Frequencies of FcγRIIIa^{+}CD8^{bright} T cells in whole blood isolated from HIV-negative healthy controls ($n = 23$) and HIV-infected individuals ($n = 10$).

CD8^{high} and CD8^{low}), according to the relative expression of CD8 on CD3^{+} T cells (**Figure 5**). The CD8^{dim} subset accounted for 13.9 and 13.4% of the total CD8^{+} T cell population in HIV-1 negative and HIV-1 positive donors, respectively ($P = 0.978$). In agreement with our observations in whole blood, 2–44.8% of CD8^{bright} cells and 2–68.4% of CD8^{dim} cells expressed FcγRIIIa. Compared to its FcγRIIIa^{+}CD8^{bright} counterpart, the FcγRIIIa^{+}CD8^{dim} subset expressed significantly higher levels of FcγRIIIa in both the HIV-1 positive and negative group (471 vs. 1610, $P < 0.001$; and 377 vs. 740, $P < 0.001$, respectively; data not shown).

Compared to the HIV-1 negative group, the HIV-1 positive group had a significantly higher median proportion of FcγRIIIa^{+}CD8^{bright} and FcγRIIIa^{+}CD8^{dim} T cell subsets (15.7 vs. 8.3%; $P = 0.016$ and 18.2 vs. 14.1%; $P = 0.038$, respectively) and correspondingly higher median FcγRIIIa surface densities on both FcγRIIIa^{+}CD8^{+} T cell subsets (471 vs. 377, $P = 0.031$; and 1,610 vs. 740, $P = 0.021$, respectively) (**Figure 5B**). The proportion of FcγRIIIa^{+}CD8^{bright} and FcγRIIIa^{+}CD8^{dim} cells positively correlated in the HIV-1 negative group ($R = 0.671$, $P = 0.001$; **Figure 5C**). However, this relationship was not observed for the HIV-1 positive group. In the latter group, neither the presence nor levels of FcγRIIIa correlated with CD4^{+} T cell count or HIV-1 plasma viral load (**Figure 5C**). However, the proportion of FcγRIIIa on CD8^{bright} T cells negatively correlated with age in both groups, although this correlation was only statistically significant for the HIV-1 positive group ($R = -0.510$, $P = 0.013$; **Figure 5C**).

CD8^{+} T Cells Mediate ADCC

To assess CD8^{+} T cell-mediated ADCC responses, CD8^{+} T cells were positively selected from PBMCs after depletion of NK cells. The proportion of potential contaminating NK cells was determined using flow cytometry and six HIV-1 positive donors were identified with <5% NK cells in their enriched CD8^{+} T cell fractions (mean: 1.3%; range: 0.3–2.9%). A threshold for positive CD8^{+} T cell-mediated granzyme B responses (5.6%) was calculated based on the corresponding NK cell granzyme B responses at an NK-to-target ratio of 10:1 (described in section Materials and Methods). Five out of six donors had positive CD8^{+} T cell-mediated granzyme B responses that ranged from 7.5 to 25.6% (mean: 14.5%; **Figure 5E**). Overall, the CD8^{+} T cell-mediated granzyme B activity was comparatively lower than that observed for their NK cell counterparts ($P = 0.031$).

DISCUSSION

This study set out to comprehensively characterize FcγRIIIa variability and its effect on ADCC responses in HIV-1 positive and HIV-1 negative South African individuals, the population that bears the largest HIV-1 epidemic. Accurate assessment of FcγRIIIa variability requires careful selection of study participants to exclude confounding genetic variables that modify FcγRIIIa expression and FcγRIIIa-mediated cell activation. Study participants within the comparative groups were further matched for the FcγRIIIa-F158V variant that not only alters ADCC responses, but also affects measurements of FcγRIIIa surface expression with the most commonly used anti-FcγRIIIa antibody, clone 3G8 (32).

In comparing a cohort of Black South African HIV-1 negative and HIV-1 positive donors matched for genotypic variants, we confirmed previously described significant differences in the distribution of NK cell subsets, while differences in FcγRIIIa surface density on cytotoxic NK cells were not observed. NK cell-mediated ADCC responses of HIV-1 positive donors were both reduced and differentially affected by the FcγRIIIa-F158V variant compared to HIV-1 negative donors. In addition, FcγRIIIa expression was identified on a subset of cytotoxic CD8 T cells where it potentially contributes to HIV-1-specific ADCC responses in a granzyme B-dependent manner.

In healthy individuals, NK cells typically comprise a dominant CD56^{dim}FcγRIIIa^{bright} population and minor populations that include CD56^{bright}FcγRIIIa$^{dim/neg}$, CD56^{dim}FcγRIII$^{dim/neg}$ and CD56^{neg}FcγRIIIa^{bright}. Perturbation of NK cell subsets in the presence of an HIV-1 infection has been extensively described (16, 17, 33). In HIV-1 infected individuals, the cytotoxic CD56^{dim}FcγRIIIa^{bright} subset contracts with an associated expansion of the CD56^{neg}FcγRIIIa^{bright} subset. The latter is characterized by higher levels of inhibitory NK cell receptors, lower levels of natural cytotoxicity receptors, and reduced secretion of cytokines compared to the CD56^{dim}FcγRIIIa^{bright}

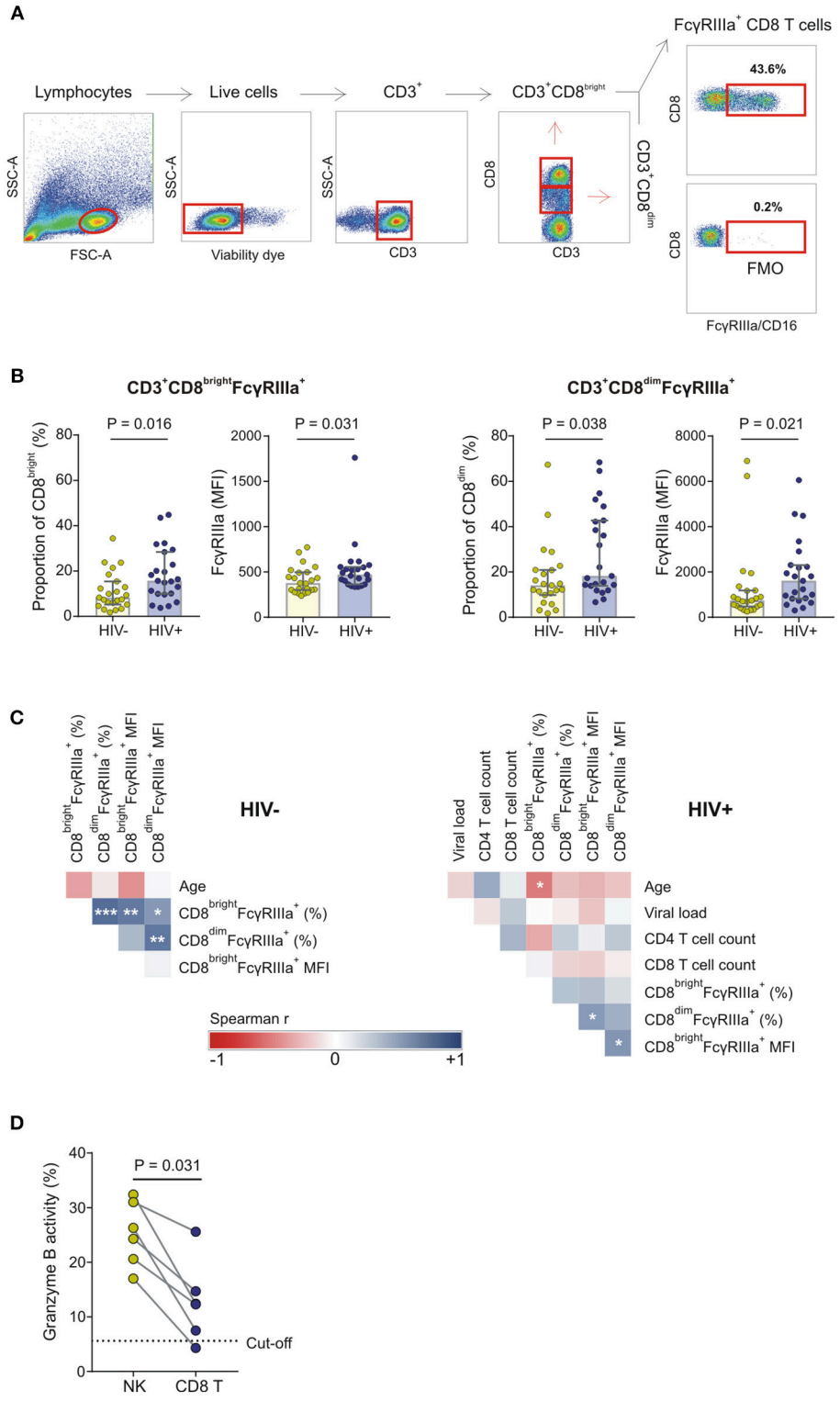


FIGURE 5 | FcγRIIIa expression on CD8 T cells in HIV-1 uninfected and HIV-1 infected individuals matched for *FCGR* genetic variants. **(A)** Gating strategy; **(B)** The proportion of FcγRIIIa^{+}CD8^{bright} and FcγRIIIa^{+}CD8^{dim} T cells and corresponding median fluorescence intensity (MFI) of FcγRIIIa on these FcγRIIIa^{+}CD8^{+} T cell subsets in a cohort of HIV-1 uninfected and infected individuals; **(C)** Correlation analysis between demographic, clinical, phenotypic, and functional variables in HIV-1 uninfected and HIV-1 infected individuals; **(D)** CD8^{+} T cell-mediated ADCC responses of HIV-1 positive donors relative to autologous NK cell-mediated ADCC responses at the same effector-to-target cell ratio (***$P < 0.001$; **$P < 0.01$; *$P < 0.05$).

subset (16, 17). This hyporesponsive NK cell subset was similarly increased in the South African HIV-1 positive cohort; however, it did not associate with HIV-1 viral load as observed by Mavilio et al. (16, 34). The lack of an association with HIV-1 viral load may be explained by an ∼5- to 6-fold lower median HIV-1 plasma viral load of the South African cohort compared to the other cohorts. Moreover, in the present study, NK cell subsets were studied for overnight rested PBMCs as opposed to freshly isolated negatively-selected NK cells.

The dysregulation of NK cell subsets is typically associated with reduced ADCC responses in HIV-1 infected individuals (16, 17, 35, 36). In the present study, lower ADCC responses were similarly observed for HIV-1 infected individuals. Since ADCC capacity was studied for $CD56^+$ NK cells it precluded an analysis of the association between the $CD56^{neg}Fc\gamma RIIIa^{bright}$ subset and ADCC responses, but not for the $CD56^{dim}Fc\gamma RIIIa^{bright}$ and $CD56^{bright}Fc\gamma RIIIa^{dim/neg}$ subsets. A negative correlation observed between the $CD56^{bright}Fc\gamma RIIIa^{dim/neg}$ subset and ADCC responses for both HIV-1 negative and positive donors would suggest that ADCC capacity is similarly affected by the immunoregulatory $CD56^{bright}Fc\gamma RIIIa^{dim/neg}$ subset in both groups. However, as demonstrated by a positive correlation between the cytotoxic $CD56^{dim}Fc\gamma RIIIa^{bright}$ subset and ADCC responses for HIV-1 negative donors, but not HIV-1 positive donors, not all factors modulating ADCC capacity may be shared between healthy individuals and HIV-1 infected individuals.

Given the association of ADCC-mediating antibody responses with HIV-1 protective immunity, it could be hypothesized that genetic determinants of NK cell-mediated ADCC capacity, in particular the FcγRIIIa-F158V variant, may associate with HIV-1 acquisition risk or disease progression. The FcγRIIIa-158V isoform has greater avidity for complexes comprising IgG1, IgG3, and IgG4 than the FcγRIIIa-158F isoform and confers increased NK cell activation and ADCC responses in healthy individuals (21–23). Despite its potential contribution to ADCC responses, the FcγRIIIa-158V isoform is yet to be positively associated with HIV-1 acquisition and disease progression. On the contrary, the FcγRIIIa-158V isoform has been associated with an increased risk of HIV-1 infection (37), disease progression (37), and HIV-1-associated Kaposi's sarcoma (KS) and Cryptococcal disease (38, 39). Furthermore, homozygosity for the FcγRIIIa-158V allele associated with a higher rate of HIV-1 infection among vaccinated men in the VAX004 trial (40), while homozygosity for the FcγRIIIa-158F allele associated with greater protection from HIV-1 disease progression in male participants in the RV144 vaccine trial (41). Taken together, these findings are more indicative of FcγRIIIa-158V-mediated antibody-dependent enhancement of infection rather than improved ADCC responses to the benefit of the individual. Alternatively, it is possible that the functional consequence of the FcγRIIIa-F158V isoforms may be different in the presence of an HIV-1 infection and that a different mechanism(s) may underlie the aforementioned associations.

FcγRIIa/FcγRIIIb polymorphic variants, for example, show distinct differences in oxidative burst responses of resting neutrophils; however, once neutrophils were pre-activated with IFNγ and G-CSF these differences were no longer observed (42). Other non-FcγR genetic variants have also been shown to differentially affect gene expression or cytokine production of activated and resting immune cells (43). In the present study, we show a similar trend for the FcγRIIIa-F158V variant, higher ADCC responses for HIV-1 negative donors bearing the FcγRIIIa-158V allele compared to those homozygous for the FcγRIIIa-158F allele, whereas in HIV-1 positive donors this trend was lost or even slightly reversed. The effect of the variant on ADCC responses was, however, not significant in either group. It is possible that the independent effect size of the FcγRIIIa-F158V variant is too small to detect with the current sample size. Larger cohort studies that adjust for other NK cell activation and inhibitory receptors are required to further define the role of this variant in HIV-1 infection. Nonetheless, these findings may partially explain the inconclusive role of FcγRIIIa genetic variants in HIV-1-specific immunity [reviewed by Cocklin and Schmitz (44)].

In addition to modulating the function of an allelic variant, infection can lead to the induction of FcγRIIIa on other cytotoxic cells, including $CD8^+$ T cells. An $Fc\gamma RIIIa^+CD8^+$ T cell population was first described in the 1980's and has since been characterized in the context of hepatitis C virus and Epstein Barr virus infections (18, 19, 45). These terminally differentiated $CD8^+$ T cells belong to the T effector memory $CD45RA^+$ lymphocyte subset, are perforin positive, directly mediate ADCC *ex vivo*, and increase *in vivo* during hyperlymphocytosis (18, 19). In addition to FcγRIIIa, this cell subset also has increased expression of other NK-like receptors including NKG2A, NKG2D, KIR2DL2/L3 and KIR2DL1/S1 when compared to $Fc\gamma RIIIa^-CD8^+$ T cells (46). The present study validates the expression of FcγRIIIa on cytotoxic $CD8^+$ T lymphocytes and is in agreement with other studies that have consistently showed an increase in the proportion of $Fc\gamma RIIIa^+CD8^+$ T cells in the presence of a virus infection (18, 19, 46). Compared to $CD8^{bright}$ cells, the surface density of FcγRIIIa was significantly higher on $CD8^{dim}$ cells, a subset characterized by higher activation levels, increased cytotoxicity and increased cytokine production (47–49). The higher proportions of $Fc\gamma RIIIa^+CD8^+$ T cells in HIV-1-infected individuals suggests that HIV-1 in its own right is a driver of these cell expansions, whereas increasing age associated with reduced proportions of FcγRIIIa-expressing $CD8^+$ T cells. The increase in FcγRIIIa expression on $CD8^+$ T cells in HIV infection contrasts with decreased proportions of FcγRIIIa expressing NK cells. This suggests the development of an ADCC capacity by $CD8^+$ T cells that could compensate to some extent for the reduction in NK cell ADCC function.

Attributing the otherwise innate cell function of ADCC to $CD8^+$ T cells—mediated through expression of FcγRIIIa and engagement of HIV-1-specific antibodies—is reminiscent of other known examples of innate-like unconventional T cell populations. Among these are invariant NKT cells, mucosal-associated invariant T cells, and γδT cells, that recognize foreign/self-lipid presented by non-classical MHC molecules (50, 51). Another interesting unconventional $CD8^+$ T cell subset is one with a prominent innate/memory phenotype identified by co-expression of eomesodermin (Eomes) and KIR/NKG2A

(52). The current study highlights the addition of another unconventional $CD8^+$ T cell population, capable of ADCC function, that warrants further investigation.

In conclusion, our findings underscore the importance of expanding studies of HIV-specific antibodies to include the influence of different host cell types that share expression of FcγRs (constitutive or induced), the respective functional cellular capabilities, as well as host genotypes, in the context of the presiding immune milieu which is altered as a consequence of chronic HIV infection. Continuing investigations are warranted to further define effector functions, cytokine production and activation status of these different $FcγRIIIa^+$ NK and CD8 T cell subsets in similarly selected individuals.

AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

NP recruited HIV-1 negative donors, performed the majority of the experiments, analyzed the data and wrote the manuscript. RL designed the study, contributed to the data analysis, and writing of the manuscript. BD contributed to the flow cytometry experiments. ZW and NM recruited HIV-1 positive donors, CT in her capacity as head of the laboratory, allocated funds toward the study, supervised the research, and provided the necessary infrastructure to perform the work.

FUNDING

This work is based on the research supported by the Poliomyelitis Research Foundation and the South African Research Chairs Initiative of the Department of Science and Technology and National Research Foundation of South Africa, and the Strategic Health Innovation Partnerships (SHIP) Unit of the South African Medical Research Council (a grantee of the Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation). NP is the recipient of bursaries from the South African National Research Foundation, the Poliomyelitis Research Foundation and a University of the Witwatersrand postgraduate merit award.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The following reagent was obtained through the NIH AIDS Reagent Program, Division of AIDS, NIAID, NIH: Catalog #3957, HIV-IG from NABI and NHLBI. The anti-FcγRIIb/c clone 2B6 was a gift from MacroGenics.

REFERENCES

1. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Fcgamma receptors as regulators of immune responses. *Nat Rev Immunol.* (2008) 8:34–47. doi: 10.1038/nri2206
2. Bournazos S, Ravetch JV. Fcγ receptor function and the design of vaccination strategies. *Immunity.* (2017) 47:224–33. doi: 10.1016/j.immuni.2017.07.009
3. Rosales C. Fcγ receptor heterogeneity in leukocyte functional responses. *Front Immunol.* (2017) 8:280. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2017.00280
4. Ravetch JV, Bolland S. IgG Fc receptors. *Annu Rev Immunol.* (2001) 19:275–90. doi: 10.1146/annurev.immunol.19.1.275
5. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Divergent immunoglobulin g subclass activity through selective Fc receptor binding. *Science.* (2005) 310:1510–2. doi: 10.1126/science.1118948
6. Ackerman ME, Dugast A-S, Alter G. Emerging concepts on the role of innate immunity in the prevention and control of HIV infection. *Annu Rev Med.* (2012) 63:113–30. doi: 10.1146/annurev-med-050310-085221
7. Wren LH, Chung AW, Isitman G, Kelleher AD, Parsons MS, Amin J, et al. Specific antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity responses associated with slow progression of HIV infection. *Immunology.* (2013) 138:116–23. doi: 10.1111/imm.12016
8. Lewis GK. Role of Fc-mediated antibody function in protective immunity against HIV-1. *Immunology.* (2014) 142:46–57. doi: 10.1111/imm.12232
9. Milligan C, Richardson BA, John-Stewart G, Nduati R, Overbaugh J. Passively acquired antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) activity in HIV-infected infants is associated with reduced mortality. *Cell Host Microbe.* (2015) 17:500–6. doi: 10.1016/j.chom.2015.03.002
10. Ahmad R, Sindhu ST, Toma E, Morisset R, Vincelette J, Menezes J, et al. Evidence for a correlation between antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity-mediating anti-HIV-1 antibodies and prognostic predictors of HIV infection. *J Clin Immunol.* (2001) 21:227–33. doi: 10.1023/A:1011087132180
11. Banks ND, Kinsey N, Clements J, Hildreth JE. Sustained antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) in SIV-infected macaques correlates with delayed progression to AIDS. *AIDS Res Hum Retrovirus.* (2002) 18:1197–205. doi: 10.1089/08892220260387940
12. Gomez-Roman VR, Patterson LJ, Venzon D, Liewehr D, Aldrich K, Florese R, et al. Vaccine-elicited antibodies mediate antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity correlated with significantly reduced acute viremia in rhesus macaques challenged with SIVmac251. *J Immunol.* (2005) 174:2185–9. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.174.4.2185
13. Hessell AJ, Hangartner L, Hunter M, Havenith CE, Beurskens FJ, Bakker JM, et al. Fc receptor but not complement binding is important in antibody protection against HIV. *Nature.* (2007) 449:101–4. doi: 10.1038/nature06106
14. Lambotte O, Ferrari G, Moog C, Yates NL, Liao HX, Parks RJ, et al. Heterogeneous neutralizing antibody and antibody-dependent cell cytotoxicity responses in HIV-1 elite controllers. *AIDS.* (2009) 23:897–906. doi: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e328329f97d
15. Pollara J, Hart L, Brewer F, Pickeral J, Packard BZ, Hoxie JA, et al. High-throughput quantitative analysis of HIV-1 and SIV-specific ADCC-mediating antibody responses. *Cytometry A.* (2011) 79:603–12. doi: 10.1002/cyto.a.21084
16. Mavilio D, Lombardo G, Benjamin J, Kim D, Follman D, Marcenaro E, et al. Characterization of CD56-/CD16+ natural killer (NK) cells: a highly dysfunctional NK subset expanded in HIV-infected viremic individuals. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (2005) 102:2886–91. doi: 10.1073/pnas.0409872102
17. Brunetta E, Hudspeth KL, Mavilio D. Pathologic natural killer cell subset redistribution in HIV-1 infection: new insights in pathophysiology and clinical outcomes. *J Leukoc Biol.* (2010) 88:1119–30. doi: 10.1189/jlb.0410225
18. Bjorkstrom NK, Gonzalez VD, Malmberg KJ, Falconer K, Alaeus A, Nowak G, et al. Elevated numbers of Fc gamma RIIIA+ (CD16+) effector CD8 T cells with NK cell-like function in chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *J Immunol.* (2008) 181:4219–28. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.181.6.4219
19. Clemenceau B, Vivien R, Berthome M, Robillard N, Garand R, Gallot G, et al. Effector memory alphabeta T lymphocytes can express FcgammaRIIIa and mediate antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity. *J Immunol.* (2008) 180:5327–34. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.180.8.5327
20. Breunis WB, van Mirre E, Geissler J, Laddach N, Wolbink G, van der Schoot E, et al. Copy number variation at the FCGR locus includes FCGR3A, FCGR2C and FCGR3B but not FCGR2A and FCGR2B. *Hum Mutat.* (2009) 30:E640–650. doi: 10.1002/humu.20997
21. Koene HR, Kleijer M, Algra J, Roos D, von dem Borne AE, de Haas M. Fc gammaRIIIa-158V/F polymorphism influences the binding of IgG by natural killer cell Fc gammaRIIIa, independently of the Fc gammaRIIIa-48L/R/H phenotype. *Blood.* (1997) 90:1109–14.
22. Wu J, Edberg JC, Redecha PB, Bansal V, Guyre PM, Coleman K, et al. A novel polymorphism of FcgammaRIIIa (CD16) alters receptor function

and predisposes to autoimmune disease. *J Clin Invest.* (1997) 100:1059–70. doi: 10.1172/JCI119616
23. Bruhns P, Iannascoli B, England P, Mancardi DA, Fernandez N, Jorieux S, et al. Specificity and affinity of human Fcgamma receptors and their polymorphic variants for human IgG subclasses. *Blood.* (2009) 113:3716–25. doi: 10.1182/blood-2008-09-179754
24. Niederer HA, Willcocks LC, Rayner TF, Yang W, Lau YL, Williams TN, et al. Copy number, linkage disequilibrium and disease association in the FCGR locus. *Hum Mol Genet.* (2010) 19:3282–94. doi: 10.1093/hmg/ddq216
25. Mueller M, Barros P, Witherden AS, Roberts AL, Zhang Z, Schaschl H, et al. Genomic pathology of SLE-associated copy-number variation at the FCGR2C/FCGR3B/FCGR2B locus. *Am J Hum Genet.* (2013) 92:28–40. doi: 10.1016/j.ajhg.2012.11.013
26. van der Heijden J, Breunis WB, Geissler J, de Boer M, van den Berg TK, Kuijpers TW. Phenotypic variation in IgG receptors by nonclassical FCGR2C alleles. *J Immunol.* (2012) 188:1318–24. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1003945
27. Schouten JP, McElgunn CJ, Waaijer R, Zwijnenburg D, Diepvens F, Pals G. Relative quantification of 40 nucleic acid sequences by multiplex ligation-dependent probe amplification. *Nucleic Acids Res.* (2002) 30:e57. doi: 10.1093/nar/gnf056
28. Breunis WB, van Mirre E, Bruin M, Geissler J, de Boer M, Peters M, et al. Copy number variation of the activating FCGR2C gene predisposes to idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura. *Blood.* (2008) 111:1029–38. doi: 10.1182/blood-2007-03-079913
29. Lassaunière R, Tiemessen CT. Variability at the FCGR locus: characterization in Black South Africans and evidence for ethnic variation in and out of Africa. *Genes Immun.* (2015) 17:93. doi: 10.1038/gene.2015.60
30. Lassauniere R, Shalekoff S, Tiemessen CT. A novel FCGR3A intragenic haplotype is associated with increased FcgammaRIIIa/CD16a cell surface density and population differences. *Hum Immunol.* (2013) 74:627–34. doi: 10.1016/j.humimm.2013.01.020
31. Schaftenaar E, Verjans GM, Getu S, McIntyre JA, Struthers HE, Osterhaus AD, et al. High seroprevalence of human herpesviruses in HIV-infected individuals attending primary healthcare facilities in rural South Africa. *PLoS ONE.* (2014) 9:e99243. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0099243
32. Congy-Jolivet N, Bolzec A, Ternant D, Ohresser M, Watier H, Thibault G. Fc gamma RIIIa expression is not increased on natural killer cells expressing the Fc gamma RIIIa-158V allotype. *Cancer Res.* (2008) 68:976–80. doi: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-07-6523
33. Fauci AS, Mavilio D, Kottilil S. NK cells in HIV infection: paradigm for protection or targets for ambush. *Nat Rev Immunol.* (2005) 5:835–43. doi: 10.1038/nri1711
34. Mavilio D, Benjamin J, Daucher M, Lombardo G, Kottilil S, Planta MA, et al. Natural killer cells in HIV-1 infection: dichotomous effects of viremia on inhibitory and activating receptors and their functional correlates. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (2003) 100:15011–6. doi: 10.1073/pnas.2336091100
35. Ahmad A, Menezes J. Defective killing activity against gp120/41-expressing human erythroleukaemic K562 cell line by monocytes and natural killer cells from HIV-infected individuals. *AIDS.* (1996) 10:143–9. doi: 10.1097/00002030-199602000-00003
36. Scott-Algara D, Paul P. NK cells and HIV infection: lessons from other viruses. *Curr Mol Med.* (2002) 2:757–68. doi: 10.2174/1566524023361781
37. Poonia B, Kijak GH, Pauza CD. High affinity allele for the gene of FCGR3A is risk factor for HIV infection and progression. *PLoS ONE.* (2010) 5:e15562. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0015562
38. Rohatgi S, Gohil S, Kuniholm MH, Schultz H, Dufaud C, Armour KL, et al. Fc Gamma receptor 3A polymorphism and risk for HIV-associated cryptococcal disease. *mBio.* (2013) 4:e00573–13. doi: 10.1128/mBio.00573-13
39. Foster CB, Zhu S, Venzon D, Steinberg SM, Wyvill K, Metcalf JA, et al. Variant genotypes of FcγRIIIA influence the development of Kaposi's sarcoma in HIV-infected men. *Blood.* (2000) 95:2386–90.
40. Forthal DN, Gabriel EE, Wang A, Landucci G, Phan TB. Association of Fcgamma receptor IIIa genotype with the rate of HIV infection after gp120 vaccination. *Blood.* (2012) 120:2836–42. doi: 10.1182/blood-2012-05-431361
41. Kijak, G. (2012). "Modulation of Vaccine Effect by FcGamma Receptor 3a Genetic Polymorphism in RV144", in *19th Conference on Retroviruses and Opportunistic Infections (CROI).* (Seattle, WA).
42. van der Heijden J, Nagelkerke S, Zhao X, Geissler J, Rispens T, van den Berg TK, et al. Haplotypes of FcgammaRIIa and FcgammaRIIIb polymorphic variants influence IgG-mediated responses in neutrophils. *J Immunol.* (2014) 192:2715–21. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1203570
43. Jonkers IH, Wijmenga C. Context-specific effects of genetic variants associated with autoimmune disease. *Hum Mol Genet.* (2017) 26:R185–92. doi: 10.1093/hmg/ddx254
44. Cocklin SL, Schmitz JE. The role of Fc receptors in HIV infection and vaccine efficacy. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS.* (2014) 9:257–62. doi: 10.1097/COH.0000000000000051
45. Lanier LL, Kipps TJ, Phillips JH. Functional properties of a unique subset of cytotoxic CD3+ T lymphocytes that express Fc receptors for IgG (CD16/Leu-11 antigen). *J Exp Med.* (1985) 162:2089–106. doi: 10.1084/jem.162.6.2089
46. Clemenceau B, Vivien R, Debeaupuis E, Esbelin J, Biron C, Levy Y, et al. FcγRIIIa (CD16) induction on human T lymphocytes and CD16pos T-lymphocyte amplification. *J Immunother.* (2011) 34:542–9. doi: 10.1097/CJI.0b013e31822801d4
47. Trautmann A, Rückert B, Schmid-Grendelmeier P, Niederer E, Bröcker E-B, Blaser K, et al. Human CD8 T cells of the peripheral blood contain a low CD8 expressing cytotoxic/effector subpopulation. *Immunology.* (2003) 108:305–12. doi: 10.1046/j.1365-2567.2003.01590.x
48. Kienzle N, Baz A, Kelso A. Profiling the CD8low phenotype, an alternative career choice for CD8 T cells during primary differentiation. *Immunol Cell Biol.* (2004) 82:75–83. doi: 10.1111/j.1440-1711.2004.01210.x
49. Falanga YT, Frascoli M, Kaymaz Y, Forconi C, Ong'echa JM, Bailey JA, et al. High pathogen burden in childhood promotes the development of unconventional innate-like CD8+ T cells. *JCI Insight.* (2017) 2:93814. doi: 10.1172/jci.insight.93814
50. Lanier LL. Shades of grey–the blurring view of innate and adaptive immunity. *Nat Rev Immunol.* (2013) 13:73–4. doi: 10.1038/nri3389
51. Godfrey DI, Uldrich AP, McCluskey J, Rossjohn J, Moody DB. The burgeoning family of unconventional T cells. *Nat Immunol.* (2015) 16:1114–23. doi: 10.1038/ni.3298
52. Jacomet F, Cayssials E, Barbarin A, Desmier D, Basbous S, Lefevre L, et al. The hypothesis of the human iNKT/Innate CD8(+) T-cell axis applied to cancer: evidence for a deficiency in chronic myeloid leukemia. *Front Immunol.* (2016) 7:688. doi: 10.3389%2Ffimmu.2016.00688

Conflict of Interest Statement: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

REVIEW
published: 09 May 2019
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00970

Effect of Fc Receptor Genetic Diversity on HIV-1 Disease Pathogenesis

Daniel E. Geraghty[1], *Christian W. Thorball*[2], *Jacques Fellay*[2,3] *and Rasmi Thomas*[4,5]*

[1] Clinical Research Division, Fred Hutchinson Cancer Research Center, Seattle, WA, United States, [2] School of Life Sciences, École Polytechnique Fédérale de Lausanne, Lausanne, Switzerland, [3] Precision Medicine Unit, Lausanne University Hospital and University of Lausanne, Lausanne, Switzerland, [4] U. S. Military HIV Research Program, Walter Reed Army Institute of Research, Silver Spring, MD, United States, [5] Henry M. Jackson Foundation for the Advancement of Military Medicine, Bethesda, MD, United States

Fc receptor (FcR) genes collectively have copy number and allelic polymorphisms that have been implicated in multiple inflammatory and autoimmune diseases. This variation might also be involved in etiology of infectious diseases. The protective role of Fc-mediated antibody-function in HIV-1 immunity has led to the investigation of specific polymorphisms in FcR genes on acquisition, disease progression, and vaccine efficacy in natural history cohorts. The purpose of this review is not only to explore these known HIV-1 host genetic associations, but also to re-evaluate them in the context of genome-wide data. In the current era of effective anti-retroviral therapy, the potential impact of such variation on post-treatment cohorts cannot go unheeded and is discussed here in the light of current findings. Specific polymorphisms associating with HIV-1 pathogenesis have previously been genotyped by assays that captured only the single-nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) of interest without relative information of neighboring variants. With recent technological advances, variation within these genes can now be characterized using next-generation sequencing, allowing precise annotation of the whole chromosomal region. We herein also discuss updates in the annotation of common FcR variants that have been previously associated with HIV-1 pathogenesis.

Keywords: next-generation sequencing, polymorphism, disease association, Fc receptors, HIV-1

OPEN ACCESS

Edited by:
R. Keith Reeves, Harvard Medical School, United States

Reviewed by:
Rebecca M. Lynch, George Washington University, United States
Jennifer Manuzak, University of Miami, United States

***Correspondence:**
Rasmi Thomas
rthomas@hivresearch.org

Specialty section:
This article was submitted to Comparative Immunology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology

Received: *19 January 2019*
Accepted: *15 April 2019*
Published: *09 May 2019*

Citation:
Geraghty DE, Thorball CW, Fellay J and Thomas R (2019) Effect of Fc Receptor Genetic Diversity on HIV-1 Disease Pathogenesis. Front. Immunol. 10:970. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00970

INTRODUCTION

Fc receptors comprise a class of cell surface receptors expressed on various hematopoietic cells that bind to the Fc portion of antibodies to form immune complexes and recruit the complement and/or effector system to defend the body against pathogens. The Fc receptors are classified based on their binding to the Fc domain of immunoglobulin (Ig). The most abundant Ig in serum is IgG which can bind to different classes of FcγR. Other types of FcR including FcεR, Fcα/μR, and FcαR1 are receptors for other Ig classes such as IgE, IgM, and IgA.

More recently vaccine studies in infectious diseases point to a critical role of non-neutralizing antibody functions, which is the ability of an antibody to interact with other immune components and effector cells via their Fc portions to mediate killing or control of the pathogen. These mechanisms include, but are not limited to, antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC), antibody-dependent cell-mediated virus inhibition (ADCVI), antibody dependent

cellular phagocytosis (ADCP), and antibody dependent complement deposition (ADCD) (1, 2). These functions are mediated by three distinct classes of FcγRs that are expressed on most human immune cells, with varying levels of expression dependent on cell type such as monocytes, macrophages, natural killer cells, eosinophils, neutrophils, B cells but not on T cells (3). These receptors include FcγRI (CD64), FcγRIIa/b/c (CD32), and FcγRIIIa/b (CD16), which bind the different IgG subclasses with varying proficiency, and can cause either activation or inhibition of the effector cell.

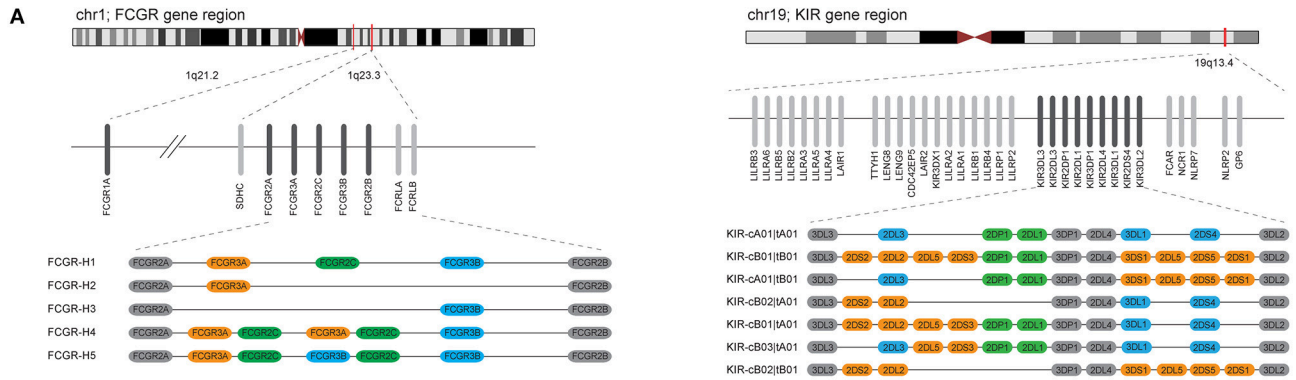
Polymorphisms in the FcγR have been shown to affect binding affinity to the Fc region of IgG and can trigger a range of effector and immunoregulatory functions. Such variation has been shown to play a crucial role in the pathogenesis of a range of chronic inflammatory and autoimmune diseases, as well as susceptibility to infectious pathogens (4, 5). An overview of FcγR biology has been recently summarized and so our focus for this review will be to evaluate the effect of genetic variation in the human Fcγ receptors and their role specifically in HIV-1 disease pathogenesis (6). Although there is evidence that the neonatal Fc receptor (FcRn), an MHC class I-related molecule expressed on many cells, functions in HIV-1 vaccination and infection (7, 8), no significant genetic variation has been identified for this locus, and we have not included it in this review.

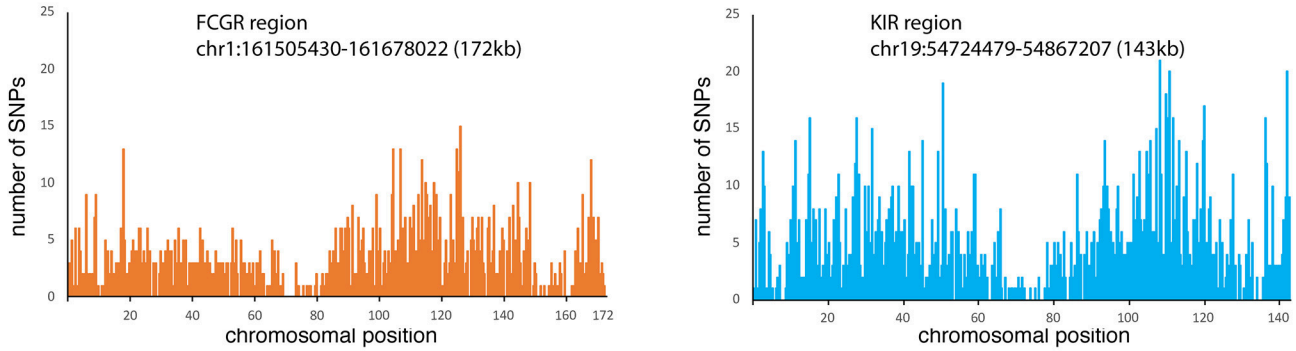
FCγ RECEPTOR GENETIC DIVERSITY

The Fcγ receptors are encoded by the FCGR genes located on chromosome 1 in humans, including five FCGRs in a tandem arrangement within ∼200 kb of genomic sequence (**Figure 1A**). A sixth gene, FCGR1A, is located ∼12 Mb distant from the five gene cluster. Genetic variation at the FCGR gene cluster bears similarity to the Killer Ig-like receptor (KIR) region which is shown in comparison to emphasize both the types and extent of copy number and allelic variation (**Figures 1A,B**) (9). Like KIR, the genes in the FCGR cluster are arranged in haplotypes containing both invariant framework and copy number variant genes. An examination of total nucleotide variation in FCGR from a recent genome build indicates extensive depths of SNP variation, similar in overall extent to KIR and the vast majority of which has not been functionally characterized (**Figures 1B,C**). Both gene families encode receptors for other central components of the immune response (KIR and MHC class I; FCGR and IgG constant domains) placing them in distinct roles but perhaps of equivalent importance in investigations of host genetics and its relationship to immune function. Given the parallels in significance and the similar physical characteristics of both copy number variation and allelic polymorphism, a major difference is that the allelic variations for FCGR genes have been less examined, curated and annotated. This review in part is attempting to address this deficit as an organizing framework of characterized variation possibly guided by established methods for structural and allelic annotation as currently employed for the KIR system (10).

In the FCGR family of six genes, several nonsynonymous single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNP), SNPs encoding altered splice sites, and copy number variants (CNVs) encoding addition, or deletion of one or more gene have been functionally characterized (**Figure 1**, **Table 1**). Variation in the FCGR1 gene is limited, with the most frequent minor allele characterized at <4%, but there is considerable diversity in the other FCGR genes. The most studied SNPs in the FCGR genes over the past two decades have centered on nonsynonymous substitutions that contribute to differential binding affinity for subclasses of IgG. FCGR2A has two allele variants encoding arginine or histidine at amino acid position 166 (rs1801274), with the latter resulting in a higher affinity for IgG1, and IgG2 (11–13). FCGR3A also has two common allele variants differing by a single SNP, altering codon 176 from phenylalanine to valine (rs396991) resulting in a higher affinity for IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, and IgG4 for the 176V variant (11, 12, 14). This stronger binding affinity is associated with functional capacity of the receptor in different experimental and clinical contexts (15–17). Two adjacent nonsynonymous SNPs in FCGR2A (together altering codon 63 from Q to W; rs201218628) have been studied, although their functional consequence is less clear, and their frequency is rare (18). FCGR2B has an isoleucine to threonine change at position 232 (rs1050501), which alters the transmembrane region, with the 232T allele inhibiting the association of FCGR2B with lipid rafts in a human B cell line measuring downstream function (19). The frequency of this alteration is low at ∼1% in Caucasians, and while more prevalent among African Americans and Asians (5–11%) has been less studied.

A major studied polymorphism in the FCGR2C gene is a SNP in exon 3 (rs759550223) that encodes a glutamine or a stop codon resulting in the presence or absence of protein expression (20–22). The frequency of the minor allele varies between populations, and studies have suggested it is expressed on NK cells and is capable of inducing ADCC after receptor cross-linking on purified NK cells as measured by their ability to lyse the target P815 cell line (20, 23). In addition, both alleles have been associated with both null and surface expression on NK cells as measured by anti-FCGR2B/C specific mAb 2B6 (22). However, there may be some confusion regarding this SNP as it is identical to rs10917661, which is assigned to FCGR2B, in a reference SNP identification (rs id) segment where the two genes have identical sequences except at the variant position. Sequence identity between FCGR2B and FCGR2C may lead to incorrect assignment of SNPs to these two loci. Also, rs759550223 has a very low minor allele frequency defined in the SNP database (dbSNP), and the minor allele assigned is identical to the FCGR2B-derived sequence, suggesting the possibility that the SNP has been falsely generated by a combination of variants between two distinct loci. FCGR2C has been previously reported to have arisen from an unequal recombination between the FCGR2A and FCGR2B genes, and encoded a functional molecule that exhibited differential expression in natural killer cells (21, 24, 25). However, FCGR2C is also classified as a gene/pseudogene in the NCBI gene database. These inconsistencies further emphasize the need of validation of the FCGR genes by a combination of methods such as next generation sequencing (NGS) technologies





C

region	bases in region (GRCh38.p12)	total dbSNPs (151)	total dbSNPs (151)	>0.005 (1000 genome)	>0.005 (1000 genome)
chr1:161505430-161678022 (FCGR; 1q23.3)	172593	14732	0.09	1202	0.0070
chr19:54724479-54867207 (KIR)	142729	16268	0.11	1558	0.011
All chr	3088269832	322806648	0.10	17856079	0.0058

FIGURE 1 | Structure and polymorphism of the FCGR genes. **(A)** Approximate chromosomal locations of the FCGR gene complex containing 5 FCGR genes and the FCGR1A gene located at ∼12 Mb centromeric to the FCGR cluster. In comparison, the KIR gene family is illustrated immediately to the right including adjacent genes (FCAR) and gene clusters. For both FCGR and KIR, alternative haplotypes identified in populations are illustrated with the colored bars depicting genes present in a subset of haplotypes and shaded bars depicting genes present in all haplotypes (framework genes). Figure depicting KIR has been reproduced with permission from the Oxford University Press (9). **(B)** The plots show the abundance of SNPs at each position of the indicated regions from chr1 and chr19, using data derived from the UCSC genome browser. **(C)** Approximate number of SNPs in both regions are listed including a summary from all chromosomes for comparison.

as discussed below, in addition to precise curating of allelic variation and flow cytometry phenotyping.

A triallelic nonsynonymous SNP at codon 66 (66R, 66L, 66H; rs10127939) of the FCGR3A gene has also been found to affect affinity for immune complexes (ICs), with the FCGR3A-66R and 66H alleles exhibiting higher affinity (26). Other nonsynonymous SNPs have been identified but none have been characterized functionally or in association analyses. FCRG3B polymorphisms were first described as the human neutrophil antigen (HNA)-1 system (27, 28). The three major HNA-1 variants have differential affinity for IgG1 and IgG3, with the higher affinity HNA-1a and lower affinity HNA-1b differing at 4 nonsynonymous codon positions (rs2290834, rs200688856, rs448740, rs147574249). Consistent with this differential affinity, phagocytosis was lower with HNA-1b through analysis of antibacterial IgG subclass antibodies and with IgG1 and IgG3 anti-Rhesus D (29, 30). A third isoform, termed HNA-1c, of unknown function is identical to the HNA-1b isoform except at the rs5030738 polymorphic site, where it encodes an asparagine rather than alanine residue (31). Other variants of the HNA-1 antigen system have also been described but to date no functional or association studies interrogating them have been reported (32, 33).

CNV is a hallmark of multicopy gene family genomic regions, including notably among them, those encoding immune response genes (34). In the FCGR region, CNVs include at least five haplotypes with varying combinations of deletions and duplications of the FCGR2C, FCGR3A, and FCGR3B genes, flanked by the invariant framework FCGR2A and FCGR2B genes (**Figure 1A**, *left*) (34–36). FCGR-H1 forms the most common among these haplotypes, containing the five loci, with FCGR-H2 being the most commonly observed CNV [equivalent to CNR1 in Nederer et al. (36)] and FCGR-H3 less prevalent (equivalent to CNR2 or CNR3). Although variants FCGR-H4 and -H5 have

not been explicitly described, they form predicted reciprocal structures of the H2 and H3 deletion variants (34). Individuals with FCGR gene copy numbers that may be consistent with those structures have been described (22, 34–38). As discussed above, older genotyping methods focusing on specific regions of the genes may have misassigned SNPs, and the lack of a standard nomenclature of common FGCR coding variants may lead to misinterpretation when comparing different studies. Newer NGS technologies have allowed for updated annotation of the FCGR genes as per the current Human genome database reference hg38. SNPs with a minor allele frequency >0.01 are shown in **Table 1**.

FCGR VARIATION AND HIV-1 DISEASE PATHOGENESIS

The first report of the effect of polymorphisms in the FCGR genes on HIV-1 disease progression was in two natural history HIV-1 cohorts consisting of anti-retroviral therapy (ART) naïve individuals (39). Since then, functional SNPs in the FCGR2A (rs1801274) and FCGR3A (rs396991) genes that affect binding affinity to the Fc domain of IgG have been evaluated in the context of HIV-1 acquisition, disease progression, and vaccine efficacy. Now that most HIV-1 infected individuals are on ART, there is an opportunity to evaluate disease outcomes after ART initiation. With increased high-throughput sequencing, targeted SNP genotyping is being replaced by whole gene and genome sequencing. This gives the opportunity to evaluate previous host genetic findings in the light of genome wide findings and also examine other SNPs in nearby genes. We will discuss the effects of genetic polymorphisms in the FCGR genes and their impact on HIV-1 disease progression, acquisition, post-ART and vaccine outcomes in the next sections.

FCGR Polymorphisms and HIV-1 Disease Progression

Candidate Gene Studies

Forthal et al. identified an association between the FCGR2A low binding RR (rs1801274) genotype and a faster rate of CD4+ T cell decline and progression to AIDS using samples and data from the Multicenter AIDS Cohort Study (MACS) consisting of more than 500 HIV-1 infected males of mostly Western European ancestry (40). Paradoxically, the same RR genotype was also found to associate with a decreased risk of Pneumocystis jiroveci (carinii) pneumonia, an AIDS defining illness, when compared to the HH genotype in the same cohort. At the functional level, cells from RR homozygous carriers demonstrated less efficient phagocytosis of HIV-1/IgG complexes. There was no association of the FCGR2A genotype with viral load setpoint (spVL), defined as the number of HIV-1 RNA copies/ml in a plasma sample collected 18 months after the first seropositive test. The absence of association of FCGR2A variation with spontaneous viral load control was also confirmed in an HIV-1 seroconverting cohort including 253 Kenyan women, in which the associations with disease progression and CD4+ T cell decline were not replicated (41).

No association was observed by Forthal et al. in the MACS cohort between a specific FCGR3A genotype (rs396991) and spontaneous viral control or disease progression (40). Similarly, Weis et al. did not identify any significant genetic associations of FCGR3A variation with disease progression or spVL in the Kenyan's women cohort (41). There is one report of the VV genotype of FCGR3A being overrepresented in 43 untreated controllers compared to 59 HIV positive progressors on ART (42). However, since the HIV positive progressors were on ART, analyses with measures of spVL or CD4+ T cell counts could not be performed and this finding remains inconclusive.

A more consistent finding has been reported by two independent groups showing the association between the FCGR3A FF genotype and decreased risk of Kaposi's sarcoma (KS) (39, 40). In the first study, FCGR3A genotyping was performed in two small cohorts consisting of 119 and 131 HIV-1 infected males of Western European ancestry. A significant association with protection was identified in each cohort independently and in the combined analysis. Forthal et al. replicated this finding in the MACS cohort. KS is the most frequent malignant condition associated with HIV-1 related immunosuppression, and alterations in the cytokine balance have been suggested to play a critical role in its pathogenesis. Differences in genotype have been shown to alter IgG binding that could influence cytokine levels, with the V allele having higher affinity than the F. The authors concluded that FF homozygous individuals might be at lower risk of KS because of a less vigorous proinflammatory response. The VV genotype has been associated with an increased risk of cryptococcal disease in 164 HIV-1 infected men, again in the MACS cohort (43). Of note, this observation extends beyond HIV-1 infection, because the VV genotype was previously associated with cryptococcal disease in non-HIV-infected individuals in a separate study (44).

Genome-Wide Testing

The associations with HIV-1 natural history described above were tested using a candidate gene study design in cohorts with relatively small sample size. The current availability of genome-wide genotyping and sequencing data provides an opportunity to reassess the potential involvement of FCGR variation in HIV-1 disease in larger cohorts, by applying more stringent standards for significance level and including robust population stratification (45). We therefore accessed previously published data generated from cohorts and studies that contributed to the International Collaboration for the Genomics of HIV (ICGH) (46–48) and assessed genetic associations with HIV-1 disease outcomes in the FCGR2A and FCGR3A regions.

The potential associations between FCGR2A or FCGR3A variants and spVL were evaluated using a fixed-effect inverse-variance weighted meta-analysis across cohorts, including a total of 7,266 HIV positive patients of Western European ancestry. We tested all common polymorphisms (minor allele frequency >5%) in a 50 kb window around the gene. In line with previous studies, no significant association with spVL was observed. An additional analysis was performed in a subset of ICGH, consisting of 467 long-term non-progressors (individuals with CD4+ T cell counts consistently above 500 cells/mm (3) for >10 years without treatment) and 517 rapid progressors

TABLE 1 | Characterization of variation in the Fc Receptor genes.

Chr. location (GRCh38.p7)	dbSNP rs#	MAF	Function	RefSeqGene (genomic DNA)	RefSeqGene (mRNA)	SNP variants[a]	RefSeqGene (Protein)	Amino acid change
FCGR2A				NG_012066	NM_021642.3		NP_067674.2	
161506414-161506415	rs201218628	0.006	Missense	6000_6001	184_185	CA>TG	62	Gln>Trp
161509955	rs1801274[d]	0.442	Missense	9541	497	A>G	166	His>Arg
161510070	rs150311303	0.008	Insertion	9657_9658	613_614	insTTC	205	Gln>GlnLeu
161510859	rs11810143	0.055	synonymous	10445	642	A>G	214	Pro>Pro
161510928	rs140474146	0.009	Synonymous	10514	711	G>A	237	Leu>Leu
161518073	rs12029217	0.121	Synonymous	17659	876	C>T	292	Pro>Pro
161518091	rs6694457	0.026	Synonymous	17677	894	T>C	298	Asp>Asp
FCGR2B				NG_023318	NM_004001.4		NP_003992.3	
161671501	rs148030870	0.010	synonymous	13387	243	C>T	81	Ser>Ser
161671594	rs6665610	0.138	Synonymous	13480	336	G>A	112	Thr>Thr
161671618	rs367584808	0.005	Synonymous	13504	360	C>A	120	Leu>Lue
161672984	rs200112434	0.109	Missense	14870	401	T>G	134	Val>Gly
161673192	rs2298022	0.029	Synonymous	15078	609	G>A	203	Thr>Thr
161673195	rs182968886	0.110	Synonymous	15081	612	G>A	204	Leu>Lue
161674008	rs1050501	0.186	Missense	15894	695	T>C	232	Ile>Thr
161675262	rs28651835	0.032	Missense	17148	766	C>T	256	Pro>Ser
FCGR2C				NG_011982	NM_201563.5[b]		NP_963857.3	
161589466	rs114945036	0.245	Intron	13128		C>T		
161589597	rs759550223	0.002	Nonsense	13259	169	C>T	57	Gln> *Ter
161589781	rs138747765	0.194	Missense	13443	353	C>T	118	Thr>Ile
161589930	rs78603008	0.195	Intron	13592		G>A		
161591153	rs370748254	0.134	Missense	14815	401	T>G	134	Val>Gly
161591361	rs74341264	0.199	Synonymous	15023	609	G>A	203	Thr>Thr
161591366	rs76016754	0.034	Missense	15028	614	A>T	205	Tyr>Phe
161599629	rs430178	0.259	Splice acceptor	23291		C>G		
161599779	rs138731942	0.075	Synonymous	23441	948	C>T	316	Asn>Asn
FCGR3A				NG_009066	NM_001127593.1		NP_001121065.1	
161543083	rs115866423	0.006	Missense	12541	694	A>T	232	Asn>Tyr
161544752	rs396991[d]	0.351	Missense	10872	526	T>G	176	Phe>Val
161548509	rs150808747	0.012	Synonymous	7115	231	C>T	77	Asp>Asp
161548524	rs114535887	0.019	Synonymous	7100	216	G>A	72	Ser>Ser
161548543	rs10127939	0.039	Missense	7081	197	T>G/T>A	66	Leu>Arg/Leu>His

(Continued)

TABLE 1 | Continued

Chr. location (GRCh38.p7)	dbSNP rs#	MAF	Function	RefSeqGene (genomic DNA)	RefSeqGene (mRNA)	SNP variants[a]	RefSeqGene (Protein)	Amino acid change
FCGR3B				NG_032926	NM_000570.4		NP_000561.3	
161626224	rs71632957	0.022	Synonymous	10740	498	T>C	166	Asp>Asp
161626242	rs114169903	0.025	Synonymous	10722	480	A>G	160	Pro>Pro
161629781	rs2290834	0.447	Missense	7183	316	A>G	106	Ile>Val
161629800	rs368410676	0.023	Synonymous	7164	297	G>T	99	Pro>Pro
161629853	rs147574249	0.284	Missense	7111	244	A>G	82	Asn>Asp
161629864	rs5030738	0.083	Missense	7100	233	C>A	78	Ala>Asp
161629903	rs448740	0.467	Missense	7061	194	A>G	65	Asn>Ser
161629983	rs527909462	0.135	Synonymous	6981	114	T>C	38	Leu>Leu
161629989	rs200688856	0.128	Missense	6975	108	C>G	36	Ser>Arg
FCGR1A				NG_007578	NM_000566.3		NP_000557.1	
149784005	rs138447715	0.034	Missense	6274	55	A>G	19	Thr>Ala
149784064	rs80039899	0.017	Synonymous	6333	114	C>T	38	Thr>Thr
149784065	rs7531523	0.005	Missense	6334	115	G>A	39	Val>Ile
149784139	rs149926813	0.005	Synonymous	6408	189	T>C	63	Thr>Thr
149784147	rs144081076	0.004	Missense	6416	197	C>T	66	Ser>Leu
149784224	rs74315310	0.004	Nonsense	6493	274	C>T	92	Arg> *Ter
149788436	rs138510822	0.008	Synonymous	10705	378	G>A	126	Ala>Ala
149790290	rs587727639	0.008	Missense	12559	796	G>A	266	Asp>Asn
FCAR				Na[c]	NM_002000.3		NP_001991.1	
54885265	rs61735068	0.006	Missense		101	A>C	34	Lys>Thr
54885488	rs1865096	0.261	Synonymous		324	G>A	108	Arg>Arg
54885501	rs11666735	0.055	Missense		337	G>A	113	Asp>Asn
54888276	rs61735069	0.042	synonymous		631	T>C	211	Leu>Leu
54889758	rs77103719	0.006	Synonymous		759	G>A	253	Thr>Thr
54889796	rs61735070	0.006	Missense		797	C>T	266	Pro>Leu
54889804	rs16986050	0.155	Missense		805	A>G	269	Ser>Gly

[a]*Only SNP variants with a MAF of >0.01 are shown.*

[b]*The status of FCGR2C has been recently changed from gene to pseudogene in genbank.*

[c]*No unique genome reference sequence has been defined for FCAR in genbank at this point.*

[d]*rs1801274 and rs396991 have been commonly referenced in the literature as FCGR2A-131R/H and FCGR3A-158F/V, respectively.*

(individuals with two or more CD4+ T cell counts below 300 cells/mm (3) within 3 years after the last seronegative test result). We were unable to replicate findings by Forthal et al. and did not observe associations with HIV-1 progression (40). These analyses included the FCGR2A rs1801274 polymorphism; however, the FCGR3A polymorphism rs396991 was not available from the ICGH meta-analysis as it is not directly genotyped on most genotyping arrays and could not be reliably imputed. Thus, in order to evaluate its association with HIV-1 spVL, we reassessed a standard genome-wide association study (GWAS) using exome sequencing data from 395 individuals of European descent in the Swiss HIV Cohort Study (SHCS), following the procedures described in McLaren et al. (48). This analysis did not show any association between rs396991 and HIV-1 spVL ($p = 0.21$). Additionally, the rs1801274 did not show any association with spVL ($p = 0.54$) in the same cohort (**Figure 2**). The inability to replicate previous findings could be attributed to differences in sample size, clinical definition and statistical rigor employed. Globally, these new analyses confirm the previous findings that common human genetic variants in FCGR2A or FCGR3A are not associated with spontaneous control of HIV-1 infection.

Influence of FCGR Diversity on HIV-1 Acquisition

There are no conclusive studies reporting associations of FCGR polymorphisms with HIV-1 acquisition. Two independent mother-to-child transmission cohorts reported contrasting findings of FCGR2A genotypes associating with increased infection risk in children with the high-affinity HH (rs1801274) genotype (49, 50).

Here again, we evaluated potential associations between FCGR2A and FCGR3A variants and susceptibility to HIV-1 infection by accessing the results of a previous GWAS of HIV-1 acquisition that compared 6,300 HIV-1 infected individuals and 7,200 controls of European ancestry (46). The rs1801274 polymorphism did not show any sign of association with HIV-1 acquisition ($p = 0.81$), and all other tested polymorphisms in a 50 kb window around both FCGR2A and FCGR3A were also non-significant after correction for multiple testing. The FCGR3A SNP (rs396991) was not included on the genotyping chip and could not be reliably imputed and so was not tested directly. This analysis in the largest acquisition cohort published to date adds substantial evidence to the lack of involvement of common FCGR2A and FCGR3A polymorphisms in HIV-1 acquisition.

Role of FCGR Polymorphisms on Outcomes After ART Initiation

Variation in genotype and expression of host genes is well established to impact HIV-1 susceptibility and disease progression in ART- naïve individuals (47). Initiation of ART in acute HIV-1 infection can limit establishment of viral reservoirs and induces post-treatment control in some individuals (51, 52).

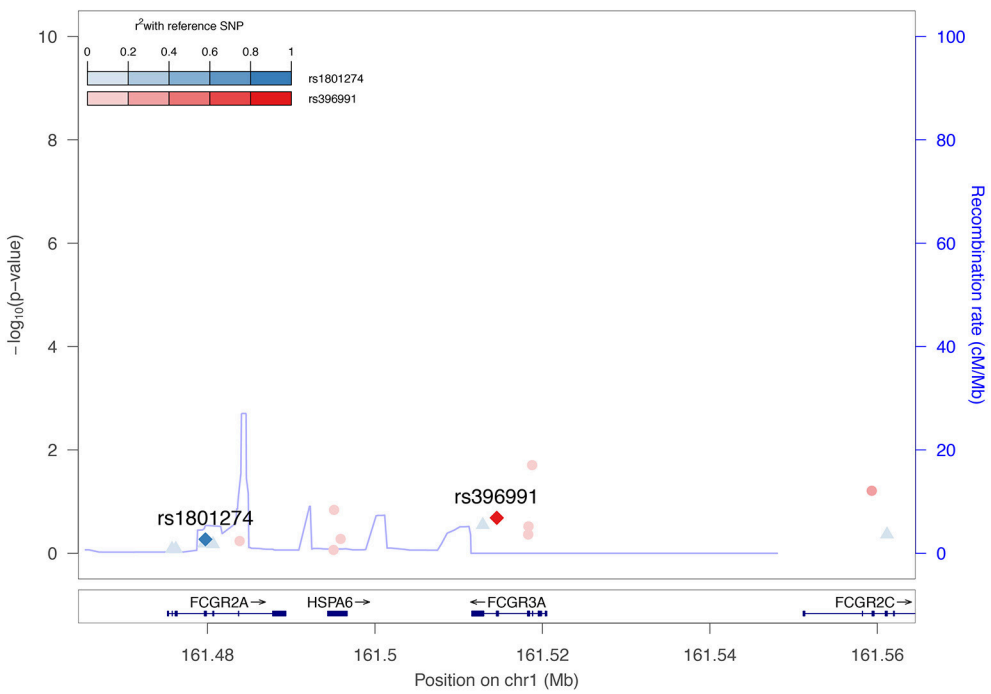


FIGURE 2 | No association between FCGR2A or FCGR3A polymorphisms on HIV-1 set point viral load. Regional association plot highlighting the association between the FCGR2A (rs1801274) and FCGR3A (rs396991) polymorphisms and HIV-1 spVL across 395 exome sequenced patients (48). Color intensities represent the linkage disequilibrium (r^2) of other SNPs in the region with rs1801287 and rs396991, respectively. The blue line indicates the estimated recombination rate in cM/Mb from The International HapMap Consortium (2007).

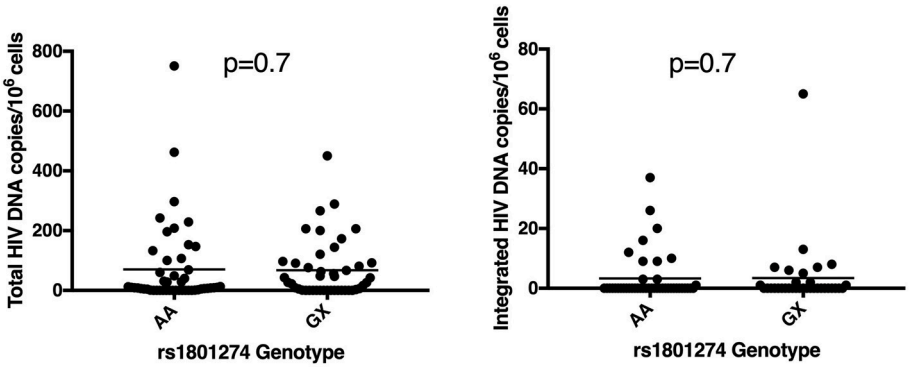


FIGURE 3 | Polymorphism in FCGR2A (CD32a) does not associate with reservoir size. The rs1801274 SNP variant did not associate with levels of total or integrated HIV DNA, determined in $N = 93$ and $N = 78$ of the patients, respectively (55, 56).

Host variation that influences viral reservoir size or reactivation during ART has not been definitively studied and has potential to significantly advance HIV cure research. There is at least one report indicating that broadly neutralizing antibodies (bNAbs) can interfere with establishment of a silent reservoir by Fc-FcR mediated mechanisms in humanized mice when administered early in the infection (53). Recently, Descours et al. identified CD32a (FCGR2A) as a marker of latently infected CD4 T cells (54). Given the previous associations of FCGR2A with HIV-1 disease pathogenesis, we hypothesized that polymorphisms in this gene might affect the size of the viral reservoir in patients that went on ART early in acute infection (55, 56). We examined genetic variation in the FCGR2A gene, characterizing polymorphisms in 436 ART-suppressed patients from the RV254 cohort. We screened for 18 variants in the extracellular domains of FCGR2A including rs1801274 and did not find associations with total or integrated HIV DNA ($p > 0.05$) (**Figure 3**). Surprisingly, recent reports from several independent groups confirm that they were unable to replicate the original findings from the Descours et al. study, showing that associations with post-ART control continue to be elusive (57–60).

Effect of FCGR Variation on HIV-1 Vaccine Efficacy

Variation in host genes can impact vaccine outcomes, and other than HLA, the only other gene to impact HIV-1 vaccine efficacy was in the FCGR locus (61–63). Two studies of HIV-1 vaccine efficacy revealed a remarkable coincidence of FCGR polymorphism associated with opposing directions for efficacy, suggesting that the effect of FCGR genetic variation may be specific to vaccine regimens. The FCGR2C association study of Li et al. (62), used a direct sequencing approach to identify FCGR2C SNPs that associated with vaccine efficacy (VE) against HIV-1 in the RV144 vaccine trial, that showed modest efficacy (64). Individuals with at least one minor allele of three FCGR2C SNPs (rs114945036, rs138747765, and rs78603008) had a vaccine efficacy of 64% against any HIV-1 subtype and 91% against the CRF01-AE subtype with the protective 169K HIV-1 variant identified previously by sieve analysis (65). Although the functional mechanisms underlying the association were not revealed in this study, a subsequent examination of the FCGR2C SNPs showed rs114945036 correlated with expression levels of FCGR2A/C (66). This effect was found across different populations and was specific to the rs114945036 SNP located in the intron. Further, rs114945036 also associated with the expression of the Fc receptor-like A (FCRLA) gene, an FCGR related gene located within a gene cluster adjacent to FCGR (see **Figure 1A**). These results suggest that the FCGR expression is either influenced by this SNP through an undefined mechanism, or is in linkage with other causal variants that directly affect expression levels.

In the second study, four FCGR2C SNPs significantly modified the hazard ratio in the HVTN505 trial that did not show protection against HIV-1 acquisition (62). Three of the SNPs were common with those previously identified in RV144. In contrast to the RV144 study, in HVTN505 among the recipients carrying the FCGR2C minor alleles, HIV-1 acquisition risk was higher in the vaccine group than in the placebo group, in precisely the opposite direction of that observed in RV144 (efficacy against HIV-1 acquisition hazard ratios (HR) of 9.79 ($p = 0.035$) and 0.36 ($p = 0.04$), respectively). It is not clear how polymorphisms in a pseudogene functions during HIV-1 vaccination and their associations with FCGR expression may provide a novel avenue for further investigation.

Two additional studies of outcomes in Vax004, a trial testing recombinant gp120 vaccination in preventing sexually acquired HIV infection, also implicated FCGR variation in HIV infection and vaccine efficacy. Both studies tested the classical FCGR2A or FCGR3A variants comprised of the FCGR2A-R/H (rs1801274) and FCGR3A-F/V (rs396991) alleles. The first study found that lower affinity receptors (FCG2A-RR or HR and FCGR3A-FF) were associated with higher serum ADCVI activity, which itself predicted the rate of infection (67). A second study by the same group, showed the FCGR3A-VV genotype distinguished the lowest behavioral risk group from the high-risk behavioral group (68). The low risk group had a higher infection rate than low risk

vaccinees with one or two F alleles (HR = 3.52; $p = 0.002$) while the high-risk group showed no association. Functional studies may be directed by these findings to interrogate quantitative and qualitative effects on FCGRs and associated antibody production. At a minimum, the intersection of these studies suggests that the impact of FCGR genetic variations on vaccine efficacy should be further investigated.

FCGR AND IGHG—FUTURE DIRECTIONS FOR GENETIC ANALYSIS

It is apparent that the genomic complexity of the FCGR region presents a major challenge for uncovering the underlying causal FCGR variants. Different FCGR have distinct functions and mechanisms of regulation but share highly similar sequences. While FCGR genetic variations are clearly linked to host defense against infectious diseases and other important immune functions as discussed, current approaches measure only a small portion of the existing FCGR variation. The HVTN505 and RV144 studies referenced above were by far the most comprehensive in that regard, measuring ∼10 kb of the FCGR region, including functional exons encoding external protein domains and flanking intron sequences from the five FCGR genes. However, the complete FCGR region extends over 200 kb leaving open the likelihood of additional causal variation (**Figure 1A**). Indeed, the lack of phasing of the over 20,000 SNPs documented in the FCGR region significantly limits its direct utility for association analysis and the ultimate goal of identifying causal variants (69). Complete haplotype-resolved FCGR genomic sequences across human populations by approaches such as those used for defining variability in the KIR region may be necessary in order to provide a complete analysis of these loci (70–72).

When considering FCGR host genetics and its relationship to HIV-1 susceptibility and vaccine efficacy—or any association with disease—a natural but not often considered extension to host genetic association studies interrogating FCGR variability lies within the human immunoglobulin constant heavy G chain (IGHG) gene region on chromosomal segment 14q32.3 (73). This region encoding the human IG heavy constant genes (IGHG3, IGHG1, IGHG2, IGHA2, and the IGH locus on chromosome 14) provides access to a system for understanding immunogenicity of the polymorphic IG chains (74, 75). The evident functional relationship between FCGR and IgG constant region variability, which itself is substantial (74), argues strongly for host genetic studies of FCGR to be paired with analysis of IGHG. Although little genomic characterization for the IGHG system is available at present, we anticipate that NGS technologies will rapidly fill that void. Of course, once provided with high quality and high resolution data, significant effort will need to be invested in new sophisticated analytical approaches examining multiple factors simultaneously to find the causal variation revealing operative biological mechanisms.

CONCLUDING REMARKS

Disease pathogenesis of HIV-1 has been shown to be modulated by allelic variants in the FCGR genes. However, such findings have not always been robust, as they were not replicated or in some cases were contradictory. There is however considerable interest in the role of Fc-mediated antiviral functions such as ADCC, ADCP, ADCD, and ADCVI in protective immunity against HIV-1 (76). Host genetics of the Fc receptors that bind to the Fc domain of the IgG antibody might modulate the functional antiviral antibody responses to HIV-1 vaccination. ADCC was previously identified as a correlate of protection in the RV144 human efficacy trial (64). More recently, ADCP has been shown to correlate with protection against acquisition of SIV/SHIV/HIV-1 in multiple preclinical and human efficacy trials (77–80). Given such associations, it would be critical to investigate association of host variation in FCGR genes and such Fc-mediated antiviral functions that are now being generated using technologies such as systems serology (1). Such findings might shed light on the role of Fc gene and receptor genotypes on HIV-1 disease pathogenesis.

AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

RT conceptualized, organized the content of the review and wrote sections Introduction, FCGR polymorphisms and HIV-1 disease progression, Influence of FCGR diversity on HIV-1 acquisition, Role of FCGR polymorphisms on outcomes after ART initiation, and Concluding Remarks. DG contributed to sections Fcγ receptor genetic diversity, Effect of FCGR variation on HIV-1 vaccine efficacy, and FCGR and IGHG–future directions for genetic analysis. JF and CT drafted sections FCGR polymorphisms and HIV-1 disease progression, Influence of FCGR diversity on HIV-1 acquisition. All authors participated in editing and revising the manuscript.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We would like to acknowledge the RV254 study group led by Dr. Jintanat Ananworanich and Dr. Sodsai Tovanabutra, MHRP for providing samples, clinical data, and viral reservoir measurements. We thank Dr. Vicky Polonis, MHRP and Mr. Philip Ehrenberg for thoughtful comments and suggestions. We thank Ms. Aviva Geretz, MHRP for reviewing the compiled FCGR polymorphisms. This work was supported by a cooperative agreement (W81XWH-18-2-0040) between the Henry M. Jackson Foundation for the Advancement of Military Medicine, Inc., and the U. S. Department of Defense (DOD). This research was funded, in part, by the U. S. National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Disease. The views expressed are those of the authors and should not be construed to represent the positions of the U. S. Army or the DOD.

REFERENCES

1. Chung AW, Alter G. Systems serology: profiling vaccine induced humoral immunity against HIV. *Retrovirology*. (2017) 14:57. doi: 10.1186/s12977-017-0380-3
2. Forthal DN, Moog C. Fc receptor-mediated antiviral antibodies. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS*. (2009) 4:388–93. doi: 10.1097/COH.0b013e32832f0a89
3. Cocklin SL, Schmitz JE. The role of Fc receptors in HIV infection and vaccine efficacy. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS*. (2014) 9:257–62. doi: 10.1097/coh.0000000000000051
4. Bournazos S, Woof JM, Hart SP, Dransfield I. Functional and clinical consequences of Fc receptor polymorphic and copy number variants. *Clin Exp Immunol*. (2009) 157:244–54. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2249.2009.03980.x
5. Li X, Gibson AW, Kimberly RP. Human FcR polymorphism and disease. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. (2014) 382:275–302. doi: 10.1007/978-3-319-07911-0_13.
6. Bournazos S, Ravetch JV. Fcgamma receptor function and the design of vaccination strategies. *Immunity*. (2017) 47:224–33. doi: 10.1016/j.immuni.2017.07.009
7. Kratochvil S, McKay PF, Chung AW, Kent SJ, Gilmour J, Shattock RJ. Immunoglobulin G1 allotype influences antibody subclass distribution in response to HIV gp140 vaccination. *Front Immunol*. 8:1883. (2017) doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2017.01883
8. Gupta S, Gach JS, Becerra JC, Phan TB, Pudney J, Moldoveanu Z, et al. The Neonatal Fc receptor (FcRn) enhances human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1) transcytosis across epithelial cells. *PLoS Pathog*. (2013) 9:e1003776. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1003776
9. Shen S, Pyo CW, Vu Q, Wang R, Geraghty DE. The essential detail: the genetics and genomics of the primate immune response. *ILAR J*. (2013) 54:181–95. doi: 10.1093/ilar/ilt043
10. Misra MK, Augusto DG, Martin GM, Nemat-Gorgani N, Sauter J, Hofmann JA, et al. Report from the Killer-cell Immunoglobulin-like Receptors (KIR) component of the 17th International HLA and Immunogenetics Workshop. *Hum Immunol*. (2018) 79:825–33 doi: 10.1016/j.humimm.2018.10.003
11. Bruhns P. Properties of mouse and human IgG receptors and their contribution to disease models. *Blood*. (2012) 119:5640–9. doi: 10.1182/blood-2012-01-380121
12. Bruhns P, Iannascoli B, England P, Mancardi DA, Fernandez N, Jorieux S, et al. Specificity and affinity of human Fcgamma receptors and their polymorphic variants for human IgG subclasses. *Blood*. (2009) 113:3716–25. doi: 10.1182/blood-2008-09-179754
13. Warmerdam PA, van de Winkel JG, Gosselin EJ, Capel PJ. Molecular basis for a polymorphism of human Fc gamma receptor II (CD32). *J Exp Med*. (1990) 172:19–25.
14. Ravetch JV, Perussia B. Alternative membrane forms of Fc gamma RIII(CD16) on human natural killer cells and neutrophils. Cell type-specific expression of two genes that differ in single nucleotide substitutions. *J Exp Med*. (1989) 170:481–97.
15. Seret G, Hanrotel C, Bendaoud B, Le Meur Y, Renaudineau Y. Homozygous FCGR3A-158F mutation is associated with delayed B-cell depletion following rituximab but with preserved efficacy in a patient with refractory lupus nephritis. *Clini Kidney J*. (2013) 6:74–6. doi: 10.1093/ckj/sfs162
16. Shimizu, Tanaka Y, Tazawa H, Verma S, Onoe T, Ishiyama K, et al. Fc-gamma receptor polymorphisms predispose patients to infectious complications after liver transplantation. *Am J Transplant*. (2016) 16:625–33. doi: 10.1111/ajt.13492
17. Taylor RJ, Saloura V, Jain A, Goloubeva O, Wong S, Kronsberg S, et al. *Ex vivo* antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity inducibility predicts efficacy of cetuximab. *Cancer Immunol Res*. (2015) 3:567–74. doi: 10.1158/2326-6066.cir-14-0188
18. Flinsenberg TW, Janssen WJ, Herczenik E, Boross P, Nederend M, Jongeneel LH, et al. A novel FcgammaRIIa Q27W gene variant is associated with common variable immune deficiency through defective FcgammaRIIa downstream signaling. *Clin Immunol*. (2014) 155:108–17. doi: 10.1016/j.clim.2014.09.006
19. Kono H, Kyogoku C, Suzuki T, Tsuchiya N, Honda H, Yamamoto K, et al. FcgammaRIIB Ile232Thr transmembrane polymorphism associated with human systemic lupus erythematosus decreases affinity to lipid rafts and attenuates inhibitory effects on B cell receptor signaling. *Hum Mol Genet*. (2005) 14:2881–92. doi: 10.1093/hmg/ddi320
20. Ernst LK, Metes D, Herberman RB, Morel PA. Allelic polymorphisms in the FcgammaRIIC gene can influence its function on normal human natural killer cells. *J Mol Med*. (2002) 80:248–57. doi: 10.1007/s00109-001-0294-2
21. Metes D, Ernst LK, Chambers WH, Sulica A, Herberman RB, Morel PA. Expression of functional CD32 molecules on human NK cells is determined by an allelic polymorphism of the FcgammaRIIC gene. *Blood*. (1998) 91:2369–80.
22. Nagelkerke SQ, Tacke CE, Breunis WB, Geissler J, Sins JW, Appelhof B, et al. Nonallelic homologous recombination of the FCGR2/3 locus results in copy number variation and novel chimeric FCGR2 genes with aberrant functional expression. *Genes Immun*. (2015) 16:422–9. doi: 10.1038/gene.2015.25
23. van der Heijden J, Breunis WB, Geissler J, de Boer M, van den Berg TK, Kuijpers TW. Phenotypic variation in IgG receptors by nonclassical FCGR2C alleles. *J Immunol*. (2012) 188:1318–24. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1003945
24. Metes D, Galatiuc C, Moldovan I, Morel PA, Chambers WH, DeLeo AB, et al. Expression and function of Fc gamma RII on human natural killer cells. *Nat Immun*. (1994) 13:289–300.
25. Qiu WQ, de Bruin D, Brownstein BH, Pearse R, Ravetch JV. Organization of the human and mouse low-affinity Fc gamma R genes: duplication and recombination. *Science*. (1990) 248:732–5.
26. de Haas M, Koene HR, Kleijer M, de Vries E, Simsek S, van Tol MJ, et al. A triallelic Fc gamma receptor type IIIA polymorphism influences the binding of human IgG by NK cell Fc gamma RIIIa. *J Immunol*. (1996) 156:2948–55.
27. Ory PA, Clark MR, Kwoh EE, Clarkson SB, Goldstein IM. Sequences of complementary DNAs that encode the NA1 and NA2 forms of Fc receptor III on human neutrophils. *J Clin Invest*. (1989) 84:1688–91. doi: 10.1172/jci114350
28. Ory PA, Goldstein IM, Kwoh EE, Clarkson SB. Characterization of polymorphic forms of Fc receptor III on human neutrophils. *J Clin Invest*. (1989) 83:1676–81. doi: 10.1172/jci114067
29. Bredius RG, Fijen CA, De Haas M, Kuijper EJ, Weening RS, Van de Winkel JG, et al. Role of neutrophil Fc gamma RIIa (CD32) and Fc gamma RIIIb (CD16) polymorphic forms in phagocytosis of human IgG1- and IgG3-opsonized bacteria and erythrocytes. *Immunology*. (1994) 83:624–30.
30. Salmon JE, Edberg JC, Kimberly RP. Fc gamma receptor III on human neutrophils. Allelic variants have functionally distinct capacities. *J Clin Invest*. (1990) 85:1287–95. doi: 10.1172/jci114566
31. Bux J, Stein EL, Bierling P, Fromont P, Clay M, Stroncek D, et al. Characterization of a new alloantigen (SH) on the human neutrophil Fc gamma receptor IIIb. *Blood*. (1997) 89:1027–34.
32. Flesch BK, Doose S, Siebert R, Ntambi E, Neppert J. FCGR3 variants and expression of human neutrophil antigen-1a,−1b, and−1c in the populations of northern Germany and Uganda. *Transfusion*. (2002) 42:469–75. doi: 10.1046/j.1525-1438.2002.00087.x
33. Reil A, Sachs UJ, Siahanidou T, Flesch BK, Bux J. HNA-1d: a new human neutrophil antigen located on Fcgamma receptor IIIb associated with neonatal immune neutropenia. *Transfusion*. (2013) 53:2145–51. doi: 10.1111/trf.12086
34. Hollox EJ, Hoh BP. Human gene copy number variation and infectious disease. *Human Genet*. (2014) 133:1217–33. doi: 10.1007/s00439-014-1457-x
35. Breunis WB, van Mirre E, Geissler J, Laddach N, Wolbink G, van der Schoot E, et al. Copy number variation at the FCGR locus includes FCGR3A, FCGR2C, and FCGR3B but not FCGR2A and FCGR2B. *Human Mutat*. (2009) 30:E640–50. doi: 10.1002/humu.20997
36. Niederer HA, Willcocks LC, Rayner TF, Yang W, Lau YL, Williams TN, et al. Copy number, linkage disequilibrium and disease association in the FCGR locus. *Hum Mol Genet*. (2010) 19:3282–94. doi: 10.1093/hmg/ddq216
37. Hargreaves CE, Rose-Zerilli MJ, Machado LR, Iriyama C, Hollox EJ, Cragg MS, et al. Fcgamma receptors: genetic variation, function, and disease. *Immunol Rev*. (2015) 268:6–24. doi: 10.1111/imr.12341
38. Machado LR, Hardwick RJ, Bowdrey J, Bogle H, Knowles TJ, Sironi M, et al. Evolutionary history of copy-number-variable locus for the

low-affinity Fcgamma receptor: mutation rate, autoimmune disease, and the legacy of helminth infection. *Am J Hum Genet.* (2012) 90:973–85. doi: 10.1016/j.ajhg.2012.04.018
39. Lehrnbecher TL, Foster CB, Zhu S, Venzon D, Steinberg SM, Wyvill K, et al. Variant genotypes of FcgammaRIIIA influence the development of Kaposi's sarcoma in HIV-infected men. *Blood*. (2000) 95:2386–90.
40. Forthal DN, Landucci G, Bream J, Jacobson LP, Phan TB, Montoya B. FcgammaRIIa genotype predicts progression of HIV infection. *J Immunol*. (2007) 179:7916–23. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.179.11.7916
41. Weis JF, McClelland RS, Jaoko W, Mandaliya KN, Overbaugh J, Graham SM, et al. Short communication: Fc gamma receptors IIa and IIIa genetic polymorphisms do not predict HIV-1 disease progression in Kenyan women. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses*. (2015) 31:288–92. doi: 10.1089/AID.2014.0209
42. Poonia B, Kijak GH, Pauza CD. High affinity allele for the gene of FCGR3A is risk factor for HIV infection and progression. *PLoS ONE.* (2010) 5:e15562. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0015562
43. Rohatgi S, Gohil S, Kuniholm MH, Schultz H, Dufaud C, Armour KL, et al. Fc gamma receptor 3A polymorphism and risk for HIV-associated cryptococcal disease. *MBio*. (2013) 4:e00573–13. doi: 10.1128/mBio.00573-13
44. Meletiadis J, Walsh TJ, Choi EH, Pappas PG, Ennis D, Douglas J, et al. Study of common functional genetic polymorphisms of FCGR2A, 3A and 3B genes and the risk for cryptococcosis in HIV-uninfected patients. *Med Mycol*. (2007) 45:513–8. doi: 10.1080/13693780701390140
45. Little J, Higgins JP, Ioannidis JP, Moher D, Gagnon F, von Elm E, et al. STrengthening the REporting of Genetic Association Studies (STREGA): an extension of the STROBE statement. *PLoS Med.* (2009) 6:e22. doi: 10.1371/journal.pmed.1000022
46. McLaren PJ, Coulonges C, Ripke S, van den Berg L, Buchbinder S, Carrington M, et al. Association study of common genetic variants and HIV-1 acquisition in 6,300 infected cases and 7,200 controls. *PLoS Pathog.* (2013) 9:e1003515. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1003515
47. McLaren PJ, Carrington M. The impact of host genetic variation on infection with HIV-1. *Nat Immunol*. (2015) 16:577–83. doi: 10.1038/ni.3147
48. McLaren PJ, Pulit SL, Gurdasani D, Bartha I, Shea PR, Pomilla C, et al. Evaluating the impact of functional genetic variation on HIV-1 control. *J Infect Dis*. (2017) 216:1063–9. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jix470
49. Brouwer KC, Lal RB, Mirel LB, Yang C, van Eijk AM, Ayisi J, et al. Polymorphism of Fc receptor IIa for IgG in infants is associated with susceptibility to perinatal HIV-1 infection. *AIDS*. (2004) 18:1187–94. doi: 10.1097/00002030-200405210-00012
50. Milligan C, Richardson BA, John-Stewart G, Nduati R, Overbaugh J. FCGR2A and FCGR3A genotypes in human immunodeficiency virus mother-to-child transmission. *Open Forum Infect Dis.* (2015) 2:ofv149. doi: 10.1093/ofid/ofv149
51. Ananworanich J, Chomont N, Eller LA, Kroon E, Tovanabutra S, Bose M, et al. HIV DNA set point is rapidly established in acute HIV infection and dramatically reduced by early ART. *EBioMedicine*. (2016) 11:68–72. doi: 10.1016/j.ebiom.2016.07.024
52. Saez-Cirion A, Bacchus C, Hocqueloux L, Avettand-Fenoel V, Girault I, Lecuroux C, et al. Post-treatment HIV-1 controllers with a long-term virological remission after the interruption of early initiated antiretroviral therapy ANRS VISCONTI Study. *PLoS Pathog*. (2013) 9:e1003211. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1003211
53. Halper-Stromberg A, Lu CL, Klein F, Horwitz JA, Bournazos S, Nogueira L, et al. Broadly neutralizing antibodies and viral inducers decrease rebound from HIV-1 latent reservoirs in humanized mice. *Cell*. (2014) 158:989–99. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2014.07.043
54. Descours B, Petitjean G, López-Zaragoza JL, Bruel T, Raffel R, Psomas C, et al. CD32a is a marker of a CD4 T-cell HIV reservoir harbouring replication-competent proviruses. *Nature*. (2017) 543:564–7. doi: 10.1038/nature21710
55. De Souza MS, Phanuphak N, Pinyakorn S, Trichavaroj R, Pattanachaiwit S, Chomchey N, et al. Impact of nucleic acid testing relative to antigen/antibody combination immunoassay on the detection of acute HIV infection. *AIDS*. (2015) 29:793–800. doi: 10.1097/QAD.0000000000000616
56. Ananworanich J, Fletcher JL, Pinyakorn S, van Griensven F, Vandergeeten C, Schuetz A, et al. A novel acute HIV infection staging system based on 4th generation immunoassay. *Retrovirology*. (2013) 10:56. doi: 10.1186/1742-4690-10-56
57. Abdel-Mohsen M, Kuri-Cervantes L, Grau-Exposito J, Spivak AM, Nell RA, Tomescu C, et al. CD32 is expressed on cells with transcriptionally active HIV but does not enrich for HIV DNA in resting T cells. *Sci Transl Med*. (2018) 10:eaar6759. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.aar6759
58. Osuna CE, Lim SY, Kublin JL, Apps R, Chen E, Mota TM, et al. Evidence that CD32a does not mark the HIV-1 latent reservoir. *Nature*. (2018) 561:E20–8. doi: 10.1038/s41586-018-0495-2
59. Bertagnolli LN, White JA, Simonetti FR, Beg SA, Lai J, Tomescu C, et al. The role of CD32 during HIV-1 infection. *Nature*. (2018) 561:E17–9. doi: 10.1038/s41586-018-0494-3
60. Perez L, Anderson J, Chipman J, Thorkelson A, Chun TW, Moir S, et al. Conflicting evidence for HIV enrichment in CD32(+) CD4 T cells. *Nature*. (2018) 561, E9–16. doi: 10.1038/s41586-018-0493-4
61. Prentice HA, Tomaras GD, Geraghty DE, Apps R, Fong Y, Ehrenberg PK, et al. HLA class II genes modulate vaccine-induced antibody responses to affect HIV-1 acquisition. *Sci Transl Med*. (2015) 7:296ra112. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.aab4005
62. Li SS, Gilbert PB, Tomaras GD, Kijak G, Ferrari G, Thomas R, et al. FCGR2C polymorphisms associate with HIV-1 vaccine protection in RV144 trial. *J Clin Invest*. (2014) 124:3879–90. doi: 10.1172/JCI75539
63. Gartland AJ, Li S, McNevin J, Tomaras GD, Gottardo R, Janes H, et al. Analysis of HLA A*02 association with vaccine efficacy in the RV144 HIV-1 vaccine trial. *J Virol*. (2014) 88:8242–55. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01164-14
64. Rerks-Ngarm S, Pitisuttithum P, Nitayaphan S, Kaewkungwal J, Chiu J, Paris R, et al. Vaccination with ALVAC and AIDSVAX to prevent HIV-1 infection in Thailand. *N Engl J Med*. (2009) 361:2209–20. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa0908492
65. Rolland M, Edlefsen PT, Larsen BB, Tovanabutra S, Sanders-Buell E, Hertz T, et al. Increased HIV-1 vaccine efficacy against viruses with genetic signatures in Env V2. *Nature*. (2012) 490:417–20. doi: 10.1038/nature11519
66. Peng X, Li SS, Gilbert PB, Geraghty DE, Katze MG. FCGR2C polymorphisms associated with HIV-1 vaccine protection are linked to altered gene expression of Fc-gamma receptors in human B cells. *PLoS ONE.* (2016) 11:e0152425. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0152425
67. Forthal DN, Gilbert PB, Landucci G, Phan T. Recombinant gp120 vaccine-induced antibodies inhibit clinical strains of HIV-1 in the presence of Fc receptor-bearing effector cells and correlate inversely with HIV infection rate. *J Immunol.* (2007) 178:6596–603.
68. Forthal DN, Gabriel EE, Wang A, Landucci G, Phan TB. Association of Fcgamma receptor IIIa genotype with the rate of HIV infection after gp120 vaccination. *Blood*. (2012) 120:2836–42. doi: 10.1182/blood-2012-05-431361
69. EMBL-EBI. *Ensembl Variation Database*. (2018). Avaliable online at: https://www.ensembl.org/info/genome/variation/index.html
70. Pyo CW, Guethlein LA, Vu Q, Wang R, Abi-Rached L, Norman PJ, et al. Different patterns of evolution in the centromeric and telomeric regions of group A and B haplotypes of the human killer cell Ig-like receptor locus. *PLoS ONE.* (2010) 5:e15115. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0015115
71. Pyo CW, Wang R, Vu Q, Cereb N, Yang SY, Duh FM, et al. Recombinant structures expand and contract inter and intragenic diversification at the KIR locus. *BMC Genomics*. (2013) 14:89. doi: 10.1186/1471-2164-14-89
72. Roe D, Vierra-Green C, Pyo CW, Eng K, Hall R, Kuang R, et al. Revealing complete complex KIR haplotypes phased by long-read sequencing technology. *Genes Immun*. (2017) 18:127–34. doi: 10.1038/gene.2017.10
73. Oxelius VA, Pandey JP. Human immunoglobulin constant heavy G chain (IGHG) (Fcgamma) (GM) genes, defining innate variants of IgG molecules and B cells, have impact on disease and therapy. *Clin Immunol*. (2013) 149:475–86. doi: 10.1016/j.clim.2013.10.003
74. Lefranc MP, Lefranc G. Human Gm, Km, and Am allotypes and their molecular characterization: a remarkable demonstration of polymorphism. *Methods Mol Biol*. (2012) 882:635–80. doi: 10.1007/978-1-61779-842-9_34
75. Pandey JP, Li Z. The forgotten tale of immunoglobulin allotypes in cancer risk and treatment. *Exper Hematol Oncol*. (2013) 2:6. doi: 10.1186/2162-3619-2-6
76. Lewis GK. Role of Fc-mediated antibody function in protective immunity against HIV-1. *Immunology*. (2014) 142:46–57. doi: 10.1111/imm.12232

77. Barouch DH, Alter G, Broge T, Linde C, Ackerman ME, Brown EP, et al. Protective efficacy of adenovirus/protein vaccines against SIV challenges in rhesus monkeys. *Science*. (2015) 349:320–4. doi: 10.1126/science.aab3886
78. Barouch DH, Tomaka FL, Wegmann F, Stieh DJ, Alter G, Robb ML, et al. Evaluation of a mosaic HIV-1 vaccine in a multicentre, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase 1/2a clinical trial (APPROACH) and in rhesus monkeys (NHP 13-19). *Lancet*. (2018) 392:232–43. doi: 10.1016/S0140-6736(18)31364-3
79. Barouch DH, Stephenson KE, Borducchi EN, Smith K, Stanley K, McNally AG, et al. Protective efficacy of a global HIV-1 mosaic vaccine against heterologous SHIV challenges in rhesus monkeys. *Cell*. (2013) 155:531–9. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2013.09.061
80. Issac B, Ehrenberg PK, Eller M, Alter G, Sekaly RP, Robb ML, et al. Vaccine-induced gene signature correlates with protection against acquisition in three independent vaccine efficacy trials including RV144. In: *Conference Abstract. HIV Research for Prevention HIVR4P*. Madrid (2018).

Conflict of Interest Statement: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

REVIEW
published: 09 May 2019
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00996

A Case for Antibodies as Mechanistic Correlates of Immunity in Tuberculosis

Jeffrey Y. Kawahara[1,2], *Edward B. Irvine*[1,3] *and Galit Alter*[1]*

[1] Ragon Institute of MGH, MIT and Harvard, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Cambridge, MA, United States, [2] Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA, United States, [3] Harvard T.H. Chan School of Public Health, Boston, MA, United States

Tuberculosis infects one quarter of the world's population and is the leading cause of death by a single infectious agent, responsible for a reported 1.3 million deaths in 2017. While *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* is treatable with antibiotic therapy, the increased prevalence of drug resistance, coupled with the variable efficacy of the only widely approved vaccine, has highlighted the need for creative approaches to therapeutic and vaccine development. Historically, a productive immune response to *M. tuberculosis* has been thought to be nearly entirely cell-mediated, with humoral immunity being largely dismissed. However, in this review, we will discuss the historical skepticism surrounding the role of the humoral immune response to *M. tuberculosis*, and examine more recent evidence suggesting that antibodies may play a valuable role in host defense against the pathogen. Despite the amount of data portraying antibodies in a negative light, emerging data have begun to highlight the unexpected role of antibodies in *M. tuberculosis* control. Specifically, it has become clear that antibody features of both the variable and constant domain (Fc) ultimately determine the extent to which antibodies modulate disease. Thus, a more precise definition of the antigen-binding and innate immune recruiting functions of antibodies that contribute to *M. tuberculosis* restriction, are sure to help guide the development of next-generation therapeutics and vaccines to curb this global epidemic.

Keywords: tuberculosis, antibodies, cell-mediated immunity, Fc effector function, innate immune system, humoral immunity

OPEN ACCESS

Edited by:
Guido Ferrari,
Duke University, United States

Reviewed by:
Kondwani C. Jambo,
Liverpool School of Tropical Medicine, United Kingdom
One Bridget Dintwe,
Cape Town HVTN Immunology Lab, South Africa

***Correspondence:**
Galit Alter
galter@partners.org

Specialty section:
This article was submitted to Molecular Innate Immunity, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology

Received: *05 March 2019*
Accepted: *18 April 2019*
Published: *09 May 2019*

Citation:
Kawahara JY, Irvine EB and Alter G (2019) A Case for Antibodies as Mechanistic Correlates of Immunity in Tuberculosis. Front. Immunol. 10:996. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00996

INTRODUCTION

Mycobacterium tuberculosis (*Mtb*), the causative agent of tuberculosis, is the leading cause of death from single infectious agent globally. *Mtb* infects one quarter of the global population, and caused ∼1.3 million deaths worldwide in 2017 (1). Importantly, tuberculosis infection does not always lead to tuberculosis disease, as tuberculosis presents as a spectrum of infection states. These range from an asymptomatic state, referred to as latent infection (LTBI), to the deadlier active disease (ATB).

While tuberculosis is treatable with antibiotics, the immense global burden, as well as the rise of drug resistance, has highlighted the need for improved methods for disease treatment and prevention. Bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG), developed nearly a century ago, remains the only licensed tuberculosis vaccine. Prepared using a live attenuated strain of *Mycobacterium bovis*, its protective efficacy is remarkably inconsistent (2, 3). BCG shows consistent protection against severe forms of tuberculosis disease, such as tuberculosis meningitis and miliary tuberculosis, in infants (4). However, the vaccine exhibits limited protection against pulmonary tuberculosis,

and importantly, does not protect teenagers and adults who are most likely to spread *Mtb* (5, 6). Given that BCG vaccination is widely given, yet tuberculosis remains the largest infectious disease killer globally, it is clear that a more effective vaccine is urgently needed to control the disease globally. Thus, creative approaches to therapeutic and vaccine development are critical to change the trajectory of the ongoing tuberculosis epidemic.

Cellular-mediated immunity (CMI), in particular $CD4^+$ T cells, are unequivocally important in restricting tuberculosis progression, and are seen as the primary immunologic axis mediating host immunity to *Mtb*. Both CD4 knock-out studies in animal models (7–9), as well as epidemiologic data documenting increased rates of active disease among HIV-infected patients with low $CD4^+$ T cell counts (10, 11), clearly demonstrate the lack of bacterial control in the absence of this pivotal immune effector. Thus, historically, the vast majority of vaccine design efforts have focused on the development of strategies that harness T cell immunity to drive protection or control of *Mtb*.

Conversely, while antibodies represent the correlate of immunity following most clinically approved vaccines (12), humoral immunity has been understudied in the context of *Mtb* vaccine design due to its perceived insignificance for anti-microbial control (13–15). Yet, the idea that the humoral immune response plays little role in *Mtb* infection is in part related to the perceived dichotomy between humoral and cellular immunity. Specifically, the paradigm dictates that Th1 responses counter intracellular pathogens by driving CMI, while humoral immunity is largely responsible for the control and clearance of extracellular pathogens (16). Consequently, in the absence of unambiguous evidence proving a protective role for antibodies, it has been assumed that due to their extracellular canonical mode of action, antibodies must not be relevant or critical for protection against *Mtb*. Moreover, despite our emerging appreciation for a role for antibodies in driving cellular cytotoxicity via the recruitment of the innate immune system as well as additional anti-microbial mechanisms, the perceived insignificance of the humoral immune response to *Mtb* remains pervasive in the field.

However, a growing body of literature has provided evidence indicating that *Mtb*-specific antibodies modulate tuberculosis disease. Specifically, evidence from passive transfer, monoclonal therapeutic, cohort, and vaccine studies each individually, and collectively argue that antibodies can positively shape the immune response to *Mtb*. Here we will discuss the uncertainties that have long surrounded the antibody response to *Mtb*, as well as examine the evidence suggesting that antibodies represent a wealth of untapped potential against this global killer.

A CASE FOR ANTIBODIES FROM PASSIVE TRANSFER STUDIES

The positive results of serum therapies against a range of infectious diseases in the late 1800s spawned a plethora of human and animal transfer experiments attempting to cure tuberculosis by the same methodology. In the 1890s, the Henry Phipps Institute immunized cows with a heat-killed concentrate of *Mtb* bacilli (17). However, the administration of the cow serum failed to show any benefit in tuberculosis patients (18, 19). Similar work performed by Viquerat and De Schweinitz aimed at exploring the impact of administration of immune sera from different animals (horse, cow, donkey) on disease, again, showed little benefit following passive transfer (18, 19). Moreover, in a more recent study, New Zealand rabbits were intravenously infected with *Mtb* in order to generate immune serum. When this serum was administered to mice challenged with BCG, disease was actually enhanced (20), arguing for a deleterious effect of *Mtb*-specific antibodies. Over time, studies, such as these have helped to construct the narrative that antibodies are not beneficial, and may even be detrimental.

Yet, in the wake of these disappointments, several studies had in fact shown a beneficial, bactericidal activity of antibodies both *in vitro* and *in vivo*. For example, immune guinea pig serum was reported to have complete bactericidal activity against *Mtb in vitro* (18). Moreover, early passive transfer of immune bovine serum in 412 subjects with tuberculosis, was reported to induce complete resolution of disease in 16% of treated subjects, to ameliorate clinical symptoms in 40% of subjects, and to mediate the clearance of sputum bacteria in 43% of patients treated with serum (21). Similarly, immune donkey serum was also reported to cure 83% of treated subjects in another study (22). Finally, the use of horse serum was shown to have significant disease benefit in more than 80% of treated individuals in one study, however the same serum had limited benefit in additional clinical studies (23, 24), calling into question comparability across studies (19). Thus, in reality, small sample sizes, differences in disease severity, differences in clinical endpoint analyses, and the lack of control groups in many of these passive transfer studies resulted in mixed findings, ranging from no benefit to complete resolution of disease (6, 19, 22–24). Furthermore, antibiotics began to gain traction at this time showing consistent anti-microbial effects (25, 26), casting further doubt, not on the anti-microbial activity of some sera, but in the utility of these therapeutics in light of simpler treatment regimens with drugs.

Yet, despite the intermittent signals of efficacy, little attention focused on the underlying biological differences across studies. Specifically, little attention was paid to potential species-specific differences in efficacy across passively transferred antibodies, the impact of sensitization approaches, the critical potential impact of differences in antibody-specificities across immune sera, or the overall anti-microbial potency of the transferred sera. Thus, rather than demonstrating a lack of clinical benefit, collectively, the body of passive transfer studies instead clearly highlighted that not all antibodies are protective, and that qualitative nuances exist across humoral responses that are critical determinants of humoral protection (19).

Despite the confusing historical data, a number of passive transfer studies performed in the past two decades support the protective nature of serum-transfer. In a passive transfer study by Guirado et al., a liposome packaged preparation of *Mtb* extract in combination with rifampicin and isoniazid was administered to *Mtb* infected mice (27). Hyperimmune serum was then extracted from these mice and applied to previously *Mtb* infected SCID mice (lacking functional T cell, B cells, and NK cells) that

had received antibiotics. Through 10 weeks post-infection, the hyperimmune serum treated mice maintained lower CFUs in the lungs than control groups (27). Thus, even in the setting of a compromised immune response in the SCID mice, passive transfer was able to reduce *Mtb* burden *in vivo* independent of CMI.

Another significant passive transfer phenotype resulted from the administration of human intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIg) to *Mtb*-infected mice. IVIg is derived from the serum of large numbers of individuals, and often harbors immunoglobulin from *Mtb* exposed individuals either due to BCG vaccination, undiagnosed latent infection, or environmental mycobacterial exposure. Using an IVIg preparation with *Mtb*-specific antibodies, investigators observed a significant decrease in *Mtb* burden in mice following the passive administration of IVIg (28). Interestingly, this anti-microbial function was observed when the pool of antibodies was administered both early and late in infection (28). Given the emerging appreciation for the critical protective role of antibody IVIg Fc-glycosylation in autoimmune disease (29), Olivares et al. profiled the impact of Fc-deglycosylated IVIg. Removal of the Fc-glycan using EndoS, resulted in significantly reduced anti-microbial control, highlighting for the first time that the Fc-activity of transferred antibodies was critical to their protective function (30). Prior work by Olivares et al. found that intranasal IVIg was protective in mice and that this effect was eliminated when the inoculant was depleted of *Mtb*-specific antibodies, indicating that protection was mediated by antibody binding and subsequent Fc-receptor interactions (31). Thus, these data pointed to functions beyond simple binding and blockade of infection, in control and elimination of *Mtb*.

Finally, an intriguing study by Li et al. demonstrated that some, but not all, sera from infected or even sensitized-but-uninfected individuals harbor protective antibodies in serum transfer studies (32). Specifically, sera from healthcare workers with latent infection or from healthcare workers that were highly exposed, but remained negative in clinical diagnostic tests, were transferred to mice prior to aerosol challenge. Upon challenge, antibodies from half a dozen healthcare workers, including both latently and uninfected donors, conferred protection, resulting in a 2- to 3-fold decrease in lung CFUs compared to mice receiving serum from actively infected donors. Surprisingly, $CD4^+$ T cells were also critical for serum-based protection, suggesting a novel axis by which antibodies and T cells may work synergistically to drive anti-microbial function. Moreover, beyond this observation, the data reported from this study were the first to highlight that not all sera are equally protective, and that even sera from highly-exposed, but uninfected individuals may harbor the key protective humoral immune responses that can drive anti-microbial function *in vivo*.

Taken together, despite early inconsistencies in preclinical and clinical results following polyclonal passive transfer studies, emerging data clearly highlight the protective nature of some—but not all—serum preparations. These data clearly motivate a re-examination of the specific features of polyclonal antibody responses able to drive protection following serum transfer.

A CASE FOR ANTIBODIES FROM MONOCLONAL THERAPEUTIC STUDIES

Due to their defined antigen specificity and modifiable Fc domains, monoclonal antibodies allow the precise determination of antibody features contributing to disease control. In the late 1990's, an array of murine-derived monoclonal antibodies were created and assessed for their ability to mediate protection in mice that largely exhibited progressive disease (33), representing a high bar for antibody-mediated protection. While not all tested monoclonal antibodies conferred protection *in vivo*, antibody clone 9d8, specific to the capsular antigen arabinomannan (AM), significantly improved survival over time (34). While this antibody did not reduce *Mtb* burden, it prolonged survival via improved granulomatous containment of *Mtb*. Interestingly, rather than a canonical blocking function of the antibody, the authors speculated that this effect was attributable to antibody-mediated enhancement of cellular immunity. These data were among the first to highlight the protective activity of monoclonal antibodies, as well as the possibility that these molecules may confer protection through unexpected mechanisms of action.

Since this study, additional monoclonal antibody passive transfer experiments with antibodies targeting different *Mtb* antigens have resulted in various forms of protective activity. Hamasur et al. observed that antibody clone SMITB14, specific to the cell well-glycolipid lipoarabinomannan (LAM), prolonged survival upon administration to mice (35). In contrast to the previous study with the 9d8 antibody to AM, the LAM-specific SMITB14 antibody resulted in a significant reduction in bacterial burden in the lungs and spleen of infected mice. Importantly, when the $F(ab')_2$ domain of SMITB14 was administered, following the removal of the antibody constant domain that is required for the recruitment of innate immune functions, survival was similar to full length antibodies, suggesting that the binding activity of the antibody was sufficient to provide protection against disease. In contrast to the work with IVIg, this data pointed to the importance of binding and potential blockade of infection by LAM-specific antibodies, analogous to the neutralization of viruses (36), that is independent of Fc-interactions within the immune system (35).

Two antibodies targeting *Mtb* protein antigens have additionally been shown to modulate disease *in vivo*. Passive transfer of a monoclonal antibody binding heparin-binding hemagglutinin adhesin (HBHA), a surface exposed mycobacterial adhesin (37, 38), was shown to prevent mycobacterial extrapulmonary dissemination in mice (38). Additionally, a second antibody targeting the heat shock protein X (HspX), a stress-induced intracellular and cell wall protein (39), was shown to reduce lung *Mtb* burden in mice (40). Interestingly, the HspX-specific antibody was of the human IgA1 isotype, and importantly, protection was only observed in mice transgenic for human CD89 (FcαR1), the primary receptor for human IgA. Monoclonal antibody administered to the CD89-negative littermates did not demonstrate any measurable level of protection, strongly suggesting that the effect was Fc-mediated.

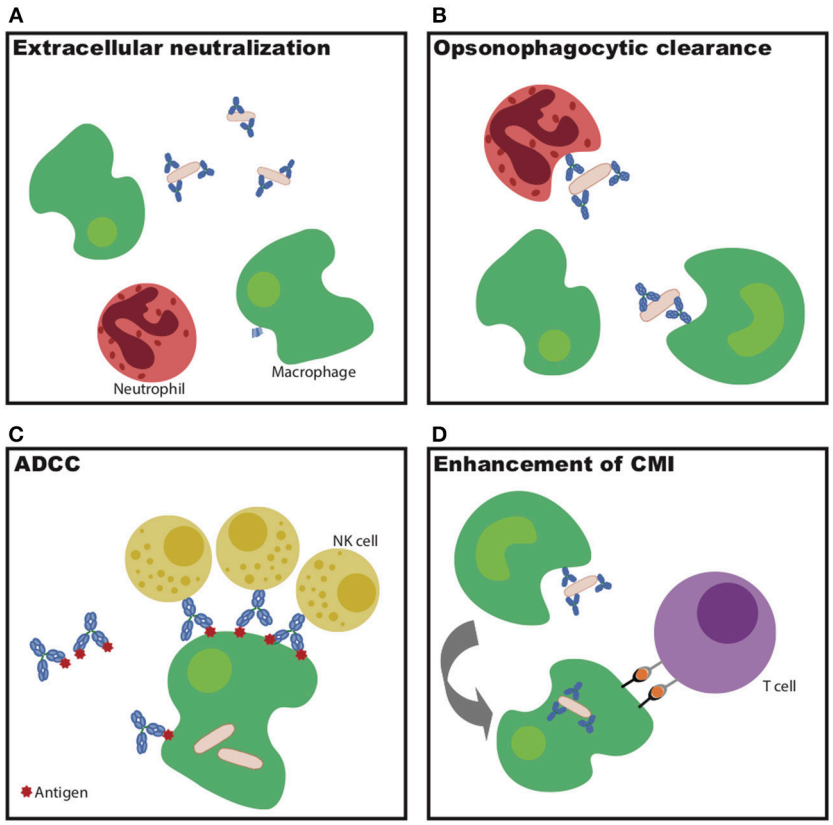


FIGURE 1 | Potential mechanisms of antibody-mediated Mtb restriction. **(A)** Antibody binding to extracellular bacteria prevents entry into cells. **(B)** Antibody-dependent cellular phagocytosis drives increased bacterial killing during uptake. **(C)** Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity drives infected cell and/or bacterial killing. **(D)** Antibodies potentiate cell-mediated immunity via enhanced antigen presentation.

Overall, this monoclonal therapeutic work demonstrates that multiple antibody specificities are able to confer protection against *Mtb in vivo*. However, the protective mechanisms diverge by specificity, highlighting the multiple humoral mechanisms—some via strict blockade and others via innate immune engagement (**Figure 1**)—that may be harnessed to control and ultimately eliminate the bacteria *in vivo*.

A CASE FOR ANTIBODIES FROM COHORT STUDIES

Arguments for and against antibodies have additionally emerged based on observations from human cohort studies. A study in China showed that patients with X-linked agammaglobulinemia (XLA) do not have increased susceptibility to tuberculosis despite lacking mature B cells and normal antibody titers (41). Similarly, patients with defective Bruton's tyrosine kinase genes, manifesting in compromised humoral immunity, also show no indication that humoral immune deficiencies predispose individuals to increased risk of tuberculosis disease (12, 42). However, critically, many of the study subjects, lacking humoral immune components, were given IVIg therapy (12, 41, 42), transferring *Mtb*-specific antibodies; a clear confounding factor given the protective effect of IVIg described above (28, 30, 31). Other arguments against humoral immunity cite the finding that humans receiving B cell-depleting monoclonal antibody, rituximab, do not have a measurable increase in risk for tuberculosis disease (43, 44). While appealing, the argument does not take into consideration the fact that rituximab has a limited to negligible impact on depleting antibody-secreting cells, plasma cells, that reside in the bone marrow and do not express CD20. Moreover, rituximab treatment does not alter antibody levels that remain relatively stable over time (43, 44).

In contrast to the arguments against antibodies as correlates of *Mtb* control, both historical and more recent cohort studies have indicated a potential role for antibodies in combating tuberculosis disease. While increased *Mtb*-specific antibody levels have traditionally been associated with progressive disease (12), in the 1990s, a study in children from the UK and southeast Asia found that lipoarabinomannan (LAM)-specific IgG titers correlated with decreased risk of disseminated disease independent of age and geographic origin (45). Troughs in LAM IgG titer levels coincided with peak incidence of bacterial dissemination, and serum derived from the disseminated group also showed significantly ($p < 0.05$) decreased titers to purified LAM as measured by LAM binding ELISA. These data pointed

to specific antibody populations, rather than total *Mtb*-specific antibodies, as a correlate of disease control.

More recently, building on qualitative differences in *Mtb*-specific antibodies, it was observed that individuals with latent and active tuberculosis generate distinct functional antibody profiles (46). Given the ability of antibodies to deploy the innate immune system to drive pathogen clearance, the study broadly profiled the Fc-profile of *Mtb*-specific antibodies. The study noted nearly distinct antibody Fc profiles across the groups, with differences largely driven by distinct IgG Fc-glycosylation patterns. Specifically, purified IgG from LTBI patients exhibited enhanced binding levels to FcγRIIIa, the Fc-receptor found on NK cells, which resulted in increased antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) and increased NK cell activation. Intriguingly, these differences in biophysical and functional differences also corresponded with an increased ability for antibodies from LTBI patients to drive intracellular *Mtb* killing in macrophages. Consistent with these data, a recent multi-cohort analysis that aimed to identify immune factors associated with asymptomatic LTBI, observed that LTBI control was associated with higher signaling via FcγRIIIa, and enhanced NK cell activity (47), corroborating the potential role of NK cell recruiting antibodies in long-term *Mtb* control.

Taken together, while human cohort studies have been commonly pointed to as evidence against a protective role for antibodies in *Mtb* infection, increasing evidence argues against this. Human cohort studies have been consistent with monoclonal and passive transfer studies, identifying LAM as a productive antibody target, as well as identifying the Fc-domain and antibody effector functions as critical qualities that modulate disease outcome. Thus, specifically manipulating both the specificity and functionality of the *Mtb*-specific humoral immune response represent tractable approaches for the design of next-generation therapeutics and vaccines.

A CASE FOR ANTIBODIES FROM VACCINE STUDIES

Despite the fact that nearly all successful vaccines to date function by eliciting protective antibody responses, the majority of tuberculosis vaccines in use and in development, have been focused on the induction of CMI (48). Recent work by Hansen et al. demonstrates that a cytomegalovirus vector vaccine expressing *Mtb* antigens protects against *Mtb* infection without eliciting detectable antibody levels in the blood (49). However, a number of vaccine studies in murine and macaque preclinical models, as well as large-scale clinical trials in humans, have suggested a potentially protective role for antibodies in *Mtb* vaccine efficacy.

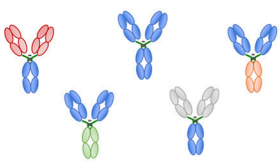
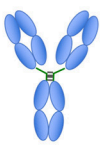
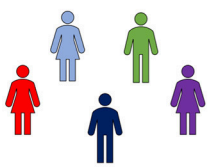
Study type	Evidence	
 Passive transfer studies	Evidence for	❖ Hyperimmune serum from vaccinated mice reduces *Mtb* burden in SCID mice upon passive transfer (27) ❖ IVIg passive transfer reduces *Mtb* burden in mice in an antigen-specific, and Fc-dependent manner (28-30) ❖ Immune serum from highly exposed healthcare workers decreases respiratory bacterial burden in mice upon passive transfer (32)
	Evidence against	❖ Administration of immune sera from various animals failed to ameliorate tuberculosis disease *in vivo* (17-20)
 Monoclonal therapeutic studies	Evidence for	❖ Monoclonal antibodies specific to AM, LAM, HBHA, and HspX ameliorate *Mtb* disease in mice upon passive transfer (34,35,38,40)
	Evidence against	❖ LAM and mAGP-specific IgM antibodies did not significantly protect mice upon passive transfer (34)
 Cohort studies	Evidence for	❖ Increased LAM-specific IgG titers correlated with decreased risk of disseminated tuberculosis disease (45) ❖ Purified IgG from LTBI patients exhibits increased binding to FcγRIIIa, increased ADCC activity, and increased ability to drive intracellular *Mtb* killing compared to purified IgG from ATB patients (46)
	Evidence against	❖ B cell and antibody depleted patients do not show increased risk of developing tuberculosis (12,41,42, 43,44)
 Vaccine studies	Evidence for	❖ Antibodies elicited by an AM-conjugate vaccine have protective activity in mice (50) ❖ *Mtb*-specific IgA levels in the lungs represent a primary correlate of vaccine-mediated protection in rhesus macaques (51) ❖ Vaccine-induced Ag85A-specific IgG titers correlate with reduced risk of developing ATB (52)
	Evidence against	❖ Significant antibody levels not detected to select *Mtb* antigens following protective vaccination of rhesus macaques with a cytomegalovirus-based vaccine (49)

FIGURE 2 | A table summarizing the key findings for and against a role for antibodies in *Mtb* disease control.

Beginning in the murine model, Prados-Rosales et al. performed one of the few studies that rationally designed a tuberculosis vaccine to selectively induce a mycobacteria-specific antibody response (50). Specifically, the capsular polysaccharide AM was conjugated to either *Mtb* Ag85b or the *B. anthracis* protective antigen. Both polysaccharide-conjugate vaccines significantly reduced lung bacterial burden in *Mtb* infected mice. Additionally, passive transfer of immune serum from AM-vaccinated mice provided protection in the form of reduced lung bacterial burden when administered prior to *Mtb* challenge of naïve mice. These data therefore provided concrete evidence for a protective role of vaccine induced AM-specific antibodies *in vivo*, pointing to the potential utility of a polysaccharide conjugate vaccine against *Mtb*.

In the rhesus macaque model, a localized, lung specific vaccine-induced antibody response was linked to protection (51). Specifically, rhesus macaques were vaccinated with BCG either intradermally, representing the standard route of immunization, or by the mucosal route via endobronchial instillation. Following repeated low-dose challenge with *Mtb*, the group receiving the mucosal vaccination demonstrated decreased lung CFUs and pathology. Intriguingly, the mucosal group also mounted a unique and robust PPD-specific antibody response, including enhanced PPD-specific IgA levels, locally in the bronchoalveolar lavage fluid. This compartment-specific induction of immunoglobulin in the lung represented a primary correlate of protective immunity, pointing to a humoral correlate of protection—focused at the site of infection—for the first time following BCG vaccination.

Finally, in humans, antibodies have emerged as a correlate of protection in a number of different tuberculosis vaccine clinical trials. In 2009, a phase 2b trial was conducted in BCG primed individuals, using a recombinant Vaccinia Ankara virus modified to express Ag85A (MVA85A) to boost cellular immune responses (52). While results confirmed that the treatment was safe and tolerable, vaccine efficacy was not significantly higher than BCG vaccination alone. Despite the lack of protective efficacy over BCG, a 2016 correlates analysis found that the presence of Ag85A-specific IgG titers correlated with a reduced risk of developing TB (53), pointing to the unexpected presence of a humoral immune correlate of protection in this human vaccine study.

More recently, protection was observed using an adjuvanted fusion-protein vaccine strategy in the M72/AS01$_E$ vaccine trial (54). The trial tested the safety and protective efficacy of a vaccine comprised of a fusion of *Mtb* antigens *Mtb*32A and *Mtb*39A, two mycobacterial virulence factors poised to induce robust T cell immunity, delivered with AS01 as the adjuvant. This phase 2b trial showed an exciting 54% protection against progression to active tuberculosis disease in *Mtb*-infected adults. Interestingly, while expected T cell immunity was observed, the vaccine induced a robust anti-M72 protein-specific IgG response that remained 26-fold higher than the pre-vaccination levels even 12 months following vaccination (55). Given that these proteins may contribute to mycobacterial virulence, it is plausible that both canonical virulence blocking antibodies as well as potentially non-canonical antibody functions could contribute to vaccine efficacy. Thus, additional work is required to identify more precisely the potential mechanistic role of antibodies in M72-mediated protection from infection.

Overall, data from vaccine studies in mice, primates, and humans, have hinted at a potentially protective role for antibodies in mediating protection. While it must be acknowledged that in each of these cases a robust T cell response was also observed, the antibody responses should not be overlooked and may function independently of, and/or in coordination with CMI to confer protection. Thus, vaccines designed to induce antigen-specific immunoglobulins merit further consideration.

FUTURE PERSPECTIVES FOR ANTIBODIES

Together, the studies examined above illustrate that antibodies can modulate *Mtb* disease *in vivo*, and that this protective effect can manifest in numerous ways (**Figure 2**). Across numerous categories of experimental evidence, antibodies binding specific antigens, including polysaccharide surface antigens (AM and LAM), and virulence factors (HBHA and Ag85) demonstrate particular promise. Nevertheless, relative to the large number and broad landscape of *Mtb* antigens, very little is known about additional antigens that may represent productive antibody targets. Moving forward, continued generation and testing of *Mtb*-specific monoclonal antibodies against a diverse array of *Mtb* antigens will allow this further antigenic characterization and the evolution of vaccine design, beyond the empirical approach, to a rational process founded on knowledge of protective targets in *Mtb*.

Beyond recognition of specific antigens by the antibody variable domain, evidence indicates that antibody Fc-mediated signaling also plays a critical part in *Mtb* control. Mice unable to signal through activating Fc-gamma receptors have increased bacterial burden in the lung and spleen following *Mtb* infection, as well as decreased survival compared to wild-type mice (56). Consistent with this finding, lines of evidence across passive transfer, cohorts, and vaccine studies all indicate a likely role for the antibody Fc in antibody-mediated protection (40, 45–47, 56). As alluded to above, this Fc-mediated action may function through enhanced opsonize bacterial uptake, through the recruitment of innate immune cell killing of infected macrophages, or through the potentiation of adaptive immunity through the delivery of antigens for immune priming via antigen presentation (**Figure 1**) (51). Expanding our understanding of the mechanisms by which antibodies may selectively leverage distinct immune effector mechanisms of action will be critical for the rational design of next generation monoclonals or vaccines to combat *Mtb* disease.

Future studies leveraging animal models will remain key to uncover antibody mechanisms of action, and will advance the development of vaccines and therapeutics able to fully harness the humoral immune system to fight the bacteria. Non-human primates represent the ideal animal model for antibody studies due to similar disease manifestations (spectrum of disease) as observed in humans (57), as well as their highly homologous

Fc-receptor repertoire and function (58). However, due to the limited number of BL3 facilities able to conduct *Mtb* infections in NHPs, as well as the high cost associated with running NHP studies, the model remains under-utilized. Nevertheless, mice represent an imperfect but potential first model to study the role of antibodies in *Mtb* disease. While mice do not display the same spectrum of tuberculosis infection states as humans, numerous consistencies between mouse and human work have advocated for their continued use. For example, LAM-specific antibodies have been demonstrated to ameliorate *Mtb* disease in mice (35), and in humans, high LAM antibody titers are associated with less severe tuberculosis disease (45). Moreover, Li et al. demonstrated that antibodies from latently infected, and highly exposed, but uninfected healthcare workers reduced *Mtb* burden in mice upon passive transfer as compared to IgG from ATB patients, mimicking results observed *in vitro* in an *Mtb* human whole-blood restriction assay (32). Furthermore, given the analogous response of human and innate immune cells to human IgG1 antibodies (59), the mouse model offers an opportunity to explore the mechanistic function of anti-*Mtb* IgG antibodies *in vivo*. Finally, human Fc-receptor knock-in mice, able to respond to both IgGs (60) and IgAs (40) offer additional opportunities to screen and explore human protective antibody responses *in vivo*.

CONCLUDING REMARKS

Though historically humoral immunity has often been overlooked, and in some instances wrongfully discredited, in the context of *Mtb* infection, the evidence amassed from passive transfer, monoclonal therapeutics, cohort and vaccine studies has coalesced into a compelling argument for the importance of antibodies and for their continued study (**Figure 2**). Ultimately, expanding on this work will provide a more complete picture of the immunological drivers of protection against *Mtb*, beyond simple CMI, and may precipitate the development of novel therapeutics and vaccines against this global killer.

AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

JK was the primary author of the manuscript. EI and GA offered substantial writing support, edits, and suggestions.

FUNDING

The Ragon Institute, the SAMANA Kay MGH Research Scholars Program, and the GPiB T32AI132120.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We would like to think that Ragon Institute and the SAMANA Kay MGH research scholars program for their support. Additional thanks to Patricia Grace and Richard Lu for their feedback during the writing process. We would also like to thank the GPiB T32AI132120.

REFERENCES

1. Global Tuberculosis Report 2018. *Global Tuberculosis Report 2018*. (2018). Available online at: https://www.who.int/tb/publications/global_report/en/ (accessed March 4, 2019).
2. Brandt L, Cunha JF, Olsen AW, Chilima B, Hirsch P, Appelberg R, et al. Failure of the *Mycobacterium bovis* BCG vaccine: some species of environmental mycobacteria block multiplication of BCG and induction of protective immunity to tuberculosis. *Infect Immun.* (2002) 70:672–8. doi: 10.1128/IAI.70.2.672-678.2002
3. Fine PEM. Variation in protection by BCG: implications of and for heterologous immunity. *Lancet.* (1995) 346:1339–45.
4. Saso A, Kampmann B. Vaccine responses in newborns. *Semin Immunopathol.* (2017) 39:627–42. doi: 10.1007/s00281-017-0654-9
5. Tuberculosis Prevention Trial. Trial of BCG vaccines in south India for tuberculosis prevention: first report. *Bull World Health Organ.* (1979) 57:819–27.
6. Colditz GA, Berkey CS, Mosteller F, Brewer TF, Wilson ME, Burdick E, et al. The efficacy of Bacillus Calmette-Guérin vaccination of newborns and infants in the prevention of tuberculosis: meta-analyses of the published literature. *Pediatrics.* (1995) 96:29–35.
7. Caruso AM, Serbina N, Klein E, Triebold K, Bloom BR, Flynn JL. Mice deficient in CD4 T cells have only transiently diminished levels of IFN-γ, yet succumb to tuberculosis 1. *J Immunol.* (1999) 162:5407–16. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.175.7.4593
8. Lin PL, Klein E, Fuhrman C, Rutledge T, Bigbee M, Flynn JL, et al. CD4 T cell depletion exacerbates acute *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* while reactivation of latent infection is dependent on severity of tissue depletion in cynomolgus macaques. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses.* (2012) 28:1693–702. doi: 10.1089/aid.2012.0028
9. Yao S, Wang RC, Chen CY, Chen ZW, Halliday L, Huang D. CD4+ T cells contain early extrapulmonary Tuberculosis (TB) dissemination and rapid TB progression and sustain multieffector functions of CD8+ T and CD3- lymphocytes: mechanisms of CD4+ T cell immunity. *J Immunol.* (2014) 192:2120–32. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1301373
10. Lawn SD, Butera ST, Shinnick TM. Tuberculosis unleashed: the impact of human immunodeficiency virus infection on the host granulomatous response to *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. *Microbes Infect.* (2002) 4:635–46. doi: 10.1016/S1286-4579(02)01582-4
11. Geldmacher C, Paxton WA, Heeregrave EJ, Casazza JP, Sanga E, Maboko L, et al. Preferential infection and depletion of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* –specific CD4 T cells after HIV-1 infection. *J Exp Med.* (2010) 207:2869–81. doi: 10.1084/jem.20100090
12. Jacobs AJ, McShane H, Mongkolsapaya J, Screaton GR, Wilkinson RJ. Antibodies and tuberculosis. *Tuberculosis.* (2016) 101:102–13. doi: 10.1016/j.tube.2016.08.001
13. Achkar JM, Casadevall A. Antibody-mediated immunity against tuberculosis: implications for vaccine development. *Cell Host Microbe.* (2013) 13:250–62. doi: 10.1016/j.chom.2013.02.009
14. Mackanes GB. *Resistance to Intracellular Infection*. (1971). Available online at: https://www-jstor-org.ezp-prod1.hul.harvard.edu/stable/pdf/30108766.pdf?refreqid=excelsior%3A753b2beb165bcb263e66b7254d50ae3b (accessed March 4, 2019).
15. Casadevall A. Antibody-mediated protection against intracellular pathogens. *Trends Microbiol.* (1998) 6:102–7. doi: 10.1016/S0966-842X(98)01208-6
16. Abebe F, Bjune G. The protective role of antibody responses during *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* infection. *Clin Exp Immunol.* (2009) 157:235–43. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2249.2009.03967.x
17. Flick L. Serum treatment in tuberculosis. *Rep Henry Phipps Inst.* (1905) 87–102.
18. Maragliano C. Le sérum antituberculeux et son antitoxine. *Rev Tuberc.* (1896) 131–8.

19. Glatman-Freedman A, Casadevall A. Serum therapy for tuberculosis revisited: reappraisal of the role of antibody-mediated immunity against *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. *Clin Microbiol Rev.* (1998) 11:514–32.
20. Forget A, Benoit JC, Turcotte R, Gusew Chartrand N. Enhancement activity of anti mycobacterial sera in experimental *Mycobacterium bovis* (BCG) infection in mice. *Infect Immun.* (1976) 13:1301–6.
21. Alexander Marmorek BD. *Antituberculous Serum and "Vaccine".* (1903). Available online at: https://ac-els-cdn-com.ezp-prod1.hul.harvard.edu/S0140673600501317/1-s2.0-S0140673600501317-main.pdf?_tid=632192eb-d9f1-41e6-867d-7cbeeb5bb6db&acdnat=1551733735_98a224903ddc5a39814df61a0f3b2781 (accessed March 4, 2019).
22. Gamgee A. Dr. Viquerat's treatment of tuberculosis. *Lancet.* (1894) 2:811–3. doi: 10.1016/S0140-6736(01)59466-0
23. Paquin P. The treatment of tuberculosis by injections of immunized blood serum. *JAMA J Am Med Assoc.* (1895) XXIV:842–5. doi: 10.1001/jama.1895.02430220020003d
24. Lemen JR. *Three Years of Serum Therapy in Tuberculosis–Harvard University*. (1898) Available online at: https://hollis.harvard.edu/primo-explore/fulldisplay?docid=01HVD_ALMA212014352380003941&context=L&vid=HVD2&lang=en_US&search_scope=everything&adaptor=LocalSearchEngine&tab$=$everything&query=any, contains,Three years of serum therapy in tub (accessed March 4, 2019).
25. Feldman WH, Karlson AG, Hinshaw HC. Streptomycin in experimental tuberculosis. The effects in guinea pigs following infection by intravenous inoculation. *Am Rev Tuberc Pulm Dis.* (1947) 56:346–59.
26. Murray JF, Schraufnagel DE, Hopewell PC. Treatment of tuberculosis: a historical perspective. *Ann Am Thorac Soc.* (2015) 12:1749–59. doi: 10.1513/AnnalsATS.201509-632PS
27. Guirado E, Arcos V, Ausina V, Cardona P-J, Caceres N, Amat I, et al. Passive serum therapy with polyclonal antibodies against *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* protects against post-chemotherapy relapse of tuberculosis infection in SCID mice. *Microbes Infect.* (2006) 8:1252–9. doi: 10.1016/j.micinf.2005.12.004
28. Roy E, Stavropoulos E, Brennan J, Coade S, Grigorieva E, Walker B, et al. Therapeutic efficacy of high-dose intravenous immunoglobulin in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* infection in mice. *Infect Immun.* (2005) 73:6101–9. doi: 10.1128/IAI.73.9.6101-6109.2005
29. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Fc-receptors as regulators of immunity. *Adv Immunol.* (2007) 96:179–204. doi: 10.1016/S0065-2776(07)96005-8
30. Olivares N, Marquina B, Mata-Espinoza D, Zatarain-Barron ZL, Pinzón CE, Estrada I, et al. The protective effect of immunoglobulin in murine tuberculosis is dependent on IgG glycosylation. *Pathog Dis.* (2013) 69:176–83. doi: 10.1111/2049-632X.12069
31. Olivares N, Puig A, Aguilar D, Moya A, Cádiz A, Otero O, et al. Prophylactic effect of administration of human gamma globulins in a mouse model of tuberculosis. *Tuberculosis.* (2009) 89:218–20. doi: 10.1016/j.tube.2009.02.003
32. Li H, Wang X-X, Wang B, Fu L, Liu G, Lu Y, et al. Latently and uninfected healthcare workers exposed to TB make protective antibodies against *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2017) 114:5023–8. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1611776114
33. Glatman-Freedman A, Martin JM, Riska PF, Bloom BR, Casadevall A. Monoclonal antibodies to surface antigens of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and their use in a modified enzyme-linked immunosorbent spot assay for detection of mycobacteria. *J Clin Microbiol.* (1996) 34:2795–802.
34. Teitelbaum R, Glatman-Freedman A, Chen B, Robbins JB, Unanue E, Casadevall A, et al. A mAb recognizing a surface antigen of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* enhances host survival. *Microbiology.* (1998) 95:15688–93.
35. Hamasur B, Haile M, Pawlowski A, Schroder U, Kallenius G, Svenson SB. A mycobacterial lipoarabinomannan specific monoclonal antibody and its F(ab′) fragment prolong survival of mice infected with *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. *Clin Exp Immunol.* (2004) 138:30–8. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2249.2004.02593.x
36. Hangartner L, Zinkernagel RM, Hengartner H. Antiviral antibody responses: the two extremes of a wide spectrum. *Nat Rev Immunol.* (2006) 6:231–43. doi: 10.1038/nri1783
37. Menozzi FD, Rouse JH, Alavi M, Laude-Sharp M, Muller J, Bischoff R, et al. Identification of a heparin-binding hemagglutinin present in mycobacteria. *J Exp Med.* (1996) 184:993–1001.
38. Pethe K, Alonso S, Biet F, Delogu G, Brennan MJ, Locht C, et al. The heparin-binding haemagglutinin of *M. tuberculosis* is required for extrapulmonary dissemination. *Nature.* (2001) 412:190–4. doi: 10.1038/35084083
39. Yuan Y, Crane DD, Simpson RM, Zhu YQ, Hickey MJ, Sherman DR, et al. The 16-kDa alpha-crystallin (Acr) protein of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* is required for growth in macrophages. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (1998) 95:9578–83.
40. Balu S, Reljic R, Lewis MJ, Pleass RJ, McIntosh R, van Kooten C, et al. A novel human IgA monoclonal antibody protects against tuberculosis. *J Immunol.* (2011) 186:3113–9. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1003189
41. Chen X-F, Zhao W, Zhang Y-D, Wu J, Chen T-X, Wang W-F. Clinical characteristics and genetic profiles of 174 patients with X-linked agammaglobulinemia. *Medicine.* (2016) 95:e4544. doi: 10.1097/md.0000000000004544
42. Dogru D, Kiper N, Ozçelik U, Yalçin E, Tezcan I. Tuberculosis in children with congenital immunodeficiency syndromes. *Tuberk Toraks.* (2010) 58:59–63.
43. Alkadi A, Alduaiji N, Alrehaily A. Risk of tuberculosis reactivation with rituximab therapy. *Int J Health Sci.* (2017) 11:41–4.
44. Kimby E. Tolerability and safety of rituximab (MabThera®). *Cancer Treat Rev.* (2005) 31:456–73. doi: 10.1016/j.ctrv.2005.05.007
45. Costello AM, Kumar A, Narayan V, Akbar MS, Ahmed S, Abou-Zeid C, et al. Does antibody to mycobacterial antigens, including lipoarabinomannan, limit dissemination in childhood tuberculosis? *Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg.* (1992) 86:686–92.
46. Lu LL, Chung AW, Rosebrock TR, Ghebremichael M, Yu WH, Grace PS, et al. A functional role for antibodies in tuberculosis. *Cell.* (2016) 167:433–43.e14. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2016.08.072
47. Roy Chowdhury R, Yang Q, Hanekom W, Vallania F, Rozot V, Davis MM, et al. A multi-cohort study of the immune factors associated with *M. tuberculosis* infection outcomes. *Nature.* (2018) 560:644–8. doi: 10.1038/s41586-018-0439-x
48. Glatman-Freedman A. The role of antibody-mediated immunity in defense against *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*: advances toward a novel vaccine strategy. *Tuberculosis.* (2006) 86:191–7. doi: 10.1016/j.tube.2006.01.008
49. Hansen SG, Zak DE, Xu G, Ford JC, Marshall EE, Malouli D, et al. Prevention of tuberculosis in rhesus macaques by a cytomegalovirus-based vaccine. *Nat Med.* (2019) 24:130–43. doi: 10.1038/nm.4473
50. Prados-Rosales R, Carreño L, Cheng T, Blanc C, Weinrick B, Malek A, et al. Enhanced control of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* extrapulmonary dissemination in mice by an arabinomannan-protein conjugate vaccine. *PLoS Pathog.* (2017) 13:e1006250. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1006250
51. Dijkman K, Boot C, Vervenne RAW, Vierboom MPM, Kondova I, Haanstra KG, et al. Prevention of tuberculosis infection and disease by local BCG in repeatedly exposed rhesus macaques. *Nat Med.* (2019) 25:255–62. doi: 10.1038/s41591-018-0319-9
52. Tameris MD, Hatherill M, Landry BS, Scriba TJ, Snowden MA, Lockhart S, et al. Safety and efficacy of MVA85A, a new tuberculosis vaccine, in infants previously vaccinated with BCG: a randomised, placebo-controlled phase 2b trial. *Lancet.* (2013) 381:1021–8. doi: 10.1016/S0140-6736(13)60177-4
53. Fletcher HA, Snowden MA, Landry B, Rida W, Satti I, Harris SA, et al. T-cell activation is an immune correlate of risk in BCG vaccinated infants. *Nat Commun.* (2016) 7:11290. doi: 10.1038/ncomms11290
54. Van Der Meeren O, Hatherill M, Nduba V, Wilkinson RJ, Muyoyeta M, Van Brakel E, et al. Phase 2b controlled trial of M72/AS01E vaccine to prevent tuberculosis. *N Engl J Med.* (2018) 379:1621–34. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa1803484
55. Penn-Nicholson A, Ofori-Anyinam O, Day CL, Hanekom W, Demoitie M-A, De Ruymaeker E, et al. Safety and immunogenicity of candidate vaccine M72/AS01E in adolescents in a TB endemic setting. *Vaccine.* (2015) 33:4025–34. doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2015.05.088
56. Maglione PJ, Xu J, Casadevall A, Chan J. Fc receptors regulate immune activation and susceptibility during *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* infection. *J Immunol.* (2014) 180:3329–38. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.180.5.3329
57. Kaushal D, Mehra S, Didier PJ, Lackner AA. The non-human primate model of tuberculosis. *J Med Primatol.* (2012) 41:191–201. doi: 10.1111/j.1600-0684.2012.00536.x

58. Hogarth PM, Anania JC, Wines BD. The FcγR of humans and non-human primates and their interaction with IgG: implications for induction of inflammation, resistance to infection and the use of therapeutic monoclonal antibodies. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol.* 382:321–52. doi: 10.1007/978-3-319-07911-0_15
59. Overdijk MB, Verploegen S, Ortiz Buijsse A, Vink T, Leusen JHW, Bleeker WK, et al. Crosstalk between human IgG isotypes and murine effector cells. *J Immunol*. (2012) 189:3430–8. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1200356
60. Smith P, DiLillo DJ, Bournazos S, Li F, Ravetch J V. Mouse model recapitulating human Fcγ receptor structural and functional diversity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2012) 109:6181–6. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1203954109

Conflict of Interest Statement: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

REVIEW
published: 22 May 2019
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.01124

Monkeying Around: Using Non-human Primate Models to Study NK Cell Biology in HIV Infections

Cordelia Manickam[1†], *Spandan V. Shah*[1†], *Junsuke Nohara*[2], *Guido Ferrari*[2] *and R. Keith Reeves*[1,3*]

[1] *Center for Virology and Vaccine Research, Beth Israel Deaconess Medical Center, Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA, United States,* [2] *Department of Surgery, Duke University School of Medicine, Durham, NC, United States,* [3] *Ragon Institute of Massachusetts General Hospital, MIT, and Harvard, Cambridge, MA, United States*

Natural killer (NK) cells are the major innate effectors primed to eliminate virus-infected and tumor or neoplastic cells. Recent studies also suggest nuances in phenotypic and functional characteristics among NK cell subsets may further permit execution of regulatory and adaptive roles. Animal models, particularly non-human primate (NHP) models, are critical for characterizing NK cell biology in disease and under homeostatic conditions. In HIV infection, NK cells mediate multiple antiviral functions via upregulation of activating receptors, inflammatory cytokine secretion, and antibody dependent cell cytotoxicity through antibody Fc-FcR interaction and others. However, HIV infection can also reciprocally modulate NK cells directly or indirectly, leading to impaired/ineffective NK cell responses. In this review, we will describe multiple aspects of NK cell biology in HIV/SIV infections and their association with viral control and disease progression, and how NHP models were critical in detailing each finding. Further, we will discuss the effect of NK cell depletion in SIV-infected NHP and the characteristics of newly described memory NK cells in NHP models and different mouse strains. Overall, we propose that the role of NK cells in controlling viral infections remains incompletely understood and that NHP models are indispensable in order to efficiently address these deficits.

Keywords: HIV, SIV, non-human primates, innate immunity, natural killer cells, animal models

OPEN ACCESS

Edited by:
Victor P. M. G. Rutten, Utrecht University, Netherlands

Reviewed by:
Jayne Hope, University of Edinburgh, United Kingdom
Christine Jansen, Utrecht University, Netherlands

***Correspondence:**
R. Keith Reeves
rreeves@bidmc.harvard.edu

*These authors have contributed equally to this work

Specialty section:
This article was submitted to Comparative Immunology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology

Received: *27 February 2019*
Accepted: *03 May 2019*
Published: *22 May 2019*

Citation:
Manickam C, Shah SV, Nohara J, Ferrari G and Reeves RK (2019) Monkeying Around: Using Non-human Primate Models to Study NK Cell Biology in HIV Infections. Front. Immunol. 10:1124. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.01124

INTRODUCTION

Natural killer (NK) cells have previously been thought simplistically and aptly named, but recent characterizations suggest their roles in both innate and adaptive immunity are in fact quite diverse and complex. In humans, traditional phenotyping identifies NK cells as large non-B, non-T cells expressing CD56 and CD16, and in peripheral blood they are broadly classified into two subpopulations—$CD56^{bright}$ cytokine-secreting and $CD56^{dim}CD16^{+}$ cytotoxic cells. The major function of NK cells in viral infections and cancer is lysis of target cells by rapidly releasing cytolytic mediators such as perforin and granzyme B and/or secretion of inflammatory cytokines which include but are not limited to interferon (IFN)-γ, tumor growth factor (TGF), tumor necrosis factor (TNF), interleukin (IL)-6, IL-10, granulocyte macrophage-colony stimulation factor (GM-CSF), and G-CSF. NK cell functions are controlled by a balance of activating receptors such as

natural cytotoxicity receptors (1) (NKp30, NKp44, and NKp46), activating killer immunoglobulin receptors (KIRs) and C-type lectin receptors (NKG2D and NKG2C), and inhibitory receptors including inhibitory KIRs and NKG2A (2, 3). Recent studies in humans and mouse models have uncovered the existence of an array of NK cell subsets of diverse phenotypes and differential functions. Indeed, NK cell diversity in a single individual could range from 6,000 to 30,000 distinct phenotypes (4) and their functional repertoire now includes long lived memory-like responses, antigen specific memory responses and immunoregulatory roles in addition to their previously known innate functions (5–13). Given their unique nuances in phenotype, maturation, and function in blood and different tissue compartments, it is imperative to understand the role of NK cells in infections, specifically mucosal infections such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and others. To this end, animal models, both mice and non-human primates (NHP), have proved useful in deepening our knowledge on NK cell biology, subsets, and tissue specific responses in health and disease. In the context of animal models to recapitulate the role of NK against HIV-1 infection, this review will primarily focus on these aspects of NK cells in human responses and its analogous modeling in non-human primates (NHP), which has been summarized in **Figure 1**.

CAVEATS OF MODELING HUMAN NK CELL BIOLOGY IN MICE

Mouse models have played significant and historic roles in understanding the interplay of the immune system and infections, with basic NK cell biology as a particularly notable example. However, critical differences between human and murine NK cells can sometimes complicate direct comparisons. Murine NK cells do not express CD56 but have approximate functional homologs—$CD11b^{low}CD27^{high}$ and $CD11b^{high}CD27^{low}$ NK cells have been correlated to the human $CD56^{bright}$ and $CD56^{dim}$ subsets respectively (14). However, the $CD27^{low}$ subset is not capable of antibody dependent cell cytotoxicity functions (ADCC). Murine NK cells lack NKp44 and NKp30 expression altogether, and indeed NKp46 is the only NCR that is expressed on both murine and human NK cells (15). Further, while both murine and human NK cells express NKG2D, the ligands differ between the species. Murine NKG2D binds to 3 members of the minor histocompatibility family, 5 members of the retinoic acid early inducible gene 1 (Rae-1) family of proteins and murine UL-16-binding protein-like transcript (MULT1). Human NKG2D ligands include MHC I-like (MIC) molecules, MHC-I chain-related A, MHC-I chain-related B and UL16 binding (ULBP) protein family (16). The MIC family proteins are highly polymorphic with more than 70 alleles, and the NKG2D ligands of both species diversified independently, and thus are not orthologous (17). The trafficking markers, and hence the tissue distribution, also vary between the two species. For example, human NK cells are generally present homeostatically in lymph nodes (LN), albeit at low levels, whereas NK cells are observed in murine LN only after stimulation (18). A major difference, as well as an evolutionary disparity, is the recognition of their cognate MHC class I molecules. Murine NK cells use the Ly49 family of proteins which have C-type lectin domains, for cognition of MHC I molecules (19). Human NK cells lack Ly49 proteins and rather express the highly divergent Ig superfamily receptors called KIR that recognize MHC-I (20). Both Ly49 and KIRs act as functional analogs, but they vary to a large extent in their genetic and structural properties and exhibit qualitative differences in their MHC-I interaction. While mouse studies have significantly expanded our current knowledge of NK cell subsets and their functionality, some of these significant differences complicate the modeling of NK cell biology for some

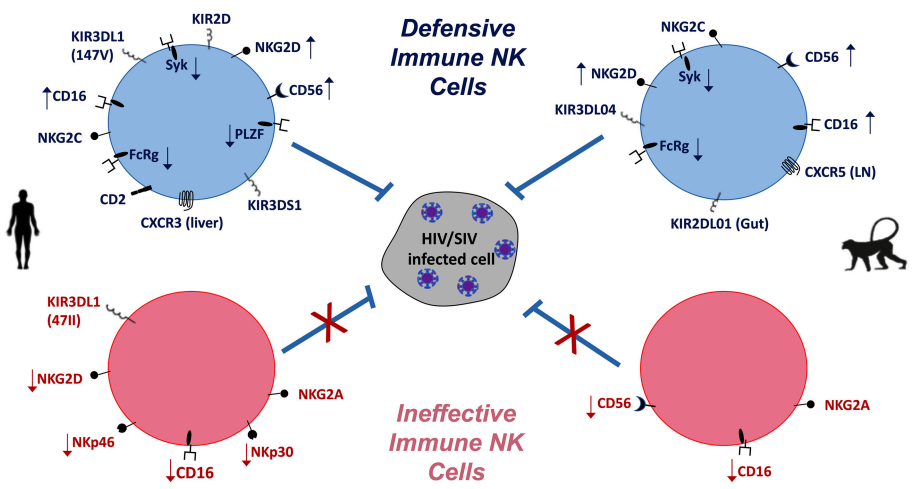


FIGURE 1 | NK cells in HIV/SIV infections of humans **(Left)** and macaques **(Right)**. Differential expression (↑ increase, ↓ decrease) of NK cell markers indicative of defensive and effective anti-HIV/SIV functions (blue) are compared to virus-induced impaired (pink) functions. Overall, the balance of activating and inhibitory receptors is indicative of NK cell functionality and contribution to pathogenic outcomes.

human diseases. Indeed, the limited lifespan, differences in antibody repertoires, and most critically for HIV-1 infection, the lack of lentiviral tropism in mice, has restricted their use as an animal model to understand the role of NK cells against HIV-1.

MODELING NK CELL BIOLOGY IN NHP

NHP NK cells are generally much more similar to human NK cells than murine NK cells and the possibility of *in-vivo* manipulations, such as depleting NK cell numbers, offer opportunities to specifically address NK cell biology. The peripheral NK cell frequency in Old World monkeys, which includes rhesus, cynomolgus and pig-tailed macaques, sooty mangabeys and African green monkeys (AGM), averages ∼10% of blood lymphocytes similar to humans. Whereas, in neotropical primates such as common marmosets and cotton-top tamarins, the NK frequency is typically < 5% (21–26). Phylogenetic studies comparing multiple mammalian species have identified KIR3DL as the first ancestral gene originating from simian primates (27). Similar to human NK cells, great apes and Old World monkeys have a rich diversity of KIR3DL1, whereas the New World monkey KIRs diverged from the Old World monkeys, apes and humans, and their KIR3DL1 is more specific to their species. NHP NK cells also have a few dissimilarities such as the low expression of CD56, universal expression of CD8α and NKG2A/C by all subsets of NK cells compared to human NK cells (21, 25, 26, 28, 29). Due to this, the major delineating markers commonly used to identify NK cells in Old World and New World monkeys are CD8α/NKG2A/C and NKp46 respectively.

NHP NK cells, particularly those in rhesus macaques (MAC), have been studied in detail over the last two decades. Gating for CD56 and CD16 expression on circulating NKG2A/C$^+$ MAC NK cells, defines three distinct populations: CD56$^+$CD16$^-$ cells which are functionally equivalent to human CD56^{bright} NK cells; CD56$^-$CD16$^+$ cells corresponding to the human CD56^{dim} NK cells and the CD56$^-$CD16$^-$ (DN) cells for which an analogous phenotype in humans is not yet clearly defined (30, 31). Although NK cell differentiation is dynamic, the CD56 expression pattern can denote the functional maturation of human NK cells, whereby downregulation of CD56 expression indicates a mature differentiated cytotoxic profile (32–34). Hong et al. (35) identified expression patterns in MAC NK cell subsets similar to human NK cells by transcriptional analysis. Expression pattern of transcripts in MAC CD56$^+$ cells were consistent with primitively differentiated cytokine producing cells evidenced as IL-7R, TNF receptor super family member 1B, GATA-3, TCF-7, CD53, amphiregulin, and Granzyme K among others. Conversely, transcripts of effector proteins, such as CCL3, CCL4, and CCL5, were highly expressed in CD16$^+$ cells. Interestingly, Hong et al. (35) found the DN subset to be an intermediary stage between the CD56$^+$ and CD16$^+$ subsets based on the transcriptional profile. While CD57 has also been proposed as a marker of mature, functionally distinct population of NK cells in humans (36), a simian analog has not been identified yet. Overall, the phenotypic, functional and transcriptional profiling has shown that NHP NK cells are well-suited to model their human counterparts as it will be discussed in the following sections.

NK CELL MODULATION OF HIV AND SIV INFECTIONS VIA KIR/HLA

Epidemiological studies of long-term non-progressors and elite controllers of HIV infection have indicated that the co-expression of KIR3DS1 and a specific HLA-B haplotype known as the HLA-Bw480I correlates with lower viral load, a slower decline of CD4$^+$ T-cell counts and delayed progression to AIDS (37–39). In fact, the NK cell subsets upregulate KIRs and KIR-like molecules in their effort to control virus replication as demonstrated by the protective role of HLA-Bw480I that can potentially bind KIR3DL1 on the membrane of NK cells, contribute to their expansion (40) and increase their cytolytic function (41). In addition to the polymorphism in the HLA-Bw4 variants associated with protection from disease progression, it has been recently reported that a single isoleucine-to-valine substitution in position 47 (I47V) of the KIR3DL1 was responsible for a less protective role in controlling HIV-1 infection compared to the 47VV (not reaching significance) and a significantly more protective role than the 47II genotype (42); the protective role was confined to its interaction with the HLA-B*57:01 and not with the HLA-B*57:03. These data suggest that the KIR-HLA interaction is specifically tuned to impact control of HIV-1 replication. These observations are also supported by the findings that both KIRDL2 and KIRDL3 expressing NK cells can mediate control of HIV-1 via interaction with HLA-C molecules (43, 44). In addition to the polymorphism of the KIR receptor, higher copy numbers of KIR3DS1 and KIR3DL1 in the presence of their ligands were associated with lower viral set point. NK cells from individuals with multiple copies of KIR3DL1 in the presence of KIR3DS1 and their ligands were able to inhibit *in vitro* replication more robustly (37).

Similar observations on the importance of the interaction between KIR and class I HLA molecules have been reported in MAC models and linked with their ability to control SIV infection. The polymorphisms of MAC KIR differs from human (45), but several activating KIR, defined as KIR3DL or KIR3DH, have been associated with lower virus load and longer survival alone or in association with the class I Mamu-A1*001 allele (46) [see also review by Walter and Ansari FI 2015 (47)]. Enhanced copies of KIR3DL04 (or KIR3DH04) were also reported to associate with decreased loss of CD4$^+$ T cells and increased CD56/16 DN NK production of IFN-γ (48). Lastly, a unique profile of circulation and tissue accumulation of the KIR3DL01$^+$ NK subset during acute SIV infection was reported to indicate that this subset (and not the KIR3DL05$^+$) accumulate in gut tissues. These cells also displayed higher proliferation, activation, and antiviral function during chronic infection (49). The study did not correlate the findings with the outcome on control of viremia or disease progression, but raises the important issue of the dynamic changes that take place within the NK subsets during infection, with regard to their frequencies and tissue distribution. An important outcome for the recognition of infected cells by NK

cells through the KIR/HLA interaction is related to the ability of NK cells to exert immune pressure on HIV-1 sequence (50, 51), similar to what was described for the $CD8^+$ T cell responses (52, 53).

As discussed above, KIRs play important roles in controlling both HIV and SIV infections. However, one must be judicious when using NHP models to study the impact of KIRs on retroviral infection, due to the disparities between the KIR repertoires of human and that of NHP (54). For instance, the KIR subtype with only one extracellular domain, KIR1D, has been identified in MAC, which seems to be unique to NHP and there is no corresponding counterpart in human (55). Even though the nucleic acid sequence contains two Ig-like domains, the expressed protein is truncated at the second domain due to a frame shift mutation (55). Consequently, the KIR1D subtype lacks the cytoplasmic domain as well, and although it's *in vivo* function is still currently unknown, it is speculated to be secreted extracellularly (56). Another major feature that differentiates the human and NHP KIR is their complexity of KIR2D and KIR3D subtypes. Based on the structure and MHC molecule specificity, the KIR genes can be divided into 4 main lineages, I, II, III, and V (54, 57). While only 3 distinct lineage II KIR3D genes have been characterized in human, MAC has been reported to have a highly diverse lineage II repertoire, consisting of 10 KIR3DL genes and 9 KIR3DS genes (56, 58, 59). This may have evolved to complement the expanded HLA-A and B genes that are observed in NHP, and indeed, some of the KIR3DL/S has been shown to bind to HLA-A/B molecules (27, 58, 60). Conversely, humans have more diverse lineage III KIR genes that are absent in Old-World monkeys, such as MAC (55, 61), which is consistent with the higher variability of HLA-C molecules in human (62). Thus, the KIR gene repertoire for NHP seems to be much more complex than that of humans. The latest studies identified a total of 22 different KIR genes for MAC (59, 63), as compared to 15 KIR genes and 2 pseudogenes in humans (64). In general, the complexity of KIR genotype and expression in relation to the class I HLA molecules should be carefully considered when expression of KIR on human and NHP NK subsets are evaluated for their correlation with the outcome of retroviral infections. Furthermore, it is clear that, in both humans and NHP, KIR, and HLA class I polymorphism can influence the outcome of infection, but the evolutionary advantage of these molecules has not been elucidated yet.

FC-RECEPTOR (FCR) MEDIATED NK CELL FUNCTIONS IN HIV/SIV INFECTIONS

Among the immunomodulatory and effector functions mediated by NK cells, their role as effector cells in Fc-dependent antibody functions represented by ADCC is very important in HIV-1 and SIV infections. This is best highlighted by the correlation between vaccine-induced ADCC responses and control of virus replication (65–68) and protection (69), and in pre-clinical studies conducted in MAC and recent observations in mother-to-child transmission (70, 71). Moreover, the only human vaccine clinical trial that provided limited success, the RV144 study conducted in Thailand, suggested a crucial role for non-neutralizing Ab responses capable of mediating ADCC as correlates with lower risk of infection (72, 73). The NK cells provide the effector cell component to these type of responses, upon engagement of their FcγR III (CD16) by the Fc region of an antibody that can recognize antigens expressed on the membrane of infected cells (74). In humans as well as in NHP, the canonical ADCC-mediating effector NK cell subset has been described as those that are lineage negative (lacking expression of markers defining major T and B cell subsets) and $CD16^+$, which are the peripheral $CD56^{dim}CD16^{bright}$ cells in humans and $CD3^-CD20^-CD8^+NKG2A/C^+CD16^+$in MAC. The effector function of these cellular subsets is in general regulated by the fine interaction between the Ab subclasses and the polymorphisms of the FcRs that present substantial differences between the human and NHP (75–77). In addition to the classical Fc-FcR engagement of ADCC effector cell subsets, it has also been reported that recognition of the infected target cells requires engagement of NKG2D-receptor, suggesting that the NKG2D may serve as a co-receptor for ADCC-mediated NK cell functions (78). In addition to the $CD8\alpha^+CD16^+$ NK subset, it has been reported that the $CD8\alpha^-$ NK cells can also be potent ADCC effector cells in MAC and co-express the CD56, CD16, NKG2D, and KIR2D receptors. These cells represent approximately 35% of the macaque $CD8\alpha^-$ cells and are responsive to stimulation by IL-15 to upregulate the CD69 receptor and produce IFN-γ and TNF- cytokines, providing additional functions to the cytotoxicity (79).

IMPACT OF HIV AND SIV INFECTION ON NK DISTRIBUTION AND FUNCTION

In healthy humans, tissue NK cells are more heterogeneous, complex and less studied than their peripheral blood counterparts due to limited access to human tissues. Tissue-resident NK cells differ by their pattern of chemokine and adhesion receptors, which are specialized based on their homing properties and/or *in-situ* maturation (80, 81). $CD56^{bright}$ NK cells in human blood express trafficking markers CD62L, CCR7, CXCR3, and CXCR4 that allow their migration into secondary lymphoid organs, inflamed tissues, and tumors, whereas tissue resident $CD56^{bright}$ NK cells do not express CD62L but other adhesion markers such as CD49a and CD103 (18, 82–84). The $CD56^{dim}$ subset expresses receptors that are necessary for migration into inflamed sites including CXCR4, CX3CR1, CXCR2, and CXCR3 and low levels of CD62L and no CCR7. On the other hand, $CD56^{bright}$ NK cells express high levels of CCR7 and CD62L and constitute a large proportion of NK cells in the lymph node because of their affinity to high endothelial venules (HEV) (18, 85). In fact, LNs have been proposed as a site of maturation for some NK cells (86). $CD56^{bright}$ NK cells are also the predominant population in the gut and participate in the gut homeostasis (87). However, multiple pathogens including

HIV-1, can disrupt the overall homeostatic NK cell distribution in tissues.

It has been previously reported that NK cells undergo redistribution amongst different tissue compartments during the acute phase of HIV infection, as indicated by the increased frequency of circulating $CD3^{neg}CD56^{neg}CD16^{pos}$ NK cells with perturbed functional profiles and reduced presence of $CD3^{neg}CD56^{pos}$ NK cells (88). Despite this body of evidence that suggests an important role for NK cells in the control of HIV-1 replication, they are not able to clear the infection. This may be attributed, at least in part, to the overall subversion of the immune system caused by HIV-1, where NK cells are not only altered functionally but may be impaired in trafficking and tissue infiltration. In fact, it was described very early that NK cells were dysfunctional in HIV-1 infected subjects (89) and this effect could be detected at the level of their ability to perform FcR-mediated functions (90), as well as expression of KIR, activation markers, and cytokine production (91, 92). The impairment of NK cells could be due to the direct effect of HIV-1 or, due to the effect of cytokine milieu on NKp30 and NKG2D expression (93) and/or CD4 dysfunction. The latter has been recently demonstrated to be the case because blockade of PD-1 and IL-10 pathways can restore the HIV-1 specific CD4 T cells *in vitro* and enhance cytokine expression and cytolytic function of the NK subsets (94). The presence of impaired NK subsets is not solely observed during HIV-1 infection as reported by Meier et al. (95). In fact, they described a similar alteration of the NK subsets in HIV-1 and Hepatitis C virus (HCV) infections with a clear decline in the frequency of the $CD56^{dim}$ NK that resulted in reduction of IFN-γ production and cytotoxic function (95). Similar observations on the impairment of NK cell function has been described in SIV-infected MAC related to differentiation, cytokine secretion, and expression of activation/homing markers (96, 97). The importance of these dysfunctions in the context of hampering the ability of NK subsets to fully control retroviral infection is indicated by the demonstration that in chronically SIV-infected MAC, the frequency of CD56/16 DN NK cells in the spleen and liver of infected animals with high virus load was significantly lower than in animals with lower virus load (98). Moreover, frequency of the liver-resident $CXCR3^+$ NK cells and circulating $NKG2D^+$ cells were inversely correlated with plasma viremia (98). These data suggest that differences in the location and function of the NK subsets have a relevant impact on the outcome of virus replication in the SIV model and the same may occur in HIV-1 infection. To support the complexity of this reality, data was collected from the animals that can naturally survive the SIV infection. In fact, the analysis of the distribution of NK cells within the LN in the pathogenic and non-pathogenic SIV-infection models represented by the MAC and AGM, respectively, revealed unique differential aspects (99). In the pathogenic model, the NK cells were found in a random distribution and did not accumulate in the follicles, whereas a significantly higher frequency of NK cells was observed in the AGM LN mostly around or within the follicles. The AGM NK cells also expressed CXCR5 and the frequency of $CXCR5^+$ NK cells in the AGM LN was significantly higher. This distribution persisted throughout the time of observation of the infected animals and was associated with a significantly higher frequency of cells with membrane-bound IL-15 in the AGM. Anti-IL-15 treatment of AGM depleted NK cells from LN, spleen, and gut, and it induced a significantly increased plasma viral load as well as the amount of cell-associated viral RNA and DNA in the LN, compared to the untreated animals. Collectively, these data indicated that the unique control of virus in non-pathogenic AGM is at least partially mediated by NK cells.

IMPACT OF *IN VIVO* NK DEPLETION IN SIV-INFECTED ANIMALS

A major argument for the importance of $CD8^+$ T cell responses in control of retroviral infection was initially provided by seminal studies conducted by Letvin and collaborators, who reported the immediate rebound in SIV replication in MAC upon depletion of $CD8^+$ T cells by infusion of targeted monoclonal antibodies (100). Similar experiments have now been conducted in MAC models to address the role of NK cells in virus control, but thus far have provided contrasting results. Initially, $CD16^+$ NK depletion performed using the 3G8 mAb 24 h before infection with SIV did not impact the level of viremia observed in the infused animals during the first 11 days of infection compared to those receiving a control mAb. These data suggested that $CD16^+$ NK cells did not contribute to initial control of SIV replication (101), although the assay had several caveats, such as the emergence of idiotypic antibodies (102) and the lack of $CD16^-$NK cells depletion from lymph nodes that are largely responsible for controlling virus replication (85, 103). More recently, depletion of NK cells in the periphery and in intestinal mucosal tissues following administration of JAK3 inhibitors induced a modest but significant increase of plasma viral load in all six animals tested and in tissue viral load in 5 out of 6 animals. The latter was not related to an increase in frequency of $CD4^+$ T cells, suggesting an increased production of the virus on a per cell basis. (104). A follow-up study investigated prolonged administration of the JAK3 inhibitor during the acute phase of infection and recapitulated the finding of significant higher virus replication during the chronic phase (>12 weeks) of infection in JAK3-treated MAC, but not during the acute phase of infection. One caveat to the latter study was related to the concomitantly observed partial depletion of $CD8^+$ T cell subsets, among other immune cells, and the unresolved contribution that this could have had on the outcome of the study, mainly implicating the depletion of NK subsets in the gastrointestinal tissue (105). The different outcomes of these studies could either be related to the stage of infection, acute vs. chronic infection, or to the depletion procedure, that could impact different NK cell subsets. Overall, the data do not provide a definitive determination of the impact that NK cells could have on the control of SIV infection in MAC. The anti-IL-15 neutralization approach to deplete NK cells has been shown to be effective in AGM and MAC (99, 106), but full evaluation has not been performed during acute and chronic infection of a pathogenic species.

MEMORY NK CELLS AND HIV/SIV

The possibility of NK cells with adaptive features perhaps emerged from an unexpected observation by Boehncke et al. (107) wherein wild-type (WT) and T-cell deficient mice responded similarly to 4-dinitro-1-fluorobenzene (DNFB)-induced contact hypersensitivity (CHS). NK cell memory, as an emerging field of study, was further solidified by O' Leary et al. (108) in a CHS mouse model with the observation of T- and B-cell independent adaptive immunity that was mediated by NK cells. These responses were elicited by haptens and persisted for at least 4 weeks following sensitization. The same group later demonstrated (109) that liver-resident NK cells in mice were not only capable of generating a memory pool against haptens but also against influenza, vesicular stomatitis virus (VSV) and HIV; and that the chemokine receptor CXCR6 plays a critical role in this process. Subsequently, the phenomenon has since been observed in other mouse models, non-human primates, as well as in humans (reviewed in (12, 110, 111)).

As our understanding of the memory NK cell response expands, multiple subpopulations that may mediate antigen recall through differing mechanisms have emerged. These different subtypes are, however, somewhat fluid. For practical purposes, we will comment on four categorizations of these cells:

1) True *antigen-specific memory NK* cells respond to an antigen presented analogously to classical adaptive cells. Antigens include haptens (112), cytomegalovirus (CMV) (13, 113–115), HIV (13, 109), and others (109, 116, 117).
2) *Cytokine-induced memory* NK cells seem to respond to specific cytokines (IL-12, IL-15, and IL-18) with a brief pre-activation period followed by enhanced activity in response to cytokine receptor stimulation (118). Cytokine-induced memory NK cells have been reported against influenza virus (119), leukemia (120) and melanoma (121). A recent article also reports the generation of "tumor-induced memory-like" (TIML-) NK cells (122).
3) *Memory-like* (adaptive) NK cells comprise a unique subset of NK cells that have reduced expression of the CD16 adaptor molecules, FcR γ-chain, and Syk, specifically induced in responses to CMV infection (123–127). Memory-like NK cell numbers have also been shown to expand in HIV (128, 129), HCV (130) and Epstein Bar Virus (EBV) (131–133) infections.
4) *Evolved memory* (adaptive) NK cells overlap with antigen-specific and memory-like NK cells with a response induced by CMV infection. A critical difference is the expression of a specific receptor, Ly49H, by NK cells that interact with MCMV glycoprotein m157 (134, 135) in mouse models, and more recently, Ly49I and Ly49C were also shown to interact with specific MCMV peptides (136). An analogous $NKG2C^{+}$ cell type has also been described in humans although the mechanisms are less well-defined (137). Collectively, an evolved memory NK cell can be considered as one that expresses a receptor (or perhaps a precise combination of known and unknown receptors) that is induced to control a specific pathogen.

Paust et al. (109) demonstrated that murine NK cells can develop memory against HIV antigens, a virus which cannot infect mice, and thus there is no evolutionary component. Primed hepatic NK cells (but not splenic NK cells) mounted a vigorous recall response in recipient mice, and the chemokine receptor CXCR6 was deemed critical for this function. Later, our group showed that NK cells in MAC were capable of mounting a recall response against SIV/SHIV and HIV vaccine antigens (13), and NKG2C was indicated to play a critical role in this process.

To our knowledge, memory-like FcR γ-chain deficient NK cells have not been reported in mice. One possibility is the exclusive association of CD16 to FcR γ-chain homodimers in mice, compared to the association with homodimers and heterodimers of FcR γ-chain and CD3ζ in humans (138). Thus, murine NK cells might not be able to respond to CMV infection in a manner similar to human NK cells. Nonetheless, the prevalence of other subtypes of NK cells (cytokine-induced and antigen-specific) suggests murine NK cells have likely devised alternate strategies to control viral infections. Other such subtle variations of these cells almost certainly exist, but the exact interplay between the pathogen and NK cells that induces each population still needs significant assessment.

The defining characteristics of "memory-like" NK cells are the lack of the FcR γ signaling chain and Syk adaptor proteins, likely resulting from epigenetic reprogramming of these subsets of NK cells by CMV (126, 139). The initial observation made by Leeansyah et al. suggested persistent lack of FcR γ-chain expression in NK cells from HIV-1 positive subjects receiving cART (140); however, CMV infection status of these patients was not reported in this study. A follow-up study by the same group suggested that these cells had significantly reduced NCR (NKp46 and NKp30) expression and showed greater ADCC against opsonized targets (128), but the role of HIV *per se* in the induction of these cells is not clear. CMV is likely the primary source of induction of these cells (124, 125), but how HIV can also modulate these phenotypes in NK cells is unclear. Our own assessment in MAC suggests SIV infection does not have a significant impact on total numbers of $\gamma\text{-chain}^{-}\text{Syk}^{-}$ NK cells, which is modulated by rhesus CMV (rhCMV), but the migration into tissues was heavily influenced by SIV infection (127). In blood, rhCMV titers were correlated to adaptive NK cell numbers in both rhCMV-infected, as well as rhCMV/SIV co-infected animals (127). This observation was similar to observations made by Zhou et al. (128), where adaptive NK cell prevalence generally correlated with CMV antibody titers, but was further modulated by HIV infection. This discrepancy could simply be explained by host species-specific differences, or perhaps by HIV specific responses exerted by NK cells in humans. Furthermore, SIV was able to subvert the enhanced responses of adaptive NK cells by suppressing the alternate signaling mechanism induced by rhCMV (127). The data explaining the effect of HIV/SIV infection on adaptive NK cells, in the absence of prior CMV infection, are sorely lacking. It is imperative to address the skewed observations in SIV infection, which could have arisen due to the confounding effects of co-infection with CMV. Most importantly, we need to address the question of protective

features of CMV induced NK cells against other viral infections such as HIV-1.

Similar questions have been posited for other memory NK cell subsets as well, particularly NKG2C$^+$ evolved NK cells induced by CMV infection (141). Similar to the expansion of γ-chain$^-$Syk$^-$ NK cell populations in SIV/HIV$^+$ subjects, the expansion of the NKG2C$^+$ population in HIV-1$^+$ subjects is attributed to concurrent HCMV infection (142). A recent study suggests that adaptive NK cells induced by CMV in HIV-1 infected individuals are further modulated and marked by reduced expression of the transcription factor promyelocytic leukemia zinc finger (PLZF) (129, 129) and that these cells are distinguished from other adaptive NK cells expressing NKG2C or CD57. Intriguingly, HIV might be directly affecting NKG2C$^+$ NK cell numbers, since p24 has been reported to stabilize HLA-E expression on lymphocytes of HIV$^+$ patients (143). Overall, the questions regarding the protective ability of memory/adaptive/cytokine-induced NK cell subsets against HIV remain unanswered. Information on the unadulterated effect of HIV on the NK cell receptor repertoire, functional abilities, epigenetic reprogramming and specific subset expansion *in vivo* needs significant in-depth investigation and may direct specific preventative and curative strategies against HIV infections.

CONCLUDING REMARKS

Many studies have highlighted the crucial role of NK cells in mediating control of HIV transmission, dissemination, disease, and reciprocally virus-mediated subversion of NK cells. Unlike many other pathogens, mouse models have contributed in a more limited way to this body of knowledge, due to the lack of tropism of lentiviruses and caveats of humanized mouse models. These circumstances have created one of the best examples of the significant utility of studying immunology in NHP, specifically SIV infection of various MAC species. Overall, these studies have revealed multiple layers of NK cell-virus interplay in lentivirus infection including: (1) KIR-HLA; (2) induction of CD2 and NKG2-related molecules; (3) interaction of Fc-receptor bearing NK cells and Ab-opsonized virus infected cells; and (4) development of HIV/SIV-specific NK cell memory-like responses. Although many unanswered questions remain regarding NK cell correlates of virus control, the significant contribution of NHP models cannot be overstated and rapidly evolving *in vivo* and *ex vivo* manipulations will undoubtedly continue to advance studies of HIV vaccine and other therapeutic modality development.

AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

CM, SS, JN, and GF contributed to writing of specific sections. RR and GF oversaw overall preparation of the manuscript, contributed to writing. RR edited the final version of the manuscript.

FUNDING

This work was supported by National Institutes of Health (NIH) grants P01 AI120756, R01 DE026014, and R01 AI120828. The funders had no role in study design, data collection and analysis, decision to publish, or preparation of the manuscript.

REFERENCES

1. Treml LS, Carlesso G, Hoek KL, Stadanlick JE, Kambayashi T, Bram RJ, et al. TLR stimulation modifies BLyS receptor expression in follicular and marginal zone B cells. *J Immunol.* (2007) 178:7531–9. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.178.12.7531
2. Moretta A, Biassoni R, Bottino C, Mingari MC, Moretta L. Natural cytotoxicity receptors that trigger human NK-cell-mediated cytolysis. *Immunol Today.* (2000) 21:228–34. doi: 10.1016/S0167-5699(00)01596-6
3. Long EO, Kim HS, Liu D, Peterson ME, Rajagopalan S. Controlling natural killer cell responses: integration of signals for activation and inhibition. *Annu Rev Immunol.* (2013) 31:227–58. doi: 10.1146/annurev-immunol-020711-075005
4. Horowitz A, Strauss-Albee DM, Leipold M, Kubo J, Nemat-Gorgani N, Dogan OC, et al. Genetic and environmental determinants of human NK cell diversity revealed by mass cytometry. *Sci Transl Med.* (2013) 5:208ra145. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3006702
5. Holder KA, Comeau EM, Grant MD. Origins of natural killer cell memory: special creation or adaptive evolution. *Immunology.* (2018) 154:38–49. doi: 10.1111/imm.12898
6. Sun JC, Lanier LL. Is there natural killer cell memory and can it be harnessed by vaccination? NK cell memory and immunization strategies against infectious diseases and cancer. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol.* (2017)10:a029538. doi: 10.1101/cshperspect.a029538
7. Peng H, Tian Z. Natural killer cell memory: progress and implications. *Front Immunol.* (2017) 8:1143. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2017.01143
8. Holmes TD, Bryceson YT. Natural killer cell memory in context. *Semin Immunol.* (2016) 28:368–76. doi: 10.1016/j.smim.2016.05.008
9. O'Sullivan TE, Sun JC, Lanier LL. Natural killer cell memory. *Immunity.* (2015) 43:634–45. doi: 10.1016/j.immuni.2015.09.013
10. O'Sullivan TE, Sun JC. Generation of natural killer cell memory during viral infection. *J Innate Immun.* (2015) 7:557–62. doi: 10.1159/000375494
11. Marcus A, Raulet DH. Evidence for natural killer cell memory. *Curr Biol.* (2013) 23:R817–20. doi: 10.1016/j.cub.2013.07.015
12. Paust S, von Andrian UH. Natural killer cell memory. *Nat Immunol.* (2011) 12:500–8. doi: 10.1038/ni.2032
13. Reeves RK, Li H, Jost S, Blass E, Li H, Schafer JL, et al. Antigen-specific NK cell memory in rhesus macaques. *Nat Immunol.* (2015) 16:927–32. doi: 10.1038/ni.3227
14. Hayakawa Y, Huntington ND, Nutt SL, Smyth MJ. Functional subsets of mouse natural killer cells. *Immunol Rev.* (2006) 214:47–55. doi: 10.1111/j.1600-065X.2006.00454.x
15. Montaldo E, Del Zotto G, Della Chiesa M, Mingari MC, Moretta A, De Maria A, et al. Human NK cell receptors/markers: a tool to analyze NK cell development, subsets and function. *Cytometry A.* (2013) 83:702–13. doi: 10.1002/cyto.a.22302
16. Mestas J, Hughes CC. Of mice and not men: differences between mouse and human immunology. *J Immunol.* (2004) 172:2731–8. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.172.5.2731
17. Raulet DH. Roles of the NKG2D immunoreceptor and its ligands. *Nat Rev Immunol.* (2003) 3:781–90. doi: 10.1038/nri1199
18. Fehniger TA, Cooper MA, Nuovo GJ, Cella M, Facchetti F, Colonna M, et al. CD56bright natural killer cells are present in human lymph nodes and are activated by T cell-derived IL-2: a potential new link between adaptive and innate immunity. *Blood.* (2003) 101:3052–7. doi: 10.1182/blood-2002-09-2876

19. Webb JR, Lee SH, Vidal SM. Genetic control of innate immune responses against cytomegalovirus: MCMV meets its match. *Genes Immun.* (2002) 3:250–62. doi: 10.1038/sj.gene.6363876
20. Lanier LL. NK cell receptors. *Annu Rev Immunol.* (1998) 16:359–93. doi: 10.1146/annurev.immunol.16.1.359
21. Carville A, Evans TI, Reeves RK. Characterization of circulating natural killer cells in neotropical primates. *PLoS ONE.* (2013) 8:e78793. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0078793
22. Pereira LE, Johnson RP, Ansari AA. Sooty mangabeys and rhesus macaques exhibit significant divergent natural killer cell responses during both acute and chronic phases of SIV infection. *Cell Immunol.* (2008) 254:10–9. doi: 10.1016/j.cellimm.2008.06.006
23. Ibegbu C, Brodie-Hill A, Kourtis AP, Carter A, McClure H, Chen ZW, et al. Use of human CD3 monoclonal antibody for accurate CD4+ and CD8+ lymphocyte determinations in macaques: phenotypic characterization of the CD3- CD8+ cell subset. *J Med Primatol.* (2001) 30:291–8. doi: 10.1034/j.1600-0684.2001.300601.x
24. Wei Q, Stallworth JW, Vance PJ, Hoxie JA, Fultz PN. Simian immunodeficiency virus (SIV)/immunoglobulin G immune complexes in SIV-infected macaques block detection of CD16 but not cytolytic activity of natural killer cells. *Clin Vaccine Immunol.* (2006) 13:768–78. doi: 10.1128/CVI.00042-06
25. Jacquelin B, Petitjean G, Kunkel D, Liovat AS, Jochems SP, Rogers KA, et al. Innate immune responses and rapid control of inflammation in African green monkeys treated or not with interferon-alpha during primary SIVagm infection. *PLoS Pathog.* (2014) 10:e1004241. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1004241
26. Rutjens E, Mazza S, Biassoni R, Koopman G, Ugolotti E, Fogli M, et al. CD8+ NK cells are predominant in chimpanzees, characterized by high NCR expression and cytokine production, and preserved in chronic HIV-1 infection. *Eur J Immunol.* (2010) 40:1440–50. doi: 10.1002/eji.200940062
27. Parham P, Abi-Rached L, Matevosyan L, Moesta AK, Norman PJ, Older Aguilar AM, et al. Primate-specific regulation of natural killer cells. *J Med Primatol.* (2010) 39:194–212. doi: 10.1111/j.1600-0684.2010.00432.x
28. Carter DL, Shieh TM, Blosser RL, Chadwick KR, Margolick JB, Hildreth JE, et al. CD56 identifies monocytes and not natural killer cells in rhesus macaques. *Cytometry.* (1999) 37:41–50. doi: 10.1002/(SICI)1097-0320(19990901)37:1<41::AID-CYTO5>3.0.CO;2-4
29. Mavilio D, Benjamin J, Kim D, Lombardo G, Daucher M, Kinter A, et al. Identification of NKG2A and NKp80 as specific natural killer cell markers in rhesus and pigtailed monkeys. *Blood.* (2005) 106:1718–25. doi: 10.1182/blood-2004-12-4762
30. Webster RL, Johnson RP. Delineation of multiple subpopulations of natural killer cells in rhesus macaques. *Immunology.* (2005) 115:206–14. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2567.2005.02147.x
31. Reeves RK, Gillis J, Wong FE, Yu Y, Connole M, Johnson RP. CD16- natural killer cells: enrichment in mucosal and secondary lymphoid tissues and altered function during chronic SIV infection. *Blood.* (2010) 115:4439–46. doi: 10.1182/blood-2010-01-265595
32. Yu J, Mao HC, Wei M, Hughes T, Zhang J, Park IK, et al. CD94 surface density identifies a functional intermediary between the CD56bright and CD56dim human NK-cell subsets. *Blood.* (2010) 115:274–81. doi: 10.1182/blood-2009-04-215491
33. Beziat V, Duffy D, Quoc SN, Le Garff-Tavernier M, Decocq J, Combadiere B, et al. CD56brightCD16+ NK cells: a functional intermediate stage of NK cell differentiation. *J Immunol.* (2011) 186:6753–61. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1100330
34. Romagnani C, Juelke K, Falco M, Morandi B, D'Agostino A, Costa R, et al. CD56brightCD16- killer Ig-like receptor- NK cells display longer telomeres and acquire features of CD56dim NK cells upon activation. *J Immunol.* (2007) 178:4947–55. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.178.8.4947
35. Hong HS, Rajakumar PA, Billingsley JM, Reeves RK, Johnson RP. No monkey business: why studying NK cells in non-human primates pays off. *Front Immunol.* (2013) 4:32. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2013.00032
36. Lopez-Verges S, Milush JM, Pandey S, York VA, Arakawa-Hoyt J, Pircher H, et al. CD57 defines a functionally distinct population of mature NK cells in the human CD56dimCD16+ NK-cell subset. *Blood.* (2010) 116:3865–74. doi: 10.1182/blood-2010-04-282301
37. Pelak K, Need AC, Fellay J, Shianna KV, Feng S, Urban TJ, et al. Copy number variation of KIR genes influences HIV-1 control. *PLoS Biol.* (2011) 9:e1001208. doi: 10.1371/annotation/7e17b146-a69c-4e83-9230-7340486d9dc8
38. Long BR, Ndhlovu LC, Oksenberg JR, Lanier LL, Hecht FM, Nixon DF, et al. Conferral of enhanced natural killer cell function by KIR3DS1 in early human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection. *J. Virol.* (2008) 82:4785–92. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02449-07
39. Alter G, Martin MP, Teigen N, Carr WH, Suscovich TJ, Schneidewind A, et al. Differential natural killer cell–mediated inhibition of HIV-1 replication based on distinct KIR/HLA subtypes. *J Exp Med.* (2007) 204:3027–36. doi: 10.1084/jem.20070695
40. Alter G, Rihn S, Walter K, Nolting A, Martin M, Rosenberg ES, et al. HLA class I subtype-dependent expansion of KIR3DS1+ and KIR3DL1+ NK cells during acute human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection. *J Virol.* (2009) 83:6798–805. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00256-09
41. Kiepiela P, Leslie AJ, Honeyborne I, Ramduth D, Thobakgale C, Chetty S, et al. Dominant influence of HLA-B in mediating the potential co-evolution of HIV and HLA. *Nature.* (2004) 432:769–75. doi: 10.1038/nature03113
42. Martin MP, Naranbhai V, Shea PR, Qi Y, Ramsuran V, Vince N, et al. Killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptor 3DL1 variation modifies HLA-B*57 protection against HIV-1. *J Clin Invest.* (2018) 128:1903–12. doi: 10.1172/JCI98463
43. Lin Z, Kuroki K, Kuse N, Sun X, Akahoshi T, Qi Y, et al. HIV-1 control by NK Cells via reduced interaction between KIR2DL2 and HLA- C*12:02/C*14:03. *Cell Rep.* (2016) 17:2210–20. doi: 10.1016/j.celrep.2016.10.075
44. Mori M, Leitman E, Walker B, Ndung'u T, Carrington M, Goulder P. Impact of HLA Allele-KIR Pairs on HIV Clinical Outcome in South Africa. *J Infect. Dis.* (2018) 219:1456–63. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jiy692
45. Sambrook JG, Bashirova A, Palmer S, Sims S, Trowsdale J, Abi-Rached L, et al. Single haplotype analysis demonstrates rapid evolution of the killer immunoglobulin-like receptor (KIR) loci in primates. *Genome Res.* (2005) 15:25–35. doi: 10.1101/gr.2381205
46. Albrecht C, Malzahn D, Brameier M, Hermes M, Ansari AA, Walter L. Progression to AIDS in SIV-infected rhesus macaques is associated with distinct KIR and MHC class I polymorphisms and NK cell dysfunction. *Front. Immunol.* (2014) 5:600. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2014.00600
47. Walter L, Ansari AA. MHC and KIR polymorphisms in rhesus macaque SIV infection. *Front Immunol.* (2015) 6:163–7. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2015.00540
48. Hellmann I, Letvin NL, Schmitz JE. KIR2DL4 copy number variation is associated with CD4+ T-cell depletion and function of cytokine-producing NK cell subsets in SIV-infected Mamu-A*01-negative rhesus macaques. *J Virol.* (2013) 87:5305–10. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02949-12
49. Ries M, Reynolds MR, Bashkueva K, Crosno K, Capuano S, Prall TM, et al. KIR3DL01 upregulation on gut natural killer cells in response to SIV infection of KIR- and MHC class I-defined rhesus macaques. *PLoS Pathog.* (2017) 13:e1006506. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1006506
50. Alter G, Heckerman D, Schneidewind A, Fadda L, Kadie CM, Carlson JM, et al. HIV-1 adaptation to NK-cell-mediated immune pressure. *Nature.* (2011) 476:96–100. doi: 10.1038/nature10237
51. Hölzemer A, Thobakgale CF, Cruz CAJ, Garcia-Beltran WF, Carlson JM, van Teijlingen NH, et al. Selection of an HLA-C*03:04-Restricted HIV-1 p24 gag sequence variant is associated with viral escape from KIR2DL3+ natural killer cells: data from an observational cohort in South Africa. *PLoS Med.* (2015) 12:e1001900. doi: 10.1371/journal.pmed.1001900
52. Goonetilleke N, Liu MK, Salazar-Gonzalez JF, Ferrari G, Giorgi E, Ganusov VV, et al. The first T cell response to transmitted/founder virus contributes to the control of acute viremia in HIV-1 infection. *J Exp Med.* (2009) 206:1253–72. doi: 10.1084/jem.20090365
53. Ferrari G, Korber B, Goonetilleke N, Liu MK, Turnbull EL, Salazar-Gonzalez JF, et al. Relationship between functional profile of HIV-1 specific CD8 T cells and epitope variability with the selection of escape mutants in acute HIV-1 infection. *PLoS Pathog.* (2011) 7:e1001273. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1001273
54. Bimber BN, Evans DT. The killer-cell immunoglobulin-like receptors of macaques. *Immunol Rev.* (2015) 267:246–58. doi: 10.1111/imr.12329

55. Hershberger KL, Shyam R, Miura A, Letvin NL. Diversity of the killer cell Ig-like receptors of rhesus monkeys. *J Immunol.* (2001) 166:4380–90. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.166.7.4380
56. LaBonte ML, Hershberger KL, Korber B, Letvin NL. The KIR and CD94/NKG2 families of molecules in the rhesus monkey. *Immunol Rev.* (2001) 183:25–40. doi: 10.1034/j.1600-065x.2001.1830103.x
57. Bruijnesteijn J, van der Wiel MKH, Swelsen WTN, Otting N, de Vos-Rouweler AJM, Elferink D, et al. Human and rhesus macaque KIR haplotypes defined by their transcriptomes. *J Immunol.* (2018) 200:1692–1701. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1701480
58. Moreland AJ, Guethlein LA, Reeves RK, Broman KW, Johnson RP, Parham P, et al. Characterization of killer immunoglobulin-like receptor genetics and comprehensive genotyping by pyrosequencing in rhesus macaques. *BMC Genomics.* (2011) 12:295. doi: 10.1186/1471-2164-12-295
59. Blokhuis JH, van der Wiel MK, Doxiadis GGM, Bontrop RE. The mosaic of KIR haplotypes in rhesus macaques. *Immunogenetics.* 62:295–306. doi: 10.1007/s00251-010-0434-3
60. Maloveste SM, Chen D, Gostick E, Vivian JP, Plishka RJ, Iyengar R, et al. Degenerate recognition of MHC class I molecules with Bw4 and Bw6 motifs by a killer cell Ig-like receptor 3DL expressed by macaque NK cells. *J Immunol.* (2012) 189:4338–48. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1201360
61. Boyson JE, Shufflebotham C, Cadavid LF, Urvater JA, Knapp LA, Hughes AL, et al. The MHC class I genes of the rhesus monkey. different evolutionary histories of MHC class I and II genes in primates. *J Immunol.* (1996) 156:4656–65.
62. Kaur G, Gras S, Mobbs JI, Vivian JP, Cortes A, Barber T, et al. Structural and regulatory diversity shape HLA-C protein expression levels. *Nat Commun.* (2017) 8:15924. doi: 10.1038/ncomms15924
63. Blokhuis JH, van der Wiel MK, Doxiadis GGM, Bontrop RE. The extreme plasticity of killer cell Ig-like receptor (KIR) haplotypes differentiates rhesus macaques from humans. *Eur J Immunol.* (2011) 41:2719–28. doi: 10.1002/eji.201141621
64. Robinson J, Mistry K, McWilliam H, Lopez R, Marsh SGE. IPD—the immuno polymorphism database. *Nucleic Acids Res.* (2010) 38(suppl 1):D863–9. doi: 10.1093/nar/gkp879
65. Gomez-Roman VR, Patterson LJ, Venzon D, Liewehr D, Aldrich K, Florese R, et al. Vaccine-elicited antibodies mediate antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity correlated with significantly reduced acute viremia in rhesus macaques challenged with SIVmac251. *J Immunol.* (2005) 174:2185–9. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.174.4.2185
66. Patterson LJ, Beal J, Demberg T, Florese RH, Malkevich N, Venzon D, et al. Replicating adenovirus HIV/SIV recombinant priming alone or in combination with a gp140 protein boost results in significant control of viremia following a SHIV89.6P challenge in Mamu-A*01 negative rhesus macaques. *Virology.* (2008) 374:322–37. doi: 10.1016/j.virol.2007.12.037
67. Alpert MD, Harvey JD, Lauer WA, Reeves RK, Piatak M Jr, Carville A, et al. ADCC develops over time during persistent infection with live-attenuated SIV and is associated with complete protection against SIV(mac)251 challenge. *PLoS Pathog.* (2012) 8:e1002890. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002890
68. Lambotte O, Pollara J, Boufassa F, Moog C, Venet A, Haynes BF, et al. High antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity responses are correlated with strong CD8 T cell viral suppressive activity but not with B57 status in HIV-1 elite controllers. *PLoS ONE.* (2013) 8:e74855. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0074855
69. Bradley T, Pollara J, Santra S, Vandergrift N, Pittala S, Bailey-Kellogg C, et al. Pentavalent HIV-1 vaccine protects against simian-human immunodeficiency virus challenge. *Nat Commun.* (2017) 8:15711. doi: 10.1038/ncomms15711
70. Mabuka J, Nduati R, Odem-Davis K, Peterson D, Overbaugh J. HIV-specific antibodies capable of ADCC are common in breastmilk and are associated with reduced risk of transmission in women with high viral loads. *PLoS Pathog.* (2012) 8:e1002739. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002739
71. Ronen K, Dingens AS, Graham SM, Jaoko W, Mandaliya K, McClelland RS, et al. Comprehensive characterization of humoral correlates of human immunodeficiency virus 1 superinfection acquisition in high-risk kenyan women. *EBioMed.* (2017) 18:216–24. doi: 10.1016/j.ebiom.2017.04.005
72. Haynes BF, Gilbert PB, McElrath MJ, Zolla-Pazner S, Tomaras GD, Alam SM, et al. Immune-correlates analysis of an HIV-1 vaccine efficacy trial. *N Engl J Med.* (2012) 366:1275–86. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa1113425
73. Tomaras GD, Ferrari G, Shen X, Alam SM, Liao HX, Pollara J, et al. Vaccine-induced plasma IgA specific for the C1 region of the HIV-1 envelope blocks binding and effector function of IgG. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (2013) 110:9019–24. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1301456110
74. Pollara J, Bonsignori M, Moody MA, Pazgier M, Haynes BF, Ferrari G. Epitope specificity of human immunodeficiency virus-1 antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity [ADCC] responses. *Curr HIV Res.* (2013) 11:378–87. doi: 10.2174/1570162X113116660059
75. Ramesh A, Darko S, Hua A, Overman G, Ransier A, Francica JR, et al. Structure and diversity of the rhesus macaque immunoglobulin loci through multiple de novo genome assemblies. *Front Immunol.* (2017) 8:1407. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2017.01407
76. Cocklin SL, Schmitz JE. The role of Fc receptors in HIV infection and vaccine efficacy. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS.* (2014) 9:257–62. doi: 10.1097/COH.0000000000000051
77. Boesch AW, Osei-Owusu NY, Crowley AR, Chu TH, Chan YN, Weiner JA, et al. Biophysical and functional characterization of rhesus macaque IgG subclasses. *Front Immunol.* (2016) 7:589. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2016.00589
78. Parsons MS, Richard J, Lee WS, Vanderven H, Grant MD, Finzi A, et al. NKG2D Acts as a co-receptor for natural killer cell-mediated anti-HIV-1 antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses.* (2016) 32:1089–96. doi: 10.1089/aid.2016.0099
79. Vargas-Inchaustegui DA, Demberg T, Robert-Guroff M. A CD8alpha subpopulation of macaque circulatory natural killer cells can mediate both antibody-dependent and antibody-independent cytotoxic activities. *Immunology.* (2011) 134:326–40. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2567.2011.03493.x
80. Lugthart G, Melsen JE, Vervat C, van Ostaijen-Ten Dam MM, Corver WE, Roelen DL, et al. Human lymphoid tissues harbor a distinct CD69+CXCR6+ NK cell population. *J Immunol.* (2016) 197:78–84. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1502603
81. Bernardini G, Sciume G, Santoni A. Differential chemotactic receptor requirements for NK cell subset trafficking into bone marrow. *Front Immunol.* (2013) 4:12. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2013.00012
82. Carrega P, Bonaccorsi I, Di Carlo E, Morandi B, Paul P, Rizzello V, et al. CD56(bright)perforin(low) noncytotoxic human NK cells are abundant in both healthy and neoplastic solid tissues and recirculate to secondary lymphoid organs via afferent lymph. *J Immunol.* (2014) 192:3805–15. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1301889
83. Hudspeth K, Donadon M, Cimino M, Pontarini E, Tentorio P, Preti M, et al. Human liver-resident CD56(bright)/CD16(neg) NK cells are retained within hepatic sinusoids via the engagement of CCR5 and CXCR6 pathways. *J Autoimmun.* (2016) 66:40–50. doi: 10.1016/j.jaut.2015.08.011
84. Cichocki F, Sitnicka E, Bryceson YT. NK cell development and function–plasticity and redundancy unleashed. *Semin Immunol.* (2014) 26:114–26. doi: 10.1016/j.smim.2014.02.003
85. Ferlazzo G, Thomas D, Lin SL, Goodman K, Morandi B, Muller WA, et al. The abundant NK cells in human secondary lymphoid tissues require activation to express killer cell Ig-like receptors and become cytolytic. *J Immunol.* (2004) 172:1455–62. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.172.3.1455
86. Freud AG, Becknell B, Roychowdhury S, Mao HC, Ferketich AK, Nuovo GJ, et al. A human CD34(+) subset resides in lymph nodes and differentiates into CD56bright natural killer cells. *Immunity.* (2005) 22:295–304. doi: 10.1016/j.immuni.2005.01.013
87. Chinen H, Matsuoka K, Sato T, Kamada N, Okamoto S, Hisamatsu T, et al. Lamina propria c-kit+ immune precursors reside in human adult intestine and differentiate into natural killer cells. *Gastroenterology.* (2007) 133:559–73. doi: 10.1053/j.gastro.2007.05.017
88. Alter G, Teigen N, Davis BT, Addo MM, Suscovich TJ, Waring MT, et al. Sequential deregulation of NK cell subset distribution and function starting in acute HIV-1 infection. *Blood.* (2005) 106:3366–9. doi: 10.1182/blood-2005-03-1100
89. Sirianni MC, Tagliaferri F, Aiuti F. Pathogenesis of the natural killer cell deficiency in AIDS. *Immunol Today.* (1990) 11:81–2. doi: 10.1016/0167-5699(90)90032-5

90. Tyler DS, Stanley SD, Nastala CA, Austin AA, Bartlett JA, Stine KC, et al. Alterations in antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity during the course of HIV-1 infection. humoral and cellular defects. *J Immunol.* (1990) 144:3375–84.
91. Eger KA, Unutmaz D. Perturbation of natural killer cell function and receptors during HIV infection. *Trends Microbiol.* (2004) 12:301–3. doi: 10.1016/j.tim.2004.05.006
92. Zulu MZ, Naidoo KK, Mncube Z, Jaggernath M, Goulder PJR, Ndung'u T, et al. Reduced expression of siglec-7, NKG2A, and CD57 on terminally differentiated CD56-CD16+ natural killer cell subset is associated with natural killer cell dysfunction in chronic HIV-1 clade C infection. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses.* (2017) 33:1205–13. doi: 10.1089/aid.2017.0095
93. Castriconi R, Cantoni C, Della Chiesa M, Vitale M, Marcenaro E, Conte R, et al. Transforming growth factor beta 1 inhibits expression of NKp30 and NKG2D receptors: consequences for the NK-mediated killing of dendritic cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (2003) 100:4120–5. doi: 10.1073/pnas.0730640100
94. Porichis F, Hart MG, Massa A, Everett HL, Morou A, Richard J, et al. Immune checkpoint blockade restores HIV-specific CD4 T cell help for NK cells. *J Immunol.* (2018) 201:971–81. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1701551
95. Meier UC, Owen RE, Taylor E, Worth A, Naoumov N, Willberg C, et al. Shared alterations in NK cell frequency, phenotype, and function in chronic human immunodeficiency virus and hepatitis C virus infections. *J Virol.* (2005) 79:12365–74. doi: 10.1128/JVI.79.19.12365-12374.2005
96. LaBonte ML, McKay PF, Letvin NL. Evidence of NK cell dysfunction in SIV-infected rhesus monkeys: impairment of cytokine secretion and NKG2C/C2 expression. *Eur J Immunol.* (2006) 36:2424–33. doi: 10.1002/eji.200635901
97. Li H, Evans TI, Reeves RK. Loss of bone marrow NK cells during SIV infection is associated with increased turnover rates and cytotoxicity but not changes in trafficking. *J Med Primatol.* (2013) 42:230–6. doi: 10.1111/jmp.12063
98. Vargas-Inchaustegui DA, Helmold Hait S, Chung HK, Narola J, Hoang T, Robert-Guroff M. Phenotypic and functional characterization of circulatory, splenic, and hepatic NK cells in simian immunodeficiency virus-controlling macaques. *J Immunol.* (2017) 199:3202–11. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1700586
99. Huot N, Jacquelin B, Garcia-Tellez T, Rascle P, Ploquin MJ, Madec Y, et al. Natural killer cells migrate into and control simian immunodeficiency virus replication in lymph node follicles in African green monkeys. *Nat Med.* (2017) 23:1277–86. doi: 10.1038/nm.4421
100. Schmitz JE, Kuroda MJ, Santra S, Sasseville VG, Simon MA, Lifton MA, et al. Control of viremia in simian immunodeficiency virus infection by CD8+ lymphocytes. *Science.* (1999) 283:857–60. doi: 10.1126/science.283.5403.857
101. Choi EI, Reimann KA, Letvin NL. *In Vivo* natural killer cell depletion during primary simian immunodeficiency virus infection in rhesus monkeys. *J Virol.* (2008) 82:6758–61. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02277-07
102. Choi EI, Wang R, Peterson L, Letvin NL, Reimann KA. Use of an anti-CD16 antibody for *in vivo* depletion of natural killer cells in rhesus macaques. *Immunology.* (2008) 124:215–22. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2567.2007.02757.x
103. Fehniger TA, Herbein G, Yu H, Para MI, Bernstein ZP, O'Brien WA, et al. Natural killer cells from HIV-1+ patients produce C-C chemokines and inhibit HIV-1 infection. *J Immunol.* (1998) 161:6433–8.
104. Takahashi Y, Mayne AE, Khowawisetsut L, Pattanapanyasat K, Little D, Villinger F, et al. *In Vivo* administration of a JAK3 inhibitor to chronically SIV infected rhesus macaques leads to NK cell depletion associated with transient modest increase in viral loads. *PLoS ONE.* (2013) 8:e70992–10. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0070992
105. Takahashi Y, Byrareddy SN, Albrecht C, Brameier M, Walter L, Mayne AE, et al. *In vivo* administration of a JAK3 inhibitor during acute SIV infection leads to significant increases in viral load during chronic infection. *PLoS Pathog.* (2014) 10:e1003929. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1003929
106. DeGottardi MQ, Okoye AA, Vaidya M, Talla A, Konfe AL, Reyes MD, et al. Effect of Anti-IL-15 administration on T Cell and NK cell homeostasis in rhesus macaques. *J Immunol.* (2016) 197:1183–98. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1600065
107. Boehncke WH, Schon MP, Girolomoni G, Griffiths C, Bos JD, Thestrup-Pedersen K, et al. Leukocyte extravasation as a target for anti-inflammatory therapy - which molecule to choose? *Exp Dermatol.* (2005) 14:70–80. doi: 10.1111/j.0906-6705.2005.290a.x
108. O'Leary JG, Goodarzi M, Drayton DL, von Andrian UH. T cell- and B cell-independent adaptive immunity mediated by natural killer cells. *Nat Immunol.* (2006) 7:507–16. doi: 10.1038/ni1332
109. Paust S, Gill HS, Wang BZ, Flynn MP, Moseman EA, Senman B, et al. Critical role for the chemokine receptor CXCR6 in NK cell-mediated antigen-specific memory of haptens and viruses. *Nat Immunol.* (2010) 11:1127–35. doi: 10.1038/ni.1953
110. Rapp M, Wiedemann GM, Sun JC. Memory responses of innate lymphocytes and parallels with T cells. *Sem Immunopathol.* (2018) 40:343–55. doi: 10.1007/s00281-018-0686-9
111. Paust S, Blish CA, Reeves RK. Redefining memory: building the case for adaptive NK cells. *J Virol.* (2017) 91:e00169–17. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00169-17
112. Peng H, Jiang X, Chen Y, Sojka DK, Wei H, Gao X, et al. Liver-resident NK cells confer adaptive immunity in skin-contact inflammation. *J Clin Invest.* (2013) 123:1444–56. doi: 10.1172/JCI66381
113. Kielczewska A, Pyzik M, Sun T, Krmpotic A, Lodoen MB, Munks MW, et al. Ly49P recognition of cytomegalovirus-infected cells expressing H2-Dk and CMV-encoded m04 correlates with the NK cell antiviral response. *J Exp Med.* (2009) 206:515–23. doi: 10.1084/jem.20080954
114. Scalzo AA, Manzur M, Forbes CA, Brown MG, Shellam GR. NK gene complex haplotype variability and host resistance alleles to murine cytomegalovirus in wild mouse populations. *Immunol Cell Biol.* (2005) 83:144–9. doi: 10.1111/j.1440-1711.2005.01311.x
115. Rolle A, Meyer M, Calderazzo S, Jager D, Momburg F. Distinct HLA-E peptide complexes modify antibody-driven effector functions of adaptive NK cells. *Cell Rep.* (2018) 24:1967–76 e4. doi: 10.1016/j.celrep.2018.07.069
116. Venkatasubramanian S, Cheekatla S, Paidipally P, Tripathi D, Welch E, Tvinnereim AR, et al. IL-21-dependent expansion of memory-like NK cells enhances protective immune responses against *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. *Mucosal Immunol.* (2017) 10:1031–42. doi: 10.1038/mi.2016.105
117. Gillard GO, Bivas-Benita M, Hovav AH, Grandpre LE, Panas MW, Seaman MS, et al. Thy1+ NK [corrected] cells from vaccinia virus-primed mice confer protection against vaccinia virus challenge in the absence of adaptive lymphocytes. *PLoS Pathog.* (2011) 7:e1002141. doi: 10.1371/annotation/b29086ef-e08d-444c-8113-18a6dd429a7c
118. Cooper MA, Yokoyama WM. Memory-like responses of natural killer cells. *Immunol Rev.* (2010) 235:297–305. doi: 10.1111/j.0105-2896.2010.00891.x
119. Goodier MR, Rodriguez-Galan A, Lusa C, Nielsen CM, Darboe A, Moldoveanu AL, et al. Influenza vaccination generates cytokine-induced memory-like NK cells: impact of human cytomegalovirus infection. *J Immunol.* (2016) 197:313–25. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1502049
120. Romee R, Rosario M, Berrien-Elliott MM, Wagner JA, Jewell BA, Schappe T, et al. Cytokine-induced memory-like natural killer cells exhibit enhanced responses against myeloid leukemia. *Sci Transl Med.* (2016) 8:357ra123. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.aaf2341
121. Ni J, Holsken O, Miller M, Hammer Q, Luetke-Eversloh M, Romagnani C, et al. Adoptively transferred natural killer cells maintain long-term antitumor activity by epigenetic imprinting and CD4(+) T cell help. *Oncoimmunology.* (2016) 5:e1219009. doi: 10.1080/2162402X.2016.1219009
122. Pal M, Schwab L, Yermakova A, Mace EM, Claus R, Krahl AC, et al. Tumor-priming converts NK cells to memory-like NK cells. *Oncoimmunology.* (2017) 6:e1317411. doi: 10.1080/2162402X.2017.1317411
123. Hwang I, Zhang T, Scott JM, Kim AR, Lee T, Kakarla T, et al. Identification of human NK cells that are deficient for signaling adaptor FcRgamma and specialized for antibody-dependent immune functions. *Int Immunol.* (2012) 24:793–802. doi: 10.1093/intimm/dxs080
124. Zhang T, Scott JM, Hwang I, Kim S. Cutting edge: antibody-dependent memory-like NK cells distinguished by FcRgamma deficiency. *J Immunol.* (2013) 190:1402–6. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1203034
125. Lee J, Zhang T, Hwang I, Kim A, Nitschke L, Kim M, et al. Epigenetic modification and antibody-dependent expansion of memory-like NK cells in human cytomegalovirus-infected individuals. *Immunity.* (2015) 42:431–42. doi: 10.1016/j.immuni.2015.02.013
126. Schlums H, Cichocki F, Tesi B, Theorell J, Beziat V, Holmes TD, et al. Cytomegalovirus infection drives adaptive epigenetic diversification of NK cells with altered signaling and effector function. *Immunity.* (2015) 42:443–56. doi: 10.1016/j.immuni.2015.02.008

127. Shah SV, Manickam C, Ram DR, Kroll K, Itell H, Permar SR, et al. CMV primes functional alternative signaling in adaptive deltag NK cells but is subverted by lentivirus infection in rhesus macaques. *Cell Rep*. (2018) 25:2766–74 e3. doi: 10.1016/j.celrep.2018.11.020
128. Zhou J, Amran FS, Kramski M, Angelovich TA, Elliott J, Hearps AC, et al. An NK cell population lacking FcRgamma is expanded in chronically infected HIV patients. *J Immunol*. (2015) 194:4688–97. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1402448
129. Peppa D, Pedroza-Pacheco I, Pellegrino P, Williams I, Maini MK, Borrow P. Adaptive reconfiguration of natural killer cells in HIV-1 infection. *Front Immunol*. (2018) 9:474. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00474
130. Oh JS, Ali AK, Kim S, Corsi DJ, Cooper CL, Lee SH. NK cells lacking FcepsilonRIgamma are associated with reduced liver damage in chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *Eur J Immunol*. (2016) 46:1020–9. doi: 10.1002/eji.201546009
131. Lunemann A, Vanoaica LD, Azzi T, Nadal D, Munz C. A distinct subpopulation of human NK cells restricts B cell transformation by EBV. *J Immunol*. (2013) 191:4989–95. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1301046
132. Hatton O, Strauss-Albee DM, Zhao NQ, Haggadone MD, Pelpola JS, Krams SM, et al. NKG2A-expressing natural killer cells dominate the response to autologous lymphoblastoid cells infected with Epstein-Barr virus. *Front Immunol*. (2016) 7:607. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2016.00607
133. Jud A, Kotur M, Berger C, Gysin C, Nadal D, Lunemann A. Tonsillar CD56brightNKG2A+ NK cells restrict primary Epstein-Barr virus infection in B cells via IFN-gamma. *Oncotarget*. (2017) 8:6130–41. doi: 10.18632/oncotarget.14045
134. Brown MG, Dokun AO, Heusel JW, Smith HR, Beckman DL, Blattenberger EA, et al. Vital involvement of a natural killer cell activation receptor in resistance to viral infection. *Science*. (2001) 292:934–7. doi: 10.1126/science.1060042
135. Smith HR, Heusel JW, Mehta IK, Kim S, Dorner BG, Naidenko OV, et al. Recognition of a virus-encoded ligand by a natural killer cell activation receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2002) 99:8826–31. doi: 10.1073/pnas.092258599
136. Wight A, Mahmoud AB, Scur M, Tu MM, Rahim MMA, Sad S, et al. Critical role for the Ly49 family of class I MHC receptors in adaptive natural killer cell responses. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2018) 115:11579–84. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1722374115
137. Hammer Q, Ruckert T, Borst EM, Dunst J, Haubner A, Durek P, et al. Peptide-specific recognition of human cytomegalovirus strains controls adaptive natural killer cells. *Nat Immunol*. (2018) 19:453–63. doi: 10.1038/s41590-018-0082-6
138. Colucci F, Di Santo JP, Leibson PJ. Natural killer cell activation in mice and men: different triggers for similar weapons? *Nat Immunol*. (2002) 3:807–13. doi: 10.1038/ni0902-807
139. Hammer Q, Romagnani C. About training and memory: NK-cell adaptation to viral infections. *Adv Immunol*. (2017) 133:171–207. doi: 10.1016/bs.ai.2016.10.001
140. Leeansyah E, Zhou J, Paukovics G, Lewin SR, Crowe SM, Jaworowski A. Decreased NK Cell FcRgamma in HIV-1 infected individuals receiving combination antiretroviral therapy: a cross sectional study. *PLoS ONE*. (2010) 5:e9643. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0009643
141. Peppa D. Natural killer cells in human immunodeficiency virus-1 infection: spotlight on the impact of human cytomegalovirus. *Front Immunol*. (2017) 8:1322. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2017.01322
142. Guma M, Cabrera C, Erkizia I, Bofill M, Clotet B, Ruiz L, et al. Human cytomegalovirus infection is associated with increased proportions of NK cells that express the CD94/NKG2C receptor in aviremic HIV-1-positive patients. *J Infect Dis*. (2006) 194:38–41. doi: 10.1086/504719
143. Nattermann J, Nischalke HD, Hofmeister V, Kupfer B, Ahlenstiel G, Feldmann G, et al. HIV-1 infection leads to increased HLA-E expression resulting in impaired function of natural killer cells. *Antivir Ther*. (2005) 10:95–107.

Conflict of Interest Statement: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

REVIEW
published: 07 June 2019
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.01296

Conceptual Approaches to Modulating Antibody Effector Functions and Circulation Half-Life

*Kevin O. Saunders**

Laboratory of Protein Expression, Departments of Surgery, Molecular Genetics and Microbiology, and Immunology, Duke University Medical Center, Duke Human Vaccine Institute, Durham, NC, United States

Antibodies and Fc-fusion antibody-like proteins have become successful biologics developed for cancer treatment, passive immunity against infection, addiction, and autoimmune diseases. In general these biopharmaceuticals can be used for blocking protein:protein interactions, crosslinking host receptors to induce signaling, recruiting effector cells to targets, and fixing complement. With the vast capability of antibodies to affect infectious and genetic diseases much effort has been placed on improving and tailoring antibodies for specific functions. While antibody:antigen engagement is critical for an efficacious antibody biologic, equally as important are the hinge and constant domains of the heavy chain. It is the hinge and constant domains of the antibody that engage host receptors or complement protein to mediate a myriad of effector functions and regulate antibody circulation. Molecular and structural studies have provided insight into how the hinge and constant domains from antibodies across different species, isotypes, subclasses, and alleles are recognized by host cell receptors and complement protein C1q. The molecular details of these interactions have led to manipulation of the sequences and glycosylation of hinge and constant domains to enhance or reduce antibody effector functions and circulating half-life. This review will describe the concepts being applied to optimize the hinge and crystallizable fragment of antibodies, and it will detail how these interactions can be tuned up or down to mediate a biological function that confers a desired disease outcome.

Keywords: antibody engineering, Fc optimization, therapeutic antibodies, biologics, passive immunity, immunotherapy

OPEN ACCESS

Edited by:
Gabriella Scarlatti, San Raffaele Hospital (IRCCS), Italy

Reviewed by:
Simone Irene Richardson, National Institute of Communicable Diseases (NICD), South Africa
Kevin R. Maisey, Universidad de Santiago de Chile, Chile

***Correspondence:**
Kevin O. Saunders
kevin.saunders@dm.duke.edu

Specialty section:
This article was submitted to Comparative Immunology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology

Received: *20 January 2019*
Accepted: *21 May 2019*
Published: *07 June 2019*

Citation:
Saunders KO (2019) Conceptual Approaches to Modulating Antibody Effector Functions and Circulation Half-Life. Front. Immunol. 10:1296. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.01296

INTRODUCTION

Since the approval of the first monoclonal antibody by the FDA in 1986 (1), there has been a rapid increase in the number of available monoclonal antibodies or antibody derivatives. In 2015 there were 44 antibodies approved for human use in the United States and Europe (2). Consistent with an expected annual approval rate of six to nine additional antibodies (3), the number of approved antibodies and antibody-like biologics in the United States has climbed to more than 70 (1, 4). It is estimated that global sales of antibody-based products approach $60–75 billion in any given year (2–8). Therefore, many pharmaceutical companies are including antibody-like molecules in their development portfolio due to their high capacity to generate revenue.

Basic science continues to discover the underlying mechanisms of genetic disorders, cancer, and infectious diseases (9, 10). Elucidation of these mechanisms fuels the development of

antibody-based biologics to counteract the abnormal biologic process that is causing disease. How the antibody counteracts the biologic process can be optimized for selectivity and potency by modifying the sequence of the antibody-based molecule to enhance or abrogate its interaction with the host immune system (11, 12). This concept is the foundation of antibody optimization efforts in industry laboratories as well as academic research laboratories. While most approved biologics are traditional antibodies, optimized antibodies like Orencia® (abatacept), Soliris® (eculizumab), Nplate® (romiplostim), and Removab® (catumaxomab) have paved the way for optimized antibodies as treatment options (11).

To optimize an antibody one must understand how the antibody is constructed and the role of each of its parts. An intact full-length antibody consists of two 50 kD heavy chains and two 25 kD light chains resulting in a 150 kD full-length, soluble immunoglobulin (13). Each heavy chain associates with a light chain through disulfide bonds and non-covalent interactions to form a heterodimer (14). The two heterodimers are paired together via disulfide bonds between the heavy chains (15, 16). Each heavy and light chain heterodimer includes the antigen binding fragment (Fab) composed of the light chain paired to the variable region of the heavy chain and the CH1 domain of the heavy chain constant region (17, 18). C-terminal to the Fab is the hinge, and the crystallizable fragment (Fc) (17, 18). The hinge region can be subdivided into upper, core, and lower hinge regions (19). The Fc includes the CH2 and CH3 domains of the heavy chain constant region (14).

The constant region of antibodies also contributes to the sequence variation of the heavy chain. The variable region of the heavy chain recombines with the heavy chain constant region to produce a full-length heavy chain (20, 21). The antibody can vary in isotype depending on whether the alpha, mu, gamma, epsilon, or delta constant region gene segment is recombined with the variable region (22). Among the human gamma gene segments there are 4 different subclasses designated as gamma 1, 2, 3, and 4, which are approximately 90% identical to each other (1). In a clinical context, each subclass is important since each subclass specializes in the elimination of different types of pathogens (23). For example, there is an association between deficiency in IgG2 antibodies and infection with encapsulated bacteria (24). The molecular basis of the association may be a diminished antibody response to polysaccharide antigens in individuals lacking IgG2 antibodies (25). For antibody engineering, the different isotypes and subclasses are important for antibody optimization since the sequence variation occurs at sites that determine affinities and specificities for FcRn, Fc alpha receptor, Fc gamma receptors, and complement protein C1q (26). There are 5 Fc gamma receptors (FcγR) that activate effector cells upon binding to IgG. Among the activating receptors there are FcγRI, FcγRIIa, FcγRIIc, FcγRIIIa, and FcγRIIIb (27). There is one inhibitory Fc gamma receptor—FcγRIIb (28, 29). The FcγRs are polymorphic, where certain alleles exhibit higher affinity for Fc than others. For example Val158 allelic variants of FcγRIIIa bind with higher affinity to IgG1 Fc than the Phe158 allelic variant (30). Antibody binding to these receptors can facilitate the recruitment of effector cells to opsonized target cells or opsonized pathogens for clearance [**Figure 1A**; (2)]. Therefore, changes to the sequence and post-translational modification of the Fc and hinge regions of antibodies allows one to manipulate the effector functions and circulation of a given antibody or antibody-like protein (31). In addition to sequence variation, the Fc region also contains an N-linked glycosylation site at residue 297, which is important for Fc structure and function (32). Most clinically approved antibody-based products are of the gamma isotype, subclass 1 (IgG1) (2). There are currently 3 IgG2 antibodies that are approved for use in the United States (2). IgG3 has long hinge region prone to proteolytic cleavage (23), and exhibits a reduced half-life relative to other IgG subclasses (33). For these reasons it has it has not been the subclass of choice for biologics. Since most clinically-approved antibodies are of the gamma isotype (2), the optimization of antibody binding to FcγRs has been the major focus of the Fc engineering field. However, it is important to note that IgA, IgM, and IgE isotypes have Fc receptors as well, which can be exploited by Fc engineering as discussed below (34–36).

In this review, the approaches utilized to optimize or eliminate Fc interactions with host proteins will be discussed. This review will focus on changes to Fc sequence and glycosylation as a means to modulate Fc function. While Fc optimization is presented as two distinct categories of either enhancement or abrogation of Fc binding the review will describe how a single mutation can have both effects; thus, the two categories are not mutually exclusive. Ultimately, the reader will gain knowledge of how to alter the Fc region of an antibody to change its immunologic properties.

ANTIBODY FC MUTATIONS FOR THE IMPROVEMENT OF EFFECTOR FUNCTIONS

Enhanced FcγR Binding

Engagement of FcγRs is required for antibody effector functions, such as antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) and antibody-dependent cellular phagocytosis (ADCP) (37). Below, modifications that affect binding to FcγRs which result in enhanced ADCC and ADCP are described.

Point Mutations to Enhance FcγR Binding

The Fc of antibodies has been optimized using multiple approaches in attempts to increase binding affinity to selected FcγR (**Table 1** and **Figure 2**). Guided by the 3.2 Å structure of the Fc of IgG1 (61), Shields et al. performed alanine scanning mutagenesis of the solvent exposed amino acid residues on Fc (38). Antibodies encoding Fc regions with alanine mutations were screened for their binding to FcγRI, FcγRIIa, FcγRIIb, FcγRIIIa, and FcRn. Each individual mutation was subdivided into improved or reduced binding to each FcγR and FcRn. Twenty-seven individual mutations increased binding to at least one FcγR or FcRn. In an attempt to engineer an Fc that bound strongly to FcγRIII—a receptor that mediates ADCC (62, 63)—alanine mutations at different sites were combined into one modified Fc. The combination of Ser298Ala, Glu333Ala, and Lys334Ala mutations (sometimes referred to as the AAA mutations) had an additive improvement on the affinity of IgG1

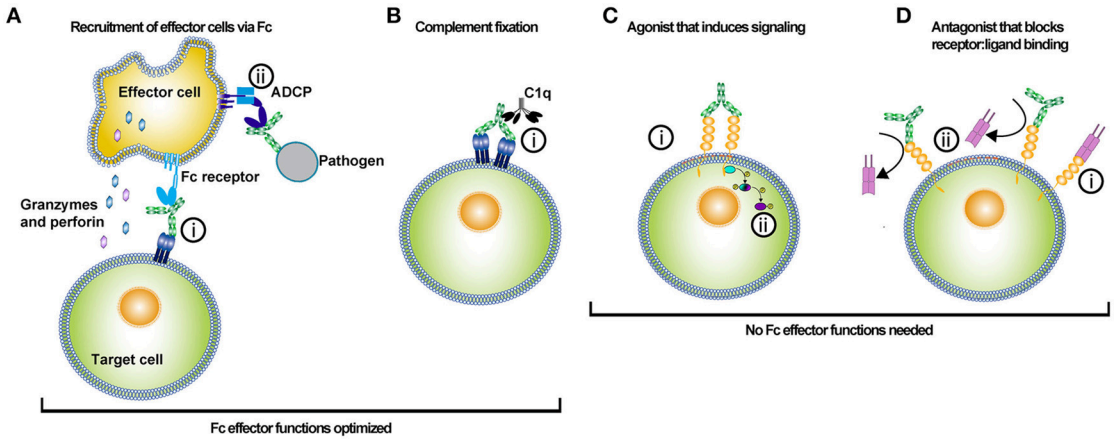


FIGURE 1 | Uses of antibody-based biologics. The type of Fc optimization undertaken for an antibody depends on the desired function of the antibody *in vivo*. Antibody-based biologics are principally used as adaptor molecules for effector cell recruitment to targets, inducers of the classical complement pathway, agonists, or antagonists. **(A)** Antibody biologics can be used to opsonize target cells or pathogens and recruit effector cells to kill or phagocytose the target cell or pathogen. (i) Antibodies bind to the antigen via their Fabs and recruit effector cells via their Fc interacting with Fc receptors. Recruitment of the effector cell to the target cell and release of cytotoxic molecules, such as granzyme and perforin results in target cell killing. Alternatively, (ii) effector cells can bind to the Fc of an antibody that has opsonized a pathogen, and subsequently phagocytose the pathogen via antibody-dependent cellular phagocytosis (ADCP). Much of the Fc engineering effort has been focused on improving Fc affinity for various activating FcγRs. The improvement of Fc affinity for FcγRs has led to augmented ADCC and ADCP activity for the optimized antibody-based biologic. **(B)** Antibodies can kill target cells through the initiation of the complement pathway. The initial step in initiating the complement pathway is the binding of complement protein 1q (C1q). (i) C1q binds to the Fc of antibodies in complex with antigen. Specific mutations have been introduced into the Fc of antibodies to enhance Fc binding affinity to C1q. **(C)** Agonistic antibody-based molecules are designed to bind to ligand and induce signaling by crosslinking a membrane-bound receptor. (i) Binding of both Fab arms crosslinks the cell receptor and (ii) subsequent phosphorylation of intracellular signal transducers potentiates the receptor signaling. These types of antibody-based biologics do not require Fc function; hence these molecules are prime candidates for Fc optimization that silences FcγR and complement binding. **(D)** Antagonistic antibody-based biologics bind to a target molecule and prevent the function of that protein either directly or by blocking its ligand from binding. (i) Typically the ligand binds to its receptor, (ii) but in the presence of the antagonistic antibody the receptor binding site is competitively or allosterically blocked. The lack of ligand binding prevents intracellular signaling by the membrane-bound receptor. In this instance, Fc effector functions are not needed and thus mutations that silence Fc effector function can be employed to optimize these types of biologics.

for FcγRIIIa (**Table 1**) (38). The improved binding to FcγRIIIa translated to 50–100-fold more potent killing *in vitro* of Her2+ cells by the antibody Herceptin when Ser298Ala, Glu333Ala, and Lys334Ala mutations were incorporated.

In a directed evolution approach, Lazar et al. used a computational algorithm to calculate amino acid substitutions that would be predicted to improve the interaction between Fc and FcγRIIIa (39). They also generated a set of quality improvement mutations that would be predicted to improve stability and solubility. Ser239Asp and Ile332Glu in the CH2 domain individually improved FcγRIIIa binding affinity by one log compared to the wildtype Fc (**Figure 2A**). To maximize binding these two mutations were combined into one Fc construct which resulted in an approximately 2-log enhancement in binding affinity for FcγRIIIa compared to the wildtype Fc. However, an unwanted increase in binding to the inhibitory FcγRIIb was also conferred by the Ser239Asp/Ile332Glu double mutant (39). This undesired effect was partially negated by adding an Ala330Leu mutation to the Ser239Asp/Ile332Glu variant (**Figure 2A**). The triple mutant Ser239Asp/Ile332Glu/Ala330Leu (commonly referred to as DLE) was introduced into the Fc of anti-cancer antibody Trastuzumab. Compared to wildtype Trastuzumab, Trastuzumab with the DLE mutations had 2-log more potent ADCC killing of Her2+ cancer cell lines expressing low or high levels of cancer antigen (39). The DLE mutations also increased ADCC activity of an anti-integrin antibody, MEDI-522, against a human melanoma cell line (64). Similarly, these mutations increased ADCP by the anti-CD20 cancer antibody Rituximab (39). At the cellular level the DLE mutations function to recruit higher numbers of natural killer cells per target cell coated with the DLE-optimized antibody compared to wildtype antibody (65). Approximately 90% of the recruited NK cells kill cell the target upon first contact, and then move to a second cell for killing (65). Thus, single NK cells kill more target cells per contact and more target cells over time (65). This increase in recruitment and more efficient killing conferred by the DLE-optimized antibody was shown to be due to enhanced FcγRIII-mediated signaling as measured by ZAP70 phosphorylation (65).

The crystal structure of the Fc containing the Ser239Asp/Ile332Glu/Ala330Leu mutations was solved to understand how these mutations affect FcγRIIIa binding. The structure showed an open conformation of the Fc where the two CH2 domains were separated from each other by an additional 30 Å compared to wildtype Fc (66). Thermostability measurements suggested that the opening of the CH2 domain could be because the CH2 domain was less stable or more flexible upon addition of the Ser239Asp/Ile332Glu/Ala330Leu mutations (66). The structure of the optimized Fc was modeled interacting with FcγRIIIa,

TABLE 1 | Fc modifications to enhance antibody effector function.

Modifications or mutations (reference)	Abbreviated name	Phenotype	Enhanced effector function
Ser298Ala/Glu333Ala/Lys334Ala (38)	AAA	• Enhanced FcγRIIIa affinity	ADCC
Ser239Asp/Ala330Leu/Ile332Glu (39, 40)	DLE	• Increased FcγRIIIa affinity • Low binding to inhibitory FcγRIIb	ADCC ADCP
Ser239Asp/Ile332Glu (39, 40)	DE	• Increased FcγRIIIa • Strong binding to inhibitory FcγRIIb	ADCC ADCP
Gly236Ala/Ser239Asp/Ala330Leu/Ile332Glu (41–43)	GASDALIE	• Increased binding affinity to FcγRIIa and FcγRIIIa • Only a small increase to FcγRIIb	ADCC
Gly236Ala (40)	GA	• Increases FcγRIIa affinity • No change in FcγRIIb affinity • Decreased FcγR1	ADCP
Ser239Asp/Ile332Glu/Gly236Ala (40)	DAE	• Recovers FcγRI binding lost by Gly236Ala • Increases FcγRIIIa and FcγRIIa • Enhanced FcγRIIb binding	ADCC ADCP
Leu234Tyr/Gly236Trp/Ser298Ala (44)	YWA	• Improved FcγRIIIa affinity when present in 1 heavy chain constant region • Used in asymmetric Fc design with DLE	ADCC
Phe243Leu, Arg292Pro, Tyr300Leu, Val305Ile, and Pro396Leu (45)	Variant 18	• Enhanced FcγRIIa and FcγRIIIa off-rates • Less than 2 fold enhancement of FcγRIIb	ADCC
Lys326Trp/Glu333Ser (46)		• Increased C1q binding • CDC activity was comparable to Lys326Trp, but improved versus wildtype Fc • Decreased ADCC activity	CDC
Lys326Ala/Glu333Ala (46)		• Increased C1q binding • Preserved ADCC activity	CDC
Lys326Met/Glu333Ser (46)		• Increased CDC activity • Preserved ADCC activity	CDC
Cys221Asp/Asp222Cys (47)		• Increased C1q binding • Preserves FcγRIII affinity and ADCC	CDC
Ser267Glu, His268Phe, and Ser324Thr (48)	EFT	• Increased C1q binding • Ser267Glu increased inhibitory FcγRIIb affinity • Decreased ADCC/ADCP	CDC
His268Phe and Ser324Thr (48)	FT	• Improved CDC • Functions with ADCC and ADCP enhancing mutations • Less potent CDC than EFT	CDC
Glu345Arg (49)	Arg345	• Increased C1q binding • IgG1 hexamer formation	CDC
IgG1/IgG3 cross-subclass (50)	1133 1131	• Increased C1q binding • Preserves ADCC activity	CDC
IgG2/IgG3 cross-subclass (51)	IgG 3-3-3/2-3 IgG 2-2-3-2	• Increases C1q and C4b binding	CDC
4-domain cross-isotype (52)	γγγα	• Decreased FcγRI binding • Decreased Polymeric Ig receptor binding • Decreased half-life	CDC
Tandem cross-isotype (53)	IgG1/IgA2	• Bound to FcγRs, FcαRI, and FcRn • Decreased C1q binding	ADCC
Chimeric cross-isotype (54)	IgGA	• Bound to FcγRI, FcγRIIa, FcαRI • Lost FcRn	ADCC ADCP CDC
Multimeric IgG (55)		• Increased C1q • Increased FcγRI and FcγRIII	CDC
Galactosylation (56, 57)		• Increased C1q	CDC
Biantennary glycan at N297 (58, 59)		• Improved binding to FcγRIIIa	ADCC
Afucosylated glycan at N297 (60)		• Increased binding to FcγRIIIa	ADCC

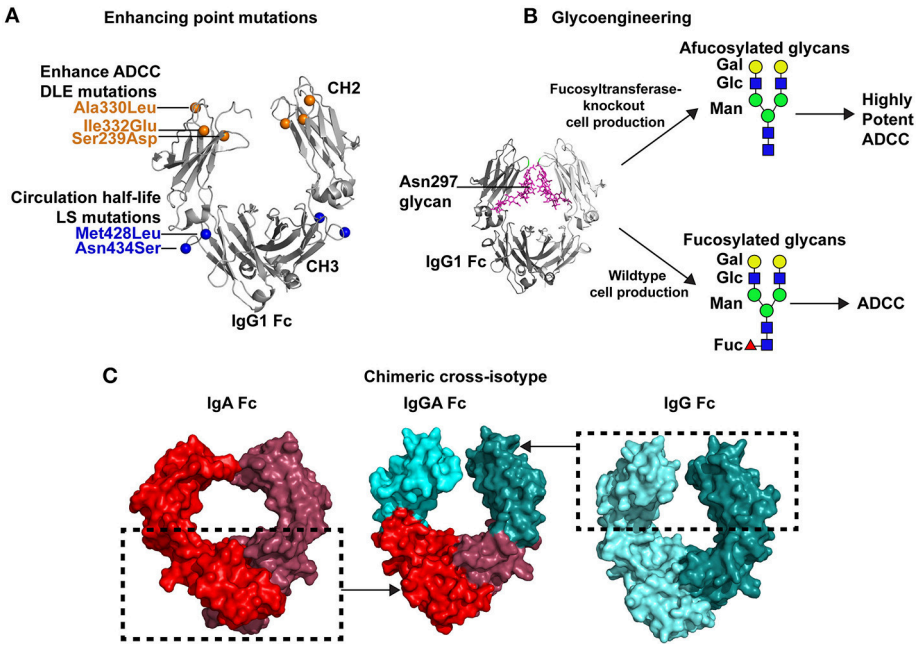


FIGURE 2 | Strategies for improving antibody Fc-mediated effector functions. **(A)** Multiple point mutations have been identified that improve binding affinity of Fc for specific FcγRs. In some instances a single FcγR, such as FcγRIIIa is the receptor of interest. Directed evolution, alanine scanning, or structure-guided design have been used to identify these mutations. An example of these mutations is the DLE (Ser239Asp/Ile332Glu/Ala330Leu) set of mutations that are shown in the crystal structure of the Fc by orange spheres (PDB:3DO3; 42). These mutations improve ADCC activity. Additionally, mutations can be inserted that improve antibody circulation *in vivo*. The LS mutations, depicted by blue spheres, (Met428Leu/Asn434Ser) are one example of antibody half-life extension mutations. **(B)** Antibody effector functions can be enhanced by glycoengineering the Fc domain. The Fc domain contains a N-linked glycan at position 297. A crystal structure of the IgG1 Fc (gray) and the N297 glycan (magenta) are shown (PDB:4BYH). Expression of antibody in wildtype cells results in a fucosylated complex glycans present at N297. However, specialized cells have been created with fucosyltransferase knocked out, which results in afucoylated glycans at Asn297. Antibodies with afucosylated glycans exhibit upto 50-fold more potent ADCC than the same antibody with a fucosylated glycan at Asn297 (60). Green circles, mannose; blue squares, GlcNAc2; yellow circles, galactose; and red triangles, fucose. **(C)** Antibody effector functions can be improved by expanding the breadth of Fc receptors capable of interacting with Fc. To improve antibody effector function the Fc of a single antibody can be engineered to bind to Fc receptors for multiple antibody isotypes. This concept has led to the design of cross-isotype IgGA antibodies (center) where the IgG1 CH2 a1 loop residues 245–258 and the IgG1 CH3 domain (cyan) were exchanged with the structurally analogous regions of IgA (54). The regions inside the dashed box were combined to create a chimeric cross-isotype Fc. The IgG1 segments are colored light and dark cyan (right, PDB: 3DO3), and the IgA segments are colored light and dark red (left, PDB: 1OW0). The cross-isotype Fc is capable of binding to FcγRI and FcαRI, hence either of these Fc receptors can be used to recruit diverse effector cells to target cells (54).

to determine whether the Ser239Asp/Ile332Glu/Ala330Leu mutations created additional interactions with the FcγRIIIa. Indeed, the structural model suggested additional hydrogen bonds between Ser239Asp/Ile332Glu in the Fc and Lys158 in the FcγRIIIa. Ala330Leu potentially created more hydrogen bonds with Ile85 in the FcγRIIIa as well (66). Additional electrostatic and hydrophobic interactions were also suggested by the structural model (66).

Mimoto et al. engineered an asymmetric Fc that combined the DLE mutations with their newly-identified Fc optimization mutations (44). In a large saturating mutagenesis screen, they examined the binding of 1,000 single Fc mutants to identify mutations that improved FcγRIIIa binding when present in only one of the heavy chains within an IgG molecule. They selected three mutations, Leu234Tyr, Gly236Trp, and Ser298Ala (termed YWA mutations), from their screen to incorporate into one heavy chain constant region. Since the DLE mutations had been shown to increase FcγRIIIa binding they incorporated these mutations into the other heavy chain constant region. Antibodies bearing YWA mutations in one heavy chain and DLE in the other mediated ADCC of tumor antigen-expressing cells *in vitro* more potently than symmetrical antibodies that contained only the YWA or DLE mutations (44). Thus, this asymmetric Fc design enables one to incorporate multiple optimization mutations to additively improve Fc function.

Macrophages utilize FcγRIIa to phagocytose antibody-opsonized antigens (67). To increase Fc receptor binding to FcγRIIa, Richards et al. screened 900 Fc variants for binding to FcγRIIa and identified Gly236Ala substitution alone increased the binding affinity approximately 6-fold for both His131 and Arg131 alleles of FcγRIIa (40). Unfortunately, the addition of Gly236Ala into IgG1 Fc reduced the IgG1 affinity for the activating receptor FcγRI (40). To recover the FcγRI binding, previously reported Ser239Asp/Ile332Glu mutations were introduced into the IgG1 Fc. This triple combination of mutations showed a 3-fold increase in FcγRI up to 70-fold increase in affinity for FcγRIIa, and up to a 31-fold increase in affinity for FcγRIIIa. The Ser239Asp/Ile332Glu/Gly236Ala

mutations enhanced *in vitro* FcγRIIa-dependent phagocytosis and FcγRIII-dependent ADCC activity of an IgG1 targeting adenocarcinoma cell lines (40).

The activating receptor FcγRIIa is 90% similar to the inhibitory receptor FcγRIIb (68), and thus the increase in FcγRI and FcγRIIIa affinity for Ser239Asp/Ile332Glu/Gly236Ala was accompanied by a 13-fold enhancement in binding to FcγRIIb. To compare the binding of both the activating and inhibitory FcγRIIs the ratio of binding was determined. The ratio of binding between the activating FcγRIIa and inhibitory FcγRIIb receptors was higher for Gly236Ala and the Ser239Asp/Ile332Glu/Gly236Ala than wildtype IgG1 (40). Thus, the ratio may be most important for determining the final functional activity of antibodies encoding the Ser239Asp/Ile332Glu/Gly236Ala mutations. Smith et al. attempted to improve the binding ratio of FcγRIIa to FcγRIIb by combining related sets of mutations to generate Gly236Ala/Ser239Asp/Ala330Leu/Ile332Glu (referred to as GASDALIE) (41). This collection of mutations increased binding affinity to FcγRIIIa encoding the low affinity allele Phe158 by 30-fold, most likely because of increased electrostatic interactions between the Fc and FcγRIIIa (41, 42). Similarly, binding affinity to FcγRIIa was improved 25-fold (41). FcγRIIb binding affinity affinities were only slightly increased, which resulted in a FcγRIIa to FcγRIIb affinity ratio of 11.6 compared to 1.6 for wildtype IgG1 (41). In a second experiment, investigators attempted to optimize Fc while avoiding any mutations that increased FcγRIIb binding. Using yeast display the investigators identified mutations that increased FcγRIIIa binding and reduced FcγRIIb binding. Upon making their mutant libraries and expressing them on the surface of yeast they used bead depletion to remove antibody Fc variants that bound to FcγRIIb. After FcγRIIb-bead depletion, the library of remaining Fc regions was screened for binding to recombinant FcγRIIIa. Using two different libraries, seven single mutations appeared to lack FcγRIIb binding while improving FcγRIIIa binding. These mutations were introduced into the Fc region of IgG1 individually as well as in various combinations. Combinations of Phe243Leu, Arg292Pro, Tyr300Leu, Val305Ile, and Pro396Leu mutations slowed the off-rates of Fc binding to FcγRIIa and FcγRIIIa relative to wildtype Fc without increasing binding to the inhibitory FcγRIIb receptor. The Fc that included all five mutations—termed variant 18—had a 10-fold improvement in affinity for FcγRIIa and FcγRIIIa, and <2-fold increase in FcγRIIb affinity. The variant 18 Fc exhibited potent ADCC activity against colon, ovarian, and breast cancer cell lines *in vitro* for several different antibodies (45). *In vivo*, an IgG1 encoding Phe243Leu, Arg292Pro, Tyr300Leu, Val305Ile, and Pro396Leu mutations conferred a significant increase in survival in a lethal ovarian tumor transplantation model (45). These mutations have shown promise in treatment of cancer in humans as well. Anti-HER2 monoclonal antibody Margetuximab, which contains Phe243Leu/Arg292Pro/Tyr300Leu/Val305Ile/Pro396Leu optimization mutations, exhibits improved ADCC activity compared to the standard of care antibody trastuzumab (69). In one clinical trial 78% of the response-evaluatable patients who received Margetuximab showed a reduction in tumor size (70), highlighting the potential promise for Fc optimization to improve disease treatment.

Glycoengineering to Enhance FcγR Binding

The Fc of IgG1 contains a single N-linked glycosylation site at position 297. The glycan present at N297 typically consists of two N-acetylglucosamine (GlcNAc), three mannose, and two more GlcNAc linked to the mannose to form a biantennary complex glycan (71). The two GlcNAc are linked to mannose through either a β1,2 linkage to α-3 or α-6 of the mannose. Thus, each arm of the glycan can be distinguished as the α1,3 or α1,6 arm depending upon how the mannose and $GlcNAc_2$ are linked (71). Additional fucose, galactose, sialic acid, and GlcNAc can be added to the core glycan structure (**Figure 2B**). IgG found circulating in human sera are generally fucosylated, however during recombinant IgG production the glycan composition can be altered by expressing the antibody in plant cells, knocking in or knocking out specific glycosidases, or *in vitro* enzymatic digestion of the glycosylated IgG (**Figure 2B**) (72). Since both heavy chains are glycosylated it is possible for a single IgG molecule to have significant glycan heterogeneity (71). The glycan has direct effects on FcγR binding. The Asn297 glycan on the Fc can clash with glycans on the FcγRIII protein, which results in poor engagement of effectors cells that mediate ADCC. Also, nuclear magnetic resonance studies have shown that Fc regions containing different glycans at Asn297 adopt different hinge region conformations (73). Since the hinge region is contacted by FcγRs, the glycosylation of N297 indirectly affects the ability of the Fc to interact with FcγRs. Thus, optimization of Fc glycosylation has been important for producing antibody biologics with a desired function.

To modulate antibody activity several studies have modified antibody Fc glycosylation by expressing or inhibiting enzymes in the producer cells. Expression of β(1,4)-N-acetylglucosaminyltransferase III when expressing IgG gives an antibody glycosylated at N297 that has a biantennary glycan and has better ADCC activity (58). Davies et al. produced anti-CD20 IgG1 under these conditions and found the antibody had 10–20-fold more potent FcγRIIIa-dependent killing of CD20+ cells (59). Despite these results the importance of bisecting GlcNAc is debated, and the removal of fucose has been asserted as an alternative hypothesis [**Figure 2B**; (74)]. Antibodies deficient in fucose have been shown to have 50-fold higher binding to FcγRIIIa and enhanced ADCC activity (60). The enhancement of afucosylated antibody binding to FcγRIIIa is higher for the high affinity Val158 allele compared to the Phe158 allele, but both alleles show an increase in binding to afucosylated IgG1 compared to fucosylated IgG1 (40, 75). The most dramatic increase in binding by afucosylated Fc is for glycosylated FcγRIIIa (76), with the removal of the Asn162 glycan in FcγRIIIa completely abrogating this enhanced binding (76). The mechanism for glycosylated FcγRIII recognition was later determined by structural studies, which showed that the afucosylated Asn297 glycan interacts with the Asn162 glycan on FcγRIII (77). The addition of fucose to the Fc glycan creates clashes with the $GlcNAc_2$ on FcγRIIIa, providing a structural explanation for why afucosylated antibodies bind

better to FcγRIIIa (77). The approval of mogamulizumab (POTELIGEO®) in Japan marked the first approval for human use of an afucosylated antibody with enhanced ADCC activity (78–80).

Enhancing FcγR Binding by Exchange of Fc Domains Across Isotypes (Cross-Isotype Antibodies)

In addition to increasing affinity for receptors by introducing point mutations or modifying glycans, the Fc can be optimized to engage a wider range of Fc receptors (**Figure 2C**). As stated above, Fc receptors for isotypes other than gamma exist on particular leukocytes. By creating a Fc region that can interact with multiple Fc receptors, such as FcγR and FcαRI, one creates an antibody with expanded, novel abilities to engage effector cells (2). Neutrophils are the most abundant leukocyte in the body, and they engage Fc of IgA antibodies via the FcαRI (81, 82). Single domains of IgA2 were appended to end of the gamma 1 constant region creating a four-domain constant region (CH1g-CH2g-CH3g-CH3a) (52) in an attempt to engage FcγRs and FcαRI. To make the constant region more similar to the alpha constant region the CH1 domain of gamma 1 was substituted for the alpha 1 constant region domain (CH1a-CH2g-CH3g-CH3a). These four-domain cross-isotype IgGA chimeric antibodies bound to J chain similar to natural IgA2 but had reduced transport by polymeric Ig receptor. The four-domain, cross-isotype antibodies also had a 3–5-fold decrease in FcγRI affinity, and possessed the short serum half-life of IgA2 instead of the protracted serum circulation of IgG1. Despite these shortcomings, the four-domain cross-isotype IgGA design was capable of mediating complement-dependent lysis of sheep red blood cells and appeared to be more pH-resistant than IgG1 (52). In a similar approach a second type of cross-isotype Fc has been created by fusing the gamma 1 and alpha constant regions together to create a tandem G1-A Fc region (53). In this design the hinge, CH2, and CH3 of IgA2 is fused to the C-terminus of IgG1. This tandem cross-isotype IgG/IgA design had similar expression levels, antigen binding, and thermostability as antibodies made in the IgG1 format. *In vitro*, the tandem cross-isotype IgG/IgA bound to FcαRI and FcγRI, FcγRII, FcγRIIIa, and FcRn with affinities similar to wildtype IgA and IgG, respectively. This binding to various FcRs translated to the antibody mediating ADCC activity with polymorphonuclear cells and NK cells. C1q binding to the tandem cross-isotype IgG/IgA was reduced 3-fold compared to the IgG1 format of the antibody. Lastly, in BALB/c mice, tandem IgG/IgA circulated with a half-life similar to that of IgG1. In a third design, Kelton et al. created a cross-isotype antibody by exchanging the CH3 domain and CH2 α1 loop residues 245–258 (PKPKDTLMISRTPE) of the gamma 1 constant region with that of the alpha constant region [**Figure 2C**; (54)]. The chimeric Fc possessed the ability to bind to FcγRI, FcγRIIa, and FcαRI (54). Antibodies made in this IgGA format were capable of mediating ADCC with polymorphonuclear cells, mediating ADCP with macrophages, and activating complement (54). However, this design lacked binding to neonatal Fc receptor which regulates antibody half-life (54). Thus, further optimization would be required for effective *in vivo* use of this design. In total, these designs show the promise of the concept of engaging a wide range of effector cells for antibody Fc optimization.

IgG Multimerization Augments FcγR Binding

Multimerizing IgG has shown promise in the treatment of autoimmune diseases (83, 84). The IgG multimers are constructed in various ways including the addition of heterologous multimerization domains such as isoleucine zippers (83), another hinge region at the N-terminus of the natural hinge, or another hinge region at the C-terminus of the CH3 domain (83). Similarly, hexamers of IgG have been created by appending the IgM tailpiece to the C-terminus of the IgG1 Fc and creating a cysteine bond at position 309 (85, 86). The multimeric IgG formed by the addition of the IgM tailpiece bound strongly to FcγRI, FcγRIIa, and FcγRIIIa and bound weakly to FcγRIIb and FcγRIIIb (85, 86). Across the various designs, multimeric IgG bound to a higher magnitude than monomeric IgG to FcγRI, FcγRIIb, and FcγRIII (83, 85). Such molecules have shown promise in preclinical models of arthritis, neuropathy, and autoimmune myasthenia gravis (83, 84, 87). Hence the multimeric IgG platform is being further optimized to fine-tune the immune receptors, such as FcRn that can interact with the multimer (55).

Enhancing Complement Fixation

Point Mutations to Increase C1q Binding and Complement-Dependent Cytotoxicity (CDC)

Antibodies can exert cytotoxic effects by engaging the complement pathway. The initial step of this process is the binding of C1q to the CH2 domain of an antibody-opsonized antigen [**Figure 1B**; (88)]. Alanine scanning mutagenesis of the human IgG1 Fc identified Asp270, Lys322, Pro329, and Pro331 as essential for C1q binding to the Fc (89), although Fc from different species utilize different residues for binding to C1q (90). To increase Fc binding to C1q Idusogie et al. identified Lys326 and Glu333 as proximal to the core binding site of C1q within the Fc. The importance of these residues was first tested by alanine mutagenesis. Introducing Lys326Ala and Glu333Ala increased C1q binding and CDC activity by 50%. To optimize the Fc for binding to C1q various amino acids were introduced at 326 and 333 individually and in combination. The combination of Lys326Trp and Glu333Ser increased C1q binding by 5-fold (46). However, CDC activity conferred by the Lys326Trp/Glu333Ser double mutant Fc was the same as the Lys326Trp single mutant, and the Fc lost the ability to mediate ADCC. In instances when ADCC activity is also important, mutating positions 326 and 333 to two alanines, or mutating positions 326 and 333 to methionine and serine, respectively, provided an increase in CDC without hindering ADCC (46). Similar mutagenesis experiments have been done for the hinge region to determine whether it affects C1q binding and CDC activity. The mutation of the hinge region was not intuitive since C1q binds to the CH2 domain below the hinge region. However, it was shown that in the upper hinge region substituting Trp in various combinations at positions 222, 223, 224, and 225 increased C1q binding and increased CDC activity relative to wildtype IgG1 (47). ADCC activity and FcγRIIIa binding were unchanged by these modifications (47).

Cys221Asp and Asp222Cys alone or in combination with Trp substitutions also increased C1q and CDC activity (47). Thus, the hinge of human IgG1 modulated C1q binding to the CH2 domain (47).

To identify other point mutations that improve CDC activity of IgG1, Moore et al. made 38 Fc variants of an anti-CD20 antibody and screened them *in vitro* for their ability to mediate CDC against Raji cells (48). Among the 38 variants, three variants encoding Ser267Glu, His268Phe, and Ser324Thr (termed the EFT mutations) changes were identified as having more potent CDC activity vs. wildtype IgG1 (48). The largest improvement in CDC activity was achieved when the three mutations were combined into one Fc variant (48). Correlation analyses suggested the improvement in CDC potency was due to increased C1q binding (48). The triple EFT mutations had increased binding to the inhibitory FcγRIIb, which presumably limited its ADCC and ADCP activity. The addition of ADCC and ADCP-enhancing mutations to the EFT mutations restored ADCC and ADCP function back to wildtype IgG1 levels, but did not confer an improvement (48). The increased binding to FcγRIIb could be reduced by eliminating the Ser267Glu from the EFT mutations, however this change came a cost of reduced CDC potency. The His268Phe and Ser324Thr mutations were then capable of being combined with ADCC and ADCP-enhancing mutations to create a single Fc with improved CDC, ADCC, and ADCP activity (48). This study highlights the complicated balance between optimizing one effector function without decreasing another effector function.

Insertions and Deletions to Increase to Increase C1q Binding and Complement-Dependent Cytotoxicity (CDC)

Hinge length is important for C1q recognition of antibodies or antibody-based proteins. IgG3 has a distinct extended hinge of 62 amino acids that arises from the duplication of 3 exons that encode for part of the core hinge region (91). For IgG3 antibodies complement activation is increased by shortening its hinge region (92). While complete removal of the hinge ablates CDC function, a hinge of 15 amino acids instead of 62 amino acids exhibited 10-fold more potent CDC activity (92). More specifically, removal of the three repeats regions within the core hinge does not eliminate CDC, but instead improved CDC potency for anti-bacterial antibodies (93). This result for IgG3 is in contrast to IgG1 where two amino acid deletions in the core hinge region reduced C1q binding, CDC activity, and ADCC (47).

Cross-Subtype Antibodies to Improve C1q Binding

IgG1 is the preferred subclass for antibody biopharmaceuticals over IgG3 since the long hinge of IgG3 complicates large scale production of the antibody (2). However, IgG3 possesses the best *in vitro* binding to C1q (94). As a means to enhance IgG1 C1q binding, domains of IgG3 where substituted for IgG1 domains to create IgG1/G3 cross-subtype antibodies (50). These chimeras eliminated the difficulty of purifying antibodies with long hinge regions but capitalized on IgG3 effector functions. In one of the best variants, termed 1133, the CH1 and hinge region from IgG1 was fused to the Fc from IgG3 (50). Its ADCC activity and antigen binding were unchanged, while, its CDC activity and C1q binding were enhanced relative to wildtype IgG1 or IgG3 (50). Furthermore, the 1133 design allowed for CDC activity when the antigen levels were low (95). However, the 1133 Fc variant lacked protein A binding, which is important for easy purification of the antibody. Thus, an antibody with the CH1, hinge, and CH3 of IgG1 and CH2 of IgG3 was constructed since C1q binds the CH2 domain and protein A binds the CH3 domain. This variant had improved CDC activity and the ability to bind protein A (50). The molecular basis for the improved binding of the chimeras is presumed to be the amino acid differences in the CH2 domain that are proximal to the C1q binding site in the tertiary structure of the Fc. In mutagenesis experiments aiming to define the amino acids required for C1q binding to IgG1 and IgG3 K322 was found to be important for both subclasses, but dependence on other amino acids varied between subclasses. For example, P331 was required for CDC activity of IgG1 (89), but had only a modest effect on IgG3 CDC activity (96). These results indicate that C1q binding differs between IgG3 and IgG1 thus chimeric antibodies may be able to enhance binding by combining Fc:C1q interactions from both gamma subclasses. While the goal of Fc designs has been to boost IgG1 activity, cross-subclass designs have also been used to confer activity to functionally silent subclasses. IgG2 and IgG4 have very little ability to mediate CDC compared to IgG1 or IgG3 (51). However, replacing the CH2 domain of IgG2 with that of IgG3 can instill CDC activity to the otherwise IgG2 Fc (51). Similarly, IgG4 differs from IgG1 at position 331, which has been shown to be proximal to the C1q binding site (90). Changing the IgG4 residue at position 331 to match IgG1 conferred a moderate level of CDC. Therefore, if one knows the key residues for mediating an effector function they can be introduced into functionally silent Fc domains to confer specific functions.

IgG1 Hexamer Formation Boosts C1q Binding and CDC Activity

The multimerization of IgG by binding to antigen is known to enhance C1q binding substantially (97). To engender multimerization of the IgG in the absence of antigen, analysis of IgG structures identified position 345 as an amino acid that could facilitate multimerization between the Fc regions of different antibodies (49). The IgG structure suggested that the introduction of a positively charged amino acid would confer Fc:Fc interactions. Thus, a Glu345Arg mutation was introduced into the IgG1 Fc. Electron microscopy and mass spectrometry confirmed that this mutation resulted in monomeric IgG1 as well as multimeric IgG1 linked via the Fc (49). The multimeric IgG possessed higher binding to C1q and more potent lysis of a Burkitt's lymphoma cell line (49). Interestingly, the Glu345Arg mutation not only increased CDC activity by IgG1, but also IgG2, IgG3, and IgG4. Multimers of IgG1 have also been described by the addition of IgM tailpiece and Cys309 in the IgG1 Fc as stated above (see IgG multimerization augments FcγR binding). IgG hexamers created using the IgM tailpiece strategy also showed improved binding to C1q and C5b relative to wildtype IgG1 (55). Thus, multimerization of IgG is another method in addition

to point mutations and IgG1/IgG3 cross-isotype antibodies to increase C1q binding affinity.

Glycoengineering to Improve Complement Binding

The Asn297 glycan within the CH2 domain of the Fc can be modified to improve CDC activity (56, 57, 98–101). In a large screen of 20 different glycoforms of anti-trinitrophenyl hapten IgG1 Fc an overabundance of galactosylation increased C1q binding and CDC activity compared to the unmodified glycoform of IgG1 (57). Galactosylation appeared to be the principal glycan residue that affected CDC activity as significant positive correlations were observed between abundance of galactosylation on Fc and CDC potency (57). In a separate study Peschke et al. confirmed the importance of galactosylation for CDC activity using a different antibody specificity and multiple IgG subclasses. Galactosylation of the IgG1 Fc improved CDC activity of the anti-CD20 antibody Rituxumab against Raji B cells *in vitro* (56). The improved CDC activity conferred by galactosylation of the Fc was applicable to IgG3, but was not applicable to IgG2 or IgG4 in this *in vitro* model (56). The improved CDC activity conferred by galactosylated Fc was not due to changes in antigen binding, but instead was associated with enhanced C1q binding (56, 57). Overabundance of galactosylation on IgG1 Fc also improved thermostability when measured by differential scanning calorimetry (99). Thus, galactosylating the Fc is one strategy for producing a stable biologic with highly potent CDC activity.

IMPROVED ANTIBODY HALF-LIFE CIRCULATION

In addition to improving antibody effector functions by increasing affinity for activating FcγR and C1q, Fc optimization efforts have also tried to improve antibody circulation *in vivo*. *In vivo* IgG catabolism is regulated by its interaction with the neonatal Fc receptor (FcRn) (102). The FcRn binds to IgG at the junction of the CH2 and CH3 domains in a pH dependent manner (102–104). IgG is endocytosed by cells where it can be shuttled to lysosomes or recycled back to the cell surface (105). Binding of IgG to FcRn at low pH (pH < 6.5) in the endosomes allows the antibody to be trafficked with the FcRn back to the cell surface (106, 107). Poor binding to FcRn at pH < 6.5 results in the antibody being trafficked to the lysosome and degraded (105). At the physiologic pH of the extracellular environment IgG has weak affinity for FcRn which results in its release from the FcRn back into circulation (105). The pH dependent binding is regulated by protonation of His310, 435, 436 in the Fc at low pH (108). The protonation creates positively charged residues that can bind to negatively charged Glu117, Glu132, and Asp137 in the FcRn (109).

Point Mutations to Increase FcRn Binding Affinity

In a global approach to increasing IgG1 half-life, alanine scanning mutagenesis of the Fc was performed. In this screen 17 amino acids that affect IgG Fc binding to FcRn were identified (38). Among the 17 amino acids Asn434 and Glu380 showed large increases in affinity when mutated to alanine (38). The Asn434Ala mutation has been useful for countering the poor FcRn affinity that can result from the introduction of FcγR affinity-optimizing mutations (38), thus Asn434Ala is typically added to Ser298Ala, Glu333Ala, and Lys334Ala to create a AAAA variant with enhanced FcγR binding and normal or slightly improved FcRn binding (**Table 2**) (38). Additional half-life mutations were identified by sequentially performing random and directed evolution screens of phage libraries. The phage binding was done at pH 6 to mimic endosomal pH, and elution was done at pH 7.4 to find variants that did not bind at physiologic pH. Six collections of mutations were identified that improved FcRn binding across three different assays including Glu294deletion/Thr307Pro/Asn434Tyr (termed C6A-66) and Thr256Asn/Ala378Val/Ser383Asn/Asn434Tyr (referred to as C6A-78) (116). Asn434Tyr was among the most common mutations found in each collection (114). One of the differences between these collections of mutations was the ability to bind to FcγRIIIa, thus one could extend half-life while also retaining ADCC activity or knocking out ADCC activity (114). In more recent work, the C6A-66 collection of mutations were analyzed further since it showed only a moderate increase in FcRn binding, but had the best serum half-life *in vivo*. The collection of mutations were studied as individual mutations to elucidate the function of the deletion of Glu294 (115). This deletion resulted in higher sialylation of the Asn297 glycan on the Fc (115). The abundance of sialic acid was necessary for the increase in antibody half-life *in vivo* (115). Thus, increased FcRn binding was not the only factor that contributed to increased half-life. Sialylation also has a role in regulating serum half-life (115).

Ghetie et al. also created large libraries of random mutations of Thr252, Thr253, and Thr254 in the mouse Fc and screened them for binding to mouse FcRn using a bacteriophage display platform (113). The three sites were chosen based on their proximity to the FcRn binding site on Fc. From the phage library the collection of Thr252Leu, Thr253Ser, and Thr254Phe was identified that had significantly longer half-life in wildtype mice. These three mutations, termed LSF, did not affect association rates of Fc with FcRn but did slow the dissociation rate of Fc from FcRn at pH6 (113). This result indicated for mouse antibodies that that position 252, 254, and 256 could be manipulated to increase antibody half-life. Hence in a later study, phage display libraries of human IgG1 were used to identify analogous mutations at positions 252, 254, and 256 (111). In the human IgG1 Met252Tyr, Ser254Thr, and Thr256Glu was observed in a high abundance among the clones isolated from the phage library. Inclusion of these 3 mutations, often called YTE, in the IgG1 Fc resulted in a 10-fold slower dissociation rate of Fc and FcRn. Overall, the YTE mutations enhanced the apparent equilibrium rate constant 3-fold for Fc binding to FcRn. To determine whether the increased binding to FcRn *in vitro* translated to improved pharmacokinetics in primates, wildtype IgG1 or a YTE variant were infused into cynomolgus monkeys and serum half-life was compared. The YTE antibody possessed a 4-fold increase in serum half-life as compared to the wildtype antibody (64). Additionally, there was a higher

TABLE 2 | Fc modifications to improve antibody circulation half-life.

Modifications or mutations (reference)	Abbreviated name	Phenotype	Enhanced function
Arg435His (110)	His435	• Increased binding to FcRn at low pH	Extended half-life
Asn434Ala (38)	A	• Increased binding to FcRn at pH6	Extended half-life
Met252Tyr/Ser254Thr/Thr256Glu (111)	YTE	• Slowed off-rate for Fc and FcRn • Increased FcRn affinity • Decreased ADCC	Extended half-life
Met428Leu/Asn434Ser (112)	LS	• Increased affinity to and slowed off-rate for FcRn at pH6 • No change in ADCC	Extended half-life
Thr252Leu/Thr253Ser/Thr254Phe (113)	LSF	• Increased binding to FcRn at pH < 6.5	Extended half-life
Glu294delta/Thr307Pro/Asn434Tyr (114)	C6A-66	• Increased binding to FcRn at pH < 6 • No binding to FcRn at pH7.4 • Decreased FcγRIIa binding and ADCC	Extended half-life
Thr256Asn/Ala378Va l/ Ser383Asn/Asn434Tyr (114)	C6A-78	• Increased binding to FcRn at pH < 6 • No binding to FcRn at pH7.4	Extended half-life
Glu294delta (114, 115)	Del	• Increased sialylation	Extended half-life

concentration of infused IgG measured in bronchioalveolar lavage fluid when the Fc included the YTE mutations (64). The pharmacokinetic profile of an IgG1 possessing the YTE mutations was determined in a phase 1, double-blind, dose escalation study. In this study the YTE-variant of IgG1 had a serum half-life of 80–112 days (117). Based on the typical serum half-life of IgG1 being 21 days, the YTE mutation seems to increase half-life 4–5-fold in humans (117). In a second study YTE was introduced into motavizumab and their half-life was directly compared in humans. Consistent with the first study, serum half-life was extended 2–4-fold compared to wildtype IgG. Remarkably, the individuals that received the YTE variant had functional therapeutic antibody present in their serum 240 days after antibody infusion (118). Thus, the YTE mutations raise the possibility of long-acting antibody-based biologics that could suppress or protect from disease in humans. While YTE improves half-life of the antibody, it also eliminates ADCC activity of the antibody (64). This pitfall can be counteracted by the addition of ADCC-enhancing mutations, such as DLE (64). Therefore, YTE mutations should be used alone only when the antibody does not need to mediate ADCC.

Another set of mutations that improve antibody half-life was discovered by Zalevsky et al. using rational protein design. Introduction of Met428Leu and Asn434Ser mutations (referred to as the LS mutations) in IgG1 Fc resulted in a decrease in the dissociation rate and an 11-fold improvement in binding affinity between Fc and human FcRn at pH6 [**Figure 2A**; (112)]. In contrast to YTE, LS mutations did not significantly reduce ADCC activity (119). In cynomolgus macaques, the LS mutations conferred a 3-fold increase in antibody half-life (112). A similar increase of 3–4-fold in serum antibody half-life was seen in human FcRn transgenic mice (112). The improvement in function conferred by the LS mutations was tested by engrafting tumors into the human FcRn transgenic mice and infusing wildtype or LS-mutant IgG1 (112). For two different cancer immunotherapeutic antibodies the LS mutant IgG1 inhibited tumor growth significantly better than the wildtype IgG1 (112). Since the initial description of the LS mutations, multiple groups have shown these mutations boost antibody half-life in cynomolgus macaques (120, 121) and rhesus macaques (119, 122). The LS mutations have been helpful in sustaining protection against HIV-1 infection in animal models (119, 122, 123). The incorporation of LS resulted in increased antibody concentrations at mucosal sites and prolonged serum half-life (119, 122). Together these attributes resulted in improved protection afforded by optimized IgG1 in macaque models of HIV-1 infection (119, 122, 123). Clinical trials are planned to administer anti-HIV-1 IgG1 antibodies encoding the LS mutation. The extent to which the improved pharmacokinetic profile translates from macaques to humans will be determined, and whether longer half-life improves therapeutic efficacy will be evaluated. Novel mutations to improve antibody half-life are still being pursued. Approaches to improve upon the LS mutations include finding mutations that completely eliminate Fc binding to FcRn at physiologic pH, while also enhancing binding at low pH.

Cross-Subclass Point Mutations to Enhance FcRn Binding

IgG1 makes these 3 productive Fc:FcRn contacts and has a half-life of 21 days (109). In contrast to IgG1, IgG3 alleles typically encode arginine at position 435 instead of histidine. IGHG3*17, IGHG3*18, and IGHG3*19 alleles are the exceptions, which encode histidine like IgG1. The presence of arginine vs. histidine confers a serum half-life of only 7 days (124). *In vitro* competition assays suggest that IgG1 with His435 outcompetes IgG3 with Arg435 for FcRn binding (110). Furthermore, Arg435 seems to increase binding of IgG3 to FcRn at physiologic pH (110), which could result in more IgG3 being absorbed to epithelial cells expressing FcRn hindering the ability of IgG3 to freely circulate in serum. To increase IgG3 half-life, position

435 was changed to histidine, which boosted FcRn binding at low pH (110). Consistent with the increased binding, serum concentrations of IgG3 are higher in individuals who express an allelic variant of IgG3 encoding His435 and infusion of IgG3 encoding His435 is more efficient (110, 125). Thus, modulation of the pH sensing ability of IgG3 Fc is one mechanism for boosting its serum half-life.

ANTIBODY FC ENGINEERING FOR THE ABLATION OF EFFECTOR FUNCTIONS

While Fc optimization has focused heavily on gain-of-function modifications, in certain situations it can be beneficial to eliminate antibody Fc function. These situations include antibodies that are used as **(1)** receptor agonists to crosslink receptors and induce signaling, **(2)** receptor antagonists to block receptor:ligand interactions to prevent signaling, or **(3)** drug delivery vehicles to deliver drug to antigen-expressing target cells (**Figures 1C,D**). In these instances Fc engagement of receptors on effector cells or engagement of C1q is not wanted, because it can lead to undesired killing of biologically-important cells expressing the receptor or recruitment of drug-conjugated antibodies to off-target cells (126, 127). Below, strategies to eliminate FcγR binding and complement protein C1q binding are described.

Ablation of FcγR Binding

Point Mutations to Ablate FcγR Binding

One of the earliest antibodies used in humans was OKT3 to prevent transplant rejection (1). Despite humanization of the antibody, this antibody induced proinflammatory cytokine secretion, which resulted in toxicity (128, 129). The cytokine secretion was due to binding of OKT3 to CD3 followed by crosslinking of FcγRs on T cells (129). To alleviate the cytokine induction from T cells the Fc region of the antibody was mutated to eliminate FcγR binding (129). A single mutation of Leu235Glu was sufficient for knocking out binding to Fc receptors on U937 cells (129). Furthermore, the 100-fold reduction in binding to FcγR also resulted in lower T cell activation and proliferation in the presence of the Leu235Glu Fc mutant IgG1. Building upon this initial mutation it was found that the combination of Leu234Ala and Leu235Ala (commonly called LALA mutations) eliminated FcγRIIa binding [**Table 3** and **Figure 3A**; (130, 131)]. These two mutations were later shown to eliminate detectable binding to FcγRI, IIa, and IIIa for both IgG1 and IgG4 (153). The use of LALA appears to be more effective than either Leu234Ala or Leu235Ala alone. Some groups have seen that the Leu235Glu mutation knocks out FcγRI binding (129). However, there are reports that this high affinity receptor still binds to IgG1 Fc when this mutation is present (132). Similarly, Leu234Ala single mutant Fc still possessed detectable binding to the high affinity Fc receptor FcγRI at least in some assays (131). Both the single and double mutations at position 234 and 235 reduced ADCC activity mediated by PBMCs and nearly ablated ADCC mediated by monocytes (132). Nonetheless, the LALA mutations have been tested in humans in a phase I clinical trial. Anti-CD4 antibody OKT3 encoding the LALA mutations was administered for the treatment of acute renal allograft rejection. The IgG1 with LALA mutations caused minimal adverse reactions and was able to reverse allograft rejection in 6 of 7 individuals (154). One common pairing, in addition to the LALA pairing, is Ser228Pro paired with Leu235Glu, which has been called the SPLE or PE mutations (133). The SPLE mutations have been introduced into IgG4, which has low binding to FcγR initially perhaps due to the Phe234 residue that differs from Leu234 found in IgG1 (155). This combination dramatically reduced FcγRI binding to IgG Fc to barely detectable levels by surface plasmon resonance (133), without reducing circulating half-life in rats (155). The effect of the Ser228Pro is thought to be mostly to improve stability of IgG4 (155).

The LALA mutations have provided a foundation for the addition of other mutations or new modifications to Leu235. Building upon the LALA mutant phenotype, Oganesyan et al. mutated Leu234 and Leu235, but also added Pro331Ser to the Fc design to completely abrogate binding between Fc and FcγRs (135). The triple mutant Pro331Ser, Leu234Glu, and Leu235Phe eliminated all FcγR binding (135) without disrupting the overall conformation of the Fc (135). Similarly, Pro329Gly mutation was added to the LALA mutations, which inhibited binding to murine FcγRI, II, and III by IgG2a Fc (134, 156). The amino acid at 329 was changed, because this residue makes contact with Trp108 and Trp131 of FcγRIIIa (61). The LALA-PG was an improvement over LALA mutations alone in that they nullified Fc function in mouse and human IgG (134), whereas LALA alone still retains murine FcγRIII binding to murine IgG2a (157). The significance of the LALA-PG mutations are that observed results in murine models are expected to more accurately translate to humans since the mutations confer a similar phenotype for both murine IgG2a and human IgG1 (134).

The LALA mutations are among the most common point mutations used to disrupt Fc receptor binding, however other sites have been reported to knockout Fc receptor binding. Using a panel of 32 site-directed alanine mutations in IgG Fc Lund and colleagues showed that Gly237 and Glu318 were required for FcγRII binding (131, 138, 158). This lack of binding resulted in poor phagocytosis *in vitro* (138). Additional alanine scanning mutagenesis experiments determined 9 different amino acid substitutions that resulted in loss of binding to FcγRI, IIa, IIb, and IIIa. Notably, Asp265Ala and Glu233Pro mutations reduced binding to all 4 receptors by >80% (38). Ala318, Ala237, Ala265, and Pro233 represent a collection of mutations that can be used in various combinations to eliminate Fc receptor binding to Fc (134, 137, 138).

Cross-Subclass Fc Designs Eliminate FcγR Binding

To silence the effector functions of Fc, large portions of Fc regions from different subclasses have been exchanged to generate cross-subclass Fc regions (141). These designs aim to silence the Fc effector functions by combining CH domains from different subclasses that lack opposing functions. For example, IgG2 has poor FcγR binding but binds C1q, and IgG4 lacks C1q binding but reacts with FcγRs (142). Hence, combinations of IgG2 and

TABLE 3 | Fc modifications to silence antibody effector function.

Modifications or mutations (reference)	Abbreviated name	Phenotype	Reduced effector function
Leu235Glu (129)	LE	• Decreased binding to cell surface FcγRs	ADCC
Leu234Ala/Leu235Ala (130–132)	LALA	• Decreased binding to FcγRI, II, III	ADCC ADCP CDC
Ser228Pro/Leu235Glu (133)	SPLE in IgG4	• Decreased FcγRI binding • Half-life was unchanged	
Leu234Ala/Leu235Ala/Pro329Gly (134)	LALA-PG	• Eliminated binding to FcγRI, II, III, C1q	ADCP
Pro331Ser/Leu234Glu/Leu235Phe (135, 136)	TM	• Decreased binding to FcγRI, II, III and C1q	CDC
Asp265Ala (134, 137)	DA	• Decreased binding to FcγRI, II, III	ADCC ADCP
Gly237Ala (138)		• Decreased binding to FcγRII	ADCP
Glu318Ala (138)		• Decreased binding to FcγRII	ADCP
Glu233Pro (38)		• Decreased binding to FcγRI, II, and III	
Gly236Arg/Leu328Arg (139, 140)	GRLR	• Decreased binding to all FcγR	ADCC
IgG2-IgG4 cross-subclass (141, 142)	IgG2/G4	• Decreased binding to FcγRs and C1q	
His268Gln/Val309Leu/Ala330Ser/Pro331Ser (143, 144)	IgG2m4	• Decreased binding to all FcγR • Decreased C1q binding	ADCC ADCP CDC
Val234Ala/Gly237Ala/Pro238Ser/ His268Ala/Val309Leu/Ala330Ser/Pro331Ser (144)	IgG2σ	• Near complete elimination of FcγRI, IIa, IIb, and IIIa binding • Decreased C1q binding • Binds FcRn	ADCC ADCP CDC
Leu234Ala/L235Ala/Gly237Ala/P238Ser/ His268Ala/Ala330Ser/Pro331Ser (144–146)	IgG1σ	• Near complete elimination of FcγRI, IIa, IIb, and IIIa binding • Binds FcRn	ADCC CDC
Ala330Leu (89)	AL	• Decreased C1q binding • Part of DLE mutations	CDC
Asp270Ala (89)		• Decreased C1q binding	CDC
Lys322Ala (89)		• Decreased C1q binding	CDC
Pro329Ala (89)		• Decreased C1q binding	CDC
Pro331Ala (89)		• Decreased C1q binding	CDC
IgG2-IgG3 cross-subclass (51)		• Decreased C1q binding	CDC
High mannose glycosylation (147, 148)		• Decreased C1q binding	CDC
Val264Ala (137)		• Decreased C1q binding	CDC
Phe241Ala (137)		• Decreased C1q binding	CDC
Asn297Ala or Gly or Gln (32, 149–152)		• Decreased binding to FcγRI and IIIa • Decreased C1q binding	ADCC ADCP CDC
S228P/Phe234Ala/Leu235Ala (144)	IgG4 PAA	• Decreased binding to FcγRI, IIa and IIIa	ADCC CDC

IgG4 CH domains have been constructed that are devoid of both C1q and FcγR binding (141, 142). Typically, in the IgG2/G4 chimeras the hinge and CH1 domain originates from IgG2 and the CH2 and CH3 domains are from IgG4 (141, 142).

Using a different approach to the same concept An and colleagues compared the amino acid sequences of different IgG subclasses and introduced mutations into IgG2 that would completely eliminate FcγR binding. The aim of this approach is to introduce natural amino acids into the Fc so that the Fc would not be immunogenic. The investigators made conservative changes in the IgG2 primary sequence resulting in His268Gln/Val309Leu/Ala330Ser/Pro331Ser mutations (143). This cross-subclass design was termed IgG2m4 and lacked binding to all FcγR (143). The circulating half-life of this antibody was comparable to wildtype IgG in macaques, which suggested the transplantation of IgG4 residues did not make the IgG2 more immunogenic (143).

More recently, Vafa et al. combined many of the mutations that have been discovered over the last 25 years to create an engineered construct called G2σ (**Figure 3B**). This construct included Val234Ala/Gly237Ala/Pro238Ser/His268Ala/Val309Leu/Ala330Ser/Pro331Ser mutations where many of the mutations were previously established as silencing mutations and the remaining mutations were selected as cross-subclass mutations that introduced IgG4 residues into IgG2 (144). In direct comparisons with IgG1, IgG2, IgG4, and IgG2m4, IgG2σ had

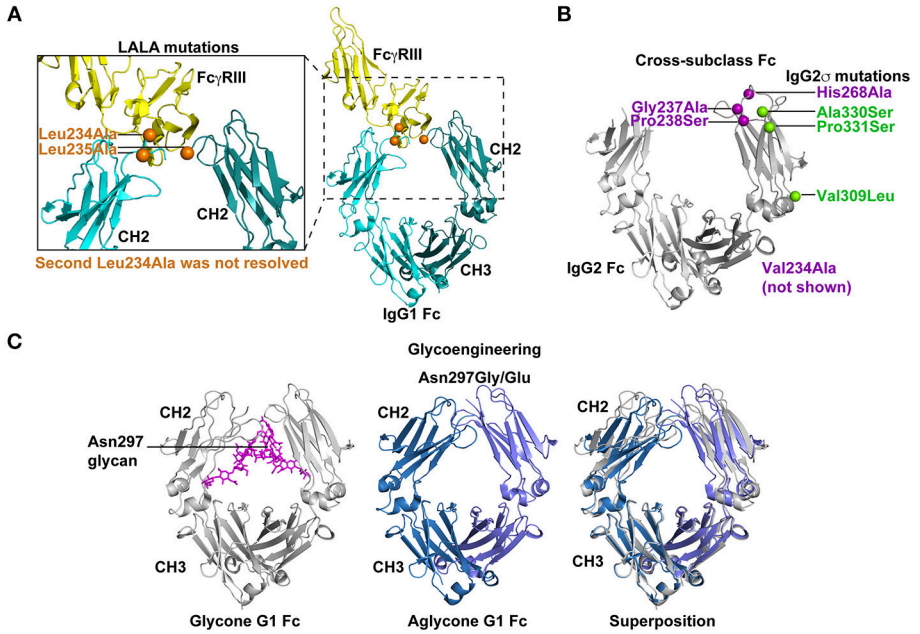


FIGURE 3 | Strategies for silencing antibody effector functions. **(A)** Point mutations in the Fc have been identified that disrupt antibody effector functions. The elucidation of key amino acids in the interaction of Fc with FcγRs has led to collections of point mutations that can eliminate or drastically reduce Fc binding to specific FcγRs. The Leu234Ala/Leu235Ala (LALA) mutations are perhaps the most commonly used mutations for disrupting antibody effector function (130, 131). As shown in the co-crystal structure (PDB: 1T83) with orange spheres the LALA mutations are proximal to FcγRIII (yellow) when it binds the IgG1 Fc (light and dark teal). These mutations can be combined with other effector function silencing strategies to engineer a Fc that is devoid of any FcγR binding or C1q binding. Leu 234 was only resolved in one of the chains of the Fc region. **(B)** Effector functions can be disrupted by exchanging amino acids between two Fc molecules from different IgG subclasses. These cross-subclass Fc designs rationally combine mutations that knockdown binding to a given FcγR or complement protein. IgG2m4 and IgG2σ are two examples of engineered Fc regions that were generated by this approach (143, 144). IgG2σ is perhaps the most effector function silent Fc and it combines cross-subclass mutations Val309Leu, Pro331Ser, and Ala330Ser (green spheres) with four additional mutations not naturally found in human Fc sequences (purple spheres) (144). The crystal structure of the IgG2 Fc (gray) encoding these mutations (green and blue spheres) showed the CH2 domains moved farther apart from each other. Also, Asp270 and Pro329, which are essential for binding to FcγR and C1q, were repositioned (PDB:4L4J; 145). Position 234 was not visible in the crystal structure and is not shown in figure. **(C)** Removal of the Asn297 glycan in the IgG Fc severely reduces Fc binding to FcγRs by inducing a Fc closed conformation. Several Fc designs have removed the N-linked glycosylation site at position 297 by introducing Asn297Gly or Asn297Glu changes (151, 152). The crystal structure of glycosylated IgG1 Fc (gray) is shown with the N297 glycan (magenta; PDB:4BYH). The introduction of a Gly or Glu residue at position 297 produces an aglycone IgG1 Fc (blue and lilac; PDB:3S7G). Superposition of the glycone and aglycone Fc crystal structures shows the lilac and blue CH2 domains in the aglycone are closer in proximity than the gray CH2 domains. The altered CH2 conformation has been hypothesized to be the structural explanation for reduced FcγR binding by the aglycone Fc.

the most profound elimination of binding to FcγRI, IIa, and IIIa (144). However, both IgG2m4 and IgG2σ lacked *in vitro* ADCC activity mediated by human PBMCs effector cells and possessed very little ADCP activity against breast cancer cell lines (144). Given the success of IgG2σ at ablating Fc effector functions, the design was translated to IgG1 and IgG4 (145, 146, 159). The IgG1σ (Leu234Ala/L235Ala/Gly237Ala/P238Ser/His268Ala/Ala330Ser/Pro331Ser), IgG2σ, and an IgG4 Fc encoding S228P/Phe234Ala/Leu235Ala mutations (termed IgG4 PAA) versions of Fc were compared for binding to FcγRs from multiple species (144, 145). IgG1σ and IgG2σ lacked binding to FcγRI and III (145). For FcγRIIa and IIb extremely weak binding could be seen to IgG1σ and IgG2σ at high concentrations of antibody (145). Both IgG1σ and IgG2σ exhibited lower binding to FcγRs than IgG4 PAA (145). IgG4 PAA also showed species-specific differences in binding to FcγRs, whereas IgG1σ and IgG2σ lacked binding for human, macaque, and mouse FcγRs. Therefore, IgG1σ and IgG2σ are among the most effective mutations for knocking out Fc effector function.

Mimoto et al. sought to use FcγRIIb as a way to capture immune complexes on the surface of FcγRIIb-expressing B cells (160). Thus, they engineered the Fc to selectively bind to FcγRIIb with a 200-fold increase in affinity, and a 10-fold lower affinity for the other FcγRs (160). The improved affinity for FcγRIIb conferred the desired boost in B cell presentation of peptides to T cells *in vitro* (160). Since FcγRIIb is an inhibitory receptor these mutations could be used to silence effector function by changing the ratio of Fc binding to activating vs. inhibitory receptors.

Ablation of C1q Binding to Reduce Complement Dependent Cytotoxicity (CDC)

Point Mutations to Ablate Complement Binding

Inducing the complement cascade has been associated with antibody injection site adverse reactions (161, 162). Therefore, eliminating C1q binding to Fc—the initial event in the activation of antibody-dependent complement cytotoxicity (163)—has been

a goal of Fc optimization. One of the benefits of the mutations engineered to eliminate FcγR binding is that many of them eliminate C1q binding too. In a structure-guided screen of Fc mutations, an Ala330Leu mutation was observed to decrease C1q binding (39). As stated above this mutation also eliminated FcγRIIb binding (39). In *in vitro* assays the Ala330Leu mutation reduced the ability of the antibody to mediate complement-dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) of target cells, presumably because Ala330Leu disrupted C1q binding to Fc. However, not all amino acids introduced at position 330 disrupted C1q binding, thus the effect was specific to the introduction of only certain amino acids at position 330 (39). It should be noted that Ala330Leu is one of the mutations in the set of mutations comprising the DLE mutations (Ser239Asp Ile332Glu Ala330Leu) that improve FcγR-mediated effector functions. The DLE optimization eliminates CDC activity mediated by the antibody, which can be rescued by removing the Ala330Leu mutation from the set. In instances where CDC causes adverse reactions to antibody administration the DLE mutations may be able to enhance FcγR-mediated effector functions and eliminate injection site reactions (39).

Additional amino acids that reduce C1q binding were identified by an alanine scan of the Fc. Asp270, Lys322, Pro329, and Pro331 were all implicated as sites in IgG that confer binding to C1q (89). Among these amino acid positions Asp270Ala and Pro329Ala, showed the most pronounced deficiency in complement activation and C1q binding across multiple concentrations of serum C1q (89). The Leu234Glu/Leu235Phe/Pro331Ser triple mutant Fc lacks binding to FcγRs, but also these mutations eliminate Fc binding to C1q (135). Similarly, the creation of IgG2m4 not only eliminates FcγR binding but also eliminates C1q binding (143). Vafa et al. examined the CDC activity of IgG2m4 (His268Gln/Val309Leu/Ala330Ser/Pro331Ser) and IgG2σ (Val2 34Ala/Gly237Ala/Pro238Ser/His268Ala/Val309Leu/Ala330Ser/ Pro331Ser) formats of Rituxan (144). Neither antibody format conferred CDC against a lymphoma cell line using human serum complement (144) showing both are potential designs for eliminating complement-mediated functions. The structure of IgG2σ Fc was solved to 1.9 angstroms and showed that it is in a more open conformation meaning the CH2 domains of the Fc are spaced relatively far apart (144). Moreover, the loop containing Leu328 is repositioned compared to wildtype IgG2 Fc. Thus, it is postulated that the change in conformation results in reorientation of Asp270 and Pro329, which eliminates FcγR and C1q binding to IgG2σ (144).

Cross-Subclass Fc Regions to Ablate Complement Activation

Fundamental knowledge of how each IgG subclass interacts with complement allows for fine tuning of CDC. For example, IgG2 can have moderate to low CDC activity (51). Thus to reduce IgG3 CDC activity the CH2 domain of IgG2 can be used to replace the CH2 domain of IgG3 (51). Similarly, to ablate IgG1 CDC activity a Pro331Ser mutation was introduced based on the fact that IgG4 has Ser331 and lacks CDC activity (136). These mutations are an example of how basic science can be applied to the design of antibody-based biologics. Also many of the point mutations made to knockout C1q binding are cross-subclass mutations (**Table 3**).

Glycoengineering to Ablate FcγR and C1q Binding

The Fc of IgG contains an N-linked glycosylation site at position 297 [**Figure 3C**; (72)]. Typically the glycan present at N297 is a complex biantennary glycan (164, 165). The modification of this glycan to high mannose glycan reduced the affinity of IgG1 Fc for C1q, which in turn reduced CDC activity (147, 148). Inhibiting the incorporation of galactose or sialic acid into carbohydrate synthesis did not dramatically silence immune effector functions of the antibody Fc (147). While glycans devoid of galactose or sialic acid appear to function normally, mutations in the Fc that knockout C1q and FcγRI binding can also lead to an increase in galactosylation and sialylation of the Asn297 glycan eliminate (137). Galactosylation and sialylation-increasing mutations include Phe241Ala, Val264Ala, and Asp265Ala mutations (137). Whether the change in glycosylation profile has a role in reducing C1q binding or is an unrelated bystander effect is not clear. In one study, sialylation of the Fc reduced C1q binding 4-fold suggesting hypersialylation could directly impair CDC responses (101). However, hypersialylation reduces terminal galactosylation complicating which factor contributes to the reduced C1q binding (101).

Another common method to eliminate Fc effector function has been to completely remove the glycosylation site by substituting alanine, glutamine, or glycine at position 297 (32, 149–152). The removal of the glycosylation site dramatically reduced IgG1 binding to FcγRI and C1q [**Figure 3C**; (137, 152, 166)]. In the context of IgG3, the Fc lacking glycosylation—the aglycone Fc—has reduced binding to FcγRI and C1q. *In vitro*, the aglycone IgG3 Fc loses the ability to mediate ADCC via FcγRIIIa (151, 152). However, removal of Asn297 glycan reduces, but does not eliminate, binding to mouse Fc receptors (157). Additionally, it is thought that avidity can overcome the low binding affinity to FcγRI conferred by mutating Asn297 (144). Therefore, on monocytes and macrophages where FcγRI is expressed at a high density the Asn297Gly mutation may not be sufficient to eliminate all binding. Lo et al. combined the Asn297Gly mutation with Asp265Ala mutation to further reduce FcγR binding to Fc. As stated above each of these mutations reduces FcγR and C1q binding individually and when combined showed a further reduction in Fc binding to FcγRs and C1q (134). Combinations such as the Asn297Gly/Asp265Ala are useful for near complete knockout of binding between Fc and FcγRs or C1q.

The mechanism behind the aglycone reducing Fc binding to C1q and FcγRs is not fully understood. The aglycone Fc is more susceptible to protease cleavage, which suggests the structure of the glycone Fc differs from that of the aglycone (152). Nuclear magnetic resonance studies have similarly suggested structural perturbations are present in the aglycone Fc (32, 73, 151). The clearest evidence for structural changes in the agylcosylated Fc was provided by the crystal structure of mouse Fc without the N297 glycan (167). The CH3 domains appeared identical, but the CH2 domains of aglycone Fc and glycosylated Fc differed in position by 10 to 14 angstroms (167). In the aglycone Fc the CH2 domains were closer together than in the

glycosylated Fc, thus the aglycone had a "closed" conformation. This closed conformation was not unique to mouse Fc. Crystal structures of both aglycosylated human IgG1 Fc (168) and IgG4 Fc (169) have shown the CH2 domains of a single Fc to undergo rigid-body movements of 10–20 angstroms to be closer in proximity to each other when aglycosylated (**Figure 3C**). The closed conformation of the aglycone Fc is mediated, at least in part, by the perturbed C'E loop (149, 150, 167, 168, 170). In total, eliminating Fc glycosylation induces a closed conformation that confers silencing of the Fc effector functions.

CONCLUSIONS

Many approaches including phage display, alanine scanning mutations, and structure-based design have all been successful in optimizing the Fc of antibody-based biologics (38, 39, 113). Underlying the optimization of the Fc is modulating its ability to bind to Fc receptors, C1q, and FcRn. These interactions can be modulated by the introduction of point mutations, inserting or deleting amino acids, modifying glycan composition, or appending protein domains (171). Overall, strengthening or disrupting Fc interactions with its binding partners as measured by *in vitro* affinity has translated to the desired outcome *in vivo*. The optimization of Fc for specific functions not only can improve *in vivo* functions, but it also provides a means to dissect the importance of specific Fc receptors (172) and downstream CDC, ADCC, phagocytosis, or circulation half-life in treating specific diseases (119, 173). While antibody-based biologics have been successful in the treatment of disease, new opportunities exist for antibody biologics as durable prevention strategies for infectious diseases (174–176). The antibody-mediated prevention (AMP) study will test the efficacy of monoclonal antibody passive infusion to prevent HIV-1 infection in 2,700 participants (NCT02716675). This phase 2b trial could provide the first proof-of-concept that neutralizing antibodies can provide protection from HIV-1 infection in humans. The VRC01 antibody that will be used contains a wildtype Fc; however, the next generation of HIV-1 antibody protection studies will likely include combinations of Fc-optimized HIV-1 neutralizing antibodies with prolonged circulation half-life (116), since longer half-life was important for protection in preclinical nonhuman primate studies (119, 122, 123). The ability to optimize the Fc region of antibodies continues to be a powerful approach for combating heritable diseases, infectious diseases, and cancer.

AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

The author confirms being the sole contributor of this work and has approved it for publication.

FUNDING

KS is supported by NIAID extramural project grant R01-AI120801.

REFERENCES

1. Fonseca MHG, Furtado GP, Bezerra MRL, Pontes LQ, Fernandes CFC. Boosting half-life and effector functions of therapeutic antibodies by Fc-engineering: an interaction-function review. *Int J Biol Macromol.* (2018) 119:306–11. doi: 10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2018.07.141
2. Brezski RJ, Georgiou G. Immunoglobulin isotype knowledge and application to Fc engineering. *Curr Opin Immunol.* (2016) 40:62–9. doi: 10.1016/j.coi.2016.03.002
3. Reichert JM. Antibodies to watch in 2017. *MAbs.* (2017) 9:167–81. doi: 10.1080/19420862.2016.1269580
4. Carter PJ, Lazar GA. Next generation antibody drugs: pursuit of the 'high-hanging fruit'. *Nat Rev Drug Discov.* (2018) 17:197–223. doi: 10.1038/nrd.2017.227
5. Gura T. Therapeutic antibodies: magic bullets hit the target. *Nature.* (2002) 417:584–6. doi: 10.1038/417584a
6. Reichert JM, Rosensweig CJ, Faden LB, Dewitz MC. Monoclonal antibody successes in the clinic. *Nat Biotechnol.* (2005) 23:1073–8. doi: 10.1038/nbt0905-1073
7. Kaplon H, Reichert JM.Antibodies to watch in 2019. *MAbs.* (2018) 11:219–38. doi: 10.1080/19420862.2018.1556465
8. Ecker DM, Jones SD, Levine HL. The therapeutic monoclonal antibody market. *MAbs.* (2015) 7:9–14. doi: 10.4161/19420862.2015.989042
9. Karin M, Lawrence T, Nizet V. Innate immunity gone awry: linking microbial infections to chronic inflammation and cancer. *Cell.* (2006) 124:823–35. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2006.02.016
10. Sim F, Leidner R, Bell RB. Immunotherapy for head and neck cancer. *Oral Maxillofac Surg Clin North Am.* (2019) 31:85–100. doi: 10.1016/j.coms.2018.09.002
11. Strohl WR. Optimization of Fc-mediated effector functions of monoclonal antibodies. *Curr Opin Biotechnol.* (2009) 20:685–91. doi: 10.1016/j.copbio.2009.10.011
12. Carter PJ. Potent antibody therapeutics by design. *Nat Rev Immunol.* (2006) 6:343–57. doi: 10.1038/nri1837
13. Padlan EA. Anatomy of the antibody molecule. *Mol Immunol.* (1994) 31:169–217. doi: 10.1016/0161-5890(94)90001-9
14. Huber R, Deisenhofer J, Colman PM, Matsushima M, Palm W. Crystallographic structure studies of an IgG molecule and an Fc fragment. *Nature.* (1976) 264:415–20. doi: 10.1038/264415a0
15. Nisonoff A, Wissler FC, Lipman LN, Woernley DL. Separation of univalent fragments from the bivalent rabbit antibody molecule by reduction of disulfide bonds. *Arch Biochem Biophys.* (1960) 89:230–44. doi: 10.1016/0003-9861(60)90049-7
16. Adlersberg JB. The immunoglobulin hinge (interdomain) region. *Ric Clin Lab.* (1976) 6:191–205.
17. Harris LJ, Larson SB, Hasel KW, Day J, Greenwood A, Mcpherson A. The three-dimensional structure of an intact monoclonal antibody for canine lymphoma. *Nature.* (1992) 360:369–72. doi: 10.1038/360369a0
18. Silverton EW, Navia MA, Davies DR. Three-dimensional structure of an intact human immunoglobulin. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (1977) 74:5140–4. doi: 10.1073/pnas.74.11.5140
19. Kim H, Matsunaga C, Yoshino A, Kato K, Arata Y. Dynamical structure of the hinge region of immunoglobulin G as studied by 13C nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy. *J Mol Biol.* (1994) 236:300–9. doi: 10.1006/jmbi.1994.1136
20. Dreyer WJ, Bennett JC. The molecular basis of antibody formation: a paradox. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (1965) 54:864–9. doi: 10.1073/pnas.54.3.864

21. Brack C, Hirama M, Lenhard-Schuller R, Tonegawa S. A complete immunoglobulin gene is created by somatic recombination. *Cell.* (1978) 15:1–14. doi: 10.1016/0092-8674(78)90078-8
22. Kataoka T, Kawakami T, Takahashi N, Honjo T. Rearrangement of immunoglobulin gamma 1-chain gene and mechanism for heavy-chain class switch. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (1980) 77:919–23. doi: 10.1073/pnas.77.2.919
23. Vidarsson G, Dekkers G, Rispens T. IgG subclasses and allotypes: from structure to effector functions. *Front Immunol.* (2014) 5:520. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2014.00520
24. Jefferis R, Kumararatne DS. Selective IgG subclass deficiency: quantification and clinical relevance. *Clin Exp Immunol.* (1990) 81:357–67. doi: 10.1111/j.1365–2249.1990.tb05339.x
25. Barrett DJ, Ayoub EM. IgG2 subclass restriction of antibody to pneumococcal polysaccharides. *Clin Exp Immunol*. (1986) 63:127–34.
26. Woof JM, Burton DR. Human antibody-Fc receptor interactions illuminated by crystal structures. *Nat Rev Immunol.* (2004) 4:89–99. doi: 10.1038/nri1266
27. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Fcgamma receptors as regulators of immune responses. *Nat Rev Immunol.* (2008) 8:34–47. doi: 10.1038/nri2206
28. Muta T, Kurosaki T, Misulovin Z, Sanchez M, Nussenzweig MC, Ravetch JV. A 13-amino-acid motif in the cytoplasmic domain of Fc gamma RIIB modulates B-cell receptor signalling. *Nature*. (1994) 369:340. doi: 10.1038/369340a0
29. Amigorena S, Bonnerot C, Drake JR, Choquet D, Hunziker W, Guillet JG, et al. Cytoplasmic domain heterogeneity and functions of IgG Fc receptors in B lymphocytes. *Science*. (1992) 256:1808–12. doi: 10.1126/science.1535455
30. Koene HR, Kleijer M, Algra J, Roos D, Von Dem Borne AE, De Haas M. Fc gammaRIIIa-158V/F polymorphism influences the binding of IgG by natural killer cell Fc gammaRIIIa, independently of the Fc gammaRIIIa-48L/R/H phenotype. *Blood*. (1997) 90:1109–14. doi: 10.1016/S0165-2478(97)85823-3
31. Presta LG. Molecular engineering and design of therapeutic antibodies. *Curr Opin Immunol.* (2008) 20:460–70. doi: 10.1016/j.coi.2008.06.012
32. Dwek RA, Lellouch AC, Wormald MR. Glycobiology: 'the function of sugar in the IgG molecule'. *J Anat.* (1995) 187 (Pt 2):279–92.
33. Morell A, Terry WD, Waldmann TA. Metabolic properties of IgG subclasses in man. *J Clin Invest*. (1970) 49:673–80. doi: 10.1172/JCI106279
34. Fritsche R, Spiegelberg HL. Fc receptors for IgE on normal rat lymphocytes. *J Immunol.* (1978) 121:471–8.
35. Lum LG, Muchmore AV, Keren D, Decker J, Koski I, Strober W, et al. A receptor for IgA on human T lymphocytes. *J Immunol.* (1979) 122:65–9.
36. Kubagawa H, Oka S, Kubagawa Y, Torii I, Takayama E, Kang DW, et al. Identity of the elusive IgM Fc receptor (FcmuR) in humans. *J Exp Med.* (2009) 206:2779–93. doi: 10.1084/jem.20091107
37. Presta LG. Engineering antibodies for therapy. *Curr Pharm Biotechnol.* (2002) 3:237–56. doi: 10.2174/1389201023378256
38. Shields RL, Namenuk AK, Hong K, Meng YG, Rae J, Briggs J, et al. High resolution mapping of the binding site on human IgG1 for Fc gamma RI, Fc gamma RII, Fc gamma RIII, and FcRn and design of IgG1 variants with improved binding to the Fc gamma R. *J Biol Chem.* (2001) 276:6591–604. doi: 10.1074/jbc.M009483200
39. Lazar GA, Dang W, Karki S, Vafa O, Peng JS, Hyun L, et al. Engineered antibody Fc variants with enhanced effector function. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2006) 103:4005–10. doi: 10.1073/pnas.0508123103
40. Richards JO, Karki S, Lazar GA, Chen H, Dang W, Desjarlais JR. Optimization of antibody binding to FcgammaRIIa enhances macrophage phagocytosis of tumor cells. *Mol Cancer Ther*. (2008) 7:2517–27. doi: 10.1158/1535–7163.MCT-08-0201
41. Smith P, Dilillo DJ, Bournazos S, Li F, Ravetch JV. Mouse model recapitulating human Fcgamma receptor structural and functional diversity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2012) 109:6181–6. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1203954109
42. Ahmed AA, Keremane SR, Vielmetter J, Bjorkman PJ. Structural characterization of GASDALIE Fc bound to the activating Fc receptor FcgammaRIIIa. *J Struct Biol.* (2016) 194:78–89. doi: 10.1016/j.jsb.2016.02.001
43. Bournazos S, Klein F, Pietzsch J, Seaman MS, Nussenzweig MC, Ravetch JV. Broadly neutralizing anti-HIV-1 antibodies require Fc effector functions for *in vivo* activity. *Cell.* (2014) 158:1243–53. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2014.08.023
44. Mimoto F, Igawa T, Kuramochi T, Katada H, Kadono S, Kamikawa T, et al. Novel asymmetrically engineered antibody Fc variant with superior FcgammaR binding affinity and specificity compared with afucosylated Fc variant. *MAbs*. (2013) 5:229–36. doi: 10.4161/mabs.23452
45. Stavenhagen JB, Gorlatov S, Tuaillon N, Rankin CT, Li H, Burke S, et al. Fc optimization of therapeutic antibodies enhances their ability to kill tumor cells *in vitro* and controls tumor expansion *in vivo* via low-affinity activating Fcgamma receptors. *Cancer Res*. (2007) 67:8882–90. doi: 10.1158/0008–5472.CAN-07-0696
46. Idusogie EE, Wong PY, Presta LG, Gazzano-Santoro H, Totpal K, Ultsch M, et al. Engineered antibodies with increased activity to recruit complement. *J Immunol.* (2001) 166:2571–5. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.166.4.2571
47. Dall'acqua WF, Cook KE, Damschroder MM, Woods RM, Wu H. Modulation of the effector functions of a human IgG1 through engineering of its hinge region. *J Immunol.* (2006) 177:1129–38. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.177.2.1129
48. Moore GL, Chen H, Karki S, Lazar GA. Engineered Fc variant antibodies with enhanced ability to recruit complement and mediate effector functions. *MAbs.* (2010) 2:181–9. doi: 10.4161/mabs.2.2.11158
49. Diebolder CA, Beurskens FJ, De Jong RN, Koning RI, Strumane K, Lindorfer MA, et al. Complement is activated by IgG hexamers assembled at the cell surface. *Science*. (2014) 343:1260–3. doi: 10.1126/science.1248943
50. Natsume A, In M, Takamura H, Nakagawa T, Shimizu Y, Kitajima K, et al. Engineered antibodies of IgG1/IgG3 mixed isotype with enhanced cytotoxic activities. *Cancer Res.* (2008) 68:3863–72. doi: 10.1158/0008–5472.CAN-07-6297
51. Sensel MG, Kane LM, Morrison SL. Amino acid differences in the N-terminus of C(H)2 influence the relative abilities of IgG2 and IgG3 to activate complement. *Mol Immunol.* (1997) 34:1019–29. doi: 10.1016/S0161-5890(97)00112-0
52. Chintalacharuvu KR, Vuong LU, Loi LA, Larrick JW, Morrison SL. Hybrid IgA2/IgG1 antibodies with tailor-made effector functions. *Clin Immunol.* (2001) 101:21–31. doi: 10.1006/clim.2001.5083
53. Borrok MJ, Luheshi NM, Beyaz N, Davies GC, Legg JW, Wu H, et al. Enhancement of antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity by endowing IgG with FcalphaRI (CD89) binding. *MAbs.* (2015) 7:743–51. doi: 10.1080/19420862.2015.1047570
54. Kelton W, Mehta N, Charab W, Lee J, Lee CH, Kojima T, et al. IgGA: a "cross-isotype" engineered human Fc antibody domain that displays both IgG-like and IgA-like effector functions. *Chem Biol.* (2014) 21:1603–9. doi: 10.1016/j.chembiol.2014.10.017
55. Czajkowsky DM, Andersen JT, Fuchs A, Wilson TJ, Mekhaiel D, Colonna M, et al. Developing the IVIG biomimetic, hexa-Fc, for drug and vaccine applications. *Sci Rep.* (2015) 5:9526. doi: 10.1038/srep09526
56. Peschke B, Keller CW, Weber P, Quast I, Lunemann JD. Fc-galactosylation of human immunoglobulin gamma isotypes improves C1q binding and enhances complement-dependent cytotoxicity. *Front Immunol.* (2017) 8:646. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2017.00646
57. Dekkers G, Treffers L, Plomp R, Bentlage AEH, De Boer M, Koeleman CaM, et al. Decoding the human immunoglobulin G-Glycan repertoire reveals a spectrum of Fc-receptor- and complement-mediated-effector activities. *Front Immunol.* (2017) 8:877. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2017.00877
58. Umana P, Jean-Mairet J, Moudry R, Amstutz H, Bailey JE. Engineered glycoforms of an antineuroblastoma IgG1 with optimized antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxic activity. *Nat Biotechnol.* (1999) 17:176–80. doi: 10.1038/6179
59. Davies J, Jiang L, Pan LZ, Labarre MJ, Anderson D, Reff M. Expression of GnTIII in a recombinant anti-CD20 CHO production cell line: expression of antibodies with altered glycoforms leads to an increase in ADCC through higher affinity for FC gamma RIII. *Biotechnol Bioeng.* (2001) 74:288–94. doi: 10.1002/bit.1119
60. Shields RL, Lai J, Keck R, O'connell LY, Hong K, Meng YG, et al. Lack of fucose on human IgG1 N-linked oligosaccharide improves binding to human Fcgamma RIII and antibody-dependent cellular toxicity. *J Biol Chem*. (2002) 277:26733–40. doi: 10.1074/jbc.M202069200
61. Sondermann P, Huber R, Oosthuizen V, Jacob U. The 3.2-A crystal structure of the human IgG1 Fc fragment-Fc gammaRIII complex. *Nature.* (2000) 406:267–73. doi: 10.1038/35018508

62. Erbe DV, Pfefferkorn ER, Fanger MW. Functions of the various IgG Fc receptors in mediating killing of *Toxoplasma gondii*. *J Immunol.* (1991) 146:3145–51.
63. Shen L, Graziano RF, Fanger MW. The functional properties of Fc gamma RI, II and III on myeloid cells: a comparative study of killing of erythrocytes and tumor cells mediated through the different Fc receptors. *Mol Immunol.* (1989) 26:959–69. doi: 10.1016/0161-5890(89)90114-4
64. Dall'acqua WF, Kiener PA, Wu H. Properties of human IgG1s engineered for enhanced binding to the neonatal Fc receptor (FcRn). *J Biol Chem*. (2006) 281:23514–24. doi: 10.1074/jbc.M604292200
65. Romain G, Senyukov V, Rey-Villamizar N, Merouane A, Kelton W, Liadi I, et al. Antibody Fc engineering improves frequency and promotes kinetic boosting of serial killing mediated by NK cells. *Blood.* (2014) 124:3241–9. doi: 10.1182/blood-2014-04-569061
66. Oganesyan V, Damschroder MM, Leach W, Wu H, Dall'acqua WF. Structural characterization of a mutated, ADCC-enhanced human Fc fragment. *Mol Immunol.* (2008) 45:1872–82. doi: 10.1016/j.molimm.2007.10.042
67. Jung ST, Kelton W, Kang TH, Ng DT, Andersen JT, Sandlie I, et al. Effective phagocytosis of low Her2 tumor cell lines with engineered, aglycosylated IgG displaying high FcgammaRIIa affinity and selectivity. *ACS Chem Biol.* (2013) 8:368–75. doi: 10.1021/cb300455f
68. Rankin CT, Veri MC, Gorlatov S, Tuaillon N, Burke S, Huang L, et al. CD32B, the human inhibitory Fc-gamma receptor IIB, as a target for monoclonal antibody therapy of B-cell lymphoma. *Blood*. (2006) 108:2384–91. doi: 10.1182/blood-2006-05-020602
69. Nordstrom JL, Gorlatov S, Zhang W, Yang Y, Huang L, Burke S, et al. Anti-tumor activity and toxicokinetics analysis of MGAH22, an anti-HER2 monoclonal antibody with enhanced Fcgamma receptor binding properties. *Breast Cancer Res*. (2011) 13:R123. doi: 10.1186/bcr3069
70. Bang YJ, Giaccone G, Im SA, Oh DY, Bauer TM, Nordstrom JL, et al. First-in-human phase 1 study of margetuximab (MGAH22), an Fc-modified chimeric monoclonal antibody, in patients with HER2-positive advanced solid tumors. *Ann Oncol.* (2017) 28:855–861. doi: 10.1093/annonc/mdx002
71. Liu L. Antibody glycosylation and its impact on the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of monoclonal antibodies and Fc-fusion proteins. *J Pharm Sci.* (2015) 104:1866–84. doi: 10.1002/jps.24444
72. Jefferis R. Glycosylation of antibody therapeutics: optimisation for purpose. *Methods Mol Biol.* (2009) 483:223–38. doi: 10.1007/978-1-59745-407-0_13
73. Yamaguchi Y, Nishimura M, Nagano M, Yagi H, Sasakawa H, Uchida K, et al. Glycoform-dependent conformational alteration of the Fc region of human immunoglobulin G1 as revealed by NMR spectroscopy. *Biochim Biophys Acta*. (2006) 1760:693–700. doi: 10.1016/j.bbagen.2005.10.002
74. Shinkawa T, Nakamura K, Yamane N, Shoji-Hosaka E, Kanda Y, Sakurada M, et al. The absence of fucose but not the presence of galactose or bisecting N-acetylglucosamine of human IgG1 complex-type oligosaccharides shows the critical role of enhancing antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity. *J Biol Chem.* (2003) 278:3466–73. doi: 10.1074/jbc.M210665200
75. Niwa R, Hatanaka S, Shoji-Hosaka E, Sakurada M, Kobayashi Y, Uehara A, et al. Enhancement of the antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity of low-fucose IgG1 is independent of FcgammaRIIIa functional polymorphism. *Clin Cancer Res.* (2004) 10:6248–55. doi: 10.1158/1078–0432.CCR-04-0850
76. Ferrara C, Stuart F, Sondermann P, Brunker P, Umana P. The carbohydrate at FcgammaRIIIa Asn-162. An element required for high affinity binding to non-fucosylated IgG glycoforms. *J Biol Chem.* (2006) 281:5032–6. doi: 10.1074/jbc.M510171200
77. Ferrara C, Grau S, Jager C, Sondermann P, Brunker P, Waldhauer I, et al. Unique carbohydrate-carbohydrate interactions are required for high affinity binding between FcgammaRIII and antibodies lacking core fucose. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2011) 108:12669–74. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1108455108
78. Beck A, Reichert JM. Marketing approval of mogamulizumab: a triumph for glyco-engineering. *MAbs.* (2012) 4:419–25. doi: 10.4161/mabs.20996
79. Ishii T, Ishida T, Utsunomiya A, Inagaki A, Yano H, Komatsu H, et al. Defucosylated humanized anti-CCR4 monoclonal antibody KW-0761 as a novel immunotherapeutic agent for adult T-cell leukemia/lymphoma. *Clin Cancer Res*. (2010) 16:1520–31. doi: 10.1158/1078–0432.CCR-09-2697
80. Ito A, Ishida T, Yano H, Inagaki A, Suzuki S, Sato F, et al. Defucosylated anti-CCR4 monoclonal antibody exercises potent ADCC-mediated antitumor effect in the novel tumor-bearing humanized NOD/Shi-scid, IL-2Rgamma(null) mouse model. *Cancer Immunol Immunother.* (2009) 58:1195–206. doi: 10.1007/s00262-008-0632-0
81. Braster R, O'toole T, Van Egmond M. Myeloid cells as effector cells for monoclonal antibody therapy of cancer. *Methods*. (2014) 65:28–37. doi: 10.1016/j.ymeth.2013.06.020
82. Gregory AD, Houghton AM. Tumor-associated neutrophils: new targets for cancer therapy. *Cancer Res.* (2011) 71:2411–6. doi: 10.1158/0008–5472.CAN-10-2583
83. Jain A, Olsen HS, Vyzasatya R, Burch E, Sakoda Y, Merigeon EY, et al. Fully recombinant IgG2a Fc multimers (stradomers) effectively treat collagen-induced arthritis and prevent idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura in mice. *Arthritis Res Ther.* (2012) 14:R192. doi: 10.1186/ar4024
84. Niknami M, Wang MX, Nguyen T, Pollard JD. Beneficial effect of a multimerized immunoglobulin Fc in an animal model of inflammatory neuropathy (experimental autoimmune neuritis). *J Peripher Nerv Syst.* (2013) 18:141–52. doi: 10.1111/jns5.12022
85. Blundell PA, Le NPL, Allen J, Watanabe Y, Pleass RJ. Engineering the fragment crystallizable (Fc) region of human IgG1 multimers and monomers to fine-tune interactions with sialic acid-dependent receptors. *J Biol Chem.* (2017) 292:12994–3007. doi: 10.1074/jbc.M117.795047
86. Mekhaiel DN, Czajkowsky DM, Andersen JT, Shi J, El-Faham M, Doenhoff M, et al. Polymeric human Fc-fusion proteins with modified effector functions. *Sci Rep.* (2011) 1:124. doi: 10.1038/srep00124
87. Thiruppathi M, Sheng JR, Li L, Prabhakar BS, Meriggioli MN. Recombinant IgG2a Fc (M045) multimers effectively suppress experimental autoimmune myasthenia gravis. *J Autoimmun*. (2014) 52:64–73. doi: 10.1016/j.jaut.2013.12.014
88. Hughes-Jones NC, Gardner B. Reaction between the isolated globular sub-units of the complement component C1q and IgG-complexes. *Mol Immunol.* (1979) 16:697–701. doi: 10.1016/0161-5890(79)90010-5
89. Idusogie EE, Presta LG, Gazzano-Santoro H, Totpal K, Wong PY, Ultsch M, et al. Mapping of the C1q binding site on rituxan, a chimeric antibody with a human IgG1 Fc. *J Immunol.* (2000) 164:4178–84. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.164.8.4178
90. Duncan AR, Winter G. The binding site for C1q on IgG. *Nature.* (1988) 332:738–40. doi: 10.1038/332738a0
91. Huck S, Fort P, Crawford DH, Lefranc MP, Lefranc G. Sequence of a human immunoglobulin gamma 3 heavy chain constant region gene: comparison with the other human C gamma genes. *Nucleic Acids Res*. (1986) 14:1779–89. doi: 10.1093/nar/14.4.1779
92. Michaelsen TE, Aase A, Westby C, Sandlie I. Enhancement of complement activation and cytolysis of human IgG3 by deletion of hinge exons. *Scand J Immunol.* (1990) 32:517–28. doi: 10.1111/j.1365–3083.1990.tb03192.x
93. Giuntini S, Granoff DM, Beernink PT, Ihle O, Bratlie D, Michaelsen TE. Human IgG1, IgG3, and IgG3 hinge-truncated mutants show different protection capabilities against meningococci depending on the target antigen and epitope specificity. *Clin Vaccine Immunol.* (2016) 23:698–706. doi: 10.1128/CVI.00193-16
94. Bruggemann M, Williams GT, Bindon CI, Clark MR, Walker MR, Jefferis R, et al. Comparison of the effector functions of human immunoglobulins using a matched set of chimeric antibodies. *J Exp Med.* (1987) 166:1351–61. doi: 10.1084/jem.166.5.1351
95. Natsume A, Shimizu-Yokoyama Y, Satoh M, Shitara K, Niwa R. Engineered anti-CD20 antibodies with enhanced complement-activating capacity mediate potent anti-lymphoma activity. *Cancer Sci.* (2009) 100:2411–8. doi: 10.1111/j.1349–7006.2009.01327.x
96. Thommesen JE, Michaelsen TE, Loset GA, Sandlie I, Brekke OH. Lysine 322 in the human IgG3 C(H)2 domain is crucial for antibody dependent complement activation. *Mol Immunol.* (2000) 37:995–1004. doi: 10.1016/S0161-5890(01)00010-4
97. Gaboriaud C, Thielens NM, Gregory LA, Rossi V, Fontecilla-Camps JC, Arlaud GJ. Structure and activation of the C1 complex of complement: unraveling the puzzle. *Trends Immunol.* (2004) 25:368–73. doi: 10.1016/j.it.2004.04.008

98. Aoyama M, Hashii N, Tsukimura W, Osumi K, Harazono A, Tada M, et al. Effects of terminal galactose residues in mannose alpha1-6 arm of Fc-glycan on the effector functions of therapeutic monoclonal antibodies. *MAbs*. (2019) doi: 10.1080/19420862.2019.1608143. [Epub ahead of print].
99. Wada R, Matsui M, Kawasaki N. Influence of N-glycosylation on effector functions and thermal stability of glycoengineered IgG1 monoclonal antibody with homogeneous glycoforms. *MAbs*. (2019) 11:350–72. doi: 10.1080/19420862.2018.1551044
100. Raju TS. Terminal sugars of Fc glycans influence antibody effector functions of IgGs. *Curr Opin Immunol*. (2008) 20:471–8. doi: 10.1016/j.coi.2008.06.007
101. Quast I, Keller CW, Maurer MA, Giddens JP, Tackenberg B, Wang LX, et al. Sialylation of IgG Fc domain impairs complement-dependent cytotoxicity. *J Clin Invest*. (2015) 125:4160–70. doi: 10.1172/JCI82695
102. Sockolosky JT, Szoka FC. The neonatal Fc receptor, FcRn, as a target for drug delivery and therapy. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev*. (2015) 91:109–24. doi: 10.1016/j.addr.2015.02.005
103. Oganesyan V, Damschroder MM, Cook KE, Li Q, Gao C, Wu H, et al. Structural insights into neonatal Fc receptor-based recycling mechanisms. *J Biol Chem*. (2014) 289:7812–24. doi: 10.1074/jbc.M113.537563
104. Burmeister WP, Huber AH, Bjorkman PJ. Crystal structure of the complex of rat neonatal Fc receptor with Fc. *Nature*. (1994) 372:379–83. doi: 10.1038/372379a0
105. Roopenian DC, Akilesh S. FcRn: the neonatal Fc receptor comes of age. *Nat Rev Immunol*. (2007) 7:715–25. doi: 10.1038/nri2155
106. Ober RJ, Martinez C, Vaccaro C, Zhou J, Ward ES. Visualizing the site and dynamics of IgG salvage by the MHC class I-related receptor, FcRn. *J Immunol*. (2004) 172:2021–9. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.172.4.2021
107. Rodewald R. pH-dependent binding of immunoglobulins to intestinal cells of the neonatal rat. *J Cell Biol*. (1976) 71:666–9. doi: 10.1083/jcb.71.2.666
108. Raghavan M, Bonagura VR, Morrison SL, Bjorkman PJ. Analysis of the pH dependence of the neonatal Fc receptor/immunoglobulin G interaction using antibody and receptor variants. *Biochemistry*. (1995) 34:14649–57. doi: 10.1021/bi00045a005
109. Martin WL, West AP Jr, Gan L, Bjorkman PJ. Crystal structure at 2.8 A of an FcRn/heterodimeric Fc complex: mechanism of pH-dependent binding. *Mol Cell*. (2001) 7:867–77. doi: 10.1016/S1097-2765(01)00230-1
110. Stapleton NM, Andersen JT, Stemerding AM, Bjarnarson SP, Verheul RC, Gerritsen J, et al. Competition for FcRn-mediated transport gives rise to short half-life of human IgG3 and offers therapeutic potential. *Nat Commun*. (2011) 2:599. doi: 10.1038/ncomms1608
111. Dall'acqua WF, Woods RM, Ward ES, Palaszynski SR, Patel NK, Brewah YA, et al. Increasing the affinity of a human IgG1 for the neonatal Fc receptor: biological consequences. *J Immunol*. (2002) 169:5171–80. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.169.9.5171
112. Zalevsky J, Chamberlain AK, Horton HM, Karki S, Leung IW, Sproule TJ, et al. Enhanced antibody half-life improves *in vivo* activity. *Nat Biotechnol*. (2010) 28:157–9. doi: 10.1038/nbt.1601
113. Ghetie V, Popov S, Borvak J, Radu C, Matesoi D, Medesan C, et al. Increasing the serum persistence of an IgG fragment by random mutagenesis. *Nat Biotechnol*. (1997) 15:637–40. doi: 10.1038/nbt0797-637
114. Monnet C, Jorieux S, Souyris N, Zaki O, Jacquet A, Fournier N, et al. Combined glyco- and protein-Fc engineering simultaneously enhance cytotoxicity and half-life of a therapeutic antibody. *MAbs*. (2014) 6:422–36. doi: 10.4161/mabs.27854
115. Bas M, Terrier A, Jacque E, Dehenne A, Pochet-Beghin V, Beghin C, et al. Fc sialylation prolongs serum half-life of therapeutic antibodies. *J Immunol*. (2019) 202:1582–94. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1800896
116. Mendoza P, Gruell H, Nogueira L, Pai JA, Butler AL, Millard K, et al. Combination therapy with anti-HIV-1 antibodies maintains viral suppression. *Nature*. (2018) 561:479–84. doi: 10.1038/s41586-018-0531-2
117. Yu XQ, Robbie GJ, Wu Y, Esser MT, Jensen K, Schwartz HI, et al. Safety, tolerability, and pharmacokinetics of MEDI4893, an investigational, extended-half-life, anti-staphylococcus aureus alpha-toxin human monoclonal antibody, in healthy adults. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother*. (2017) 61:e01020-16. doi: 10.1128/AAC.01020-16
118. Robbie GJ, Criste R, Dall'acqua WF, Jensen K, Patel NK, Losonsky GA, et al. A novel investigational Fc-modified humanized monoclonal antibody, motavizumab-YTE, has an extended half-life in healthy adults. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother*. (2013) 57:6147–53. doi: 10.1128/AAC.01285-13
119. Ko SY, Pegu A, Rudicell RS, Yang ZY, Joyce MG, Chen X, et al. Enhanced neonatal Fc receptor function improves protection against primate SHIV infection. *Nature*. (2014) 514:642–5. doi: 10.1038/nature13612
120. Nnane IP, Han C, Jiao Q, Tam SH, Davis HM, Xu Z. Modification of the Fc region of a human anti-oncostatin M monoclonal antibody for higher affinity to FcRn receptor and extension of half-life in cynomolgus monkeys. *Basic Clin Pharmacol Toxicol*. (2017) 121:13–21. doi: 10.1111/bcpt.12761
121. Shen Y, Li H, Zhao L, Li G, Chen B, Guo Q, et al. Increased half-life and enhanced potency of Fc-modified human PCSK9 monoclonal antibodies in primates. *PLoS ONE*. (2017) 12:e0183326. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0183326
122. Saunders KO, Pegu A, Georgiev IS, Zeng M, Joyce MG, Yang ZY, et al. Sustained delivery of a broadly neutralizing antibody in nonhuman primates confers long-term protection against simian/human immunodeficiency virus infection. *J Virol*. (2015) 89:5895–903. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00210-15
123. Gautam R, Nishimura Y, Gaughan N, Gazumyan A, Schoofs T, Buckler-White A, et al. A single injection of crystallizable fragment domain-modified antibodies elicits durable protection from SHIV infection. *Nat Med*. (2018) 24:610–6. doi: 10.1038/s41591-018-0001-2
124. West APJr, Bjorkman PJ. Crystal structure and immunoglobulin G binding properties of the human major histocompatibility complex-related Fc receptor(,). *Biochemistry*. (2000) 39:9698–708. doi: 10.1021/bi000749m
125. Einarsdottir H, Ji Y, Visser R, Mo C, Luo G, Scherjon S, et al. H435-containing immunoglobulin G3 allotypes are transported efficiently across the human placenta: implications for alloantibody-mediated diseases of the newborn. *Transfusion*. (2014) 54:665–71. doi: 10.1111/trf.12334
126. Mcdonagh CF, Kim KM, Turcott E, Brown LL, Westendorf L, Feist T, et al. Engineered anti-CD70 antibody-drug conjugate with increased therapeutic index. *Mol Cancer Ther*. (2008) 7:2913–23. doi: 10.1158/1535–7163.MCT-08-0295
127. Uppal H, Doudement E, Mahapatra K, Darbonne WC, Bumbaca D, Shen BQ, et al. Potential mechanisms for thrombocytopenia development with trastuzumab emtansine (T-DM1). *Clin Cancer Res*. (2015) 21:123–33. doi: 10.1158/1078–0432.CCR-14-2093
128. Richards J, Auger J, Peace D, Gale D, Michel J, Koons A, et al. Phase I evaluation of humanized OKT3: toxicity and immunomodulatory effects of hOKT3gamma4. *Cancer Res*. (1999) 59:2096–101.
129. Alegre ML, Collins AM, Pulito VL, Brosius RA, Olson WC, Zivin RA, et al. Effect of a single amino acid mutation on the activating and immunosuppressive properties of a "humanized" OKT3 monoclonal antibody. *J Immunol*. (1992) 148:3461–8.
130. Wines BD, Powell MS, Parren PW, Barnes N, Hogarth PM. The IgG Fc contains distinct Fc receptor (FcR) binding sites: the leukocyte receptors Fc gamma RI and Fc gamma RIIa bind to a region in the Fc distinct from that recognized by neonatal FcR and protein A. *J Immunol*. (2000) 164:5313–8. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.164.10.5313
131. Lund J, Winter G, Jones PT, Pound JD, Tanaka T, Walker MR, et al. Human Fc gamma RI and Fc gamma RII interact with distinct but overlapping sites on human IgG. *J Immunol*. (1991) 147:2657–62.
132. Hezareh M, Hessell AJ, Jensen RC, Van De Winkel JG, Parren PW. Effector function activities of a panel of mutants of a broadly neutralizing antibody against human immunodeficiency virus type 1. *J Virol*. (2001) 75:12161–8. doi: 10.1128/JVI.75.24.12161–12168.2001
133. Wessels U, Poehler A, Moheysen-Zadeh M, Zadak M, Staack RF, Umana P, et al. Detection of antidrug antibodies against human therapeutic antibodies lacking Fc-effector functions by usage of soluble Fcγ receptor I. *BIOANALYSIS*. (2016) 8:2135–45. doi: 10.4155/bio-2016-0182
134. Lo M, Kim HS, Tong RK, Bainbridge TW, Vernes JM, Zhang Y, et al. Effector-attenuating substitutions that maintain antibody stability and reduce toxicity in mice. *J Biol Chem*. (2017) 292:3900–8. doi: 10.1074/jbc.M116.767749
135. Oganesyan V, Gao C, Shirinian L, Wu H, Dall'acqua WF. Structural characterization of a human Fc fragment engineered for lack of effector functions. *Acta Crystallogr D Biol Crystallogr*. (2008) 64:700–4. doi: 10.1107/S0907444908007877

136. Xu Y, Oomen R, Klein MH. Residue at position 331 in the IgG1 and IgG4 CH2 domains contributes to their differential ability to bind and activate complement. *J Biol Chem.* (1994) 269:3469–74.
137. Lund J, Takahashi N, Pound JD, Goodall M, Jefferis R. Multiple interactions of IgG with its core oligosaccharide can modulate recognition by complement and human Fc gamma receptor I and influence the synthesis of its oligosaccharide chains. *J Immunol.* (1996) 157:4963–9.
138. Lund J, Pound JD, Jones PT, Duncan AR, Bentley T, Goodall M, et al. Multiple binding sites on the CH2 domain of IgG for mouse Fc gamma R11. *Mol Immunol.* (1992) 29:53–9. doi: 10.1016/0161-5890(92)90156-R
139. Horton HM, Bernett MJ, Peipp M, Pong E, Karki S, Chu SY, et al. Fc-engineered anti-CD40 antibody enhances multiple effector functions and exhibits potent *in vitro* and *in vivo* antitumor activity against hematologic malignancies. *Blood.* (2010) 116:3004–12. doi: 10.1182/blood-2010-01-265280
140. Horton HM, Bernett MJ, Pong E, Peipp M, Karki S, Chu SY, et al. Potent *in vitro* and *in vivo* activity of an Fc-engineered anti-CD19 monoclonal antibody against lymphoma and leukemia. *Cancer Res.* (2008) 68:8049–57. doi: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-08-2268
141. Rother RP, Rollins SA, Mojcik CF, Brodsky RA, Bell L. Discovery and development of the complement inhibitor eculizumab for the treatment of paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria. *Nat Biotechnol.* (2007) 25:1256–64. doi: 10.1038/nbt1344
142. Mueller JP, Giannoni MA, Hartman SL, Elliott EA, Squinto SP, Matis LA, et al. Humanized porcine VCAM-specific monoclonal antibodies with chimeric IgG2/G4 constant regions block human leukocyte binding to porcine endothelial cells. *Mol Immunol.* (1997) 34:441–52. doi: 10.1016/S0161-5890(97)00042-4
143. An Z, Forrest G, Moore R, Cukan M, Haytko P, Huang L, et al. IgG2m4, an engineered antibody isotype with reduced Fc function. *MAbs.* (2009) 1:572–9. doi: 10.4161/mabs.1.6.10185
144. Vafa O, Gilliland GL, Brezski RJ, Strake B, Wilkinson T, Lacy ER, et al. An engineered Fc variant of an IgG eliminates all immune effector functions via structural perturbations. *Methods.* (2014) 65:114–26. doi: 10.1016/j.ymeth.2013.06.035
145. Derebe MG, Nanjunda RK, Gilliland GL, Lacy ER, Chiu ML. Human IgG subclass cross-species reactivity to mouse and cynomolgus monkey Fcgamma receptors. *Immunol Lett.* (2018) 197:1–8. doi: 10.1016/j.imlet.2018.02.006
146. Mccarthy SG, Scallon B, Tam SH, Strohl W, Vafa O. *Antibody Fc Mutants With Ablated Effector Functions.* Alexandria, VA: US Patent Office (2015).
147. Wright A, Morrison SL. Effect of C2-associated carbohydrate structure on Ig effector function: studies with chimeric mouse-human IgG1 antibodies in glycosylation mutants of Chinese hamster ovary cells. *J Immunol.* (1998) 160:3393–402.
148. Wright A, Morrison SL. Effect of altered CH2-associated carbohydrate structure on the functional properties and *in vivo* fate of chimeric mouse-human immunoglobulin G1. *J Exp Med.* (1994) 180:1087–96. doi: 10.1084/jem.180.3.1087
149. Mimura Y, Sondermann P, Ghirlando R, Lund J, Young SP, Goodall M, et al. Role of oligosaccharide residues of IgG1-Fc in Fc gamma RIIb binding. *J Biol Chem.* (2001) 276:45539–47. doi: 10.1074/jbc.M107478200
150. Mimura Y, Church S, Ghirlando R, Ashton PR, Dong S, Goodall M, et al. The influence of glycosylation on the thermal stability and effector function expression of human IgG1-Fc: properties of a series of truncated glycoforms. *Mol Immunol.* (2000) 37:697–706. doi: 10.1016/S0161-5890(00)00105-X
151. Lund J, Tanaka T, Takahashi N, Sarmay G, Arata Y, Jefferis R. A protein structural change in aglycosylated IgG3 correlates with loss of huFc gamma R1 and huFc gamma R111 binding and/or activation. *Mol Immunol.* (1990) 27:1145–53. doi: 10.1016/0161-5890(90)90103-7
152. Tao MH, Morrison SL. Studies of aglycosylated chimeric mouse-human IgG. Role of carbohydrate in the structure and effector functions mediated by the human IgG constant region. *J Immunol.* (1989) 143:2595–601.
153. Xu D, Alegre ML, Varga SS, Rothermel AL, Collins AM, Pulito VL, et al. *In vitro* characterization of five humanized OKT3 effector function variant antibodies. *Cell Immunol.* (2000) 200:16–26. doi: 10.1006/cimm.2000.1617
154. Woodle ES, Bluestone JA, Zivin RA, Jolliffe LK, Auger J, Xu D, et al. Humanized, nonmitogenic OKT3 antibody, huOKT3 gamma(Ala-Ala): initial clinical experience. *Transplant Proc.* (1998) 30:1369–70. doi: 10.1016/S0041-1345(98)00278-4
155. Newman R, Hariharan K, Reff M, Anderson DR, Braslawsky G, Santoro D, et al. Modification of the Fc region of a primatized IgG antibody to human CD4 retains its ability to modulate CD4 receptors but does not deplete CD4(+) T cells in chimpanzees. *Clin Immunol.* (2001) 98:164–74. doi: 10.1006/clim.2000.4975
156. Schlothauer T, Herter S, Koller CF, Grau-Richards S, Steinhart V, Spick C, et al. Novel human IgG1 and IgG4 Fc-engineered antibodies with completely abolished immune effector functions. *Protein Eng Des Sel.* (2016) 29:457–66. doi: 10.1093/protein/gzw040
157. Arduin E, Arora S, Bamert PR, Kuiper T, Popp S, Geisse S, et al. Highly reduced binding to high and low affinity mouse Fc gamma receptors by L234A/L235A and N297A Fc mutations engineered into mouse IgG2a. *Mol Immunol.* (2015) 63:456–63. doi: 10.1016/j.molimm.2014.09.017
158. Sarmay G, Lund J, Rozsnyay Z, Gergely J, Jefferis R. Mapping and comparison of the interaction sites on the Fc region of IgG responsible for triggering antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) through different types of human Fc gamma receptor. *Mol Immunol.* (1992) 29:633–9. doi: 10.1016/0161-5890(92)90200-H
159. Tam SH, Mccarthy SG, Armstrong AA, Somani S, Wu S-J, Liu X, et al. Functional, biophysical, and structural characterization of human IgG1 and IgG4 Fc variants with ablated immune functionality. *Antibodies.* (2017) 6:12. doi: 10.3390/antib6030012
160. Mimoto F, Katada H, Kadono S, Igawa T, Kuramochi T, Muraoka M, et al. Engineered antibody Fc variant with selectively enhanced FcgammaRIIb binding over both FcgammaRIIa(R131) and FcgammaRIIa(H131). *Protein Eng Des Sel.* (2013) 26:589–98. doi: 10.1093/protein/gzt022
161. Georgakopoulos T, Tatford OC, Gurevich V, Bertolini J. C1q aggregate binding for the determination of anti-complementary activity of immunoglobulin products. *Biologicals.* (2011) 39:38–42. doi: 10.1016/j.biologicals.2010.11.002
162. Tawara T, Hasegawa K, Sugiura Y, Harada K, Miura T, Hayashi S, et al. Complement activation plays a key role in antibody-induced infusion toxicity in monkeys and rats. *J Immunol.* (2008) 180:2294–8. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.180.4.2294
163. Kishore U, Ghai R, Greenhough TJ, Shrive AK, Bonifati DM, Gadjeva MG, et al. Structural and functional anatomy of the globular domain of complement protein C1q. *Immunol Lett.* (2004) 95:113–28. doi: 10.1016/j.imlet.2004.06.015
164. Lund J, Takahashi N, Nakagawa H, Goodall M, Bentley T, Hindley SA, et al. Control of IgG/Fc glycosylation: a comparison of oligosaccharides from chimeric human/mouse and mouse subclass immunoglobulin Gs. *Mol Immunol.* (1993) 30:741–8. doi: 10.1016/0161-5890(93)90145-2
165. Rademacher TW, Homans SW, Parekh RB, Dwek RA. Immunoglobulin G as a glycoprotein. *Biochem Soc Symp.* (1986) 51:131–48.
166. Kanda Y, Yamada T, Mori K, Okazaki A, Inoue M, Kitajima-Miyama K, et al. Comparison of biological activity among nonfucosylated therapeutic IgG1 antibodies with three different N-linked Fc oligosaccharides: the high-mannose, hybrid, and complex types. *Glycobiology.* (2007) 17:104–18. doi: 10.1093/glycob/cwl057
167. Feige MJ, Nath S, Catharino SR, Weinfurtner D, Steinbacher S, Buchner J. Structure of the murine unglycosylated IgG1 Fc fragment. *J Mol Biol.* (2009) 391:599–608. doi: 10.1016/j.jmb.2009.06.048
168. Borrok MJ, Jung ST, Kang TH, Monzingo AF, Georgiou G. Revisiting the role of glycosylation in the structure of human IgG Fc. *ACS Chem Biol.* (2012) 7:1596–602. doi: 10.1021/cb300130k
169. Davies AM, Jefferis R, Sutton BJ. Crystal structure of deglycosylated human IgG4-Fc. *Mol Immunol.* (2014) 62:46–53. doi: 10.1016/j.molimm.2014.05.015
170. Krapp S, Mimura Y, Jefferis R, Huber R, Sondermann P. Structural analysis of human IgG-Fc glycoforms reveals a correlation between glycosylation and structural integrity. *J Mol Biol.* (2003) 325:979–89. doi: 10.1016/S0022-2836(02)01250-0
171. Wang X, Mathieu M, Brezski RJ. IgG Fc engineering to modulate antibody effector functions. *Protein Cell.* (2018) 9:63–73. doi: 10.1007/s13238-017-0473-8

172. Kang TH, Lee CH, Delidakis G, Jung J, Richard-Le Goff O, Lee J, et al. An engineered human fc variant with exquisite selectivity for FcgammaRIIIaV158 reveals that ligation of FcgammaRIIIa mediates potent antibody dependent cellular phagocytosis with GM-CSF-differentiated macrophages. *Front Immunol.* (2019) 10:562. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00562
173. Hessell AJ, Hangartner L, Hunter M, Havenith CE, Beurskens FJ, Bakker JM, et al. Fc receptor but not complement binding is important in antibody protection against HIV. *Nature*. (2007) 449:101–4. doi: 10.1038/nature06106
174. Caskey M, Klein F, Nussenzweig MC. Broadly neutralizing anti-HIV-1 monoclonal antibodies in the clinic. *Nat Med.* (2019) 25:547–53. doi: 10.1038/s41591-019-0412-8
175. Paes B, Kim D, Saleem M, Wong S, Mitchell I, Lanctot KL, et al. Respiratory syncytial virus prophylaxis in infants with congenital airway anomalies compared to standard indications and complex medical disorders. *Eur J Pediatr.* (2019) 178:377–85. doi: 10.1007/s00431-018-03308-1
176. Griffin MP, Khan AA, Esser MT, Jensen K, Takas T, Kankam MK, et al. Safety, tolerability, and pharmacokinetics of MEDI8897, the respiratory syncytial virus prefusion F-targeting monoclonal antibody with an extended half-life, in healthy adults. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother*. (2017) 61:e01714-16. doi: 10.1128/AAC.01714-16

Conflict of Interest Statement: The author declares that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

ORIGINAL RESEARCH
published: 12 June 2019
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.01208

FCGR3A and FCGR2A Genotypes Differentially Impact Allograft Rejection and Patients' Survival After Lung Transplant

Pascale Paul[1,2], Pascal Pedini[3], Luc Lyonnet[1], Julie Di Cristofaro[4], Anderson Loundou[5], Mathieu Pelardy[3], Agnes Basire[3], Françoise Dignat-George[1,2], Jacques Chiaroni[3,4], Pascal Thomas[6], Martine Reynaud-Gaubert[7] and Christophe Picard[3,4]*

[1] Department of Hematology, Hopital de la Conception, INSERM CIC-1409, Assistance Publique-Hôpitaux Marseille (AP-HM), Marseille, France, [2] INSERM 1263, INRA, C2VN, Aix-Marseille Université (AMU), INSERM, Marseille, France, [3] Établissement Français du Sang PACA-Corse 13005, Marseille, France, [4] "Biologie des Groupes Sanguins", UMR 7268 ADÉS Aix-Marseille Université/EFS/CNRS, Marseille, France, [5] Département de santé Publique - EA 3279, Assistance Publique-Hôpitaux Marseille (AP-HM), Aix-Marseille Université, Marseille, France, [6] Service de Chirurgie Thoracique et Transplantation Pulmonaire, CHU Nord Assistance Publique-Hôpitaux Marseille (AP-HM), Aix-Marseille Université, Marseille, France, [7] Service de Pneumologie et Transplantation Pulmonaire, CHU Nord Assistance Publique-Hôpitaux Marseille (AP-HM) - IHU Méditerranée Infection Aix-Marseille-Université, Marseille, France

OPEN ACCESS

Edited by:
Guido Ferrari,
Duke University, United States

Reviewed by:
Rajalingam Raja,
University of California, San Francisco, United States
Justin Pollara,
Duke University School of Medicine, United States

***Correspondence:**
Pascale Paul
pascale.paul@univ-amu.fr

Specialty section:
This article was submitted to NK and Innate Lymphoid Cell Biology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology

Received: *19 February 2019*
Accepted: *13 May 2019*
Published: *12 June 2019*

Citation:
Paul P, Pedini P, Lyonnet L, Di Cristofaro J, Loundou A, Pelardy M, Basire A, Dignat-George F, Chiaroni J, Thomas P, Reynaud-Gaubert M and Picard C (2019) FCGR3A and FCGR2A Genotypes Differentially Impact Allograft Rejection and Patients' Survival After Lung Transplant. Front. Immunol. 10:1208. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.01208

Fc gamma receptors (FcγRs) play a major role in the regulation of humoral immune responses. Single-nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) of *FCGR2A* and *FCGR3A* can impact the expression level, IgG affinity and function of the CD32 and CD16 FcγRs in response to their engagement by the Fc fragment of IgG. The CD16 isoform encoded by *FCGR3A* [158V/V] controls the intensity of antibody-dependent cytotoxic alloimmune responses of natural killer cells (NK) and has been identified as a susceptibility marker predisposing patients to cardiac allograft vasculopathy after heart transplant. This study aimed to investigate whether *FCGR2A* and *FCGR3A* polymorphisms can also be associated with the clinical outcome of lung transplant recipients (LTRs). The SNPs of *FCGR2A* ([131R/H], rs1801274) and *FCGR3A* ([158V/F], rs396991) were identified in 158 LTRs and 184 Controls (CTL). The corresponding distribution of genotypic and allelic combinations was analyzed for potential links with the development of circulating donor-specific anti-HLA alloantibodies (DSA) detected at months 1 and 3 after lung transplant (LTx), the occurrence of acute rejection (AR) and chronic lung allograft dysfunction (CLAD), and the overall survival of LTRs. The *FCGR3A* [158V/V] genotype was identified as an independent susceptibility factor associated with higher rates of AR during the first trimester after LTx (HR 4.8, $p < 0.0001$, 95% CI 2.37–9.61), but it could not be associated with the level of CD16- mediated NK cell activation in response to the LTR's DSA, whatever the MFI intensity and C1q binding profiles of the DSA evaluated. The *FCGR2A* [131R/R] genotype was associated with lower CLAD-free survival of LTRs, independently of the presence of DSA at 3 months (HR 1.8, $p = 0.024$, 95% CI 1.08–3.03). Our data indicate that FCGR SNPs differentially affect the clinical outcome of

LTRs and may be of use to stratify patients at higher risk of experiencing graft rejection. Furthermore, these data suggest that in the LTx setting, specific mechanisms of humoral alloreactivity, which cannot be solely explained by the complement and CD16-mediated pathogenic effects of DSA, may be involved in the development of acute and chronic lung allograft rejection.

Keywords: Fc-gamma receptors, natural killer cells, lung transplantation, chronic lung allograft dysfunction, HLA antibodies, allograft rejection

INTRODUCTION

Lung transplantationi (LTx) remains a challenging therapeutic option for patients with end-stage pulmonary disease. Significant improvement in immunosuppressive strategies has led to decreased lung allograft loss in the early post-transplant period. When compared to other solid organ transplantation settings, LTx remains associated with the lowest survival rates with a median survival of 6 years after transplant (1). Chronic lung allograft dysfunction (CLAD) is the main cause of chronic lung allograft rejection and is characterized by an irreversible loss of lung function associated with a high prevalence of complications such as bronchiolitis obliterans syndrome (BOS) and restrictive allograft syndrome (RAS) (2). Factors that relate to the HLA mismatch, to the graft procedure (ischemia, unilateral or bilateral surgery) and initial lung disease can lead to highly variable levels of recipient immune response to the lung allograft. Inflammatory biomarkers and antibodies, occurrence of acute cellular rejection (ACR), infections/colonization, auto-immunity, and air pollution have been analyzed for their potential predictive value in anticipating development of immunological responses associated with CLAD. Toll receptors, pro-inflammatory cytokines and non-classical HLA molecules, i.e., HLA-G and HLA-E polymorphisms or haplotypes, have been associated with CLAD (3–9), but the underlying mechanisms involved in this devastating outcome of LTx in a given recipient are still poorly understood. Antibody-mediated rejection (ABMR) has been associated with a higher incidence of chronic lung allograft dysfunction (CLAD) and mortality after LTx but the specific mechanisms and histological or immunological biomarkers that allow to define the clinical ABMR entity still await further comprehension (10). Detection of preexisting or development of *de novo* donor-specific human leukocyte antigen (HLA) alloantibodies (DSAs) have been extensively investigated for their potential value as biomarkers of humoral responses that may predict adverse outcome of LTx.

Various studies suggest that the pre-transplant detection of circulating DSA is not associated with an increased risk of developing CLAD or related death if prospective cross-match testing was negative (11, 12). The pretransplant detection of DSA and antibodies directed againd non-HLA antigens such as angiotensin type 1 receptor (AT1R) and endothelin type A receptor (ETAR) is reported to have a negative impact on lung transplant outcome (13).

Early detection of *de novo* DSA detected at 1 month after LTx has been significantly associated with a worse outcome (14). Multiplex solid phase single antigen bead assay (SAFB) detection of *de novo* DSAs, notably anti-HLA DQ DSA, have also been associated with acute cellular rejection (ACR) (15) CLAD (16–18). The presence of circulating DSA at the time of lung allograft biopsy has been identified as a risk factor for graft loss (19).

Although there is more and more direct and indirect evidence regarding the role of *de novo* DSA in CLAD occurrence, the mechanisms that sustain the variable toxicity of these anti-HLA antibodies to the lung allograft are still unclear. One of the well-known cytotoxic mechanisms of DSA occurs through the IgG-mediated activation of the complement cascade that results in C4d deposition within the graft. C4d staining in lung allograft biopsies is considered as a diagnosis criteria for ABMR (10, 20–28). However, although recent evidence suggests that detection of complement-binding DSA can be associated with lung allograft failure (29), the predictive value of complement-binding DSA on LTx clinical outcome remains to be firmly demonstrated.

IgG antibodies can also activate the immune system through ligation of functional Fc gamma receptors (FcγRs). Since these receptors are expressed by a variety of immune cells, including B cells, natural killer cells, platelets, dendritic cells and macrophages, FcR receptors constitute a major checkpoint that regulates the intensity of auto- and allo-immune responsiveness of the host in response to infectious and humoral threats (30, 31). As infections and the immune alloreactivity of the recipient toward the transplant remain a leading cause of graft rejection and death during the first year after LTx, there is a need for biomarkers that may improve the monitoring of early humoral responses in LTRs (32–34) and open therapeutic perspectives to dampen antibody-driven inflammation in immunized patients (35, 36).

Polymorphisms of FcγRIIA (*FCGR2A* [131R/H], rs1801274) FcγRIIIA (*FCGR3A* [158V/F], rs396991) genes, that respectively, encode for the CD32 and CD16 receptors for the Fc segment of IgG, have an impact on the level of expression and immune function of these activating FcγRs. Various reports have highlighted the clinical relevance of these SNPs in controlling the host immune response to monoclonal antibody therapy.

Abbreviations: HLA, Human Leukocyte Antigen; LTx, Lung Transplant; LTRx, Lung Transplant Recipient; Abs, Antibodies; Ag, Antigen; DSA, Donor-Specific Antibodies; BOS, Bronchiolitis Obliterans Syndrome; CLAD, Chronic Lung Allograft Dysfunction; ADCC, Antibody dependent cell cytotoxicity; CT, Computed Tomography; RAS, Restrictive Allograft Syndrome; ABMR, Antibody Mediated Rejection; ACR, Acute Cellular Rejection; SAFB, Single-Antigen Flow Beads; D, Days; M, Month; CMV, Cytomegalovirus; MFI, Mean Fluorescence Intensity; OS, Overall Survival; DFS, Disease Free Survival; CDC, Complement-Dependent Cytotoxicity; CF, Cystic Fibrosis.

The presence of a histidine (H) rather than an arginine (R) at position 131 results in higher affinity for IgG1 and IgG2. The *FCGR2A* [131H/H] genotype has been associated with higher efficacy of Rituximab-mediated B cell depletion strategies before transplant of ABO-incompatible organs. This *FCGR2A* [131H/H] SNP has also been identified as a susceptibility marker associated with the severity of community-acquired pneumonia (37).Genetic variation in the *FCGR2A* gene has also been shown to be associated with an increased prevalence of invasive pneumococcal diseases and respiratory infections after LTx (38, 39), regardless of the site of pneumococcal infection (40). Pro-inflammatory effects associated with the *FCGR2A* [131R/R] genotype have also been reported as a consequence of activating signals that result from the dynamic interactions between CD32 and its cognate C-reactive protein (CRP) and immunoglobulin ligands.

The clinical relevance of CD16 inflammatory pathways in antibody-mediated rejection of kidney and heart allografts has also been illuminated by studies that deciphered the molecular landscape of immune and endothelial cell transcripts that associate with ABMR lesions evaluated in allograft biopsies (41–43). Ligation of the Fc domain of IgG has also been identified as a mechanism that allows CD16-dependant clearance of viral pathogens by immune NK cells (44). Recent studies suggest that the Fc fragment of DSA can indeed exert its adverse cytotoxic and inflammatory effects though a complement-independent mechanism that relies on level of expression of the NK-cell surface CD16 receptor and its affinity for the Fc fragment of alloantibodies. The intensity of host antibody dependent cell cytotoxicity (ADCC) is known to be conditioned by the capacity of NK effector cells to form conjugates with antibody-coated allogeneic cells, which is in part influenced by the *FCGR3A* [158V/F] genotype (45–47). We and others have recently shown that polymorphic variation in the *FCGR3A* genes is also likely to affect the pathogenic effects of IgG alloantibodies by controlling the level of the CD16 dependent recipient's immunological cytotoxic responses to allogeneic donor cells exposed to chronic alloantibody threat (35, 48–51).

Genotypic variation in the *FCGR3A* receptor can thus impact the strength of FcR-dependent ADCC responses of NK cells and regulate their capacity to secrete inflammatory cytokines and release CD107a/Lamp1^{+} cytotoxic granules containing perforin and granzyme (50, 52, 53). The inter-individual variability in the functional CD16 receptor-dependent engagement by the Fc fragment of alloantibodies has been shown to condition the intensity of antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) of NK cells and the response to IgG immunotherapy.

The strength of FcR-mediated ADCC can also be affected by the isotype and glycosylation status of alloantibodies. The IgG1 and IgG3 isoforms have higher affinity for the CD16 *FCGR3A* [158V/V] variant when compared to *FCGR3A* [158F/F], thereby spurring increased effector cell activity in response to these IgG subclasses. We have shown that this high-affinity homozygous *FCGR3A* [158V/V] genotype is an independent predictor of cardiac allograft vasculopathy (48) and may be a clinically relevant underlying mechanism that sustains the level of DSA-mediated allograft injury (48–50). The recent evidence that the NK cell infiltration of the graft can predict kidney graft failure also sustains the clinical relevance of these NK cell mediated mechanisms of allograft injury (54).

Considering the central contribution of polymorphisms affecting FcγRIIA and FcγRIIIA genes and receptor function in the individual shaping of antibody-mediated inflammatory and cytotoxic alloimmune responses of the recipient, deciphering the mechanisms and FcγR susceptibility profiles that may be associated with LTx outcome is necessary to optimize risk stratification (8).

This study thus aimed to investigate whether FcγR polymorphisms may be linked to the pathogenic mechanisms of DSA toxicity and be associated with adverse clinical complications that impair patient and allograft outcome after LTx.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Participants and Study Design

We conducted a retrospective single-center study enrolling 158 adult patients who underwent lung transplants (LTx) at the Marseille Lung Transplant Center between December 2006 and December 2013. All patients from the French cohort (COLT, *Cohort in Lung Transplantation*, l'Institut du Thorax, INSERM UMR1087/CNRS UMR 6291, CNIL 911142) were recruited in this study. All subjects gave written informed consent in accordance with the Declaration of Helsinki. A group of 184 healthy unrelated volunteer French bone marrow donors were also recruited to constitute a control cohort, allowing the analysis of the FcγR genotype. Blood donations were collected in the "Etablissement Francais du Sang," in accordance with BSL-2 practices. A medical interview was carried out prior to blood donation to exclude donors with medical contraindications. This study was carried out in accordance with the French Public Health Code (art L1221-1), approved by an institutional ethics committee and conducted in compliance with the Good Clinical Practice Guidelines declaration of Helsinki and Istanbul.

Post-transplant Clinical Management

All recipients received a similar standardized immunosuppressive regimen in accordance with our institutional protocols. Induction therapy consisted of intravenous administration (IV) of rabbit anti-thymocyte globulins (rATG, Pasteur Merieux, Lyon, France) given for the first 3 post-operative days [except when daily lymphocyte count was below 200/mm^3, and when there were cytomegalovirus (CMV) and/or EBV mismatches (i.e., seronegative recipient and seropositive donor)] and high dose methylprednisolone (6 mg/kg/d Day 1, 2 mg/kg/d Day 2 and Day 3, and 1 mg/kg/d thereafter). The standard triple maintenance immunosuppressive regimen consisted of tacrolimus (adjusted to maintain whole blood levels varying between 12 and 14 ng/ml), mycophenolate mofetil in 5 patients (adjusted to a white blood cell count above 4,000 mm^3), and steroids (prednisone) tapered to 0.25 mg/kg/d over the first 3 months and stopped around 12 months after surgery.

According to CMV recipient positive (R+) and donor positive/recipient negative (D+/R–) status, patients received CMV prophylaxis with IV ganciclovir switch to oral valganciclovir.

Postoperatively, recipients received prophylactic or preemptive anti-infection treatment (antibiotic, antiviral, and antifungal therapies) according to their preoperative and/or concomitant infectious status.

Recipients had regular visits to the transplant center for clinical radiological and functional evaluation. At our institution, surveillance transbronchial biopsies are routinely performed at the end of the first month, or earlier if clinically indicated. All transbronchial biopsies were graded for ACR (A grade) and lymphocytic bronchiolitis (B grade) (LB) by lung transplant pathologists. ACR and LB were defined, respectively, as perivascular or peribronchial mononuclear inflammation according to the International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation (ISHLT) criteria. Histologic appraisal of ACR and LB was conducted in accordance with accepted ISHLT standards in terms of the minimum number of biopsy samples and exclusion of opportunistic infection (27, 28). Pulmonary function tests (PFTs) were routinely conducted at our center on a monthly basis for the first 12 post-operative months, at M2 intervals in the second year and at M3 intervals thereafter. The baseline FEV_1 value was calculated as the average of the 2 best FEV_1 values at least 2 measure gap. Baseline values of total lung capacity (TLC) and FEV_1/FVC were defined as the average of the 2 measurements obtained at the same time as the best 2 FEV_1 measurements. Chronic lung allograft dysfunction (CLAD) was defined according to the standardized international criteria (55). The phenotype BOS or RAS was specified according to ISHLT guidelines (56). The following histological patterns compatible with AMR were also analyzed: (i) neutrophil capillaritis and (ii) acute lung injury with or without diffuse alveolar damage and with or without organizing pneumonia.

HLA Antibody Screening and Identification Protocol

Recipient serum samples from 2006 to 2013 were collected routinely prior to transplant, at the minimum when the patient was placed on the waiting list and before the transplant procedure (D0: Day 0) and serially after LTx (at month 1 and 3). All sera samples obtained from the 158 recipients were further assessed using Luminex single-antigen flow beads (SAFB) to determine antibody specificity using Single Antigen—One Lambda reagents (*LABScreen*® Single Antigen class I or *LABScreen*® Single Antigen class II, One Lambda, Thermo Fisher Scientific, Canoga Park, California, USA) according to the recommendations of the manufacturers. The mean fluorescence intensity (MFI) used the baseline formula proposed by the Fusion™ v 3.2 software. All beads with a normalized MFI threshold >1,000 were considered positive. Since detected circulating alloantibodies were often directed against distinct HLA class I and/or class II antigens, the cumulative mean fluorescence intensity (cMFI) of DSA was calculated as the sum of the MFI for each of the individual DSAs detected. DSA were considered to be HLA antibodies directed against donor HLA antigen. Putative HLA-Cw and -DQA1 DSA were identified in accordance with the conventional linkage disequilibrium that is reported between HLA-B and HLA-C loci and between HLA-DQB1 and HLA-DQA1 loci, as respectively, described in the French population (57) and by supplementary extensive genotyping of HLA- genes in the recipient. Putative HLA-DR51, -DR52 and -DR53 DSA were determined in accordance with the linkage disequilibrium between DRB3, DRB4, DRB5 loci and DRB1 loci of recipient. The allelic specificities of HLA-Cw, DQA and -DR51, -DR52 and -DR53 DSA were assigned accordingly.

C1q Detection

All patients with HLA antibodies were tested for the presence of C1q. The binding level was determined by the C1qScreen™ assay per manufacturer instructions (One Lambda, Thermo Fisher Scientific, Canoga Park, California, USA). Fluorescence intensity was measured using Luminex-based LABScan™ 100 flow analyzer. C1q specific antibody specificity and binding levels were analyzed and determined through the Fusion™ v 3.2 software. C1q MFI > 1,000 was considered positive.

FCGR2A and *FCGR3A* Genotyping

The detection of single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) allowed for the genotyping of *FCGR3A* ([158V/F], rs396991) and *FCGR2A* ([131R/H], rs1801274) as described (5, 48) using the SNAPSHOT technique. Genomic DNA was extracted from a 200-µl whole blood sample using the QIAmp Blood DNA Mini kit (Qiagen, Courtaboeuf, France) according to manufacturer instructions. A previously described homemade primer extension method (58) was used to simultaneously analyze the SNPs of the FcγR genes. The forward and reverse primers sequences were, respectively: *FCGR3A*-F 5′ TCCTAA TAGGTTTGGCAGTG 3′ and *FCGR3A*-R 5′ AAATGTTCA GAGATGCTGCT 3′, *FCGR2A*-F 5′ CCAGGAGGGAGAAAC CATC 3′ and *FCGR2A*-R 5′ CTCTTCTCCCCTCCCTACAT 3′. The extension primers are, respectively: *FCGR3A*_176-F: 30T-CCTACTTCTGCAGGGGGCTT and *FCGR2A*_166F 57T-CCAAAAGCCACACTCAAAGA. Data were analyzed using GeneMapper 4.0 with specific detection parameters. Using an in-house computer program, output files (.txt) exported from GeneMapper 4.0 were automatically formatted into files readable by the "Phenotype" application of the Gene[Rate] computer tool package (http://geneva.unige.ch/generate). For each different allele obtained, PCR products were sequenced on both strands using the BigDye Terminator v1.1 Sequencing Kit (Applied Biosystems) and analyzed on an automated fluorescence-based ABI PRISM 3130 XL genetic analyzer according to manufacturer protocol. FcR polymorphisms at these 4 loci were analyzed for allele frequencies, or homozygous or heterozygous allelic combination of FcγR alleles defining the corresponding genotype.

HLA Genotyping

Recipients and deceased donors were genotyped for low resolution HLA-A, -B, -DRB1, and -DQB1 loci by LABType® SSO (One Lambda, Thermo Fisher Scientific, Canoga Park,

California, USA) according to the manufacturer's specifications and the retrieved output was analyzed for allele identification using HLA Fusion^{TM} v 1.2.1. Software (One Lambda, Thermo Fisher Scientific, Canoga Park, California, USA).

Phenotypic Analysis of Antibody-Dependent NK Cell Activation

Evaluation of the CD16-dependent alloreactive potential of DSA was assessed using the previously described NK cell humoral activation test (NK-CHAT) (50). The level of serum-induced CD16 engagement and the degranulating potential of NK cells was assessed by flow cytometry analysis of the level of CD16 cell surface expression within the $CD3^{-}CD56^{+}$ NK cell compartment, gated within PBMC effector cells after exposure to target B cells that had been precoated in the presence of LTRs or control sera. Effector cells used in the standardized assay were prepared from a healthy donor displaying the *FCGR3A* [158V/V] encoding the high-affinity CD16 variant. The HLA typing of the two B cell lines used as targets were A2/A2, B44/B56, Cw1/Cw5, DR1/DR4, DR53, DQ5/DQ7 and A3/A3 B7/B35, Cw4/Cw5, DR10/DR15, DR51, DQ5/DQ6). Sera were selected for the presence of DSA recognizing a limited set of HLA antigens expressed by EBV target cell lines. Briefly, 500,000 target B cells (B-EBV cell lines expressing the cognate DSA target alloantigens detected in LTR) were incubated with control (CTL) unsensitized human male AB serum (Lonza) to block FcR, then rinsed and incubated for 15 min in the presence of 50% LTR serum [or CTL serum supplemented or not with 10 γg/ml of Rituximab IgG (positive control)] and then rinsed to remove unbound antibodies. Incubation of effector PBMC and pre-coated allogeneic B-EBV cell targets (1:1 ratio) was performed for 3 h at 37°C in presence of GolgiStop (Becton Dickinson 554724) and CD107-PC5 (Becton Dickinson 555802). Cells were then washed and labeled with CD3-ECD (Beckman Coulter A07748), CD16-PE (Beckman Coulter A07766), CD56-PC7 (Beckman Coulter A21692) for 15 min at room temperature protected from light. After 1 wash step, cells were resuspended in 500 µl PBS 2% SVF. Data acquisition and analysis was performed on a Beckman Coulter Navios cytometer. The mean fluorescence intensity of CD16 and percent of NK cells expressing Lamp1/CD107a expression was analyzed within the CD3-CD56+ NK cell subset. The NK-CHAT CD16 down regulation index (CD16DRI) was evaluated as a ratio between CD16 MFI measured on NK cells incubated with target cells in presence of effector cell autologous CTL serum/CD16 MFI of NK cells incubated with target cells and recipient serum to be tested. CD16DRI = (MFI CD16 control serum)/(MFI CD16 test serum). Alternatively, when serum at time of LTx was available for the assay, the baseline CD16 expression was evaluated in reference to the DSA negative serum collected at time of LTx. Sera containing HLA-DQ7 DSA obtained from kidney transplant recipients (KTR) with antibody-mediated rejection (ABMR) at time of diagnosis, previously described to induce high levels of CD16-dependent NK cell alloreactivity, were introduced as positive controls of the experiments, indexing the CD16 down regulation induced by LTx sera.

Statistical Analyses

Variables used to perform univariate and multivariable analyses included preoperative donor variables (donor age, sex, CMV status, HLA typing), preoperative donor–recipient matching parameters (age, sex, CMV status, and HLA mismatch), operative variables such as ischemia time, type of procedure (single vs. bilateral LTx) and preoperative and post-operative recipient variables (initial lung disease, HLA typing, pre- and post-transplant immunization status, occurrence of AR BOS, RAS, CLAD, or infectious bacterial episodes occurring during the first year post-transplant), and notably during the early post-Tx period at months 1 (M1) and 3 (M3) after LTx (**Table 1**).

Continuous variables were presented as median values and 25–75 interquartile ranges or mean ± sd according to their distribution evaluated using the Agostino & Pearson omnibus normality test performed using GraphPad Prism version 5.00 for Windows (GraphPad Software, La Jolla, California, USA). Categorical variables were presented as percentages. Fisher's exact test and the chi-square test were used to compare categorical data and *t*-tests or Mann Whitney tests were used for the comparison of continuous variables.

The primary endpoints of this study were overall survival (OS) and disease/CLAD-free survival (DFS). OS was defined as the interval between the date of transplant and the last follow-up visit or death. DFS was defined as the time interval from transplant to the first event: either the graft failure or diagnosis of acute rejection or CLAD in living recipients, or the death of the patient. The Kaplan-Meier method was used to estimate overall survival and rejection-free survival. The log-rank test was used to assess the univariate effects on OS and DFS. For all analyses, a 2-sided $p < 0.05$ was considered statistically significant. Variables with a $p < 0.2$ were also considered to construct multivariate regression models. Multivariate analyses were performed using Fine and Gray's proportional hazards regression model. All analyses were performed using IBM SPSS 15.0 software (SPSS Inc., Chicago, IL) and the cmprsk package (developed by Gray, June 2001) on R2.3.0 software (http://www.R-project.org).

RESULTS

Characteristics of the LTR Cohort

The demographic characteristics and clinical features of the 158 adult LTRs (median age: 42 years, 75 females and 83 males) are summarized in **Table 1**. Patients received a first LTx for cystic fibrosis (37%), emphysema (29%), pulmonary fibrosis (22%), or another diagnosis (12%). The median follow-up time was 38 months after LTx. Median survival time of the 94 patients who were alive at time of follow-up was 4.2 years. Sixty-four patients (40.5%) died during the study follow-up (median time before death 12.6 months, 25–75 interquartile range: 1.8–35.5 years) and 5 patients experienced CLAD-associated graft failure with indication of a second lung transplant or death. Among deceased patients, 32 patients died during the first year post-LTx, among which 12 patients died during the first month post-LTx and 9 between the first and third months post-LTx. Acute rejection diagnosis was confirmed in the lung transplant biopsy of 53 patients (36%), the first rejection episode occurring before the

TABLE 1 | Demographic and Clinical characteristics of LTRs.

Recipient, *n*	**158**
Recipient age at LTx (years), median(25–75)	42 (30–54)
Recipient Age ≥ 50, *n* (%)	54 (34)
Donor Age, median (25–75)	43 (29–54)
Male Gender, *n* (%)	83 (53)
Native Lung Disease	
Cystic Fibrosis, *n* (%)	59 (37)
Fibrosis, *n* (%)	35 (22)
Emphysema, *n* (%)	46 (29)
Other, *n* (%)	18 (12)
Transplantation type	
Bilateral LTx, *n* (%)	118 (74)
Single LTx, *n* (%)	36 (24)
Other, *n* (%)	4 (2)
CMV Risk	
CMV R- (%)	50
CMV Mismatch D+R- (%)	21
Immunization Status	
HLA Mismatch, median (25–75)	7 (6–7)
DSA M1, *n*	49
MFI DSAM1, median (25–75)	13,000 (5,500–18,750)
DSA M3, *n*	27
MFI DSA M3, median (25–75)	7,100 (3,500–13,500)
M1 DSA persisting at M3, *n*	21
C1q DSAM1, *n*	20
C1q DSAM3, *n*	7
Bacterial Infections	
M1, *n*	20
M3, *n*	11
First year, *n*	35
Transplant Outcome	
Time follow up post-LTx (months), median (25–75)	38.5 (23–62)
Rejection events	
Biopsy proven Acute rejection Day 0-M3, *n* (%)	41 (28)
Biopsy proven Acute rejection first year, *n* (%)	53 (35)
Time before Acute Rejection event (Days), median (25–75)	42 (22–179)
CLAD, *n*	40 (25)
Time before CLAD (months), median (25–75)	22 (13–32)
BOS, *n* (%)	35 (22)
RAS, *n* (%)	5 (3)
Allograft and Patients' Survival	
CLAD- or Graft failure-free Survival, *n* (%)	71 (45)
Death, *n* (%)	64 (40)
Time before Death (months), median (25–75)	13 (1.8–35)
Death or Graft failure with 2nd LTx, *n* (%)	68 (43)

Data are presented as a number and %, or median (25–75 Interquartile ranges). BOS, Bronchiolitis obliterans syndrome; RAS, restrictive allograft syndrome; CLAD, chronic lung allograft dysfunction; M1 and M3, month 1 and 3 post-LTx.

third month in 41 LTRs (occurring before the fourth month in 24 LTRs and during the third month and the twelfth month post-LTx in 11 LTRs). The occurrence of acute rejection could be associated with the presence of DSA in 49% of these patients ($n = 20$). During the study period, 40 LTRs (25%) developed CLAD, of which 35 (87%) had BOS and 5 (12%) had RAS. Seventeen of the patients with a CLAD diagnosis did not survive and 5 were considered for a second transplant procedure. CLAD-free survival of the graft was observed in 71 patients (45%) with a median disease-free survival time of 4.2 years (25–75 percentile: 3.1–5.8).

Distribution of *FCGR3A* and *FCGR2A* Polymorphisms

Genotyping of the *FCGR2A* and *FCGR3A* polymorphisms was performed in 158 LTRs and analyzed in reference to a control cohort of 184 healthy donors (CTLs) (**Figure 1**). The *FCGR2A*-H allele was detected in 75.3% of LTRs and 83.1% of CTLs ($p = 0.0734$) while the -R allele was detected in 67.7% of LTRs and in 76% of CTLs ($p = 0.0851$). Although the distribution of *FCGR2A* [131R/R] and *FCGR2A* [131H/H] was not significantly altered in LTRs, the frequency of *FCGR2A* [131H/R] was found to be significantly lower in LTRs analyzed in reference to CTLs (chi-square $p = 0.0028$). The distribution of *FCGR3A* alleles did not significantly differ between patients and controls; presence of the -F allele was detected in 81% of LTRs and in 83.7% of CTLs while the -V allele distribution was in 64.6% of LTRs and in 68.5% in CTLs. The genotype frequencies of the various genotype combinations resulting from analysis of these SNPs in the LTR and CTL cohorts are illustrated in **Figure 1**. The frequency of the *FCGR3A* [158F/F] genotype was positively correlated with the *FCGR2A* [131R/R] genotype in CTLs and in LTRs ($p = 0.008$ and $p < 0.0001$, respectively). Presence of the *FCGR2A* [131R/R] was thus significantly associated with lower rates of patients with the *FCGR3A* [158V/V] good responder genotypes in LTRs ($p = 0.038$), but this inverse correlation did not reach significance in the control cohort (**Table 2**). Analysis of the groups stratified according for FCGR SNPs did not reveal any significant difference regarding the age of the LTR and type of underlying initial lung disease. The *FCGR2A* [131H/R] SNP with was found to be associated with recipient gender ($p = 0.029$). The *FCGR2A* [131H/H] genotype was observed to be significantly more common in women LTRs (32 out of 51, $p = 0.008$).

DSA Immunization During the First 3 Months Following Lung Transplant Is Associated With FCGR Polymorphism

During the first 3 months post-transplant, 55 patients developed *de novo* circulating DSA. During the first month post-LTx (M1), DSA developed in 49 LTRs (12 HLA class I, 20 HLA class II, and 17 HLA class I and II). The median MFI of DSA detected at M1 was 7,000 for HLA Class I DSA and 12,100 for HLA Class II DSA and 12 patients (8%) exhibited high cMFI values of DSA (over the 18,750 threshold corresponding to the 75 percentile value observed for MFI analyzed at M1) (**Table 1**). Circulating DSA could be detected in 27 LTRs analyzed at month 3 (M3) post-LTx (11 HLA class I, 13 HLA class II and 3 HLA class I and II) (**Figure 2**). The development of *de novo* DSA was observed at M3 in 6 LTRs with no detectable DSA at M1 (4 HLA class I, 1

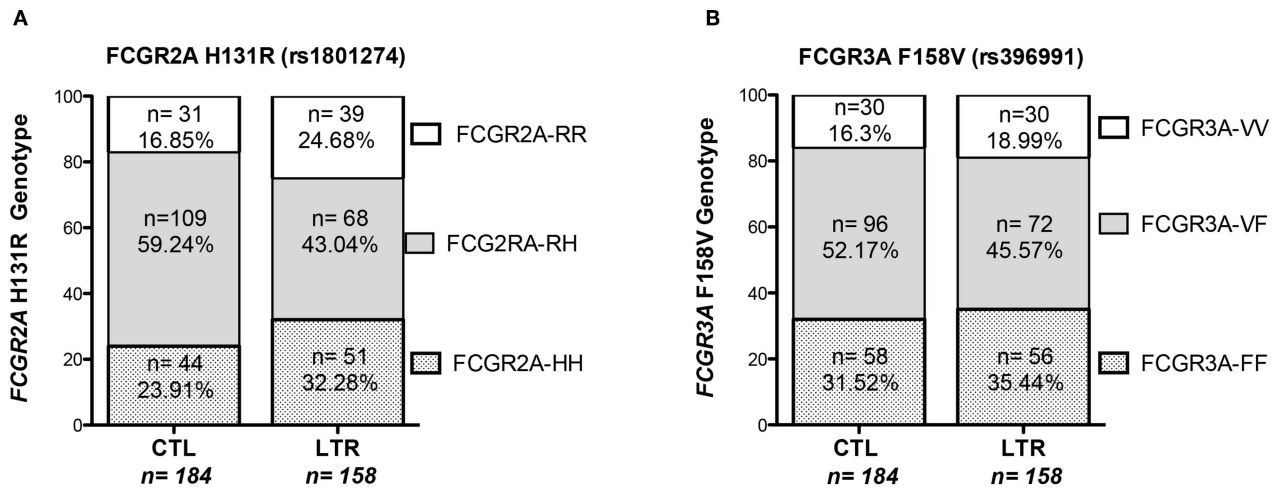


FIGURE 1 | Distribution of *FCGR3A* and *FCGR2A* genotypes in LTRs and CTLs. The proportion of the *FCGR2A* (left Panel, **A**) and *FCGR3A* (right panel, **B**) genotypes resulting from the SNP allelic combination were analyzed in a cohort of 158 LTRs and 184 CTLs recruited in southern France.

TABLE 2 | Association between the *FCGR2A* [131R/R] and FCGR3A [158V/F] genotypes observed in LTRs and CTLs.

		***FCGR2A* genotype LTR**			
		HH ***n* = 51**	**HR** ***n* = 68**	**RR** ***n* = 39**	***p*-value FCGR2A-RR vs. FCGR3A**
FCGR3A genotype	FF, $n = 56$	8	24	24	$p < 0.001$
	VF, $n = 72$	30	30	12	$p = 0.032$
	VV, $n = 30$	13	14	3	$p = 0.038$
		***FCGR2A* genotype CTL**			
		HH ***n* = 44**	**HR** ***n* = 109**	**RR** ***n*= 31**	***p*-value FCGR2A-RR vs. FCGR3A**
FCGR3A genotype	FF, $n = 58$	8	34	16	$P = 0.008$
	VF, $n = 96$	24	59	13	$p = 0.211$
	VV, $n = 30$	12	16	2	$p = 0.103$

HLA class II and 1 HLA Class I and Class II). The median MFI values of DSA detected at M1 and at M3 were, respectively, 13,000 and 7,100 (**Table 1**, **Figure 2**). DSA detected at M1 persisted at M3 in 21 LTRs (44% of DSA-positive MTR at M1) and 4 of these M3 DSA were also detectable 1 year post-transplant. HLA-DQ DSA were the only HLA class II persisting at M3. The median cMFI level of DSA detected at M1 and persisting at M3 (14,600, 25–75 percentile, 7,000–23,250) could not be linked to their persistence at M3 and did not significantly differ from the cMFI of DSA observed at M1 but undetectable at M3 (median MFI: 12,200, 25–75 percentile 4,000–16,000). Circulating DSA directed against DQ specificities were detected in 33 LTRs at M1 (median DQ-DSA MFI: 12,000 25–75 percentile 7,600–14,500) and in 14 LTRs at M3 (median 12,000, 5,000–15,850, 11 HLA-DQ DSA detected at M1 persist at M3 while 3 of the 14 HLA-DQ DSA detected at M3 were *de novo* DSA). C1q Binding DSA at M1 were detected in 20 LTRs (2 HLA class I, 15 HLA class II, and 3 HLA class I and II) with a median cMFI of C1q-binding DSA detected at M1 of 23,000 (25–75 percentile 6,300–30,000). Seven of the 27 DSA detected at M3 were found to bind C1q (1 HLA class I, 5 class II HLA DSA and 1 HLA class I and class II), with a median cMFI of 17,150 (25–75 percentile 7,000–31,000). All C1q binding DSA detected at M3 were also detected at M1.

The *FCGR2A* [131R/R] genotype was also to found to correlate with the detection of circulating DSA at M3 ($p = 0.011$) and notably to the development of *de novo* DSA between the first and second months post-transplant (4 out of the 6 *de novo* DSA detected at M3 were genotyped as *FCGR2A* [131R/R], $p = 0.017$). *FCGR3A* [158V/V] tends to be inversely associated with the persistence of DSA at M3 ($p = 0.07$, **Table 3**), as only 1 out of the 21 patients with persistent DSA at M3 was genotyped as *FCGR3A*

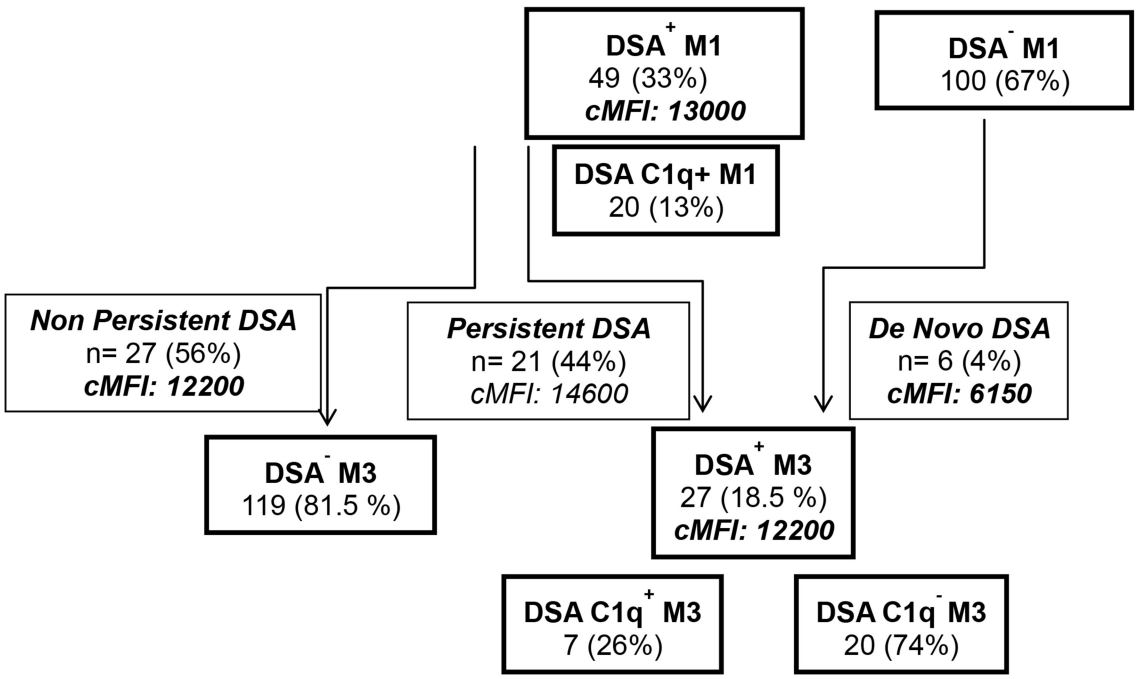


FIGURE 2 | Study flow chart analysis of the detection by single antigen flow bead Luminex Assay of *de novo* DSA and C1q binding activity of DSA at M1 and at M3 post-LTx.

TABLE 3 | Patients immunization characteristics according to the *FCGR2A* and *FCGR3A* genotypes.

	FCGR2A			FCGR3A		
	HH/RH	**RR**	***p*-value**	**FF/VF**	**VV**	***p*-value**
n = 158	119	39		128	30	
DSA M1, *n* = 49	33	16	0.161[t]	40	9	0.926, ns
Median MFI DSA M1	13,000	13,500	0.639, ns	12,500	13,800	0.477, ns
C1q DSA M1, *n* = 24	18	6	0.919, ns	19	5	0.869, ns
DSA M3, *n* = 27	15	12	0.011	26	1	0.024
DQ DSA M3, *n* = 14	7	7	0.022	13	1	0.225, ns
M1 DSA persisting at M3, *n* = 21	13	8	0.146[t]	20	1	0.07[t]
Median MFI DSA M3	6,300	9,500	0.494, ns	7,500	4,500	NA
C1q DSA M3, *n* = 7	5	2	0.840, ns	7	0	0.187[t]

Continuous variables are expressed as median (25–75 percentile ranges). p-values of the statistical tests comparing groups (Chi-2 or non-parametric Mann-Whitney test) were considered as significant when p-values were <0.05, tendency ([t]) when p > 0.05 and <0.2 and non-significant (ns) when p > 0.2 or NA when non-applicable. M1 and M3, month 1 and 3 post-LTx.

[158V/V]. The *FCGR3A*-F allele was significantly associated with the detection of circulating DSA at M3 (26 out of 27 LTRs with detectable circulating DSA at M3 were positive for the *FCGR3A*-F allele, $p = 0.024$) (**Table 3**).

FcGR3A and *FcGR2A* Polymorphisms Are Differentially Associated With Acute and Chronic Lung Allograft Rejection

The *FCGR3A* [158V/V] was also identified as a susceptibility genotype associated with a higher risk of acute rejection (log rank test for equality of survivor functions $p = 0.0009$, **Figure 3A**). Multivariate Cox regression analysis also revealed that the susceptibility conferred by the *FCGR3A* [158V/V] genotype (OR 4.8, $p < 0.0001$, 95% CI 2.375–9.607) was independent from the development of DSA at M3 and their C1q binding activity. *FCGR2A* [131R/H] was not observed to affect the rate of acute rejection. The *FCGR2A* [131R/R] genotype was instead associated with the detection of DSA occurring in the absence of acute rejection ($p = 0.029$).

The DSA immunization status of the patient evaluated during the first year post- LTx could not be associated with CLAD. Although the number of observations was small, 4 of the 5 LTRs

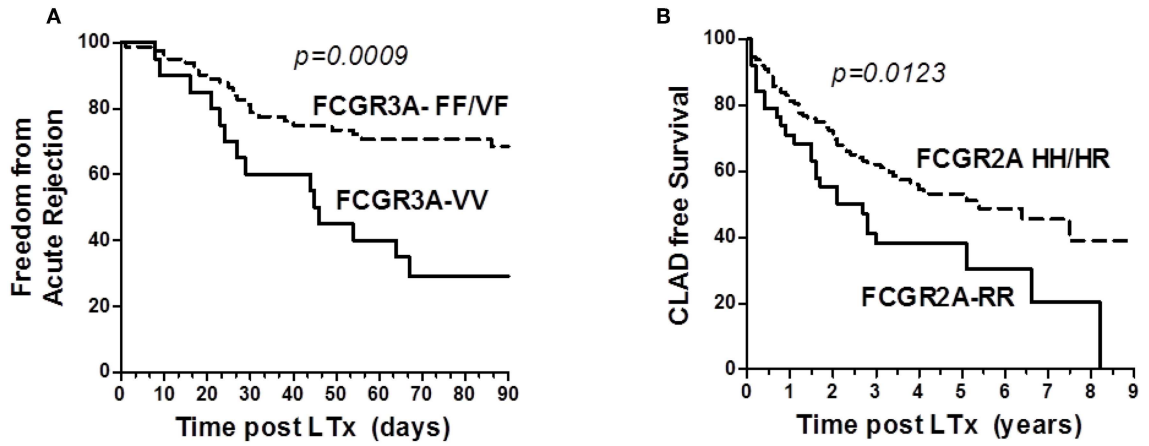


FIGURE 3 | Analysis of the influence of Fc-gamma Receptor polymorphisms on Rejection Free survival. **(A)** Impact of *FCGR3A* genotype on freedom from acute lung rejection. Kaplan–Meir Survival analysis links the *FCGR3A* [158V/V] (solid line, $n = 20$) to lower acute-rejection-free survival after 3 months post-LTx in LTRs, when compared with the *FCGR3A* [158V/F] and *FCGR3A* [158F/F] group (dashed line, $n = 81$). LTRs with the *FCGR3A* [158V/V] show an increased rate of acute rejection events occurring during the first 3 months post-LTx. **(B)** Impact of *FCGR2A* genotype on CLAD free survival. Kaplan–Meir Survival analysis links the *FCGR2A* [131R/R] (solid line, $n = 39$) to a lower CLAD-free survival rate in LTRs over time or study follow-up (years, x axis), when compared with the *FCGR2A* [131H/H] and *FCGR2A* [131R/H] group (dashed line, $n = 119$).

who developed RAS-associated CLAD were homozygous for the *FCGR3A*–FF allele ($p = 0.034$). While the *FCGR3A* [158V/F] could not be significantly associated with the risk of CLAD, *FCGR2A* [131R/R] was identified as a susceptibility marker associated with lower CLAD-free survival of LTRs ($n = 87$, logrank test for equality of survivor functions $p = 0.0123$, **Figure 3B**). Multivariate Cox regression models adjusting co-variables identified using univariate analysis further identified *FCGR2A* [131R/R] as an independent susceptibility marker associated with CLAD (OR 2.2; $p = 0.022$, 95CI 1.126–4.435) (**Table 4**). Multivariate Cox analysis further showed that the *FCGR2A* [131R/R] genotype is significantly associated with the enhanced risk of developing a composite LTx adverse outcomes (CLAD, graft failure or death), independently of other factors such as detection of DSA at M3 or native emphysema lung disease (**Table 4**).

LTx DSAs Have No Major Impact on CD16-Dependent NK Cell Cytotoxic Activation

Considering our previous finding that identifies the potential value of *FCGR3A* [158V/F] in predicting cardiac allograft vasculopathy (48), we further investigated whether the presence of association of acute rejection events with high affinity *FCGR3A* [158V/V] genotype could be associated with the DSA-mediated pathogenic effects that promote acute rejection mechanisms of lung allograft. Using the NK-cellular humoral activation test (NK-CHAT), previously designed to index the level of DSA-mediated engagement of CD16 and unravel potential ADCC-driven pathogenic effects of circulating DSA (41), we therefore aimed to investigate whether circulating DSA detected at M1 or M3 in LTRs have the potential to stimulate NK cell alloreactivity. Evaluation of the DSA-induced down regulation of NK cell CD16 expression (CD16 Down Regulation Index or CD16DRI) was performed in a standardized NK-CHAT assay analyzing alloreactivity of NK cells toward serum-coated $CD20^+$ B lymphocytes expressing the cognate HLA target alloantigen, using 23 serum samples obtained from 20 distinct LTRs (**Table 5**). Thirteen sera were collected at M1 and ten at M3. Four sera had detectable DSA that persisted at M3. Seven DSA at M1 and Four DSA at M3 were C1q positive.

Surprisingly, the CD16DRI values induced by the DSA^+ LTx sera were very low when compared to those obtained in response to Rituximab. These CD16 DRI values could not be associated with the intensity of DSA MFI and C1q binding activity of DSA. Furthermore, the CD16DRI of LTRs (LTR 17, 18, and 20) with HLA DQ7 DSA were lower than those obtained of ABMR kidney transplant recipients (KTR) with HLA DQ7 DSA and with similar MFI (**Figure 4**).

In contrast to the results previously observed in the kidney and heart transplant setting, the association of the *FCGR3A* [158V/V] genotype with acute rejection appears to be independent of the presence of circulating DSA and the DSA MFI levels. In contrast to the KTR serum, NK-CHAT evaluation of the serum of immunized LTRs did not reveal significant alloreactive DSA toxicity and did not allow for determination of their pathogenic potential in eliciting CD16 and NK-cell cytotoxic activation.

FCGR2A Polymorphism Impacts Patients and Allograft Survival

Occurrence of acute and chronic events or infectious episodes was not shown to have a major impact on overall survival in the analyzed cohort.

Early development of DSA that persist at M3 ($n = 21$) were associated with lower graft or patient survival rates ($p = 0.002$) and were associated with the presence of the low-affinity F allelic

TABLE 4 | Univariate analysis and multivariate Cox regression analysis of risk factors associated with acute or chronic rejection events.

Risk covariables	Univariate analysis *p-value*	Hazard ratio	Std. Err.	z	*P* > z	(95% Conf.interval)		
Acute Rejection in the first 3 months post-LTx, *n*= 41								
FCGR3A [158 V/V]	0.003	4.8	1.70	4.39	**<0.0001**	**2.375**	–	**9.607**
Native Lung Disease Emphysema	0.037	0.4	0.18	−2.05	**0.040**	**0.173**	–	**0.961**
M3 C1q Binding DSA	0.009	4.4	2.87	2.28	**0.023**	**1.231**	–	**15.789**
Single lung Tx	0.091	2.6	0.96	2.56	**0.010**	**1.251**	–	**5.352**
FCGR3A [158 V/F]	0.003	4.4	1.54	4.29	**<0.0001**	**2.247**	–	**8.761**
Native Lung Disease Emphysema	0.037	0.4	0.17	−2.17	**0.03**	**0.161**	–	**0.909**
M3 DSA^{+}	Ns ($p = 0.251$)	3.1	1.27	2.82	**0.005**	**1.417**	–	**6.917**
Single lung Tx	0.091	2.9	1.12	2.89	**0.004**	**1.419**	–	**6.243**
CLAD, *n= 40*								
FCGR2A [131R/R]	0.185	2.23	0.781	2.3	**0.022**	1.126	–	4.435
Native Lung Disease Emphysema	0.177	2.65	0.900	2.86	**0.004**	1.360	–	5.157
Recipient Gender: Female	0.142	1.62	0.531	1.47	0.141	0.852	–	3.080
Acute Rejection 1st Year	0.050	1.93	0.621	2.03	**0.042**	**1.024**	–	**3.625**
Composite adverse outcome: CLAD, graft loss or death *n* = 87								
FCGR2A [131R/R]	0.185^{t}	1.8	0.475	2.3	**0.024**	**1.080**	–	**3.028**
Native Lung Disease Emphysema	0.177	2.1	0.514	2.95	**0.003**	**1.279**	–	**3.439**
M3 DSA	0.075	1.9	0.557	2.44	**0.015**	**1.145**	–	**3.080**

Covariables (risk covariables) used to explain the Lung transplant outcome primary variable (Acute Rejection, CLAD or adverse composite outcome that includes CLAD or Graft loss or death) are listed on the left column. The bold text refers to covariables that retained independent significant p-values in multivariate cox regression models.

variant of CD16. Persistence of DSA at M3 was thus lower in *FCGR3A* [158V/V] LTRs ($p = 0.029$). Other parameters such as high MFI DSA detected at M1 (>18,750 MFI, 75 percentile value of DSA MFI at M1 post-LTx, $p = 0.109$) or FCRGR2A [131R/R] ($p = 0.052$) tended to be associated with the risk of death. While the FCGR3A genotype could not be associated to overall survival, the FCRGR2A [131R/R] genotype was identified as a risk factor associated with the composite adverse outcome combining graft failure or patient death ($n = 68$, log rank test for equality of survivor functions $p = 0.0417$, **Figure 5**). Multivariate analysis of variables associated with death from all causes after LTx ($n = 64$, 40.5% of the LTR cohort) retained initial diseases other than cystic fibrosis ($p = 0.048$) DSA with MFI values > to the 75 percentile 18,750 MFI value for DSA detected at M1 as significant risk factors (**Table 6**). The FCRGR2A [131R/R] genotype was shown to be an independent factor associated with lower overall survival of LTRs using multivariate logistic Cox regression models (HR: 1.8, $p = 0.047$ 95% CI: 1.008–3.121, **Table 6**).

DISCUSSION

FcγR constitute a major marker of immune activation in response to infections, antibodies and CRP inflammatory ligands. Recent studies suggest that the engagement of FcR by the Fc fragment of alloantibodies can influence the cytotoxic activation level of NK cells toward the heart or kidney allograft. This study aimed to investigate whether the combined evaluation of *FCGR3A* [158F/V] and *FCGR2A* [131H/R] SNPs and biomarkers that index the level of CD16-dependent ADCC of NK cells might also be relevant to stratify patients at higher risk of lung allograft failure.

Our results show evidence that the *FCGR3A* [158V/V] genotype can be identified as a genetic marker that predisposes LTRs to acute rejection, independently of their DSA immunization status. Fifteen out of thirty patients with the *FCGR3A* [158V/V] genotype indeed developed acute rejection during the first trimester. Since this profile has been associated with higher NK cell responsiveness, we further investigated how it may relate to the NK cell mediated cytotoxic effects of DSA toward the lung allograft. Various studies have shown that the detection of circulating DSA with an ability to ligate the C1q component and activate the complement cascade can be associated with a greater risk of acute rejection and allograft loss after heart or kidney transplant. These complement-dependent mechanisms of DSA-mediated cytotoxic effects have also been recently documented in the lung transplant setting (19, 20). As previously reported (29), all C1q DSA detected at M3 were directed toward donor HLA-DQ alloantigens and C1q positive were shown to be significantly associated with acute rejection in the study cohort. A limitation of our study is the lack of elements allowing the distinction of cellular acute rejection (ACR) from ABMR. Endothelial deposition of C4d and microvascular inflammation were shown to be reliable markers of ABMR in renal and cardiac allografts, but the clinical relevance of C4d staining within lung allograft biopsies still remains controversial for lungs. These diagnostic criteria for ABMR were not always available on a routine basis at the time of evaluation until the Banff nomenclature released more accurate histologic features that characterize lung allograft grafts biopsies of DSA-positive LTRs.

TABLE 5 | NK-CHAT: Evaluation of DSA reactivity toward B cell targets expressed in sera collected from LTR and KTR, used as positive controls for NK-CHAT.

LTR	Serum Time post-LTx	DSA HLA class I/II	MFI DSA	MFI C1q DSA	Serum induced CD107 up regulation (CD107URI)	Serum induced CD16 down regulation index (CD16DRI)	CLAD	AR	Death
LTR 1	M1	Class I	A3:8,500 B7:8,500	A3:14,000 B7: > 15,000	1	1	na	1	1
LTR 2	M1	Class I	A2:7,000 B44:3,000	A2: 3,000 B44: 10,000	1	1	1	1	0
LTR 3	M1	Class I	A2: 3,200	Negative	1	1	1	1	0
LTR 4	M1	Class I	A3: 2,300	Negative	1	1	0	0	0
LTR 5	M3	Class I	B7: 3,000	Negative	1.6	1	0	1	0
LTR 6	M1	Class I and II	A2: 3,500 DQ7: 13,000	DQ7: 10,000	0.4	1	0	0	0
	M3	Class II	DQ7: 9,000	Negative	0.5	1	0	0	0
LTR 7	M1	Class II	DQ2:10,000 DR53:3,000	Negative	3.3	1.2	na	0	1
LTR 8	M1	Class II	DQ5: 9,500	Negative	1.6	1	1	1	1
LTR 9	M1	Class II	DQ6: 10,000	Negative	1.4	1.2	0	0	0
LTR 10	M1	Class II	DQ7 > 15,000	DQ7 > 15,000	0.9	1.3	0	0	0
LTR 11	M1	Class II	DQ7:11,000 DQ9:4,000	DQ7:11,500 DQ9:11,500	0.9	1	1	0	1
LTR 12	M1	Class II	DQ7: 13,000	Negative	1.4	1.1	0	0	0
LTR 13	M3	Class II	DQ5: 14,000	DQ5: 9,000	0.9	1.4	0	0	0
LTR 14	M3	Class II	DQ5: 13,000	Negative	<1	<1	na	0	**1**
LTR 15	M3	Class II	DQ5 4,500	Negative	<1	<1	0	0	0
LTR 16	M3	Class II	DR53: 3,000	Negative	1	1	0	0	0
LTR 17	M3		DQ7: 13,400	DQ7 11,000	1	1			
LTR 18	M3	Class II	DQ7: 16,000	DQ7, 14,000	3	2.1	na	0	1
LTR 19	M1	Class II	DQ5:7,500 DQ6:6,000	DQ5: 7,000 DQ6: 6,500	1.2	<1	0	1	0
	M3	Class II	DQ5: 3,500	Negative	<1	<1			
LTR 20	M1	Class II	DQ7: 9,000	DQ7: 6,000	1.5	1.9	0	0	0
	M3	Class II	DQ7: 12,500	DQ7: 9,000	1.4	1.9			
KTR 1 ABMR	At time of ABMR	Class II	DQ7: 9,000	nt	6.5	29	na	na	na
KTR 2 ABMR	diagnoss	Class II	DQ7: 13,000	nt	7	42	na	na	na

AR, acute rejection; na, not applicable; nt, non-tested.

However, the association between the *FCGR3A* [158V/V] genotype and presence of circulating DSA at M1 or at M3 did not appear to confer a higher risk of acute rejection, whatever their MFI and their C1q binding activity status, thus suggesting that the graft damage associated with the *FCGR3A* [158V/V] genotype is independent from DSA immunization status. This finding was unexpected, as we have previously shown that the intensity of antibody-dependent CD16 activation of NK cells, indexed by the non-invasive NK-CHAT, is significantly enhanced in recipients that bear the *FCGR3A* [158V/V] genotype and constitute a relevant cytotoxic mechanism sustaining toxic effects of DSA and allograft vasculopathy (48, 50). In contrast, NK-CHAT evaluation of DSA from LTRs actually shows evidence that the engagement of CD16 by LTx DSA is low when analyzed in reference to anti-HLA class II DSA that are found in the serum of kidney transplant recipients at time of ABMR diagnosis and that exhibit comparable HLA-DQ7 specificities and MFI values. This low potential of LTx DSA to induce CD16-mediated NK cell activation appears to be independent of their C1q binding activity and could not be associated with adverse outcome of LTx in the present study. As CD16 exhibits higher affinity for IgG1 and IgG3 alloantibodies, this failure of DSA to engage CD16 mediated cytotoxic functions may be due to the IgG2 and/or IgG4 isotypes of DSA, which have been shown to exhibit lower affinity for CD16. This finding may also indicate that the glycosylation pattern of IgG1 DSA interferes with the FcγRs-mediated recognition of the Fc fragment of IgG by immune cells or complement factors. These hypotheses are supported by the observation that only 30% of circulating DSA detected at M1 and at M3 were found to bind C1q in this study cohort and by previous findings that report high IgG4 levels in patients with cystic fibrosis lung disease (59). These data suggest that, in contrast to previous findings, the *FCGR3A* [158V/V] susceptibility genotype does not appear as a major mechanism of

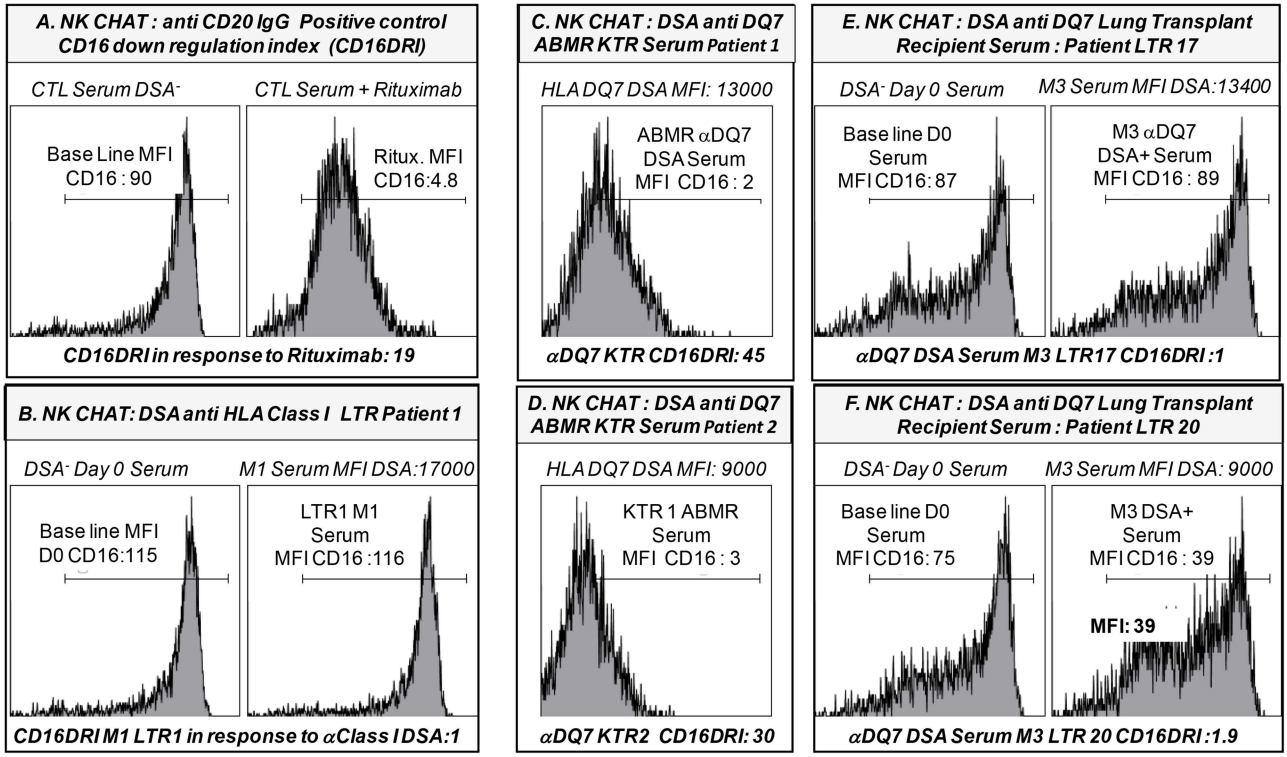


FIGURE 4 | Representative illustration of the NK-Cellular Humoral test (NK-CHAT) used to evaluate serum- and DSA- induced NK cell activation toward B cell lines expressing cognate HLA class I or HLA-DQ7 donor-specific allo-antigens. **(A)** PBMC effectors obtained from *FCGR3A* [158 V/V] CTL were exposed to B-EBV cell lines previously coated with DSA-negative serum. This allowed for evaluation of the baseline expression level of CD16 expression (CD16MFI) within the CD3-CD56+CD16+ NK cell compartment when PBMC were exposed to B cell targets. As a positive control indexing the level of IgG-induced CD16 down regulation (CD16DRI), the same B-EBV cell lines were coated in the presence of 10γ/ml Rituximab (anti CD20 IgG) prior to exposure to the effector PBMC. This allowed for calculation of the CD16 down regulation index (CD16DRI: baseline CD16MFI NK cells exposed to B cells coated with CTL DSA-negative serum/CD16 MFI of NK cells exposed to the same B targets pre-coated in presence of Rituximab). In this context, CD16DRI in response to Rituximab = 19, i.e., 90/4.8. **(B)** The CD16 DRI of NK cells was evaluated in response to the serum collected at M1 in one LTR (LTR 1, **Table 5**) with detectable levels of DSA recognizing the HLA-A3 and -B7 expressed on the B cell targets. Non-immunized serum (DSA-negative) collected from LTR 1 at time of LTx (D0) was used as the reference baseline CD16 MFI value to calculate the CD16DRI. Despite a cumulative MFI of DSA >17,000, DSA detected at M1 in LTR1 failed to induce CD16-dependent NK cell alloreactivity (CD16DRI = 1). **(C)** The CD16 DRI of NK cells was evaluated in response to the serum collected at time of ABMR diagnosis in one kidney transplant recipients (KTR 1, **Table 5**) with detectable levels of DSA recognizing the HLA-DQ7 (MFI: 13,000) expressed on the B cell targets. The CD16DRI of KTR1 (CD16DRI: 45) was greater than that observed in response to the Rituximab (CD16DRI:19, **A**). **(D)** The CD16 DRI of NK cells was evaluated in response to the serum collected at time of ABMR diagnosis in a second KTR (KTR 2, **Table 5**) with detectable levels of DSA recognizing the HLA-DQ7 (MFI: 9,000) expressed on the B cell targets. The CD16DRI of KTR1 (CD16DRI: 30) was greater than that observed in response to the Rituximab (CD16DRI:19, **A**). **(E)** The CD16 DRI of NK cells was evaluated in response to the serum collected at M3 (time of acute rejection) in a second LTR (LTR 17, **Table 5**) with detectable levels of DSA recognizing the HLA- DQ7 (MFI: 13,400) expressed on the B cell targets. Non-immunized serum (DSA-negative) collected from LTR 17 at D0 was used as the reference baseline CD16 MFI value to calculate the CD16DRI (CD16DRI = 1). The MFI DSA of LTR 17 (MFI: 13,400) was similar to the MFI DSA of ABMR KTR 1 serum as illustrated in **(C)**. **(F)** The CD16 DRI of NK cells was evaluated in response to the serum collected at M3 (time of acute rejection) in a third LTR (LTR 20, **Table 5**) with detectable levels of DSA recognizing the HLA- DQ7 (MFI DSA: 9,000) expressed on the B cell targets. The DSA-negative serum of LTR 20 collected at D0 was used as a baseline CD16 MFI value to calculate the CD16DRI (CD16DRI = 1.9). The MFI DSA of LTR 20 (MFI: 9,000) was similar to the MFI DSA of ABMR KTR 2 serum evaluated in **(D)**.

DSA-mediated lung allograft injury. CD16-dependent activation of NK cells in *FCGR3A* [158V/V] individuals that develop acute rejection may nevertheless be mediated by allo- or auto-antibodies that target non-HLA antigens and may not be revealed in the standardized NK-CHAT assay revealing CD16 cellular activation toward B lymphocyte cell targets. Several reports have indeed described ABMR lesions of the graft that occur in the absence of detectable levels of circulating DSA in the serum of kidney or heart transplant recipients. Antibodies directed against endothelial antigens or stress-induced antigens, such as vimentin, collagen V, Kα1 tubulin, AT1R, and MICA have also been reported in transplant recipients but the role of these non-HLA antibodies in the destruction and accelerated dysfunction of lung allograft remains poorly addressed (60). These reports have nevertheless raised interest in chronic injury resulting from humoral responses targeting non-HLA antigens, as these may be underestimated by the standard monitoring of patients' immunization status which is mainly restricted to the detection of anti-HLA alloantibodies (52). While the rate of acute rejection during the first year was previously identified as a risk factor

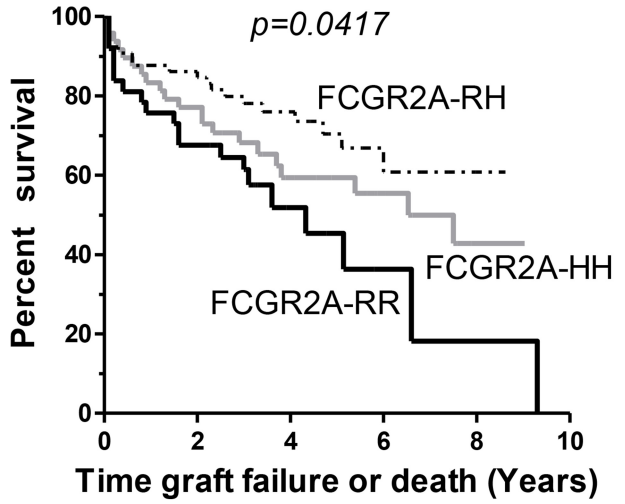


FIGURE 5 | Kaplan-Meir survival analysis of lung allograft survival stratified according to *FCGR2A* [131R/H] genotypes. The *FCGR2A* [131R/R] homozygous genotype (solid black line, $n = 39$) is associated with lower survival rates in LTRs when compared to *FCGR2A* [131H/R] (gray line, $n = 68$) or the *FCGR2A* [131H/H] (dashed line, $n = 51$).

for CLAD occurrence, occurrence of acute rejection in the first trimester could not be associated with an enhanced risk of developing chronic rejection nor with patient or graft survival in the present cohort. The F allelic variant of CD16 with low affinity for the Fc fragment of IgG was associated with the early development during the first month post-LTx of DSA that persist at M3. Persistence of DSA at M3 was thus less frequent in *FCGR3A* [158V/V] LTRs and was shown to be associated with lower survival times in LTR.

Our observations also identify a link between the presence of circulating DSA at M3 and the *FCGR2A* [131R/R] genotype, thus suggesting that FCGR2 polymorphisms may actually be associated with the persistence of harmful DSA at M3 rather than in the development of anti-HLA antibodies *per se*. The *FCGR2A* [131R/R] genotype was reported to be associated with shorter allograft survival in immunized kidney transplant recipients (KTR) (61, 62). We find that, independently of the risk associated with the *FCGR2A* [131R/R] genotype, detection and persistence of DSA at M3 constitute independent predictors of the adverse clinical composite outcome comprising CLAD or the patient's death. The persistence of DSA has been reported as a risk factor linked to BOS and to LTR death (16). A recent report showed that a majority of patients who were positive for *de novo* DSA during the first year after LTx developed BOS and were at higher risk of graft failure or death (63). In line with these reports, our study suggests that, independently of the presence of the susceptible *FCGR2A* [131R/R] genotype, the presence at M1 of DSA with high affinity for donor antigens (MFI DSA M1 > 18,750) can be identified as a risk factor associated with lower survival of LTRs.

The role of the complement-dependent pathogenicity of DSA is less well-documented in the lung transplant setting (19, 20). In a murine model of BOS, complement activation by antibodies to HLA class I was not required for the development of obliterative airway disease (OAD) that is similar to BOS in human LTx. Interestingly, in this study, at 90 days after LTx, only one out of 5 BOS patients had C1q DSA detected by SAFB whereas 3 out of 11 stable patients had C1q DSA. However, in our study, C1q DSA detected at M1 and M3 were mostly directed against HLA class II antigenic targets (90%) and do not appear as major contributors associated with the development of CLAD.

Although this is a limitation of the study, we cannot exclude the idea that auto-antibodies that target non-HLA antigens which were associated with the development of DSA, such as autoantibodies against K-α1 tubulin (K-α1T) and collagen V (ColV) (64), can participate in the chronic FcR-dependent reaction of recipient cells toward the lung allograft. This is supported by studies that report that development of col (V)-specific TH-17 cells may contribute to the pathogenesis of BOS (25, 59). Indeed, our standardized NK-CHAT evaluation of the DSA induced NK-cell activation was conducted toward B cell lines that express cognate HLA alloantigens. As B cells may not be relevant to evaluate the deleterious impact of non-HLA alloantibodies toward the lung allograft, this is a limit that prompts further studies that uses serum-coated lung epithelial or endothelial cells targets to evaluate NK cell ADCC.

FCGR2A [131R/H] is considered to be a heritable risk factor for a variety of infectious and inflammatory autoimmune diseases, including systemic lupus erythematosus, rheumatoid arthritis, malaria, multiple sclerosis, and anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic auto-antibody positive systemic vasculitis (65). The CD32 membrane receptor is expressed by a variety of immune cells that orchestrate the humoral immune response to pathogens, including B-lymphocytes, natural killer cells, macrophages, mast cells, and neutrophils. Its capacity to recognize IgGs bound to pathogens or infected cells has a protective effect against infections. While the *FCGR2A* allelic isoforms exhibit similar affinity for IgG1, the *FCGR2A* [131H/H] is the only FcγR variant that recognizes IgG2 subclasses, thus suggesting that the capacity to sense IgG2 antibodies may lead to impairment of pathogen surveillance in patients that lack the H allele. This SNP has been shown to play a role in the susceptibility to bacterial infections as *FCGR2A* [131H/H] individuals have greater potential to mediate IgG2-dependent bacterial phagocytosis than patients genotyped as *FCGR2A* [131R/R]. A distinct SNP (rs12746613) within the *FCGR2A* gene was previously associated with a higher risk of respiratory infections and mortality after LTx, but this variant was not associated with the risk of developing CLAD (34). Unlike other studies, our analysis of the present LTR cohort did not reveal any significant association between *FCGR2A* [131R/H] and occurrence of respiratory infections or the number of infection-related deaths. This discrepancy may relate to preventive and curative treatment of bacterial infections that differ between the transplantation centers. It may also reflect a complex interaction of these FCGR genotypes that encourages the overall survival of LTR for patients that have better capacities to thwart infections and overcome early acute rejection events. The observed finding of a inverse link between the *FCGR2A* [131R/R] susceptibility genotype and presence of the FCGR3A-V allele encoding the

TABLE 6 | Univariate analysis and multivariate Cox regression analysis of variables associated with graft loss and patient death post-LTx.

Covariables	Univariate analysis *p-value*	Hazard ratio	Std. Err.	z	P>z	(95% Conf.interval)		
Death, All causes, *n* = 64								
FCGR2A [131R/R]	0.114	**1.8**	**0.511**	**1.99**	**0.047**	**1.008**	**–**	**3.121**
Native Lung Disease: Cystic Fibrosis	**0.048**	**0.5**	**0.53**	**−2.25**	**0.024**	**0.278**	**–**	**0.915**
MFI DSA M1 > 18,750 (75 percentile)	0.109	**2.7**	**1.123**	**2.36**	**0.018**	**1.184**	**–**	**6.093**
Graft loss or LTR death, *n* = 68								
FCGR2A [131R/R]	**0.052**	**1.85**	**0.552**	**1.99**	**0.047**	**1.008**	**–**	**3.392**
MFI DSA M1 > 18,750 (75 percentile)	0.166	**2.8**	**1.259**	**2.29**	**0.022**	**1.159**	**–**	**6.759**
RAS	**0.009**	**2.8**	**1.385**	**2.08**	**0.037**	**1.062**	**–**	**7.384**
Native Lung Disease: Cystic Fibrosis	**0.034**	0.53	0.181	−1.86	0.063	0.272	–	1.034
DSA at M1 persisting at M3	0.153	1.37	0.550	0.78	0.436	0.622	–	3.009
Bilateral Lung Transplant	0.161	0.92	0.319	−0.24	0.814	0.467	–	1.818

Covariables (risk covariables) used to explain the Lung transplant outcome primary variable (Death all cause or Graft loss/death) are listed on the left column. The bold text refers to covariables that retained independent significant p-values in multivariate cox regression models.

CD16 receptor variant with higher affinity for the IgG Fc fragment in LTRs, may in part explain a lack of association of the FcCR3A-VV genotype with DSA- mediated chronic lung allograft dysfunction. In this study, the presence of the *FCGR2A* [131H/H] was observed to be strongly associated with the presence of the "high IgG1 responder" *FCGR3A* [158V/V] genotype, and such linkage disequilibrium may in part explain how this intricate distribution of susceptible and protective FCR SNPs may participate in the complex tuning of the host immune response to early infectious and humoral challenges and may be associated with enhanced survival and lower rates of CLAD in patients who have the protective *FCGR2A* [131H/R or H/H] genotype, notably in female LTRs.

In addition to this protective role against pathogens, the SNP dependent affinity of CD32 for the Fc fragment of IgG and/or CRP ligands was also identified as promoting inflammation. CD32-dependent triggering of immune cells is in part conditioned by the polymorphism and the expression profile of this functional receptor at the surface of immune cells. As is expressed by most leukocytes/macrophages that infiltrate the lung graft, *FCGR2A* [131R/H] could also influence the acquisition of an inflammatory-activated profile that favors tissue recruitment of activated lymphocytes to the lung (66). Interestingly, the *FCGR2A* [131R/R] susceptible genotype identified in this study has been associated with higher CRP binding avidity for the CD32 receptor expressed at the surface of monocytes and neutrophils.

Considering the growing evidence of the key role of CRP as an inflammatory mediator involved in the development of atherosclerosis and endothelial dysfunction, it is expected that CRP may be more powerful in triggering the pro-inflammatory function of CD32-expressing cell subsets such as platelets, endothelial cells, monocytes, and leukocytes in *FCGR2A* [131R/R] LTRs.

In conclusion, these data highlight that *FCGR2A* and *FCGR3A* polymorphisms constitute predisposing factors that are associated with the outcome of lung allografts. This study suggests that the combined assessment of the FCGR genotype and CRP or IgG ligands is thus an intriguing prospect to further decipher the complex mechanisms that shape the alloimmune and inflammatory responses in response to infectious and humoral threats. As shown in other organ transplant settings, our study indicates FCGR genotyping may favor early stratification of patients at risk and may create new perspectives to adapt personalized preventive and therapeutic approaches to prevent adverse outcomes of lung transplants.

DATA AVAILABILITY

The raw data supporting the conclusions of this manuscript will be made available by the authors, without undue reservation, to any qualified researcher.

ETHICS STATEMENT

All patients from the French cohort (COLT, Cohort in Lung Transplantation, l'Institut du Thorax, INSERM UMR1087/CNRS UMR 6291, CNIL 911142) were recruited in this study and gave their written informed consent to participate to the study in accordance with the Declaration of Helsinki. A group of 184 healthy unrelated of volunteer French bone marrow donors were also recruited to constitute a control cohort allowing analysis of FcγR genotype. Blood donations were collected in the Etablissement Francais du Sang, in accordance with BSL-2 practices. A medical interview was carried out prior to blood donation to exclude donors with medical contraindications. This study was carried out in accordance with the French Public Health Code (art L1221-1), approved by institutional ethics committee and conducted in compliance with the Good Clinical Practice Guidelines, declaration of Helsinki and Istanbul.

AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

CP and PPa designed and coordinated the study, analyzed the data, and wrote the paper. PPe, LL, and JD performed experiments. AL contributed to the methodological and statistical analysis. MP, AB, FD-G, and JC contributed to the research design. PT and MR-G contributed to the collection of patient material and to the clinical aspects of the study.

FUNDING

This work was supported in part by Vaincre la mucoviscidose through TP1008 funding and the *Gregory Lemarchal* association.

REFERENCES

1. Chambers DC, Yusen RD, Cherikh WS, Goldfarb SB, Kucheryavaya AY, Khusch K, et al. The registry of the international society for heart and lung transplantation: thirty-fourth adult lung and heart-lung transplantation report-2017; focus theme: allograft ischemic time. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. (2017) 36:1047–59. doi: 10.1016/j.healun.2017.07.016
2. Thabut G, Mal H. Outcomes after lung transplantation. *J Thorac Dis*. (2017) 9:2684–91. doi: 10.21037/jtd.2017.07.85
3. Brugiere O, Thabut G, Krawice-Radanne I, Rizzo R, Dauriat G, Danel C, et al. Role of HLA-G as a predictive marker of low risk of chronic rejection in lung transplant recipients: a clinical prospective study. *Am J Transplant*. (2015) 15:461–71. doi: 10.1111/ajt.12977
4. Verleden SE, Vos R, Vanaudenaerde BM, Verleden GM. Chronic lung allograft dysfunction phenotypes and treatment. *J Thorac Dis*. (2017) 9:2650–9. doi: 10.21037/jtd.2017.07.81
5. Di Cristofaro J, Pelardy M, Loundou A, Basire A, Gomez C, Chiaroni J, et al. HLA-E()01:03 allele in lung transplant recipients correlates with higher chronic lung allograft dysfunction occurrence. *J Immunol Res*. (2016) 2016:1910852. doi: 10.1155/2016/1910852
6. Di Cristofaro J, Reynaud-Gaubert M, Carlini F, Roubertoux P, Loundou A, Basire A, et al. HLA-G*01:04 approximately UTR3 recipient correlates with lower survival and higher frequency of chronic rejection after lung transplantation. *Am J Transplant*. (2015) 15:2413–20. doi: 10.1111/ajt.13305
7. Gregson AL. Infectious triggers of chronic lung allograft dysfunction. *Curr Infect Dis Rep*. (2016) 18:21. doi: 10.1007/s11908-016-0529-6
8. Ruttens D, Vandermeulen E, Verleden SE, Bellon H, Vos R, Van Raemdonck DE, et al. Role of genetics in lung transplant complications. *Ann Med*. (2015) 47:106–15. doi: 10.3109/07853890.2015.1004359
9. Agbor-Enoh S, Jackson AM, Tunc I, Berry GJ, Cochrane A, Grimm D, et al. Late manifestation of alloantibody-associated injury and clinical pulmonary antibody-mediated rejection: evidence from cell-free DNA analysis. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. (2018) 37:925–32. doi: 10.1016/j.healun.2018.01.1305
10. Levine DJ, Glanville AR, Aboyoun C, Belperio J, Benden C, Berry GJ, et al. Antibody-mediated rejection of the lung: a consensus report of the International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. (2016) 35:397–406. doi: 10.1016/j.healun.2016.01.1223
11. Chin N, Paraskeva M, Paul E, Cantwell L, Levvey B, Williams T, et al. Comparative analysis of how immune sensitization is defined prior to lung transplantation. *Hum Immunol*. (2015) 76:711–6. doi: 10.1016/j.humimm.2015.09.025
12. Zazueta OE, Preston SE, Moniodis A, Fried S, Kim M, Townsend K, et al. The presence of pretransplant HLA antibodies does not impact the development of chronic lung allograft dysfunction or CLAD-related death. *Transplantation*. (2017) 101:2207–12. doi: 10.1097/TP.0000000000001494
13. Reinsmoen NL, Mirocha J, Ensor CR, Marrari M, Chaux G, Levine DJ, et al. A 3-center study reveals new insights into the impact of non-HLA antibodies on lung transplantation outcome. *Transplantation*. (2017) 101:1215–21. doi: 10.1097/TP.0000000000001389
14. Le Pavec J, Suberbielle C, Lamrani L, Feuillet S, Savale L, Dorfmuller P, et al. *De-novo* donor-specific anti-HLA antibodies 30 days after lung transplantation are associated with a worse outcome. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. (2016) 35:1067–77. doi: 10.1016/j.healun.2016.05.020
15. Lobo LJ, Aris RM, Schmitz J, Neuringer IP. Donor-specific antibodies are associated with antibody-mediated rejection, acute cellular rejection, bronchiolitis obliterans syndrome, and cystic fibrosis after lung transplantation. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. (2013) 32:70–7. doi: 10.1016/j.healun.2012.10.007
16. Roux A, Bendib Le Lan I, Holifanjaniaina S, Thomas KA, Picard C, Grenet D., et al. Characteristics of donor-specific antibodies associated with antibody-mediated rejection in lung transplantation. *Front Med*. (2017) 4:155. doi: 10.3389/fmed.2017.00155
17. Verleden SE, Vanaudenaerde BM, Emonds MP, Van Raemdonck DE, Neyrinck AP, Verleden GM, et al. Donor-specific and -nonspecific HLA antibodies and outcome post lung transplantation. *Eur Respir J*. (2017) 50:1701248. doi: 10.1183/13993003.01248-2017
18. Tikkanen JM, Singer LG, Kim SJ, Li Y, Binnie M, Chaparro C, et al. *De novo* DQ donor-specific antibodies are associated with chronic lung allograft dysfunction after lung transplantation. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. (2016) 194:596–606. doi: 10.1164/rccm.201509-1857OC
19. Visentin J, Chartier A, Massara L, Linares G, Guidicelli G, Blanchard E, et al. Lung intragraft donor-specific antibodies as a risk factor for graft loss. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. (2016) 35:1418–26. doi: 10.1016/j.healun.2016.06.010
20. Vandermeulen E, Lammertyn E, Verleden SE, Ruttens D, Bellon H, Ricciardi M, et al. Immunological diversity in phenotypes of chronic lung allograft dysfunction: a comprehensive immunohistochemical analysis. *Transpl Int*. (2017) 30:134–43. doi: 10.1111/tri.12882
21. Kulkarni HS, Bemiss BC, Hachem RR. Antibody-mediated rejection in lung transplantation. *Curr Transplant Rep*. (2015) 2:316–23. doi: 10.1007/s40472-015-0074-5
22. Roden AC, Maleszewski JJ, Yi ES, Jenkins SM, Gandhi MJ, Scott JP, et al. Reproducibility of Complement 4d deposition by immunofluorescence and immunohistochemistry in lung allograft biopsies. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. (2014) 33:1223–32. doi: 10.1016/j.healun.2014.06.006
23. Hachem RR, Kamoun M, Budev MM, Askar M, Ahya VN, Lee JC, et al. Human leukocyte antigens antibodies after lung transplantation: primary results of the HALT study. *Am J Transplant*. (2018) 18:2285–94. doi: 10.1111/ajt.14893
24. Kozlowski T, Weimer ET, Andreoni K, Schmitz J. C1q test for identification of sensitized liver recipients at risk of early acute antibody-mediated rejection. *Ann Transplant*. (2017) 22:518–23. doi: 10.12659/AOT.904867
25. Kauke T, Oberhauser C, Lin V, Coenen M, Fischereder M, Dick A, et al. *De novo* donor-specific anti-HLA antibodies after kidney transplantation are associated with impaired graft outcome independently of their C1q-binding ability. *Transpl Int*. (2017) 30:360–70. doi: 10.1111/tri.12887
26. Wallace WD, Li N, Andersen CB, Arrossi AV, Askar M, Berry GJ, et al. Banff study of pathologic changes in lung allograft biopsy specimens with donor-specific antibodies. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. (2016) 35:40–8. doi: 10.1016/j.healun.2015.08.021
27. Berry GJ, Burke MM, Andersen C, Bruneval P, Fedrigo M, Fishbein MC, et al. The 2013 International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation Working Formulation for the standardization of nomenclature in the pathologic diagnosis of antibody-mediated rejection in heart transplantation. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. (2013) 32:1147–62. doi: 10.1016/j.healun.2013.08.011
28. Stewart S, Fishbein MC, Snell GI, Berry GJ, Boehler A, Burke MM, et al. Revision of the 1996 working formulation for the standardization of nomenclature in the diagnosis of lung rejection. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. (2007) 26:1229–42. doi: 10.1016/j.healun.2007.10.017
29. Brugiere O, Roux A, Le Pavec J, Sroussi D, Parquin F, Pradere P, et al. Role of C1q-binding anti-HLA antibodies as a predictor of lung allograft outcome. *Eur Respir J*. (2018) 52:1701898. doi: 10.1183/13993003.01898-2017
30. Das LK, Ide K, Tanaka A, Morimoto H, Shimizu S, Tanimine N, et al. Fc-gamma receptor 3A polymorphism predicts the incidence of urinary tract infection in kidney-transplant recipients. *Hum Immunol*. (2017) 78:357–62. doi: 10.1016/j.humimm.2017.03.006
31. Shimizu S, Tanaka Y, Tazawa H, Verma S, Onoe T, Ishiyama K, et al. Fc-gamma receptor polymorphisms predispose patients to infectious complications after liver transplantation. *Am J Transplant*. (2016) 16:625–33. doi: 10.1111/ajt.13492

32. Alsaeed M, Husain S. Infections in heart and lung transplant recipients. *Crit Care Clin*. (2019) 35:75–93. doi: 10.1016/j.ccc.2018.08.010
33. Nosotti M, Tarsia P, Morlacchi LC. Infections after lung transplantation. *J Thorac Dis*. (2018) 10:3849–68. doi: 10.21037/jtd.2018.05.204
34. Sarmiento E, Cifrian J, Calahorra L, Bravo C, Lopez S, Laporta R, et al. Monitoring of early humoral immunity to identify lung recipients at risk for development of serious infections: a multicenter prospective study. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. (2018) 37:1001–12. doi: 10.1016/j.healun.2018.04.001
35. Castro-Dopico T, Clatworthy MR. Fcgamma receptors in solid organ transplantation. *Curr Transplant Rep*. (2016) 3:284–93. doi: 10.1007/s40472-016-0116-7
36. Ivan E, Colovai AI. Human Fc receptors: critical targets in the treatment of autoimmune diseases and transplant rejections. *Hum Immunol*. (2006) 67:479–91. doi: 10.1016/j.humimm.2005.12.001
37. Meletiadis J, Walsh TJ, Choi EH, Pappas PG, Ennis D, Douglas J, et al. Study of common functional genetic polymorphisms of FCGR2A, 3A and 3B genes and the risk for cryptococcosis in HIV-uninfected patients. *Med Mycol*. (2007) 45:513–8. doi: 10.1080/13693780701390140
38. Ruttens D, Verleden SE, Goeminne PC, Vandermeulen E, Wauters E, Cox B, et al. Genetic variation in immunoglobulin G receptor affects survival after lung transplantation. *Am J Transplant*. (2014) 14:1672–7. doi: 10.1111/ajt.12745
39. De Rose V, Arduino C, Cappello N, Piana R, Salmin P, Bardessono M, et al. Fcgamma receptor IIA genotype and susceptibility to *P. aeruginosa* infection in patients with cystic fibrosis. *Eur J Hum Genet*. (2005) 13:96–101. doi: 10.1038/sj.ejhg.5201285
40. Bougle A, Max A, Mongardon N, Grimaldi D, Pene F, Rousseau C, et al. Protective effects of FCGR2A polymorphism in invasive pneumococcal diseases. *Chest*. (2012) 142:1474–81. doi: 10.1378/chest.11-2516
41. Halloran PF, Venner JM, Madill-Thomsen KS, Einecke G, Parkes MD, Hidalgo LG, et al. Review: the transcripts associated with organ allograft rejection. *Am J Transplant*. (2018) 18:785–95. doi: 10.1111/ajt.14600
42. Loupy AJ, Duong Van Huyen P, Hidalgo L, Reeve J, Racape M, Aubert O, et al. Gene expression profiling for the identification and classification of antibody-mediated heart rejection. *Circulation*. (2017) 135:917–35. doi: 10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.116.022907
43. Roux A, Levine DJ, Zeevi A, Hachem R, Halloran K, Halloran PF, et al. Banff lung report: current knowledge and future research perspectives for diagnosis and treatment of pulmonary antibody-mediated rejection (AMR). *Am J Transplant*. (2018) 19:21–31. doi: 10.1111/ajt.14990
44. Dai HS, Griffin N, Bolyard C, Mao HC, Zhang J, Cripe TP, et al. The Fc domain of immunoglobulin is sufficient to bridge NK cells with virally infected cells. *Immunity*. (2017) 47, 159–170.e10. doi: 10.1016/j.immuni.2017.06.019
45. Hatjiharissi E, Xu L, Santos DD, Hunter ZR, Ciccarelli BT, Verselis S, et al. Increased natural killer cell expression of CD16, augmented binding and ADCC activity to rituximab among individuals expressing the Fc{gamma}RIIIa-158 V/V and V/F polymorphism. *Blood*. (2007) 110:2561–4. doi: 10.1182/blood-2007-01-070656
46. Hussain K, Hargreaves CE, Rowley TF, Sopp JM, Latham KV, Bhatta P, et al. Impact of human FcgammaR gene polymorphisms on IgG-triggered cytokine release: Critical importance of cell assay. *Format Front Immunol*. (2019) 10:390. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00390
47. Perez-Romero CA, Sanchez IP, Naranjo-Piedrahita L, Orrego-Arango JC, Muskus-Lopez CE, Rojas-Montoya W, et al. Frequency analysis of the g.7081T>G/A and g.10872T>G polymorphisms in the FCGR3A gene (CD16A) using nested PCR and their functional specific effects. *Genes Immun*. (2019) 20:39–45. doi: 10.1038/s41435-017-0001-0
48. Paul P, Picard C, Sampol E, Lyonnet L, Di Cristofaro J, Paul-Delvaux L, et al. Genetic and functional profiling of CD16-dependent natural killer activation identifies patients at higher risk of cardiac allograft vasculopathy. *Circulation*. (2018) 137:1049–59. doi: 10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.117.030435
49. Arnold ML, Kainz A, Hidalgo LG, Eskandary F, Kozakowski N, Wahrmann M, et al. Functional Fc gamma receptor gene polymorphisms and donor-specific antibody-triggered microcirculation inflammation. *Am J Transplant*. (2018) 18:2261–73. doi: 10.1111/ajt.14710
50. Legris T, Picard C, Todorova D, Lyonnet L, Laporte C, Dumoulin C, et al. Antibody-dependent NK cell activation is associated with late kidney allograft dysfunction and the complement-independent alloreactive potential of donor-specific antibodies. *Front Immunol*. (2016) 7:288. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2016.00288
51. Sablik KA, Litjens NHR, Klepper M, Betjes MGH. Increased CD16 expression on NK cells is indicative of antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity in chronic-active antibody-mediated rejection. *Transpl Immunol*. (2019) 54:52–8. doi: 10.1016/j.trim.2019.02.005
52. Delville M, Charreau B, Rabant M, Legendre C, Anglicheau D. Pathogenesis of non-HLA antibodies in solid organ transplantation: where do we stand? *Hum Immunol*. (2016) 77:1055–62. doi: 10.1016/j.humimm.2016.05.021
53. Venner JM, Hidalgo LG, Famulski KS, Chang J, Halloran PF. The molecular landscape of antibody-mediated kidney transplant rejection: evidence for NK involvement through CD16a Fc receptors. *Am J Transplant*. (2015) 15:1336–48. doi: 10.1111/ajt.13115
54. Yazdani S, Callemeyn J, Gazut S, Lerut E, de Loor H, Wevers M, et al. Natural killer cell infiltration is discriminative for antibody-mediated rejection and predicts outcome after kidney transplantation. *Kidney Int*. (2018) 95:188–98. doi: 10.1016/j.kint.2018.08.027
55. Verleden GM, Raghu G, Meyer KC, Glanville AR, Corris P. A new classification system for chronic lung allograft dysfunction. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. (2014) 33:127–33. doi: 10.1016/j.healun.2013.10.022
56. Kapila A, Baz MA, Valentine VG, Bhorade SM. Reliability of diagnostic criteria for bronchiolitis obliterans syndrome after lung transplantation: a survey. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. (2015) 34:65–74. doi: 10.1016/j.healun.2014.09.029
57. Pedron BV, Guerin-El Khourouj V, Dalle JH, Ouachee-Chardin M, Yakouben K, Corroyez F, et al. Contribution of HLA-A/B/C/DRB1/DQB1 common haplotypes to donor search outcome in unrelated hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. *Biol Blood Marrow Transplant*. (2011) 17:1612–8. doi: 10.1016/j.bbmt.2011.03.009
58. Di Cristofaro J, Buhler S, Frassati C, Basire A, Galicher V, Baier C, et al. Linkage disequilibrium between HLA-G*0104 and HLA-E*0103 alleles in Tswa Pygmies. *Tissue Antigens*. (2011) 77:193–200. doi: 10.1111/j.1399-0039.2010.01599.x
59. Clerc A, Reynaud Q, Durupt S, Chapuis-Cellier C, Nove-Josserand R, Durieu I, et al. Elevated IgG4 serum levels in patients with cystic fibrosis. *PLoS ONE*. (2017) 12:e0181888. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0181888
60. Yousem SA, Zeevi A. The histopathology of lung allograft dysfunction associated with the development of donor-specific HLA alloantibodies. *Am J Surg Pathol*. (2012) 36:987–92. doi: 10.1097/PAS.0b013e31825197ae
61. Yuan FF, Watson N, Sullivan JS, Biffin S, Moses J, Geczy AF, et al. Association of Fc gamma receptor IIA polymorphisms with acute renal-allograft rejection. *Transplantation*. (2004) 78:766–9. doi: 10.1097/01.TP.0000132560.77496.CB
62. Arnold ML, Fuernrohr BG, Weiss KM, Harre U, Wiesener MS, Spriewald BM. Association of a coding polymorphism in Fc gamma receptor 2A and graft survival in re-transplant candidates. *Hum Immunol*. (2015) 76:759–64. doi: 10.1016/j.humimm.2015.09.034
63. Kauke T, Kneidinger N, Martin B, Dick A, Schneider C, Schramm R, et al. Bronchiolitis obliterans syndrome due to donor-specific HLA-antibodies. *Tissue Antigens*. (2015) 86:178–85. doi: 10.1111/tan.12626
64. Saini D, Weber J, Ramachandran S, Phelan D, Tiriveedhi V, Liu M, et al. Alloimmunity-induced autoimmunity as a potential mechanism in the pathogenesis of chronic rejection of human lung allografts. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. (2011) 30:624–31. doi: 10.1016/j.healun.2011.01.708
65. Zhang C, Wang W, Zhang H, Wei L, Guo S. Association of FCGR2A rs1801274 polymorphism with susceptibility to autoimmune diseases: a meta-analysis. *Oncotarget*. (2016) 7:39436–43. doi: 10.18632/oncotarget.9831
66. Fildes JE, Yonan N, Tunstall K, Walker AH, Griffiths-Davies L, Bishop P, et al. Natural killer cells in peripheral blood and lung tissue are associated with chronic rejection after lung transplantation. *J Heart Lung Transplant*. (2008) 27:203–7. doi: 10.1016/j.healun.2007.11.571

Conflict of Interest Statement: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

REVIEW
published: 25 June 2019
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.01457

Influenza and Antibody-Dependent Cellular Cytotoxicity

Tarra A. Von Holle[1] *and M. Anthony Moody*[1,2,3]*

[1] Duke University Human Vaccine Institute, Duke University School of Medicine, Durham, NC, United States, [2] Department of Immunology, Duke University School of Medicine, Durham, NC, United States, [3] Department of Pediatrics, Duke University School of Medicine, Durham, NC, United States

Despite the availability of yearly vaccinations, influenza continues to cause seasonal, and pandemic rises in illness and death. An error prone replication mechanism results in antigenic drift and viral escape from immune pressure, and recombination results in antigenic shift that can rapidly move through populations that lack immunity to newly emergent strains. The development of a "universal" vaccine is a high priority and many strategies have been proposed, but our current understanding of influenza immunity is incomplete making the development of better influenza vaccines challenging. Influenza immunity has traditionally been measured by neutralization of virions and hemagglutination inhibition, but in recent years there has been a growing appreciation of other responses that can contribute to protection such as antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) that can kill influenza-infected cells. ADCC has been shown to provide cross-strain protection and to assist in viral clearance, making it an attractive target for "universal" vaccine designs. Here we provide a brief overview of the current state of influenza research that leverages "the other end of the antibody."

Keywords: ADCC—antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity, influenza, antibodies, animal models, vaccine targets, mAb

OPEN ACCESS

Edited by:
Gabriella Scarlatti,
San Raffaele Hospital (IRCCS), Italy

Reviewed by:
Mirella Salvatore,
Weill Cornell Medicine, United States
David Pejoski,
Université de Genève, Switzerland

***Correspondence:**
M. Anthony Moody
moody007@mc.duke.edu

Specialty section:
This article was submitted to Viral Immunology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology

Received: *25 March 2019*
Accepted: *10 June 2019*
Published: *25 June 2019*

Citation:
Von Holle TA and Moody MA (2019) Influenza and Antibody-Dependent Cellular Cytotoxicity. Front. Immunol. 10:1457. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.01457

INTRODUCTION

Influenza causes 3–5 million cases of severe illness and 290,000–650,000 deaths annually (1). Influenza is caused by orthomyxoviruses that have a segmented, negative-strand RNA genome that encodes its own RNA-dependent RNA polymerase that results in ∼1 error per replicated genome (2–4). Accumulating errors cause small changes over time that allow viral escape (5, 6), a process called antigenic drift. Reassorting of the segmented influenza genome can produce novel influenza strains to which there is no preexisting immunity in the human population, a process called antigenic shift, and it is thought this mechanism produced the 1918, 1957, and 1968 pandemics (7).

The primary means of combatting both seasonal and pandemic influenza are quarantine and isolation (8), strict hygiene (9), and vaccination (10–12). Influenza vaccines were developed starting in the 1940s (13–16), and seasonal vaccines now include multiple antigens either as inactivated or live-attenuated products (17–20). Selection of representative influenza strains requires the ongoing worldwide analysis of circulating influenza (21), leading to potential mismatch with low vaccine efficacy (22). Public health leaders have called for the development of "universal" influenza vaccines (23), but at this time it is not clear what kinds of immunity such a vaccine should elicit.

Vaccines can prevent symptomatic disease, reduce disease duration, and reduce viral shedding, and infectivity to other persons. To accomplish these, a vaccine can elicit responses that inhibit

influenza virions and/or enhance the clearance of influenza-infected cells. The influenza virion has three virally-encoded surface antigens (**Figure 1A**): a trimeric glycoprotein hemagglutinin (HA) that binds to sialic acid on cell surface receptors promoting virion endocytosis followed by fusion of viral and host cell membranes, a tetrameric neuraminidase (NA) that cleaves sialic acid to release virions from infected cells, and enhance passage through respiratory mucins, and a proton channel (M2 matrix) that helps the release of the viral genome after acidification in endocytic vacuoles. These proteins are present in most split-virus vaccine products (24), but the exact contribution of each of these, or of other influenza proteins that are not surface expressed, to vaccine efficacy is unclear.

ADCC ACTIVITY AGAINST INFLUENZA

Antibody specificity is mediated by binding of Fab (fragment antigen binding) domains to their antigenic target, while the other end of the antibody is a constant region, the Fc (fragment crystallizable) domain, that provides a link between antibody recognition of infected cells and effector cells. NK cells, monocytes/macrophages, and neutrophils all have Fc-receptors (FcRs) on their surface, and the combination of both activating and inhibitory signals direct the immune response (25). In humans, NK cells are generally thought of as the primary effector for ADCC, but ADCC of influenza-infected cells has been demonstrated using neutrophils, monocytes, lymphocytes, and cord blood cells (26–28).

An increasing body of literature has demonstrated the possible protective role of non-neutralizing antibodies for pathogens as diverse as HIV-1 (29, 30), herpes simplex virus (31–33), Ebola (34, 35), and influenza (36–38). Influenza-infected cells can be recognized by antibodies that bind to proteins that play important roles within the viral life cycle. As noted above, HA initiates the viral life cycle by binding sialic acid and mediating viral entry into cells via fusion after receptor-mediated endocytosis (2). During this process, M2 matrix channels promote pH equilibration, a critical step in the release of the viral genome from the endosome (39). After influenza genome replication and protein synthesis, viral components are transferred to the plasma membrane where viral budding occurs. NA removes sialic acid from glycoproteins allowing the release of newly assembled virions from the surface of infected cells and preventing aggregation (2). HA has been the focus of most vaccine designs because HA evolves more rapidly than other antigens (40), but more conserved antigens like NA, M2, and nucleoprotein (NP) have also been considered attractive targets for vaccine designs. Antibodies against these other antigens do not appear to directly prevent infection but can target infected cells (19), and antibodies against all of these proteins have mediated killing of infected cells *in vitro* (**Figure 1B**).

Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) against influenza was described by Greenberg et al. (26) and ADCC activity can be mediated by multiple cell types (27, 28, 41) and arises after infection or vaccination (41–43). Most early work suggested that ADCC was primarily directed against HA (44), although the contribution of other antigens to ADCC could not be ruled out (43). Study of influenza-specific monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) have shown that antibodies directed against the globular head often lack breadth while those directed against the more conserved HA stem can recognize multiple strains and subtypes of HA (4). Both specificities of HA antibodies have mediated ADCC (**Figure 1B**) but antibodies with neutralization and hemagglutination inhibition (HAI) activity tend to be directed against the HA head domain (**Figure 1A**).

ADCC-mediating antibodies also target other proteins on the virus surface (**Figure 1B**). Murine mAbs against influenza B NA mediated ADCC and provided protection in mouse challenge (45), but whether this activity contributes significantly to human protection is not known. NA antibody titers have correlated with protection against influenza infection in humans (46–50), but NA responses have not been studied at the same level of molecular detail as HA responses (51). NA antibodies are thought to act by decorating infected cells thus making them targets for complement fixation and ADCC, and by inhibiting enzymatic activity and preventing virions from escaping respiratory mucins (19). NA is present in most vaccines derived from influenza virions (24), but few vaccine candidates focus on NA antigens and their relative contribution to protection is not well-quantified. There is growing interest in NA as a component vaccine-mediated protection, and the recent formation of the NAction! working group (51) is focused on filling key knowledge gaps.

M2 is a highly conserved antigen necessary for the virus life cycle (39) and a number of studies showed antibodies to M2 mediated ADCC and protected in mouse studies (36, 52, 53). M2 is present at low copy number on virions and may be occluded by the larger HA and NA proteins (19) (**Figure 1A**), and while vaccine candidates based on M2 have advanced to human clinical trials (54, 55), it is not yet known whether these approaches will provide broad cross-protection when tested in human efficacy trials.

Curiously, a protein that might not be expected on the surface of either virions or virus-infected cells has been shown to mediate ADCC *in vitro*. Influenza nucleoprotein (NP) is involved in replication and packaging of virus RNA segments into virions (56), but studies have shown that NP is surface expressed on infected cells (57, 58). Humans given seasonal vaccine demonstrated H7N9 cross-reactive ADCC activity that correlated with binding to NP (59). Antibodies against both NP and the internal RNA-binding and structural matrix 1 (M1) protein did not mediate ADCC against target cells expressing those specific antigens, but immune complexes of those proteins primed natural killer (NK) cells to secrete cytokines (60) (**Figure 1C**); the authors suggested such activity could contribute to an anti-viral environment. Whether these kinds of activities play an important role in cross-protection against human infection is not yet known.

ADCC IN MOUSE MODELS

The receptors and cell types important for human immune response may not have the same effect or use the same pathways

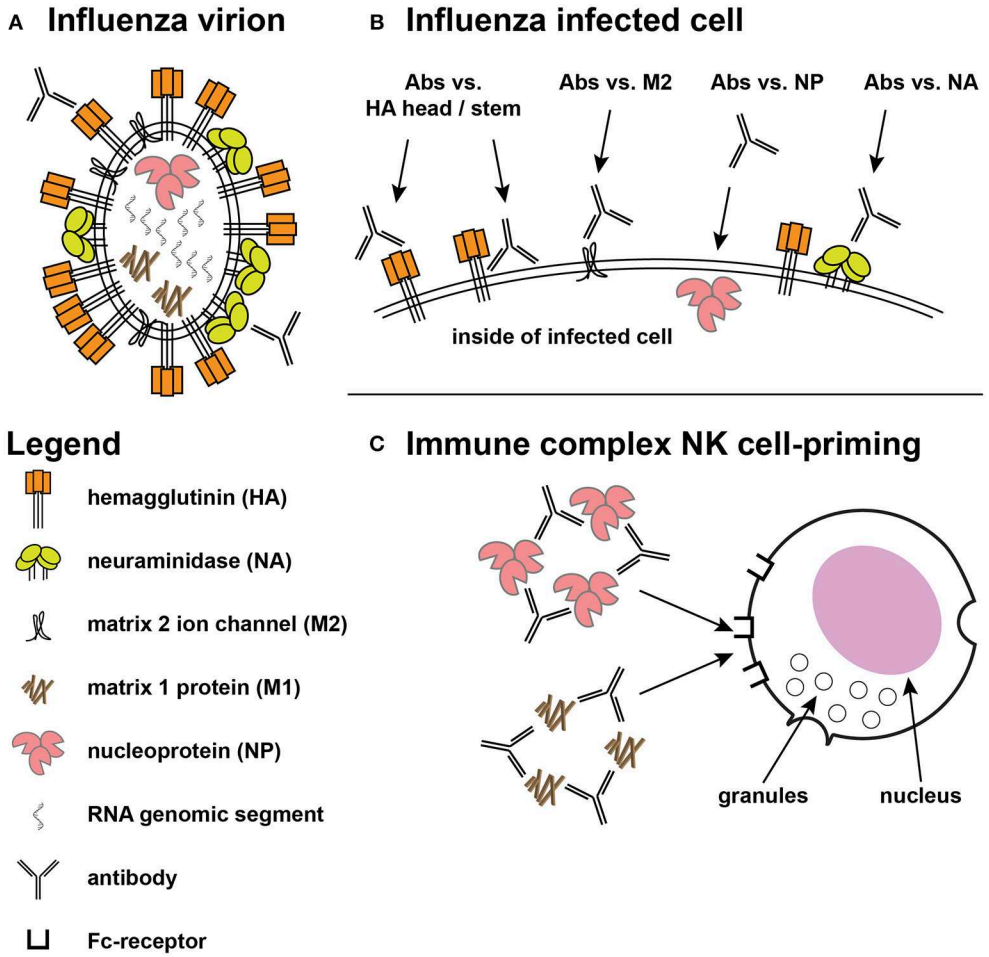


FIGURE 1 | Targets for protective influenza responses. **(A)** Influenza virion showing the tight packing of viral hemagglutinin (HA), neuraminidase (NA), and matrix 2 (M2) ion channels on the surface. Inside the virion are the 8 genomic segments, nucleoprotein (NP), and the structural matrix 1 (M1) protein. **(B)** The surface of an infected cell shows the same antigens spread out on the surface, providing access for ADCC-mediating antibodies directed at the HA head and stem, along with greater access to the M2 ion channel. Antibodies against NP have also shown ADCC activity. **(C)** Immune complexes of NP and M1 have been shown to prime NK cells to secrete cytokines.

in animal models. In fact, there are numerous differences among antibody isotypes and subclasses (61) in animal models typically used for immune studies, as well as in FcR sequences and cellular distributions (62), and such differences may result in species-specific mechanisms of ADCC activity against influenza.

With that caveat, mouse models have provided suggestive evidence for the kinds of immunity that might be protective in humans. DiLillo et al. administered human mAbs to transgenic mice that expressed human FcRs, and demonstrated that for both HA stem-directed antibodies (37) and HA head-directed antibodies (63) that Fc-FcR interactions were required for protection against lethal challenge. Interestingly, transgenic mice receiving neutralizing anti-HA and anti-NA antibodies were only protected against challenge if they were matched for Fc-Fc?R binding while strain specific anti-HA and anti-NA antibodies protected regardless of Fc-FcR matching (63). Similar studies of antibodies against M2 have also shown Fc-FcR dependence, with IgG1 M2-directed antibodies requiring matching FcRs to protect against lethal challenge (52, 53).

Wild-type mice have also demonstrated ADCC-mediating antibody protection. For example, murine antibodies generated against H7N9 influenza were protective, but ADCC-mediating antibodies required efficient Fc-FcR interaction to protect (64). Vaccination against H5N1 that elicited ADCC activity protected against lethal H5N8 challenge in mice (65), and protection against H7 influenza challenge also correlated with ADCC activity (66). Passive transfer of HA stem-specific human sera demonstrated protection against lethal challenge in a manner highly correlated with ADCC activity (67). Protection is not limited to HA-directed antibodies, as antibodies against influenza B NA also mediate ADCC and protect against lethal virus challenge (45).

However, not all mouse studies have suggested a protective effect of ADCC. Evaluation of candidate vaccines that targeted

specific epitopes on the HA head domain were capable of eliciting potent ADCC responses *in vitro*, but mice given these immunogens were more sensitive to lethal challenge (68, 69), and examination of lung tissue suggested damage caused by the immune response. Whether this kind of damage could occur in humans is not known.

OTHER NON-PRIMATE MODELS

Swine are susceptible to influenza and they are thought to be a key species in development of new strains by antigenic shift (70). Because of the major economic impact of swine influenza disease, vaccination is common and new vaccine candidates are tested in swine (71). Experimental infection models have been used to test swine for protection against challenge following vaccination (72) and as a model of enhanced influenza disease (73). Studies in this latter model have suggested that a lack of neutralizing activity against the challenge strain combined with ADCC-mediating antibodies can produce enhanced disease in swine (73, 74), suggesting that caution may be appropriate in the development of vaccines that do not elicit traditional correlates of influenza protection (75). Furthermore, differences between swine and human FcRs make direct measures of ADCC in swine challenging, and have confounded passive infusion studies of human antibodies (76). The swine model is important for improving our understanding of influenza pathogenesis, but it remains to be seen whether success or failure in the swine model will directly translate to human trials.

The ferret model may also provide insights into influenza immunity, although direct measures of ADCC activity in ferrets is also challenging. For example, immunization of ferrets to elicit HA stem-directed antibodies showed that ADCC in a reporter assay correlated with protection, though the assay used human FcRs due to the lack of ferret-specific reagents (77). Passive transfer of immune sera directed against the HA stem (78), infusion of ADCC-mediating mAbs (79), and immunization to induce ADCC-mediating antibodies (65) have all protected ferrets against heterologous influenza challenges. Unfortunately, the lack of ferret-specific reagents limits the depth of investigation possible at this time, and as with swine, it is not clear whether these studies will translate directly to human trials.

NON-HUMAN PRIMATE STUDIES

Non-human primate models have not traditionally been used for influenza research due to high cost and the low level of symptoms following experimental infection (80), but recently a number of studies have evaluated the protective capacity of ADCC in non-human primates. For example, protection was observed in rhesus macaques infected with a pre-pandemic H1N1 A/Kawasaki/173/2001 who were subsequently challenged with H1N1 A/California/04/2009; in this study ADCC activity correlated with control of the second H1N1 infection (81). Protection was also observed in a study of H5 immunization of rhesus macaques challenged with pandemic H1N1, and ADCC activity correlated with reduced viral shedding after infection (82). In cynomolgus macaques, vaccines that elicit ADCC-mediating antibodies have been shown to decrease shedding of influenza (83), and passive infusion of a human ADCC-mediating mAb protected against infection (84). However, given the differences between human and non-human primate Fc-FcR biology (85), it is not clear if non-human primate studies will be predictive of human study outcomes.

HUMAN STUDIES

Human studies have focused on examining people after natural infection, vaccination, and/or the isolation of human monoclonal antibodies. Natural infection studies have shown that influenza can imprint the immune system in a manner that provides protection against heterologous influenza exposure. For example, healthy adults and children in the US were found to have ADCC-mediating antibodies against H5N1 and H7N9 strains (86), despite the fact that those strains have not circulated in the US. Intravenous immune globulin, a product derived from plasma donation, contained ADCC-mediating antibodies that cross-reacted with multiple influenza strains; e.g., immune globulin collected from donors prior to the emergence of the 2009 pandemic strain was active against the newly emergent strain (87). During the last influenza pandemic a number of studies suggested that older adults were less likely to be infected by the newly emergent strain, and older persons were more likely to have ADCC-mediating antibodies against the 2009 H1N1 pandemic strain (88), suggesting that these responses may have contributed to the relative protection observed. However, such antibodies were not well correlated with protection in children (89, 90), indicating that *in vitro* activity alone may not provide an accurate correlate of efficacy.

ADCC-mediating antibodies that arise during severe infection may also correlate with outcomes. A study of seasonal and H7N9 human infections demonstrated that persons who did not survive infection were more likely to have low ADCC activity (91). It is not known whether ADCC-mediating antibodies being present prior to infection would have been protective.

Vaccine studies have examined the ability of different constructs to elicit cross-reactive ADCC-mediating antibodies. For example, seasonal vaccination of older adults indicated that they had strong boosting of ADCC activity, including activity against H5 and H7 strains (92). Similarly, a study of H7 vaccination found ADCC activity against many group 2 influenza strains (93), and H5 vaccination induced ADCC responses to multiple strains (94).

Testing of many of human-derived antibodies showed protection in mouse studies as described above and have helped define vaccine design targets. For example, antibodies against the vestigial esterase domain of H3 HA (95) or influenza B (96) mediate ADCC and block other viral activities, but whether such antibodies can be easily elicited by vaccination and protect is not known. Others have examined why HA head-directed antibodies are less efficient at mediating ADCC (97) or why antibodies that bind at or near the sialic acid receptor binding site of HA lack ADCC activity (98, 99). Data suggested that ADCC

activity against influenza-infected cells requires that sialic acid on NK cells must also bind HA. Several studies have identified possible vaccine targets on HA, including a pH-sensitive epitope on H7 HA (100), receptor binding site antibodies for influenza B (79), and the influenza B HA stem (101). Furthermore, recently isolated human antibodies against epitopes in the HA trimer interface provided protection in an Fc-dependent manner (38, 102), and such antibodies were elicited in animal models by vaccination (103). These studies suggest that probing the human immune system could identify additional targets for vaccine design.

Most human studies measure responses to influenza infection or vaccination, and some correlate those responses with epidemiologic data, but far fewer perform experimental infectious challenge to correlate a response with protection. In 2016, Jegaskanda et al. reported that high levels of pre-existing ADCC-mediating antibodies protected against experimental infection (104), suggesting that if ADCC activity is present prior to infection it can protect. However, it is not clear whether ADCC activity alone is protective, and as of this writing, there do not appear to be any reports of human challenge studies investigating the protective capacity of passively administered ADCC-mediating influenza antibodies. Essentially all humans over the age of 6 years have evidence of prior influenza infection (105), meaning that vaccination or passive infusion studies of ADCC-based protection in humans have to be interpreted in the light of prior immunity. Despite this, the studies described in this review and other work are leading to new vaccine designs, and it is hoped that one or more of these new designs will provide long-lasting protection to all people worldwide.

CONCLUSIONS

Influenza remains an important cause of human disease that often resists effective control by current vaccination strategies and there is a current push for the development of "universal vaccine" candidates. Antibody binding to Fc receptors with effector cell activation has been shown to protect in numerous animal models and harnessing this activity could be an important component of universal vaccine designs. ADCC and other activities based on the "other end of the antibody," in combination with traditional activities like neutralization, might be harnessed to contribute to protection from this ever-changing pathogen.

AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

TV wrote the first draft and participated in editing. MM edited the draft and prepared the final version.

FUNDING

This work was supported by NIH grant P01 AI120756.

REFERENCES

1. World Health Organization. *Influenza Update – 331*. (2018). Available online at: https://www.who.int/influenza/surveillance_monitoring/updates/latest_update_GIP_surveillance/en/ (accessed Jan 01, 2019).
2. Bouvier NM, Palese P. The biology of influenza viruses. *Vaccine*. (2008) 26 (Suppl. 4):D49–53. doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2008.07.039
3. Boivin S, Cusack S, Ruigrok RW, Hart DJ. Influenza A virus polymerase: structural insights into replication and host adaptation mechanisms. *J Biol Chem*. (2010) 285:28411–7. doi: 10.1074/jbc.R110.117531
4. Air GM. Influenza virus antigenicity and broadly neutralizing epitopes. *Curr Opin Virol*. (2015) 11:113–21. doi: 10.1016/j.coviro.2015.03.006
5. Huang KY, Rijal P, Schimanski L, Powell TJ, Lin TY, McCauley JW, et al. Focused antibody response to influenza linked to antigenic drift. *J Clin Invest*. (2015) 125:2631–45. doi: 10.1172/JCI81104
6. Schmidt AG, Do KT, McCarthy KR, Kepler TB, Liao HX, Moody MA, et al. Immunogenic stimulus for germline precursors of antibodies that engage the influenza hemagglutinin receptor-binding site. *Cell Rep*. (2015) 13:2842–50. doi: 10.1016/j.celrep.2015.11.063
7. Kilbourne ED. Influenza pandemics of the 20th century. *Emerg Infect Dis*. (2006) 12:9–14. doi: 10.3201/eid1201.051254
8. World Health Organization Writing G, Bell D, Nicoll A, Fukuda K, Horby P, Monto A, et al. Non-pharmaceutical interventions for pandemic influenza, national and community measures. *Emerg Infect Dis*. (2006) 12:88–94. doi: 10.3201/eid1201.051371
9. Blanco N, Eisenberg MC, Stillwell T, Foxman B. What transmission precautions best control influenza spread in a hospital? *Am J Epidemiol*. (2016) 183:1045–54. doi: 10.1093/aje/kwv293
10. Grohskopf LA, Sokolow LZ, Broder KR, Walter EB, Bresee JS, Fry AM, et al. Prevention and control of seasonal influenza with vaccines: recommendations of the advisory committee on immunization practices - United States, 2017-18 influenza season. *MMWR Recomm Rep*. (2017) 66:1–20. doi: 10.15585/mmwr.rr6602a1
11. Grohskopf LA, Sokolow LZ, Fry AM, Walter EB, Jernigan DB. Update: ACIP recommendations for the use of quadrivalent live attenuated influenza vaccine (LAIV4) - United States, 2018-19 influenza season. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep*. (2018) 67:643–5. doi: 10.15585/mmwr.mm6722a5
12. Robinson CL, Romero JR, Kempe A, Pellegrini C, Szilagyi P. Advisory committee on immunization practices recommended immunization schedule for children and adolescents aged 18 years or younger - United States, 2018. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep*. (2018) 67:156–7. doi: 10.15585/mmwr.mm6705e2
13. Francis T, Salk JE, Pearson HE, Brown PN. Protective effect of vaccination against induced influenza A. *J Clin Invest*. (1945) 24:536–46. doi: 10.1172/JCI101633
14. Salk JE, Pearson HE, Brown PN, Francis T. Protective effect of vaccination against induced influenza B. *J Clin Invest*. (1945) 24:547–53. doi: 10.1172/JCI101634
15. Francis T, Salk JE, Quilligan JJ. Experience with vaccination against influenza in the spring of 1947: a preliminary report. *Am J Public Health Nations Health*. (1947) 37:1013–6. doi: 10.2105/AJPH.37.8.1013
16. Salk JE, Suriano PC. Importance of antigenic composition of influenza virus vaccine in protecting against the natural disease; observations during the winter of 1947-1948. *Am J Public Health Nations Health*. (1949) 39:345–55. doi: 10.2105/AJPH.39.3.345
17. Allison JE, Glezen WP, Taber LH, Paredes A, Webster RG. Reactogenicity and immunogenicity of bivalent influenza A and monovalent influenza B virus vaccines in high-risk children. *J Infect Dis*. (1977) 136 (Suppl):S672–6. doi: 10.1093/infdis/136.Supplement_3.S672
18. Belshe RB, Gruber WC, Mendelman PM, Mehta HB, Mahmood K, Reisinger K, et al. Correlates of immune protection induced by live, attenuated, cold-adapted, trivalent, intranasal influenza virus vaccine. *J Infect Dis*. (2000) 181:1133–7. doi: 10.1086/315323

19. Krammer F, Palese P. Advances in the development of influenza virus vaccines. *Nat Rev Drug Discov*. (2015) 14:167–82. doi: 10.1038/nrd4529
20. Soema PC, Kompier R, Amorij JP, Kersten GF. Current and next generation influenza vaccines: formulation and production strategies. *Eur J Pharm Biopharm*. (2015) 94:251–63. doi: 10.1016/j.ejpb.2015.05.023
21. Barr IG, McCauley J, Cox N, Daniels R, Engelhardt OG, Fukuda K, et al. Epidemiological, antigenic and genetic characteristics of seasonal influenza A(H1N1), A(H3N2) and B influenza viruses: basis for the WHO recommendation on the composition of influenza vaccines for use in the 2009–2010 northern hemisphere season. *Vaccine*. (2010) 28:1156–67. doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2009.11.043
22. Tricco AC, Chit A, Soobiah C, Hallett D, Meier G, Chen MH, et al. Comparing influenza vaccine efficacy against mismatched and matched strains: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *BMC Med*. (2013) 11:153. doi: 10.1186/1741-7015-11-153
23. Erbelding EJ, Post D, Stemmy E, Roberts PC, Augustine AD, Ferguson S, et al. A universal influenza vaccine: the strategic plan for the national institute of allergy and infectious diseases. *J Infect Dis*. (2018) 218:347–54. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jiy103
24. Renfrey S, Watts A. Morphological and biochemical characterization of influenza vaccines commercially available in the United Kingdom. *Vaccine*. (1994) 12:747–52. doi: 10.1016/0264-410X(94)90227-5
25. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Fcgamma receptors as regulators of immune responses. *Nat Rev Immunol*. (2008) 8:34–47. doi: 10.1038/nri2206
26. Greenberg SB, Criswell BS, Six HR, Couch RB. Lymphocyte cytotoxicity to influenza virus-infected cells. II requirement for antibody and non-T lymphocytes. *J Immunol*. (1977) 119:2100–6.
27. Hashimoto G, Wright PF, Karzon DT. Antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity against influenza virus-infected cells. *J Infect Dis*. (1983) 148:785–94. doi: 10.1093/infdis/148.5.785
28. Hashimoto G, Wright PF, Karzon DT. Ability of human cord blood lymphocytes to mediate antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity against influenza virus-infected cells. *Infect Immun*. (1983) 42:214–8.
29. Forthal DN, Landucci G, Daar ES. Antibody from patients with acute human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection inhibits primary strains of HIV type 1 in the presence of natural-killer effector cells. *J Virol*. (2001) 75:6953–61. doi: 10.1128/JVI.75.15.6953-6961.2001
30. Haynes BF, Gilbert PB, McElrath MJ, Zolla-Pazner S, Tomaras GD, Alam SM, et al. Immune-correlates analysis of an HIV-1 vaccine efficacy trial. *N Engl J Med*. (2012) 366:1275–86. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa1113425
31. Kohl S, Loo LS, Pickering LK. Protection of neonatal mice against herpes simplex viral infection by human antibody and leukocytes from adult, but not neonatal humans. *J Immunol*. (1981) 127:1273–5.
32. Kohl S, Loo LS. Protection of neonatal mice against herpes simplex virus infection: probable *in vivo* antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity. *J Immunol*. (1982) 129:370–6.
33. Wang K, Tomaras GD, Jegaskanda S, Moody MA, Liao HX, Goodman KN, et al. Monoclonal antibodies, derived from humans vaccinated with the RV144 HIV vaccine containing the HVEM binding domain of herpes simplex virus (HSV) glycoprotein D, neutralize HSV infection, mediate antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity, and protect mice from ocular challenge with HSV-1. *J Virol*. (2017) 91. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00411-17
34. Gunn BM, Yu WH, Karim MM, Brannan JM, Herbert AS, Wec AZ, et al. A role for Fc function in therapeutic monoclonal antibody-mediated protection against ebola virus. *Cell Host Microbe*. (2018) 24:221–33 e225. doi: 10.1016/j.chom.2018.07.009
35. Saphire EO, Schendel SL, Fusco ML, Gangavarapu K, Gunn BM, Wec AZ, et al. Systematic analysis of monoclonal antibodies against ebola virus GP defines features that contribute to protection. *Cell*. (2018) 174:938–52.e913. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2018.07.033
36. Jegerlehner A, Schmitz N, Storni T, Bachmann MF. Influenza A vaccine based on the extracellular domain of M2: weak protection mediated via antibody-dependent NK cell activity. *J Immunol*. (2004) 172:5598–605. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.172.9.5598
37. DiLillo DJ, Tan GS, Palese P, Ravetch JV. Broadly neutralizing hemagglutinin stalk-specific antibodies require FcgammaR interactions for protection against influenza virus *in vivo*. *Nat Med*. (2014) 20:143–51. doi: 10.1038/nm.3443
38. Watanabe A, McCarthy KR, Kuraoka M, Schmidt AG, Adachi Y, Onodera T, et al. Antibodies to a conserved influenza head interface epitope protect by an IgG subtype-dependent mechanism. *Cell*. (2019) 177:1124–35 e1116. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2019.03.048
39. Pielak RM, Chou JJ. Influenza M2 proton channels. *Biochim Biophys Acta*. (2011) 1808:522–9. doi: 10.1016/j.bbamem.2010.04.015
40. Kilbourne ED, Johansson BE, Grajower B. Independent and disparate evolution in nature of influenza A virus hemagglutinin and neuraminidase glycoproteins. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (1990) 87:786–90. doi: 10.1073/pnas.87.2.786
41. Greenberg SB, Criswell BS, Six HR, Couch RB. Lymphocyte cytotoxicity to influenza virus-infected cells: response to vaccination and virus infection. *Infect Immun*. (1978) 20:640–5.
42. Greenberg SB, Six HR, Drake S, Couch RB. Cell cytotoxicity due to specific influenza antibody production *in vitro* after recent influenza antigen stimulation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (1979) 76:4622–6. doi: 10.1073/pnas.76.9.4622
43. Vella S, Rocchi G, Resta S, Marcelli M, De Felici A. Antibody reactive in antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity following influenza virus vaccination. *J Med Virol*. (1980) 6:203–11. doi: 10.1002/jmv.1890060303
44. Jegaskanda S, Reading PC, Kent SJ. Influenza-specific antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity: toward a universal influenza vaccine. *J Immunol*. (2014) 193:469–75. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1400432
45. Wohlbold TJ, Podolsky KA, Chromikova V, Kirkpatrick E, Falconieri V, Meade P, et al. Broadly protective murine monoclonal antibodies against influenza B virus target highly conserved neuraminidase epitopes. *Nat Microbiol*. (2017) 2:1415–24. doi: 10.1038/s41564-017-0011-8
46. Murphy BR, Kasel JA, Chanock RM. Association of serum anti-neuraminidase antibody with resistance to influenza in man. *N Engl J Med*. (1972) 286:1329–32. doi: 10.1056/NEJM197206222862502
47. Couch RB, Kasel JA, Gerin JL, Schulman JL, Kilbourne ED. Induction of partial immunity to influenza by a neuraminidase-specific vaccine. *J Infect Dis*. (1974) 129:411–20. doi: 10.1093/infdis/129.4.411
48. Couch RB, Atmar RL, Franco LM, Quarles JM, Wells J, Arden N, et al. Antibody correlates and predictors of immunity to naturally occurring influenza in humans and the importance of antibody to the neuraminidase. *J Infect Dis*. (2013) 207:974–81. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jis935
49. Monto AS, Petrie JG, Cross RT, Johnson E, Liu M, Zhong W, et al. Antibody to influenza virus neuraminidase: an independent correlate of protection. *J Infect Dis*. (2015) 212:1191–9. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jiv195
50. Memoli MJ, Shaw PA, Han A, Czajkowski L, Reed S, Athota R, et al. Evaluation of antihemagglutinin and antineuraminidase antibodies as correlates of protection in an influenza A/H1N1 virus healthy human challenge model. *MBio*. (2016) 7:e00417–6. doi: 10.1128/mBio.00417-16
51. Krammer F, Fouchier RAM, Eichelberger MC, Webby RJ, Shaw-Saliba K, Wan H, et al. NAction! How can neuraminidase-based immunity contribute to better influenza virus vaccines? *MBio*. (2018) 9:e02332–17. doi: 10.1128/mBio.02332-17
52. El Bakkouri K, Descamps F, De Filette M, Smet A, Festjens E, Birkett A, et al. Universal vaccine based on ectodomain of matrix protein 2 of influenza A: Fc receptors and alveolar macrophages mediate protection. *J Immunol*. (2011) 186:1022–31. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.0902147
53. Van den Hoecke S, Ehrhardt K, Kolpe A, El Bakkouri K, Deng L, Grootaert H, et al. Hierarchical and redundant roles of activating fcgammars in protection against influenza disease by M2e-specific IgG1 and IgG2a antibodies. *J Virol*. (2017) 91:e02500–16. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02500-16
54. Turley CB, Rupp RE, Johnson C, Taylor DN, Wolfson J, Tussey L, et al. Safety and immunogenicity of a recombinant M2e-flagellin influenza vaccine (STF2.4xM2e) in healthy adults. *Vaccine*. (2011) 29:5145–52. doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2011.05.041
55. Ibanez LI, Roose K, De Filette M, Schotsaert M, De Sloovere J, Roels S, et al. M2e-displaying virus-like particles with associated RNA promote T helper 1 type adaptive immunity against influenza A. *PLoS ONE*. (2013) 8:e59081. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0059081
56. Portela A, Digard P. The influenza virus nucleoprotein: a multifunctional RNA-binding protein pivotal to virus replication. *J Gen Virol*. (2002) 83(Pt 4):723–34. doi: 10.1099/0022-1317-83-4-723

57. Yewdell JW, Frank E, Gerhard W. Expression of influenza A virus internal antigens on the surface of infected P815 cells. *J Immunol*. (1981) 126:1814–9.
58. Fujimoto Y, Tomioka Y, Takakuwa H, Uechi G, Yabuta T, Ozaki K, et al. Cross-protective potential of anti-nucleoprotein human monoclonal antibodies against lethal influenza A virus infection. *J Gen Virol*. (2016) 97:2104–16. doi: 10.1099/jgv.0.000518
59. Jegaskanda S, Co MDT, Cruz J, Subbarao K, Ennis FA, Terajima M. Induction of H7N9-cross-reactive antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity antibodies by human seasonal influenza A viruses that are directed toward the nucleoprotein. *J Infect Dis*. (2017) 215:818–23. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jiw629
60. Vanderven HA, Ana-Sosa-Batiz F, Jegaskanda S, Rockman S, Laurie K, Barr I, et al. What lies beneath: antibody dependent natural killer cell activation by antibodies to internal influenza virus proteins. *EBioMed*. (2016) 8:277–90. doi: 10.1016/j.ebiom.2016.04.029
61. Stavnezer J, Amemiya CT. Evolution of isotype switching. *Semin Immunol*. (2004) 16:257–75. doi: 10.1016/j.smim.2004.08.005
62. Kacskovics I. Fc receptors in livestock species. *Vet Immunol Immunopathol*. (2004) 102:351–62. doi: 10.1016/j.vetimm.2004.06.008
63. DiLillo DJ, Palese P, Wilson PC, Ravetch JV. Broadly neutralizing anti-influenza antibodies require Fc receptor engagement for *in vivo* protection. *J Clin Invest*. (2016) 126:605–10. doi: 10.1172/JCI84428
64. Henry Dunand CJ, Leon PE, Huang M, Choi A, Chromikova V, Ho IY, et al. Both neutralizing and non-neutralizing human H7N9 influenza vaccine-induced monoclonal antibodies confer protection. *Cell Host Microbe*. (2016) 19:800–13. doi: 10.1016/j.chom.2016.05.014
65. Park SJ, Si YJ, Kim J, Song MS, Kim SM, Kim EH, et al. Cross-protective efficacies of highly-pathogenic avian influenza H5N1 vaccines against a recent H5N8 virus. *Virology*. (2016) 498:36–43. doi: 10.1016/j.virol.2016.08.010
66. Tan GS, Leon PE, Albrecht RA, Margine I, Hirsh A, Bahl J, et al. Broadly-reactive neutralizing and non-neutralizing antibodies directed against the H7 influenza virus hemagglutinin reveal divergent mechanisms of protection. *PLoS Pathog*. (2016) 12:e1005578. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1005578
67. Jacobsen H, Rajendran M, Choi A, Sjursen H, Brokstad KA, Cox RJ, et al. Influenza virus hemagglutinin stalk-specific antibodies in human serum are a surrogate marker for *in vivo* protection in a serum transfer mouse challenge model. *MBio*. (2017) 8:e01463–17. doi: 10.1128/mBio.01463-17
68. Ye ZW, Yuan S, Poon KM, Wen L, Yang D, Sun Z, et al. Antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity epitopes on the hemagglutinin head region of pandemic H1N1 influenza virus play detrimental roles in H1N1-infected mice. *Front Immunol*. (2017) 8:317. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2017.00317
69. Wang J, Liu M, Ding N, Li Y, Shao J, Zhu M, et al. Vaccine based on antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity epitope on the H1N1 influenza virus increases mortality in vaccinated mice. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*. (2018) 503:1874–9. doi: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2018.07.129
70. Shao W, Li X, Goraya MU, Wang S, Chen JL. Evolution of influenza A virus by mutation and Re-assortment. *Int J Mol Sci*. (2017) 18:1650. doi: 10.3390/ijms18081650
71. Rajao DS, Anderson TK, Gauger PC, Vincent AL. Pathogenesis and vaccination of influenza A virus in swine. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*. (2014) 385:307–26. doi: 10.1007/82_2014_391
72. Kitikoon P, Vincent AL, Janke BH, Erickson B, Strait EL, Yu S, et al. Swine influenza matrix 2 (M2) protein contributes to protection against infection with different H1 swine influenza virus (SIV) isolates. *Vaccine*. (2009) 28:523–31. doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2009.09.130
73. Khurana S, Loving CL, Manischewitz J, King LR, Gauger PC, Henningson J, et al. Vaccine-induced anti-HA2 antibodies promote virus fusion and enhance influenza virus respiratory disease. *Sci Transl Med*. (2013) 5:200ra114. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3006366
74. Gauger PC, Vincent AL, Loving CL, Lager KM, Janke BH, Kehrli ME Jr, et al. Enhanced pneumonia and disease in pigs vaccinated with an inactivated human-like (delta-cluster) H1N2 vaccine and challenged with pandemic 2009 H1N1 influenza virus. *Vaccine*. (2011) 29:2712–9. doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2011.01.082
75. Crowe JE Jr. Universal flu vaccines: primum non nocere. *Sci Transl Med*. (2013) 5:200fs234. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3007118
76. Morgan SB, Holzer B, Hemmink JD, Salguero FJ, Schwartz JC, Agatic G, et al. Therapeutic Administration of broadly neutralizing FI6 antibody reveals lack of interaction between human IgG1 and Pig Fc receptors. *Front Immunol*. (2018) 9:865. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00865
77. Nachbagauer R, Miller MS, Hai R, Ryder AB, Rose JK, Palese P, et al. Hemagglutinin stalk immunity reduces influenza virus replication and transmission in ferrets. *J Virol*. (2015) 90:3268–73. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02481-15
78. Yassine HM, Boyington JC, McTamney PM, Wei CJ, Kanekiyo M, Kong WP, et al. Hemagglutinin-stem nanoparticles generate heterosubtypic influenza protection. *Nat Med*. (2015) 21:1065–70. doi: 10.1038/nm.3927
79. Shen C, Chen J, Li R, Zhang M, Wang G, Stegalkina S, et al. A multimechanistic antibody targeting the receptor binding site potently cross-protects against influenza B viruses. *Sci Transl Med*. (2017) 9:eaam5752. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.aam5752
80. Bouvier NM, Lowen AC. Animal models for influenza virus pathogenesis and transmission. *Viruses*. (2010) 2:1530–63. doi: 10.3390/v20801530
81. Jegaskanda S, Weinfurter JT, Friedrich TC, Kent SJ. Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity is associated with control of pandemic H1N1 influenza virus infection of macaques. *J Virol*. (2013) 87:5512–22. doi: 10.1128/JVI.03030-12
82. Florek NW, Kamlangdee A, Mutschler JP, Kingstad-Bakke B, Schultz-Darken N, Broman KW, et al. A modified vaccinia Ankara vaccine vector expressing a mosaic H5 hemagglutinin reduces viral shedding in rhesus macaques. *PLoS ONE*. (2017) 12:e0181738. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0181738
83. Florek NW, Weinfurter JT, Jegaskanda S, Brewoo JN, Powell TD, Young GR, et al. Modified vaccinia virus Ankara encoding influenza virus hemagglutinin induces heterosubtypic immunity in macaques. *J Virol*. (2014) 88:13418–28. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01219-14
84. Song A, Myojo K, Laudenslager J, Harada D, Miura T, Suzuki K, et al. Evaluation of a fully human monoclonal antibody against multiple influenza A viral strains in mice and a pandemic H1N1 strain in nonhuman primates. *Antiviral Res*. (2014) 111:60–8. doi: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2014.08.016
85. Cocklin SL, Schmitz JE. The role of Fc receptors in HIV infection and vaccine efficacy. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS*. (2014) 9:257–62. doi: 10.1097/COH.0000000000000051
86. Terajima M, Co MD, Cruz J, Ennis FA. High antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity antibody titers to H5N1 and H7N9 avian influenza A viruses in healthy US adults and older children. *J Infect Dis*. (2015) 212:1052–60. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jiv181
87. Jegaskanda S, Vandenberg K, Laurie KL, Loh L, Kramski M, Winnall WR, et al. Cross-reactive influenza-specific antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity in intravenous immunoglobulin as a potential therapeutic against emerging influenza viruses. *J Infect Dis*. (2014) 210:1811–22. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jiu334
88. Jegaskanda S, Laurie KL, Amarasena TH, Winnall WR, Kramski M, De Rose R, et al. Age-associated cross-reactive antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity toward 2009 pandemic influenza A virus subtype H1N1. *J Infect Dis*. (2013) 208:1051–61. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jit294
89. Co MD, Terajima M, Thomas SJ, Jarman RG, Rungrojcharoenkit K, Fernandez S, et al. Relationship of preexisting influenza hemagglutination inhibition, complement-dependent lytic, and antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity antibodies to the development of clinical illness in a prospective study of A(H1N1)pdm09 Influenza in children. *Viral Immunol*. (2014) 27:375–82. doi: 10.1089/vim.2014.0061
90. Mesman AW, Westerhuis BM, Ten Hulscher HI, Jacobi RH, de Bruin E, van Beek J, et al. Influenza virus A(H1N1)2009 antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity in young children prior to the H1N1 pandemic. *J Gen Virol*. (2016) 97:2157–65. doi: 10.1099/jgv.0.000552
91. Vanderven HA, Liu L, Ana-Sosa-Batiz F, Nguyen TH, Wan Y, Wines B, et al. Fc functional antibodies in humans with severe H7N9 and seasonal influenza. *JCI Insight*. (2017) 2:e92750. doi: 10.1172/jci.insight.92750
92. Vanderven HA, Jegaskanda S, Wines BD, Hogarth PM, Carmuglia S, Rockman S, et al. Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity responses to seasonal influenza vaccination in older adults. *J Infect Dis*. (2017) 217:12–23. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jix554
93. Stadlbauer D, Rajabhathor A, Amanat F, Kaplan D, Masud A, Treanor JJ, et al. Vaccination with a recombinant H7 hemagglutinin-based influenza virus vaccine induces broadly reactive antibodies in humans. *mSphere*. (2017) 2:e00502–17. doi: 10.1128/mSphere.00502-17

94. de Vries RD, Altenburg AF, Nieuwkoop NJ, de Bruin E, van Trierum SE, Pronk MR, et al. Induction of cross-clade antibody and T-cell responses by a modified vaccinia virus ankara-based influenza A(H5N1) vaccine in a randomized phase 1/2a clinical trial. *J Infect Dis*. (2018) 218:614–23. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jiy214
95. Bangaru S, Zhang H, Gilchuk IM, Voss TG, Irving RP, Gilchuk P, et al. A multifunctional human monoclonal neutralizing antibody that targets a unique conserved epitope on influenza HA. *Nat Commun*. (2018) 9:2669. doi: 10.1038/s41467-018-04704-9
96. Chai N, Swem LR, Park S, Nakamura G, Chiang N, Estevez A, et al. A broadly protective therapeutic antibody against influenza B virus with two mechanisms of action. *Nat Commun*. (2017) 8:14234. doi: 10.1038/ncomms14234
97. He W, Tan GS, Mullarkey CE, Lee AJ, Lam MM, Krammer F, et al. Epitope specificity plays a critical role in regulating antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity against influenza A virus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2016) 113:11931–6. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1609316113
98. Cox F, Kwaks T, Brandenburg B, Koldijk MH, Klaren V, Smal B, et al. HA antibody-mediated FcgammaRIIIa activity is both dependent on fcr engagement and interactions between HA and sialic acids. *Front Immunol*. (2016) 7:399. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2016.00399
99. Leon PE, He W, Mullarkey CE, Bailey MJ, Miller MS, Krammer F, et al. Optimal activation of Fc-mediated effector functions by influenza virus hemagglutinin antibodies requires two points of contact. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2016) 113:E5944–51. doi: 10.1073/pnas.16132 25113
100. Yu F, Song H, Wu Y, Chang SY, Wang L, Li W, et al. A potent germline-like human monoclonal antibody targets a pH-sensitive epitope on H7N9 influenza hemagglutinin. *Cell Host Microbe*. (2017) 22:471–83.e475. doi: 10.1016/j.chom.2017.08.011
101. de Vries RD, Nieuwkoop NJ, van der Klis FRM, Koopmans MPG, Krammer F, Rimmelzwaan GF. Primary human influenza B virus infection induces cross-lineage hemagglutinin stalk-specific antibodies mediating antibody-dependent cellular cytoxicity. *J Infect Dis*. (2017) 217:3–11. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jix546
102. Bangaru S, Lang S, Schotsaert M, Vanderven HA, Zhu X, Kose N, et al. A site of vulnerability on the influenza virus hemagglutinin head domain trimer interface. *Cell*. (2019) 177:1136–52.e1118. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.201 9.04.011
103. Bajic G, Maron MJ, Adachi Y, Onodera T, McCarthy KR, McGee CE, et al. Influenza antigen engineering focuses immune responses to a subdominant but broadly protective viral epitope. *Cell Host Microbe*. (2019) 25:P827-835.e6. doi: 10.1016/j.chom.201 9.04.003
104. Jegaskanda S, Luke C, Hickman HD, Sangster MY, Wieland-Alter WF, McBride JM, et al. Generation and protective ability of influenza virus-specific antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity in humans elicited by vaccination, natural infection, and experimental challenge. *J Infect Dis*. (2016) 214:945–52. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jiw262
105. Bodewes R, de Mutsert G, van der Klis FR, Ventresca M, Wilks S, Smith DJ, et al. Prevalence of antibodies against seasonal influenza A and B viruses in children in Netherlands. *Clin Vaccine Immunol*. (2011) 18:469–76. doi: 10.1128/CVI.00396-10

Conflict of Interest Statement: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

ORIGINAL RESEARCH
published: 05 July 2019
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.01512

Concurrent Exposure of Neutralizing and Non-neutralizing Epitopes on a Single HIV-1 Envelope Structure

Krishanu Ray[1,2]*, *Meron Mengistu*[1,3], *Chiara Orlandi*[1,3], *Marzena Pazgier*[1,2], *George K. Lewis*[1,4] *and Anthony L. DeVico*[1,3]

[1] *Institute of Human Virology, University of Maryland School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, United States,* [2] *Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, University of Maryland School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, United States,* [3] *Department of Medicine, University of Maryland School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, United States,* [4] *Department of Microbiology and Immunology, University of Maryland School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, United States*

The trimeric envelope spikes on the HIV-1 virus surface initiate infection and comprise key targets for antiviral humoral responses. Circulating virions variably present intact envelope spikes, which react with neutralizing antibodies; and altered envelope structures, which bind non-neutralizing antibodies. Once bound, either type of antibody can enable humoral effector mechanisms with the potential to control HIV-1 infection *in vivo*. However, it is not clear how the presentation of neutralizing vs. non-neutralizing epitopes defines distinct virus populations and/or envelope structures on single particles. Here we used single-virion fluorescence correlation spectroscopy (FCS), fluorescence resonance energy transfer (FRET), and two-color coincidence FCS approaches to examine whether neutralizing and non-neutralizing antibodies are presented by the same envelope structure. Given the spatial requirements for donor-acceptor energy transfer ($\leq$10 nm), FRET signals generated by paired neutralizing and non-neutralizing fluorescent Fabs should occur via proximal binding to the same target antigen. Fluorescent-labeled Fabs of the neutralizing anti-gp120 antibodies 2G12 and b12 were combined with Fabs of the non-neutralizing anti-gp41 antibody F240, previously thought to mainly bind gp41 "stumps." We find that both 2G12-F240 and/or b12-F240 Fab combinations generate FRET signals on multiple types of virions in solution. FRET efficiencies position the neutralizing and non-neutralizing epitopes between 7.1 and 7.8 nm apart; potentially fitting within the spatial dimensions of a single trimer-derived structure. Further, the frequency of FRET detection suggests that at least one of such structures occurs on the majority of particles in a virus population. Thus, there is frequent, overlapping presentation of non-neutralizing and neutralizing epitope on freely circulating HIV-1 surfaces. Such information provides a broader perspective of how anti-HIV humoral immunity interfaces with circulating virions.

Keywords: single HIV-1 virion, epitope exposure, neutralizing and non-neutralizing epitopes, two-color coincidence fluorescence correlation spectroscopy (FCS), FRET-FCS

OPEN ACCESS

Edited by:
Gabriella Scarlatti,
San Raffaele Hospital (IRCCS), Italy

Reviewed by:
Marit Van Gils,
Academic Medical Center (AMC), Netherlands
Cynthia Ann Derdeyn,
Emory University, United States

***Correspondence:**
Krishanu Ray
kray@som.umaryland.edu

Specialty section:
This article was submitted to Viral Immunology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology

Received: *20 March 2019*
Accepted: *17 June 2019*
Published: *05 July 2019*

Citation:
Ray K, Mengistu M, Orlandi C, Pazgier M, Lewis GK and DeVico AL (2019) Concurrent Exposure of Neutralizing and Non-neutralizing Epitopes on a Single HIV-1 Envelope Structure. Front. Immunol. 10:1512. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.01512

INTRODUCTION

Intensive efforts are underway to develop preventive vaccines and therapeutic strategies based on humoral immunity against the HIV-1 envelope (Env). Such efforts logically consider directing antibody responses toward replication competent viral particles. Success in this regard demands an understanding of the epitope patterns expressed by virions and virus populations. On HIV-1 particles, the virus envelope spike is a heavily glycosylated trimer of three heterodimers containing gp120 surface subunits and gp41 transmembrane proteins. Gp120 binds the host cell receptor CD4 and a co-receptor, which triggers gp41 to mediate membrane fusion and viral entry. These antigens exhibit high variability in sequence and structure, driven by and allowing escape from immune pressure (1–13). At the same time, Env antigens can express highly conserved epitopes of various types, e.g., within glycan domains; within the CD4 or co-receptor binding sites; or on gp41. These epitopes are highly attractive targets for vaccine design as human antibodies (bNAbs) against them can be very broadly neutralizing (14–16) and provide potent sterilizing protection against SHIV challenge in macaque infection models (17–19).

The most highly conserved, functional and immutable Env epitopes are not neutralizing, often because they are structurally occluded on free trimers (20–22). Many of these epitopes are exposed as a consequence of natural virus-cell attachment mechanisms (21–23) but it is unclear how they are presented by free virions. One possibility is that non-neutralizing epitopes are expressed on "aberrant," non-functional envelope structures (24–26). Even if disconnected from productive attachment and entry processes, such structures could still mediate antiviral immunity if they appear on replication competent virions. Previous studies showed that non-neutralizing humoral responses directed against non-HIV antigens placed on functional virions mediated protection from SIV or HIV-1 infection in macaque and humanized mouse models, respectively (27–31). Thus, the presence and nature of any Env structure appearing in a virus population warrants careful evaluation in the context of antiviral immunity.

Numerous attempts have been made to characterize the prevalence of non-neutralizing vs. neutralizing epitope presentation in populations of HIV-1 virions and/or to partition HIV-1 virion populations into replication-competent vs. non-functional particles based on differential epitope presentations (9, 25, 26, 32–35). Such work has relied heavily on some manner of virion capture by anti-Env antibodies bound to a substrate. In general, findings from this approach have suggested that virus preparations can contain subpopulations of virions presenting variable mixtures of neutralizing and non-neutralizing epitopes. Subpopulations favoring non-neutralizing epitopes (presumably harboring a large amount of defective or degraded envelope) tend to be poorly- or non-infectious. Although useful, capture systems inform the nature of virions after some sort of adsorption procedure. Associated caveats include altered immunoreactivity patterns caused by the process of substrate attachment; altered virion characteristics caused by the capture manipulations. With some techniques, captured material may represent aggregates of particles as well as single virions. Moreover, capture methods cannot directly reveal whether individual virions present neutralizing and non-neutralizing epitopes on common surface structures, and/or show how frequently such scenarios occur within a virion population.

Previously we developed an analytical method based on fluorescence correlation spectroscopy (FCS) that allows the direct evaluation of mAb binding to HIV-1 virions continuously in solution (36). More recently we adapted this method to enable dual color detection of two different fluorescent-labeled mAbs bound to a single virion as well as detection of Förster resonance energy transfer (FRET) from fluorophores closely localized on single Env spikes. These tools can be used to investigate the relative presentation of neutralizing and non-neutralizing epitopes in virion populations and/or single spikes on an individual particle.

In the present study, the broadly cross-reactive, non-neutralizing F240 epitope (37) in the "Cluster I" domain of gp41 served as the focal point for our experiments. The F240 epitope is located within the immunodominant disulfide loop region of gp41 (38, 39), which is commonly immunoreactive on the surfaces of free virions (33, 34, 36, 40, 41). Although the F240 epitope is occluded on intact Env trimers, it seems to be exposed on undefined Env structures in which gp41 is oxidized (41). Passive transfer of mAb F240 exhibited a marginal degree of protective efficacy against SHIV challenge in macaques (42); a mAb against a related Cluster I epitope, 246D, mediated protection against HIV-1 infection in humanized mice (31); another related mAb, 7B2, (41) reduced the number of transmitted/founder SHIV variants in passively immunized macaques (43). Here we report that the antibodies directed against the F240 epitope and neutralizing gp120 epitopes bind concurrently to single virions via a shared Env-derived structure. Further, our data suggest that most particles in a virus population harbor such structures.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

HIV-1 Pseudovirus Production

HIV-1 BaL and HIV-1 JRFL pseudoviruses were generated by co-transfection of HEK293T cells with an Env-deficient HIV-1 backbone plasmid pNL4-3-ΔE-EGFP along with Env-expression plasmids (44, 45) pHIV-1-BaL 0.1 (obtained through the AIDS Research and Reference Reagent Program, Division of AIDS, NIAID) and pCAGGS-JRFL (kindly provided by J. Binley, Torrey Pines Institute of Molecular Studies, San Diego, CA). Transfections were accomplished using FuGENE 6 (Roche, Indianapolis, IN) transfection reagent at a 3:1 reagent-DNA ratio. To produce the infectious molecular clone of transmitted/founder (T/F) HIV-1 AD17 virus (46), HEK293T cells were transfected with the AD17 plasmid (kindly provided by B. Hahn, University of Pennsylvania) at a FuGENE-to-DNA ratio of 3:1. Virions-containing supernatant was harvested after 3 days, and concentrated about 10-fold by incubating with PEG-*it*™ virus precipitation solution (System Biosciences, Mountain View, CA) for 18 h at 4°C as recommended by vendor.

The antigen content of all virion preparations was quantified using p24 and gp120 antigen capture ELISAs. Infectivity was established using standardized procedures (47) and quantified as function of $TCID_{50}$ in TZM-bl cells. HIV-1 BaL and HIV-1 JRFL pseudoviruses with gp120 to p24 ratio of 1:10–1:50, and 200,000–500,000 TCID50/mL; HIV-1 AD17 T/F with gp120 to p24 ratio of 1:200, and 600,000 to 1,000,000 TCID50/mL were used for FCS measurements. The Aldrithiol-2 (AT-2) inactivated (48, 49) HIV-1 BaL virus produced in SupT1-CCR5 CL.30 cells was generously provided by Dr. Jeff Lifson (AIDS Vaccine Program/NCI, Frederick, MD). pEGFP-Vpr (cat# 11386 from Dr. Warner C. Greene) plasmid (50) obtained through the AIDS Research and Reference Reagent Program, Division of AIDS, NIAID, NIH, was used to generate fluorescent HIV-1 BaL pseudoviruses.

Antibodies

mAbs b12, 2G12, PG9, and F240 were purchased from Polymun Scientific (Vienna, Austria). mAbs 17b and N49P7 (14) were expressed from plasmid clones in HEK293T cells using an IgG1 backbone for heavy-chain variable regions and either a κ- or λ-chain expression vector for light-chain variable regions. mAbs were purified from culture supernatants by protein-A chromatography. Fabs of b12, 2G12, PG9, N49P7 or F240 were prepared from purified IgG (10 mg/ml) by proteolytic digestion with immobilized papain (Pierce, Rockford, IL) and purified using protein A (GE Healthcare, Piscataway, NJ), followed by gel filtration chromatography on a Superdex 200 16/60 column (GE Healthcare, Piscataway, NJ). All mAbs or Fabs were fluorescently labeled and purified with Alexa 488, 568, or 647 monoclonal Antibody Labeling Kit (Invitrogen, Molecular Probes, Eugene, OR). Briefly, the Alexa dye has a succinimidyl ester moiety that reacts efficiently with primary amines of antibody to form stable dye-protein conjugates. Each labeling reaction was performed with 100 μg of a mAb or Fab. The labeled antibody was separated from unreacted dye by centrifugation through a spin column at 1,100x g for 5 min. Recovered antibodies were dialyzed against phosphate buffered saline as necessary. Labeled mAbs or Fabs were quantified by a UV-vis spectrometer (Nanodrop 2000, Thermo-Scientific, Wilmington, DE). Dye to protein ratios were determined by measuring absorbance at 280 nm (protein) vs. absorbance at corresponding wavelength for Alexa 488, 568, or 647. Conjugated mAbs or Fabs used in our experiments had an optimal dye to protein ratio in the range of 1–2 of dye per molecule of mAb or Fab.

Two-Color Fluorescence Correlation Spectroscopy

Fluorescence Correlation Spectroscopy (FCS) is a methodology that allows real-time detection of multiple protein-protein interactions in solution, by measuring diffusion and reaction kinetics of fluorescently-labeled biomolecules (51). Two-color FCS (52) has been used to monitor two different mAbs bound to HIV-1 virions. The binding of Alexa 488 or 647-labeled mAbs b12, 2G12, 17b, F240, and anti-RSV antibody, Synagis (negative control) to HIV-1 virions was monitored by tracking diffusion of their fluorescent label across the observation area, where unbound antibodies will diffuse much faster than those that bound viral particles as described in Ray et al. (36). Briefly, HIV-1 BaL pseudovirions were diluted to 10 μg/mL p24 equivalent in a 100-μL reaction volume (gp120:p24 ratio of 1:50), and were first incubated with 100 μg/mL non-specific IgG1 (1.5 μL of a 7 mg/mL stock) for 90 min at 37°C to block non-specific binding. Then 1 μL of the test Alexa conjugated mAbs (2 μg/mL of each mAb) was introduced and allowed to interact with pseudovirions for 90 min at 37°C. For spectroscopic measurements, 11 μL of the reaction mixture was loaded onto an FCS slide reservoir, sealed, then placed on a time-resolved confocal microscope (ISS Q2) with a high numerical aperture (NA = 1.2) water objective (60x magnification). The excitation source was a Fianium SC-400 super-continuum laser. NKT super-select acousto-optical tunable filter (AOTF) filter was used to select the excitation wavelengths. The beam after AOTF was passed through narrow bandpass clean-up filters. The samples were excited with two coincident excitation at 470 and 635 nm, and fluorescence signals from the Alexa 488 (A488) or Alexa 647 (A647) mAbs were collected in two separate detection channels in the 500–550 nm and 650–720 nm region over 60 s in a constant detection volume (∼1 fL) that is continuously replenished. ISS Vista vision software was used to generate the autocorrelation function of the fluorescent fluctuations of the Alexa labeled mAbs. The autocorrelation function of fluorescence intensities is given by the product of the mAb intensity at time t, $I(t)$ with the intensity after a delay time τ, $I(t+\tau)$, typically in the range from 10^{-2} to 10^2 ms, averaged over the 60 s of measurement.

For experiments in which only the conjugated mAbs and no virions were present, the autocorrelation function was fitted with a single species diffusion model equation. Diffusion coefficients of the fluorescent species under these conditions were routinely determined to be 60 $\mu m^2/s$. These values matched what was predicted for 150 kD IgG molecules in solution. In reactions with mAbs and virions, the autocorrelation was fit to a two-species diffusion model. In this operation, one species had the unbound mAb diffusion coefficient of 60 $\mu m^2/s$, and the second a diffusion coefficient of 6 $\mu m^2/s$, matching the predicted behavior of fluorescent mAbs bound to a 100 nm retroviral particle. The fitting equations were also used to determine the percentage of total mAb exhibiting the slower diffusion rate in reactions with virions. The mathematical derivation and application of the equations is described in (36). The cross-correlation measures (52, 53) between the two separate detection channels determined if two signal intensities were correlated; i.e., fluctuated in concert or independently. Only pairs of co-incident photon counts from two distinct channels (500–550 and 650–720 nm in the present case) will show positive correlation amplitude. Only dual-color cross-correlation data of two different antibodies in the presence of HIV-1 virion showing positive correlation amplitude were taken as evidence that two different antibodies bound to the same virion particle.

Characterization of Single Virion FCS Measures

As dual-label FRET measures cannot distinguish the number of targets based on signal intensity, they are most clearly interpreted when there are limiting amount of virions in the focal volume. This situation can be favored by appropriate dilutions of the

virus stock. In theory, the amount of p24 in a virus preparation may be used for this purpose, assuming 10^4 virus particles per picogram of p24 (54, 55). To better determine how p24 measures could be used in this manner with our virus preparations, we generated HIV-1 BaL pseudoviruses using the usual methods, but also containing an eGFP.Vpr fluorescent marker. The eGFP.Vpr HIV-1 BaL stock contained 3 μg/ml of p24, which based on 10^4 virus particles/picogram of p24 (54, 55), converts to 3×10^7 particles/μL or roughly 0.03 virus particle per femtoliter assuming that virions are evenly dispersed. Serially dilutions of virus were then analyzed by FCS (**Figure S1**), which detected the eGFP.Vpr signal and thereby quantified the number of particles in the focal volume at any one time. The number of fluorescent virions were determined by fitting the autocorrelation plot and extracting the correlation amplitude G(0) (51, 53). The number of molecules detected in the FCS focal volume is inverse of the correlation amplitude (51, 53). The diffusion coefficient of the eGFP.Vpr HIV-1 BaL pseudoviruses signals (5 $\mu m^2/s$) matched those previously determined for single pseudovirus particles (36). As shown in **Figure S1**, there was the expected linear relationship between p24 concentration and number of virions measured by FCS. Notably, the FCS analyses detected substantially more virions in the focal volume than what was predicted by p24 measures (for example, although 3 μg/ml was predicted to translate into 1 virion/33fL; FCS indicated there was 1 virion/1.6 fL). FRET-FCS can only be performed with unlabeled virions as the signal from the eGFP fluorescent virion will interfere with the signal from fluorescent tagged mAbs or Fabs. Thus, a conversion factor was determined and used for experiments with other unlabeled viruses (see below) to normalize p24 concentrations to the probable numbers of virions (∼1.5) being seen in the FCS focal volume of 1fL.

FRET-FCS Measurements

For FRET measurements, the Fabs (b12, 2G12, PG9, N49P7 or F240) were labeled with either donor (Alexa 488) or acceptor (Alexa 568) probes (Invitrogen mAb labeling kit). Dye-to-protein ratios were determined by measuring absorbance at 280 nm (protein) vs. 488 or 577 nm (dye). The dye-to-protein ratios were between 1 and 2. We specifically aimed to keep this low label of dye labeling as we are using a single molecule fluorescence method and minimally perturb the functionality of the protein. FRET measurements were performed in a confocal microscope (ISS Q2) equipped with a supercontinuum laser and AOTF in order to excite the molecules during its diffusion through the confocal volume. ISS Vistavision software was used to generate the FRET histogram and further analyses. FRET measurements were performed after forming complex with the HIV-1 BaL, HIV-1 JRFL, AT-2 inactivated HIV-1 BaL or HIV-1 AD17 T/F virions with donor-labeled Fab and acceptor labeled Fab. The number of virions at any given time was around 1.5 particle in the 1fL focal volume as described above.

Fluorescence responses from the donor and the acceptor molecules were separated by a dichroic beam splitter and detected by two avalanche photodiode detectors (APD) using the method of time-correlated single photon counting and the Time-Tagged Time-Resolved (TTTR) mode of the Becker and Hickl SPC-150 module. High quality bandpass (Chroma) filters were used for laser clean-up and recording donor and acceptor fluorescence in two separate detection channels. The collected single photon data was binned by 3.4 ms (corresponding to the diffusion time of the 100 nm diameter virion particle) in each channel (donor or acceptor), which resulted in intensity-time traces recorded for 120 s. Threshold values in each channel were used to identify the single molecule bursts from the corresponding background signal level. Fluorescence bursts were recorded simultaneously in donor and acceptor channels and FRET efficiencies were calculated using $E = I_A/(I_A + \gamma I_D)$ where I_D and I_A are the sums of donor counts and acceptor counts for each burst, taking into account the possible difference in the detection efficiency (γ) in two separate channels (56–60). The analyses revealed fractional quantity of FRET efficiency events for a specified bin and recorded time of the donor-acceptor intensity traces. For a measurement time of 120 s and sampling frequency of 300, total number of 36,000 events can be possibly obtained. It is important to note that an event is likely no more than two virions in the FCS observation volume of 1fL based on input concentration of p24 as shown in **Figure S1**. For each sample containing donor Fabs, acceptor Fabs and HIV-1 virions, fractions of FRET events relating to the total possible events for a given bin time or sampling frequency and measurement time were determined and subsequently the number of occurrences vs. FRET efficiency histogram plots were generated. The donor-to-acceptor distance (*r)* in terms of efficiency of energy transfer (*E*) and Förster Distance (R_0) is given by $r = R_0\ [1/E - 1]^{1/6}$. We have used the value of R_0 of 6.2 nm for the Alexa 488 (donor) and Alexa 568 (acceptor) pair for estimating the donor-to-acceptor distances. In addition to FRET measurements we have also performed FCS measurements to assess the *in vitro* binding of Fab fragments to HIV-1 virions. Consequently, we determined the translational diffusion coefficients of Alexa 488 or 568 labeled Fabs and the corresponding bound virion complexes from FCS measurements. The FCS measurements and analyses were performed as previously reported (21, 36, 57–60).

Assembly of Structural Models of b12 and 2G12 Bound to HIV Env

The model was assembled based on the available CryoEM structure of the virion associated HIV-1 trimer complexed with b12 Fab [PDB: 3DNL, (61)] and crystallographic structure of 2G12 Fab bound to $Man_9GlcNAc_2$ [PDB code: 6N2X, (62)]. 2G12 Fab was modeled into the b12 Fab-HIV-1 trimer by superimposition of the $Man_9GlcNAc_2$ moiety of the 2G12 Fab-$Man_9GlcNAc_2$ complex to the trimer at N-linked glycan at position 332 (62). The distances are measured from the center of each variable domain of Fab.

RESULTS

Previously we used FCS and fluorescent labeled proteins to examine the binding of individual anti-envelope mAbs or sCD4 to HIV-1 particles representing various strains with all reactants

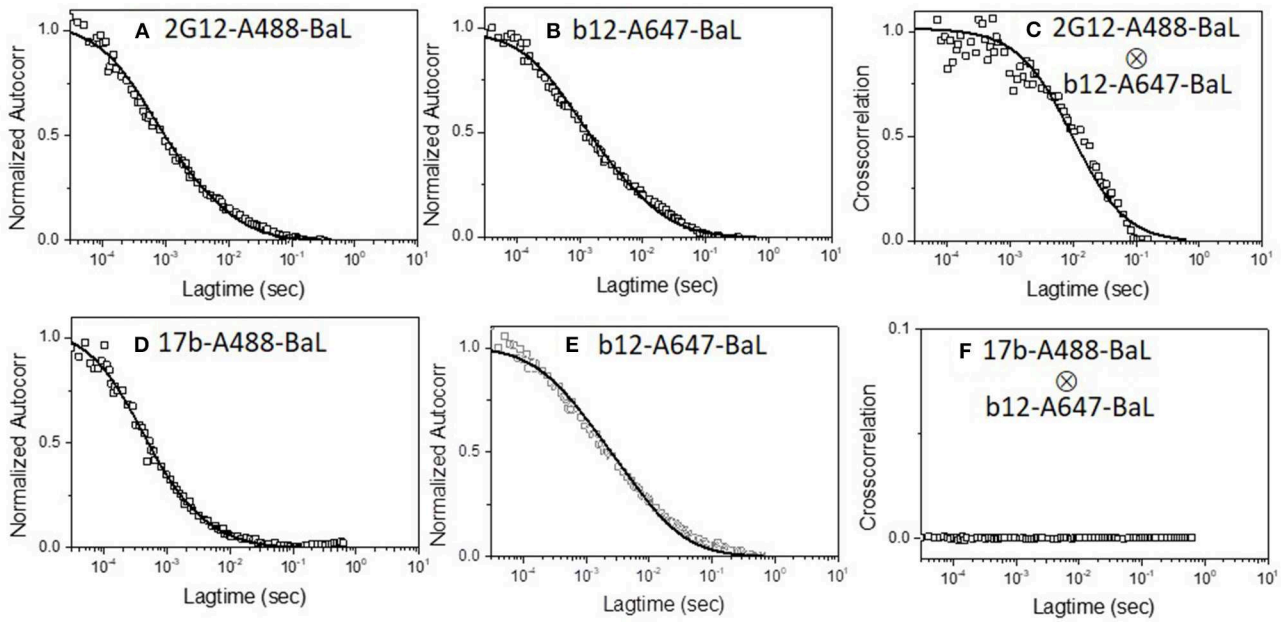


FIGURE 1 | Dual-color correlation curves of **(A–C)** 2G12-A488 and b12-A647 and **(D–F)** 17b-A488 and b12-A647 with HIV-1 BaL virions. **(A,D)** show autocorrelation plots of Alexa 488 labeled mAbs. **(B,E)** show autocorrelation plots of Alexa 647 labeled mAbs. **(C,F)** show cross-correlation curves of b12-A647 and 2G12-A488 or b12-A647 and 17b-A488 with HIV-1 BaL virions. Two color excitation wavelengths at 470 and 635 nm were used. All experiments were repeated three times with similar results.

in solution (21, 36, 41). These studies showed that the Alexa -labeled anti-gp120 bNAbs 2G12 (63) and b12 (64), and the non-neutralizing anti-gp41 mAb F240 (37, 41), bound efficiently and consistently to virions (21, 36). However, these studies did not address whether two antibodies, each of different specificity, bind to the same virion or to the same Env structure on a particle surface. We reasoned that dual color detection and FRET-FCS should afford a means to address this question.

Epitope Exposure on Single Virions by Dual Color FCS

We first applied the dual color detection method to explore the binding of two different mAbs to single HIV-1 BaL pseudovirus particles. We employed anti-envelope mAbs including b12 [a broadly neutralizing CD4 binding site antibody (64)], 2G12 [against a carbohydrate cluster on gp120 (63)], and F240 [against a cluster 1 epitope in gp41 (37, 41)] labeled with either Alexa 488 or Alexa 647. Monoclonal antibody 17b was tested as a negative control. This mAb recognizes a CD4-induced epitope on gp120 (65), binds weakly to HIV-1 BaL in the absence of sCD4, and partially competes with b12 for gp120 binding due to partial epitope overlap (20, 66). Thus, mAbs 17b and b12 are unlikely to bind the same virion except through non-specific processes. **Figure 1** shows the dual-color FCS measurements of Alexa-488 labeled 2G12 and Alexa-647 labeled b12 binding. Autocorrelation plots (**Figures 1A,B**) showed that in the reaction 42 and 45% of b12 or 2G12 mAbs, respectively, adopted the slower diffusion coefficient (6 $\mu m^2/s$) marking virion-bound mAb. Similar binding efficiencies for these mAbs were reported previously (36). Importantly, cross-correlation analyses (51, 53) (**Figure 1C**) of signals simultaneously detected in the two channels could also be fitted to the same single diffusion coefficient 6 $\mu m^2/s$. Such findings reflect that both 2G12 and b12 being bound to the same object, having the size of a retrovirus particle. In comparison, analyses of b12-A647 and 17b-A488 mixed with HIV-1 BaL virions showed no cross-correlation in binding signals (**Figures 1D–F**). Taken together, the data obtained with mAb pairs 2G12 and b12 indicated that the dual color coincidence FCS assay system could reflect the epitope exposure patterns on virus particles in solution.

A second set of experiments examined whether a single virion binds 2G12 neutralizing mAbs along with mAb F240. In these experiments, mAb F240 was labeled with Alexa-488 and mAb 2G12 with Alexa-647, the targets were again HIV-1 BaL pseudoviruses. **Figure 2** shows the dual-color FCS measurements of Alexa-488 labeled F240 and Alexa-647 labeled 2G12 binding to HIV-1 BaL virions. Autocorrelation plots (**Figures 2A,B**) showed that in the reaction 35 and 45% of F240 or 2G12 mAbs, respectively, adopted the slower diffusion coefficient (6 $\mu m^2/s$) marking virion-bound mAb. Similar binding profiles of fluorescently labeled F240 or 2G12 to HIV-1 BaL were reported previously (36). As in the experiments pairing 2G12 with b12 (**Figure 1**), cross-correlation analyses showed simultaneous signal detection in the two channels (**Figure 2C**) fitting a single diffusion coefficient of ~6 $\mu m^2/s$, indicating that 2G12 and F240 bound to the same virion particle. To verify these results further, the binding of both 2G12 and F240 mAbs was assessed with AT-2 inactivated HIV-1 BaL virions produced and

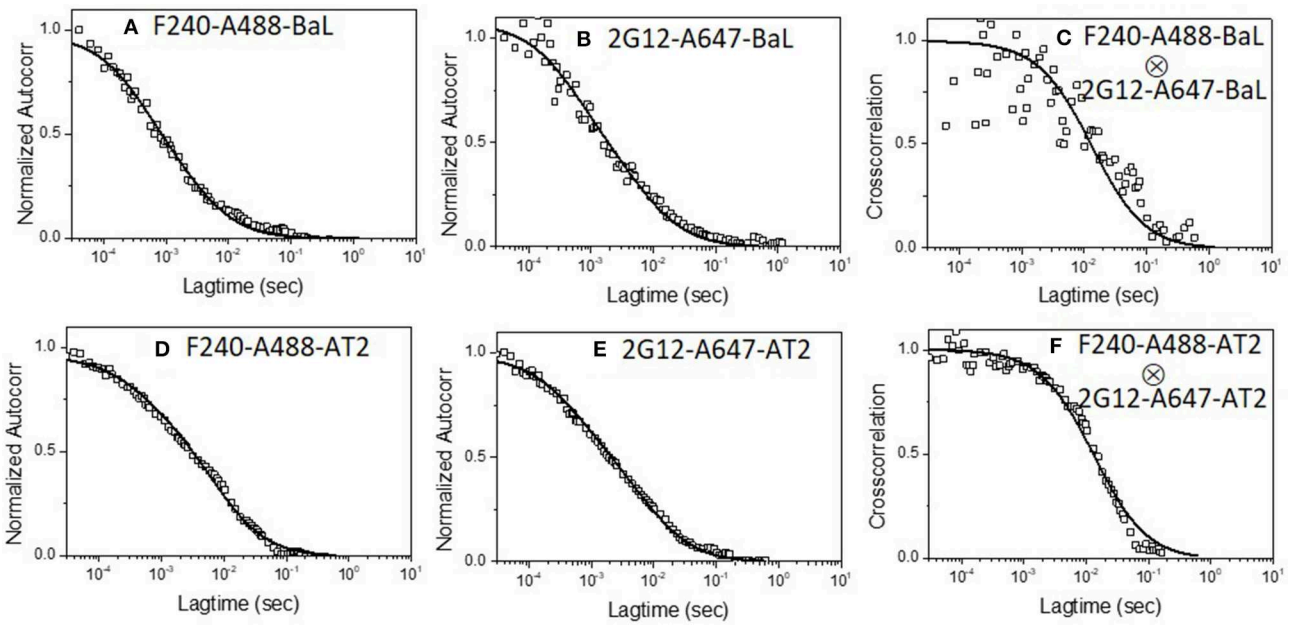


FIGURE 2 | Dual-color correlation curves of F240-A488 and 2G12-A647 with **(A–C)** HIV-1 BaL, and **(D–F)** AT-2 HIV-1 BaL virions. **(A,D)** show autocorrelation plots for F240-A488 with HIV-1 BaL and AT-2 HIV-1 BaL virions; **(B,E)** show autocorrelation plots of 2G12-A647 with HIV-1 BaL, and AT-2 HIV-1 BaL virions; **(C,F)** show cross-correlation curves of F240-A488 and 2G12-A647 with HIV-1 BaL and AT-2 HIV-1 BaL virions. The experiment was repeated three times with similar results.

purified in a different manner (41, 49). Similar auto-correlation (**Figures 2D,E**) and cross-correlation (**Figure 2F**) profiles were observed with Alexa-488 labeled F240 and Alexa-647 labeled 2G12 binding to AT-2 inactivated HIV-1 BaL virions.

Epitope Exposure on Individual Env Structures on HIV-1 Virions by FRET-FCS

Having determined that the above mAb pairs concurrently bind single virus particles, we next examined whether combinations of the above antibodies were attaching to the same Env structure on the virion. The FRET-FCS method relies on standard dipole-dipole interactions between paired donor and acceptor fluorophores, which occurs within the distance range of 2–10 nm. Thus, paired fluorescent mAbs will not create FRET signals unless they bind to tightly localized epitopes. To mitigate spatial differences caused by the probe length (i.e., whole IgG) and more precisely estimate the donor-acceptor distances, the FRET-FCS experiments employed labeled Fab fragments. The use of Fabs also enabled interpretations of FRET data vs. available structural data for Fab-Env complexes. The fluorophores pairs used in all experiments were Alexa-488 (A488 donor) and Alexa-568 (A568 acceptor). The test viruses (see below) were used at final concentrations of 10 μg/ml, which, based on relationship shown in **Figure S1**, was predicted to produce roughly 1.5 virions in the focal volume at any time.

The FRET-FCS system was first applied toward analyses of neutralizing epitopes. Reaction mixtures were constructed with fluorescent labeled 2G12 (A488 donor) and b12 (A568 acceptor) Fabs and HIV-1 BaL virions (see methods). As shown in **Figure 3**, FRET signals from the acceptor probe were indeed detected, following a diffusion coefficient of 6 $\mu m^2/s$ clearly distinguished from the ∼80 $\mu m^2/s$ value expected for an unbound Fab. The FRET signals fit a Gaussian profile with a mean FRET efficiency of ∼25% (**Figure 3A**). These data indicated that the two Fabs occupied a highly localized space on bound virions. FRET efficiency was not biased by the donor/acceptor labeling configuration as swapping the donor-acceptor labeling between b12 Fabs and 2G12 Fabs yielded highly similar measures (**Figure 3B**). According to Forster's equation (see methods) the calculated mean FRET efficiencies were consistent with a situation where the donor and acceptor Fabs bound to virions at an average distance of 7.4 nm apart. To validate these findings, we used existing structural information (61, 67) to model (see methods) the binding of 2G12 and b12 Fabs to a single HIV-1 trimer (**Figure 4**). This exercise predicts that the Fabs would be spaced ∼7.1 nm apart if bound to the same protomer and ∼7.4 nm apart if each is bound to a different protomer in the same trimer. In either case, the modeling predictions closely match those calculated from the FRET efficiencies. However, it must be noted that the Alexa conjugation chemistry does not place fluorophores at single, specified positions along the length of Fabs. Thus, FRET efficiencies, and derivative donor-acceptor distances, reflect aggregate measures of spatial ranges between paratopes and fluorophores on the two Fab probes. Given that Fabs are ∼3 nm long, up to 3 nm in extra distance between epitopes could be added when fluorophores are positioned at maximum distances from paratopes on each probe. However, even in this extreme situation the two epitopes can still be placed within the spatial constraints of a single trimer.

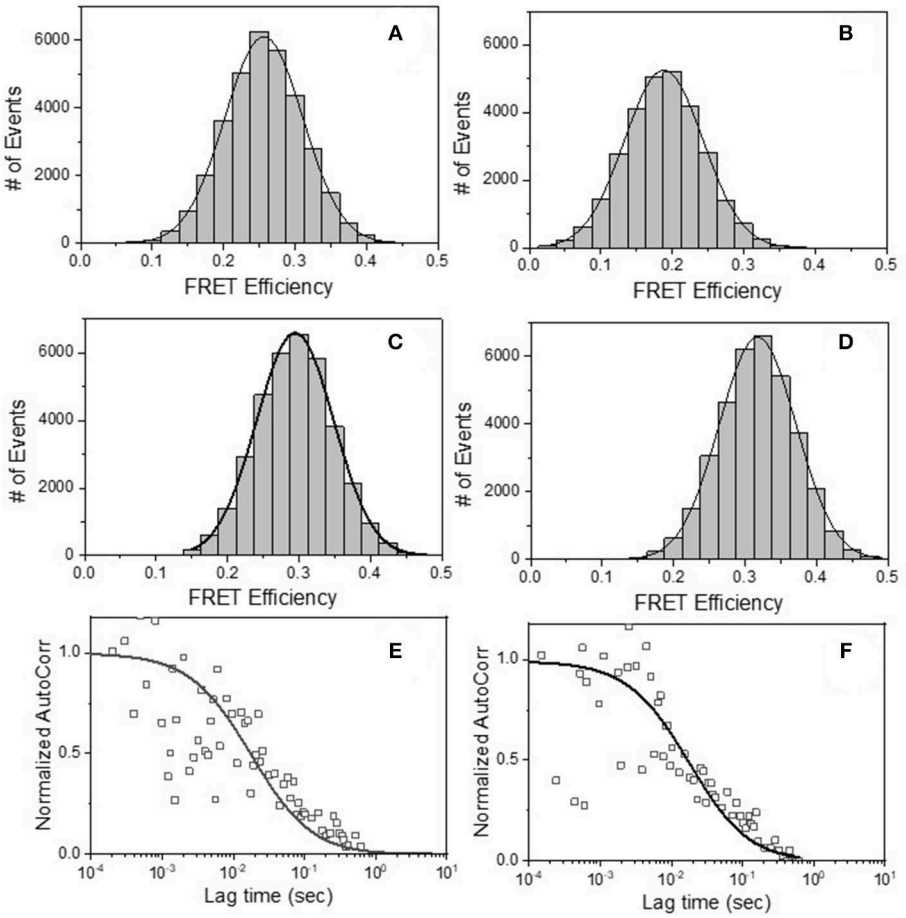


FIGURE 3 | FRET histograms of **(A)** b12 Fab-A488 and 2G12 Fab-A568 **(B)** 2G12 Fab-A488 and b12 Fab-A568, **(C)** b12 Fab-A488 and F240 Fab-A568 and **(D)** F240 Fab-A488 and b12 Fab-A568 with HIV-1 BaL virions. The solid lines in **(A–D)** are fit with a Gaussian distribution to the experimental FRET histogram data. Autocorrelation plots of the acceptor channel for **(E)** b12 Fab-A488 and 2G12 Fab-A568 and **(F)** b12 Fab-A488 and F240 Fab-A568 with HIV-1 BaL virions. The solid lines in **(E,F)** represent the fit to the experimental data. All experiments were repeated three times with similar results.

The prevalence of the above associations in the virus population was considered by comparing the events that exhibited any degree of FRET signal (**Figures 3A,B**) to the total number of events possibly observed under the reaction conditions used (see methods for calculation). These analyses indicated that in reactions with b12 Fab-A488 and 2G12 Fab-A568 or 2G12 Fab-A488 and b12 Fab-A568, donor-acceptor pairs, FRET signals covered 70–75% of the total possible observable events under the experimental system. Taken together, the data indicated that b12 and 2G12 Fabs bound to a single Env structure presented by the majority of particles observed in the FCS system.

We next applied FRET-FCS to reaction mixtures containing Fab fragments of b12 and F240 mixed with the HIV-1 BaL virions. The labeling of the two Fabs (A488 donor vs. A568 acceptor) were reciprocally interchanged to confirm that any FRET measures were not biased by the donor/acceptor labeling strategy. Moreover, FRET signals were not detected in reactions with donor (A488) and acceptor (A568) labeled Fabs in the absence of HIV-1 virions (data not shown). This was expected, as there was no reason for the Fabs to remain in association outside of random diffusion such that a FRET signal could be generated. As shown in **Figure 3**, FRET signals were again detected when combinations of b12 Fab-A488 and F240 Fab-A568 (Panel C) or F240 Fab-A488 and b12 Fab-A568 (Panel D) were mixed with HIV-1 BaL. Single diffusion coefficients calculated for the acceptor channel were 6 $\mu m^2/s$, consistent with signals emanating from objects with the size of HIV virions (**Figures 3E,F**). As above, the number of events that exhibited any degree of FRET signal (**Figures 3C,D**) were compared to the total number of events possibly observed in the system considering the recording time and sampling frequency (see methods). The analyses showed that in reactions with b12 Fab-A488 and F240 Fab-A568 or F240 Fab-A488 and b12 Fab-A568 donor-acceptor pairs, FRET signals covered 75 and 72% of the total possible observable events in the system. Gaussian fitting to the FRET histogram data (**Figures 3C,D**) reflected FRET efficiencies of 30–35% regardless of dye pairing. This in turn

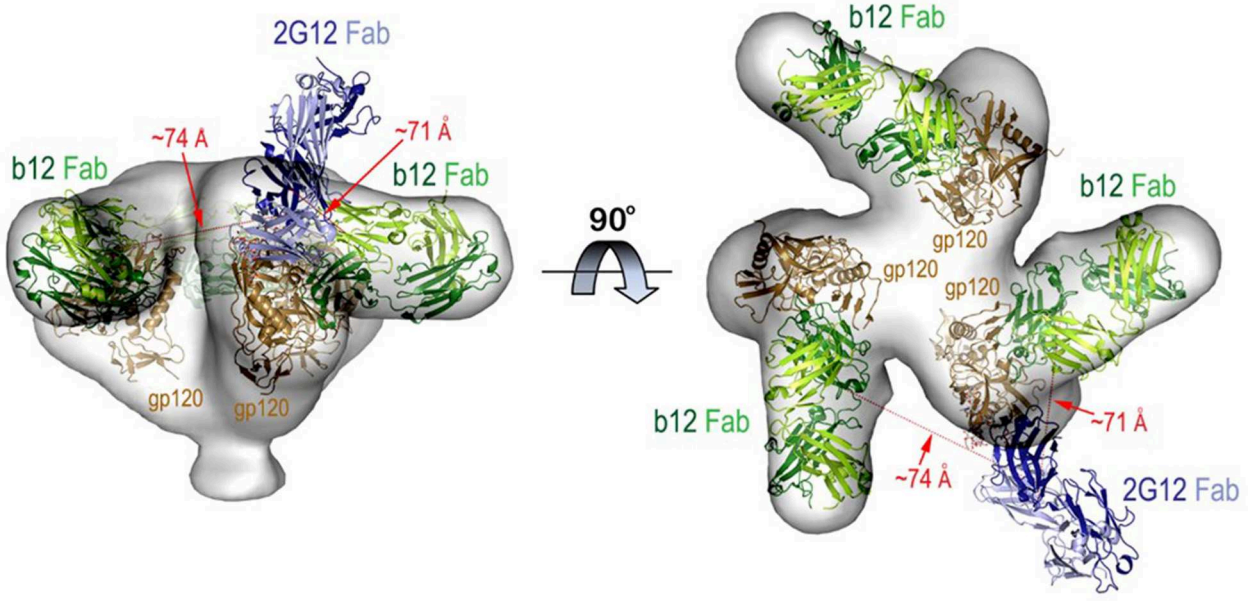


FIGURE 4 | Molecular model for b12 and 2G12 Fabs bound to the same HIV-1 trimer. The model was built using cryoEM structure of the virion associated HIV-1 trimer complexed with b12 Fab and 2G12 Fab-$Man_9GlcNAc_2$ complex as described in Methods. The relative distances (shown as red dotted lines) between the Fabs were measured from the centers of variable domains of each Fab. Molecular surface is displayed over the HIV-trimer and Fabs are shown in ribbon diagrams.

indicates that b12 Fab and F240 Fab bind in close proximity; ∼7.1 nm apart (in the range of 6.6–8 nm) on some sort of gp120-gp41 complex.

Similar experiments were carried out with 2G12 Fab-A488 and F240 Fab-A568 pairs. **Figure 5A** shows the FRET histogram of the Fabs with HIV-1 BaL virions. Again, the histogram plot reflected 30% FRET efficiency and Fab positions ∼7.1 nm apart (in the range of 6.4–8.1 nm). The FCS auto-correlation curve in the acceptor channel exhibited only a single diffusion corresponding to a HIV-1 BaL virion. To determine whether the FRET-FCS measures with HIV-1 BaL virions were generalizable, additional experiments were conducted in which the targets were either AT-2 inactivated HIV-1 BaL virus (produced in SupT1-CCR5 CL.30 cells) (41, 49) or a transmitted founder (T/F) infectious molecular clone (AD17) produced in HEK293T cells (36). As shown in **Figure 5**, both viruses exhibited FRET signals when reacted with 2G12 Fab-A488 and F240-Fab-A568 donor-acceptor pairs. The FRET pattern with the AT-2 inactivated HIV-1 BaL (**Figure 5C**), and predicted binding distance of the Fabs were comparable to what was detected with the HIV-1 BaL pseudovirus (**Figure 5A**). Between the two viruses, a slightly lower FRET efficiency was observed for HIV-1 AD17 (**Figure 5B**). One possible explanation is that HIV-1 BaL and AD17 present slightly different gp120-gp41 surface structures coincidently reactive with both Fab F240 and Fab 2G12. In any case, FRET-linked concurrent binding of the Fabs comprised 66, 58, and 58% of the total possible events in the system (see methods) for the HIV-1 BaL; HIV-1 AD17 or AT-2 inactivated HIV-1 BaL virions, respectively. These FRET-reactive fractions of the virus population were lower than what was observed with co-localized binding of b12 and F240 Fabs (see above).

HIV-1 BaL is a "tier 1b" virus, meaning it has a relatively "open" Env structure more sensitive to neutralization by a wider variety of anti-Env mAbs. Thus, we performed additional FRET-FCS experiments with a tier-2, CCR5 tropic JRFL pseudovirus; i.e., one expressing a "closed" Env structure resistant to neutralization by most mAbs. Reactions were run with fluorescent labeled neutralizing Fabs of 2G12, b12, N49P7 [a CD4 binding site potent broadly neutralizing mAb (14)] and PG9 [a potent broadly neutralizing mAb targeted to quaternary structure in the V1-V2 loops of gp120 (68–70)] along with F240 Fab. The PG9 gp120 epitope is predicted to be at a substantial distance (∼9 nm) from F240 in a single trimer, approaching the limit where FRET becomes undetectable. Nevertheless, PG9 Fab was tested as it interacts with two gp120 protomers in the trimer (68–70) and thus could inform the nature of the target antigen. Specifically, any FRET between PG9 and F240 Fab pairs could indicate the presence of two gp120s in the cognate Env structure. As shown in **Figure 6**, FRET signals were detected when combinations of 2G12 Fab-A488 and F240 Fab-A568 (Panel A); b12 Fab-A488 and F240 Fab-A568 (Panel B) were reacted with HIV-1 JRFL. The average FRET efficiencies for the 2G12-F240 and b12-F240 combinations were 25 and 20%, respectively similar to those observed with the tier-1 HIV-1 BaL virions. Accordingly, the calculated average distances for the 2G12-F240 and b12-F240 Fab pair combinations with HIV-1 BaL virion were 7.4 and 7.8 nm, respectively. FRET signals for the 2G12-F240 and b12-F240 Fab pairs with HIV-1 JRFL virions

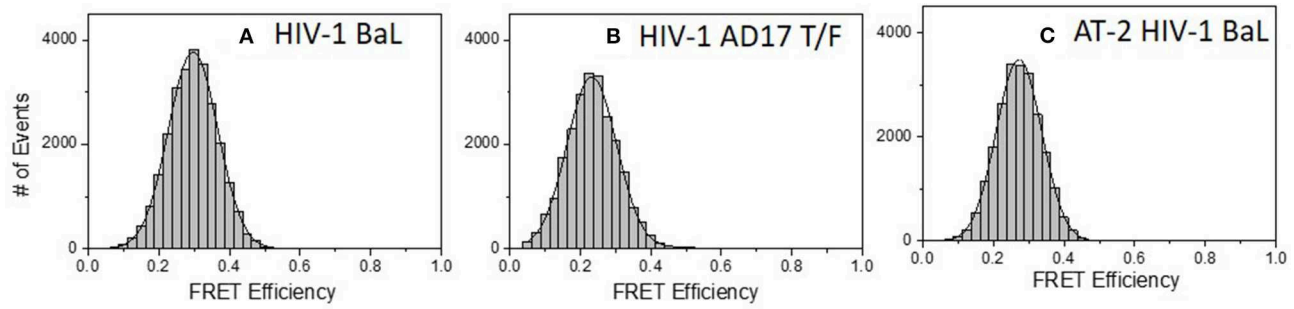


FIGURE 5 | FRET histograms of 2G12 Fab-A488 and F240 Fab-A568 reacted with different virus types: **(A)** HIV-1 BaL, **(B)** HIV-1 AD17 transmitted/founder, and **(C)** AT-2 HIV-1 BaL. The solid lines in **(A–C)** are fit with a Gaussian distribution to the experimental FRET histogram data. All measurements were repeated three times with similar results.

comprised 54 and 61% of the total possible observable events in the system.

FRET signals and efficiencies of 20% between N49P7 Fab-A488 and F240 Fab-A568 with HIV-1 JRFL virions (**Figure 6C**) reflected an average distance of 7.8 nm (in the range of 6.6–8.6 nm) between the two Fabs. This distance is similar to the average distance observed with b12-F240 Fab pairs, as expected, considering both b12 and N49P7 are CD4bs mAbs. FRET signals for the N49P7-F240 Fabs with HIV-1 JRFL virions comprised 56% of the total possible observable events in the system. The histogram for the combinations of PG9 Fab-A488 and F240 Fab-A568 mixed with HIV-1 JRFL (**Figure 6D**) reflected a FRET efficiency of about 10% for PG9-F240 pairs suggesting an average distance of 9 nm (in the range of 7.5–9.5 nm) between the two Fabs. As noted above, this result is in accordance with the available structural information of the distance between the PG9 epitope in the V1-V2 region of gp120 and F240 epitope in gp41 (41, 68–70). Notably, FRET signals from the PG9-F240 Fabs with HIV-1 JRFL virions comprised only 32% of the total possible observable events. The fit to autocorrelation plots (**Figures 6E–H**) for the acceptor channel for all the neutralizing and non-neutralizing Fab combinations showed single diffusion coefficients of 6 $\mu m^2/s$, consistent with signals emanating from objects with the size of HIV-1 virions.

DISCUSSION

Our previous FCS experiments showed that neutralizing mAbs 2G12, b12, and PG9; and the non-neutralizing anti-gp41mAb F240, bind often and efficiently to various pseudoviruses and full length infectious molecular clones produced in different ways (36). However, those analyses did not distinguish whether each mAb bound a specific subset of virions, nor did they reflect how individual virions react with multiple mAb specificities. Under the FCS conditions used here, we were able to make such determinations as each measured fluorescence event stemmed from roughly 1–2 particles in the focal volume being assayed (**Figure S1**). The diffusion coefficients of the collected signals further affirmed that they arose from objects the size of retroviral particles.

Dual color FCS established that the neutralizing mAbs 2G12 and b12 concurrently bound the majority of individual HIV-1 BaL pseudovirions in the population (**Figure 1**), and frequently enabled FRET signals (**Figure 3**) indicating occupancy of the same functional trimer, consistent with structural predictions obtained by *in silico* modeling (**Figure 4**). Observations of neutralizing antibodies bind concurrently to the same trimer are not particularly surprising from a virological standpoint; but the data as such support the utility of the approach. Moving to FRET analyses of other epitopes, a more unexpected yet consistent observation was the concurrent and highly localized binding of F240 Fab and 2G12 Fab to HIV-1 BaL and JRFL viruses; AT-2 inactivated HIV-1 BaL virions from another source; and the HIV-1 AD17 T/F molecular clone (**Figures 5**, **6**). We also detected tightly localized binding of F240 Fab and N49P7 or PG9 Fab on the Tier 2 HIV-1 JRFL pseudoviruses (**Figure 6**).

The F240 epitope is occluded on intact Env trimers (41) and is often assumed to reside only on gp41 "stumps" on the virion surface (26). We cannot eliminate the possibility that some virions present such gp41 structures. Nevertheless, our data suggest the existence of another, previously unexpected type of Env structure that expresses the F240 epitope within 10 nm of a variety of broadly neutralizing sites, spaced to avoid steric competition between cognate Fabs. It seems implausible that multiple Env-derived structures (e.g., a gp41 "stump" and non-specifically adsorbed gp120 monomers of some sort) could develop a surface structure comprising the epitope positioning we measured. A more likely possibility is that the F240 and gp120 epitopes are co-located on a misfolded or partially denatured trimer segment that remains membrane-anchored, retains one or more gp120 protomers, and exposes the gp41 Cluster I domain. Detection of FRET with F240 and PG9 Fabs suggests the presence of two closely spaced gp120 protomers in the target antigen. However, FRET signals for these Fabs were detected less often (roughly 30%) among the total possible observable events, compared to the other epitope pairs. One explanation for the difference is that F240 and PG9 are co-expressed on a relatively infrequent structure, compared to a more common one expressing F240 with 2G12, b12, or N49P7. Another explanation could be

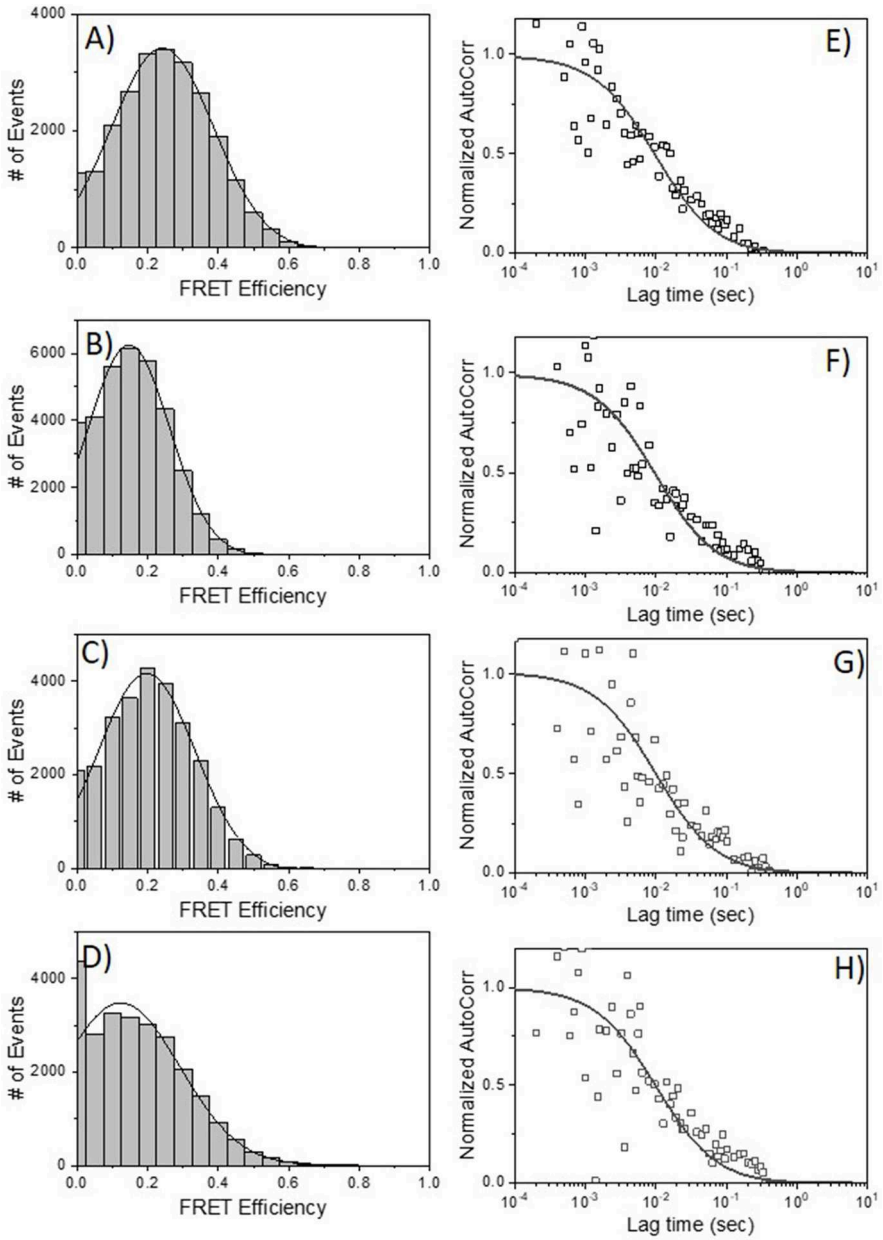


FIGURE 6 | FRET histograms of Fab pairs tested with Tier 2 HIV-1 JRFL virions. **(A)** 2G12 Fab-A488 and F240 Fab-A568; **(B)** b12 Fab-A488 and F240 Fab-A568; **(C)** N49P7 Fab-A488 and F240 Fab-A568 and **(D)** PG9 Fab-A488 and F240 Fab-A568. The solid lines in **(A–D)** are fit with a Gaussian distribution to the experimental FRET histogram data. Autocorrelation plots of the acceptor channel for **(E)** 2G12 Fab-A488 and F240 Fab-A568; **(F)** b12 Fab-A488 and F240 Fab-A568; **(G)** N49P7 Fab-A488 and F240 Fab-A568 and **(H)** PG9 Fab-A488 and F240 Fab-A568 with HIV-1 JRFL virions. The solid lines in **(E–H)** represent the fit to the experimental data. All measurements were repeated three times with similar results.

dynamic and heterogeneous positioning of PG9 Fab vs. F240 Fab, sometimes outside the FRET window, within the virion population. **Figure 7** summarizes potential scenarios for F240 and neutralizing anti-gp120 epitope presentation on virions that are consistent with the FCS data considered above. It must be noted that these sorts of Env antigens have not been apparent via virion capture approaches. One possible explanation is that the gp120-gp41 interactions in these structures are too fragile to withstand the capture process without experiencing further degradation.

Humoral immunity includes multiple Fab- and/or Fc-driven mechanisms capable of suppressing viral infections. Thus, any conserved viral epitopes on replication-competent viruses, even if non-neutralizing, are potential points of vulnerability. Humoral responses against influenza and Ebola viruses are important cases in point, where protection from infection by

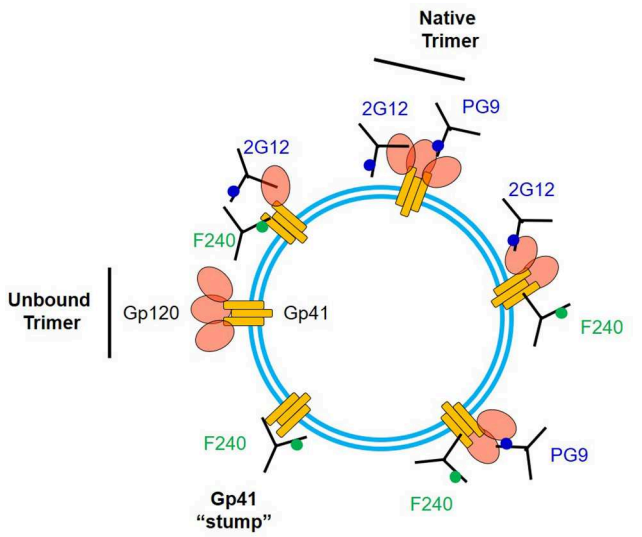


FIGURE 7 | Array of some possible structures on virion surfaces including ones that could co-express F240 and neutralizing epitopes. 2G12 and PG9 epitopes are shown as examples of the latter.

non-neutralizing antibodies has been repeatedly demonstrated (71–75). In the HIV-1 system, non-neutralizing epitopes are often considered in the context of aberrant Env structures (e.g., gp41 "stumps") on replication-defective particles while broadly neutralizing epitopes are often taken as a marker for replication-competent virions (9, 25, 26, 33, 34). However, our investigation of unadulterated, single virions in solution reveals that there is overlapping expression of both sorts of epitopes on the same virion and even on the same surface Env structures. Further, this overlap can be apparent on the majority of virions in a population. Such data point toward the potential value of developing vaccines that elicit polyclonal anti-Env responses comprising both neutralizing and non-neutralizing antibodies, which in concert may guide multiple effector mechanisms to viruses or virus infected cells.

Going a step further, our data provide a virological basis for considering whether and how certain non-neutralizing responses alone may effectively block infection, by vaccination or other preventive measure targeting gp41. In various animal models of HIV-1 infection, antibodies to F240 and related/overlapping Cluster I epitopes on gp41 have already been linked to varying degrees of resistance (31, 42, 43, 76, 77). Our data indicate that such *in vivo* effects may involve selective activity against virions, particularly given other evidence that Cluster I epitopes are poorly expressed on infected cells (41). Vaccines that generate such responses, particularly at points of mucosal exposure, merit exploration and may now be developed using new information concerning Env structures on free virions.

DATA AVAILABILITY

All data sets generated for this study are included in the manuscript and/or the **Supplementary File**.

AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

KR designed the research, performed experiments, analyzed the data, and wrote the manuscript. MM and CO performed experiments. MP performed structural modeling. GL analyzed the data. AD designed the research, analyzed data, and wrote the manuscript.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Research reported in this publication was supported by the National Institute of General Medical Sciences and National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, of the National Institutes of Health under Award Numbers (R01 GM117836 and R01 GM117836-S1 to KR) and (P01 AI120756 to AD). The content is solely the responsibility of the authors and does not necessarily represent the official views of the National Institutes of Health.

SUPPLEMENTARY MATERIAL

The Supplementary Material for this article can be found online at: https://www.frontiersin.org/articles/10.3389/fimmu.2019.01512/full#supplementary-material

Figure S1 | Number of fluorescent eGFP.vpr HIV-1 BAL virions in the FCS focal volume (~1 fL) as a function of input p24 concentration. The measurements were performed in triplicates and average values are shown. Error bars indicate standard deviations.

REFERENCES

1. Kwong PD, Wyatt R, Robinson J, Sweet RW, Sodroski J, Hendrickson WA. Structure of an HIV gp120 envelope glycoprotein in complex with the CD4 receptor and a neutralizing human antibody. *Nature.* (1998) 393:648–59. doi: 10.1038/31405
2. Leonard CK, Spellman MW, Riddle L, Harris RJ, Thomas JN, Gregory TJ. Assignment of intrachain disulfide bonds and characterization of potential glycosylation sites of the type 1 recombinant human immunodeficiency virus envelope glycoprotein (gp120) expressed in Chinese hamster ovary cells. *J Biol Chem.* (1990) 265:10373–82.
3. Wei X, Decker JM, Wang S, Hui H, Kappes JC, Wu X, et al. Antibody neutralization and escape by HIV-1. *Nature.* (2003) 422:307–12. doi: 10.1038/nature01470
4. Hahn BH, Gonda MA, Shaw GM, Popovic M, Hoxie JA, Gallo RC, et al. Genomic diversity of the acquired immune deficiency syndrome virus HTLV-III: different viruses exhibit greatest divergence in their envelope genes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (1985) 82:4813–7. doi: 10.1073/pnas.82.14.4813
5. Hartley O, Klasse PJ, Sattentau QJ, Moore JP. V3: HIV's switch-hitter. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses.* (2005) 21:171–89. doi: 10.1089/aid.2005.21.171
6. Saag MS, Hahn BH, Gibbons J, Li Y, Parks ES, Parks WP, et al. Extensive variation of human immunodeficiency virus type-1 *in vivo*. *Nature.* (1988) 334:440–4. doi: 10.1038/334440a0
7. Wyatt R, Kwong PD, Desjardins E, Sweet RW, Robinson J, Hendrickson WA, et al. The antigenic structure of the HIV gp120 envelope glycoprotein. *Nature.* (1998) 393:705–11. doi: 10.1038/31514

8. Burton DR, Stanfield RL, Wilson IA. Antibody vs. HIV in a clash of evolutionary titans. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2005) 102:14943–8. doi: 10.1073/pnas.0505126102
9. Arakelyan A, Fitzgerald W, King DF, Rogers P, Cheeseman HM, Grivel JC, et al. Flow virometry analysis of envelope glycoprotein conformations on individual HIV virions. *Sci Rep*. (2017) 7:948. doi: 10.1038/s41598-017-00935-w
10. Fung MS, Sun CR, Gordon WL, Liou RS, Chang TW, Sun WN, et al. Identification and characterization of a neutralization site within the second variable region of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 gp120. *J Virol*. (1992) 66:848–56.
11. Putney SD, Matthews TJ, Robey WG, Lynn DL, Robert-Guroff M, Mueller WT, et al. HTLV-III/LAV-neutralizing antibodies to an E. coli-produced fragment of the virus envelope. *Science*. (1986) 234:1392–5. doi: 10.1126/science.2431482
12. Rusche JR, Javaherian K, McDanal C, Petro J, Lynn DL, Grimaila R, et al. Antibodies that inhibit fusion of human immunodeficiency virus-infected cells bind a 24-amino acid sequence of the viral envelope, gp120. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (1988) 85:3198–202. doi: 10.1073/pnas.85.9.3198
13. Sattentau QJ. Neutralization of HIV-1 by antibody. *Curr Opin Immunol*. (1996) 8:540–5. doi: 10.1016/S0952-7915(96)80044-6
14. Sajadi MM, Dashti A, Rikhtegaran Tehrani Z, Tolbert WD, Seaman MS, Ouyang X, et al. Identification of near-pan-neutralizing antibodies against HIV-1 by deconvolution of plasma humoral responses. *Cell*. (2018) 173:1783–95 e14. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2018.03.061
15. Zhou T, Georgiev I, Wu X, Yang ZY, Dai K, Finzi A, et al. Structural basis for broad and potent neutralization of HIV-1 by antibody VRC01. *Science*. (2010) 329:811–7. doi: 10.1126/science.1192819
16. Sok D, Burton DR. Recent progress in broadly neutralizing antibodies to HIV. *Nat Immunol*. (2018) 19:1179–88. doi: 10.1038/s41590-018-0235-7
17. Moldt B, Rakasz EG, Schultz N, Chan-Hui PY, Swiderek K, Weisgrau KL, et al. Highly potent HIV-specific antibody neutralization *in vitro* translates into effective protection against mucosal SHIV challenge *in vivo*. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2012) 109:18921–5. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1214785109
18. Pauthner MG, Nkolola JP, Havenar-Daughton C, Murrell B, Reiss SM, Bastidas R, et al. Vaccine-induced protection from homologous tier 2 SHIV challenge in nonhuman primates depends on serum-neutralizing antibody titers. *Immunity*. (2019) 50:241–52 e6. doi: 10.1016/j.immuni.2018.11.011
19. Hessell AJ, Rakasz EG, Poignard P, Hangartner L, Landucci G, Forthal DN, et al. Broadly neutralizing human anti-HIV antibody 2G12 is effective in protection against mucosal SHIV challenge even at low serum neutralizing titers. *PLoS Pathog*. (2009) 5:e1000433. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000433
20. DeVico AL. CD4-induced epitopes in the HIV envelope glycoprotein, gp120. *Curr HIV Res*. (2007) 5:561–71. doi: 10.2174/157016207782418560
21. Mengistu M, Ray K, Lewis GK, DeVico AL. Antigenic properties of the human immunodeficiency virus envelope glycoprotein gp120 on virions bound to target cells. *PLoS Pathog*. (2015) 11:e1004772. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1004772
22. Guan Y, Pazgier M, Sajadi MM, Kamin-Lewis R, Al-Darmarki S, Flinko R, et al. Diverse specificity and effector function among human antibodies to HIV-1 envelope glycoprotein epitopes exposed by CD4 binding. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2013) 110:E69–78. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1217609110
23. Mengistu M, Tang AH, Foulke JS Jr, Blanpied TA, Gonzalez MW, Spouge JL, et al. Patterns of conserved gp120 epitope presentation on attached HIV-1 virions. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2017) 114:E9893–902. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1705074114
24. Herrera C, Spenlehauer C, Fung MS, Burton DR, Beddows S, Moore JP. Nonneutralizing antibodies to the CD4-binding site on the gp120 subunit of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 do not interfere with the activity of a neutralizing antibody against the same site. *J Virol*. (2003) 77:1084–91. doi: 10.1128/JVI.77.2.1084-1091.2003
25. Poignard P, Moulard M, Golez E, Vivona V, Franti M, Venturini S, et al. Heterogeneity of envelope molecules expressed on primary human immunodeficiency virus type 1 particles as probed by the binding of neutralizing and nonneutralizing antibodies. *J Virol*. (2003) 77:353–65. doi: 10.1128/JVI.77.1.353-365.2003
26. Moore PL, Crooks ET, Porter L, Zhu P, Cayanan CS, Grise H, et al. Nature of nonfunctional envelope proteins on the surface of human immunodeficiency virus type 1. *J Virol*. (2006) 80:2515–28. doi: 10.1128/JVI.80.5.2515-2528.2006
27. Stott EJ, Chan WL, Mills KH, Page M, Taffs F, Cranage M, et al. Preliminary report: protection of cynomolgus macaques against simian immunodeficiency virus by fixed infected-cell vaccine. *Lancet*. (1990) 336:1538–41. doi: 10.1016/0140-6736(90)93310-L
28. Mills KH, Page M, Chan WL, Kitchin P, Stott EJ, Taffs F, et al. Protection against SIV infection in macaques by immunization with inactivated virus from the BK28 molecular clone, but not with BK28-derived recombinant env and gag proteins. *J Med Primatol*. (1992) 21:50–8.
29. Stott EJ. Anti-cell antibody in macaques. *Nature*. (1991) 353:393. doi: 10.1038/353393a0
30. Page M, Quartey-Papafio R, Robinson M, Hassall M, Cranage M, Stott J, et al. Complement-mediated virus infectivity neutralisation by HLA antibodies is associated with sterilising immunity to SIV challenge in the macaque model for HIV/AIDS. *PLoS ONE*. (2014) 9:e88735. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0088735
31. Horwitz JA, Bar-On Y, Lu CL, Fera D, Lockhart AK, Lorenzi CC, et al. Non-neutralizing antibodies alter the course of HIV-1 infection *in vivo*. *Cell*. (2017) 170:637–48 e10. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2017.06.048
32. Leaman DP, Kinkead H, Zwick MB. In-solution virus capture assay helps deconstruct heterogeneous antibody recognition of human immunodeficiency virus type 1. *J Virol*. (2010) 84:3382–95. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02363-09
33. Liu P, Williams LD, Shen X, Bonsignori M, Vandergrift NA, Overman RG, et al. Capacity for infectious HIV-1 virion capture differs by envelope antibody specificity. *J Virol*. (2014) 88:5165–70. doi: 10.1128/JVI.03765-13
34. Stieh DJ, King DF, Klein K, Aldon Y, McKay PF, Shattock RJ. Discrete partitioning of HIV-1 Env forms revealed by viral capture. *Retrovirology*. (2015) 12:81. doi: 10.1186/s12977-015-0207-z
35. Herrera C, Klasse PJ, Michael E, Kake S, Barnes K, Kibler CW, et al. The impact of envelope glycoprotein cleavage on the antigenicity, infectivity, and neutralization sensitivity of Env-pseudotyped human immunodeficiency virus type 1 particles. *Virology*. (2005) 338:154–72. doi: 10.1016/j.virol.2005.05.002
36. Ray K, Mengistu M, Yu L, Lewis GK, Lakowicz JR, DeVico AL. Antigenic properties of the HIV envelope on virions in solution. *J Virol*. (2014) 88:1795–808. doi: 10.1128/JVI.03048-13
37. Cavacini LA, Emes CL, Wisnewski AV, Power J, Lewis G, Montefiori D, et al. Functional and molecular characterization of human monoclonal antibody reactive with the immunodominant region of HIV type 1 glycoprotein 41. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses*. (1998) 14:1271–80. doi: 10.1089/aid.1998.14.1271
38. Xu JY, Gorny MK, Palker T, Karwowska S, Zolla-Pazner S. Epitope mapping of two immunodominant domains of gp41, the transmembrane protein of human immunodeficiency virus type 1, using ten human monoclonal antibodies. *J Virol*. (1991) 65:4832–8.
39. Tyler DS, Stanley SD, Zolla-Pazner S, Gorny MK, Shadduck PP, Langlois AJ, et al. Identification of sites within gp41 that serve as targets for antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity by using human monoclonal antibodies. *J Immunol*. (1990) 145:3276–82.
40. Cavacini LA, Duval M, Robinson J, Posner MR. Interactions of human antibodies, epitope exposure, antibody binding and neutralization of primary isolate HIV-1 virions. *AIDS*. (2002) 16:2409–17. doi: 10.1097/00002030-200212060-00005
41. Gohain N, Tolbert WD, Orlandi C, Richard J, Ding S, Chen X, et al. Molecular basis for epitope recognition by non-neutralizing anti-gp41 antibody F240. *Sci Rep*. (2016) 6:36685. doi: 10.1038/srep36685
42. Burton DR, Hessell AJ, Keele BF, Klasse PJ, Ketas TA, Moldt B, et al. Limited or no protection by weakly or nonneutralizing antibodies against vaginal SHIV challenge of macaques compared with a strongly neutralizing antibody. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2011) 108:11181–6. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1103012108
43. Santra S, Tomaras GD, Warrier R, Nicely NI, Liao HX, Pollara J, et al. Human non-neutralizing HIV-1 envelope monoclonal antibodies limit the number of founder viruses during SHIV mucosal infection in rhesus macaques. *PLoS Pathog*. (2015) 11:e1005042. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1005042
44. Binley JM, Cayanan CS, Wiley C, Schulke N, Olson WC, Burton DR. Redox-triggered infection by disulfide-shackled human

immunodeficiency virus type 1 pseudovirions. *J Virol*. (2003) 77:5678–84. doi: 10.1128/JVI.77.10.5678-5684.2003
45. Li Y, Svehla K, Mathy NL, Voss G, Mascola JR, Wyatt R. Characterization of antibody responses elicited by human immunodeficiency virus type 1 primary isolate trimeric and monomeric envelope glycoproteins in selected adjuvants. *J Virol*. (2006) 80:1414–26. doi: 10.1128/JVI.80.3.1414-1426.2006
46. Li H, Bar KJ, Wang S, Decker JM, Chen Y, Sun C, et al. High multiplicity infection by HIV-1 in men who have sex with men. *PLoS Pathog*. (2010) 6:e1000890. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000890
47. Li M, Salazar-Gonzalez JF, Derdeyn CA, Morris L, Williamson C, Robinson JE, et al. Genetic and neutralization properties of subtype C human immunodeficiency virus type 1 molecular env clones from acute and early heterosexually acquired infections in Southern Africa. *J Virol*. (2006) 80:11776–90. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01730-06
48. Rossio JL, Esser MT, Suryanarayana K, Schneider DK, Bess JW Jr, Vasquez GM, et al. Inactivation of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infectivity with preservation of conformational and functional integrity of virion surface proteins. *J Virol*. (1998) 72:7992–8001.
49. Miller E, Spadaccia M, Sabado R, Chertova E, Bess J, Trubey CM, et al. Autologous aldrithiol-2-inactivated HIV-1 combined with polyinosinic-polycytidylic acid-poly-L-lysine carboxymethylcellulose as a vaccine platform for therapeutic dendritic cell immunotherapy. *Vaccine*. (2015) 33:388–95. doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2014.10.054
50. Schaeffer E, Geleziunas R, Greene WC. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 Nef functions at the level of virus entry by enhancing cytoplasmic delivery of virions. *J Virol*. (2001) 75:2993–3000. doi: 10.1128/JVI.75.6.2993-3000.2001
51. Hess ST, Huang S, Heikal AA, Webb WW. Biological and chemical applications of fluorescence correlation spectroscopy: a review. *Biochemistry*. (2002) 41:697–705. doi: 10.1021/bi0118512
52. Bacia K, Kim SA, Schwille P. Fluorescence cross-correlation spectroscopy in living cells. *Nat Methods*. (2006) 3:83–9. doi: 10.1038/nmeth822
53. Schwille P, Meyer-Almes FJ, Rigler R. Dual-color fluorescence cross-correlation spectroscopy for multicomponent diffusional analysis in solution. *Biophys J*. (1997) 72:1878–86. doi: 10.1016/S0006-3495(97)78833-7
54. Summers MF, Henderson LE, Chance MR, Bess JW Jr, South TL, Blake PR, Sagi I, et al. Nucleocapsid zinc fingers detected in retroviruses: EXAFS studies of intact viruses and the solution-state structure of the nucleocapsid protein from HIV-1. *Protein Sci*. (1992) 1:563–74. doi: 10.1002/pro.5560010502
55. Tang S, Zhao J, Wang A, Viswanath R, Harma H, Little RF, et al. Characterization of immune responses to capsid protein p24 of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 and implications for detection. *Clin Vaccine Immunol*. (2010) 17:1244–51. doi: 10.1128/CVI.00066-10
56. Schuler B, Lipman EA, Eaton WA. Probing the free-energy surface for protein folding with single-molecule fluorescence spectroscopy. *Nature*. (2002) 419:743–7. doi: 10.1038/nature01060
57. Ray K, Sabanayagam CR, Lakowicz JR, Black LW. DNA crunching by a viral packaging motor: compression of a procapsid-portal stalled Y-DNA substrate. *Virology*. (2010) 398:224–32. doi: 10.1016/j.virol.2009.11.047
58. Dixit A, Ray K, Lakowicz JR, Black LW. Dynamics of the T4 bacteriophage DNA packasome motor: endonuclease VII resolvase release of arrested Y-DNA substrates. *J Biol Chem*. (2011) 286:18878–89. doi: 10.1074/jbc.M111.222828
59. Dixit AB, Ray K, Black LW. Compression of the DNA substrate by a viral packaging motor is supported by removal of intercalating dye during translocation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2012) 109:20419–24. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1214318109
60. Gohain N, Tolbert WD, Acharya P, Yu L, Liu T, Zhao P, et al. Cocrystal structures of antibody N60-i3 and antibody JR4 in complex with gp120 define more cluster A epitopes involved in effective antibody-dependent effector function against HIV-1. *J Virol*. (2015) 89:8840–54. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01232-15
61. Liu J, Bartesaghi A, Borgnia MJ, Sapiro G, Subramaniam S. Molecular architecture of native HIV-1 gp120 trimers. *Nature*. (2008) 455:109–13. doi: 10.1038/nature07159
62. Calarese DA, Scanlan CN, Zwick MB, Deechongkit S, Mimura Y, Kunert R, et al. Antibody domain exchange is an immunological solution to carbohydrate cluster recognition. *Science*. (2003) 300:2065–71. doi: 10.1126/science.1083182
63. Calarese DA, Lee HK, Huang CY, Best MD, Astronomo RD, Stanfield RL, et al. Dissection of the carbohydrate specificity of the broadly neutralizing anti-HIV-1 antibody 2G12. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2005) 102:13372–7. doi: 10.1073/pnas.0505763102
64. Burton DR, Pyati J, Koduri R, Sharp SJ, Thornton GB, Parren PW, et al. Efficient neutralization of primary isolates of HIV-1 by a recombinant human monoclonal antibody. *Science*. (1994) 266:1024–7. doi: 10.1126/science.7973652
65. Sullivan N, Sun Y, Sattentau Q, Thali M, Wu D, Denisova G, et al. CD4-Induced conformational changes in the human immunodeficiency virus type 1 gp120 glycoprotein: consequences for virus entry and neutralization. *J Virol*. (1998) 72:4694–703.
66. Bublil EM, Yeger-Azuz S, Gershoni JM. Computational prediction of the cross-reactive neutralizing epitope corresponding to the [corrected] monclonal [corrected] antibody b12 specific for HIV-1 gp120. *Faseb J*. (2006) 20:1762–74. doi: 10.1096/fj.05-5509rev
67. Lee JH, Ozorowski G, Ward AB. Cryo-EM structure of a native, fully glycosylated, cleaved HIV-1 envelope trimer. *Science*. (2016) 351:1043–8. doi: 10.1126/science.aad2450
68. Walker LM, Phogat SK, Chan-Hui PY, Wagner D, Phung P, Goss JL, et al. Broad and potent neutralizing antibodies from an African donor reveal a new HIV-1 vaccine target. *Science*. (2009) 326:285–9. doi: 10.1126/science.1178746
69. McLellan JS, Pancera M, Carrico C, Gorman J, Julien JP, Khayat R, et al. Structure of HIV-1 gp120 V1/V2 domain with broadly neutralizing antibody PG9. *Nature*. (2011) 480:336–43. doi: 10.1038/nature10696
70. Wang H, Gristick HB, Scharf L, West AP, Galimidi RP, Seaman MS, et al. Asymmetric recognition of HIV-1 Envelope trimer by V1V2 loop-targeting antibodies. *Elife*. (2017) 6:27389. doi: 10.7554/eLife.27389
71. Arunkumar GA, Ioannou A, Wohlbold TJ, Meade P, Aslam S, Amanat F, et al. Broadly cross-reactive, non-neutralizing antibodies against the influenza B virus hemagglutinin demonstrate effector function dependent protection against lethal viral challenge in mice. *J Virol*. (2019) 93:e01696-18 doi: 10.1128/JVI.01696-18
72. Saphire EO, Schendel SL, Fusco ML, Gangavarapu K, Gunn BM, Wec AZ, et al. Systematic analysis of monoclonal antibodies against ebola virus GP defines features that contribute to protection. *Cell*. (2018) 174:938–52 e13. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2018.07.033
73. Gunn BM, Yu WH, Karim MM, Brannan JM, Herbert AS, Wec AZ, et al. A role for Fc function in therapeutic monoclonal antibody-mediated protection against ebola virus. *Cell Host Microbe*. (2018) 24:221–33 e5. doi: 10.1016/j.chom.2018.07.009
74. Saphire EO, Schendel SL, Gunn BM, Milligan JC, Alter G. Antibody-mediated protection against Ebola virus. *Nat Immunol*. (2018) 19:1169–78. doi: 10.1038/s41590-018-0233-9
75. Thulin NK, Wang TT. The role of Fc gamma receptors in broad protection against influenza viruses. *Vaccines*. (2018) 6:30036. doi: 10.3390/vaccines6030036
76. Smith AJ, Wietgrefe SW, Shang L, Reilly CS, Southern PJ, Perkey KE, et al. Live simian immunodeficiency virus vaccine correlate of protection: immune complex-inhibitory Fc receptor interactions that reduce target cell availability. *J Immunol*. (2014) 193:3126–33. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1400822
77. Li Q, Zeng M, Duan L, Voss JE, Smith AJ, Pambuccian S, et al. Live simian immunodeficiency virus vaccine correlate of protection: local antibody production and concentration on the path of virus entry. *J Immunol*. (2014) 193:3113–25. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1400820

Conflict of Interest Statement: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

REVIEW
published: 17 July 2019
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.01602

Deciphering Fc-mediated Antiviral Antibody Functions in Animal Models

Alan L. Schmaljohn[1,2]*, *Chiara Orlandi*[2] and *George K. Lewis*[2]

[1] Department of Microbiology and Immunology, University of Maryland School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, United States, [2] Division of Vaccine Research, Institute of Human Virology, University of Maryland School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, United States

Longstanding discordances and enigmas persist as to the specificities and other properties of antibodies (Abs) most effective in preventing or limiting many viral infections in mammals; in turn, failure to decipher key complexities has added to headwinds for both Ab-based therapeutic approaches and rational vaccine design. More recently, experimental approaches have emerged—and continue to emerge—for discerning the functional role of Ab structure, especially the Fc portion of antibody, in combating viral infections *in vivo*. A wide range of *in vitro* measures of antibody activity, from neutralization to antibody-dependent cell mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC)—each of these terms representing only an operational notion defined by the particulars of a given assay—are poised for assignment of both relevance and reliability in forecasting outcomes of infection. Of the several emergent technical opportunities for clarity, attention here is drawn to three realms: the increasing array of known modifications that can be engineered into Abs to affect their *in vivo* activities; the improvement of murine models involving knockouts and knock-ins of host genes including Fc receptors; and the development of additional virological design tools to differentiate Abs that act primarily by inhibiting viral entry from antibodies that mainly target viral antigens (Ags) on cell surfaces. To illustrate some of the opportunities with either zoonotic (emerging, spillover) or ancient human-adapted viruses, we draw examples from a wide range of viruses that affect humans.

Keywords: virus, antibody, Fc, FcR, neutralization, ADCC, animal models

OPEN ACCESS

Edited by:
R. Keith Reeves,
Harvard Medical School,
United States

Reviewed by:
Ann Jones Hessell,
Oregon Health and Science University,
United States
Michal Pyzik,
Brigham and Women's Hospital,
Harvard Medical School,
United States

***Correspondence:**
Alan L. Schmaljohn
aschmaljohn@som.umaryland.edu

Specialty section:
This article was submitted to Comparative Immunology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology

Received: *08 March 2019*
Accepted: *26 June 2019*
Published: *17 July 2019*

Citation:
Schmaljohn AL, Orlandi C and Lewis GK (2019) Deciphering Fc-mediated Antiviral Antibody Functions in Animal Models. Front. Immunol. 10:1602. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.01602

INTRODUCTION

The network of interactions between virus and host is not only complicated, it represents a complex adaptive system of which Ab-mediated immunity is only one important part. Despite the bewildering complexity, some useful generalizations have emerged: *in vivo veritas*; or in a colloquial tautology used in reference to viral vaccines and therapies, *the only correlate of protection is protection*. Direct testing of effectiveness in human trials is the ideal benchmark for licensure of vaccines and therapies for human use; however, in cases for which human testing is unfeasible or unethical (1, 2), indirect rationales for product licensure must be established on the basis of animal models. That is, where human health is the predominant ultimate concern of research and development, and is the standard benchmark of its relevance, the most meaningful *in vitro* assays along with non-human models of disease are sometimes necessary surrogates for human efficacy trials. And while *in vitro* assays can be highly useful as possible statistical correlates of

protection (3), they can also be poor reflections of complex realities: witness the abundant examples in which neutralization, binding titer, or hemagglutination-inhibition assays can be inadequate at best, misleading at worst (4–6). The fullness of what we wish to know about antiviral Abs is to be found in how Abs limit or sometimes exacerbate virus-precipitated disease in the body of an animal.

The scientific narrative on immunity to microbial pathogens has proceeded in waves, with peaks and troughs of emphasis on phagocytic cells, Abs, T cells, innate immunity, regulatory signaling, genomic analyses of immune repertoires, mechanisms of pathogen evasion of host responses, and so forth. Confounding the shifts in perceived importance of various aspects of immunity, there are differences in understanding of operational terms and their acronyms; a few of them used in this manuscript, and their intended meaning, are shown in **Box 1**. It is in this context, and with recognition that there already exist excellent recent reviews on discrete aspects of FcR-dependent antiviral immunity (8–16), that we aspire to offer a brief and possibly more holistic view of just one important aspect of virus-host interactions: the interactions between Abs, viral Ags, FcR, and FcR-bearing cells. We share in the anticipation and excitement of how emerging technologies may offer new experimental insights into complex processes that were previously suspected but unapproachable.

OVERARCHING QUESTIONS

Some viruses yielded long ago to empirical approaches to vaccines and Ab therapies, and those who led such progress (e.g., Jenner, Pasteur, Theiler, Salk, Sabin, Hilleman) are due tremendous credit for their insights, inventiveness, boldness, and dogged determination. Many other viruses have not surrendered so easily to either serendipity or brilliance, and in the more advanced examples, promising vaccines or Ab therapies have not yet completed their costly and uncertain journeys to licensure. It is the intractable and previously orphaned problems at which research is now directed. Restricting attention here to Ab-mediated immunity to viral infections, three major and interrelated questions arise on the path to vaccines and therapies (**Figure 1**). What Ab specificities are responsible for protection and are most desirable for their breadth and safety? What other characteristics of Abs are important for protection, especially in the Fc part of the molecule? And when these answers are known, how might vaccine be configured to elicit the most desirable specificities and types of Abs? The latter questions of immunogenicity and immunodominance have proven problematic for the diverse human population, and rational shaping of immune responses (e.g., fine specificities, types, durability) remains perhaps the greatest challenge of immunology. Here, we focus on experimental approaches to the precursor questions of what *kinds* of Ab response are desirable, and more specifically how hypotheses drawn from provisional *in vitro* correlates of protection might withstand the test of *in vivo* veracity.

THE VIRUS-AB ENCOUNTER

In previous reviews, we probed in some depth the matter of what *in vitro* virus neutralization is and is not, and how it does—and sometimes does not—align with an Ab's capacity to prevent or mitigate viral disease *in vivo* (4). We emphasized the redundancy of protective mechanisms typified by cell-targeting antibodies (CTAbs), i.e., those Abs (neutralizing or not) that mark virus-infected cells for interaction with various populations of Fc receptor (FcR)-bearing cells as well as complement (5). Many of the complexities previously noted, along with the kinds of protective functions that may or may not require FcR interactions, are summarized in **Box 2**). To simplify the narrative in this manuscript, the term "FcR" is used as shorthand for Fc gamma receptor (FcγR) unless otherwise specified. For those steeped in the large array of known FcR on immune effector cells as well as non-classical Fc-binding receptor homologs on a wider array of cells, we can only acknowledge the choice of brevity over an even greater narrative complexity, and point toward some of the many reviews available [e.g., reference (18). and citations in tables therein]. In like fashion, for the sake of brevity and "simplicity," emphasis is on Fc's of IgG molecules despite the many important uncertainties about the antiviral, interfering, or synergizing roles of IgM, IgA, and even IgE in host immunity to viruses (19).

To remind readers who are not steeped in virology, some fundamental features of virus-cell interactions in the context of adaptive immune responses are illustrated (**Figure 2**) to draw attention to the importance of viral replication cycle, the time-and-location distinctions between where Ab-dependent neutralization and Ab-dependent cell-targeting may occur in the cycle, and the rationales by which parts of the immune system mitigate rather than prevent infection. The special case of early, entry-associated targets for ADCC, best described with HIV, was covered in previous reviews (17, 20–23). Parenthetically, we affirm the complementary and interactive natures of Ab and T cell immunity, but that larger topic is not considered here. Moreover, **Figure 2** depicts only the events at a single-cell level, and reserves for elsewhere a discussion of the larger complexities of localized and distant viral spread in the infected host, viral persistence, latency, and biological systems that drive the ultimate outcomes of host survival and viral spread to new hosts.

PARALLELS WITH TUMOR MODELS

In the realm of CTAb, expectations with antiviral Abs are at least partially informed by the literature on Ab-mediated suppression or elimination of tumor cell growth *in vivo*. In fact, the human data with Ab therapy designed to eliminate cells—or otherwise interact with cell surfaces to achieve a biological effect—are more advanced in oncology and autoimmunity than they are in virology, resulting in many more licensed Ab therapies for human use (12, 14, 24, 25). In the case of tumor cell elimination, functions such as ADCC, complement-mediated cytolysis (CMC), and monocyte/macrophage-mediated killing—all categories of activity that are well-dissected yet poorly understood—are appreciated as major immune mechanisms to

BOX 1 | A brief guide to some fraught language.

- **Neutralization:** (virus neutralization) An operational term typically referring to an observed Ab-dependent decrease in viral infectivity, gene product (antigen or tag), genome, spread, or other phenomenon in a particular *in vitro* assay.
- **ADCC:** Ab-dependent cell mediated cytotoxicity, a collective and operational (assay-defined) term rooted in many possible, varied, and nonredundant *in vitro* assays that measure *FeR-dependent activities facilitated by FeR-bearing cells* with readouts such as: target cell lysis; phagocytosis; trogocytosis; NK cell activation; granzyme release; or *ex vivo* FeR binding.
- **CMC:** Ab-dependent, complement-mediated cytotoxicity, typically referring to direct or indirect measurement of lysis of antigen-bearing cells in the presence of specific Ab along with heat-labile proteins known or presumed to execute the full complement cascade. Related assays but requiring addition of FeR-bearing cells include CDCC (complement-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity) and CDCP (complement-dependent cell-mediated phagocytosis)
- **Protection:** Here, this sometimes-ambiguous term refers to any of several favorable outcomes: (1) prevention of viral infection ("sterile" immunity); (2) post-infection control of viral load, with mitigation of acute disease (with or without viral clearance); or (3) in the case of latent or persistent infection, sustained remission of symptoms along with reduced viral load and diminished transmission.

**A common language, with agreement upon the meaning of terms, is often missing from discussions of Ab-mediated immunity to viruses. A few important terms are shown here, as used in this manuscript. Background discussions of neutralization and ADCC have been provided previously (4, 5), and CDCP elsewhere (7).*

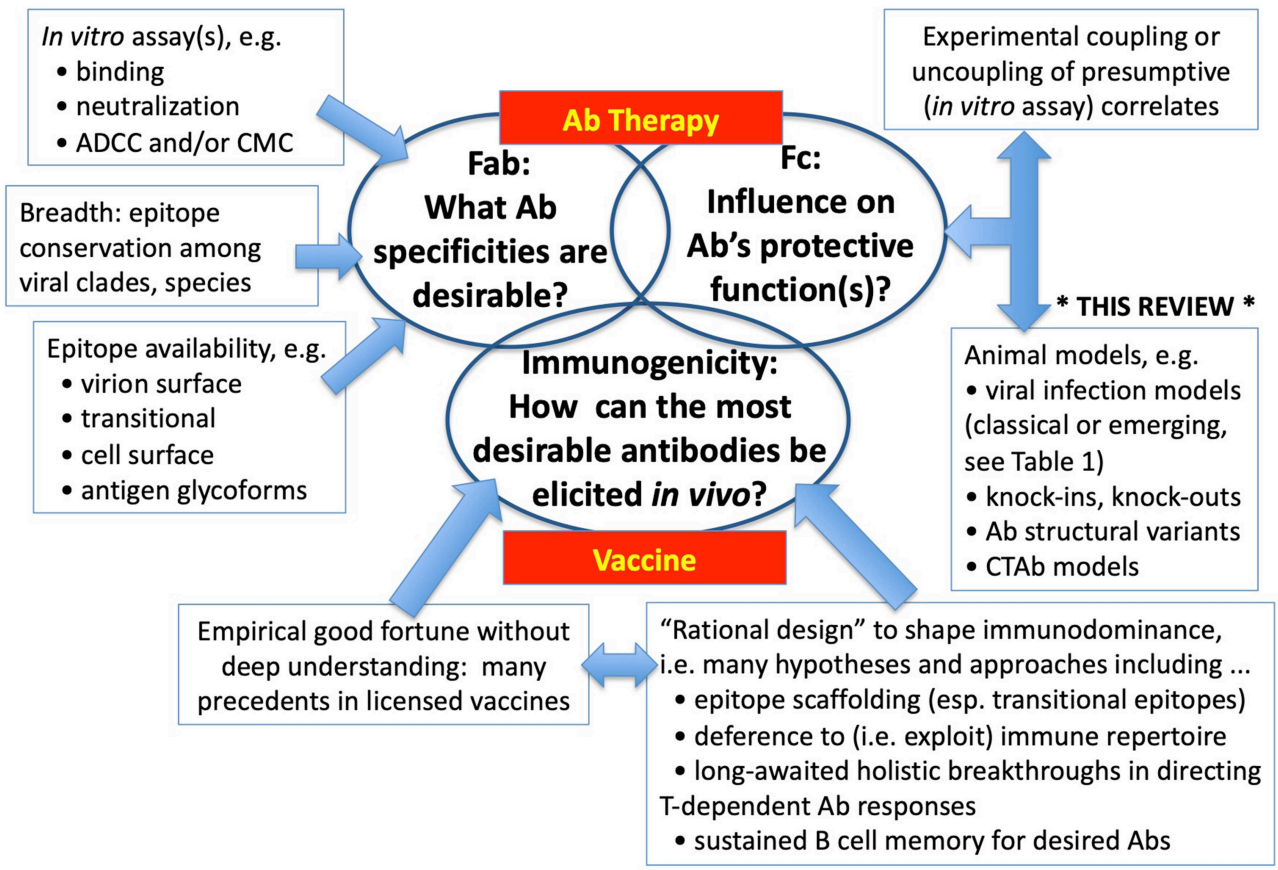


FIGURE 1 | Vaccines and Therapies: Central Questions in Ab-mediated Resistance to Viral Infections. Where empiricism and conventional strategies have not led to effective Ab-based therapies or vaccines, investigators turn to deeper understanding of: (1) the paratope (epitope-binding moiety) on the Fab; (2) the biological function-amplifying structures of Ig molecules located mostly in Fc; and (3) the unsolved complexities of how to construct vaccine Ags and microenvironments (e.g., adjuvants, cytokines) that induce Abs mirroring those most desirable.

be considered and manipulated. Routinely, developers seek to optimize Fc in order to maximize therapeutic effect and, when a proinflammatory response is undesirable, to minimize unhelpful inflammation in clinical trials. Similar clinical endeavors in human virology have been unfeasible or unethical. Nevertheless, where judged relevant, tumor models will be reflected in our considerations of how Abs act against virus-infected cells in Fc-dependent fashions.

BOX 2 | Structure-function considerations in antiviral antibodies that may confer protection*.

"Fc-independent" Ab-binding is sufficient. Fe serves only half-life and valency	"**Fc-dependent" Ab-binding is necessary but insufficient. Fe is required for one or more functions**
• "**Neutralization**" i.e., Abs that act solely as antagonists of viral binding, entry, or launch as in many common assays • **Aggregation** of virions to functionally suppress numbers of infectious units. • **Antagonism of viral assembly**, e.g., competitive inhibitors of trimmer formations or required cleavages. • **Antagonism of viral release** processes, e.g., anti-neuraminidase • **Antagonism of viral "virulence factors**" that otherwise exacerbate disease, promote intercellular spread, or aid transmission	**Opsonization:** Abs that exploit FeR to redirect infectious virions to insusceptible cells, e.g., neutrophils. • **Cell-targeting antibodies (CTAb)** that require Fe receptor (FeR) interaction for manifestation of antiviral effect. - **ADCC** as measured (17) for example by: direct lysis of infected cells; trogocytosis (RFADCC); phagocytosis; granzyme release/signaling by NK - **Complement activation:** lytic cascade; other pleotropic effects of partial complement activation • many other potential interactions

*See Box 1 for meaning of the term "Protection" in this manuscript. For discussions and additional references on these phenomena, refer to past reviews (4, 5).

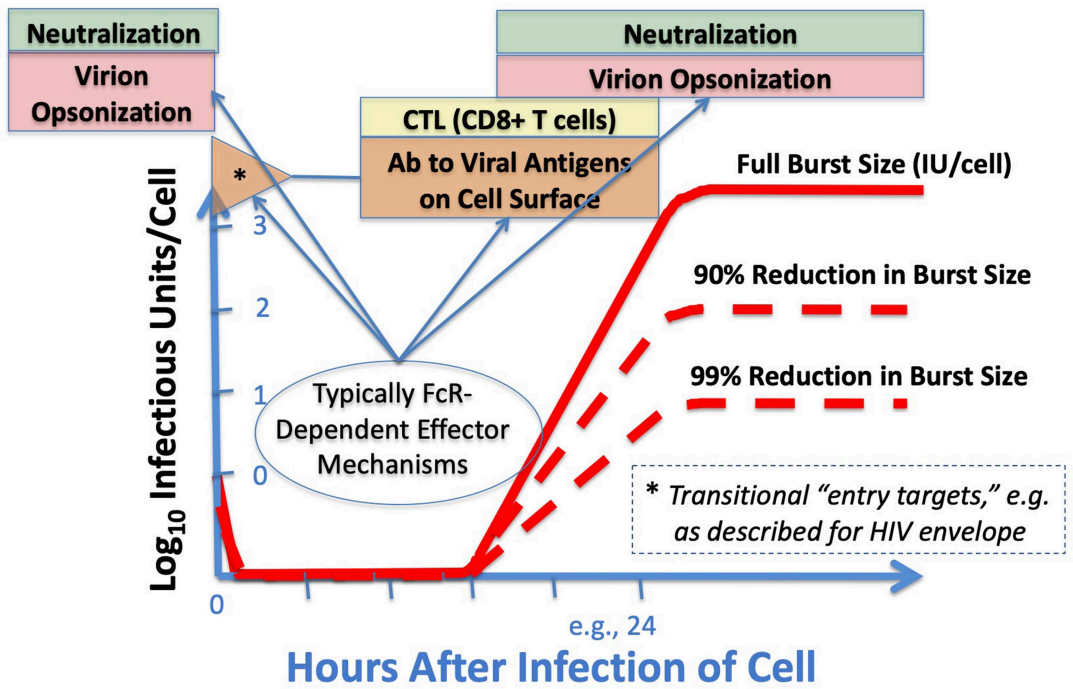


FIGURE 2 | Adaptive immunity at the cellular level, and windows of opportunity. As virus enters cells (here at a multiplicity of infection around 1 infectious unit [IU] per cell, thus non-infectious particles at even higher ratios), disassembles, and then makes new proteins and genomes on the way to making more virions, the targets available to the immune system change. Conventionally, "neutralizing Abs" inactivate or sequester virus extracellularly, either before infection or as virus emerges. FcR-bearing cells can facilitate such extracellular clearance when the FcR-bearing cells are virus-resistant, and additional proteins—such as those of the complement cascade—can augment this opsonization. Before and during viral replication, either T cells (recognizing MHC-associated peptides) or cell-targeting Abs (CTAbs, recognizing emergent and pre-assembly proteins) can disrupt cell integrity and thereby diminish the viral yield per cell (burst size) by many-fold; the sparing of uninfected cells accrues exponentially. In some cases (well-described with HIV), the entering virions display new and early CTAb targets (*) as the viral spike rearranges coincident with receptor engagement. Emphasis in this manuscript is upon recent and emerging experimental tools to decipher the *in vivo* effects of Fc-FcR interactions that result in protection, including those involving Abs shown to score positively with *in vitro* neutralization assays, ADCC assays, or both.

SOME PAST CHALLENGES IN DECIPHERING THE ROLE OF FC IN ANIMAL MODELS

Overwhelmingly, immunological data in non-human species have come from mouse models, where inbred mouse strains and myriad research reagents allow complex cell and Ab transfers. In virology, however, mice tend to be wholly or partially resistant to infection and disease caused by human pathogens of greatest interest; a compromise is sometimes found by serial passage of virus in mice to achieve some semblance of human disease and protection. For many years, even when there was

a palatable model of viral disease in mice, and early data suggested an important role for Fc in Ab-mediated resistance to certain of those viruses (4), data were generally unconvincing in assigning clear relevance to Fc because of technical limits, to wit: the necessary panels of virus-specific monoclonal antibodies (MAbs) having identical paratopes (Ag combining sites) but different Fc moieties were then unachievable. Consequently, a preponderance of evidence that murine MAbs of IgG2a subtype were generally most protective (especially for CTAbs) were less than definitive; Fab and $F(ab)_2$ fragments of Abs were almost exclusively non-protective (or poorly so) but were not directly comparable to intact Ab because the fragments (neutralizing *in vitro* or not) had short half-lives *in vivo*; attempts to deplete FcR-bearing cells *in vivo* were confounded by the overall toxicity and secondary effects of such depletions, so that truly appropriate controls were lacking; complement (C') depletion of mice typically left the protective capacity of whole Abs intact, but redundant mechanisms (ADCC as well as CMC) and incomplete C' depletion remained possibilities. Moreover, when cross-species transfers of Abs were made (e.g., human Abs into mice or non-human primates [NHP], mouse Abs into guinea pigs or NHP), positive protective results (e.g. Ab-mediated protection) were useful but negative results were fraught [not only do anti-Abs arise in a few days to eliminate xeno-Abs, but also the Fc-FcR interactions across species are problematic at best (26)].

ADVANCES IN VIROLOGY AND VIRAL PATHOGENESIS – BEYOND PASSAGE-ADAPTED VIRUSES TO ENGINEERED OR CHIMERIC CHALLENGE VIRUSES, OR VIRUS-SUSCEPTIBLE "HUMANIZED" MICE

In search of an animal model for viral disease, classical adaptation of virus by serial passage sometimes fails repeatedly, and the accumulating evidence on the nature of species barriers for any given virus may sometimes suggest that adaptation through mutation and selective pressure is highly improbable. At best, and through the lens of product licensure, Golding writes, "The establishment of animal models predictive of vaccine effectiveness in humans has been fraught with difficulties with low success rate to date."(1) Today, however, there are many ways to: (1) refashion genes of a human virus to become more likely to cause infection and disease in non-human species; (2) refashion genes of unrelated viral pathogens (e.g., ordinarily restricted to mouse or NHP) to express and incorporate presumptive "protective Ags" of human pathogens, in order to test mechanisms of immunity targeted against those antigens; (3) render a non-human species (especially mice) more human-like in susceptibility through engraftment of human cells, or through specific gene knock-ins (e.g., of human receptors for virus) and knock-outs (e.g., of host-range resistance factors such as interferon). A few examples and references are given in **Table 1**.

CTABS AND THE UTILITY OF CELLS THAT EXPRESS VIRAL AGS

As noted previously (5), the role of Fc-dependent Ab activities on viral clearance *in vivo* has too often been subordinated to an unfruitful "either-or" argument about relative importance of "neutralizing" vs. "non-neutralizing" Abs, when in fact many (but not all) neutralizing monoclonal MAbs (nMAbs) are also potent cell-targeting MAbs (CT-MAbs) see **Boxes 1**, **2**. To separate the effects of conventional nAbs from Abs that also (or exclusively) exert protective effects on viral Ag-expressing cells, the literature on tumor immunology provides useful guides in work that is already well-described and continuously evolving. For example, it is well-established that: (a) MAbs against tumor antigens (expressed on cell surfaces) can direct the elimination of antigen-expressing cells by mechanisms that require appropriate interactions between Fc and FcR (12, 36, 43); (b) anti-tumor activities (both *in vitro* and *in vivo*) can be either improved or diminished by making changes in the Fc portions of MAbs, including glycosylation (39, 44, 45); (c) complement as well as FcR can have a role in cell elimination, and experimental tools to untangle the two are improving (7, 15, 46–49); and (d) MAb interactions with inhibitory FcR can be important determinants of outcome, undermining protective effects and promoting Ag internalization (36, 50–53).

Obviously enough, many of the same experiments could be replicated—and rational improvements in antiviral Ab efficacies (and vaccines) possibly suggested—by testing the capacities of different Abs (in animal models with different FcR) to eliminate cells constitutively expressing viral membrane Ags of interest, as illustrated in **Figure 3B**. Indeed, such work has already begun (41, 42).

In addition to deeper understandings and new directions, practical rewards could arise from the establishment of model systems designed to find mechanistic correlates between *in vitro* assays and *in vivo* elimination of viral Ag-expressing cells: genuinely predictive models could facilitate bridging studies from animal models to human efficacy, otherwise a barrier for licensure of vaccines that require invocation of the "Animal Rule" (1).

CUMULATIVE, SYNERGISTIC, AND ANTAGONISTIC VARIABLES IN DISCERNMENT

As illustrated in **Figure 3**, animal models may be employed to examine effectiveness of Ab given at various times before (prophylactically) or after (therapeutically) the cognate Ag, in this case viral antigen either on virions or cells. Interpretations of outcomes are in some respects straightforward. However, behind the superficial simplicity of Abs including CTAb that may evoke Fc-dependent antiviral effector function, there exists a complex array of binding and signaling events, each with its own quantitative and qualitative dimensions. To simplify, these are illustrated in **Figure 4** as building blocks required to reach a

TABLE 1 | Classical and emerging approaches for deciphering Fc-mediated antiviral Ab functions in animal models.

General experimental approach, tool	Selected (Representative) examples
Where virus cannot cause meaningful infection or disease in a known animal model, *make a new virus*	simian/human HIV (SHIV) (27, 28); reconstructed (and controversial) influenza viruses (29, 30); surrogate live virus (e.g., VSV, vaccinia) expressing Ag from virus-of-interest
Where virus cannot cause meaningful infection or disease in a known animal model, *make a new animal*	Transduced (31) or transgenic (32) mice expressing MERS-CoV receptor; transgenic mice susceptible to hepatitis C (33, 34); multigenetic variants (35)
Identify and exploit naturally uncoupled (i.e., either/or) targets for anti-virion vs. anti-cell Abs	Alphaviruses, poxviruses, flaviviruses [reviewed in (4)]
For a given viral epitope of interest, construct *panel of MAbs having same paratope, different Fc isotypes.*	melanoma cells in mice (36); non-IgG isotypes underexplored; most viral systems reported to date lacked matching paratopes (4, 5, 37, 38)
For a given viral MAb of interest, construct *Ab variants ablated or augmented in FcR binding, complement activation, or other activity*.	tumor immunology (39, 40); influenza virus (6, 8); West Nile virus (38);
Limit examination to CTAbs by expressing one or more viral Ags on cells, then measuring *immune clearance of viral Ag-expressing cells*	HIV expressing influenza HA (41, 42)
Determine whether engineered (knockout) *mice lacking one or more FcR still retain protection by Ab*	West Nile virus (38), influenza (6), HIV (41)
Examine Ab-mediated *protection in mice lacking murine FcR but expressing one or more (knock-in) human FcR*	Mice so designed (26)
Examine Ab-mediated protection in (knockout) *mice lacking discrete FcR-bearing cell lineages*	Presaged in mice newly designed with knock-in human FcR to examine tumor immunity (26)

threshold of activity that is itself variable. Some of these are more widely familiar than others, as described next.

Proceeding from the bottommost variable illustrated in **Figure 4**, the importance of *Ab affinity for its cognate viral epitope* is well-known and foundational in immunology. As a general rule, higher affinity Abs are more active in most *in vitro assays*, and in protection. However, affinity is less an intrinsic property of Ab-epitope interaction than a measurement that can depend (over several orders of magnitude) upon epitope framework, conformation, epitope masking, and dynamic changes (rearrangements) that can occur for example when viral spikes encounter receptors, proteases, or pH changes (4, 5, 54).

Ab *concentration* is a familiar variable insofar as a concentration threshold is typically observed, below which a given Ab (monoclonal or polyclonal) is apparently ineffectual. Related, however, is the role of *Ab biodistribution* (its concentration at the necessary site of activity) which may undermine Ab effectiveness by providing insufficient concentration in critical sites including solid tumors, brain, retina, intestine, lung, and testes (55). Experimentally, as in animal models described here, there is a particular hazard at the opposite end of Ab concentration, i.e., the impulse to empirically screen for Ab effectiveness using high-dose treatments is contraindicated (as a singular approach) by the phenomenon of high-dose *prozone*, which presumably results from a diminution of the formation of complexes necessary for robust Fc-FcR interactions (56), akin to high-dose prozone in classical immunoprecipitation reactions. Another explanation offered [outside the binding-valency model (56)] is that the encounter between high Ab dose and high Ag burden results in an exhaustion of complement components (especially C2 and C4) with the consequence of diminished overall antibody effectiveness *in vivo* (15). In experimental animal models, a range of Ab doses is preferred.

Epitope accessibility refers to the longstanding observation, recapitulated in different ways with many viral Ags (4, 5, 54), that some viral epitopes are available to Ab (and thus to Fc-dependent immune effector mechanisms) only at selected times (or transiently) during the viral entry and growth cycle. We used the word "cryptic" in 1983 to describe epitopes that appear to be inaccessible on intact virions yet available on virus-infected cells; but "availability" may in other instances be an inadequate oversimplification of the dynamic nature of viral spike proteins.

Epitope topology and membrane proximity can determine spatial relationships and steric hindrances that favor one type of Fc-mediated effector function over another, illustrated for example in the development of therapeutic anti-CD20 Abs (40, 57) and strongly implied with a panel of influenza-specific MAbs (6). Some current data suggest that: "… complement-dependent cytotoxicity and Ab-dependent cellular cytotoxicity favored a membrane-proximal epitope, whereas Ab dependent cellular phagocytosis favored an epitope positioned further away." (57) More broadly, the favored (optimal) configuration for a given effector function may vary with different Ag-Ab pairs, exemplified by counter-examples in which HIV-specific MAbs against the "membrane proximal region" of envelope may have negligible effector function (22). Generalizations are difficult, as they are confounded by mechanistic differences between *in vitro* assays (17); *in vivo* efficacy will be decisive.

Ag concentration (or density) on target cells is a factor in shifting the apparent effectiveness of Ab, i.e., there is an inverse relationship between Ag expression on target cells and the amount of Ab required to meet a threshold of Fc-dependent activity. Part of anti-CD20 therapeutic efficacy is attributed to

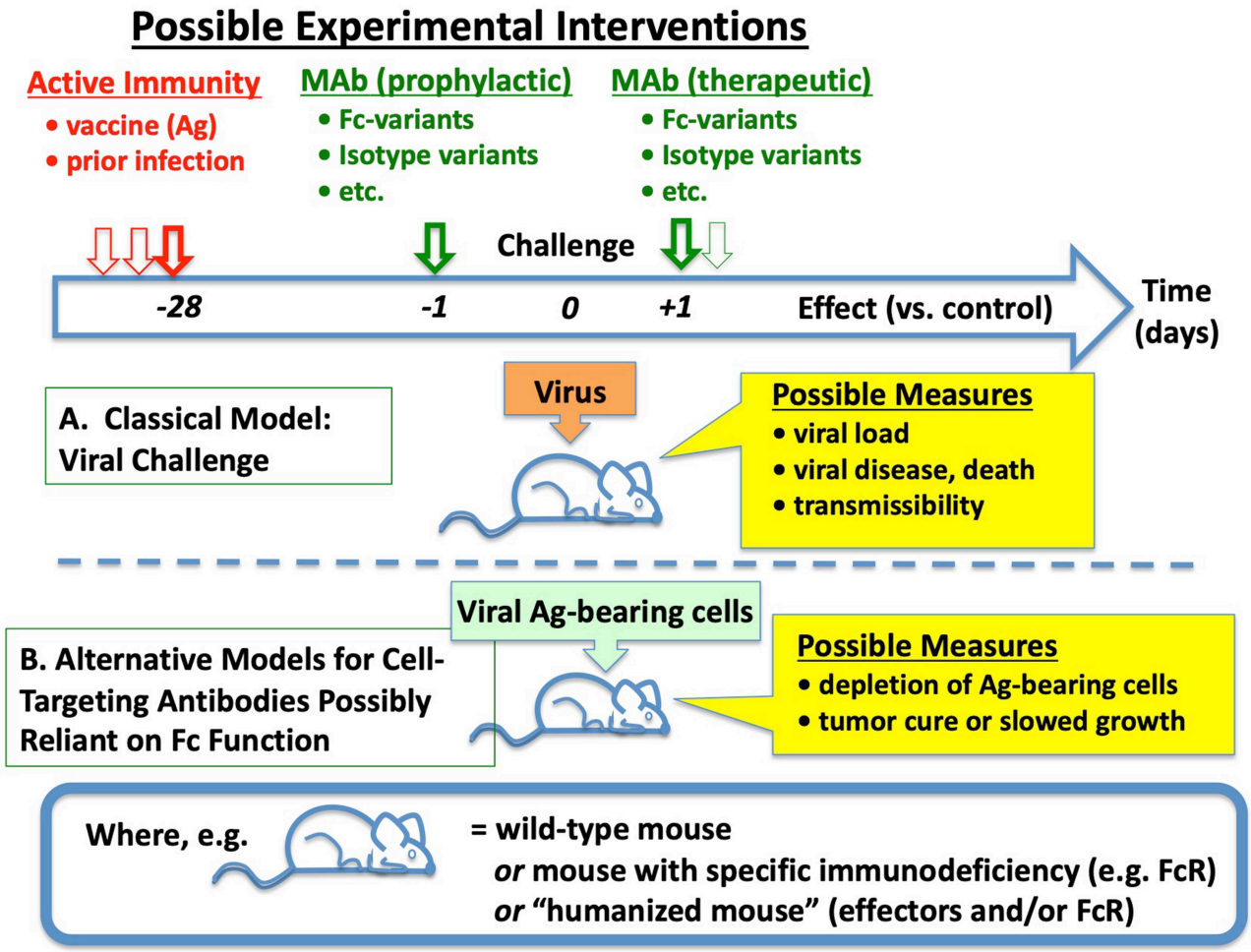


FIGURE 3 | Simplified Overview of Emerging Approaches for Discernment of Roles of Fc in Ab-mediated Immunity to Viruses. **(A)** In classical models, experimental animals (often mice) are challenged on day 0 with infectious virus, preceded (or sometimes followed) by intervention with active or passive immunization. **(B)** To disambiguate the collection of phenomena that only affect virions and their spread, and examine more closely the requirements for effective Fc-mediated effects against viral Ag-expressing cells, one can challenge mice instead with cells engineered to express viral Ags, somewhat mimicking prior models of tumor immunotherapy. See text and references for many of the potential complexities and opportunities in each step, including modified Abs, and highly modified mice.

high expression of CD20 on tumor cells (40), and it was recently shown that increased expression of target Ag on cells is one way to improve Fc-mediated cell clearance in mice otherwise compromised by persistent viral infection (58).

Fc-FcR affinity. We begin with a quote in a recent paper from the Ravetch group, leaders in the field of Fc-FcR interactions, and murine models with which to explore biological significance: "An antibody's Fc domain's relative affinity for the activating and inhibitory Fc**γ**R, called the A/I ratio, can determine its functional output, and is directly correlated to therapeutic efficacy *in vivo*. This has spawned recent efforts to engineer Abs with enhanced activating Fc**γ**R affinity." (26) Embedded in much of their work is the directly observed or implied importance not only of isotype (36) but also species matches in establishing Fc-FcR affinity: human, mouse, and non-human primate (NHP) FcR are non-equivalent in binding to any given Ab (typically, human IgG1 is the chosen type), and nomenclature of FcR in the various species is a poor guide to Ab affinity and function.

The current scientific literature is rich with the recognition of naturally occurring *Fc and FcR alleles or variants* (19, 59), followed by structural redesigns of Ab molecules to optimize *Ab glycosylation* (8, 12, 39) or *Ab half-life* (60). The details are outside the scope of this manuscript, but as with other variables cited above, we call attention to the caution with which the Fc-dependent possibilities or limitations of a single MAb may be viewed during the course of experiments.

Allosteric change in Fc is a phenomenon that remains incompletely resolved in terms of biological significance. However, improved tools in structural analysis restore the possibility that allostery is among the factors that may contribute additively or synergistically to Ab function. Thus, in a subset of MAbs and presumably in a subset of natural polyclonal Abs, the binding of Fab to its cognate epitope results in *allosteric*

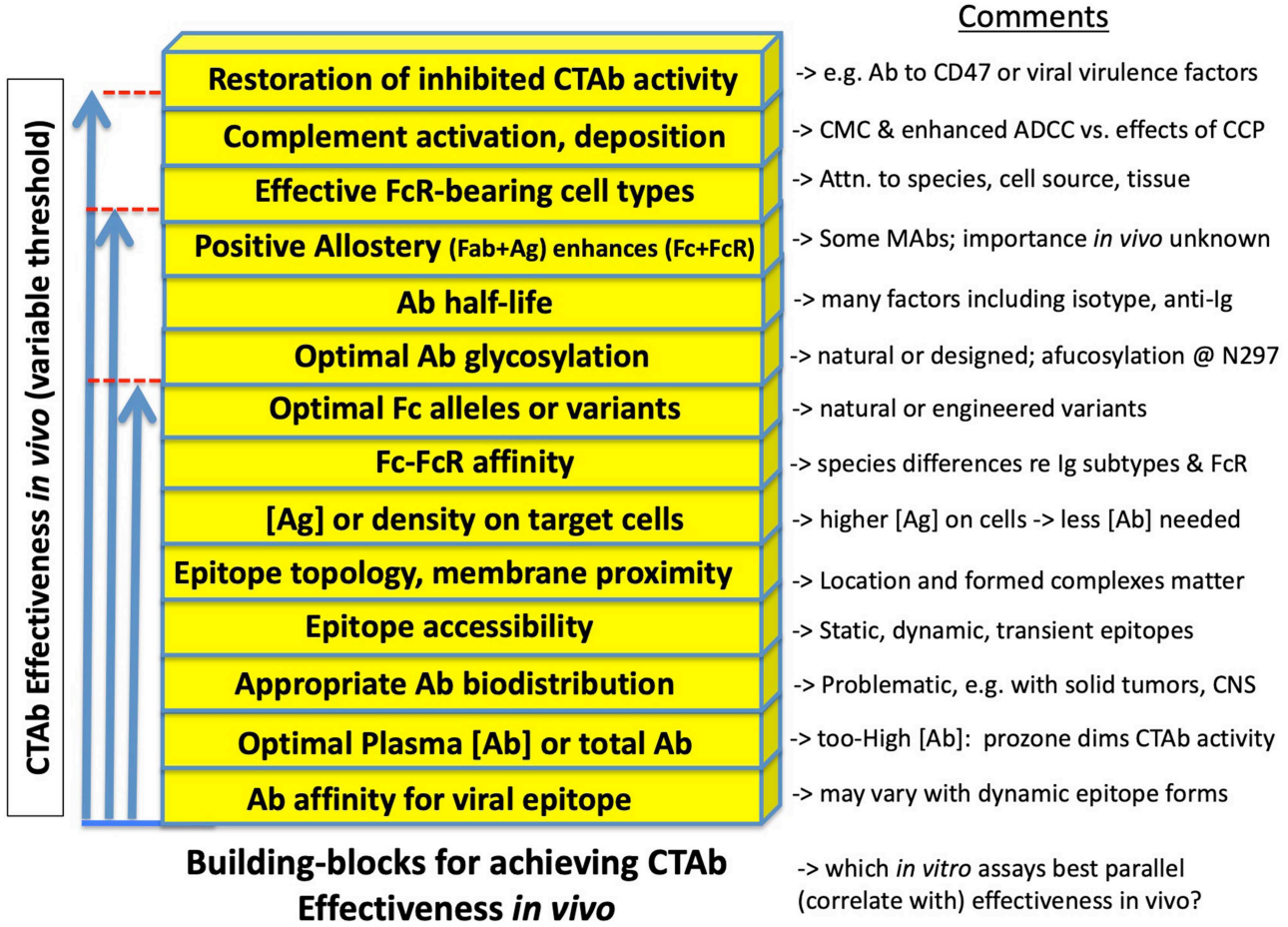


FIGURE 4 | Concepts represented as building blocks for effectiveness of cell-targeting Abs in immunity to viral infections. See text for details. Many factors—each with its own quantitative or qualitative dimension—contribute additively or synergistically to reaching a threshold of antiviral activity that meets a standard of protective efficacy (as defined in **Box 1**). The threshold is not a constant, but varies by individual, host species, virus biotype, dose and route of infection, etc. In short, the figure is intended to illustrate that Fc-mediated aspects of Ab-mediated immunity are interrelated parts of a complex adaptive system that arose during co-evolution of host and virus. To adequately exploit these concepts with vaccines or therapeutic Abs requires either empirical good fortune (the key to almost all licensed vaccines) or understandings that allow rational improvements in design. In the search for statistical or mechanistic correlates of protection, assays that combine several of these factors may be favored.

change in Fc, which in turn promotes higher affinity between Fc and FcR than is observed in the absence of Ag (61, 62). The implication is that, depending upon the assay, *in vitro* results may be an inadequate predictor of Fc-mediated functional activity of Ab. A different kind of allostery is seen when two MAbs synergize on the basis of how Fab binding to one part of an Ag molecule promotes binding of a second MAb recognizing a different epitope on the same Ag (63). Newer animal models may add clarity to the functional importance of such allosteric interactions in Ab-mediated protection against viruses.

The importance of *effective FcR-bearing cell types* should not be underestimated, especially in cross-species transfers, such as human Ig transferred into NHP or mice. The complexities are several, due not only to interspecies differences in FcR affinity for any given MAb, but interspecies differences in the cell types on which various FcR are found (26).

In virological circles, *complement activation and complement deposition* have received diminishing attention, presumably because ablation of complement (in murine models) tends to leave intact the protective antiviral capacity of an Ab (4, 5). However, the dismissal of complement is likely imprudent, as antibody therapies against human tumors show important additive and augmenting effects mediated by complement (39, 48, 49, 64). As signaled in **Figure 4**, attention must be paid to the additive and synergistic Fc-mediated effects of Abs, as these cumulatively determine whether a threshold is reached in which an Ab is effective *in vivo*.

The potential for *restoration of inhibited CTAb activity* is an emerging opportunity for understanding and improving the protective capacities of CTAb against viruses. Once again, tumor immunology has led the way, with anti-CD47 Abs already in clinical trials, and showing clinical promise by way

of dampening a "don't eat me" signal that otherwise spares tumor cells from destruction by monocytes and macrophages (65, 66). Many poxviruses explicitly express CD47 homologs, and other complex viruses such as herpesviruses express homologs of immunomodulatory proteins (67). The potential for anti-CD47 to shift the threshold for antiviral attention has not escaped notice (58), but this may be only the first of many opportunities to counteract known (67) and perhaps unknown viral proteins that undermine host immune responses including Fc-dependent activities. To venture a testable hypothesis, this could be part of the mechanism by which a herpesvirus subunit (HZ/su), consisting of one of the family of herpesvirus proteins (gE) that binds Fc (68), serves as an effective vaccine (68): by evoking Abs that restore otherwise-inhibited and FcR-dependent CTAb activity.

CONCLUDING REMARKS

While some elements of Ab-mediated antiviral immunity appear to be largely or completely independent of Fc function, others are highly reliant on Fc in order to exert biological effects that register as "protective" activity (**Boxes 1**, **2**). Such Abs (CTAbs) share with a number of therapeutic anti-cancer Abs the aim of arresting or destroying cells recognized by such Abs, and mechanistic relevance can be gleaned from the extensive research and clinical trials with anti-tumor CTAbs. However, the efficacies of antiviral CTAbs are differently complex due to both the typical incapacities to obtain human protection data and the longstanding problems inherent with classical animal models of viral disease. More recently, newer approaches (**Table 1**) have allowed increasing compatibility between a given virus (or its cell-expressed antigen), a susceptible animal model, Fc-FcR interactions, populations of FcR-bearing effector cells, etc. This brief review is intended to highlight and cite some of the recent literature that first points toward an almost bewildering complexity in the factors that intrude upon the subset of protective antiviral mechanisms that are Fc-dependent, and then to some feasible approaches to achieve clarity. Most likely, for a given virus with its unique structure and biology, and its unique pathogenetic profile in a chosen animal model, some Fc-dependent Ab-directed mechanisms will prove more reliably important than others. Moreover, each of the concepts illustrated in **Figure 4** is meant here to be understood as scalable in its importance, but rarely if ever sufficient by itself to achieve a threshold that achieves enough efficacy to adequately suppress viral replication and prevent viral disease. It is most encouraging that experimental tools, including those shown in **Table 1**, are emerging to affirm or refute the truth and biological importance of concepts previously mired in the complexities. To an increasing degree, rational selection and design of optimally effective MAbs (and the means to elicit them with vaccines) will inform antiviral research. Similarly, refinement and selection will continue to improve for *in vitro* assays that are not only statistical correlates but mechanistic correlates of protection. And still, the final proofs will continue to be an empirical matter of finding what is both safe and effective.

AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

AS, CO, and GL shared and discussed in lab meetings over a period of many months in the development of perspectives, emphases, and cited references for this manuscript. AS crafted the primary draft, which was improved, and approved by CO and GL.

FUNDING

Funding for authors was provided by the following grants and contracts: NIAID/NIH P01AI120756; DOD HDTRA1-15-C-058; and Grant # OPP1017606, The Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation.

REFERENCES

1. Golding H, Khurana S, Zaitseva M. What is the predictive value of animal models for vaccine efficacy in humans? the importance of bridging studies and species-independent correlates of protection. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol.* (2017) 10:a028902. doi: 10.1101/cshperspect.a028902
2. Sullivan NJ, Martin JE, Graham BS, Nabel GJ. Correlates of protective immunity for Ebola vaccines: implications for regulatory approval by the animal rule. *Nat Rev Micro*. (2009) 7:393–400. doi: 10.1038/nrmicro2129
3. Plotkin SA, Gilbert PB. Nomenclature for immune correlates of protection after vaccination. *Clin Infect Dis.* (2012) 54:1615–7. doi: 10.1093/cid/cis238
4. Schmaljohn AL. Protective antiviral antibodies that lack neutralizing activity: precedents and evolution of concepts. *Curr HIV Res.* (2013) 11:345–53. doi: 10.2174/1570162X113116660057
5. Schmaljohn A, Lewis GK. Cell-targeting antibodies in immunity to Ebola. *Pathogens Dis.* (2016) 74:ftw021. doi: 10.1093/femspd/ftw021
6. DiLillo DJ, Tan GS, Palese P, Ravetch JV. Broadly neutralizing hemagglutinin stalk-specific antibodies require FcγR interactions for protection against influenza virus *in vivo*. *Nat Med*. (2014) 20:143–51. doi: 10.1038/nm.3443
7. Lee C-H, Romain G, Yan W, Watanabe M, Charab W, Todorova B, et al. IgG Fc domains that bind C1q but not effector Fcγ receptors delineate the importance of complement-mediated effector functions. *Nat Immunol.* (2017) 18:889. doi: 10.1038/ni.3770
8. Li T, DiLillo DJ, Bournazos S, Giddens JP, Ravetch JV, Wang LX. Modulating IgG effector function by Fc glycan engineering. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2017) 114:3485–90. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1702173114
9. Bournazos S, Wang TT, Ravetch JV. The role and function of Fcγ receptors on myeloid cells. *Microbiol Spectr.* (2016) 4. doi: 10.1128/microbiolspec.MCHD-0045-2016
10. DiLillo DJ, Ravetch JV. Differential Fc-receptor engagement drives an anti-tumor vaccinal effect. *Cell*. (2015) 161:1035–45. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2015.04.016
11. Bournazos S, Ravetch JV. Fcγ receptor pathways during active and passive immunization. *Immunol Rev*. (2015) 268:88–103. doi: 10.1111/imr.12343
12. Kellner C, Otte A, Cappuzzello E, Klausz K, Peipp M. Modulating cytotoxic effector functions by Fc engineering to improve cancer therapy. *TMH*. (2017) 44:327–36. doi: 10.1159/000479980
13. Latvala S, Jacobsen B, Otteneder MB, Herrmann A, Kronenberg S. Distribution of FcRn across species and tissues. *J Histochem Cytochem.* (2017) 65:321–33. doi: 10.1369/0022155417705095
14. Saxena A, Wu D. Advances in therapeutic Fc engineering – modulation of IgG-associated effector functions and serum half-life. *Front Immunol.* (2016) 7:580. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2016.00580

15. Taylor RP, Lindorfer MA. Cytotoxic mechanisms of immunotherapy: harnessing complement in the action of anti-tumor monoclonal antibodies. *Sem Immunol*. (2016) 28:309–16. doi: 10.1016/j.smim.2016.03.003
16. Taylor RP, Lindorfer MA. Fcγ-receptor–mediated trogocytosis impacts mAb-based therapies: historical precedence and recent developments. *Blood*. (2015) 125:762–6. doi: 10.1182/blood-2014-10-569244
17. Lewis GK, Ackerman ME, Scarlatti G, Moog C, Robert-Guroff M, Kent SJ, et al. Knowns and unknowns of assaying antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity against HIV-1. *Front. Immunol.* (2019) 10:1025. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.01025
18. Ben Mkaddem S, Benhamou M, Monteiro RC. Understanding Fc receptor involvement in inflammatory diseases: from mechanisms to new therapeutic tools. *Front Immunol.* (2019) 10:811. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00811
19. Bruhns P, Jönsson F. Mouse and human FcR effector functions. *Immunol Rev*. (2015) 268:25–51. doi: 10.1111/imr.12350
20. Lewis GK. Role of Fc-mediated antibody function in protective immunity against HIV-1. *Immunology*. (2014) 142:46–57. doi: 10.1111/imm.12232
21. Lewis GK, Guan Y, Kamin-Lewis R, Sajadi M, Pazgier M, Devico AL. Epitope target structures of Fc-mediated effector function during HIV-1 acquisition: *Curr Opin HIV AIDS*. (2014) 9:263–70. doi: 10.1097/COH.0000000000000055
22. Pollara J, Bonsignori M, Moody MA, Pazgier M, Haynes BF, Ferrari G. Epitope specificity of human immunodeficiency virus-1 antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity [ADCC] responses. *Curr HIV Res*. (2013) 11:378–87. doi: 10.2174/1570162X113116660059
23. Tolbert WD, Gohain N, Alsahafi N, Van V, Orlandi C, Ding S, et al. Targeting the late stage of HIV-1 entry for antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity: structural basis for Env epitopes in the C11 region. *Structure*. (2017) 25:1719–31.e4. doi: 10.1016/j.str.2017.09.009
24. Sondermann P, Szymkowski DE. Harnessing Fc receptor biology in the design of therapeutic antibodies. *Curr Opin Immunol*. (2016) 40:78–87. doi: 10.1016/j.coi.2016.03.005
25. Rodgers KR, Chou RC. Therapeutic monoclonal antibodies and derivatives: historical perspectives and future directions. *Biotechnol Adv*. (2016) 34:1149–58. doi: 10.1016/j.biotechadv.2016.07.004
26. Casey E, Bournazos S, Mo G, Mondello P, Tan KS, Ravetch JV, et al. A new mouse expressing human Fcγ receptors to better predict therapeutic efficacy of human anti-cancer antibodies. *Leukemia.* (2018) 32:547. doi: 10.1038/leu.2017.293
27. Mascola JR, Stiegler G, VanCott TC, Katinger H, Carpenter CB, Hanson CE, et al. Protection of macaques against vaginal transmission of a pathogenic HIV-1/SIV chimeric virus by passive infusion of neutralizing antibodies. *Nat Med*. (2000) 6:207–10. doi: 10.1038/72318
28. Ledgerwood JE, DeZure AD, Stanley DA, Coates EE, Novik L, Enama ME, et al. Chimpanzee adenovirus vector Ebola vaccine. *N Engl J Med*. (2017) 376:928–38. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa1410863
29. Yamada S, Hatta M, Staker BL, Watanabe S, Imai M, Shinya K, et al. Biological and structural characterization of a host-adapting amino acid in influenza virus. *PLoS Pathogens.* (2010) 6:e1001034 doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1001034
30. Herfst S, Schrauwen EJ, Linster M, Chutinimitkul S, de Wit E, Munster VJ, et al. Airborne transmission of influenza A/H5N1 virus between ferrets. *Science*. (2012) 336:1534–41. doi: 10.1126/science.1213362
31. Zhao J, Li K, Wohlford-Lenane C, Agnihothram SS, Fett C, Zhao J, et al. Rapid generation of a mouse model for middle east respiratory syndrome. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. (2014) 111:4970–75. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1323279111
32. Agrawal AS, Garron T, Tao X, Peng BH, Wakamiya M, Chan TS, et al. Generation of a transgenic mouse model of middle east respiratory syndrome coronavirus infection and disease. *J Virol.* (2015) 89:3659–70. doi: 10.1128/JVI.03427-14
33. Dorner M, Horwitz JA, Robbins JB, Barry WT, Feng Q, Mu K, et al. A genetically humanized mouse model for hepatitis C virus infection. *Nature*. (2011) 474:208–11. doi: 10.1038/nature10168
34. Dorner M, Horwitz JA, Donovan BM, Labitt RN, Budell WC, Friling T, et al. Completion of the entire hepatitis C virus life cycle in genetically humanized mice. *Nature*. (2013) 501:237–41. doi: 10.1038/nature12427
35. Leist SR, Baric RS. Giving the genes a shuffle: using natural variation to understand host genetic contributions to viral infections. *Trends Genetics*. (2018) 34:777–89. doi: 10.1016/j.tig.2018.07.005
36. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Divergent Immunoglobulin G subclass activity through selective Fc receptor binding. *Science*. (2005) 310:1510–2. doi: 10.1126/science.1118948
37. Wilson JA, Hevey M, Bakken R, Guest S, Bray M, Schmaljohn AL, et al. Epitopes involved in antibody-mediated protection from Ebola virus. *Science*. (2000) 287:1664–6. doi: 10.1126/science.287.5458.1664
38. Chung KM, Thompson BS, Fremont DH, Diamond MS. Antibody recognition of cell surface-associated NS1 triggers Fc-γ receptor-mediated phagocytosis and clearance of west Nile virus-infected cells. *J Virol*. (2007) 81:9551–5. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00879-07
39. Wirt T, Rosskopf S, Rösner T, Eichholz KM, Kahrs A, Lutz S, et al. An Fc double-engineered CD20 antibody with enhanced ability to trigger complement-dependent cytotoxicity and antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity. *TMH*. (2017) 44:292–300. doi: 10.1159/000479978
40. Marshall MJE, Stopforth RJ, Cragg MS. Therapeutic antibodies: what have we learnt from targeting CD20 and where are we going? *Front Immunol.* (2017) 8:1245. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2017.01245
41. Horwitz JA, Bar-On Y, Lu CL, Fera D, Lockhart AAK, Lorenzi JCC, et al. Non-neutralizing antibodies alter the course of HIV-1 infection *in vivo*. *Cell.* (2017) 170:637–48.e10. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2017.06.048
42. Lu C-L, Murakowski DK, Bournazos S, Schoofs T, Sarkar D, Halper-Stromberg A, et al. Enhanced clearance of HIV-1–infected cells by broadly neutralizing antibodies against HIV-1 *in vivo*. *Science*. (2016) 352:1001–4. doi: 10.1126/science.aaf1279
43. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Translating basic mechanisms of IgG effector activity into next generation cancer therapies. *Cancer Immun.* (2012) 12:13.
44. Hayes JM, Wormald MR, Rudd PM, Davey GP. Fc gamma receptors: glycobiology and therapeutic prospects. *J Inflamm Res*. (2016) 9:209–19. doi: 10.2147/JIR.S121233
45. Kiyoshi M, Tsumoto K, Ishii-Watabe A, Caaveiro JM. M. Glycosylation of IgG-Fc: a molecular perspective. *Int Immunol*. (2017) 29:311–7. doi: 10.1093/intimm/dxx038
46. Diebolder CA, Beurskens FJ, de Jong RN, Koning RI, Strumane K, Lindorfer MA, et al. Complement is activated by IgG hexamers assembled at the cell surface. *Science*. (2014) 343:1260–3. doi: 10.1126/science.1248943
47. Cook EM, Lindorfer MA, van der Horst H, Oostindie S, Beurskens FJ, Schuurman J, et al. Antibodies that efficiently form hexamers upon antigen binding can induce complement-dependent cytotoxicity under complement-limiting conditions. *J Immunol*. (2016) 197:1762–75. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1600648
48. Poel CE. van der Carroll MC. Untangling Fc and complement receptors to kill tumors. *Nat Immunol.* (2017) 18:874. doi: 10.1038/ni.3797
49. Taylor RP, Lindorfer MA, Cook EM, Beurskens FJ, Schuurman J, Parren PWHI, et al. Hexamerization-enhanced CD20 antibody mediates complement-dependent cytotoxicity in serum genetically deficient in C9. *Clin Immunol*. (2017) 181:24–8. doi: 10.1016/j.clim.2017.05.016
50. Clynes RA, Towers TL, Presta LG, Ravetch JV. Inhibitory Fc receptors modulate *in vivo* cytotoxicity against tumor targets. *Nat Med.* (2000) 6:443–6. doi: 10.1038/74704
51. Vaughan AT, Cragg MS, Beers SA. Antibody modulation: limiting the efficacy of therapeutic antibodies. *Pharmacol Res*. (2015) 99:269–75. doi: 10.1016/j.phrs.2015.07.003
52. Roghanian A, Teige I, Mårtensson L, Cox KL, Kovacek M, Ljungars A, et al. Antagonistic human FcγRIIB (CD32B) antibodies have anti-tumor activity and overcome resistance to antibody therapy *in vivo*. *Cancer Cell*. (2015) 27:473–88. doi: 10.1016/j.ccell.2015.03.005
53. Seeling M, Nimmerjahn F. Releasing the brakes: targeting FcγRIIB on B cells to enhance antibody-dependent lymphoma immunotherapy. *Cancer Cell*. (2015) 27:427–8. doi: 10.1016/j.ccell.2015.03.011
54. Lewis GK, Finzi A, DeVico AL, Pazgier M. Conformational masking and receptor-dependent unmasking of highly conserved Env epitopes recognized by non-neutralizing antibodies that mediate potent ADCC against HIV-1. *Viruses*. (2015) 7:5115–32. doi: 10.3390/v7092856
55. Carter PJ, Lazar GA. Next generation antibody drugs: pursuit of the 'high-hanging fruit'. *Nat Rev Drug Discovery*. (2018) 17:197–223. doi: 10.1038/nrd.2017.227
56. Lewis GK. Qualitative and quantitative variables that affect the potency of Fc- mediated effector function *in vitro* and *in vivo*: considerations for

passive immunization using non-neutralizing antibodies. *Curr HIV Res.* (2013) 11:354–64. doi: 10.2174/1570162X113116660060
57. Cleary KLS, Chan HTC, James S, Glennie MJ, Cragg MS. Antibody distance from the cell membrane regulates antibody effector mechanisms. *J Immunol.* (2017) 198:3999–4011. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1601473
58. Wieland A, Kamphorst AO, Valanparambil RM, Han JH, Xu X, Choudhury BP, et al. Enhancing FcγR-mediated antibody effector function during persistent viral infection. *Sci Immunol.* (2018) 3:eaao3125. doi: 10.1126/sciimmunol.aao3125
59. Vidarsson G, Dekkers G, Rispens T. IgG subclasses and allotypes: from structure to effector functions. *Front Immunol.* (2014) 5:520. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2014.00520
60. Hinton PR, Xiong JM, Johlfs MG, Tang MT, Keller S, Tsurushita N. An engineered human IgG1 antibody with longer serum half-life. *J Immunol.* (2006) 176:346–56. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.176.1.346
61. Yang D, Kroe-Barrett R, Singh S, Roberts CJ, Laue TM. IgG cooperativity – Is there allostery? Implications for antibody functions and therapeutic antibody development. *mAbs*. (2017) 9:1231–52. doi: 10.1080/19420862.2017.1367074
62. Zhao J, Nussinov R, Ma B. Antigen binding allosterically promotes Fc receptor recognition. *mAbs*. (2019) 11:58–74. doi: 10.1080/19420862.2018.1522178
63. Lefrancois L, Lyles DS. The interaction of antibody with the major surface glycoprotein of vesicular stornatitis virus II. monoclonal antibodies to nonneutralizing and cross-reactive epitopes of Indiana and New Jersey serotypes. *Virology*. (1982) 121:168–74. doi: 10.1016/0042-6822(82)90126-X
64. Mamidi S, Höne S, Kirschfink M. The complement system in cancer: ambivalence between tumour destruction and promotion. *Immunobiology*. (2017) 222:45–54. doi: 10.1016/j.imbio.2015.11.008
65. Weiskopf K, Weissman IL. Macrophages are critical effectors of antibody therapies for cancer. *mAbs*. (2015) 7:303–10. doi: 10.1080/19420862.2015.1011450
66. Advani R, Flinn I, Popplewell L, Forero A, Bartlett NL, Ghosh N, et al. CD47 Blockade by Hu5F9-G4 and rituximab in non-hodgkin's lymphoma. *N Engl J Med*. (2018) 379:1711–21. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa1807315
67. Farré D, Martínez-Vicente P, Engel P, Angulo A. Immunoglobulin superfamily members encoded by viruses and their multiple roles in immune evasion. *Euro J Immunol*. (2017) 47:780–96. doi: 10.1002/eji.201746984
68. Olson JK, Bishop GA, Grose C. Varicella-zoster virus Fc receptor gE glycoprotein: serine/threonine and tyrosine phosphorylation of monomeric and dimeric forms. *J Virol*. (1997) 71:110–9.

Conflict of Interest Statement: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

ORIGINAL RESEARCH
published: 01 November 2019
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.02582

IgA and IgG1 Specific to Vi Polysaccharide of *Salmonella* Typhi Correlate With Protection Status in a Typhoid Fever Controlled Human Infection Model

Lindsay C. Dahora[1,2], Celina Jin[3], Rachel L. Spreng[1,4], Frederick Feely[1,5], Ryan Mathura[1,5], Kelly E. Seaton[1,5], Lu Zhang[1,5], Jennifer Hill[3], Elizabeth Jones[3], S. Munir Alam[1,4,6], S. Moses Dennison[1,5], Andrew J. Pollard[3†] and Georgia D. Tomaras[1,2,5,7†]*

[1] Duke Human Vaccine Institute, Duke University, Durham, NC, United States, [2] Department of Immunology, Duke University, Durham, NC, United States, [3] Oxford Vaccine Group, Department of Paediatrics, The NIHR Oxford Biomedical Research Centre, University of Oxford, Oxford, United Kingdom, [4] Department of Medicine, Duke University, Durham, NC, United States, [5] Department of Surgery, Duke University, Durham, NC, United States, [6] Department of Pathology, Duke University, Durham, NC, United States, [7] Molecular Genetics and Microbiology, Duke University, Durham, NC, United States

OPEN ACCESS

Edited by:
Christoph T. Berger,
University of Basel, Switzerland

Reviewed by:
Giuseppe Lofano,
GSK Vaccines, United States
Arun Kumar,
Coalition for Epidemic Preparedness Innovations (CEPI), Norway

***Correspondence:**
Georgia D. Tomaras
gdt@duke.edu

[†]Co-senior authors

Specialty section:
This article was submitted to Vaccines and Molecular Therapeutics, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology

Received: 22 August 2019
Accepted: 17 October 2019
Published: 01 November 2019

Citation:
Dahora LC, Jin C, Spreng RL, Feely F, Mathura R, Seaton KE, Zhang L, Hill J, Jones E, Alam SM, Dennison SM, Pollard AJ and Tomaras GD (2019) IgA and IgG1 Specific to Vi Polysaccharide of Salmonella Typhi Correlate With Protection Status in a Typhoid Fever Controlled Human Infection Model. Front. Immunol. 10:2582. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.02582

Vaccination against *Salmonella* Typhi using the Vi capsular polysaccharide, a T-cell independent antigen, can protect from the development of typhoid fever. This implies that antibodies to Vi alone can protect in the absence of a T cell-mediated immune response; however, protective Vi antibodies have not been well-characterized. We hypothesized that variability in the biophysical properties of vaccine-elicited antibodies, including subclass distribution and avidity, may impact protective outcomes. To interrogate the relationship between antibody properties and protection against typhoid fever, we analyzed humoral responses from participants in a vaccine efficacy (VE) trial using a controlled human infection model (CHIM) who received either a purified Vi polysaccharide (Vi-PS) or Vi tetanus toxoid conjugate (Vi-TT) vaccine followed by oral challenge with live *S.* Typhi. We determined the avidity, overall magnitude, and vaccine-induced fold-change in magnitude from before immunization to day of challenge of Vi IgA and IgG subclass antibodies. Amongst those who received the Vi-PS vaccine, Vi IgA magnitude (FDR $p = 0.01$) and fold-change (FDR $p = 0.02$) were significantly higher in protected individuals compared with those individuals who developed disease ("diagnosed"). In the Vi-TT vaccine group, the responses of protected individuals had higher fold-change in Vi IgA (FDR $p = 0.06$) and higher Vi IgG1 avidity (FDR $p = 0.058$) than the diagnosed Vi-TT vaccinees, though these findings were not significant at $p < 0.05$. Overall, protective antibody signatures differed between the Vi-PS and Vi-TT vaccines, thus, we conclude

that although the Vi-PS and Vi-TT vaccines were observed to have similar efficacies, these vaccines may protect through different mechanisms. These data will inform studies on mechanisms of protection against typhoid fever, including identification of antibody effector functions, as well as informing future vaccination strategies.

Keywords: typhoid fever, *Salmonella* Typhi (*S.* Typhi), Vi polysaccharide, correlates of protection (CoP), humoral immunity, vaccination, antibody, avidity

INTRODUCTION

The bacterial pathogen *Salmonella enterica* serovar Typhi (*S.* Typhi) is the leading cause of enteric fever world-wide and is responsible for nearly 20 million infections and ∼200,000 deaths annually. Infection predominantly affects travelers and citizens from low-income countries, where children under 5 years of age face the highest disease burden (1, 2). Historically, antibiotics have been the standard treatment for infection. However, antibiotic resistance among *S.* Typhi clones has dramatically increased in endemic regions including the emergence and spread of an extensively drug resistant (XDR) clone throughout Pakistan in 2018 (3, 4). This has sparked concern for continued spread of XDR *S.* Typhi internationally, therefore, vaccination efforts against typhoid fever have become the primary focus for prevention (5).

The live-attenuated Ty21a vaccine and the subunit Vi polysaccharide (Vi-PS) vaccine constitute two of the most widely used typhoid fever vaccines worldwide. Both Ty21a and Vi-PS exhibit moderate efficacy of ∼50–55% in the first year (6, 7), but neither is suitable for use in infants and young children. Ty21a is limited to use in children over 5 years of age due to formulation in large oral capsules that are difficult to swallow. Vi-PS is non-immunogenic in children under 2 years of age (8, 9) due to the nature of the Vi polysaccharide as a T-cell independent antigen that does not engage the T cell pool or stimulate germinal center reactions in young children (9, 10). Conversely, the Vi polysaccharide capsule confers bacterial resistance to complement deposition and phagocytosis (11–13), allowing the bacterium to disseminate systemically; therefore, Vi remains a major target for vaccination efforts against typhoid fever.

In light of this, typhoid protein-polysaccharide conjugate vaccines (TCVs) have been developed which may improve immune responses in early childhood and help combat this illness (14). In particular, a Vi-tetanus toxoid (Vi-TT) conjugate vaccine, which has recently undergone WHO prequalification, has been shown to be more immunogenic in adults than the Vi-PS vaccine (15). Vi-TT was evaluated for efficacy in the recent Vaccines against *Salmonella* Typhi (VAST) trial, in which healthy adult volunteers were vaccinated with either Vi-PS or Vi-TT and then orally challenged with live *S.* Typhi bacteria. Following challenge, participants exhibiting a positive *S.* Typhi blood culture and/or prolonged fever of ≥38°C for ≥12 h were defined as diagnosed. Interestingly, the attack rate, defined as the proportion of participants diagnosed with typhoid fever, was similar between vaccine groups, with 37% of Vi-PS vaccinees being diagnosed with typhoid fever and 35% of Vi-TT vaccinees being diagnosed (15). The lack of increased efficacy of the conjugate vaccine compared with the purified polysaccharide vaccine highlights the need for determining and better understanding the characteristics which confer protective immunity to typhoid fever.

For many years, research on immune mechanisms of protection against typhoid fever have been greatly hindered due to *S.* Typhi restriction to human hosts (11). However, regardless of similar attack rates between the Vi-PS and Vi-TT vaccines, the VAST trial, which used a controlled human infection model (CHIM) to measure efficacy, provides a direct approach to investigate the human immune response and identify immunological correlates of protection against typhoid fever. Despite higher immunogenicity of the Vi-TT vaccine, a significant difference in Vi total IgG titers between diagnosed and protected individuals was only observed in the Vi-PS group (15). Moreover, when comparing IgG1, IgG2, and IgG3, only Vi IgG2 subclass titers predicted protection in the Vi-PS group. While there were no correlations with Vi IgG subclass titer and protection in the Vi-TT group, Vi-TT vaccinees reported less severe clinical symptoms and most diagnosed participants had positive bacteremia with no reported fever whereas a higher proportion of diagnosed Vi-PS vaccinees had both fever and bacteremia (15). Given these differences in immune response and patterns of protection, we hypothesized that variability in the biophysical properties of antibodies induced by the Vi-PS and Vi-TT vaccines, including antibody subclass distribution and avidity, may impact protective outcomes. The Vi-PS vaccine, which exhibits moderate efficacy over 3 years, demonstrates that antibodies against Vi can impart protection in the absence of a cell-mediated response (16, 17). However, the critical classes, characteristics, and functional mechanisms of these protective antibodies against typhoid fever have not been identified.

It is well-established that different isotypes (IgA vs. IgG) and subclasses (IgG1 vs. IgG3) of antibodies have different distributions throughout the body as well as different biophysical characteristics that greatly influence antibody affinity (18, 19). These characteristics also determine success in antigen binding, recruitment of effector cells, and subsequent antibody Fc-mediated effector functions (20). Here we evaluate the maturation level and magnitude of the circulating antibody response to the Vi polysaccharide of *S.* Typhi and determine whether these measures correlate with protection in a typhoid fever CHIM. Determining the nature of the vaccine-elicited antibody response including proportion of Ig subclasses and affinity of those antibodies may be important in further identifying which functional mechanisms play a role in

protection. These insights on antibody biomarkers of protection will pave the way for advances in vaccine design toward more efficacious vaccines, allow comparative assessment of new Vi-conjugates, and inform the use of Vi-conjugate vaccines in new populations, with resulting improvements in health.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

VAST Trial

The VAST clinical trial (Clinicaltrials.gov ID: NCT02324751) was conducted as previously described (15). Briefly, participants provided written informed consent to receive either a single-dose control meningococcal-conjugate vaccine, a Vi polysaccharide (Typhim, Vi-PS) vaccine, or a Vi-tetanus toxoid conjugate vaccine (Typbar TCV, Vi-TT) intramuscularly at day minus 28 (D-28) (pre-vaccination/baseline). At 4 weeks post-vaccination, day 0 (D0), participants were challenged with *S.* Typhi by oral ingestion and monitored for development of *S.* Typhi bacteremia or persistent fever $\geq$38°C for 12 or more h (diagnosed) or lack thereof (protected). Immune responses to vaccination were assessed in the Vi-PS ($n = 35$) and Vi-TT ($n = 37$) groups at 4 weeks post vaccination (D0) as well as 3 and 6 months post-challenge (D90, D180).

Binding Antibody Multiplex Assay- Avidity Index (BAMA-AI)

The WHO international standard for Vi polysaccharide (*C. freundii*, NIBSC, UK, Product Code: 12/244) (21) was biotinylated by Innova Biosciences. Vi polysaccharide and tetanus toxoid binding assays were modified from the binding antibody multiplex assay (22, 23). Briefly, biotinylated Vi polysaccharide (ViBiot) was conjugated to neutravidin-coupled, magnetic, Luminex microspheres, and tetanus toxoid (Reagent Proteins, USA) was conjugated by amine coupling with EDC/NHS. Native Vi polysaccharide (nViPS) was conjugated to polystyrene microspheres using an adipic acid dihydrazine linker as previously described (24, 25). Antigen-coupled beads were incubated with diluted vaccinee serum or plasma, followed by incubation in PBS or dissociative pH=3 sodium-citrate (CIT) buffer. Detection reagents include R-Phycoerythrin-conjugated affiniPure goat anti-human IgA, alpha chain specific (Jackson Immunoresearch, USA), mouse anti-human IgA1-Biot (Southern Biotech, USA), mouse anti-human IgA2-Biot (SouthernBiotech, USA), mouse anti-human IgG1 antibody (BioLegend, USA), mouse anti-Human IgG2 (Biolegend, USA), and mouse anti-Human IgG3 (Invitrogen, USA) followed by goat anti-Mouse IgG, Human ads-PE (Southern Biotech, USA). IgG4 Vi and TT levels were below the limit of detection (data not shown). Fluorescence intensity (FI) was collected using the Bio-Plex 200 Platform. Plots are representative of $n = 2$ technical and experimental replicates. Positive controls included mouse anti-Vi IgG1 monoclonal (lot 188L-8; Statens Serum Institute Diagnostica A/S, DK) and WHO International Standard for anti-typhoid capsular Vi polysaccharide human IgG (16/138 WHO typhoid IS, NIBSC, UK, Product Code: 16/138). Normal human serum (NHS, Sigma, USA) and typhoid seronegative serum samples were used as negative controls, and non-specific binding to beads was controlled by subtracting FI reading of blank beads. IgA isotype assays were performed on IgG depleted serum or plasma. Magnitude of response was multiplied by dilution factor. Fold-change was calculated as the ratio of magnitude at D0, D90, or D180 to baseline (D-28). For MFI below 100, MFI was truncated to 100 for magnitude and fold-change calculations due to noise range of the instrument. Preset criteria for positive vaccine response were: MFI*Dilution > 95th percentile of baseline (D-28), MFI > 100, and MFI*Dilution >3-fold over subject-specific baseline (D-28) MFI*Dilution. Avidity Index (AI), expressed as a percentage, was calculated as $AI = \left[\frac{FI-Bkgd\ (CIT)}{FI-Bkgd\ (PBS)}\right]^{*} 100$. Subclass specific standard curves were included in every assay by conjugating the same primary detection antibodies that were used to detect the vaccine samples, including anti-human Ig (A, G2, G3), to beads via amine coupling followed by titration of known concentrations of purified Ig and detection with goat anti-human kappa-Biot (Southern Biotech, USA) and streptavidin-PE (BD Pharmingen, USA). The subclass standard curves utilized the exact same capture antibody that was used to detect the subclass-specific Vi antibodies in vaccinee sera/plasma, to ensure that the capture of polyclonal vaccine antibodies had equal sensitivity to that of the purified Ig capture in the subclass standard curves. Antibody concentrations were reported from serum dilutions in the linear range of the assays. For the IgG1 subclass standard curve, the goat anti-human kappa was amine coupled to bead, followed by titration of purified IgG1, and detected with Mouse anti-Human IgG1 (BioLegend, USA) and Goat anti-Mouse IgG, Human ads-PE (SouthernBiotech, USA), to detect vaccine specific responses (22). The μg/ml concentration of typhoid specific antibodies were calculated for positive vaccine responders only (defined as MFI*dilution >95th percentile of the baseline (D-28), MFI > 100, and MFI*Dilution >3-fold over the subject-specific baseline).

Human Isotyping Immunoassay

The total concentration of antibody within 16/138 WHO typhoid IS was quantified using the Bio-Plex Pro Human Isotyping Assay kit per manufacturer's instructions (26). Briefly, anti-human IgA, IgM, IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, and IgG4-conjugated magnetic microspheres were incubated with titrated 16/138 WHO typhoid IS serum followed by primary and secondary detection. Fluorescence intensity (FI) was collected using the Bio-Plex 3D instrument (Bio-Rad, USA). The isotype and subclass components of the international serum standard, 16/138 typhoid IS, were determined with this method (5.69 mg/ml IgG1; 6.84 IgG2; 0.57 IgG3; 0.58 IgG4; 1.38 IgM; 0.96 IgA mean mg/ml, of 6 technical replicate measurements). These concentration units were utilized to calculate antibody subclass concentration in μg/ml equivalents of 16/138 in vaccinee sera. The 16/138 Typhoid IS IgA equivalents are noted for the non-IgG depleted standard.

BioLayer Interferometry (BLI)

Polyclonal IgG fractions from vaccinees were purified from serum and plasma by Protein G HP MultiTrap™ plates (GE

Healthcare, USA) prior to analysis by BLI. Kinetics of polyclonal antibody responses to Vi polysaccharide were analyzed by BLI as previously described (27) with modifications. Briefly, nViPS (5 μg/mL) was immobilized to aminopropylsilane (APS) biosensors via hydrophobic interaction. nViPS loaded sensors were then washed with 10X Kinetics Buffer (ForteBio, USA) in order to coat unoccupied sensor area and minimize non-specific binding. A baseline time course was established in 1X Kinetics Buffer, and then Ag-loaded sensors were dipped into wells containing 100 μg/mL (in 1X Kinetics buffer) purified IgG from vaccine participants to monitor Ab association. The dissociation step was monitored by dipping polyclonal Ab-bound sensors back into the 1X Kinetics buffer wells used to collect the baseline. Non-specific interactions were subtracted out using parallel blank sensors that were also washed in 10X Kinetics Buffer and dipped into polyclonal samples. The subtracted binding curves were used to obtain antibody binding response (nm) and dissociation rates (k_d). Avidity score was calculated based on [binding response (nm)/dissociation rate (s^{-1})].

Statistical Analyses

Comparisons between diagnosis status or between vaccine groups (Vi-PS vs. Vi-TT) were conducted by non-parametric Wilcoxon rank-sum tests. Paired comparisons between time points were conducted using non-parametric Wilcoxon signed-rank tests. Comparisons between ViBiot and nViPS antigens for any measurement (magnitude, fold-change, avidity index) were conducted using non-parametric Spearman rank correlation. Multivariate analysis of all variables measured by BAMA and BLI was performed using Principle Components Analysis (PCA). Statistical analyses were performed using R statistical software (version 3.5.1; R Foundation for Statistical Computing, AT). All raw *p*-values were adjusted within isotype and antigen using the Benjamini-Hochberg method to account for multiple testing; adjusted *p*-values <0.05 were considered significant.

RESULTS

IgA Dominates the Vaccine-Elicited Antibody Response to Vi Polysaccharide

Assessment of subclass-specific Vi antibody concentrations in post-vaccination samples identified Vi IgG2 as the predominant subclass (antibody median concentration of ∼10–20 μg/ml) (**Figure 1A**). However, after factoring in baseline responses (D-28) to include only positive vaccine responders, as previously defined in the methods section, Vi IgA antibodies were induced most in response to vaccination (D0). Specifically, Vi IgA1 antibodies exhibited the highest fold-change from baseline to day of challenge for both vaccine groups, followed by Vi IgG2 (**Figure 1C**, **Table 1B**). IgG3 responses were almost exclusively elicited in the Vi-TT vaccine group; however, the concentration was very low (**Figure 1A**). No antibody subclass was significantly boosted following oral challenge (D90, D180) with live *S.* Typhi (**Figure 1A**). As expected, the binding response to TT was only boosted in vaccinees who received Vi-TT and boosting was primarily in the IgG1 subclass (**Figure 1B**, **Table 1A**). Response rate and magnitude of IgA and IgG2 response to Vi by day of challenge (D0) was significantly higher in Vi-TT individuals; however, IgA and IgG2 median avidity was not significantly different between vaccine groups (**Table 1B**, **Table 3**) despite a broader range of IgA and IgG2 avidity in the Vi-TT group. To determine the relationship between the immune responses elicited by Vi-PS and Vi-TT vaccines, a principle components analysis (PCA) was conducted (**Figure 1D**). Variables include binding response magnitudes by BAMA and BLI for Vi and TT antigens across all subclasses: total IgA, IgA1, IgA2, IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, and total purified IgG (**Figure 1D**). At all the time points measured, IgG4 subclass antibodies to Vi and TT were below the limit of detection. Vi-TT vaccinees clustered away from Vi-PS vaccinees on the basis of higher tetanus and higher Vi antibody responses (**Figure 1D**), indicating that response to tetanus was a substantial driver of the differences observed between vaccine groups.

Higher Vi Polysaccharide-Specific IgA Magnitude and Fold-Change in Protected Vaccinees

To examine the question of whether pre-existing immunity impacted vaccine responsiveness, we evaluated the levels of baseline responses (D-28) across all antibody measurements in this study. The only antibody responses with a detectable measurement at baseline that showed a difference between responders and non-responders was IgA to tetanus (median MFI values of 563 and <100 at a 1:50 dilution, respectively). However, there was no difference in baseline responses between diagnosed vaccinees and protected vaccinees. Both the magnitude and fold-change from baseline (D-28) of ViBiot IgA were significantly higher in Vi-TT vaccinees at day of challenge (D0) and 3 months post-challenge (D90) when compared with Vi-PS; however, there was no significant difference between groups by 6 months post-challenge (D180) (**Figures 2A,B**, **Supplementary Material**). ViBiot-specific IgA magnitude was higher in protected compared with diagnosed Vi-PS vaccinees (**Figure 2C**, **Table 2**), and IgA fold-change was higher in protected compared with diagnosed Vi-TT vaccinees (**Figure 2D**, **Table 2**), however these observations were not statistically significant (**Table 3**, FDR $p = 0.078$, FDR $p = 0.061$). In addition, anti-Vi IgA avidity was slightly higher in protected individuals in the Vi-TT group, however this was not significant (**Figure 2E**, **Table 2**, FDR $p = 0.231$).

To further characterize the antibody responses, we utilized two available forms of Vi polysaccharide (i.e., nViPS and ViBiot) with slightly different antigenicity profiles (**Supplementary Material**, **Figure 1**). Both magnitude (**Figure 3A**, **Table 2**, FDR $p = 0.01$) and fold-change (**Figure 3B**, $p = 0.02$) of nViPS IgA correlated with protection status in the Vi-PS vaccine group. Similar to ViBiot IgA, fold-change of nViPS IgA appeared higher in protected individuals of the Vi-TT vaccine group, however this was not statistically significant (**Figure 3B**, FDR $p = 0.12$). To determine whether there was a protective threshold concentration of Vi-specific IgA and to facilitate comparison across studies and trials, we calculated the concentration of Vi-specific IgA in μg/ml equivalents of the WHO typhoid Serum International Standard (NIBSC 16/138).

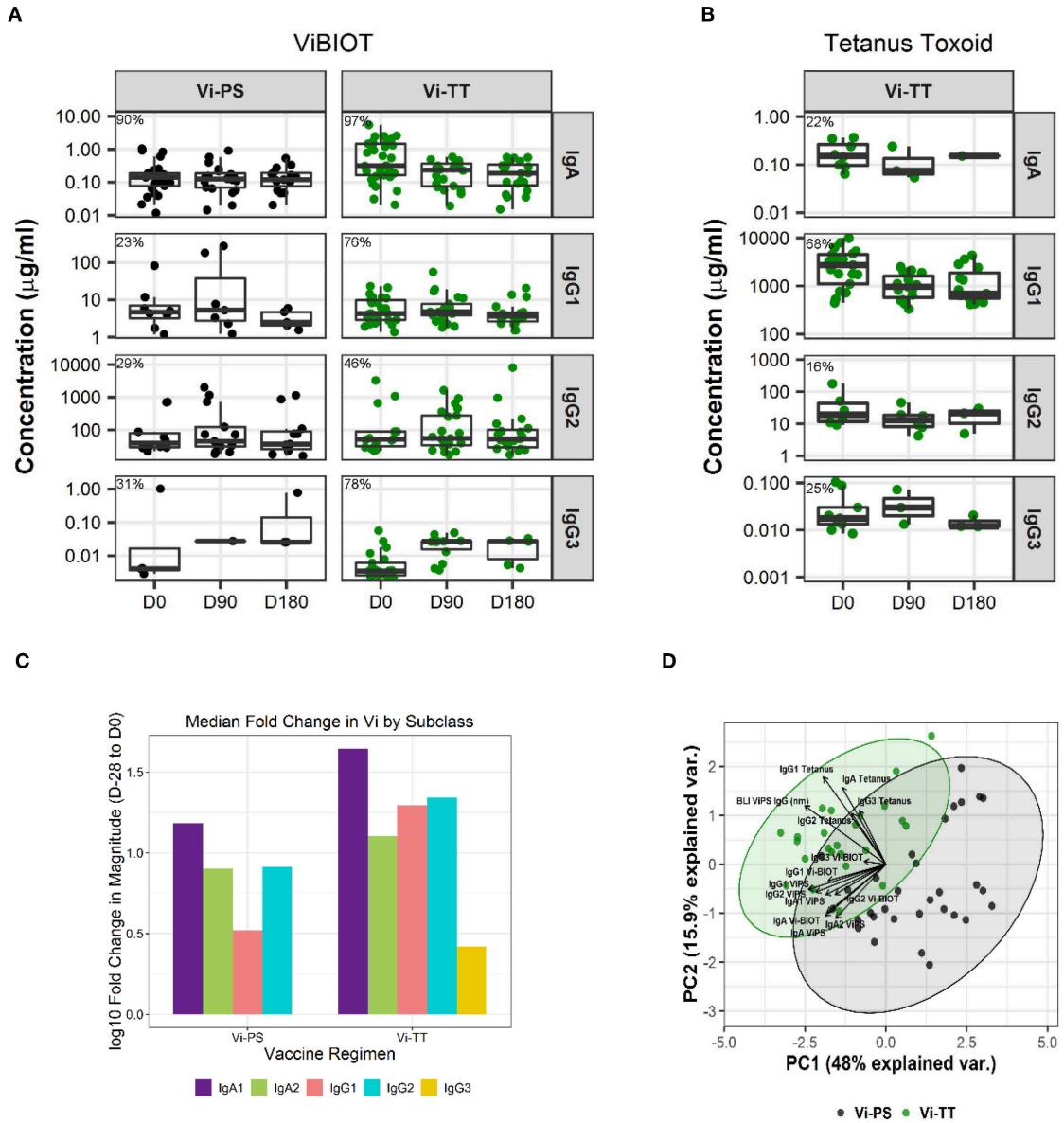


FIGURE 1 | IgA dominates the vaccine-elicited antibody response to Vi polysaccharide. Concentration of antigen-specific, vaccine-induced IgA, IgG1, IgG2, and IgG3 to ViBIOT **(A)** and tetanus toxoid **(B)** by vaccine group, Vi-PS in black and Vi-TT in green, of positive vaccine responders only. Percent positive responders indicated post-vaccination at D0. Vi-PS vaccinees exhibited no vaccine-induced tetanus toxoid response. Data points are representative of $n = 2$ independent experiments (each with $n = 2$ technical replicates). Fold-change in magnitude of the response to Vi from Baseline to Day of Challenge across subclasses by vaccine group **(C)**. A principal components analysis with all tetanus and Vi responses included **(D)** with a scatter plot of the first (PC1) and second (PC2) principal components is shown. Each measurement from a Vi-PS ($n = 35$ participants) or a Vi-TT ($n = 37$ participants) vaccinee is represented by a black or green dot, respectively. Ellipses represent 95% confidence regions.

The effect size of the difference in nViPS IgA antibody between protected individuals of the Vi-PS group (median = 504 μg/ml) compared with diagnosed (median = 227 μg/ml) was nearly 2-fold. In the Vi-TT group, the effect size of the difference in nViPS IgA between the protected Vi-TT group (median = 2,118 μg/ml) compared with diagnosed (median = 595 μg/ml) was 3.5-fold. However, there was no threshold above which 100% of individuals were protected (**Figure 3C**) suggesting that other immune mechanisms contribute to protection status. The maturation of the vaccine-elicited IgA response, as measured by IgA avidity index, was not significantly different between protected and diagnosed individuals for either vaccine group (**Figure 3D**).

Vi IgA1 and IgA2 Is Higher in Protected Individuals

Since nViPS IgA correlated with protection in Vi-PS vaccinees and was also higher in protected Vi-TT vaccinees, though not

TABLE 1A | Antigen-specific magnitude by vaccine group at Day of challenge (D0).

Subclass	Antigen	Vaccine arm	Response rate	Median mag[a]	Median mag[a] range
IgG1	ViBiot	Vi-PS	23% (8/35)	3.82E4	1.00E4–4.88E6
		Vi-TT	76% (28/37)	2.49E5	1.00E4–2.30E6
	TT	Vi-PS	0% (0/35)	2.60E5	5.30E4–5.72E6
		Vi-TT	68% (21/31)	8.51E6	5.21E5–5.30E7
IgG2	ViBiot	Vi-PS	29% (10/35)	6.25E4	4.00E3–5.44E6
		Vi-TT	46% (17/37)	1.59E5	4.00E3–2.35E8
	TT	Vi-PS	0% (0/35)	4.00E3	4.00E3–4.19E4
		Vi-TT	16% (6/37)	1.92E4	5.41E3–1.60E6
IgG3	ViBiot	Vi-PS	31% (11/35)	5.00E3	5.00E3–3.55 E6
		Vi-TT	78% (29/37)	1.31E4	5.00E3–3.17E5
	TT	Vi-PS	0% (0/34)	1.24E4	5.00E3–6.21E4
		Vi-TT	25% (9/36)	3.60E4	1.61E4–5.64E5
IgA	ViBiot	Vi-PS	88% (30/34)	4.71E5	2.43E4–5.78E6
		Vi-TT	97% (36/37)	1.05E6	9.78E4–1.86E7
	TT	Vi-PS	0% (0/35)	5.00E3	5.00E3–4.02E5
		Vi-TT	22% (8/37)	1.01E5	5.00E3–9.83E5

[a] *Magnitude calculated as MFI*Dilution.*

TABLE 1B | Antigen-Specific Responses by Vaccine Group at Day of Challenge (D0).

Subclass	Antigen	Vaccine arm	Median mag log fold change[a]	AI[b] median	AI[b] range
IgG1	ViBiot	Vi-PS	0.52	18.5	0–102
		Vi-TT	1.29	32	2–125
	TT	Vi-PS	0	0	0
		Vi-TT	1.17	37	11–70
IgG2	ViBiot	Vi-PS	0.91	27	2–74
		Vi-TT	1.34	47	9–91
	TT	Vi-PS	0	0	0
		Vi-TT	0.45	19.5	7–39
IgG3	ViBiot	Vi-PS	0	9	1–50
		Vi-TT	0.42	35	12–68
	TT	Vi-PS	0	0	0
		Vi-TT	0.64	74	16–88
IgA	ViBiot	Vi-PS	1.62	38.5	8–63
		Vi-TT	2.11	42	4–90
	TT	Vi-PS	0	0	0
		Vi-TT	0.78	53	31–70

[a] *Fold Change from Baseline (D-28) to Day of Challenge (D0).*
[b] *AI, Avidity Index.*

statistically significant, we determined whether this potentially protective mechanism was driven by IgA1 or IgA2 subclass responses. IgA1 magnitude (FDR $p = 0.0070$) and fold-change (FDR $p = 0.007$) were significantly higher in the Vi-TT group at day of challenge (D0) (**Figure 4A**). In contrast, nViPS IgA2 magnitude and fold-change were higher in the Vi-TT group compared with the Vi-PS group, but were not significantly different (**Figure 4B**). While there was no difference in IgA2 avidity between the vaccine groups, nViPS IgA1 avidity was higher in the Vi-TT group, though not statistically significant (**Figure 4C**, **Table 3**, FDR $p = 0.14$). Fold-change in nViPS IgA1 and IgA2 was higher in protected individuals of both vaccine groups; however, there was no significant difference (**Figure 4D**). Neither IgA1 nor IgA2 avidity index was higher in protected individuals of the Vi-PS vaccine group; however, for Vi-TT vaccinees, both nViPS IgA1 (FDR $p = 0.14$) and IgA2 (FDR $p = 0.14$) avidity index were higher in protected individuals, though not statistically significant (**Figure 4E**). In order to determine whether individuals with high IgA1 responses were associated with high IgA2 responses, we conducted a

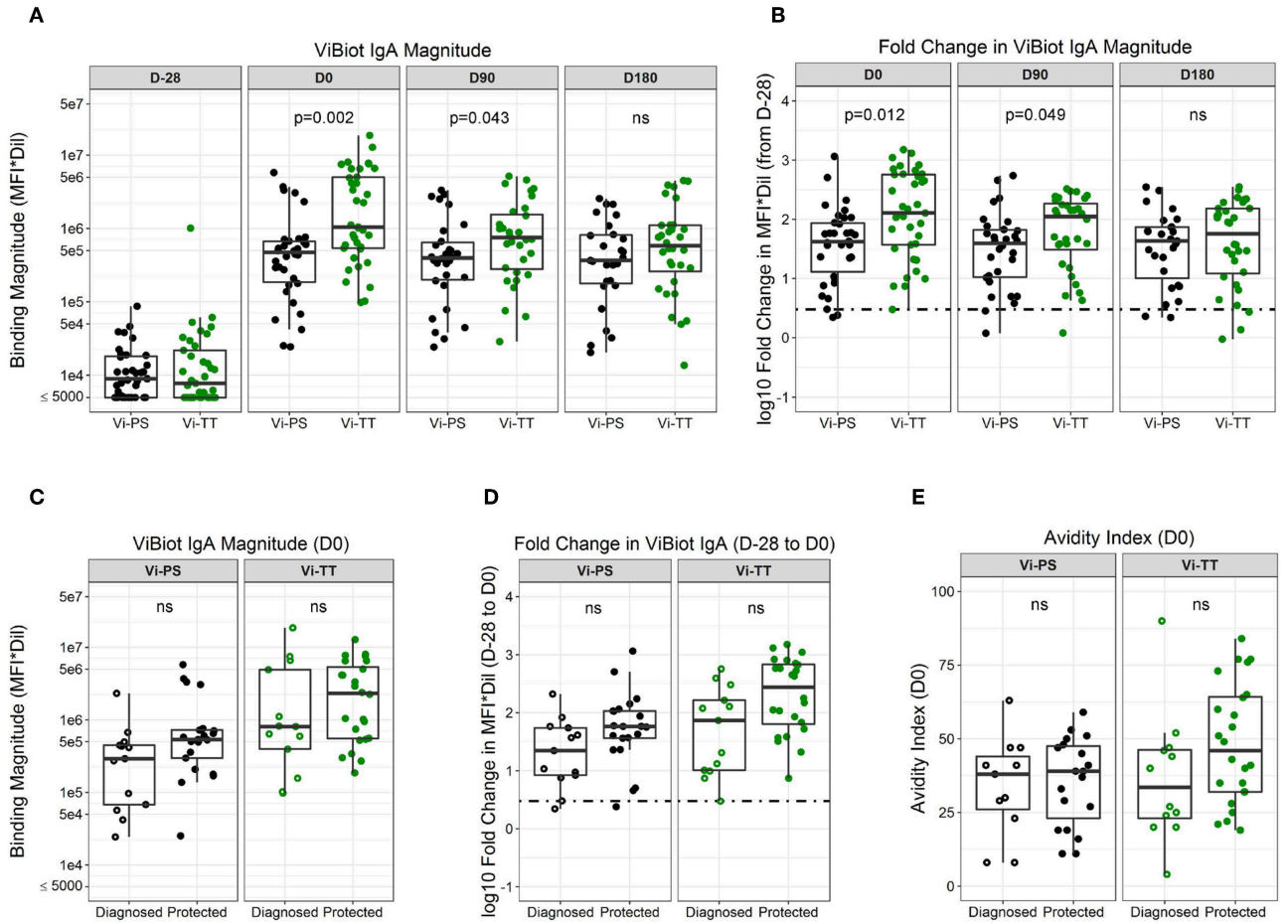


FIGURE 2 | ViBIOT-specific total IgA magnitude, fold change, and avidity higher in protected individuals of both vaccine groups. ViBIOT-specific IgA magnitude **(A)** and fold change **(B)** by vaccine group over time. ViBIOT-specific IgA magnitude **(C)** and fold change **(D)** by diagnosed/protected outcome at day of challenge. ViBIOT IgA avidity index **(E)** by diagnosed/protected outcome at day of challenge. Diagnosed and protected individuals are represented by open and closed circles, respectively. Data points are representative of $n = 2$ independent experiments (each with $n = 2$ technical replicates). n.s indicates non-significant FDR-corrected p values.

Spearman correlation of IgA1 and IgA2 response magnitude (**Figure 4F**). There was a moderate correlation between IgA1 and IgA2 magnitude (Spearman correlation=0.611, $p < 0.001$), but not all individuals with high IgA1 exhibited high IgA2 overall suggesting a greater degree of subclass specificity in the response to Vi.

IgG1 Avidity to Vi Polysaccharide Is Higher in Protected Individuals

Given that the addition of protein carriers, such as tetanus toxoid, to a polysaccharide vaccine allows for T cell engagement and avidity maturation (14, 28), we determined whether the Vi-TT vaccine improved Vi antibody avidity, and whether avidity maturation was associated with protection. Overall, the median avidity to Vi polysaccharide was higher in the Vi-TT group across all subclasses (IgA, IgG1, IgG2, IgG3); however, the only significant difference in avidity between vaccine groups was for ViBiot IgG3 (**Tables 1B**, **3**), where Vi IgG3 avidity was 4-fold higher in Vi-TT (median AI: 35%) vaccinees than Vi-PS vaccinees (median AI: 9%). However, IgG3 magnitudes in the Vi-PS group were very low. In the Vi-PS group, Vi IgG2 and IgG1 antibodies exhibited the highest avidity, with IgA1 and IgA2 in between, and IgG3 exhibiting the lowest avidity. In contrast, for the Vi-TT group, Vi IgG2 and IgG3 antibodies exhibited the highest avidity followed by IgG1, and the IgA subclasses exhibited the lowest (**Table 1B**). While there was no significant difference between Vi-PS and Vi-TT in ViBiot IgG1 avidity at any time point (**Figure 5A**), ViBiot IgG1 avidity was higher in protected individuals in the Vi-TT group, however this did not meet statistical significance at $p < 0.05$ (**Figure 5B**, FDR $p = 0.058$). The Vi-PS group was not tested for statistical differences among vaccine groups for IgG1 avidity due to low numbers of positive responders. To determine if the avidity of the vaccine-elicited IgG response further increased following oral challenge with live *S.* Typhi, we examined responses at 3 and 6 months post-challenge (D90, D180) compared to D0.

TABLE 2 | Vi Polysaccharide responses by protection status at day of challenge (D0).

Subclass	Vaccine arm	Protection status	Response rate	Median mag[a]	Median mag log fold change[b]	AI[c] median
IgG1	Vi-PS	Diagnosed	1/13 (8%)	3.54E4	0.43	10 (10–10)
		Protected	7/22 (32%)	4.09E4	0.61	27 (0–102)
	Vi-TT	Diagnosed	11/13 (85%)	2.63E5	1.09	22 (2–44)
		Protected	17/24 (71%)	2.38E5	1.33	46 (2–125)
IgG2	Vi-PS	Diagnosed	4/13 (31%)	8.62E4	0.87	25.5 (2–68)
		Protected	6/22 (27%)	4.98E4	0.98	35 (6–74)
	Vi-TT	Diagnosed	6/13 (46%)	1.59E5	1.34	26.5 (15–81)
		Protected	11/24 (46%)	1.77E5	1.38	50 (9–91)
IgG3	Vi-PS	Diagnosed	2/13 (15%)	5.00E3	0	3 (1–5)
		Protected	9/22 (41%)	5.00E3	0	18 (1–47)
	Vi-TT	Diagnosed	9/13 (69%)	1.09E4	0.34	35 (18–49)
		Protected	20/24 (83%)	1.36E4	0.44	37.5 (21–68)
IgA	Vi-PS	Diagnosed	11/13 (85%)	2.92E5	1.35	38 (8–63)
		Protected	19/21 (90%)	5.36E5	1.76	39 (11–59)
	Vi-TT	Diagnosed	12/13 (92%)	8.09E5	1.87	33.5 (4–90)
		Protected	24/24 (100%)	2.32E6	2.44	46 (19–84)

[a] *Magnitude calculated as MFI*Dilution.*
[b] *Fold Change from Baseline (D-28) to Day of Challenge (D0).*
[c] *AI, Avidity Index.*

There were no significant differences when compared with day of challenge (D0), of the median off-rate (s^{-1}) of vaccinee purified polyclonal IgGs to nViPS by BLI analysis (**Table 4**). However, the median IgG1 avidity index modestly increased in the diagnosed group but not in the protected group at 3 and 6 months post-challenge (**Figure 5C**).

Vi-PS and Vi-TT Vaccines Elicit Differential Immune Responses Associated With Protection

To better understand what factors are associated with protection in Vi-PS vs. Vi-TT vaccinees, we examined data collected across all antibody subclasses. In Vi-PS vaccinees, protection was significantly associated with Vi IgA magnitude and fold-change, and protected subjects had over 5-fold higher Vi IgA2 magnitude and fold-change compared with diagnosed vaccinees (**Figure 6A**). In Vi-TT vaccinees, there were no significant associations with protection, but distinct trends were observed for higher anti-Vi IgG1 avidity as well as total IgA fold-change, IgA1 fold change, and IgA2 avidity in protected individuals (**Figure 6B**).

DISCUSSION

Although moderately efficacious vaccines against *S.* Typhi have been licensed for decades, identification of mechanistic correlates of protection (mCoP), which could be used to improve vaccine design, have not been identified. This is because *S.* Typhi is a human restricted pathogen, thus limiting insights into the pathogenesis of typhoid fever and the host response (11). The establishment of a CHIM for the evaluation of the WHO prequalified Vi-tetanus tetanus (Vi-TT) conjugate vaccine has provided a platform with which to directly characterize vaccine-elicited Vi antibodies obtained from protected and diagnosed individuals. This is difficult to accomplish in field efficacy trials, as it requires post-vaccine blood samples being available from tens of thousands of participants and prolonged observation for cases to occur naturally. Following oral challenge with live *S.* Typhi, both the Vi-PS and Vi-TT vaccines exhibited similar attack rates at 37 and 35%, respectively, despite higher immunogenicity of the Vi-TT vaccine. In addition, a significant difference in anti-Vi IgG titers between diagnosed and protected individuals was only observed in the Vi-PS group, particularly for the IgG2 subclass, yet Vi-TT vaccinees exhibited attenuated clinical outcomes compared with Vi-PS vaccinees (15). Based on these data, since there are no currently known direct cell-mediated effector mechanisms generated by PS or conjugate vaccines, we hypothesized that the Vi-PS and Vi-TT vaccines may elicit antibody responses with distinct biophysical properties including subclass distribution and avidity that may influence protective outcomes.

In this study, we sought to evaluate the effect of the tetanus carrier protein on the quality of the immune response, which may play a role in affinity maturation and isotype switching of antibodies via engagement of the T cell pool. In addition, we aimed to identify characteristics of vaccine-elicited antibodies that correlated with protection in the CHIM study. To evaluate and compare host responses between vaccine groups and protection status, we characterized the antibody (IgA, IgA1, IgA2, IgG1, IgG2, and IgG3) response pre-vaccination, post-vaccination, and up to 6 months post-challenge. We observed that among antibody types tested, the highest concentration of antibody belonged to the IgG2 subclass, consistent with studies showing that IgG2 is the predominant IgG subclass response

TABLE 3A | Primary statistical analysis of IgA responses to Vi at day of challenge (D0).

Isotype	Measure	Analyte	Comparison	raw.p	FDR.p
IgA	Magnitude	Vi-Biot	Vaccine	**0.0002**	**0.0017**
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	*0.0241*	0.0785
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	0.3528	0.4992
		nViPS	Vaccine	**0.0016**	**0.0088**
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	**0.0021**	**0.0098**
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	0.1159	0.2314
	Fold Change	Vi-Biot	Vaccine	**0.0028**	**0.0118**
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	*0.0503*	0.1348
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	*0.0179*	*0.0610*
		nViPS	Vaccine	**0.0028**	**0.0118**
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	*0.0058*	**0.0230**
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	*0.0397*	0.1190
	Avidity Index	Vi-Biot	Vaccine	0.1087	0.2314
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	0.7465	0.7998
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	0.1108	0.2314
		nViPS	Vaccine	0.1018	0.2314
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	0.4562	0.6051
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	0.2359	0.3539
IgA1	Magnitude	nViPS	Vaccine	**0.0011**	**0.0066**
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	0.1363	0.2324
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	0.2106	0.3224
	Fold Change	nViPS	Vaccine	**0.0012**	**0.0072**
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	0.1363	0.2324
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	*0.0362*	*0.1132*
	Avidity Index	nViPS	Vaccine	*0.0498*	0.1348
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	0.6409	0.7395
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	0.0503	0.1348
IgA2	Magnitude	nViPS	Vaccine	0.1278	0.2314
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	0.1027	0.2314
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	0.1660	0.2594
	Fold Change	nViPS	Vaccine	0.1278	0.2314
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	0.1027	0.2314
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	0.1660	0.2594
	Avidity Index	nViPS	Vaccine	0.5349	0.6800
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	0.7379	0.7998
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	0.0547	0.1416

Raw p values <0.005 and FDR-corrected p values <0.05 bolded. Raw p values <0.05 italicized. Vi-BIOT antigen data not collected for IgA1 and IgA2 subclasses.

to polysaccharide antigens (29). However, IgA dominated the overall vaccine-elicited antibody response to Vi in both groups, with the largest fold-change in IgA1, when only positive responders were evaluated. This is consistent with results from one study that detected higher frequencies of IgA antibody secreting cells (ASCs) compared with IgG ASCs following vaccination with Vi-PS (30). In addition, vaccination with Vi-PS or another Vi-conjugate vaccine using *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* recombinant exoprotein A (Vi-rEPA) demonstrated that fold-change in total IgA was higher than total IgG, though this study did not further classify by antibody subclass (8). None of the subclasses examined were boosted in response to challenge with live *S.* Typhi bacteria. This may have been a result of challenging volunteers near the peak of their post-vaccination antibody response when antibody titers were very high. Instead, challenge likely induced immuno-dominant responses to alternative antigens such as LPS and flagellin as has been previously described, at least amongst those who developed clinical or microbiological evidence of infection (31).

In evaluating antibody correlates of protection against typhoid fever, we examined both antibody magnitude and fold-change from baseline, as well as antibody avidity to Vi antigen. We observed that magnitude (FDR $p = 0.01$) and fold-change (FDR $p = 0.02$) from baseline of nViPS IgA

TABLE 3B | Primary statistical analysis of IgG responses to Vi at Day of challenge (D0).

Isotype	Measure	Analyte	Comparison	raw.p	FDR.p
IgG1	Magnitude	Vi-Biot	Vaccine	**0.00008**	**0.0010**
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	1.0000	1.0000
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	0.6717	0.7632
		nViPS	Vaccine	**0.00002**	**0.0006**
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	0.1272	0.2314
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	0.2908	0.4276
	Fold Change	Vi-Biot	Vaccine	**0.0004**	**0.0032**
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	0.7056	0.7899
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	0.7417	0.7998
		nViPS	Vaccine	**0.000002**	**0.0001**
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	0.0571	0.1429
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	0.9875	1.0000
	Avidity Index	Vi-Biot	Vaccine	0.1427	0.2365
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	Not tested	Not tested
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	*0.0154*	*0.0576*
		nViPS	Vaccine	**0.000003**	**0.0001**
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	0.9303	0.9691
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	0.6141	0.7197
IgG2	Magnitude	Vi-Biot	Vaccine	*0.0162*	*0.0577*
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	0.9866	1.0000
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	0.4223	0.5759
		nViPS	Vaccine	**0.0003**	**0.0025**
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	0.1210	0.2314
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	0.4598	0.6051
	Fold Change	Vi-Biot	Vaccine	**0.0021**	**0.0098**
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	0.4682	0.6055
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	0.8384	0.8856
		nViPS	Vaccine	**0.0006**	**0.0049**
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	0.1296	0.2314
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	0.3695	0.5132
	Avidity Index	Vi-Biot	Vaccine	0.1451	0.2365
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	Not tested	Not tested
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	0.1191	0.2314
IgG3	Magnitude	Vi-Biot	Vaccine	**0.000047**	**0.0007**
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	0.5950	0.7084
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	0.5758	0.7079
	Fold Change	Vi-Biot	Vaccine	**0.000045**	**0.0007**
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	0.5950	0.7084
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	0.5758	0.7079
	Avidity Index	Vi-Biot	Vaccine	**0.0007**	**0.0049**
			Diagnosis Vi-PS	NA	NA
			Diagnosis Vi-TT	0.2993	0.4316

Raw p values <0.005 and FDR-corrected p values <0.05 bolded. Raw p values <0.05 italicized. nViPS antigen data not collected for IgG2 avidity or the IgG3 subclass. "NA" indicates that data was not collected. "Not tested" indicates insufficient data points for statistical testing.

correlated with protection status at day of challenge in the Vi-PS vaccine group. We also noted higher ViBiot IgA fold-change in the Vi-TT group (FDR $p = 0.06$), though not statistically significant. Protected individuals in both vaccine groups exhibited 2–3.5-fold higher concentrations of Vi-specific IgA compared with diagnosed individuals (in μg/ml equivalents of the 16/138 Typhoid IS Standard). Notably, the 16/138 Typhoid IS standard was non-IgG depleted therefore, IgA equivalents may be understated due to antigen-specific competition by IgG. However, the IgA correlation with protection status suggests that Vi IgA may serve as a surrogate marker that predicts protection from disease following vaccination. Studies of other infections have reported antibody titer and fold-rise as potential non-mechanistic correlates of protection (nCoP) that may aid

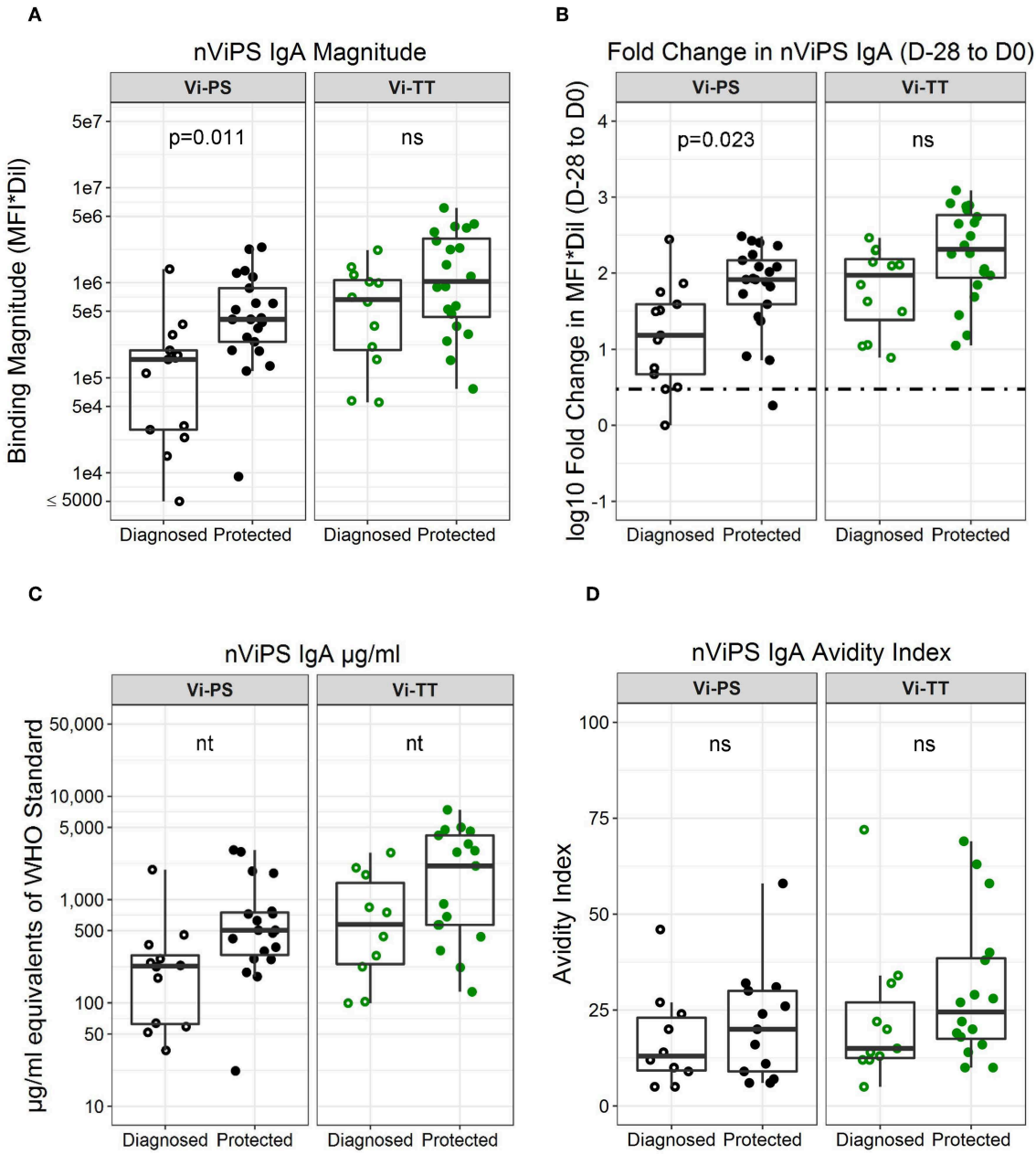


FIGURE 3 | nViPS-specific total IgA magnitude, fold change, and avidity higher in protected individuals of both vaccine groups. nViPS-specific IgA magnitude **(A)** fold change **(B)** µg/mL equivalents of WHO typhoid IS 16/138 **(C)** and avidity index **(D)** by diagnosed/protected outcome at day of challenge. Data points are representative of $n = 2$ independent experiments (each with $n = 2$ technical replicates). n.s indicates non-significant FDR-corrected p values. nt indicates not tested for statistical significance.

in development and evaluation of vaccines (32–34); however, these data may also be evidence of an underlying mCoP that has yet to be identified. The Vi polysaccharide capsule, as the main virulence factor of *S.* Typhi, limits complement deposition and neutrophil chemotaxis which are essential in the immune response against *S.* Typhimurium (11–13). The lack of these innate immune responses to *S.* Typhi are what ultimately allow the bacteria to establish systemic infection; therefore, pre-existing Vi IgA may provide protection against *S.* Typhi infection via Fc-dependent mechanisms. IgA may activate the complement cascade via the lectin pathway and exhibit bactericidal activity (35), or alternatively enhance neutrophil phagocytosis (ADNP), as neutrophils express the highest levels of FcαR among the phagocytic immune cells (20). Serum bactericidal activity and high affinity opsonophagocytic antibodies remain the accepted correlates of protection for meningococcal (36–38) and

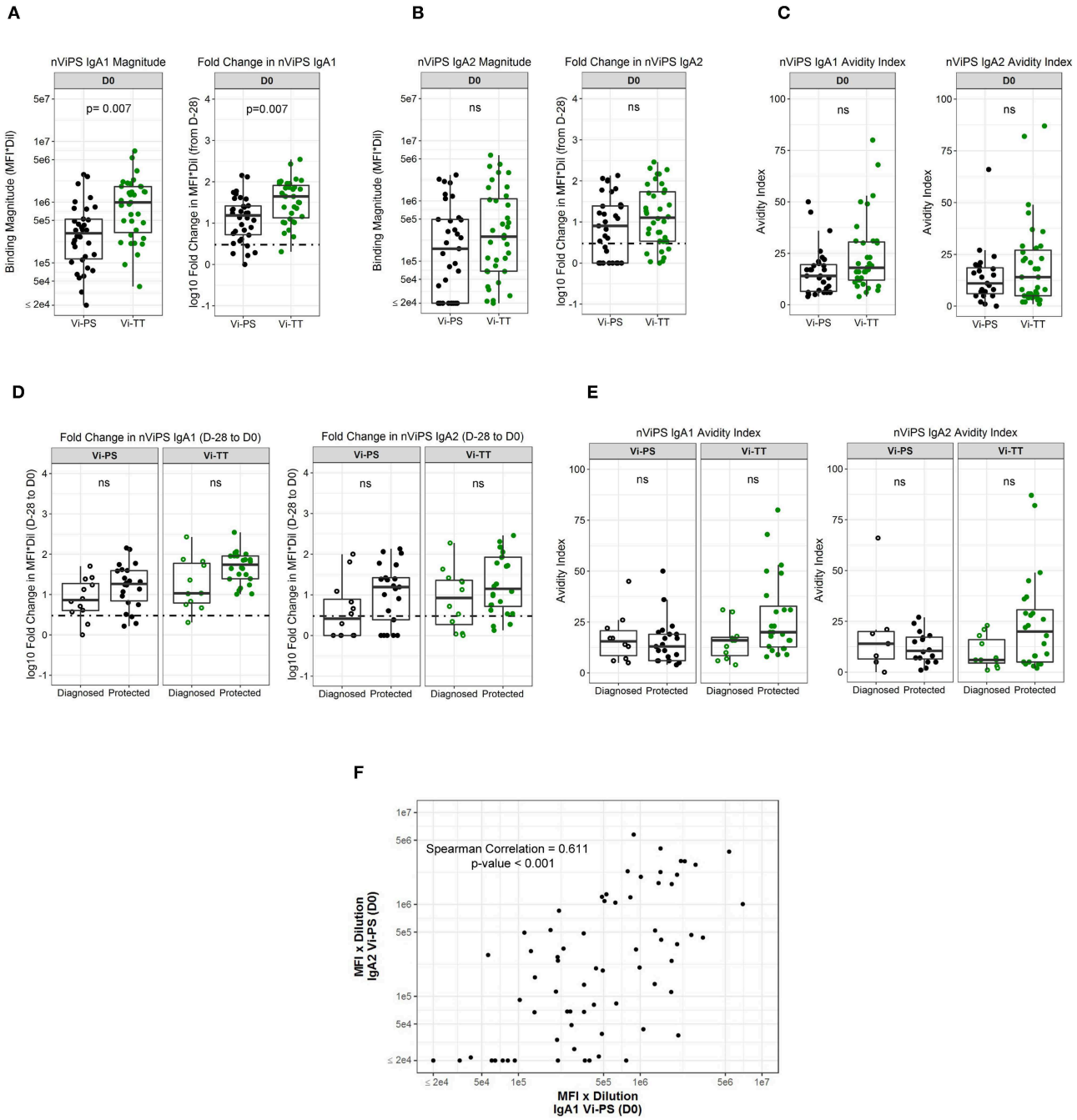


FIGURE 4 | nViPS IgA1 and IgA2 fold change higher in protected individuals in both vaccine groups. nViPS-specific IgA1 magnitude and fold change **(A)** and nViPS-specific IgA2 magnitude and fold change **(B)** by vaccine group from baseline to day of challenge. nViPS IgA1 and IgA2 avidity index **(C)** by vaccine group at day of challenge. IgA1 and IgA2 fold change from baseline to day of challenge by protected/diagnosed status **(D)** and IgA1 and IgA2 avidity index at day of challenge **(E)** by protected/diagnosed status. Data points are representative of $n = 2$ independent experiments (each with $n = 2$ technical replicates). Spearman correlation between nViPS IgA1 and IgA2 magnitude **(F)** at day of challenge. n.s indicates non-significant FDR-corrected p values.

pneumococcal (36, 39, 40) polysaccharide conjugate vaccines, respectively. For typhoid fever, studies have shown enhanced opsonophagocytosis of live *S.* Typhi using post-vaccination sera from various typhoid fever vaccine constructs (41, 42), yet none have done so with the Vi-PS or Vi-TT vaccines.

Further analysis of Vi IgA separated by IgA1 and IgA2 revealed that Vi IgA2 levels were 6-fold higher in protected vs. susceptible Vi-PS vaccinees. IgA2 is present in higher concentration in the mucosa than in serum (43). As such, this may suggest a role for IgA2 in mediating a protective

TABLE 4 | Dissociation rates of purified polyclonal IgGs to nViPS.

Days post challenge	Vaccine arm	Median Off-rate (s^{-1})	Range (s^{-1})
D0	Vi-PS	1.44E-03	2.63E-02–1.00E-06
	Vi-TT	8.13E-04	9.01E-03–1.00E-06
D90	Vi-PS	1.28E-03	2.21E-03–1.00E-06
	Vi-TT	1.04E-03	4.36E-03–1.00E-06
D180	Vi-PS	2.12E-03	3.70E-03–2.65E-04
	Vi-TT	1.28E-03	2.87E-03–1.20E-04

effect at the gut epithelium prior to bacterial entrance into intracellular niches within the lymphatic system. It may also suggest a functional role for Vi IgA2 in the serum, as many studies have shown that anti-polysaccharide IgA responses are associated primarily with IgA2 subclass unless conjugated to a protein carrier (44, 45). In the Vi-TT group, anti-Vi IgA1 rather than IgA2 fold-change was 5-fold higher in protected individuals. These diverging data suggest that although IgA appears to predict protection in both vaccine groups, either the functional mechanism of IgA-mediated protection differs or IgA1 and IgA2 play redundant roles. A previous study on the Vi-PS vaccine demonstrated that nearly 60% of Vi-specific antibody secreting cells (ASCs) from human peripheral blood expressed gut-homing marker $\alpha_4\beta_7$ while nearly 80% expressed systemic homing marker L-selectin (30). Therefore, it is still unknown whether Vi-specific ASCs mediate protective function at the mucosal or systemic level. Additional studies looking at plasmablast phenotypes and probing the mucosal compartment, including saliva Ig, may help determine whether the serum antibody pool is recapitulated at the mucosal level and may help to further elucidate the role of IgA, the most abundant class of antibody in the mucosa.

Previous studies have reported that tetanus toxoid as a carrier protein produces higher avidity antibodies against pneumococcal and *Haemophilus influenzae* type b (Hib) polysaccharides when compared with other licensed carrier proteins such as meningococcal outer membrane protein complex (OPMC) or diphtheria toxoid (28, 46, 47). Interestingly, the Vi-TT vaccine did not significantly increase the avidity of the response for any subclass other than IgG3 (FDR $p = 0.005$). However, though not statistically significant, avidity of each antibody subclass was higher in Vi-TT vaccinees compared with Vi-PS vaccinees. Despite lower median avidity compared with its IgG subclass counterparts, ViBiot IgG1 avidity was higher in protected Vi-TT vaccinees compared with diagnosed, though not statistically significant (FDR $p = 0.058$). IgG1 subclass antibodies have greater affinity for FcγRs compared with IgG2 (20), therefore, these data may suggest a role for IgG1 in Fc-mediated protection against typhoid fever. IgG3 antibodies, like IgG1, are also known to bind to FcγRs with higher affinity than IgG2 and IgG4; however, despite exhibiting higher avidity to Vi in the Vi-TT group, the magnitude of the IgG3 response was very low. In addition to Vi IgG1 avidity, Vi IgA2 avidity was 3-fold higher in protected vs. diagnosed Vi-TT vaccinees. Interestingly, IgA2 exhibited the lowest median avidity in the Vi-TT group yet showed the largest difference between protected and diagnosed individuals. This finding, along with the Vi IgG1 avidity, illustrates how antibody-mediated protection may encompass not only affinity for antigen but also distribution in the correct locations throughout the body as well as ability to engage available effector cells.

Unlike the Vi-TT group, there were no trends with avidity and protection status in the Vi-PS vaccinees. The increase in avidity of serum antibodies, expressed by avidity index and antibody off-rate, in Vi-TT vaccinees suggests that the tetanus carrier protein did stimulate germinal center reactions and affinity maturation. However, the avidity index of Vi antibodies did not exceed 50% post-vaccination, indicating that the antibodies exhibited low to medium avidity at best, even with the conjugate vaccine. In fact, most antibodies elicited by conjugate vaccines have low affinity to their polysaccharide ligands. Nearly all isolated polysaccharide monoclonal antibodies have micromolar binding affinities which is orders of magnitude lower than typical anti-protein antibodies (48–50). For example, in this study the off-rate (k_d) of purified polyclonal IgGs from vaccinated individuals was on the order of $1e^{-3}$ s^{-1}, whereas malaria-naïve subjects receiving the malaria RTS,S vaccine develop antibodies to circumsporozoite protein (CSP) with off-rates on the order of $1e^{-4}$ s^{-1} or less, measured using the same BLI method (27). However, these CSP antibodies underwent affinity maturation over the course of three doses of vaccine, whereas Vi-TT and Vi-PS vaccines were single dose. Additional studies examining the phenotype and functional properties of the TT-specific T cell pool may shed light on the low level of affinity maturation observed in this trial. Similar to the magnitude of the response, the avidity of Vi antibodies, across all subclasses, did not increase post-challenge with live *S.* Typhi. This could suggest that boosting at later time points is required for increased affinity maturation to Vi.

Examining how the biophysical properties of Vi antibodies relates to protection status has revealed that the Vi-PS and the Vi-TT vaccines elicit different protective antibody signatures. Trends in the protected group of Vi-PS vaccinees are dominated by total IgA and IgA2 levels whereas in the Vi-TT group, protected individuals appear to exhibit a signature consistent with high IgA levels and higher avidity responses for IgA2 and IgG1. Interestingly, although both the Vi-TT and Vi-PS vaccines exhibited a similar overall efficacy using stringent diagnosis criteria, fewer Vi-TT diagnosed vaccinees reported severe symptoms and fewer exhibited fever $\geq 38^{\circ}$C (15). In the VAST study, diagnostic criteria included prolonged fever of $\geq 38^{\circ}$C, *S.* Typhi bacteremia, or both together. In the Vi-PS group, more participants exhibited both criteria, whereas in the Vi-TT group, many exhibited bacteremia without fever that may have self-resolved (15). In fact, in a *post-hoc* analysis using the field definition of typhoid fever, which requires both fever and positive bacteremia, the Vi-TT vaccine efficacy was 87.1% and for Vi-PS only 52.3% (15). These improved clinical manifestations seem to suggest that a combined IgA response with higher affinity IgA and IgG1 antibody may provide

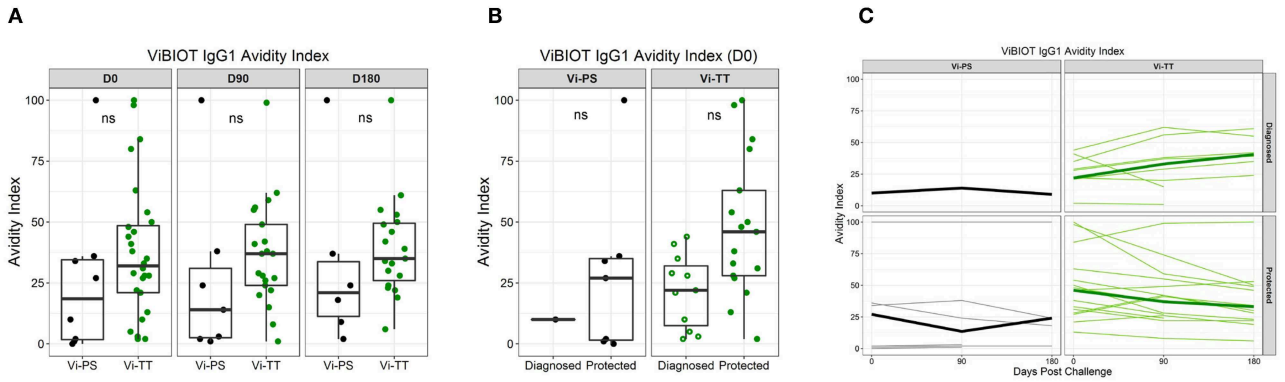


FIGURE 5 | Vi polysaccharide IgG1 avidity higher in protected individuals. ViBIOT IgG1 avidity index at pH 3.0 in positive vaccine responders by vaccine group over time **(A)** and by diagnosed/protected outcome at day of challenge **(B)**. Avidity index in positive vaccine responses of anti-ViBIOT IgG1 over time **(C)** from 4 weeks post-vaccination (D0) to 6 months post-challenge (D180) by vaccine group and protection status. Bolded lines indicate median avidity index and faint lines indicate individual level data. Data points are representative of $n = 2$ independent experiments (each with $n = 2$ technical replicates). nt indicates not tested for statistical significance.

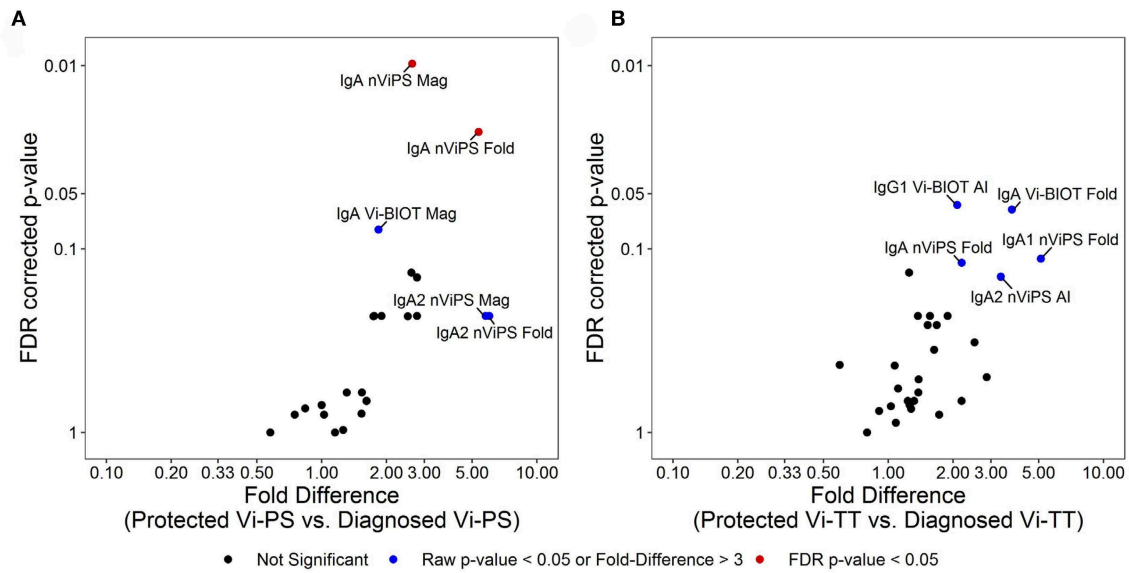


FIGURE 6 | Different immune signatures of protection status for Vi-PS and Vi-TT. Variables in analysis of immune signatures between vaccine groups include magnitude, fold-change, and avidity of IgA1, IgA2, IgG1, IgG2, and IgG3 to Vi-Biot and nViPS. Volcano plot of FDR-corrected *p*-value and fold difference by diagnosed/protected outcome for Vi-PS vaccinees **(A)** and Vi-TT vaccinees **(B)**. Red dots represent FDR-corrected *p*-values < 0.05, blue dots represent raw *p*-values <0.05 or fold difference >3 (trending).

better protection and attenuate disease outcome. In a typhoid endemic setting where pre-existing immunity, including IgA and IgG1 is likely to be present, the further boost in antibody maturation by vaccination (i.e., increasing antibody avidity), may enhance the protective response by vaccination, with a more pronounced boost in the Vi-TT group. Overall, the improved immunological properties of the Vi-TT conjugate vaccine are (i) higher IgG and IgA responses, (ii) immune responses in children under 2 (51), (iii) induction of immunological memory, and (iv) different pattern of antibody responses as shown in our studies. Additional studies are needed to determine if any of these responses relate to differences of VE in the field.

The analyses in this study were limited by statistical and ethical factors. Firstly, sample sizes in the CHIM were small, with merely 13 diagnosed individuals per group, and analysis of only positive vaccine responders and correcting for multiple comparisons affected the statistical power of the study.

Furthermore, in the context of the CHIM, participants were treated immediately after identification of positive bacteremia or prolonged fever. Therefore, this provides a model of infection which differs from field trials in endemic settings in which disease is detected, as only symptomatic patients present to healthcare settings. In addition, considerations such as challenge dose, timing of challenge, and challenge population may all differ from natural infection. Importantly, the study population in this CHIM was typhoid naïve adults, and therefore, validation of these results in the target population, children in typhoid endemic regions, will be critical. Finally, we observed modest differences in the antigenicity of ViBiot and nViPS antigens in which responses positively correlated yet differed in statistical outcome. We believe that non-targeted biotinylation of the nViPS molecule may result in epitope changes that impact antigenicity, therefore, careful consideration, and characterization of immunogens is necessary. Studies using newly generated human monoclonal antibodies could help to resolve the fine specificity of antibody forms to these antigens elicited by typhoid fever vaccines.

Despite these limitations, the findings of this study demonstrate the utility of CHIMs in understanding protective immune responses to human-restricted pathogens and suggest that higher magnitude and affinity IgA may be a potential target for induction by typhoid fever vaccine strategies. This study identifies Vi IgA as a biomarker of protective immunity against typhoid fever and quantifies concentration of Vi IgA in vaccinees using the 16/138 typhoid International Standard (NIBSC). This standard could be used to compare vaccine-induced IgA responses across studies of other TCVs currently in development, such as the Vi-CRM_{197} and Vi-diphtheria toxin TCVs (52, 53), aiding vaccine evaluation. Using standard measures to compare across studies will allow careful consideration of which TCVs to deploy for routine immunization in infants under 2 years of age. Future work is required to understand the functional role of Vi IgA and determine whether IgA represents a mechanistic correlate of protection or a surrogate marker of an underlying immune response. IgA is known to play a critical role in mucosal immunity, and as *S.* Typhi is an enteric pathogen, IgA may be providing protection at the site of infection. Further studies are needed to determine whether the mucosal antibody response recapitulates the systemic compartment. More importantly, determining the potential IgA Fc-mediated functions that correlate with protection as well as further characterizing the epitope specificities of protective antibodies will inform vaccine design for elicitation of a more targeted and protective immune response against typhoid fever.

DATA AVAILABILITY STATEMENT

The datasets generated for this study are available on request to the corresponding author.

ETHICS STATEMENT

The studies involving human participants were reviewed and approved by The South Central Oxford A Ethics Committee (14/SC/1427). The patients/participants provided their written informed consent to participate in this study.

AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

LD, AP, and GT conceived and designed the work. CJ, JH, EJ, and AP carried out the clinical trial. LD, FF, and RM acquired data for the work. LD, CJ, SD, RS, LZ, KS, SA, AP, and GT analyzed and interpreted the work. KS, SD, SA, and GT designed experimental procedures and supervised. RS and LZ performed statistical analysis. LD, AP, and GT wrote the manuscript. CJ, RS, KS, and SD edited the manuscript. All other authors reviewed and approved the final document.

FUNDING

The human challenge study was funded by The Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation (OPP1084259) and the European Commission FP7 grant Advanced Immunization Technologies (ADITEC) with support from the NIHR Oxford Biomedical Research Center. This study was supported by a grant for the Antibody Dynamics platform of the Global Health-Vaccine Accelerator Platforms (GH-VAP) from the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation (OPP1151372). Additional support was provided by Dean's Graduate Fellowship, Duke University, and National Institutes of Health (NIH) T32 AI 52077.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We are grateful to the volunteers for participating in the study; the Oxford Vaccine Group Typhoid Study Team; Bharat Biotech International Limited for supplying the investigational vaccine (Typbar-TCV); and the Wellcome Trust for funding the development of the typhoid challenge model. We thank Professor Myron M. Levine and the University of Maryland for provision of the original *S.* Typhi Quailes challenge strain. We thank Dr. Sjoerd Rijpkema and the National Institute of Biological Standards and Control (NIBSC) for provision of the 16/138 International Standard for Anti-Typhoid Capsular Vi polysaccharide Ig (Human). We also thank Dr. Sarah Mudrak, Duke University, and Dr. Karen Makar, Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation (BMGF) Global Health Vaccine Accelerator Platform (GH-VAP), for program management and helpful discussion.

SUPPLEMENTARY MATERIAL

The Supplementary Material for this article can be found online at: https://www.frontiersin.org/articles/10.3389/fimmu.2019.02582/full#supplementary-material

REFERENCES

1. Antillon M, Warren JL, Crawford FW, Weinberger DM, Kurum E, Pak GD, et al. The burden of typhoid fever in low- and middle-income countries: a meta-regression approach. *PLoS Negl Trop Dis*. (2017) 11:e0005376. doi: 10.1371/journal.pntd.0005376
2. Mogasale V, Maskery B, Ochiai RL, Lee JS, Mogasale VV, Ramani E, et al. Burden of typhoid fever in low-income and middle-income countries: a systematic, literature-based update with risk-factor adjustment. *Lancet Glob Health*. (2014) 2:e570–80. doi: 10.1016/S2214-109X(14)70301-8
3. Klemm EJ, Shakoor S, Page AJ, Qamar FN, Judge K, Saeed DK, et al. Emergence of an extensively drug-resistant salmonella enterica serovar typhi clone harboring a promiscuous plasmid encoding resistance to fluoroquinolones and third-generation cephalosporins. *MBio*. (2018) 9:e00105–18. doi: 10.1128/mBio.00105-18
4. Wong VK, Baker S, Pickard DJ, Parkhill J, Page AJ, Feasey NA, et al. Phylogeographical analysis of the dominant multidrug-resistant H58 clade of Salmonella Typhi identifies inter- and intracontinental transmission events. *Nat Genet*. (2015) 47:632–9. doi: 10.1038/ng.3281
5. Andrews JR, Qamar FN, Charles RC, Ryan ET. Extensively drug-resistant typhoid - are conjugate vaccines arriving just in time? *N Engl J Med*. (2018) 379:1493–5. doi: 10.1056/NEJMp1803926
6. Black RE, Levine MM, Ferreccio C, Clements ML, Lanata C, Rooney J, et al. Efficacy of one or two doses of Ty21a Salmonella typhi vaccine in enteric-coated capsules in a controlled field trial. Chilean Typhoid Committee. *Vaccine*. (1990) 8:81–4. doi: 10.1016/0264-410X(90)90183-M
7. Engels EA, Falagas ME, Lau J, Bennish ML. Typhoid fever vaccines: a meta-analysis of studies on efficacy and toxicity. *BMJ*. (1998) 316:110–6. doi: 10.1136/bmj.316.7125.110
8. Kossaczka Z, Lin FY, Ho VA, Thuy NT, Van Bay P, Thanh TC, et al. Safety and immunogenicity of Vi conjugate vaccines for typhoid fever in adults, teenagers, and 2- to 4-year-old children in Vietnam. *Infect Immun*. (1999) 67:5806–10.
9. Rijkers GT, Sanders EA, Breukels MA, Zegers BJ. Infant B cell responses to polysaccharide determinants. *Vaccine*. (1998) 16:1396–400. doi: 10.1016/S0264-410X(98)00098-X
10. Weintraub A. Immunology of bacterial polysaccharide antigens. *Carbohydr Res*. (2003) 338:2539–47. doi: 10.1016/j.carres.2003.07.008
11. Dougan G, Baker S. Salmonella enterica serovar Typhi and the pathogenesis of typhoid fever. *Annu Rev Microbiol*. (2014) 68:317–36. doi: 10.1146/annurev-micro-091313-103739
12. Wilson RP, Winter SE, Spees AM, Winter MG, Nishimori JH, Sanchez JF, et al. The Vi capsular polysaccharide prevents complement receptor 3-mediated clearance of Salmonella enterica serotype Typhi. *Infect Immun*. (2011) 79:830–7. doi: 10.1128/IAI.00961-10
13. Wangdi T, Lee CY, Spees AM, Yu C, Kingsbury DD, Winter SE, et al. The Vi capsular polysaccharide enables Salmonella enterica serovar typhi to evade microbe-guided neutrophil chemotaxis. *PLoS Pathog*. (2014) 10:e1004306. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1004306
14. Micoli F, Adamo R, Costantino P. Protein carriers for glycoconjugate vaccines: history, selection criteria, characterization and new trends. *Molecules*. (2018) 23. doi: 10.3390/molecules23061451
15. Jin C, Gibani MM, Moore M, Juel HB, Jones E, Meiring J, et al. Efficacy and immunogenicity of a Vi-tetanus toxoid conjugate vaccine in the prevention of typhoid fever using a controlled human infection model of Salmonella Typhi: a randomised controlled, phase 2b trial. *Lancet*. (2017) 390:2472–80. doi: 10.1016/S0140-6736(17)32149-9
16. Klugman KP, Koornhof HJ, Robbins JB, Le Cam NN. Immunogenicity, efficacy and serological correlate of protection of Salmonella typhi Vi capsular polysaccharide vaccine three years after immunization. *Vaccine*. (1996) 14:435–8. doi: 10.1016/0264-410X(95)00186-5
17. MacLennan CA. Antibodies and protection against invasive salmonella disease. *Front Immunol*. (2014) 5:635. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2014.00635
18. Schroeder HW Jr, Cavacini L. Structure and function of immunoglobulins. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. (2010) 125:S41–52. doi: 10.1016/j.jaci.2009.09.046
19. Bruhns P, Iannascoli B, England P, Mancardi DA, Fernandez N, Jorieux S, et al. Specificity and affinity of human Fcgamma receptors and their polymorphic variants for human IgG subclasses. *Blood*. (2009) 113:3716–25. doi: 10.1182/blood-2008-09-179754
20. Gunn BM, Alter G. Modulating antibody functionality in infectious disease and vaccination. *Trends Mol Med*. (2016) 22:969–82. doi: 10.1016/j.molmed.2016.09.002
21. Gao F, Swann C, Rigsby P, Rijpkema S, Lockyer K, Logan A, et al. Evaluation of two WHO first international standards for Vi polysaccharide from Citrobacter freundii and Salmonella enterica subspecies enterica serovar Typhi. *Biologicals*. (2019) 57:34–45. doi: 10.1016/j.biologicals.2018.11.004
22. Yates NL, Liao HX, Fong Y, deCamp A, Vandergrift NA, Williams WT, et al. Vaccine-induced Env V1-V2 IgG3 correlates with lower HIV-1 infection risk and declines soon after vaccination. *Sci Transl Med*. (2014) 6:228ra239. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3007730
23. Tomaras GD, Yates NL, Liu P, Qin L, Fouda GG, Chavez LL, Decamp AC, et al. Initial B-cell responses to transmitted human immunodeficiency virus type 1: virion-binding immunoglobulin M (IgM) and IgG antibodies followed by plasma anti-gp41 antibodies with ineffective control of initial viremia. *J Virol*. (2008) 82:12449–63. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01708-08
24. Biagini RE, Schlottmann SA, Sammons DL, Smith JP, Snawder JC, Striley CA, et al. Method for simultaneous measurement of antibodies to 23 pneumococcal capsular polysaccharides. *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol*. (2003) 10:744–50. doi: 10.1128/CDLI.10.5.744-750.2003
25. Schlottmann SA, Jain N, Chirmule N, Esser MT. A novel chemistry for conjugating pneumococcal polysaccharides to Luminex microspheres. *J Immunol Methods*. (2006) 309:75–85. doi: 10.1016/j.jim.2005.11.019
26. Yates NL, Stacey AR, Nolen TL, Vandergrift NA, Moody MA, Montefiori DC, et al. HIV-1 gp41 envelope IgA is frequently elicited after transmission but has an initial short response half-life. *Mucosal Immunol*. (2013) 6:692–703. doi: 10.1038/mi.2012.107
27. Dennison SM, Reichartz M, Seaton KE, Dutta S, Wille-Reece U, Hill AVS, et al. Qualified biolayer interferometry avidity measurements distinguish the heterogeneity of antibody interactions with plasmodium falciparum circumsporozoite protein antigens. *J Immunol*. (2018) 201:1315–26. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1800323
28. Pichichero ME. Protein carriers of conjugate vaccines: characteristics, development, and clinical trials. *Hum Vaccin Immunother*. (2013) 9:2505–23. doi: 10.4161/hv.26109
29. Vidarsson G, Dekkers G, Rispens T. IgG subclasses and allotypes: from structure to effector functions. *Front Immunol*. (2014) 5:520. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2014.00520
30. Kantele A, Pakkanen SH, Karttunen R, Kantele JM. Head-to-head comparison of humoral immune responses to Vi capsular polysaccharide and Salmonella Typhi Ty21a typhoid vaccines–a randomized trial. *PLoS ONE*. (2013) 8:e60583. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0060583
31. Waddington CS, Darton TC, Jones C, Haworth K, Peters A, John T, et al. An outpatient, ambulant-design, controlled human infection model using escalating doses of Salmonella Typhi challenge delivered in sodium bicarbonate solution. *Clin Infect Dis*. (2014) 58:1230–40. doi: 10.1093/cid/ciu078
32. Gilbert PB, Gabriel EE, Miao X, Li X, Su SC, Parrino J, et al. Fold rise in antibody titers by measured by glycoprotein-based enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay is an excellent correlate of protection for a herpes zoster vaccine, demonstrated via the vaccine efficacy curve. *J Infect Dis*. (2014) 210:1573–81. doi: 10.1093/infdis/jiu279
33. Bothamley GH. Epitope-specific antibody levels in tuberculosis: biomarkers of protection, disease, and response to treatment. *Front Immunol*. (2014) 5:243. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2014.00243
34. Jacobsen H, Rajendran M, Choi A, Sjursen H, Brokstad KA, Cox RJ, et al. Influenza virus hemagglutinin stalk-specific antibodies in human serum are a surrogate marker for *in vivo* protection in a serum transfer mouse challenge model. *MBio*. (2017) 8:e01463–17. doi: 10.1128/mBio.01463-17
35. Roos A, Bouwman LH, van Gijlswijk-Janssen DJ, Faber-Krol MC, Stahl GL, Daha MR. Human IgA activates the complement system via the mannan-binding lectin pathway. *J Immunol*. (2001) 167:2861–8. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.167.5.2861
36. Plotkin SA. Correlates of protection induced by vaccination. *Clin Vaccine Immunol*. (2010) 17:1055–65. doi: 10.1128/CVI.00131-10

37. Boyd MA, Tennant SM, Saague VA, Simon R, Muhsen K, Ramachandran G, et al. Serum bactericidal assays to evaluate typhoidal and nontyphoidal Salmonella vaccines. *Clin Vaccine Immunol*. (2014) 21:712–21. doi: 10.1128/CVI.00115-14
38. Borrow R, Balmer P, Miller E. Meningococcal surrogates of protection–serum bactericidal antibody activity. *Vaccine*. (2005) 23:2222–7. doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2005.01.051
39. Lee LH, Frasch CE, Falk LA, Klein DL, Deal CD. Correlates of immunity for pneumococcal conjugate vaccines. *Vaccine*. (2003) 21:2190–6. doi: 10.1016/S0264-410X(03)00025-2
40. Romero-Steiner S, Musher DM, Cetron MS, Pais LB, Groover JE, Fiore AE, et al. Reduction in functional antibody activity against Streptococcus pneumoniae in vaccinated elderly individuals highly correlates with decreased IgG antibody avidity. *Clin Infect Dis*. (1999) 29:281–8. doi: 10.1086/520200
41. Wahid R, Zafar SJ, McArthur MA, Pasetti MF, Levine MM, Sztein MB. Live oral Salmonella enterica serovar Typhi vaccines Ty21a and CVD 909 induce opsonophagocytic functional antibodies in humans that cross-react with S. Paratyphi A and S. Paratyphi B. *Clin Vaccine Immunol*. (2014) 21:427–34. doi: 10.1128/CVI.00786-13
42. Lindow JC, Fimlaid KA, Bunn JY, Kirkpatrick BD. Antibodies in action: role of human opsonins in killing Salmonella enterica serovar Typhi. *Infect Immun*. (2011) 79:3188–94. doi: 10.1128/IAI.05081-11
43. Delacroix DL, Dive C, Rambaud JC, Vaerman JP. IgA subclasses in various secretions and in serum. *Immunology*. (1982) 47:383–5.
44. Lue C, Tarkowski A, Mestecky J. Systemic immunization with pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine induces a predominant IgA2 response of peripheral blood lymphocytes and increases of both serum and secretory anti-pneumococcal antibodies. *J Immunol*. (1988) 140:37 93–800.
45. Tarkowski A, Lue C, Moldoveanu Z, Kiyono H, McGhee JR, Mestecky J. Immunization of humans with polysaccharide vaccines induces systemic, predominantly polymeric IgA2-subclass antibody responses. *J Immunol*. (1990) 144:3770–8.
46. Schlesinger Y, Granoff DM. Avidity and bactericidal activity of antibody elicited by different Haemophilus influenzae type b conjugate vaccines. The Vaccine Study Group. *JAMA*. (1992) 267:1489–94. doi: 10.1001/jama.267.11.1489
47. Anttila M, Eskola J, Ahman H, Kayhty H. Differences in the avidity of antibodies evoked by four different pneumococcal conjugate vaccines in early childhood. *Vaccine*. (1999) 17:1970–7. doi: 10.1016/S0264-410X(98)00458-7
48. Cygler M, Rose DR, Bundle DR. Recognition of a cell-surface oligosaccharide of pathogenic Salmonella by an antibody Fab fragment. *Science*. (1991) 253:442–5. doi: 10.1126/science.1713710
49. Harris SL, Fernsten P. Thermodynamics and density of binding of a panel of antibodies to high-molecular-weight capsular polysaccharides. *Clin Vaccine Immunol*. (2009) 16:37–42. doi: 10.1128/CVI.00290-08
50. Haji-Ghassemi O, Blackler RJ, Martin Young N, Evans SV. Antibody recognition of carbohydrate epitopesdagger. *Glycobiology*. (2015) 25:920–52. doi: 10.1093/glycob/cwv037
51. Laurens MB, Sirima SB, Rotrosen ET, Siribie M, Tiono A, Ouedraogo A, et al. A phase II, randomized, double-blind, controlled safety and immunogenicity trial of typhoid conjugate vaccine in children under 2 years of age in ouagadougou, Burkina Faso: A Methods Paper. *Clin Infect Dis*. (2019) 68:S59–66. doi: 10.1093/cid/ciy1104
52. Bhutta ZA, Capeding MR, Bavdekar A, Marchetti E, Ariff S, Soofi SB, et al. Immunogenicity and safety of the Vi-CRM197 conjugate vaccine against typhoid fever in adults, children, and infants in south and southeast Asia: results from two randomised, observer-blind, age de-escalation, phase 2 trials. *Lancet Infect Dis*. (2014) 14:119–29. doi: 10.1016/S1473-3099(13)70241-X
53. Meiring JE, Gibani M, Ty VACCMG. *The Typhoid Vaccine Acceleration Consortium (TyVAC): Vaccine Effectiveness Study Designs: Accelerating the Introduction of Typhoid Conjugate Vaccines and Reducing The Global Burden of Enteric Fever*. Report from a meeting held on 26-27 October 2016, Oxford: UK (2017). doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2017.08.001

Conflict of Interest: AP is Chair of UK Dept. Health Social Care's (DHSC) Joint Committee on Vaccination & Immunization (JCVI) & the European Medicine Agency (EMA) scientific advisory group on vaccines, and is a member of the WHO's Strategic Advisory Group of Experts. The views expressed in this article do not necessarily represent the views of DHSC, JCVI, or WHO.

The remaining authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

NOMENCLATURE

Controlled human infection model (CHIM); Vaccines against *Salmonella* Typhi (VAST); typhoid conjugate vaccine (TCV).

frontiers in Immunology

REVIEW
published: 18 December 2019
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.02968

Update on Fc-Mediated Antibody Functions Against HIV-1 Beyond Neutralization

Bin Su[1,2], *Stefania Dispinseri*[3], *Valeria Iannone*[3], *Tong Zhang*[1,2], *Hao Wu*[1,2], *Raphael Carapito*[4], *Seiamak Bahram*[4], *Gabriella Scarlatti*[3] *and Christiane Moog*[4,5]*

[1] Center for Infectious Diseases, Beijing Youan Hospital, Capital Medical University, Beijing, China, [2] Beijing Key Laboratory for HIV/AIDS Research, Beijing, China, [3] Viral Evolution and Transmission Unit, Division of Immunology, Transplantation, and Infectious Diseases, San Raffaele Scientific Institute, Milan, Italy, [4] INSERM U1109, LabEx TRANSPLANTEX, Fédération Hospitalo-Universitaire (FHU) OMICARE, Fédération de Médecine Translationnelle de Strasbourg (FMTS), Université de Strasbourg, Strasbourg, France, [5] Vaccine Research Institute (VRI), Créteil, France

Antibodies (Abs) are the major component of the humoral immune response and a key player in vaccination. The precise Ab-mediated inhibitory mechanisms leading to *in vivo* protection against HIV have not been elucidated. In addition to the desired viral capture and neutralizing Ab functions, complex Ab-dependent mechanisms that involve engaging immune effector cells to clear infected host cells, immune complexes, and opsonized virus have been proposed as being relevant. These inhibitory mechanisms involve Fc-mediated effector functions leading to Ab-dependent cellular cytotoxicity, phagocytosis, cell-mediated virus inhibition, aggregation, and complement inhibition. Indeed, the decreased risk of infection observed in the RV144 HIV-1 vaccine trial was correlated with the production of non-neutralizing inhibitory Abs, highlighting the role of Ab inhibitory functions besides neutralization. Moreover, Ab isotypes and subclasses recognizing specific HIV envelope epitopes as well as pecular Fc-receptor polymorphisms have been associated with disease progression. These findings further support the need to define which Fc-mediated Ab inhibitory functions leading to protection are critical for HIV vaccine design. Herein, based on our previous review Su & Moog Front Immunol 2014, we update the different inhibitory properties of HIV-specific Abs that may potentially contribute to HIV protection.

Keywords: HIV-1, antibody functions, non-neutralizing antibodies, FcR-mediated inhibition, ADCC

OPEN ACCESS

Edited by:
Leonidas Stamatatos, Fred Hutchinson Cancer Research Center, United States

Reviewed by:
Genevieve Fouda, Duke University, United States
Celia LaBranche, Duke University, United States

***Correspondence:**
Christiane Moog
c.moog@unistra.fr

Specialty section:
This article was submitted to Viral Immunology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology

Received: *20 March 2019*
Accepted: *03 December 2019*
Published: *18 December 2019*

Citation:
Su B, Dispinseri S, Iannone V, Zhang T, Wu H, Carapito R, Bahram S, Scarlatti G and Moog C (2019) Update on Fc-Mediated Antibody Functions Against HIV-1 Beyond Neutralization. Front. Immunol. 10:2968. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.02968

INTRODUCTION

Currently, sexual transmission is the major route for human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection and contributes to 80% of newly diagnosed cases worldwide. This statistic implies that the virus crosses the mucosal barrier to reach and infect HIV target cells (1) and that an effective vaccine needs to induce an immune response that acts rapidly at mucosal sites. Neutralizing antibodies (NAbs), which can be IgG or secretory IgA, are certainly desired for blocking HIV transmission and have been shown to be highly effective at preventing infection through this route (**Figure 1**) (2, 3). During the last decade, a whole new series of broadly neutralizing Abs (bNAbs), which are NAbs with exceptional potency and breadth, have been isolated (4–6) and have efficiently protected humanized mice and non-human primates (NHPs) from experimental challenge. Some of these bNAbs are undergoing testing in human clinical prevention and therapeutic trials (6–14).

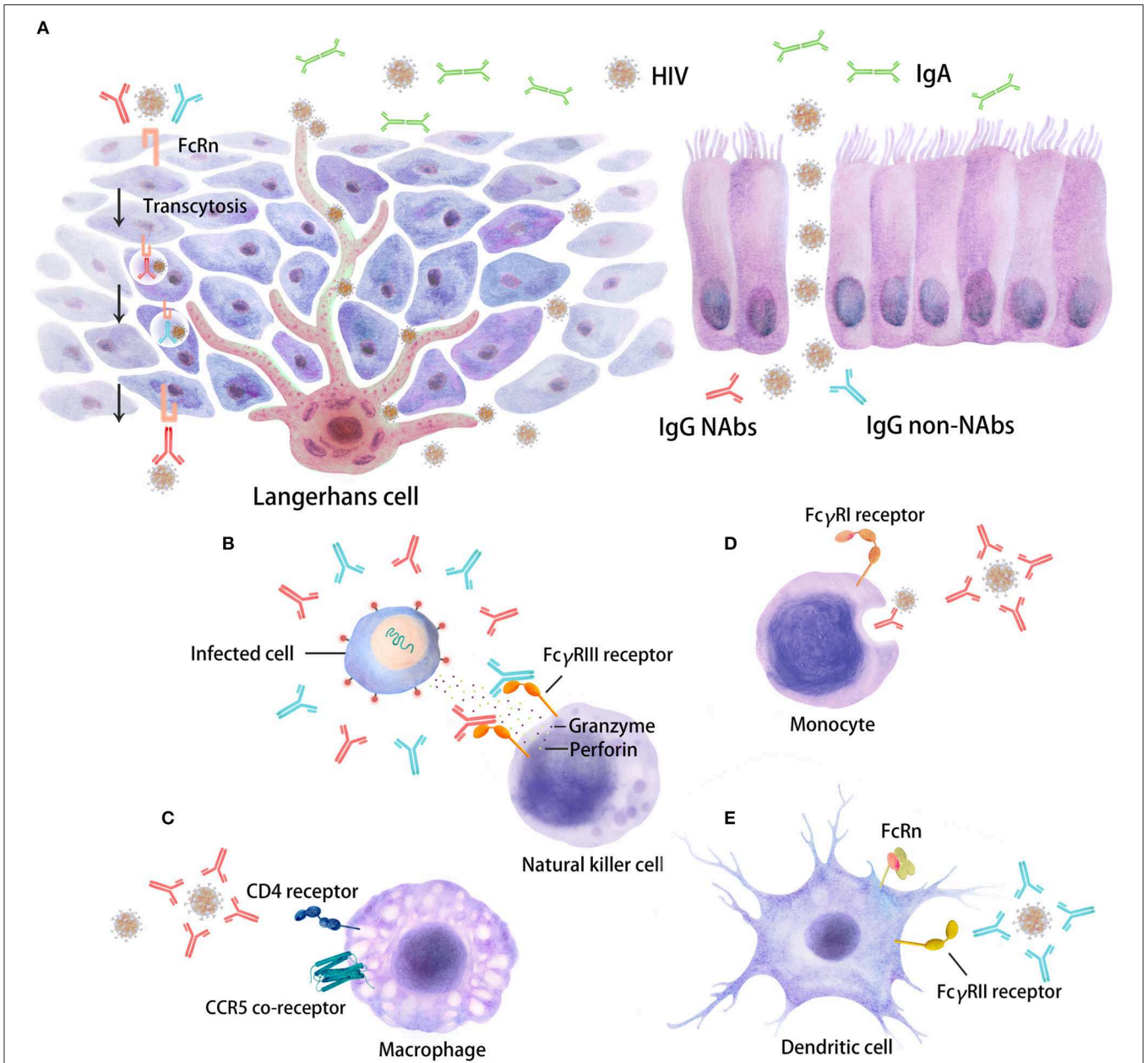


FIGURE 1 | Distinct inhibitory activities of Abs in HIV target cells. The interaction of Fc regions with Fc gamma receptors (FcγRs) on immune cells, such as dendritic cells (DCs), macrophages, and natural killer (NK) cells, will trigger several antiviral immune responses, including immune activation, which are able to restrain HIV replication. Five major Ab responses against HIV infection that can occur as a result of IgG neutralizing Abs (depicted in red), IgG non-neutralizing inhibitory Abs (depicted in blue) or IgA (in green) are shown. **(A)** There are two types of stratified epithelium and columnar epithelium. The binding of virus/Ab immune complexes to FcRn at the surfaces of Langerhans cells may lead to transcytosis through genitorectal mucosal surfaces; **(B)** FcγRIII-mediated antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC); **(C)** neutralizing antibody (NAb)-mediated activity; **(D)** phagocytosis mediated by NAbs/non-NAbs through FcγRI binding; **(E)** FcγRII-mediated non-neutralizing inhibition; some FcγR/Fc interactions may also enhance HIV entry and infection. These different inhibitory activities can occur at mucosal sites beneath the mono- or pluri-stratified epithelial layers where HIV target cells reside.

However, bNAbs that display these features have very specific characteristics. Indeed, bNAbs exhibit uncommonly long complementarity-determining loops and extensive somatic hypermutation, which requires a long maturation process (6, 15–17). In turn, bNAbs are developed by only 10–30% of HIV-infected individuals (6, 17–20), and attempts to induce them by vaccination have encountered extreme difficulties (17, 21).

An increasing body of evidence suggests that Ab functions mediated by the Fc domain may play a role in protection against infections (22–27). Interestingly, the moderately protective effects observed in the RV144 HIV-1 vaccine trial were achieved in the absence of detectable NAbs, suggesting an important role for Fc-mediated functions in protection (28, 29). Fcγ receptor (FcγR)-mediated Ab responses, which lead to phagocytosis, aggregation, complement inhibition, Ab-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC), Ab-dependent cellular phagocytosis (ADCP), and Ab-dependent cell-mediated virus inhibition (ADCVI), have been shown to decrease HIV replication and may therefore substantially contribute to HIV protection (22–25, 27). This review focuses on the importance of Ab Fc-mediated functions in preventing HIV-1 infection and highlights their possible relevance for the development of new vaccine strategies.

ANTIBODY RESPONSES DURING HIV INFECTION

Significant efforts have been made over the past two decades to deepen the understanding of the role of the humoral immune response in HIV infection and to foster the development of vaccine strategies to control viral replication (30). The acquisition of HIV-specific IgG Abs appears within the first 2 months (31, 32) and evolves during the course of infection. In the neonatal period, the early serological response to infection in infants is obscured by the presence of transplacentally acquired maternal HIV Ab. The amount of immunoglobulin to HIV-1 and the number of HIV-1 antigens recognized increases with age (31, 33). The emergence of Ab responses to the viral envelope during HIV infection can generally be divided based on the timing of their appearance and their functions (34, 35). These responses include the following:

(1) A non-neutralizing inhibitory Ab (non-NAb) response directed at immunogenic epitopes that develops in all individuals soon after infection. Typically, this Ab response is directed first against viral gp41 following gp120/CD4 binding (34, 36) and soon thereafter against the V3 loop of gp120 (37). These Abs have a low impact on the virus and plasma viral load because they may have limited interactions with functional Env trimers (38). However, they may play an important role in protection via Fc-mediated effector functions, although the exact mechanism remains to be elucidated (24). Holl et al. reported that polyclonal sera with non-neutralizing activity inhibit HIV replication in macrophages by the phagocytosis of immune complexes bound to FcR expressed on cells (27). In a clinical trial called RV144, non-NAbs exhibiting *in vitro* inhibitory functions were described and associated with decreased HIV acquisition (39, 40).

(2) An HIV strain-specific NAb response targeting Env epitopes that are expressed on the native trimer, which is directed toward viruses present earlier in infection and is detected within the first year after seroconversion (20, 30). The NAbs recognizing Env epitopes via their Fab fragments may block HIV entry. An autologous NAb response is observed *in vitro* in the absence of additional factors, such as FcRs or complement, and is mainly a result of the blocking of virus-cell interactions (41). Such NAbs will encounter challenges, as they have to cope with a staggering level of viral diversity. Continuous viral escape from NAbs will occur as a consequence of single amino acid substitutions, insertions, and deletions, and through an "evolving glycan shield," in which shifting glycans prevent access by Abs to their cognate epitopes (38). Nonetheless, these autologous neutralizing responses may display additional effector functions involving Fc-mediated contributions to the decreases in the viral load detected within the first months after HIV acquisition (42).

(3) An Ab response capable of neutralizing a wide range of viral isolates that develops 2–5 years after seroconversion (43–46). However, this bNAb response occurs in only a minority of patients and is associated with increased HIV replication and diversity, although bNAbs can sometimes be detected in subjects that control HIV (16, 47, 48) or in chronically HIV-infected individuals (19). Ultimately, the virus will escape from bNAbs. Notably, bNAbs have also demonstrated efficient Fc-mediated inhibitory function in addition to neutralization.

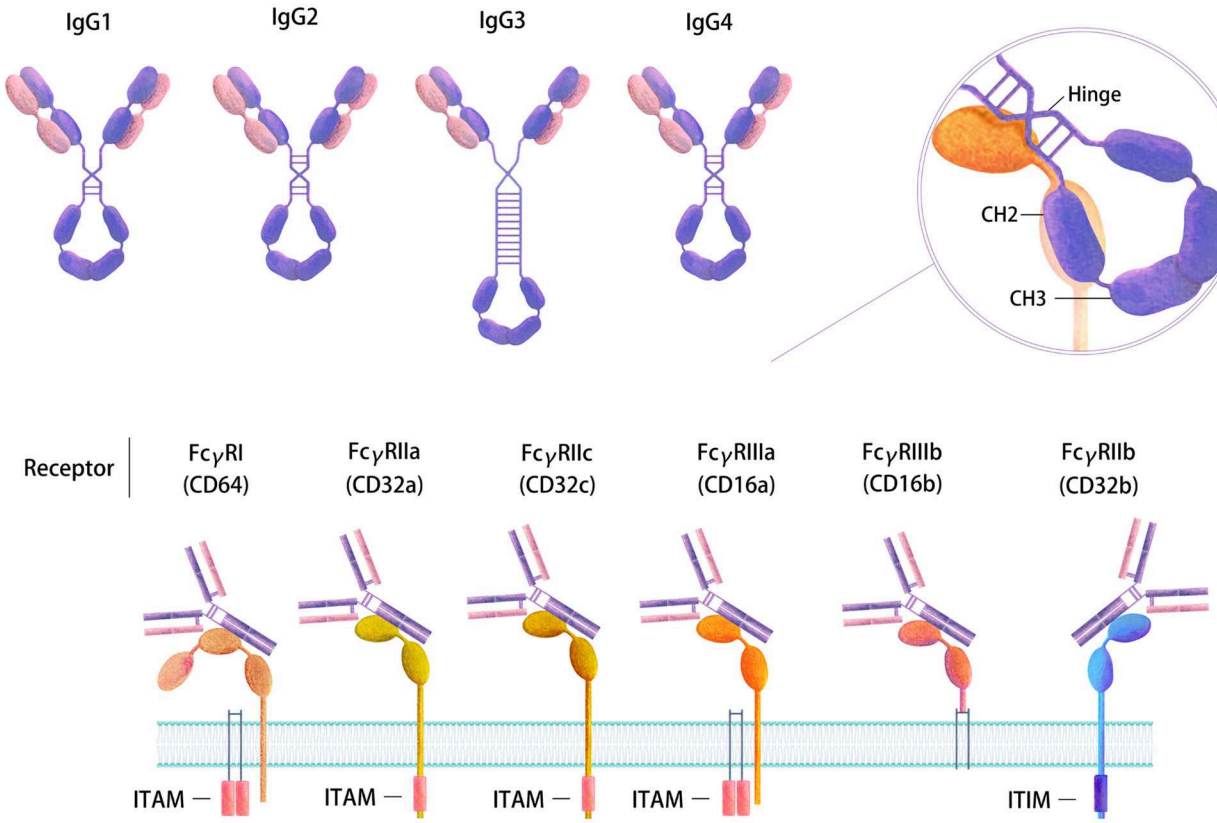
Therefore, during the course of HIV infection, the Ab response evolves, leading to complex polyfunctional activities that may certainly impact the course of HIV disease. The specific role of bNAbs in disease evolution and the potential contributions of other inhibitory functions have not been firmly demonstrated.

NEW GENERATION OF bNAbs

Thanks to major improvements in Ab isolation technologies, more than 100 HIV-1-specific bNAbs with remarkable potency against a wide variety of HIV subtypes have been developed (4, 6, 8, 9, 17, 43, 44, 49–53). The breadth of viral recognition and the antiviral potency of bNAbs can be classified according to their preferential target on the Env spike (4, 26, 49, 54, 55). Passive transfer of bNAbs performed in macaques has shown their remarkable capacity to protect non-human primates (NHPs) from experimental simian-HIV (SHIV) challenge when administered via different routes and modes (a single high dose or repeated low doses administered by the intravenous, rectal or vaginal route) (56–59). Interestingly, recent studies have demonstrated that such protection was not necessarily sterilizing, as was previously thought. Indeed, a few infected cell foci were detected 1–3 days after experimental challenge (60, 61), which intriguingly disappeared leading to complete protection. These results strongly suggest that protection is not solely due to neutralization of the virus particles and that Fc-mediated inhibitory function leading to the lysis of HIV-infected cells by bNAbs participate in this protection (62–64).

Although the newer bNAbs react with more than 90% of circulating HIV-1 strains when tested *in vitro*, at present, no single bNAb potently neutralizes all HIV strains. Therefore, a combination of two or more bNAbs would be desirable to cover the entire range of viral strains encountered *in vivo*

(6, 7, 65, 66). In this regard, bi-specific and even tri-specific Abs targeting multiple HIV-1 Env epitopes were developed recently to increase Ab breadth and potency (67–70). These new bNAbs were characterized following the sequencing of their Fab heavy and light chains and were further reconstituted with an IgG1 heavy chain to form the Ab Fc domain. Most bNAbs have high levels of somatic hypermutation, including amino acid in-frame substitutions (71), frequent in-frame insertions and deletions (72), and genetic bias in the Ig heavy chain variable region (IGHV) (73). Modifications of the FcR domain were introduced in some of these bNAbs to increase their stability and persistence *in vivo* and to potentially allow long-lasting activity and less frequent administration (23, 74–76).



Function	Activating	Activating	Activating	Activating	Activating	Inhibitory
Reference SNP	-	rs1081274	rs114945036	rs396991	rs5030738	rs1050501
SNP	-	H131R	126C>T	F158V	NA1/2	I232T
		H	C	F	NA1	T
Affinity Expression	High affinity	High affinity For IgG2	Decreased FcR expression	High affinity For IgG1,3,4	High affinity For IgG1,3	Decreased Inhibitory activity
Distribution	Mo,Mϕ,DC Neu,Eos	Mo,Mϕ,DC Neu,PLT	NK	Mo,Mϕ,DC NK	MC,Neu,Eos	Mo,Mϕ,DC MC,Neu,Bas,BC

FIGURE 2 | Human FcγR gene polymorphisms and the expression and affinity of IgG subtypes. Four IgG subtypes are present in human serum that have distinct structures and functions (top). FcγRs belong to the Ig receptor superfamily and comprise two or three extracellular Ig domains that mediate IgG binding. Differential immune regulatory effects are produced depending on binding to FcRs. Activating or inhibitory functions occur based on the presence of an intracellular cytoplasmic domain ITAM or ITIM motif that transduces an immunostimulatory or inhibitory signal, respectively, following receptor cross-linking. Binding of the Fc to the receptors is mediated at the CH2-CH3 interface following a conformational change (right). The diversity of FcγRs is further increased by SNPs in their extracellular domains, which in turn affect the expression of FcRs and their binding affinity and function (bottom). Mo, Monocyte; Mϕ, Macrophage; DC, Dendritic cell; MC, Mast cell; Neu, Neutrophil; Bas, Basophil; Eos, Eosinophil; NK, Natural killer cell; BC, B cell; PLT, Platelet.

ANTIBODY ISOTYPES AND THEIR SUBCLASSES

Upon B-cell activation by immune complexes, an HIV-specific Ab response will be generated that induces the production of immunoglobulins (Ig) of different types and isotypes (77, 78). These types and isotypes differ in their related Ig heavy chains, which therefore impacts the Fc-mediated function of the Abs. Four IgG subtypes are present in healthy adult serum: IgG1 (60–72%), IgG2 (20–31%), IgG3 (5–10%), and IgG4 (<4% of the total main IgG subclasses) (79) (**Figure 2**), whereas the gp120-specific IgG subclass distribution and IgA/IgM distribution are generally as follows: IgG1>IgG2 = IgG4>IgG3 and IgA>IgM (80). Indeed, diverse types (IgM, IgG, and IgA) and IgG subtypes will be induced by HIV in plasma and other body fluids, such as cerebrospinal fluid, saliva and genital secretions (80). The Ig subclasses will vary according to the type of infection, the related inflammatory stage and pathogen localization (81). Therefore, the isotype distribution following infection remains to be established. Some studies have proposed that Abs against gp41 are mainly IgG1 rather than other IgG subtypes or IgA or IgM classes (80, 82), whereas others reported gp41-specific Abs of other subclasses (83, 84). The functional role of these different isotypes also needs to be better characterized. It has been proposed that Env-specific gp41 IgM and IgG Ab responses have little effect on the control of the acute phase of viral replication (36). IgG1 and IgG3 Abs are highly active against viral infection, and IgG3 Abs appear first during the course of infection (85), whereas the role of the IgG2 subclass is not known. This isotype is mainly induced by bacterial capsular polysaccharide antigens (79, 86). Moreover, the IgG subclass prevalence has been reported to change over time. For example, gp120-specific IgG1 levels remain constant during the first 6 months after infection, whereas the level of gp120-specific IgG3 peaks after 1 month and then declines (84). Another example is gp140-specific IgG2 and IgG3 responses, which do not occur simultaneously in HIV-1-infected individuals (87). Isotype switching may largely impact Ab functionalities linked to Fc affinity toward Fc receptors (22, 78).

The Ab isotype/subclass recognition of Env epitopes is associated with certain disease courses, symptoms and responses to medication. Assessment of the IgG subclass distribution in the plasma of HIV-1-infected patients enrolled in a French prospective asymptomatic long-term (ALT) cohort showed that in contrast to the IgG1 titers, the IgG2 titers directed against HIV-1 Env gp41 and anti-p24 Abs were correlated with and were highly predictive of decreased viral loads and slower disease progression, especially long-term non-progression (88). This observation was confirmed recently (89, 90). Moreover, Martinez et al. found that in addition to HIV-1-specific $CD4^+$ Th1 cell responses, anti-gp41 IgG2 was the best predictor of long-term non-progression (91). In the RV144 vaccine trial (29, 92), the serum Env-specific IgA level was correlated with an increased risk of HIV-1 infection, which was potentially due to monomeric circulating IgA competing with IgG and interfering with the ability of IgG to mediate ADCC and ADCP (28). The presence of IgG3 against the Env V1V2 region was correlated with a lower risk of HIV-1 infection (29, 93). Interestingly, IgG3 appeared to neutralize HIV more efficiently *in vitro* than IgG1 (94). Moreover, the plasma IgG1 and IgG2 anti-HIV-1 p24 levels were inversely correlated with the plasma HIV RNA levels in viremic HIV patients (95).

In addition to isotype switching, the glycosylation profile of Ig changes during infection. Agalactosylation and afucosylation were more common in HIV-specific Abs among patient with spontaneous control of HIV and were linked to enhanced NK cell activity (96). The modifications of specific glycan groups determine the functional properties of Abs.

Taken together, these different results suggest that dynamic Ab subclasses/isotypes, posttranslational modifications, and glycosylation will impact disease progression. A comprehensive interrogation of the extensive biological diversity in naturally or experimentally protected subjects may provide insights critical for guiding the development of effective vaccines and Ab-based therapies.

Fc-RECEPTOR: THE CELLULAR COUNTERPART FOR ANTIBODY-MEDIATED RESPONSES

Each Ig isotype binds to specific Fc receptors, which in humans are the high-affinity receptors Fcα/μR for IgA and IgM, FcμR for IgM, FcαRI for IgA, FcεRI for IgE and FcγRI and neonatal Fc receptor (FcRn) for IgG and the low-affinity receptors FcεRII for IgE and FcγRII and III for IgG (97) (**Table 1**). Special attention has been paid to genes encoding the Fcγ receptors, since they bind the constant domain of IgG, which is the major Ab type induced by the host response following viral or bacterial infection (98). Human cells express three FcγRIIs (A–C) and two FcγRIIIs (A and B). All human FcγRs except FcγRIIB signal through an immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activating motif (ITAM), whereas FcγRIIB delivers inhibitory signals through an immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif (ITIM) (99) (**Figure 2**). The diversity of human FcγRII and III is further increased by the presence of single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) in their extracellular domains, the most studied of which are H131R in the FcγR gene *FCGR2A* (100), 126C>T in *FCGR2C* (99), F158V in *FCGR3A* (101), and NA1/2 in *FCGR3B* (102) (**Figure 2**). FcγRIIC has an unusual structure and is generated by the unequal crossover of FcγRIIA and FcγRIIB (99, 103). *FCGR2C* in FcγRIIC (126C>T) shares the extracellular sequence of *FCGR2B* but signals through the ITAM, similar to *FCGR2A*.

Importantly, the different FcR polymorphisms in the host need to be taken into consideration when analyzing the FcR-mediated functions of Abs. FcγR SNPs will impact both binding to the complementary Fc portion of the Abs and on the other side the expression and activation state in cells (**Figure 2**). Indeed, increasing evidence suggests that FcγR SNPs impair receptor expression on DCs, which in turn influences the risk of HIV infection and vaccine efficacy (104). Similarly, the FcγRIIIA polymorphism appears to modify NK cell activation and, as a consequence, ADCC activity (105). Specific polymorphisms in the *FCGR2A* (encoding Arg at position 131) and *FCGR3A* (encoding Phe at position 158) gene loci have been associated

TABLE 1 | Fc receptors and their corresponding Ig binding in humans.

Receptor	Fcα/μR	FcμR	FcαRI	FcεRI	FcεRII	FcγRI	FcγRIIa	FcγRIIb	FcγRIIc	FcγRIIIa	FcγRIIIb
Human Ig	IgA/IgM	IgM	IgA	IgE	IgE	IgG	IgG	IgG	IgG	IgG	IgG
Affinity for monomer Ig	*N.D.	*N.D.	Low	High	Low	High	Low	Low	Low	Medium	Low

*N.D., not determined.

with decreased HIV acquisition (106). The latter SNP leads to the increased binding capacity of Abs for FcγRIIIA, which is the receptor involved in ADCC, suggesting that vaccine efficacy may be related to the increased efficacy of this function. More recently, Li et al. found that a tagged SNP (rs114945036) in *FCGR2C* (126C>T) was significantly associated with protection against infection with the HIV-1 AE subtype strain in the RV144 vaccine clinical trial. The direct effect of this SNP is not well-documented, although the authors proposed that it may lead to an FcR with an atypical FcR protein sequence, thereby modifying FcR expression or accessibility on cells (99). Interestingly, FcγRIIC has been reported to mediate ADCC and may play a role in anti-HIV-1 Ab neutralizing activity similar to that of FcγRIIB (103, 107–109).

Furthermore, although it has not yet been thoroughly investigated, there is evidence that FcγR polymorphisms are associated with mother-to-child transmission of HIV. Mothers with the FcγRIIIa-158V allele have enhanced binding affinity for IgG and ADCC capacity, which reduces the susceptibility of their fetuses to HIV infection and significantly reduces the chance of mother-to-child transmission during both the intrapartum and *in utero* periods compared with the FcγRIIIa-158F allele (110, 111).

These studies showing the significant role of FcγR polymorphisms strongly suggest that the Fc-driven function induced by vaccination may play a role in HIV protection. However, whether specific FcR polymorphisms are also involved in the control of HIV replication is not clear. One study did not detect significant differences when comparing the genotype profiles of *FCGR2A* and *FCGR3A* (polymorphisms H131R and V158F, respectively) in 73 patients in which HIV infection was controlled with those in patients who progressed to disease (112). Conversely, another study showed that the combination of these two SNPs was significantly associated with HIV progression in 53 patients who progressed compared with 43 patients in which HIV infection was controlled (113). Additional studies will be needed to define the roles of these SNPs in HIV replication and disease.

Importantly, the Fc regions of Abs contain a binding epitope for FcRn (neonatal FcR), which is responsible for the extended half-life, placental transport, and bidirectional transport of IgGs or immune complexes through the mucosal layer (**Figure 1**) (75, 114–116). FcRn is also expressed in myeloid cells, where it participates in both phagocytosis and antigen presentation together with the classical FcγR and complement. The relevance of this receptor in HIV infection has not been defined. However, this characteristic was largely exploited by modifying Fc regions in monoclonal Abs for use in the treatment of cancer or HIV infection.

Fc-MEDIATED Ab FUNCTIONS

Abs with Fc-mediated inhibitory activities, such as ADCC, ADCP, or aggregation, in addition to neutralizing activity have been detected at all stages of HIV disease. These inhibitory functions involve the Fc domains of Abs as well as the Fab domain. Therefore, both the Ab isotype and FcR expression on effector cells will be determinants of these functions (**Figure 1**).

Antibody-Dependent Cellular Cytotoxicity

ADCC is a complex but potent Fc-mediated effector function that is involved in the clearance of malignant or infected cells. In the latter process, ADCC eliminates virus-infected cells through mediating cooperation between innate and acquired immunity (117–119). Specifically, Abs act as a bridge between an infected target cell and an effector cell; the Fab domain binds to a specific viral antigen expressed by the infected cell, and the Fc domain binds to FcγR expressed on the surface of the effector cell (i.e., NK cells, monocyte/macrophages, and neutrophils) (120–122). As a result of this interaction, effector cells release perforin and granzymes, leading to death of the Ab-bound infected target cells. Several studies have shown an association between ADCC and slower disease progression in NHPs and humans (29, 123–126), highlighting the importance of ADCC *in vivo* (25, 26, 126–128). In the NHP model, ADCC was associated with protection from infection by a pathogenic virus (129). Interestingly, Abs directed against the V2 epitope were found to efficiently exhibit ADCC activity *in vitro* (130, 131). Similarly, non-NAbs targeting the V2 region of Env were associated with a decreased risk of HIV acquisition in the RV144 vaccine trial in Thailand (28, 29, 92). The relevance of ADCC was also demonstrated for mother-to-child transmission (MTCT), where the presence of ADCC-mediating Abs was associated with improved clinical status, delayed disease progression in infants (132) and a reduced risk of infection through breastfeeding (133).

In-depth studies are required to determine how Abs clear HIV-1-infected cells, including the investigation of epitopes recognized by ADCC-mediating Abs, naturally occurring Fc domains on ADCC-mediating Abs and Fc receptors on physiologically relevant effector cells (134). Further studies will be required to determine how to elicit the appropriate combinations of Abs and effector cells in the desired locations by vaccination. Because ADCC is a complex, multilayered process, the detection of this process using *in vitro* assays is challenging. Numerous assays have been developed to analyze ADCC activity *in vitro*. These assays differ in their use of various effector and target cell types (cell lines or primary cells), antigens (Env or whole virus), and read-outs (binding, effector cell activation, granzyme release or infected cell lysis). As a consequence, the

results obtained from each ADCC assay will reflect the different aspects and factors involved in each step (135).

First, Abs bind a specific epitope on target cells to mediate ADCC. This step can occur either during early events of virus binding to target cells or at a later step when viral epitopes are expressed on infected cells (121, 128, 136). As a consequence, different Env conformations can be involved according to the infection stage, and therefore the recognition of different specific epitopes by Abs may impact the ADCC results (137). Moreover, caution needs to be taken to ensure that the identified Abs effectively target infected cells and not uninfected cells that have captured HIV Env via their CD4 receptor (138–140). Therefore, identifying the viral epitopes on infected cells involved in ADCC is critical. The number of viral epitopes targeted by ADCC activity seems to be higher than that targeted by neutralization. Indeed, numerous non-NAbs recognizing non-functional spikes on the viral surface or specific conformations of epitopes expressed on infected cells were shown to mediate ADCC without displaying neutralizing activity. We may very well-propose that Abs mediating ADCC may be complementary to bNAbs in potentiating the inhibitory activity of an HIV vaccine.

Second, the Fc domain of an Ab binds to the FcR expressed on effector cells. This binding is dependent on one side of the Ab heavy chain sequence. Interestingly, the Fc domain sequence is influenced by B-cell activation, the recognized epitope and intrinsic donor variability and therefore varies according to the isotype and gene rearrangement. Notably, newly developed monoclonal Abs were generated by their reconstruction with a same IgG1 heavy chain therefore all expressing an identical Fc domain. These constructs provided the opportunity to analyze ADCC while maintaining a constant Ab Fc domain. However, we must remember that these bNAbs do not reflect the large spectrum of variability in the Ab Fc domain *in vivo*.

Third, the function of Abs is dependent on the polymorphisms and expression of the FcRs on effector cells. FcR expression is regulated in different cell populations according to their localization, maturation stage, and genotype. For example, NK cells from healthy donors are usually used as effector cells to test ADCC *in vitro*. However, little is known about how the distribution of FcR expression on NK cells varies in different tissues and among individuals. This phenomenon may impact vaccine responses, HIV transmission and disease progression. Moreover, the combination of specific HLA and killer immunoglobulin-like receptor (KIR) expression on NK cells was shown to play a role in protection against infection and elite control (141–145). Taken together, the results suggest that all primary NK cell variables may influence ADCC outcomes *in vitro* if not adequately standardized. This may be overcome by using an NK cell line, albeit at the expense of the physiological variability of FcRs *in vivo*.

Finally, the assays currently being developed in the field use distinct read-outs (24, 134, 146). The detection of the lysis of HIV-infected cells is the ultimate physiologically relevant read-out, but this outcome is technically highly challenging to measure. More straightforward read-outs, such as detection of FcR triggering, are being proposed, but whether these indirect detections methods effectively reflect ADCC function is not clear. Further investigations are urgently required to precisely define the important epitopes and to determine how to efficiently trigger effector cells to achieve the *in vivo* destruction of infected cells.

Antibody-Dependent Cellular Phagocytosis

Abs can also eliminate opsonized pathogens through phagocytosis via the engagement of FcRs expressed by cells of the innate immune system, including monocytes, macrophages, neutrophils, dendritic cells (DCs), and mast cells (27, 147–149). Phagocytosis is important for pathogen clearance by direct lysis or antigen presentation and innate immune cell activation with consequent pathogen elimination. The detection of ADCP *in vitro* leads to efficient inhibition of HIV replication in infected cells (27, 148, 149) and is associated with protection from repeated intrarectal challenge with SHIV-SF162P3 or SIVmac251 in immunized rhesus macaques (150–152). ADCP mediated by IgG3 Abs was elicited in recipients of the RV144 vaccine (153). However, the epitope specificity of Abs mediating ADCP still needs to be investigated. Musich et al. demonstrated that anti-V2 monoclonal Abs mediated ADCP activity in a dose-dependent manner similar to anti-V3 and CD4bs monoclonal Abs against clade B gp120 (154) but displayed increased activity against clade C gp120 compared to anti-V3 and anti-CD4bs monoclonal Abs, suggesting the broader recognition of exposed epitopes (154); this may also have been due to V2 epitopes being more conserved between clade B and C than V3 epitopes. Moreover, the role played by the cell type that mediates ADCP should also be defined. Current *in vitro* ADCP assays mainly use cell lines that may largely reduce the physiological relevance of these *in vitro* assays. However, recently, phagocytosis mediated by macrophages or activated neutrophils in human mucosal and lymphoid tissues was proposed to play a significant role in protection from infection (155). Thus, this type of assay requires further development to better define the *in vivo* role of ADCP function.

Antibody-Dependent Cell-Mediated Virus Inhibition

ADCVI involves a combination of different FcγR-mediated antiviral activities that occur when an Ab bound to a virus-infected target cell engages FcγR-bearing effector cells, such as NK cells, monocytes or macrophages (156). *In vitro* virus inhibition assays partly measure target cell death mediated by ADCC and partly measure non-cytolytic mechanisms of HIV inhibition due to β-chemokine release from effector cells or the phagocytosis of immune complexes (27, 42, 157).

Overall, Fc-mediated function was found to actively contribute to Ab inhibitory activities. The combination of these activities was found to be associated with protection (158).

The involvement of Fc-mediated activity in HIV protection was demonstrated in an experimentally challenged macaque model. The protection observed with the bNAb b12 was markedly reduced after the modification of the Fc domain, leading to impaired FcR binding (159). However, Fc-mediated effector functions might not be absolutely necessary to generate maximum protection, as was recently shown for the bNAb

PGT121. In this study, a mutation impairing FcγR binding of PGT121 did not modify the protective effect of the bNAb (160).

ANTIBODY CAPTURE OF INFECTIOUS HIV PARTICLES/AGGREGATION

The Fc domains of Abs can directly bind the virus, leading to the formation of virus/Ab aggregates. Ab inhibition by aggregation of a pathogen is a very basic inhibitory mechanism that results in a decrease in viral infectivity (161). The potential role of aggregation was reviewed recently (24, 146, 162).

Formation of the Ab/virus immune complex may hinder viral movement and impede viral replication by adhering the complex to mucus and restraining its transfer and transcytosis across mucosal epithelial cells (**Figure 1**). HIV aggregates will be trapped more efficiently than free virus particles (e.g., in the female reproductive tract, where there is abundant cervical mucus) (163). Moreover, immune aggregates may be retained efficiently in the mucus by binding of the Fc domain of IgG to mucins and specific binding in the vaginal tract to MUC16 (164). Analogous mechanisms may act on other mucosal surfaces, such as those in the gastrointestinal tract (165).

These findings suggest a direct inhibitory effect of HIV/Ab immune complex formation on HIV infectivity. Abs that retain HIV and hinder its diffusion through the epithelial barrier need to be better characterized to elucidate how they can be selectively induced at the mucosal site. We expect that these Abs recognize quaternary functional trimeric envelopes and non-functional Env spikes expressed on HIV particles. Therefore, the number of Abs able to form aggregates will be enlarged compared to that of NAbs, which will open up new opportunities to induce functional Abs with distinct epitope recognition by vaccination.

ANTIBODY-MEDIATED COMPLEMENT ACTIVATION

The complement system is key to both innate and adaptive immunity, where it exerts multiple functions. Complement activation occurs through three distinct pathways (classical, alternative and lectin), which result in several types of antimicrobial activity, such as opsonization, inflammatory cell recruitment, cell lysis and virolysis [see review (24, 26, 166, 167)].

HIV has developed a sophisticated defense to protect itself by failing to bind complement proteins (168). Indeed, the gp120 Env does not bind complement (168). Moreover, during budding, HIV incorporates glycosyl phosphatidylinositol (GPI)-anchored CD55 and CD59 as well as transmembrane CD46, which are downregulatory molecules that inhibit complement-mediated damage to the virus (169). HIV also captures serum complement factor H, which plays a central role in protecting cells from complement by downregulating complement binding and in turn increases virulence (170–172). For these reasons, the use of primary isolates produced by primary cells is absolutely mandatory for *in vitro* studies of complement-mediated responses.

Moreover, bNAbs engineered to lack complement binding activity do not lose their protective effect, as shown in macaques challenged with SHIV (159), which is in contrast to those engineered to lack FcR. This finding suggests that complement may not be required for optimal *in vivo* Ab protection against infection. Nonetheless, in the RV144 vaccine trial that showed modest efficacy, complement activation induced by V1V2-specific Abs was stronger and more frequently detected compared to that in two related trials, VAX003 and VAX004, in which no significant protection was observed (173).

In contrast, complement and Ab may contribute to the enhancement of infection, as first described for Dengue virus (174). Binding of IgGs to FcRs induces the enhanced transcytosis of the virus at mucosal sites, although the exact mechanism is still unclear (**Figure 1**) (175). Moreover, whether this phenomenon has physiological relevance during HIV infection is still under debate (176, 177).

Collectively, complement components and their interactions with their cognate receptors are key to controlling adaptive immune responses, which provides insight into the use of complement components as novel drug targets. However, the relative contribution of complement to virolysis vs. viral enhancement in tissues and the periphery needs to be further investigated to understand its role in protection against HIV.

ROLES OF Fc-MEDIATED ANTIBODY FUNCTIONS IN MUCOSAL TISSUES

Mucosal surfaces are the first entry site for HIV during transmission (**Figure 1**). Indeed, Langerhans cells (LCs), urethral macrophages and/or conventional DCs residing in mucosal tissues have been proposed to capture HIV (178–185) and further replicate or transfer the virus locally to potential HIV target cells, such as macrophages and $CD4^+$ T cells (**Figure 1**). NK cells, macrophages and DCs, which are the effector cells involved in Fc-mediated Ab functions, are present in different mucosal tissues at different levels. Accordingly, mucosal effector cells may act through an Fc-mediated Ab response and be the first cells that modulate the early events of HIV transmission. The relative contribution of any of the aforementioned Fc-mediated Ab responses will depend on the frequency and distribution of the cells present within a given tissue and their FcR expression levels (3, 26, 182, 184, 186). Overall, FcR expression on cells and their affinities and binding profiles for Abs will directly impact Fc-mediated functions. Indeed, a comparison of penile, cervical and intestinal tissues showed that the expression profile of FcR on mucosal effector cells was reduced compared to that on blood cells, although the overall cell frequency was substantially different (187). Specifically, $Fc\gamma RII^+$ DCs and macrophages were well-represented in all three tissues, whereas $Fc\gamma RIII^+$ NK cells were rare only in the intestinal mucosa. We may imagine that Fc-mediated Ab function(s) may be less relevant in the blood circulation, where infected $CD4^+$ T cells express very little FcγR on their surfaces (188).

Importantly, FcR expression varies according to the immune cell type and the localization and activation status. FcR-bearing cells, such as macrophages and DCs, predominate and tightly interact with tissues, which may facilitate their activity. Although resident NK cells express negligible levels of FcRs, mature circulating NK cells expressing high FcγRIII levels are rapidly recruited to the site of infection. Therefore, Fc-mediated inhibitory functions involving binding to FcγR on resident tissue cells may be of particular interest for the inhibition of mucosal transmission, although the exact mechanisms underlying FcR expression are not well-defined. Further studies on the potential role of Fc-bearing HIV targets and the involvement of Fc-mediated Ab inhibition at mucosal sites are needed to inform HIV vaccine strategies.

STRATEGIES TO INDUCE Fc-MEDIATED ANTIBODY FUNCTIONS BY VACCINATION

Antibodies have now been proven to contribute to HIV protection and are therefore a central component of new vaccine strategies (189). As Fc-FcR interactions are able to generate powerful extraneutralizing Fc functions, these additional functions should be defined (159).

Numerous vaccine trials have already reported the induction of Fc-mediated functions. Vaccination with the gp120/CD4 mAb immune complex was found to be more efficient in inducing Fc-mediated adjuvant activity than that with gp120 alone. However, highly variable elements in the gp120 sequence limit the breadth of the responses to immune complex vaccines to a few HIV-1 isolates (190, 191). Moreover, vaccination with the SIVmac239-ΔNef virus induced an FcR-mediated inhibitory response that prevented founder virus entry and avoided local expansion (192). These results suggest protective Fc-mediated Ab function against transmitted/founder viruses at the mucosa surface. Another study demonstrated robust polyfunctional non-NAb responses, such as ADCC and ADCP, associated with protection against SIVmac251 challenge following vaccination with adenovirus serotype 26 (Ad26) vector priming/purified envelope (Env) glycoprotein boosting strategy in rhesus monkeys (151). In addition, a robust non-NAb response to the V1V2 region of the gp120 Env glycoprotein, which has been shown to exhibit Fc-mediated functions, was associated with a decreased risk of HIV acquisition in the RV144 clinical vaccine trial (193, 194). These different vaccine trials indicate that Abs displaying Fc-mediated functions participate in protection against HIV acquisition. This protection may be particularly efficient when several Fc-mediated activities are combined (158). Fc polyfunctionality increases over time following HIV infection and has recently been correlated with the further induction of neutralizing activity (195).

Therefore, we hypothesize that the induction of immune responses leading to Fc polyfunctionality may require the presentation of multiple antigens, similar to what induces bNAb production. Indeed, multiple antigens appear to be required for induction of bNAbs, as they appear following long periods of high viral replication in which there is continuous mutation of the viral Env protein. The general concept that the induction of an efficient humoral response, i.e., with bNAbs, and possibly Fc polyfunctionality will require high viral replication is sometimes misleading within the field. The correlation between an efficient Ab response and a high viral load provides a confusing dichotomist message regarding the potential role of Abs in protection against HIV acquisition. Accordingly, we may need a complex combination of immunogens to induce efficient Fc polyfunctional Abs as for induction of bNAbs. A more systematic analysis of Fc polyfunctional activity induced following vaccination is mandatory to understand the dynamics of the induction of functionally relevant Abs and to avoid switching to an immunodominant non-functional decoy Ab response.

To define the correlates between Ab profiles and protective functions, an integrative approach analyzing the "humoral Fc fingerprints" of vaccines was proposed. According to these principles, Chung et al. developed a unique approach called "Systems Serology" to retrospectively examine recent vaccine trials in humans to reveal features of immune complex composition underlying protective immunity to HIV (196). Using the "Systems Serology" approach, the protective humoral response signatures in vaccinated or naturally infected individuals in HIV can be defined. Moreover, systematic data production and application of machine learning approaches may identify distinct immunogenic regimens and Fc effector functions, allowing the selection of promising vaccine candidates (197).

These different studies provide insight into how to potentially induce Fc-mediated functions able to protect or control HIV infection via Fc-mediated antiviral activity (198, 199). New vaccine strategies aimed at directly inducing Fc-mediated activity should now be designed to improve the induction of potential functional activity in addition to highly desirable neutralizing activity.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSION

This review highlights the potential role of FcγR-mediated Ab immune functions besides neutralization in protection against HIV. Although the role of the Fc-mediated function of Abs lacking broadly neutralizing activity for HIV protection is still a matter of debate (160, 200), numerous independent studies now hint at their relevance for HIV inhibition. Above all, the specific Fc-mediated functions of non-NAbs are the only correlates of protection against infection observed in the RV144 vaccine trial conducted in Thailand (28, 29, 193, 201). However, no *in vivo* demonstration of the pertinence of non-NAbs for the prevention of HIV transmission is currently available. Dedicated experiments utilizing the NHP model may help dissect the role of Fc-mediated Ab responses and their relevance for the prevention of HIV infection. Nonetheless, to exert their function, these Abs must colocalize with the appropriate FcR-bearing cells at the site of infection. This scenario may occur during the early events of HIV mucosal transmission, when the virus crosses the epithelial barrier to infect the underlying target cells and further disseminate to other organs. Close contact between the

virus, infected cells, Abs and effector cells in mucosal tissues may provide an ideal environment for Fc-mediated Ab functions to occur. We can also imagine that the prevalent and relevant Fc-mediated Ab function(s) may differ according to the infection route and mucosal type involved (i.e., genital or intestinal mucosa). An important hurdle for HIV vaccine designers will be to determine how to induce high concentrations of Abs with Fc-mediated functions directly within the mucosal sites of exposure, which is a challenge that may equal or be greater than that of inducing bNAbs (202).

AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

BS wrote the first draft of the manuscript. BS, SD, RC, GS, and CM revised the manuscript. All authors listed have made a substantial, direct and intellectual contribution to the work, read, and approved the final manuscript.

FUNDING

This work was supported by the National Natural Science Foundation of China (NSFC, 81772165 to BS), the National 13th 5–Year Grand Program on Key Infectious Disease Control (2017ZX10202102-005-003 to BS, 2017ZX10202101-004-001 to TZ), the NSFC-NIH Biomedical Collaborative Research program (81761128001 to HW), the Funding for Chinese overseas talents returning to China in 2016-Beijing Municipal Human Resources and Social Security Bureau (to BS), the Beijing Administration of Foreign Experts Affairs (BJ2018013), the Beijing Key Laboratory for HIV/AIDS Research (BZ0089); the French Agency for Research on AIDS and Viral Hepatitis (ANRS; grant number 14459) and SIDACTION Pierre Bergé (AP-FPB-2013-2/06) to GS; ANRS, the Vaccine Research Institute, EHVA (N°681032, Horizon 2020) and SIDACTION Pierre Bergé the Investissements d'Avenir program managed by the ANR under reference ANR-10-LABX-77 to CM. The funders had no role in study design, data collection and analysis, decision to publish, or preparation of the manuscript.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We are grateful to Yungtzu Yen from Taipei National University of the Arts and Yan Liu from Beijing Youan Hospital, Capital Medical University for their help in drawing the relevant figures and for their unreserved support.

REFERENCES

1. UNAIDS. *Global HIV & AIDS Statistics — 2019 Fact Sheet.* Available online at: https://www.unaids.org/en/resources/fact-sheet
2. Kulkarni V, Ruprecht RM. Mucosal IgA responses: damaged in established HIV infection-yet, effective weapon against HIV transmission. *Front Immunol.* (2017) 8:1581. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2017.01581
3. Iwasaki A. Exploiting mucosal immunity for antiviral vaccines. *Annu Rev Immunol.* (2016) 34:575–608. doi: 10.1146/annurev-immunol-032414-112315
4. Sok D, Burton DR. Recent progress in broadly neutralizing antibodies to HIV. *Nat Immunol.* (2018) 19:1179–88. doi: 10.1038/s41590-018-0235-7
5. Carrillo J, Clotet B, Blanco J. Antibodies and antibody derivatives: new partners in HIV eradication strategies. *Front Immunol.* (2018) 9:2429. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.02429
6. Pegu A, Hessell AJ, Mascola JR, Haigwood NL. Use of broadly neutralizing antibodies for HIV-1 prevention. *Immunol Rev.* (2017) 275:296–312. doi: 10.1111/imr.12511
7. Mendoza P, Gruell H, Nogueira L, Pai JA, Butler AL, Millard K, et al. Combination therapy with anti-HIV-1 antibodies maintains viral suppression. *Nature.* (2018) 561:479–84. doi: 10.1038/s41586-018-0531-2
8. Jaworski JP, Cahn P. Preventive and therapeutic features of broadly neutralising monoclonal antibodies against HIV-1. *Lancet HIV.* (2018) 5:e723–31. doi: 10.1016/S2352-3018(18)30174-7
9. Gama L, Koup RA. New-generation high-potency and designer antibodies: role in HIV-1 treatment. *Annu Rev Med.* (2018) 69:409–19. doi: 10.1146/annurev-med-061016-041032
10. Nishimura Y, Martin MA. Of Mice, macaques, and men: broadly neutralizing antibody immunotherapy for HIV-1. *Cell Host Microbe.* (2017) 22:207–16. doi: 10.1016/j.chom.2017.07.010
11. Hua CK, Ackerman ME. Increasing the clinical potential and applications of anti-HIV antibodies. *Front Immunol.* (2017) 8:1655. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2017.01655
12. Cohen YZ, Caskey M. Broadly neutralizing antibodies for treatment and prevention of HIV-1 infection. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS.* (2018) 13:366–73. doi: 10.1097/COH.0000000000000475
13. Bar-On Y, Gruell H, Schoofs T, Pai JA, Nogueira L, Butler AL, et al. Safety and antiviral activity of combination HIV-1 broadly neutralizing antibodies in viremic individuals. *Nat Med.* (2018) 24:1701–7. doi: 10.1038/s41591-018-0186-4
14. Scheid JF, Horwitz JA, Bar-On Y, Kreider EF, Lu CL, Lorenzi JC, et al. HIV-1 antibody 3BNC117 suppresses viral rebound in humans during treatment interruption. *Nature.* (2016) 535:556–60. doi: 10.1038/nature18929
15. Victora GD, Mouquet H. What are the primary limitations in B-cell affinity maturation, and how much affinity maturation can we drive with vaccination? lessons from the antibody response to HIV-1. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol.* (2018) 10:a029389. doi: 10.1101/cshperspect.a029389
16. Landais E, Moore PL. Development of broadly neutralizing antibodies in HIV-1 infected elite neutralizers. *Retrovirology.* (2018) 15:61. doi: 10.1186/s12977-018-0443-0
17. McCoy LE, Burton DR. Identification and specificity of broadly neutralizing antibodies against HIV. *Immunol Rev.* (2017) 275:11–20. doi: 10.1111/imr.12484
18. Dashti A, DeVico AL, Lewis GK, Sajadi MM. Broadly neutralizing antibodies against HIV: back to blood. *Trends Mol Med.* (2019) 25:228–40. doi: 10.1016/j.molmed.2019.01.007
19. Hraber P, Seaman MS, Bailer RT, Mascola JR, Montefiori DC, Korber BT. Prevalence of broadly neutralizing antibody responses during chronic HIV-1 infection. *AIDS.* (2014) 28:163–9. doi: 10.1097/QAD.0000000000000106
20. Moog C, Fleury HJ, Pellegrin I, Kirn A, Aubertin AM. Autologous and heterologous neutralizing antibody responses following initial seroconversion in human immunodeficiency virus type 1-infected individuals. *J Virol.* (1997) 71:3734–41.
21. Sadanand S, Suscovich TJ, Alter G. Broadly neutralizing antibodies against HIV: new insights to inform vaccine design. *Annu Rev Med.* (2016) 67:185–200. doi: 10.1146/annurev-med-091014-090749
22. Parsons MS, Chung AW, Kent SJ. Importance of Fc-mediated functions of anti-HIV-1 broadly neutralizing antibodies. *Retrovirology.* (2018) 15:58. doi: 10.1186/s12977-018-0438-x
23. Bournazos S, Ravetch JV. Anti-retroviral antibody FcgammaR-mediated effector functions. *Immunol Rev.* (2017) 275:285–95. doi: 10.1111/imr.12482

24. Mayr LM, Su B, Moog C. Non-neutralizing antibodies directed against HIV and their functions. *Front Immunol.* (2017) 8:1590. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2017.01590
25. Lewis GK, Pazgier M, Evans DT, Ferrari G, Bournazos S, Parsons MS, et al. Beyond viral neutralization. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses.* (2017) 33:760–4. doi: 10.1089/aid.2016.0299
26. Su B, Moog C. Which antibody functions are important for an HIV vaccine? *Front Immunol.* (2014) 5:289. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2014.00289
27. Holl V, Peressin M, Decoville T, Schmidt S, Zolla-Pazner S, Aubertin AM, et al. Nonneutralizing antibodies are able to inhibit human immunodeficiency virus type 1 replication in macrophages and immature dendritic cells. *J Virol.* (2006) 80:6177–81. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02625-05
28. Tomaras GD, Ferrari G, Shen X, Alam SM, Liao HX, Pollara J, et al. Vaccine-induced plasma IgA specific for the C1 region of the HIV-1 envelope blocks binding and effector function of IgG. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (2013) 110:9019–24. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1301456110
29. Haynes BF, Gilbert PB, McElrath MJ, Zolla-Pazner S, Tomaras GD, Alam SM, et al. Immune-correlates analysis of an HIV-1 vaccine efficacy trial. *N Engl J Med.* (2012) 366:1275–86. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa1113425
30. Alter G, Moody MA. The humoral response to HIV-1: new insights, renewed focus. *J Infect Dis.* (2010) 202 (Suppl. 2):S315–22. doi: 10.1086/655654
31. Henrard D, Fauvel M, Samson J, Delage G, Boucher M, Hankins C, et al. Ontogeny of the humoral immune response to human immunodeficiency virus type 1 in infants. *J Infect Dis.* (1993) 168:288–91. doi: 10.1093/infdis/168.2.288
32. Gaines H, von Sydow M, Sonnerborg A, Albert J, Czajkowski J, Pehrson PO, et al. Antibody response in primary human immunodeficiency virus infection. *Lancet.* (1987) 1:1249–53. doi: 10.1016/S0140-6736(87)92696-1
33. Pollack H, Zhan MX, Ilmet-Moore T, Ajuang-Simbiri K, Krasinski K, Borkowsky W. Ontogeny of anti-human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) antibody production in HIV-1-infected infants. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (1993) 90:2340–4. doi: 10.1073/pnas.90.6.2340
34. McMichael AJ, Borrow P, Tomaras GD, Goonetilleke N, Haynes BF. The immune response during acute HIV-1 infection: clues for vaccine development. *Nat Rev Immunol.* (2010) 10:11–23. doi: 10.1038/nri2674
35. Frost SD, Trkola A, Gunthard HF, Richman DD. Antibody responses in primary HIV-1 infection. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS.* (2008) 3:45–51. doi: 10.1097/COH.0b013e3282f310ae
36. Tomaras GD, Yates NL, Liu P, Qin L, Fouda GG, Chavez LL, et al. Initial B-cell responses to transmitted human immunodeficiency virus type 1: virion-binding immunoglobulin M (IgM) and IgG antibodies followed by plasma anti-gp41 antibodies with ineffective control of initial viremia. *J Virol.* (2008) 82:12449–63. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01708-08
37. Havenar-Daughton C, Lee JH, Crotty S. Tfh cells and HIV bnAbs, an immunodominance model of the HIV neutralizing antibody generation problem. *Immunol Rev.* (2017) 275:49–61. doi: 10.1111/imr.12512
38. Overbaugh J, Morris L. The antibody response against HIV-1. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med.* (2012) 2:a007039. doi: 10.1101/cshperspect.a007039
39. Zolla-Pazner S. Non-neutralizing antibody functions for protection and control HIV in humans and SIV and SHIV in non-human primates. *AIDS.* (2016) 30:2551–53. doi: 10.1097/QAD.0000000000001200
40. Bonsignori M, Alam SM, Liao HX, Verkoczy L, Tomaras GD, Haynes BF, et al. HIV-1 antibodies from infection and vaccination: insights for guiding vaccine design. *Trends Microbiol.* (2012) 20:532–9. doi: 10.1016/j.tim.2012.08.011
41. Mascola JR, Montefiori DC. The role of antibodies in HIV vaccines. *Annu Rev Immunol.* (2010) 28:413–44. doi: 10.1146/annurev-immunol-030409-101256
42. Forthal DN, Landucci G, Daar ES. Antibody from patients with acute human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection inhibits primary strains of HIV type 1 in the presence of natural-killer effector cells. *J Virol.* (2001) 75:6953–61. doi: 10.1128/JVI.75.15.6953-6961.2001
43. Walker LM, Huber M, Doores KJ, Falkowska E, Pejchal R, Julien JP, et al. Broad neutralization coverage of HIV by multiple highly potent antibodies. *Nature.* (2011) 477:466–70. doi: 10.1038/nature10373
44. Walker LM, Phogat SK, Chan-Hui PY, Wagner D, Phung P, Goss JL, et al. Broad and potent neutralizing antibodies from an African donor reveal a new HIV-1 vaccine target. *Science.* (2009) 326:285–9. doi: 10.1126/science.1178746
45. Scheid JF, Mouquet H, Feldhahn N, Seaman MS, Velinzon K, Pietzsch J, et al. Broad diversity of neutralizing antibodies isolated from memory B cells in HIV-infected individuals. *Nature.* (2009) 458:636–40. doi: 10.1038/nature07930
46. Stiegler G, Kunert R, Purtscher M, Wolbank S, Voglauer R, Steindl F, et al. A potent cross-clade neutralizing human monoclonal antibody against a novel epitope on gp41 of human immunodeficiency virus type 1. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses.* (2001) 17:1757–65. doi: 10.1089/08892220152741450
47. Banerjee K, Klasse PJ, Sanders RW, Pereyra F, Michael E, Lu M, et al. IgG subclass profiles in infected HIV type 1 controllers and chronic progressors and in uninfected recipients of Env vaccines. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses.* (2010) 26:445–58. doi: 10.1089/aid.2009.0223
48. Pantaleo G, Menzo S, Vaccarezza M, Graziosi C, Cohen OJ, Demarest JF, et al. Studies in subjects with long-term nonprogressive human immunodeficiency virus infection. *N Engl J Med.* (1995) 332:209–16. doi: 10.1056/NEJM199501263320402
49. Burton DR, Mascola JR. Antibody responses to envelope glycoproteins in HIV-1 infection. *Nat Immunol.* (2015) 16:571–6. doi: 10.1038/ni.3158
50. Kwong PD, Mascola JR. HIV-1 Vaccines based on antibody identification, B cell ontogeny, and epitope structure. *Immunity.* (2018) 48:855–71. doi: 10.1016/j.immuni.2018.04.029
51. Klein F, Mouquet H, Dosenovic P, Scheid JF, Scharf L, Nussenzweig MC. Antibodies in HIV-1 vaccine development and therapy. *Science.* (2013) 341:1199–204. doi: 10.1126/science.1241144
52. Mouquet H, Nussenzweig MC. Polyreactive antibodies in adaptive immune responses to viruses. *Cell Mol Life Sci.* (2012) 69:1435–45. doi: 10.1007/s00018-011-0872-6
53. Wu X, Yang ZY, Li Y, Hogerkorp CM, Schief WR, Seaman MS, et al. Rational design of envelope identifies broadly neutralizing human monoclonal antibodies to HIV-1. *Science.* (2010) 329:856–61. doi: 10.1126/science.1187659
54. Dingens AS, Haddox HK, Overbaugh J, Bloom JD. Comprehensive mapping of HIV-1 escape from a broadly neutralizing antibody. *Cell Host Microbe.* (2017) 21:777–87.e4. doi: 10.1016/j.chom.2017.05.003
55. Blattner C, Lee JH, Sliepen K, Derking R, Falkowska E, de la Pena AT, et al. Structural delineation of a quaternary, cleavage-dependent epitope at the gp41-gp120 interface on intact HIV-1 Env trimers. *Immunity.* (2014) 40:669–80. doi: 10.1016/j.immuni.2014.04.008
56. Ferrantelli F, Kitabwalla M, Rasmussen RA, Cao C, Chou TC, Katinger H, et al. Potent cross-group neutralization of primary human immunodeficiency virus isolates with monoclonal antibodies–implications for acquired immunodeficiency syndrome vaccine. *J Infect Dis.* (2004) 189:71–4. doi: 10.1086/380102
57. Binley JM, Wrin T, Korber B, Zwick MB, Wang M, Chappey C, et al. Comprehensive cross-clade neutralization analysis of a panel of anti-human immunodeficiency virus type 1 monoclonal antibodies. *J Virol.* (2004) 78:13232–52. doi: 10.1128/JVI.78.23.13232-13252.2004
58. Mascola JR, Stiegler G, VanCott TC, Katinger H, Carpenter CB, Hanson CE, et al. Protection of macaques against vaginal transmission of a pathogenic HIV-1/SIV chimeric virus by passive infusion of neutralizing antibodies. *Nat Med.* (2000) 6:207–10. doi: 10.1038/72318
59. Baba TW, Liska V, Hofmann-Lehmann R, Vlasak J, Xu W, Ayehunie S, et al. Human neutralizing monoclonal antibodies of the IgG1 subtype protect against mucosal simian-human immunodeficiency virus infection. *Nat Med.* (2000) 6:200–6. doi: 10.1038/72309
60. Liu J, Ghneim K, Sok D, Bosche WJ, Li Y, Chipriano E, et al. Antibody-mediated protection against SHIV challenge includes systemic clearance of distal virus. *Science.* (2016) 353:1045–9. doi: 10.1126/science.aag0491
61. Hessell AJ, Jaworski JP, Epson E, Matsuda K, Pandey S, Kahl C, et al. Early short-term treatment with neutralizing human monoclonal antibodies halts SHIV infection in infant macaques. *Nat Med.* (2016) 22:362–8. doi: 10.1038/nm.4063
62. von Bredow B, Arias JF, Heyer LN, Moldt B, Le K, Robinson JE, et al. Comparison of antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity and virus neutralization by HIV-1 env-specific monoclonal antibodies. *J Virol.* (2016) 90:6127–39. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00347-16

63. Tay MZ, Liu P, Williams LD, McRaven MD, Sawant S, Gurley TC, et al. Antibody-mediated internalization of infectious HIV-1 virions differs among antibody isotypes and subclasses. *PLoS Pathog.* (2016) 12:e1005817. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1005817
64. Mujib S, Liu J, Rahman A, Schwartz JA, Bonner P, Yue FY, et al. Comprehensive cross-clade characterization of antibody-mediated recognition, complement-mediated lysis, and cell-mediated cytotoxicity of hiv-1 envelope-specific antibodies toward eradication of the HIV-1 reservoir. *J Virol.* (2017) 91:e00634–17. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00634-17
65. Walker LM, Burton DR. Passive immunotherapy of viral infections: 'super-antibodies' enter the fray. *Nat Rev Immunol.* (2018) 18:297–308. doi: 10.1038/nri.2017.148
66. Wagh K, Bhattacharya T, Williamson C, Robles A, Bayne M, Garrity J, et al. Optimal combinations of broadly neutralizing antibodies for prevention and treatment of HIV-1 clade C infection. *PLoS Pathog.* (2016) 12:e1005520. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1005520
67. Wu X, Guo J, Niu M, An M, Liu L, Wang H, et al. Tandem bispecific neutralizing antibody eliminates HIV-1 infection in humanized mice. *J Clin Invest.* (2018) 128:2239–51. doi: 10.1172/JCI96764
68. Padte NN, Yu J, Huang Y, Ho DD. Engineering multi-specific antibodies against HIV-1. *Retrovirology.* (2018) 15:60. doi: 10.1186/s12977-018-0439-9
69. Huang Y, Yu J, Lanzi A, Yao X, Andrews CD, Tsai L, et al. Engineered bispecific antibodies with exquisite HIV-1-neutralizing activity. *Cell.* (2016) 165:1621–31. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2016.05.024
70. Asokan M, Rudicell RS, Louder M, McKee K, O'Dell S, Stewart-Jones G, et al. Bispecific antibodies targeting different epitopes on the HIV-1 envelope exhibit broad and potent neutralization. *J Virol.* (2015) 89:12501–12. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02097-15
71. Klein F, Diskin R, Scheid JF, Gaebler C, Mouquet H, Georgiev IS, et al. Somatic mutations of the immunoglobulin framework are generally required for broad and potent HIV-1 neutralization. *Cell.* (2013) 153:126–38. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2013.03.018
72. Kepler TB, Liao HX, Alam SM, Bhaskarabhatla R, Zhang R, Yandava C, et al. Immunoglobulin gene insertions and deletions in the affinity maturation of HIV-1 broadly reactive neutralizing antibodies. *Cell Host Microbe.* (2014) 16:304–13. doi: 10.1016/j.chom.2014.08.006
73. Scheepers C, Shrestha RK, Lambson BE, Jackson KJ, Wright IA, Naicker D, et al. Ability to develop broadly neutralizing HIV-1 antibodies is not restricted by the germline Ig gene repertoire. *J Immunol.* (2015) 194:4371–8. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1500118
74. Gautam R, Nishimura Y, Pegu A, Nason MC, Klein F, Gazumyan A, et al. A single injection of anti-HIV-1 antibodies protects against repeated SHIV challenges. *Nature.* (2016) 533:105–9. doi: 10.1038/nature17677
75. Ko SY, Pegu A, Rudicell RS, Yang ZY, Joyce MG, Chen X, et al. Enhanced neonatal Fc receptor function improves protection against primate SHIV infection. *Nature.* (2014) 514:642–5. doi: 10.1038/nature13612
76. Zalevsky J, Chamberlain AK, Horton HM, Karki S, Leung IW, Sproule TJ, et al. Enhanced antibody half-life improves *in vivo* activity. *Nat Biotechnol.* (2010) 28:157–9. doi: 10.1038/nbt.1601
77. Yates NL, Stacey AR, Nolen TL, Vandergrift NA, Moody MA, Montefiori DC, et al. HIV-1 gp41 envelope IgA is frequently elicited after transmission but has an initial short response half-life. *Mucosal Immunol.* (2013) 6:692–703. doi: 10.1038/mi.2012.107
78. Forthal D, Hope TJ, Alter G. New paradigms for functional HIV-specific nonneutralizing antibodies. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS.* (2013) 8:392–400. doi: 10.1097/COH.0b013e328363d486
79. Vidarsson G, Dekkers G, Rispens T. IgG subclasses and allotypes: from structure to effector functions. *Front Immunol.* (2014) 5:520. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2014.00520
80. Gallerano D, Ndlovu P, Makupe I, Focke-Tejkl M, Fauland K, Wollmann E, et al. Comparison of the specificities of IgG, IgG-subclass, IgA and IgM reactivities in African and European HIV-infected individuals with an HIV-1 clade C proteome-based array. *PLoS ONE.* (2015) 10:e0117204. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0117204
81. Garraud O, Perraut R, Riveau G, Nutman TB. Class and subclass selection in parasite-specific antibody responses. *Trends Parasitol.* (2003) 19:300–4. doi: 10.1016/S1471-4922(03)00139-9
82. Klasse PJ, Blomberg J, Pipkorn R. Differential IgG subclass responses to epitopes in transmembrane protein of HIV-1. *Viral Immunol.* (1990) 3:89–98. doi: 10.1089/vim.1990.3.89
83. Sadanand S, Das J, Chung AW, Schoen MK, Lane S, Suscovich TJ, et al. Temporal variation in HIV-specific IgG subclass antibodies during acute infection differentiates spontaneous controllers from chronic progressors. *AIDS.* (2018) 32:443–50. doi: 10.1097/QAD.0000000000001716
84. Yates NL, Lucas JT, Nolen TL, Vandergrift NA, Soderberg KA, Seaton KE, et al. Multiple HIV-1-specific IgG3 responses decline during acute HIV-1: implications for detection of incident HIV infection. *AIDS.* (2011) 25:2089–97. doi: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32834b348e
85. Ferrante A, Beard LJ, Feldman RG. IgG subclass distribution of antibodies to bacterial and viral antigens. *Pediatr Infect Dis J.* (1990) 9:S16–24. doi: 10.1097/00006454-199008001-00004
86. Siber GR, Schur PH, Aisenberg AC, Weitzman SA, Schiffman G. Correlation between serum IgG-2 concentrations and the antibody response to bacterial polysaccharide antigens. *N Engl J Med.* (1980) 303:178–82. doi: 10.1056/NEJM198007243030402
87. Binley JM, Lybarger EA, Crooks ET, Seaman MS, Gray E, Davis KL, et al. Profiling the specificity of neutralizing antibodies in a large panel of plasmas from patients chronically infected with human immunodeficiency virus type 1 subtypes B and C. *J Virol.* (2008) 82:11651–68. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01762-08
88. Ngo-Giang-Huong N, Candotti D, Goubar A, Autran B, Maynart M, Sicard D, et al. HIV type 1-specific IgG2 antibodies: markers of helper T cell type 1 response and prognostic marker of long-term nonprogression. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses.* (2001) 17:1435–46. doi: 10.1089/088922201753197105
89. Rouers A, Klingler J, Su B, Samri A, Laumond G, Even S, et al. HIV-specific B cell frequency correlates with neutralization breadth in patients naturally controlling HIV-infection. *EBioMedicine.* (2017) 21:158–69. doi: 10.1016/j.ebiom.2017.05.029
90. Lucar O, Su B, Potard V, Samri A, Autran B, Moog C, et al. Neutralizing antibodies against a specific human immunodeficiency virus gp41 epitope are associated with long-term non-progressor status. *EBioMedicine.* (2017) 22:122–32. doi: 10.1016/j.ebiom.2017.07.007
91. Martinez V, Costagliola D, Bonduelle O, N'go N, Schnuriger A, Theodorou I, et al. Combination of HIV-1-specific CD4 Th1 cell responses and IgG2 antibodies is the best predictor for persistence of long-term nonprogression. *J Infect Dis.* (2005) 191:2053–63. doi: 10.1086/430320
92. Rerks-Ngarm S, Pitisuttithum P, Nitayaphan S, Kaewkungwal J, Chiu J, Paris R, et al. Vaccination with ALVAC and AIDSVAX to prevent HIV-1 infection in Thailand. *N Engl J Med.* (2009) 361:2209–20. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa0908492
93. Yates NL, Liao HX, Fong Y, deCamp A, Vandergrift NA, Williams WT, et al. Vaccine-induced Env V1-V2 IgG3 correlates with lower HIV-1 infection risk and declines soon after vaccination. *Sci Transl Med.* (2014) 6:228ra239. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3007730
94. Cavacini LA, Kuhrt D, Duval M, Mayer K, Posner MR. Binding and neutralization activity of human IgG1 and IgG3 from serum of HIV-infected individuals. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses.* (2003) 19:785–92. doi: 10.1089/088922203769232584
95. Tjiam MC, Taylor JP, Morshidi MA, Sariputra L, Burrows S, Martin JN, et al. Viremic HIV controllers exhibit high plasmacytoid dendritic cell-reactive opsonophagocytic IgG antibody responses against HIV-1 p24 associated with greater antibody isotype diversification. *J Immunol.* (2015) 194:5320–8. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1402918
96. Ackerman ME, Crispin M, Yu X, Baruah K, Boesch AW, Harvey DJ, et al. Natural variation in Fc glycosylation of HIV-specific antibodies impacts antiviral activity. *J Clin Invest.* (2013) 123:2183–92. doi: 10.1172/JCI65708
97. Burton DR. Antibodies, viruses and vaccines. *Nat Rev Immunol.* (2002) 2:706–13. doi: 10.1038/nri891
98. Wang J, Li Z, Xu L, Yang H, Liu W. Transmembrane domain dependent inhibitory function of FcgammaRIIB. *Protein Cell.* (2018) 9:1004–12. doi: 10.1007/s13238-018-0509-8
99. Li SS, Gilbert PB, Tomaras GD, Kijak G, Ferrari G, Thomas R, et al. FCGR2C polymorphisms associate with HIV-1 vaccine protection in RV144 trial. *J Clin Invest.* (2014) 124:3879–90. doi: 10.1172/JCI75539

100. Warmerdam PA, van de Winkel JG, Gosselin EJ, Capel PJ. Molecular basis for a polymorphism of human Fc gamma receptor II (CD32). *J Exp Med.* (1990) 172:19–25. doi: 10.1084/jem.172.1.19
101. Ravetch JV, Perussia B. Alternative membrane forms of Fc gamma RIII(CD16) on human natural killer cells and neutrophils. Cell type-specific expression of two genes that differ in single nucleotide substitutions. *J Exp Med.* (1989) 170:481–97. doi: 10.1084/jem.170.2.481
102. Ory PA, Goldstein IM, Kwoh EE, Clarkson SB. Characterization of polymorphic forms of Fc receptor III on human neutrophils. *J Clin Invest.* (1989) 83:1676–81. doi: 10.1172/JCI114067
103. van der Heijden J, Breunis WB, Geissler J, de Boer M, van den Berg TK, Kuijpers TW. Phenotypic variation in IgG receptors by nonclassical FCGR2C alleles. *J Immunol.* (2012) 188:1318–24. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1003945
104. Roederer M, Quaye L, Mangino M, Beddall MH, Mahnke Y, Chattopadhyay P, et al. The genetic architecture of the human immune system: a bioresource for autoimmunity and disease pathogenesis. *Cell.* (2015) 161:387–403. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2015.02.046
105. Hirvinen M, Heiskanen R, Oksanen M, Pesonen S, Liikanen I, Joensuu T, et al. Fc-gamma receptor polymorphisms as predictive and prognostic factors in patients receiving oncolytic adenovirus treatment. *J Transl Med.* (2013) 11:193. doi: 10.1186/1479-5876-11-193
106. Forthal DN, Landucci G, Bream J, Jacobson LP, Phan TB, Montoya B. FcgammaRIIa genotype predicts progression of HIV infection. *J Immunol.* (2007) 179:7916–23. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.179.11.7916
107. Perez LG, Costa MR, Todd CA, Haynes BF, Montefiori DC. Utilization of immunoglobulin G fc receptors by human immunodeficiency virus type 1: a specific role for antibodies against the membrane-proximal external region of gp41. *J Virol.* (2009) 83:7397–410. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00656-09
108. Breunis WB, van Mirre E, Geissler J, Laddach N, Wolbink G, van der Schoot E, et al. Copy number variation at the FCGR locus includes FCGR3A, FCGR2C and FCGR3B but not FCGR2A and FCGR2B. *Hum Mutat.* (2009) 30:E640–50. doi: 10.1002/humu.20997
109. Ernst LK, Metes D, Herberman RB, Morel PA. Allelic polymorphisms in the FcgammaRIIC gene can influence its function on normal human natural killer cells. *J Mol Med.* (2002) 80:248–57. doi: 10.1007/s00109-001-0294-2
110. Lassauniere R, Musekiwa A, Gray GE, Kuhn L, Tiemessen CT. Perinatal HIV-1 transmission: Fc gamma receptor variability associates with maternal infectiousness and infant susceptibility. *Retrovirology.* (2016) 13:40. doi: 10.1186/s12977-016-0272-y
111. Milligan C, Richardson BA, John-Stewart G, Nduati R, Overbaugh J. FCGR2A and FCGR3A genotypes in human immunodeficiency virus mother-to-child transmission. *Open Forum Infect Dis.* (2015) 2:ofv149. doi: 10.1093/ofid/ofv149
112. Deepe RN, Kistner-Griffin E, Martin JN, Deeks SG, Pandey JP. Epistatic interactions between Fc (GM) and FcgammaR genes and the host control of human immunodeficiency virus replication. *Hum Immunol.* (2012) 73:263–6. doi: 10.1016/j.humimm.2011.12.008
113. Poonia B, Kijak GH, Pauza CD. High affinity allele for the gene of FCGR3A is risk factor for HIV infection and progression. *PLoS ONE.* (2010) 5:e15562. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0015562
114. Saxena A, Wu D. Advances in therapeutic Fc engineering - modulation of IgG-associated effector functions and serum half-life. *Front Immunol.* (2016) 7:580. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2016.00580
115. Gupta S, Gach JS, Becerra JC, Phan TB, Pudney J, Moldoveanu Z, et al. The neonatal Fc receptor (FcRn) enhances human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1) transcytosis across epithelial cells. *PLoS Pathog.* (2013) 9:e1003776. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1003776
116. Ye L, Zeng R, Bai Y, Roopenian DC, Zhu X. Efficient mucosal vaccination mediated by the neonatal Fc receptor. *Nat Biotechnol.* (2011) 29:158–63. doi: 10.1038/nbt.1742
117. Hashimoto G, Wright PF, Karzon DT. Antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity against influenza virus-infected cells. *J Infect Dis.* (1983) 148:785–94. doi: 10.1093/infdis/148.5.785
118. Kohl S, Charlebois ED, Sigouroudinia M, Goldbeck C, Hartog K, Sekulovich RE, et al. Limited antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity antibody response induced by a herpes simplex virus type 2 subunit vaccine. *J Infect Dis.* (2000) 181:335–9. doi: 10.1086/315208
119. Lyerly HK, Matthews TJ, Langlois AJ, Bolognesi DP, Weinhold KJ. Human T-cell lymphotropic virus IIIB glycoprotein (gp120) bound to CD4 determinants on normal lymphocytes and expressed by infected cells serves as target for immune attack. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA.* (1987) 84:4601–5. doi: 10.1073/pnas.84.13.4601
120. Jacobs R, Hintzen G, Kemper A, Beul K, Kempf S, Behrens G, et al. CD56bright cells differ in their KIR repertoire and cytotoxic features from CD56dim NK cells. *Eur J Immunol.* (2001) 31:3121–7. doi: 10.1002/1521-4141(2001010)31:10<3121::aid-immu3121>3.0.co;2-4
121. Pollara J, Hart L, Brewer F, Pickeral J, Packard BZ, Hoxie JA, et al. High-throughput quantitative analysis of HIV-1 and SIV-specific ADCC-mediating antibody responses. *Cytometry A.* (2011) 79:603–12. doi: 10.1002/cyto.a.21084
122. Lanier LL, Le AM, Civin CI, Loken MR, Phillips JH. The relationship of CD16 (Leu-11) and Leu-19 (NKH-1) antigen expression on human peripheral blood NK cells and cytotoxic T lymphocytes. *J Immunol.* (1986) 136:4480–6.
123. Wren LH, Chung AW, Isitman G, Kelleher AD, Parsons MS, Amin J, et al. Specific antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity responses associated with slow progression of HIV infection. *Immunology.* (2013) 138:116–23. doi: 10.1111/imm.12016
124. Banks ND, Kinsey N, Clements J, Hildreth JE. Sustained antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) in SIV-infected macaques correlates with delayed progression to AIDS. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses.* (2002) 18:1197–205. doi: 10.1089/08892220260387940
125. Baum LL, Cassutt KJ, Knigge K, Khattri R, Margolick J, Rinaldo C, et al. HIV-1 gp120-specific antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity correlates with rate of disease progression. *J Immunol.* (1996) 157:2168–73.
126. Chung AW, Navis M, Isitman G, Centre R, Finlayson R, Bloch M, et al. Activation of NK cells by ADCC responses during early HIV infection. *Viral Immunol.* (2011) 24:171–5. doi: 10.1089/vim.2010.0108
127. Lee WS, Kent SJ. Anti-HIV-1 antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity: is there more to antibodies than neutralization? *Curr Opin HIV AIDS.* (2018) 13:160–6. doi: 10.1097/COH.0000000000000439
128. Lewis GK, Finzi A, DeVico AL, Pazgier M. Conformational masking and receptor-dependent unmasking of highly conserved Env epitopes recognized by non-neutralizing antibodies that mediate potent ADCC against HIV-1. *Viruses.* (2015) 7:5115–32. doi: 10.3390/v7092856
129. Alpert MD, Harvey JD, Lauer WA, Reeves RK, Piatak M Jr, Carville A, et al. ADCC develops over time during persistent infection with live-attenuated SIV and is associated with complete protection against SIV(mac)251 challenge. *PLoS Pathog.* (2012) 8:e1002890. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002890
130. Hessell AJ, Shapiro MB, Powell R, Malherbe DC, McBurney SP, Pandey S, et al. Reduced cell-associated DNA and improved viral control in macaques following passive transfer of a single anti-V2 monoclonal antibody and repeated simian/human immunodeficiency viruschallenges. *J Virol.* (2018) 92:e02198–17. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02198-17
131. Mayr LM, Decoville T, Schmidt S, Laumond G, Klingler J, Ducloy C, et al. Non-neutralizing antibodies targeting the V1V2 domain of HIV exhibit strong antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxic activity. *Sci Rep.* (2017) 7:12655. doi: 10.1038/s41598-017-12883-6
132. Broliden K, Sievers E, Tovo PA, Moschese V, Scarlatti G, Broliden PA, et al. Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity and neutralizing activity in sera of HIV-1-infected mothers and their children. *Clin Exp Immunol.* (1993) 93:56–64. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2249.1993.tb06497.x
133. Mabuka J, Nduati R, Odem-Davis K, Peterson D, Overbaugh J. HIV-specific antibodies capable of ADCC are common in breastmilk and are associated with reduced risk of transmission in women with high viral loads. *PLoS Pathog.* (2012) 8:e1002739. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002739
134. Lewis GK, Ackerman ME, Scarlatti G, Moog C, Robert-Guroff M, Kent SJ, et al. Knowns and unknowns of assaying antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity against HIV-1. *Front Immunol.* (2019) 10:1025. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.01025
135. Huang Y, Ferrari G, Alter G, Forthal DN, Kappes JC, Lewis GK, et al. Diversity of antiviral IgG effector activities observed in HIV-infected and vaccinated subjects. *J Immunol.* (2016) 197:4603–12. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1601197

136. Prevost J, Richard J, Medjahed H, Alexander A, Jones J, Kappes JC, et al. Incomplete downregulation of CD4 expression affects HIV-1 Env conformation and antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity responses. *J Virol.* (2018) 92:e00484–18. doi: 10.1128/JVI.00484-18
137. Gohain N, Tolbert WD, Orlandi C, Richard J, Ding S, Chen X, et al. Molecular basis for epitope recognition by non-neutralizing anti-gp41 antibody F240. *Sci Rep.* (2016) 6:36685. doi: 10.1038/srep36685
138. Richard J, Prevost J, Baxter AE, von Bredow B, Ding S, Medjahed H, et al. Uninfected bystander cells impact the measurement of HIV-specific antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity responses. *MBio.* (2018) 9:e00358-18. doi: 10.1128/mBio.00358-18
139. Richard J, Prevost J, Alsahafi N, Ding S, Finzi A. Impact of HIV-1 envelope conformation on ADCC responses. *Trends Microbiol.* (2018) 26:253–65. doi: 10.1016/j.tim.2017.10.007
140. Forthal DN, Finzi A. Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity in HIV infection. *AIDS.* (2018) 32:2439–51. doi: 10.1097/QAD.0000000000002011
141. Zhang X, Lu X, Moog C, Yuan L, Liu Z, Li Z, et al. KIR3DL1-negative CD8 T cells and KIR3DL1-negative natural killer cells contribute to the advantageous control of early human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection in HLA-B Bw4 homozygous individuals. *Front Immunol.* (2018) 9:1855. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.01855
142. Malnati MS, Ugolotti E, Monti MC, Battista D, Vanni I, Bordo D, et al. Activating killer immunoglobulin receptors and HLA-C: a successful combination providing HIV-1 control. *Sci Rep.* (2017) 7:42470. doi: 10.1038/srep42470
143. Boulet S, Kleyman M, Kim JY, Kamya P, Sharafi S, Simic N, et al. A combined genotype of KIR3DL1 high expressing alleles and HLA-B*57 is associated with a reduced risk of HIV infection. *AIDS.* (2008) 22:1487–91. doi: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e3282ffde7e
144. Martin MP, Qi Y, Gao X, Yamada E, Martin JN, Pereyra F, et al. Innate partnership of HLA-B and KIR3DL1 subtypes against HIV-1. *Nat Genet.* (2007) 39:733–40. doi: 10.1038/ng2035
145. Scully E, Alter G. NK cells in HIV disease. *Curr HIV/AIDS Rep.* (2016) 13:85–94. doi: 10.1007/s11904-016-0310-3
146. Mayr L, Su B, Moog C. Role of nonneutralizing antibodies in vaccines and/or HIV infected individuals. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS.* (2017) 12:209–15. doi: 10.1097/COH.0000000000000357
147. Ackerman ME, Moldt B, Wyatt RT, Dugast AS, McAndrew E, Tsoukas S, et al. A robust, high-throughput assay to determine the phagocytic activity of clinical antibody samples. *J Immunol Methods.* (2011) 366:8–19. doi: 10.1016/j.jim.2010.12.016
148. Holl V, Peressin M, Schmidt S, Decoville T, Zolla-Pazner S, Aubertin AM, et al. Efficient inhibition of HIV-1 replication in human immature monocyte-derived dendritic cells by purified anti-HIV-1 IgG without induction of maturation. *Blood.* (2006) 107:4466–74. doi: 10.1182/blood-2005-08-3490
149. Holl V, Hemmerter S, Burrer R, Schmidt S, Bohbot A, Aubertin AM, et al. Involvement of Fc gamma RI (CD64) in the mechanism of HIV-1 inhibition by polyclonal IgG purified from infected patients in cultured monocyte-derived macrophages. *J Immunol.* (2004) 173:6274–83. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.173.10.6274
150. Barouch DH, Stephenson KE, Borducchi EN, Smith K, Stanley K, McNally AG, et al. Protective efficacy of a global HIV-1 mosaic vaccine against heterologous SHIV challenges in rhesus monkeys. *Cell.* (2013) 155:531–9. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2013.09.061
151. Barouch DH, Alter G, Broge T, Linde C, Ackerman ME, Brown EP, et al. Protective efficacy of adenovirus/protein vaccines against SIV challenges in rhesus monkeys. *Science.* (2015) 349:320–4. doi: 10.1126/science.aab3886
152. Tuero I, Mohanram V, Musich T, Miller L, Vargas-Inchaustegui DA, Demberg T, et al. Mucosal B cells are associated with delayed SIV acquisition in vaccinated female but not male rhesus macaques following SIVmac251 rectal challenge. *PLoS Pathog.* (2015) 11:e1005101. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1005101
153. Chung AW, Ghebremichael M, Robinson H, Brown E, Choi I, Lane S, et al. Polyfunctional Fc-effector profiles mediated by IgG subclass selection distinguish RV144 and VAX003 vaccines. *Sci Transl Med.* (2014) 6:228ra238. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3007736
154. Musich T, Li L, Liu L, Zolla-Pazner S, Robert-Guroff M, Gorny MK. Monoclonal antibodies specific for the V2, V3, CD4-binding site, and gp41 of HIV-1 mediate phagocytosis in a dose-dependent manner. *J Virol.* (2017) 91:e02325–16. doi: 10.1128/JVI.02325-16
155. Sips M, Krykbaeva M, Diefenbach TJ, Ghebremichael M, Bowman BA, Dugast AS, et al. Fc receptor-mediated phagocytosis in tissues as a potent mechanism for preventive and therapeutic HIV vaccine strategies. *Mucosal Immunol.* (2016) 9:1584–95. doi: 10.1038/mi.2016.12
156. Forthal DN, Landucci G, Chohan B, Richardson BA, McClelland RS, Jaoko W, et al. Antibody-dependent cell-mediated virus inhibition antibody activity does not correlate with risk of HIV-1 superinfection. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr.* (2013) 63:31–3. doi: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e3182874d41
157. Moody MA, Liao HX, Alam SM, Scearce RM, Plonk MK, Kozink DM, et al. Anti-phospholipid human monoclonal antibodies inhibit CCR5-tropic HIV-1 and induce beta-chemokines. *J Exp Med.* (2010) 207:763–76. doi: 10.1084/jem.20091281
158. Ackerman ME, Mikhailova A, Brown EP, Dowell KG, Walker BD, Bailey-Kellogg C, et al. Polyfunctional HIV-specific antibody responses are associated with spontaneous HIV control. *PLoS Pathog.* (2016) 12:e1005315. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1005315
159. Hessell AJ, Hangartner L, Hunter M, Havenith CE, Beurskens FJ, Bakker JM, et al. Fc receptor but not complement binding is important in antibody protection against HIV. *Nature.* (2007) 449:101–4. doi: 10.1038/nature06106
160. Parsons MS, Lee WS, Kristensen AB, Amarasena T, Khoury G, Wheatley AK, et al. Fc-dependent functions are redundant to efficacy of anti-HIV antibody PGT121 in macaques. *J Clin Invest.* (2019):129:182–91. doi: 10.1172/JCI122466
161. Alexander MR, Sanders RW, Moore JP, Klasse PJ. Short communication: virion aggregation by neutralizing and nonneutralizing antibodies to the HIV-1 envelope glycoprotein. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses.* (2015) 31:1160–5. doi: 10.1089/aid.2015.0050
162. Stieh DJ, King DF, Klein K, Liu P, Shen X, Hwang KK, et al. Aggregate complexes of HIV-1 induced by multimeric antibodies. *Retrovirology.* (2014) 11:78. doi: 10.1186/s12977-014-0078-8
163. Fahrbach KM, Malykhina O, Stieh DJ, Hope TJ. Differential binding of IgG and IgA to mucus of the female reproductive tract. *PLoS ONE.* (2013) 8:e76176. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0076176
164. Gunn BM, Schneider JR, Shansab M, Bastian AR, Fahrbach KM, Smith AD 4th, et al. Enhanced binding of antibodies generated during chronic HIV infection to mucus component MUC16. *Mucosal Immunol.* (2016) 9:1549–58. doi: 10.1038/mi.2016.8
165. Uzzan M, Tokuyama M, Rosenstein AK, Tomescu C, SahBandar IN, Ko HM, et al. Anti-alpha4beta7 therapy targets lymphoid aggregates in the gastrointestinal tract of HIV-1-infected individuals. *Sci Transl Med.* (2018) 10:eaau4711. doi: 10.1126/scitranslmed.aau4711
166. Killick J, Morisse G, Sieger D, Astier AL. Complement as a regulator of adaptive immunity. *Semin Immunopathol.* (2018) 40:37–48. doi: 10.1007/s00281-017-0644-y
167. Freeley S, Kemper C, Le Friec G. The "ins and outs" of complement-driven immune responses. *Immunol Rev.* (2016) 274:16–32. doi: 10.1111/imr.12472
168. Frank MM, Hester C, Jiang H. Complement and the control of HIV infection: an evolving story. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS.* (2014) 9:278–90. doi: 10.1097/COH.0000000000000058
169. Nakamura M, Okada H, Sasaki H, Yoshida K, Kamada M, Okada N, et al. Quantification of the CD55 and CD59, membrane inhibitors of complement on HIV-1 particles as a function of complement-mediated virolysis. *Microbiol Immunol.* (1996) 40:561–7. doi: 10.1111/j.1348-0421.1996.tb01109.x
170. Yu Q, Yu R, Qin X. The good and evil of complement activation in HIV-1 infection. *Cell Mol Immunol.* (2010) 7:334–40. doi: 10.1038/cmi.2010.8
171. Stoiber H, Pruenster M, Ammann CG, Dierich MP. Complement-opsonized HIV: the free rider on its way to infection. *Mol Immunol.* (2005) 42:153–60. doi: 10.1016/j.molimm.2004.06.024
172. Montefiori DC, Cornell RJ, Zhou JY, Zhou JT, Hirsch VM, Johnson PR. Complement control proteins, CD46, CD55, and CD59, as common surface constituents of human and simian immunodeficiency viruses and possible targets for vaccine protection. *Virology.* (1994) 205:82–92. doi: 10.1006/viro.1994.1622
173. Perez LG, Martinez DR, deCamp AC, Pinter A, Berman PW, Francis D, et al. V1V2-specific complement activating serum IgG as a correlate of

reduced HIV-1 infection risk in RV144. *PLoS ONE.* (2017) 12:e0180720. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0180720
174. Halstead SB, O'Rourke EJ. Dengue viruses and mononuclear phagocytes. I. Infection enhancement by non-neutralizing antibody. *J Exp Med.* (1977) 146:201–17. doi: 10.1084/jem.146.1.201
175. Screaton G, Mongkolsapaya J, Yacoub S, Roberts C. New insights into the immunopathology and control of dengue virus infection. *Nat Rev Immunol.* (2015) 15:745–59. doi: 10.1038/nri3916
176. Vasan S, Rerks-Ngarm S, Gilbert P, Haynes B, Nitayapan S, Pitisuttihum P, et al. Letter to the Editor on: The RV144 vaccine regimen was not associated with enhancement of infection. *Hum Vaccin Immunother.* (2015) 11:1036–7. doi: 10.1080/21645515.2015.1010970
177. Pitisuttithum P, Gilbert P, Gurwith M, Heyward W, Martin M, van Griensven F, et al. Randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled efficacy trial of a bivalent recombinant glycoprotein 120 HIV-1 vaccine among injection drug users in Bangkok, Thailand. *J Infect Dis.* (2006) 194:1661–71. doi: 10.1086/508748
178. Ganor Y, Real F, Sennepin A, Dutertre CA, Prevedel L, Xu L, et al. HIV-1 reservoirs in urethral macrophages of patients under suppressive antiretroviral therapy. *Nat Microbiol.* 2019 4:633–44. doi: 10.1038/s41564-018-0335-z
179. Mayr L, Su B, Moog C. Langerhans cells: the 'Yin and Yang' of HIV restriction and transmission. *Trends Microbiol.* (2017) 25:170–2. doi: 10.1016/j.tim.2017.01.009
180. Matsuzawa T, Ogawa Y, Moriishi K, Shimada S, Kawamura T. Immunological function of Langerhans cells in HIV infection. *J Dermatol Sci.* (2017) 87:159–67. doi: 10.1016/j.jdermsci.2017.03.015
181. Botting RA, Rana H, Bertram KM, Rhodes JW, Baharlou H, Nasr N, et al. Langerhans cells and sexual transmission of HIV and HSV. *Rev Med Virol.* (2017) 27. doi: 10.1002/rmv.1923
182. Xu H, Wang X, Veazey RS. Mucosal immunology of HIV infection. *Immunol Rev.* (2013) 254:10–33. doi: 10.1111/imr.12072
183. Harman AN, Kim M, Nasr N, Sandgren KJ, Cameron PU. Tissue dendritic cells as portals for HIV entry. *Rev Med Virol.* (2013) 23:319–33. doi: 10.1002/rmv.1753
184. Cunningham AL, Harman A, Nasr N. Initial HIV mucosal infection and dendritic cells. *EMBO Mol Med.* (2013) 5:658–60. doi: 10.1002/emmm.201202763
185. Cavarelli M, Foglieni C, Rescigno M, Scarlatti G. R5 HIV-1 envelope attracts dendritic cells to cross the human intestinal epithelium and sample luminal virions via engagement of the CCR5. *EMBO Mol Med.* (2013) 5:776–94. doi: 10.1002/emmm.201202232
186. Lewis GK. Role of Fc-mediated antibody function in protective immunity against HIV-1. *Immunology.* (2014) 142:46–57. doi: 10.1111/imm.12232
187. Cheeseman HM, Carias AM, Evans AB, Olejniczak NJ, Ziprin P, King DF, et al. Expression profile of human Fc receptors in mucosal tissue: implications for antibody-dependent cellular effector functions targeting HIV-1 transmission. *PLoS ONE.* (2016) 11:e0154656. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0154656
188. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Fcgamma receptors as regulators of immune responses. *Nat Rev Immunol.* (2008) 8:34–47. doi: 10.1038/nri2206
189. Moris A, Pereira M, Chakrabarti L. A role for antibodies in natural HIV control. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS.* (2019) 14:265–72. doi: 10.1097/COH.0000000000000554
190. Kumar R, Tuen M, Liu J, Nadas A, Pan R, Kong X, et al. Elicitation of broadly reactive antibodies against glycan-modulated neutralizing V3 epitopes of HIV-1 by immune complex vaccines. *Vaccine.* (2013) 31:5413–21. doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2013.09.010
191. Hioe CE, Visciano ML, Kumar R, Liu J, Mack EA, Simon RE, et al. The use of immune complex vaccines to enhance antibody responses against neutralizing epitopes on HIV-1 envelope gp120. *Vaccine.* (2009) 28:352–60. doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2009.10.040
192. Smith AJ, Wietgrefe SW, Shang L, Reilly CS, Southern PJ, Perkey KE, et al. Live simian immunodeficiency virus vaccine correlate of protection: immune complex-inhibitory Fc receptor interactions that reduce target cell availability. *J Immunol.* (2014) 193:3126–33. doi: 10.4049/jimmunol.1400822
193. Zolla-Pazner S, deCamp A, Gilbert PB, Williams C, Yates NL, Williams WT, et al. Vaccine-induced IgG antibodies to V1V2 regions of multiple HIV-1 subtypes correlate with decreased risk of HIV-1 infection. *PLoS ONE.* (2014) 9:e87572. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0087572
194. Zolla-Pazner S, deCamp AC, Cardozo T, Karasavvas N, Gottardo R, Williams C, et al. Analysis of V2 antibody responses induced in vaccinees in the ALVAC/AIDSVAX HIV-1 vaccine efficacy trial. *PLoS ONE.* (2013) 8:e53629. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0053629
195. Richardson SI, Chung AW, Natarajan H, Mabvakure B, Mkhize NN, Garrett N, et al. HIV-specific Fc effector function early in infection predicts the development of broadly neutralizing antibodies. *PLoS Pathog.* (2018) 14:e1006987. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1006987
196. Chung AW, Kumar MP, Arnold KB, Yu WH, Schoen MK, Dunphy LJ, et al. Dissecting polyclonal vaccine-induced humoral immunity against HIV using systems serology. *Cell.* (2015) 163:988–98. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2015.10.027
197. Pittala S, Morrison KS, Ackerman ME. Systems serology for decoding infection and vaccine-induced antibody responses to HIV-1. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS.* (2019) 14:253–64. doi: 10.1097/COH.0000000000000558
198. Zolla-Pazner S, Alvarez R, Kong XP, Weiss S. Vaccine-induced V1V2-specific antibodies control and or protect against infection with HIV, SIV and SHIV. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS.* (2019) 14:309–17. doi: 10.1097/COH.0000000000000551
199. Naranjo-Gomez M, Pelegrin M. Vaccinal effect of HIV-1 antibody therapy. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS.* (2019) 14:325–33. doi: 10.1097/COH.0000000000000555
200. Forthal D, Finzi A. Blocking HIV-1 replication: are Fc-Fcγ receptor interactions required? *J Clin Invest.* (2019) 129:53–4. doi: 10.1172/JCI125264
201. Bonsignori M, Pollara J, Moody MA, Alpert MD, Chen X, Hwang KK, et al. Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity-mediating antibodies from an HIV-1 vaccine efficacy trial target multiple epitopes and preferentially use the VH1 gene family. *J Virol.* (2012) 86:11521–32. doi: 10.1128/JVI.01023-12
202. Schiffner T, Sattentau QJ, Dorrell L. Development of prophylactic vaccines against HIV-1. *Retrovirology.* (2013) 10:72. doi: 10.1186/1742-4690-10-72

Conflict of Interest: The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

Advantages of publishing in Frontiers

OPEN ACCESS
Articles are free to read for greatest visibility and readership

FAST PUBLICATION
Around 90 days from submission to decision

HIGH QUALITY PEER-REVIEW
Rigorous, collaborative, and constructive peer-review

TRANSPARENT PEER-REVIEW
Editors and reviewers acknowledged by name on published articles

Frontiers
Avenue du Tribunal-Fédéral 34
1005 Lausanne | Switzerland

Visit us: www.frontiersin.org
Contact us: info@frontiersin.org | +41 21 510 17 00

REPRODUCIBILITY OF RESEARCH
Support open data and methods to enhance research reproducibility

DIGITAL PUBLISHING
Articles designed for optimal readership across devices

FOLLOW US
@frontiersin

IMPACT METRICS
Advanced article metrics track visibility across digital media

EXTENSIVE PROMOTION
Marketing and promotion of impactful research

LOOP RESEARCH NETWORK
Our network increases your article's readership